

University of Mississippi

eGrove

Statements on Auditing Standards

American Institute of Certified Public
Accountants (AICPA) Historical Collection

1-1-2005

Codification of statements on auditing standards (Including statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements) Numbers 1 to 101, as of January 1, 2005

American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA)

Follow this and additional works at: https://egrove.olemiss.edu/aicpa_sas



Part of the [Accounting Commons](#)

Recommended Citation

American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA), "Codification of statements on auditing standards (Including statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements) Numbers 1 to 101, as of January 1, 2005" (2005). *Statements on Auditing Standards*. 159.

https://egrove.olemiss.edu/aicpa_sas/159

This Book is brought to you for free and open access by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) Historical Collection at eGrove. It has been accepted for inclusion in Statements on Auditing Standards by an authorized administrator of eGrove. For more information, please contact egrove@olemiss.edu.

Codification of Statements on Auditing Standards

**(Including Statements
on Standards for
Attestation Engagements)**

Numbers 1 to 101

AICPA

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

**Statements on Auditing Standards
Nos. 1 to 101**

AICPA

Outstanding Statements on Auditing Standards (cont.)

<i>SAS No.</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>AU Section</i>
77	Amendments to Statements on Auditing Standards No. 22, <i>Planning and Supervision</i> , No. 59, <i>The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern</i> , and No. 62, <i>Special Reports</i>	311; 341; 544; 623
78	Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit: An Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 55	110; 319; 324; 325
79	Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 58, <i>Reports on Audited Financial Statements</i>	508
80	Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 31, <i>Evidential Matter</i>	326
83	Establishing an Understanding With the Client	310
84	Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors	315
85	Management Representations	333; 508
86	Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 72, <i>Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties</i>	634
87	Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report	325; 532
88	Service Organizations and Reporting on Consistency	324; 420
89	Audit Adjustments	310; 333; 380
90	Audit Committee Communications	380
91	Federal GAAP Hierarchy	411
92	Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities	332
93	Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—2000	315; 411; 508; 622
94	The Effect of Information Technology on the Auditor's Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit	319
95	Generally Accepted Auditing Standards	150
96	Audit Documentation	312; 329; 339; 341
97	Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 50, <i>Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles</i>	625
98	Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—2002	150; 161; 312; 324; 508; 530; 550; 551; 558; 560; 561
99	Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit	230; 316; 333
100	Interim Financial Information	722
101	Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures	328

Outstanding Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements

<i>SSAE No.</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>AT Section</i>
10	Attestation Standards: Revision and Recodification	101; 201; 301; 401; 501; 601; 701
11	Attest Documentation	101; 201; 301
12	Amendment to Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10, <i>Attestation Standards: Revision and Recodification</i>	101

AICPA

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

Codification of Statements on Auditing Standards

**(Including Statements
on Standards for
Attestation Engagements)**

Numbers 1 to 101

Copyright © 2005 by
American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, Inc.,
New York, NY 10036-8775

Reprinted from
AICPA Professional Standards,
Auditing Part
(as of January 1, 2005)

All rights reserved. For information about the procedure for requesting permission to make copies of any part of this work, please visit www.aicpa.org. A Permissions Request Form for e-mailing requests and information on fees are available there by clicking on the copyright notice at the foot of the AICPA homepage.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 PrP 0 9 8 7 6 5

ISBN 0-87051-529-2

FOREWORD

This volume, issued by the Auditing Standards Board (“ASB”), is a Codification of currently effective Statements on Auditing Standards (“SASs”) and the related Auditing Interpretations applicable to the preparation and issuance of audit reports for all non-issuers (non-issuers are all entities other than issuers as defined by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, or other entities who are required to be audited by a registered public accounting firm as prescribed by the rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission). This volume is also a Codification of currently effective Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (“SSAEs”), and the related Attest Engagements Interpretations. Superseded portions have been deleted and all applicable amendments have been included.

SASs are issued by the ASB, the senior technical body of the AICPA designated to issue pronouncements on auditing matters applicable to the preparation and issuance of audit reports for entities that are non-issuers. Rule 201, *General Standards*, and Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards*, of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct, requires an AICPA member who performs an audit (the auditor) of the financial statements of a non-issuer to comply with standards promulgated by the ASB. The auditor should have sufficient knowledge of the SASs to identify those that are applicable to his or her audit and should be prepared to justify departures from the SASs.

Auditing Interpretations of SASs are *Interpretive Publications* pursuant to AU section 150, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*. Interpretive Publications are recommendations on the application of SASs in specific circumstances, including engagements for entities in specialized industries. Interpretive Publications are issued under the authority of the ASB. The auditor should identify Interpretive Publications applicable to his or her audit. If the auditor does not apply the auditing guidance included in an applicable Interpretive Publication, the auditor should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the SAS provisions addressed by such auditing guidance.

SSAEs are issued by senior technical bodies of the AICPA designated to issue pronouncements on attestation matters. Rule 201 and Rule 202 of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct, requires an AICPA member who performs an attest engagement (the practitioner) to comply with such pronouncements. The practitioner should have sufficient knowledge of the SSAEs to identify those that are applicable to his or her attest engagement and should be prepared to justify departures from the SSAEs.

Attest Engagements Interpretations are recommendations on the application of SSAEs in specific circumstances, including engagements for entities in specialized industries, issued under the authority of AICPA senior technical bodies. If the practitioner does not apply the attestation guidance included in an applicable Attest Engagements Interpretation, the practitioner should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the SSAE provisions addressed by such attestation guidance.

The Accounting and Review Services Committee, ASB, and Consulting Services Executive Committee are the senior technical committees of the Institute designated to issue enforceable standards under Rules 201 and 202 of the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct concerning attest services in their respective areas of responsibility.

AUDITING STANDARDS BOARD

John A. Fogarty, Chair

**Charles E. Landes, Vice President—
Professional Standards and Services**

STANDARDS RECENTLY ISSUED

This edition contains the following changes:

<u>Section</u>	<u>Change</u>
Master Topical Index	Deletion of the <i>Master Topical Index</i>
PC Part I	Revision of <i>Applicability of AICPA Professional Standards and Public Company Accounting Oversight Board Standards</i> (formerly titled <i>Applicability and Integration of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards and Public Company Accounting Oversight Board Standards</i>) to reflect the issuance of the new paperback publication "PCAOB Standards and Related Rules (Including Select SEC-Approved PCAOB Releases and Staff Guidance)"
PC Part II	Deletion of <i>List of Selected Final PCAOB Auditing Rules and Standards</i> to reflect the issuance of the new paperback publication "PCAOB Standards and Related Rules (Including Select SEC-Approved PCAOB Releases and Staff Guidance)"
PC Part III	Deletion of <i>List of AICPA Conforming and Other Changes Made After April 16, 2003</i> to reflect the issuance of the new paperback publication "PCAOB Standards and Related Rules (Including Select SEC-Approved PCAOB Releases and Staff Guidance)"
PC Part IV	Deletion of <i>Selected Final PCAOB Auditing Rules and Standards Approved by the Securities and Exchange Commission</i> to reflect the issuance of the new paperback publication "PCAOB Standards and Related Rules (Including Select SEC-Approved PCAOB Releases and Staff Guidance)"
AU 9508.85–.88	Addition of Auditing Interpretation No. 17 of SAS No. 58, <i>Reports on Audited Financial Statements</i> , titled "Clarification in the Audit Report of the Extent of Testing of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards"
AU 9508.89–.92	Addition of Auditing Interpretation No. 18 of SAS No. 58, titled "Reference to PCAOB Standards in an Audit Report on a Nonissuer"
AU 9623.60–[.81]	Revision of Auditing Interpretation No. 12 of SAS No. 62, <i>Special Reports</i> , titled "Evaluation of the Appropriateness of Informative Disclosures in Insurance Enterprises' Financial Statements Prepared on a Statutory Basis"
AU 9623.90–.95	Revision of Auditing Interpretation No. 14 of SAS No. 62, formerly titled "Evaluating the Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements Prepared on the Cash, Modified Cash, or Income Tax Basis of Accounting," now titled "Evaluating the Adequacy of Disclosure and Presentation in Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA)"

<u>Section</u>	<u>Change</u>
AU 9623.96–.98	Addition of Auditing Interpretation No. 15 of SAS No. 62, titled “Auditor Reports on Regulatory Accounting or Presentation When the Regulated Entity Distributes the Financial Statements to Parties Other Than the Regulatory Agency Either Voluntarily or Upon Specific Request”
AU 9625.01–.09	Addition of Auditing Interpretation No. 1 of SAS No. 50, <i>Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles</i> , titled “Requirement to Consult With the Continuing Accountant”
AU Appendix A	Revision of AU Appendix A, <i>Historical Background</i> , as revised by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff
AU Appendix B	Revision of AU Appendix B, <i>Analysis of International Standards on Auditing</i> , as revised by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff
AU Appendix C	Deletion of AU Appendix C, <i>Cross-Reference Table for Auditing Interpretations</i>
AU Appendix F	Revision of AU Appendix F, <i>Other Auditing Publications</i> , as revised by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff
PC 110	Deletion of PCAOB Release No. 2003-006, <i>Establishment of Interim Professional Auditing Standards</i> , to reflect the issuance of the new paperback publication “PCAOB Standards and Related Rules (Including Select SEC-Approved PCAOB Releases and Staff Guidance)”
PC 120	Deletion of PCAOB Release No. 2003-009, <i>Compliance With Auditing and Related Professional Practice Standards—Advisory Groups</i> , to reflect the issuance of the new paperback publication “PCAOB Standards and Related Rules (Including Select SEC-Approved PCAOB Releases and Staff Guidance)”
AT 9101.56–.58	Addition of Attest Engagements Interpretation No. 6 of chapter 1, “Attest Engagements,” of SSAE No. 10, <i>Attestation Standards: Revision and Recodification</i> , titled “Reporting on Attestation Engagements Performed in Accordance With Government Auditing Standards”

In addition:

- Conforming and editorial changes have been made throughout the literature to reflect the issuance of Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services No. 10, *Performance of Review Engagements*;
- Designations within the literature to reflect generally accepted auditing standards modified by the AICPA after April 16, 2003 have been deleted to reflect the issuance of the new paperback publication “PCAOB Standards and Related Rules (Including Select SEC-Approved PCAOB Releases and Staff Guidance)”

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Section	Page
... How to Use This Volume	1
... Applicability of AICPA Professional Standards and PCAOB Standards	5
... Cross-References to SASs	13
U.S. AUDITING—AICPA	
AU 100 Statements on Auditing Standards—Introduction	33
110—Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor	
150—Generally Accepted Auditing Standards	
161—The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards	
AU 200 The General Standards	45
201—Nature of the General Standards	
210—Training and Proficiency of the Independent Auditor	
220—Independence	
230—Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work	
AU 300 The Standards of Field Work	57
310—Appointment of the Independent Auditor	
311—Planning and Supervision	
9311—Planning and Supervision: Auditing Interpretations of Section 311	
312—Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit	
9312—Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit: Auditing Interpretations of Section 312	
313—Substantive Tests Prior to the Balance-Sheet Date	
315—Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors	
316—Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit	
317—Illegal Acts by Clients	
9317—Illegal Acts by Clients: Auditing Interpretations of Section 317	
319—Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit	
322—The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements	
324—Service Organizations	

AU 300	The Standards of Field Work—continued	
	9324— Service Organizations: Auditing Interpretations of Section 324	
	325— Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit	
	9325— Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit: Auditing Interpretations of Section 325	
	326— Evidential Matter	
	9326— Evidential Matter: Auditing Interpretations of Section 326	
	328— Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures	
	329— Analytical Procedures	
	330— The Confirmation Process	
	331— Inventories	
	332— Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities	
	333— Management Representations	
	9333— Management Representations: Auditing Interpretations of Section 333	
	334— Related Parties	
	9334— Related Parties: Auditing Interpretations of Section 334	
	336— Using the Work of a Specialist	
	9336— Using the Work of a Specialist: Auditing Interpretations of Section 336	
	337— Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments	
	9337— Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments: Auditing Interpretations of Section 337	
	339— Audit Documentation	
	9339— Audit Documentation: Auditing Interpretations of Section 339	
	341— The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern	
	9341— The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern: Auditing Interpretations of Section 341	
	342— Auditing Accounting Estimates	
	9342— Auditing Accounting Estimates: Auditing Interpretations of Section 342	
	350— Audit Sampling	
	9350— Audit Sampling: Auditing Interpretations of Section 350	
	380— Communication With Audit Committees	

Section

AU 300	The Standards of Field Work—continued	
	9380—Communication With Audit Committees: Auditing Interpretations of Section 380	
	390—Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Date	
AU 400	The First, Second, and Third Standards of Reporting	471
	410—Adherence to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles	
	9410—Adherence to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles: Auditing Interpretations of Section 410	
	411—The Meaning of <i>Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i>	
	9411—The Meaning of <i>Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i> : Auditing Interpretations of Section 411	
	420—Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles	
	9420—Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles: Auditing Interpretations of Section 420	
	431—Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements	
	435—Segment Information [Rescinded by the Auditing Standards Board; see section 9326.28–.41]	
AU 500	The Fourth Standard of Reporting	507
	504—Association With Financial Statements	
	9504—Association With Financial Statements: Auditing Interpretations of Section 504	
	508—Reports on Audited Financial Statements	
	9508—Reports on Audited Financial Statements: Auditing Interpretations of Section 508	
	530—Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report	
	532—Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report	
	534—Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries	
	9534—Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries: Auditing Interpretations of Section 534	
	543—Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors	
	9543—Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors: Auditing Interpretations of Section 543	
	544—Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles	
	550—Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements	

AU 500	The Fourth Standard of Reporting—continued	
	9550— Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements: Auditing Interpretations of Section 550	
	551— Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents	
	552— Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data	
	558— Required Supplementary Information	
	9558— Required Supplementary Information: Auditing Interpretations of Section 558	
	560— Subsequent Events	
	561— Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor’s Report	
	9561— Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor’s Report: Auditing Interpretations of Section 561	
AU 600	Other Types of Reports.	639
	622— Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement [Withdrawn by SAS 93; see AT section 201]	
	9622— Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement: Auditing Interpretations of Section 622 [Withdrawn by SAS 93; see AT section 201]	
	623— Special Reports	
	9623— Special Reports: Auditing Interpretations of Section 623	
	625— Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles	
	9625— Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles: Auditing Interpretations of Section 625	
	634— Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties	
	9634— Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties: Auditing Interpretations of Section 634	
	9642— Reporting on Internal Accounting Control: Auditing Interpretations of SAS No. 30	
AU 700	Special Topics	767
	711— Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes	
	9711— Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes: Auditing Interpretations of Section 711	
	722— Interim Financial Information	

Table of Contents

xi

<i>Section</i>	<i>Page</i>
AU 800 Compliance Auditing	811
801— Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance	
AU 900 Special Reports of the Committee on Auditing Procedure	821
901— Public Warehouses—Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held	
AU Appendixes	831
AU Topical Index	869

ATTESTATION ENGAGEMENTS

AT Attestation Engagements—Contents	929
AT Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements—Introduction	981
AT Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements	983
101— Attest Engagements	
9101— Attest Engagements: Attest Engagements Interpretations of Section 101	
201— Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements	
301— Financial Forecasts and Projections	
401— Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information	
501— Reporting on an Entity’s Internal Control Over Financial Reporting	
9501— Reporting on an Entity’s Internal Control Over Financial Reporting: Attest Engagements Interpretations of Section 501	
601— Compliance Attestation	
701— Management’s Discussion and Analysis	
AT Topical Index	1169

HOW TO USE THIS VOLUME

Scope of the Volume ...

This volume, which is a reprint of the auditing part of the looseleaf edition of *AICPA Professional Standards*, includes Statements on Auditing Standards Nos. 1 through 101 and Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements Nos. 1 through 12, issued by the Auditing Standards Board, Accounting and Review Services Committee, and the Consulting Services Executive Committee, and Auditing Interpretations and Attest Engagements Interpretations issued by the AICPA staff.

How This Volume Is Arranged ...

The contents of this volume are arranged as follows:

Applicability of AICPA Professional Standards and PCAOB Standards

Cross-References to SASs

Statements on Auditing Standards and related Auditing Interpretations

AU § 100—Introduction

AU § 200—The General Standards

AU § 300—The Standards of Field Work

AU § 400—The First, Second, and Third Standards of Reporting

AU § 500—The Fourth Standard of Reporting

AU § 600—Other Types of Reports

AU § 700—Special Topics

AU § 800—Compliance Auditing

AU § 900—Special Reports of the Committee on Auditing Procedure

Appendixes

Topical Index

Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements and related Attest Engagements Interpretations

AT § 101—Attest Engagements

AT § 201—Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements

AT § 301—Financial Forecasts and Projections

AT § 401—Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information

AT § 501—Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

AT § 601—Compliance Attestation

AT § 701—Management's Discussion and Analysis

Topical Index

How to Use This Volume ...

The arrangement of material in this volume is indicated in the general table of contents at the front of the volume. There is a detailed table of contents covering the material within each major division.

The Applicability of AICPA Professional Standards and PCAOB Standards section consists of one part as follows:

Part I is a full-length narrative that provides guidance about Standards applicable to nonissuers and Standards applicable to issuers. Information about the PCAOB's Interim Standards is included, as well as information about major differences between GAAS and PCAOB Standards.

The Cross-References to SASs section consists of three parts as follows:

Part I is a list of Statements on Auditing Procedure Nos. 1–54, Statements on Auditing Standards Nos. 1–101 and Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements Nos. 1–12.

Part II provides a list of sources of sections in the current text.

Part III is a list of sections in Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1, *Codification of Auditing Standards and Procedures*.

The major divisions are divided into sections, each with its own section number. Each paragraph within a section is decimally numbered. For example, AU section 210.04 refers to the fourth paragraph of section 210, *Training and Proficiency of the Independent Auditor*.

Auditing Interpretations are numbered in the 9000 series with the last three digits indicating the section to which the Interpretation relates. Interpretations immediately follow their corresponding section. For example, Interpretations related to section 311 are numbered 9311 which directly follows section 311.

There are five appendixes as follows:

Appendix A provides the historical background for the present Statements on Auditing Standards.

Appendix B provides an analysis of International Standards on Auditing to AICPA Statements on Auditing Standards.

Appendix C is reserved.

Appendix D provides a list of AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides and Statements of Position.

Appendix E provides a schedule of changes in Statements on Auditing Standards since the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1, *Codification of Auditing Standards and Procedures, Nos. 33 through 54*.

Appendix F provides a list of other auditing publications published by the AICPA as of January 1, 2005, that have been reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and are therefore presumed to be appropriate under GAAS as defined in section 150, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*.

Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements and Attest Engagements Interpretations appear with the prefix AT in their section numbers. Attest Engagements Interpretations are numbered in the 9000 series with the last three digits indicating the section to which the Interpretation relates. Interpretations immediately follow their corresponding section. For example, Interpretations relating to section 101 are numbered 9101 which directly follows section 101.

The AU topical index covers the Statements on Auditing Standards and Auditing Interpretations. The AT topical index covers the Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements and Attest Engagements Interpretations.

The topical indexes use the key word method to facilitate reference to the pronouncements. The indexes are arranged alphabetically by topic with references to major division, section and paragraph numbers.

PC

APPLICABILITY OF AICPA PROFESSIONAL
STANDARDS AND PCAOB STANDARDS

TABLE OF CONTENTS		<i>Page</i>
Part I	Applicability of AICPA Professional Standards and Public Company Accounting Oversight Board Standards	7

1

Part I

Applicability of AICPA Professional Standards and Public Company Accounting Oversight Board Standards

Background

As a result of the passage of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (“Act”), auditing and related professional practice standards to be used in the performance of and reporting on audits of the financial statements of public companies are established by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (“PCAOB”).

The term “public companies,” as used above, actually encompasses more entities than just public companies. To state the authority of the PCAOB more precisely—the Act authorizes the PCAOB to establish auditing and related attestation, quality control, ethics, and independence standards to be used by registered public accounting firms in the preparation and issuance of audit reports for entities subject to the Act or the rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC).

Accordingly, public accounting firms registered with the PCAOB are required to adhere to all PCAOB standards in the audits of “issuers,” as defined by the Act, and other entities when prescribed by the rules of the SEC (hereinafter collectively referred to as “issuers”).

For audits of entities not subject to the Act or the rules of the SEC (hereinafter referred to as “*nonissuers*”), the preparation and issuance of audit reports must be conducted in accordance with the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct and the standards promulgated by the AICPA Auditing Standards Board (“ASB”). Audits of nonissuers remain governed by generally accepted auditing standards (“GAAS”) and Statements on Quality Control Standards as issued by the ASB.

Who Is an Issuer?

The term “issuer” means an issuer (as defined in section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c)), the securities of which are registered under section 12 of that Act (15 U.S.C. 78l), or that is required to file reports under section 15(d) (15 U.S.C. 78o(d)), or that files or has filed a registration statement that has not yet become effective under the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), and that it has not withdrawn.

AICPA Standards and PCAOB Standards Included in This Publication

As the AICPA and the PCAOB move forward in establishing professional standards, this publication will present both AICPA and PCAOB standards. Moreover, as differences between AICPA and PCAOB standards emerge, this publication will provide an integration of both sets of standards in order to offer practitioners a seamless source of professional standards applicable to non-issuers and those applicable to issuers.

Standards Applicable to the Audits of *Nonissuers*

With the formation of the PCAOB, the ASB was reconstituted and its jurisdiction amended to recognize the ASB as a body with the authority to promulgate auditing, attestation and quality control standards relating to the preparation and issuance of audit reports for nonissuers.

Failure to follow ASB standards in the audit of a nonissuer would be considered a violation of Rule 201, *General Standards* [ET section 201.01], and/or Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* [ET section 202.01], of the AICPA's *Code of Professional Conduct* ("AICPA Code").

As a caution to readers, pursuant to SAS No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards* [AU section 150], interpretative publications are recommendations on the application of SASs in specific circumstances, including engagements for entities in specialized industries. Interpretative Publications, which include auditing interpretations, auditing guidance in Audit and Accounting Guides ("Guides"), and auditing guidance found in Statements of Position ("SOPs"), are issued under the authority of the ASB. The auditor should identify Interpretative Publications applicable to his or her audit. If the auditor does not apply the auditing guidance included in an applicable Interpretative Publication, the auditor should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the SAS provisions addressed by such auditing guidance.

The ASB will continue to issue SASs and Interpretative Publications that relate to audits of nonissuers and auditors should be alert to those issuances.

Standards Applicable to the Audits of *Issuers*

Rule 3100 issued by the PCAOB (see PCAOB Release No. 2003-009) generally requires all registered public accounting firms to adhere to the PCAOB's standards in connection with the preparation or issuance of any audit report on the financial statements of an issuer. Rule 3100 requires registered public accounting firms and their associated persons to comply with all *applicable* standards. Accordingly, if the PCAOB's standards do not apply to an engagement or other activity of the firm, Rule 3100, by its own terms, does not apply to that engagement or activity.

Compliance With Standards Applicable to the Audits of Issuers

Any registered public accounting firm or person associated with such a firm that fails to adhere to applicable PCAOB standards in connection with an audit of the financial statements of an issuer may be the subject of a PCAOB disciplinary proceeding in accordance with Section 105 of the Act. In addition, the Act provides that any violation of the PCAOB's rules is to be treated for all purposes in the same manner as a violation of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. 78a et seq., or the rules and regulations issued thereunder, and any person violating the PCAOB's rules "shall be subject to the same penalties, and to the same extent, as for a violation of [the Exchange] Act or such rules or regulations."

Rules 201 [ET section 201.01] and 202 [ET section 202.01] of the AICPA Code require a member who performs auditing and other professional services to comply with standards promulgated by bodies designated by AICPA Council. AICPA Council has designated the PCAOB as a body with the authority to promulgate auditing and related attestation standards, quality control, ethics, independence and other standards relating to the preparation and issuance of audit reports for issuers.

The AICPA's Professional Ethics Division is able to hold an AICPA member who performs audits of the financial statements of issuers accountable under Rules 201 [ET section 201.01] and 202 [ET section 202.01] of the AICPA Code for compliance with PCAOB's auditing and related professional practice standards when performing such audits.

PCAOB's Adoption of Interim Standards

The PCAOB is subject to SEC oversight. As such, rules and standards issued by the PCAOB must be approved by the SEC before they become effective.

The PCAOB has adopted interim standards through rules contained in PCAOB Release No. 2003-006. The SEC granted approval to these rules. Essentially, the interim standards that the PCAOB adopted were the generally accepted auditing standards, attestation standards, quality control standards issued by the ASB, certain former AICPA SEC Practice Section (SECPS) membership requirements, certain AICPA ethics and independence rules, and Independence Standards Board rules as they existed on April 16, 2003. These interim standards will remain in effect while the PCAOB conducts a review of standards applicable to registered public accounting firms. Based on this review, the PCAOB may modify, repeal, replace or adopt, in part or in whole, the interim standards. As stated below, the PCAOB's interim independence standards are not to be interpreted to supercede the SEC's independence requirements.

The PCAOB's interim standards (known as the Interim Professional Auditing Standards) consist of five rules (Rules 3200T, 3300T, 3400T, 3500T, and 3600T), which are described below.

Rule 3200T—Interim Auditing Standards, as Amended by PCAOB Release 2003-026

Rule 3200T provides that, in connection with the preparation or issuance of any audit report on the financial statements of an issuer, a registered public accounting firm shall comply with generally accepted auditing standards as described in the ASB's SAS No. 95, as in existence on April 16, 2003, to the extent not superseded or amended by the PCAOB.

Rule 3300T—Interim Attestation Standards, as Amended by PCAOB Release 2003-026

Rule 3300T governs the conduct of engagements that (i) are described in the ASB's Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAE) No. 10, *Attestation Standards: Revision and Recodification* [AT sections 101–701], and (ii) relate to the preparation or issuance of audit reports for issuers. Registered public accounting firms involved in such engagements are required to comply with the ASB's SSAEs, and related interpretations and AICPA Statements of Position, as in existence on April 16, 2003, to the extent not superseded or amended by the PCAOB.

Rule 3400T—Interim Quality Control Standards, as Amended by PCAOB Release 2003-026

Rule 3400T sets forth minimum quality control standards with which registered public accounting firms must comply, in order to ensure that registered public accounting firms, and their personnel, comply with applicable accounting

and auditing (and other professional) standards. Through Rule 3400T, the PCAOB has provisionally designated the Statements on Quality Control Standards proposed and issued by the ASB and certain former AICPA SECPS¹ membership requirements, as they existed, and as they applied to SECPS members, on April 16, 2003, to the extent not superseded or amended by the PCAOB, as the PCAOB's Interim Quality Control Standards.

Because the PCAOB intends the Interim Quality Control Standards to preserve existing standards as they applied on April 16, 2003 consistent with Section 103(a)(3) of the Act, those Interim Quality Control Standards adapted from the former AICPA SECPS requirements apply only to those firms that were members of the AICPA's SECPS on April 16, 2003.

Those requirements address the following matters:

- Continuing professional education of audit firm personnel
- Concurring partner review of the audit report and the financial statements of SEC registrants
- Written communication statement to all professional personnel of firm policies and procedures on the recommendation and approval of accounting principles, present and potential client relationships, and the types of services provided
- Notification to the SEC of resignations and dismissals from audit engagements for SEC registrants
- Audit firm obligations with respect to the policies and procedures of correspondent firms and of other members of international firms or international associations of firms
- Policies and procedures to comply with applicable independence requirements

Rule 3500T—Interim Ethics Standards, as Amended by PCAOB Release 2003-026

Rule 3500T sets forth ethical standards for registered public accounting firms and their personnel. Through Rule 3500T, the PCAOB has provisionally designated Rule 102, *Integrity and Objectivity*, and its Interpretations [ET section 102.01 and 191] of the AICPA Code, and interpretations and rulings thereunder, as they existed on April 16, 2003, to the extent not superseded or amended by the PCAOB, as the PCAOB's Interim Ethics Standards.

Rule 3600T—Interim Independence Standards, as Amended by PCAOB Release 2003-026

Rule 3600T sets forth independence standards for registered public accounting firms and their personnel. Through Rule 3600T, the PCAOB has provisionally designated Rule 101, *Independence*, and its Interpretations [ET section 101.01 and 191] of the AICPA Code, and Interpretations and rulings thereunder, as they existed on April 16, 2003, to the extent not superseded or amended by the PCAOB, and Standards Nos. 1, 2, and 3, and Interpretations 99-1, 00-1, and 00-2 of the Independence Standards Board ("ISB"), to the extent not superseded or amended by the PCAOB, as the PCAOB's Interim Independence Standards.

¹ Effective January 1, 2004, the AICPA Center for Public Company Audit Firms restructures and replaces the SECPS.

In addition, the PCAOB requires compliance with the SEC's independence rules. The PCAOB's Interim Independence Standards are not to be interpreted to supersede the SEC's independence requirements. Therefore, to the extent that a provision of the SEC's rule or policy is more restrictive—or less restrictive—than the PCAOB's Interim Independence Standards, a registered public accounting firm must comply with the more restrictive requirement.

Major Existing Differences Between AICPA Standards and PCAOB Standards

As this publication was being finalized, the major differences between generally accepted auditing standards and final PCAOB standards approved by the SEC are as follows:

- **Audit of Internal Control.** In connection with the requirement of Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act that an issuer's independent auditor attest to and report on management's assessment of the effectiveness of internal control, PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 2, *An Audit of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting Performed in Conjunction With an Audit of Financial Statements*, establishes requirements and provides direction that apply when an auditor is engaged to audit the internal control over financial reporting and to perform that audit in conjunction with the audit of an issuer's financial statements.
- **References in Auditor's Reports.** PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 1 requires registered public accounting firms to include in their reports on engagements performed pursuant to the PCAOB's auditing and related professional practice standards, including audits and reviews of financial statements, a reference to the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States).
- **Concurring Partner.** Rule 3400T requires the establishment of policies and procedures for a concurring review (generally the SECPS membership rule).²
- **Communication of Firm Policy.** Rule 3400T requires registered firms to communicate through a written statement to all professional firm personnel the broad principles that influence the firm's quality control and operating policies and procedures on, at a minimum, matters that relate to the recommendation and approval of accounting principles, present and potential client relationships, and the types of services provided, and inform professional firm personnel periodically that compliance with those principles is mandatory (generally the SECPS membership rule).
- **Affiliated Firms.** Rule 3400T requires registered firms that are part of an international association to seek adoption of policies and procedures by the international organization or individual foreign associated firms consistent with PCAOB standards.
- **Partner Rotation.** Rule 3600T requires compliance with the SEC's independence rules which include partner rotation.

² Firms that were not members of the AICPA's SECPS as of April 16, 2003 do not have to comply with this requirement.

- **Continuing Professional Education (CPE) Requirements.** Rule 3400T requires registered accounting firms to ensure that all of their professionals participate in at least 20 hours of qualifying CPE every year (generally the SECPS membership rule).
- **Independence Matters.** Rule 3600T requires compliance with Standards Nos. 1, 2, and 3, and Interpretations 99-1, 00-1, and 00-2 of the Independence Standards Board. Also, to the extent that a provision of the SEC's independence rules or policies are more restrictive—or less restrictive—than the PCAOB's interim independence standards, a registered public accounting firm shall comply with the more restrictive requirement.

PCAOB Standards Pending

As this publication was being finalized, certain PCAOB standards and rules have been issued as final pronouncements, but are awaiting SEC approval. (See the table in Part II for a listing of those items.) As such, these standards and rules are not yet effective. If approved by the SEC as currently written, these pending standards and rules would result in additional differences between generally accepted auditing standards and the standards of the PCAOB. Readers should be alert to the final approval of these standards.

Standards Applicable if a Nonissuer's Financial Statements Are Audited in Accordance With PCAOB Standards

The Audit Issues Task Force (a task force of the ASB) has issued Auditing Interpretation No. 18, "Reference to PCAOB Standards in an Audit Report on a Nonissuer," of SAS No. 58, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* [AU section 9508.89–92], that addresses the question of which standards are applicable and how should the auditor report if an auditor is engaged to perform an audit of a nonissuer in accordance with GAAS and PCAOB auditing standards. The Interpretation states that AU section 508 requires the auditor to indicate in the auditor's report that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards. However, an auditor may indicate that the audit was also conducted in accordance with another set of auditing standards. If the auditor conducted the audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and the auditing standards of the PCAOB, the auditor may indicate in the auditor's report that the audit was conducted in accordance with both sets of standards. The Interpretation provides example report language.

AICPA Standards and the Audits of Issuers

If a registered public accounting firm performs an audit or review of *an issuer* in accordance with PCAOB standards, the auditor does not need to follow standards promulgated by the ASB. However, AICPA members are required to comply with the AICPA Code in addition to the ethics and independence rules and standards required by the SEC and PCAOB.

AU

CROSS-REFERENCES TO SASs

TABLE OF CONTENTS

		Page
Part I	List of Statements on Auditing Procedure Nos. 1–54, Statements on Auditing Standards, and Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements Issued to Date	15
Part II	Sources of Sections in Current Text	27
Part III	List of Sections in Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1, <i>Codification of Auditing Standards and Procedures</i>	31



Part I

List of Statements on Auditing Procedure Nos. 1-54, Statements on Auditing Standards, and Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements Issued to Date

Statements on Auditing Procedure

<i>No.</i>	<i>Date Issued</i>	<i>Title</i>
1	Oct. 1939	Extensions of Auditing Procedure
2	Dec. 1939	The Auditor's Opinion on the Basis of a Restricted Examination
3	Feb. 1940	Inventories and Receivables of Department Stores, Instalment Houses, Chain Stores, and Other Retailers
4	Mar. 1941	Clients' Written Representations Regarding Inventories, Liabilities, and Other Matters
5	Feb. 1941	The Revised SEC Rule on "Accountants' Certificates"
6	Mar. 1941	The Revised SEC Rule on "Accountants' Certificates"
7	Mar. 1941	Contingent Liability Under Policies With Mutual Insurance Companies
8	Sept. 1941	Interim Financial Statements and the Auditor's Report Thereon
9	Dec. 1941	Accountants' Reports on Examinations of Securities and Similar Investments Under the Investment Company Act
10	June 1942	Auditing Under Wartime Conditions
11	Sept. 1942	The Auditor's Opinion on the Basis of a Restricted Examination (No. 2)
12	Oct. 1942	Amendment to Extensions of Auditing Procedure
13	Dec. 1942	The Auditor's Opinion on the Basis of a Restricted Examination (No. 3) Face-Amount Certificate Companies
14	Dec. 1942	Confirmation of Public Utility Accounts Receivable
15	Dec. 1942	Disclosure of the Effect of Wartime Uncertainties on Financial Statements
16	Dec. 1942	Case Studies on Inventories
17	Dec. 1942	Physical Inventories in Wartime
18	Jan. 1943	Confirmation of Receivables From the Government
19	Nov. 1943	Confirmation of Receivables (Positive and Negative Methods)
20	Dec. 1943	Termination of Fixed Price Supply Contracts
21	July 1944	Wartime Government Regulations

Statements on Auditing Procedure—continued

<i>No.</i>	<i>Date Issued</i>	<i>Title</i>
22	May 1945	References to the Independent Accountant in Securities Registrations
23	Dec. 1949	Clarification of Accountant's Report When Opinion is Omitted (Revised)
24	Oct. 1948	Revision in Short-Form Accountant's Report or Certificate
25	Oct. 1954	Events Subsequent to the Date of Financial Statements
26	April 1956	Reporting on Use of "Other Procedures"
27	July 1957	Long-Form Reports
28	Oct. 1957	Special Reports
29	Oct. 1958	Scope of the Independent Auditor's Review of Internal Control
30	Sept. 1960	Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor in the Examination of Financial Statements
31	Oct. 1961	Consistency
32	Sept. 1962	Qualifications and Disclaimers
33	Dec. 1963	Auditing Standards and Procedures (a codification)
34	Sept. 1965	Long-Term Investments
35	Nov. 1965	Letters for Underwriters
36	Aug. 1966	Revision of "Extensions of Auditing Procedure" Relating to Inventories
37	Sept. 1966	Special Report: Public Warehouses Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held
38	Sept. 1967	Unaudited Financial Statements
39	Sept. 1967	Working Papers
40	Oct. 1968	Reports Following a Pooling of Interests
41	Oct. 1969	Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report
42	Jan. 1970	Reporting When a Certified Public Accountant Is Not Independent
43	Sept. 1970	Confirmation of Receivables and Observation of Inventories
44	April 1971	Reports Following a Pooling of Interests
45	July 1971	Using the Work and Reports of Other Auditors
46	July 1971	Piecemeal Opinions
47	Sept. 1971	Subsequent Events
48	Oct. 1971	Letters for Underwriters
49	Nov. 1971	Reports on Internal Control
50	Nov. 1971	Reporting on the Statement of Changes in Financial Position
51	July 1972	Long-Term Investments
52	Oct. 1972	Reports on Internal Control Based on Criteria Established by Governmental Agencies
53	Nov. 1972	Reporting on Consistency and Accounting Changes
54	Nov. 1972	The Auditor's Study and Evaluation of Internal Control

Statements on Auditing Standards*

<i>No.</i>	<i>Date Issued</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Section</i>
1	Nov. 1972	Codification of Auditing Standards and Procedures	See Part III¹
2	Oct. 1974	Reports on Audited Financial Statements [Superseded by SAS 58]	
3	Dec. 1974	The Effects of EDP on the Auditor's Study and Evaluation of Internal Control [Superseded by SAS 48]	
4	Dec. 1974	Quality Control Considerations for a Firm of Independent Auditors [Superseded by SAS 25]	
5	July 1975	The Meaning of "Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles" in the Independent Auditor's Report [Superseded by SAS 69]	
6	July 1975	Related Party Transactions [Superseded by SAS 45]	
7	Oct. 1975	Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors [Superseded by SAS 84]	
8	Dec. 1975	Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements	550
9	Dec. 1975	The Effect of an Internal Audit Function on the Scope of the Independent Auditor's Examination [Superseded by SAS 65]	
10	Dec. 1975	Limited Review of Interim Financial Information [Superseded by SAS 24]	
11	Dec. 1975	Using the Work of a Specialist [Superseded by SAS 73]	
12	Jan. 1976	Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments	337
13	May 1976	Reports on a Limited Review of Interim Financial Information [Superseded by SAS 24]	
14	Dec. 1976	Special Reports [Superseded by SAS 62]	
15	Dec. 1976	Reports on Comparative Financial Statements [Superseded by SAS 58]	
16	Jan. 1977	The Independent Auditor's Responsibility for the Detection of Errors or Irregularities [Superseded by SAS 53]	

* Pronouncements in effect are indicated in **boldface** type.

¹ Portions of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1 have been superseded by subsequent pronouncements.

Statements on Auditing Standards—continued

No.	Date Issued	Title	Section
17	Jan. 1977	Illegal Acts by Clients [Superseded by SAS 54]	
18	May 1977	Unaudited Replacement Cost Information [Withdrawn by the Auditing Standards Board]	
19	June 1977	Client Representations [Superseded by SAS 85]	
20	Aug. 1977	Required Communication of Material Weaknesses in Internal Accounting Control [Superseded by SAS 60]	
21	Dec. 1977	Segment Information [Rescinded by the Auditing Standards Board] ²	
22	Mar. 1978	Planning and Supervision	311
23	Oct. 1978	Analytical Review Procedures [Superseded by SAS 56]	
24	Mar. 1979	Review of Interim Financial Information [Superseded by SAS 36]	
25	Nov. 1979	The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards	161
26	Nov. 1979	Association With Financial Statements	504
27	Dec. 1979	Supplementary Information Required by the Financial Accounting Standards Board [Superseded by SAS 52]	
28	June 1980	Supplementary Information on the Effects of Changing Prices [Withdrawn by SAS 52]	
29	July 1980	Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents . . .	551
30	July 1980	Reporting on Internal Accounting Control [Superseded by SSAE 2]	
31	Aug. 1980	Evidential Matter	326
32	Oct. 1980	Adequacy of Disclosure of Financial Statements	431
33	Oct. 1980	Supplementary Oil and Gas Reserve Information [Superseded by SAS 45]	

² The Auditing Standards Board (ASB) has rescinded Statement on Auditing Standards No. 21, effective for audits of financial statements to which Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. 131, *Disclosures about Segments of an Enterprise and Related Information*, has been applied. FASB Statement No. 131 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 1997, with earlier application encouraged. The Audit Issues Task Force of the ASB has issued an interpretation of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 31, *Evidential Matter*, entitled “Applying Auditing Procedures to Segment Disclosures in Financial Statements,” to provide guidance for audits of financial statements of entities that have implemented FASB Statement No. 131. The auditing interpretation appears in section 9326, *Evidential Matter: Auditing Interpretations of Section 326*, paragraphs .28 through .41.

Statements on Auditing Standards—continued

<i>No.</i>	<i>Date Issued</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Section</i>
34	Mar. 1981	The Auditor's Considerations When a Question Arises About an Entity's Continued Existence [Superseded by SAS 59]	
35	April 1981	Special Reports—Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement [Superseded by SAS 75]	
36	April 1981	Review of Interim Financial Information [Superseded by SAS 71]	
37	April 1981	Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes	711
38	April 1981	Letters for Underwriters [Superseded by SAS 49]	
39	June 1981	Audit Sampling	350
40	Feb. 1982	Supplementary Mineral Reserve Information [Superseded by SAS 52]	
41	April 1982	Working Papers [Superseded by SAS 96]	
42	Sept. 1982	Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data	552
43	Aug. 1982	Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards³	
44	Dec. 1982	Special-Purpose Reports on Internal Accounting Control at Service Organizations [Superseded by SAS 70]	
45	Aug. 1983	Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—1983⁴	
46	Sept. 1983	Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Date	390
47	Dec. 1983	Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit	312

³ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43 has been integrated within sections 150.06 (superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 95), 320.50–.56 (superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 55), 320.59–.62 (superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 55), 331.14, 350.47 (formerly paragraph .46, renumbered to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 53, as superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, as superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99), 420[.18] (formerly paragraph .15, renumbered and deleted to reflect the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, Nos. 53–62, and No. 88), 901.01, 901.24, and 901.28.

⁴ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 45 has created new sections 313, *Substantive Tests Prior to the Balance Sheet Date*; 334, *Related Parties*; and 557, *Supplementary Oil and Gas Reserve Information* (withdrawn by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 52).

Statements on Auditing Standards—continued

<i>No.</i>	<i>Date Issued</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Section</i>
48	July 1984	The Effects of Computer Processing on the Audit of Financial Statements⁵	
49	Sept. 1984	Letters for Underwriters [Superseded by SAS 72]	
50	July 1986	Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles	625
51	July 1986	Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries	534
52	April 1988	Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—1987⁶	
53	April 1988	The Auditor's Responsibility to Detect and Report Errors and Irregularities [Superseded by SAS 82]	
54	April 1988	Illegal Acts by Clients	317
55	April 1988	Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit	319
56	April 1988	Analytical Procedures	329
57	April 1988	Auditing Accounting Estimates	342
58	April 1988	Reports on Audited Financial Statements	508
59	April 1988	The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern	341
60	April 1988	Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit	325
61	April 1988	Communication With Audit Committees	380
62	April 1989	Special Reports	623
63	April 1989	Compliance Auditing Applicable to Governmental Entities and Other Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance [Superseded by SAS 68]	

⁵ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48 has been integrated within sections 311.03, 311.09, 311.10, 318.07 (superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 56), 320.33 and 320.34 (superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 55), 320.37 (superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 55), 320.57 and 320.58 (superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 55), 320.65–.68 (superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 55) and 326.12.

⁶ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 52 has been integrated within sections 411.05–.08 (superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 69) and 551.15 and has created a new section 558, *Required Supplementary Information*.

Statements on Auditing Standards—continued

<i>No.</i>	<i>Date Issued</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Section</i>
64	Dec. 1990	Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—1990⁷	
65	April 1991	The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements. . . .	322
66	June 1991	Communication of Matters About Interim Financial Information Filed or to Be Filed With Specified Regulatory Agencies—An Amendment to SAS No. 36, <i>Review of Interim Financial Information</i> [Superseded by SAS 71]	
67	Nov. 1991	The Confirmation Process	330
68	Dec. 1991	Compliance Auditing Applicable to Governmental Entities and Other Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance [Superseded by SAS 74]	
69	Jan. 1992	The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles⁸	411
70	April 1992	Service Organizations⁹	324
71	May 1992	Interim Financial Information [Superseded by SAS 100]	
72	Feb. 1993	Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties.	634
73	July 1994	Using the Work of a Specialist	336
74	Feb. 1995	Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance	801
75	Sept. 1995	Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement [Withdrawn by SAS 93]	
76	Sept. 1995	Amendments to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 72, <i>Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties</i>¹⁰	

⁷ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 64 has been integrated within sections 341.12, 508.74 (formerly paragraph .83, renumbered and amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79), and 543.16.

⁸ Title of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 69 has been amended by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.

⁹ Title of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 70 has been amended by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.

¹⁰ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76 has been integrated within section 634.01, 634.09, 634.10, 634.64, and AT section 300.01 (superseded by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10).

Statements on Auditing Standards—continued

<i>No.</i>	<i>Date Issued</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Section</i>
77	Nov. 1995	Amendments to Statements on Auditing Standards No. 22, Planning and Supervision, No. 59, The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern, and No. 62, Special Reports¹¹	
78	Dec. 1995	Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit: An Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 55¹²	
79	Dec. 1995	Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 58, Reports on Audited Financial Statements¹³	
80	Dec. 1996	Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 31, Evidential Matter¹⁴	
81	Dec. 1996	Auditing Investments [Superseded by SAS 92]	
82	Feb. 1997	Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit [Superseded by SAS 99]	
83	Oct. 1997	Establishing an Understanding With the Client¹⁵	
84	Oct. 1997	Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors	315
85	Nov. 1997	Management Representations	333
86	Mar. 1998	Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 72, Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties¹⁶	

¹¹ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77 has been integrated within sections 311.05, 341.13, 544.02, 544.04, 623.05, and 623.08.

¹² Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78 has been integrated within section 319.

¹³ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79 has been integrated within section 508.11, 508.19, 508.29–32, 508.45–49, 508.61, 508.62, and 508.74–76.

¹⁴ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80 has been integrated within section 326.07, 326.12–14, 326.16–22, and 326.25.

¹⁵ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 83 has been integrated within section 310.05–07.

¹⁶ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86 has been integrated with section 634.20, 634.22, 634.29, 634.33, 634.34, 634.55, 634.57, and 634.64.

Statements on Auditing Standards—continued

<i>No.</i>	<i>Date Issued</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Section</i>
87	Sept. 1998	Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report	532
88	Dec. 1999	Service Organizations and Reporting on Consistency ¹⁷	
89	Dec. 1999	Audit Adjustments ¹⁸	
90	Dec. 1999	Audit Committee Communications ¹⁹	
91	Apr. 2000	Federal GAAP Hierarchy ²⁰	
92	Sept. 2000	Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities	332
93	Oct. 2000	Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—2000 ²¹	
94	May 2001	The Effect of Information Technology on the Auditor's Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit ²²	
95	Dec. 2001	Generally Accepted Auditing Standards	150
96	Jan. 2002	Audit Documentation	339
97	June 2002	Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 50, <i>Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles</i> ²³	
98	Sept. 2002	Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—2002 ²⁴	
99	Oct. 2002	Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit	316
100	Nov. 2002	Interim Financial Information	722
101	Jan. 2003	Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures	328

¹⁷ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88 has been integrated within sections 324.03, 324.06–.10, and 420.07–[11].

¹⁸ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89 has been integrated within sections 310.06, 333.06, 333.16, 380.09, and 380.10.

¹⁹ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90 has been integrated within sections 380.03, 380.11, and 722.25–.27 (superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 100).

²⁰ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91 has been integrated within section 411.14, 411.15, and 411.18.

²¹ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93 has been integrated within sections 315.02, 315.12, 411 (title), 411.01, 508.08, and 622.

²² Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94 has been integrated within section 319.

²³ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97 has been integrated within section 625.01–.07 and 625.09–.11.

²⁴ Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98 has been integrated within sections 150.05, 161 (headnote), 161.02, 161.03, 312.34–.36, 312.38, 312.39, 312.41, 324.57–.61, 9324[.41–.42], 508.65, 530.03–.05, 550.07, 551.12, 551.15, 551.16, 558.02, 558.08–.11, 560.01, and 561.01–.03.

Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements

<i>No.</i>	<i>Date Issued</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Section</i>
1	Mar. 1986	Attestation Standards [Revised and recodified by SSAE 10; see AT sections 101, 301, and 401]	
1	Dec. 1987	Attest Services Related to MAS Engagements [Revised and recodified by SSAE 10; see AT sections 101, 301, and 401]	
1	Oct. 1985	Financial Forecasts and Projections [Revised and recodified by SSAE 10; see AT sections 101, 301, and 401]	
1	Sept. 1988	Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information [Revised and recodified by SSAE 10; see AT sections 101, 301, and 401]	
2	May 1993	Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting [Revised and recodified by SSAE 10; see AT section 501]	
3	Dec. 1993	Compliance Attestation [Revised and recodified by SSAE 10; see AT section 601]	
4	Sept. 1995	Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements [Revised and recodified by SSAE 10; see AT section 201]	
5	Nov. 1995	Amendment to Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 1, <i>Attestation Standards</i> [Revised and recodified by SSAE 10; see AT section 101]	
6	Dec. 1995	Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting: An Amendment to Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 2 [Revised and recodified by SSAE 10; see AT section 501]	
7	Oct. 1997	Establishing an Understanding With the Client [Revised and recodified by SSAE 10; see AT section 101]	
8	Mar. 1998	Management's Discussion and Analysis [Revised and recodified by SSAE 10; see AT section 701]	
9	Jan. 1999	Amendments to Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements Nos. 1, 2, and 3 [Revised and recodified by SSAE 10; see AT sections 101, 501, and 601]	

Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements—continued

<i>No.</i>	<i>Date Issued</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Section</i>
10	Jan. 2001	Attestation Standards: Revision and Recodification²⁵	
11	Jan. 2002	Attest Documentation²⁶	
12	Sept. 2002	Amendment to Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10, <i>Attestation Standards: Revision and Recodification</i>²⁷	

²⁵ Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10 has been integrated within AT sections 101, 201, 301, 401, 501, 601, and 701.

²⁶ Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11 has been integrated within AT sections 101.100–[.108], 201[.27–.30], 301[.17], and 301[.32].

²⁷ Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 12 has been integrated within AT section 101.17 and 101.18.

Part II

Sources of Sections in Current Text

<i>Section</i>	<i>Contents</i>	<i>Source</i>
100	Introduction	
110	Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor.	SAS 1*
150	Generally Accepted Auditing Standards	SAS 95
161	The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards	SAS 25
200	The General Standards	
201	Nature of the General Standards.	SAS 1*
210	Training and Proficiency of the Independent Auditor.	SAS 1*
220	Independence.	SAS 1*
230	Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work	SAS 1*
300	The Standards of Field Work	
310	Appointment of the Independent Auditor	SAS 1*
311	Planning and Supervision	SAS 22
312	Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit.	SAS 47
313	Substantive Tests Prior to the Balance-Sheet Date	SAS 45
315	Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors	SAS 84
316	Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit	SAS 99
317	Illegal Acts by Clients	SAS 54
319	Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit	SAS 55
322	The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements	SAS 65
324	Service Organizations	SAS 70 ¹
325	Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit.	SAS 60

* Portions of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1 have been superseded by subsequent pronouncements. See Part III.

¹ Title of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 70 has been amended by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.

<i>Section</i>	<i>Contents</i>	<i>Source</i>
326	Evidential Matter	SAS 31
328	Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures	SAS 101
329	Analytical Procedures	SAS 56
330	The Confirmation Process	SAS 67
331	Inventories	SAS 1*
332	Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities	SAS 92
333	Management Representations	SAS 85
334	Related Parties	SAS 45
336	Using the Work of a Specialist	SAS 73
337	Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments	SAS 12
339	Audit Documentation	SAS 96
341	The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern	SAS 59
342	Auditing Accounting Estimates	SAS 57
350	Audit Sampling	SAS 39
380	Communications With Audit Committees	SAS 61
390	Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Date	SAS 46
400	The First, Second, and Third Standards of Reporting	
410	Adherence to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles	SAS 1*
411	The Meaning of <i>Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i>	SAS 69 ²
420	Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles	SAS 1*
431	Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements	SAS 32
435	Segment Information	SAS 21 ³

* Portions of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1 have been superseded by subsequent pronouncements. See Part III.

² Title of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 69 has been amended by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.

³ The Auditing Standards Board (ASB) has rescinded Statement on Auditing Standards No. 21, effective for audits of financial statements to which Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. 131, *Disclosures about Segments of an Enterprise and Related Information*, has been applied. FASB Statement No. 131 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 1997, with earlier application encouraged. The Audit Issues Task Force of the ASB has issued an interpretation of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 31 entitled "Applying Auditing Procedures to Segment Disclosures in Financial Statements," to provide guidance for audits of financial statements of entities that have implemented FASB Statement No. 131. The auditing interpretation appears in section 9326, *Evidential Matter: Auditing Interpretations of Section 326*, paragraphs .28 through .41.

<i>Section</i>	<i>Contents</i>	<i>Source</i>
500	The Fourth Standard of Reporting	
504	Association With Financial Statements	SAS 26
508	Reports on Audited Financial Statements	SAS 58
530	Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report	SAS 1*
532	Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report	SAS 87
534	Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries	SAS 51
543	Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors	SAS 1*
544	Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles	SAS 1*
550	Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements	SAS 8
551	Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents	SAS 29
552	Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data	SAS 42
558	Required Supplementary Information	SAS 52
560	Subsequent Events	SAS 1*
561	Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report	SAS 1*
600	Other Types of Reports	
622	Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement	SAS 75 ⁴
623	Special Reports	SAS 62
625	Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles	SAS 50
634	Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties	SAS 72
700	Special Topics	
711	Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes	SAS 37
722	Interim Financial Information	SAS 100

* Portions of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1 have been superseded by subsequent pronouncements. See Part III.

⁴ The ASB has withdrawn Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75 and its auditing interpretation, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after June 30, 2001, in order to consolidate the guidance applicable to agreed-upon procedures engagements in professional standards. For guidance relating to performing and reporting on agreed-upon procedures engagements, practitioners should refer to AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*.

<i>Section</i>	<i>Contents</i>	<i>Source</i>
800	Compliance Auditing	
801	Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance	SAS 74
900	Special Reports of the Committee on Auditing Procedure	
901	Public Warehouses—Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held	SAS 1*

Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements

<i>AT Section</i>	<i>Contents</i>	<i>Source</i>
101	Attest Engagements	SSAE 10
201	Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements	SSAE 10
301	Financial Forecasts and Projections	SSAE 10
401	Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information	SSAE 10
501	Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting	SSAE 10
601	Compliance Attestation	SSAE 10
701	Management's Discussion and Analysis	SSAE 10

* Portions of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1 have been superseded by subsequent pronouncements. See Part III.

Part III

List of Sections in Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1, Codification of Auditing Standards and Procedures^{*}

<i>Section</i>	<i>Title¹</i>
100	<i>Introduction</i>
110	Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor
150	Generally Accepted Auditing Standards [Superseded by SAS 95]
200	<i>The General Standards</i>
201	Nature of the General Standards
210	Training and Proficiency of the Independent Auditor
220	Independence
230	Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work¹
300	<i>The Standards of Field Work</i>
310	Appointment of the Independent Auditor¹
320	The Auditor's Study and Evaluation of Internal Control [Superseded by SAS 55]
320A	Appendix A—Relationship of Statistical Sampling to Generally Accepted Auditing Standards [Superseded by SAS 39]
320B	Appendix B—Precision and Reliability for Statistical Sampling in Auditing [Superseded by SAS 39]
330	Evidential Matter [Superseded by SAS 31]
331	Inventories¹
332	Evidential Matter for Long-Term Investments [Superseded by SAS 81]
338	Working Papers [Superseded by SAS 41]
400	<i>The First, Second and Third Standards of Reporting</i>
410	Adherence to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
420	Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
430	Adequacy of Informative Disclosure [Superseded by SAS 32]
500	<i>The Fourth Standard of Reporting</i>
510	Expression of Opinion in the Auditor's Report [Superseded by SAS 2]

^{*} Pronouncements in effect are indicated in **boldface** type.

¹ Current section titles are listed. Section titles reflect amendments and conforming changes resulting from subsequent pronouncements.

<i>Section</i>	<i>Title¹</i>
511	Unqualified Opinion [Superseded by SAS 2]
512	Qualified Opinion [Superseded by SAS 2]
513	Adverse Opinion [Superseded by SAS 2]
514	Disclaimer of Opinion [Superseded by SAS 2]
515	Piecemeal Opinion [Superseded by SAS 2]
516	Unaudited Financial Statements [Superseded by SAS 26]
517	Reporting When a Certified Public Accountant Is Not Independent [Superseded by SAS 26]
518	Negative Assurance [Superseded by SAS 26]
530	Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report
535	Opinions on Prior Year's Statements [Superseded by SAS 2]
540	Circumstances Which Require a Departure From the Standard Short-Form Report [Superseded by SAS 2]
541	Restrictions Imposed by the Client [Superseded by SAS 2]
542	Other Conditions Which Preclude the Application of Necessary Auditing Procedures [Superseded by SAS 58]
543	Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors¹
544	Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
545	Inadequate Disclosure [Superseded by SAS 58]
546	Reporting on Inconsistency [Superseded by SAS 58]
547	Unusual Uncertainties as to the Effect of Future Developments on Certain Items [Superseded by SAS 2]
560	Subsequent Events
561	Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report
600	<i>Other Types of Reports</i>
610	Long-Form Reports [Superseded by SAS 29]
620	Special Reports [Superseded by SAS 14]
630	Letters for Underwriters [Superseded by SAS 38]
640	Reports on Internal Control [Superseded by SAS 30]
641	Reports on Internal Control Based on Criteria Established by Governmental Agencies [Superseded by SAS 30]
700	<i>Special Topics</i>
710	Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes [Superseded by SAS 37]
900	<i>Special Reports of the Committee on Auditing Procedure</i>
901	Public Warehouses—Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held¹

¹ Current section titles are listed. Section titles reflect amendments and conforming changes resulting from subsequent pronouncements.

AU Section 100

STATEMENTS ON AUDITING STANDARDS — Introduction

Statements on Auditing Standards are issued by the Auditing Standards Board, the senior technical body of the Institute designated to issue pronouncements on auditing matters. Rule 202 of the Institute's Code of Professional Conduct requires adherence to the applicable generally accepted auditing standards promulgated by the Institute. It recognizes Statements on Auditing Standards as interpretations of generally accepted auditing standards and requires that members be prepared to justify departures from such Statements.

Interpretations are issued by the Audit Issues Task Force of the Auditing Standards Board to provide timely guidance on the application of pronouncements of that Board. Interpretations are reviewed by the Auditing Standards Board. An interpretation is not as authoritative as a pronouncement of that Board, but members should be aware that they may have to justify a departure from an interpretation if the quality of their work is questioned.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Section		Paragraph
110	Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor	.01-.10
	Distinction Between Responsibilities of Auditor and Management . . . . .	.02-.03
	Professional Qualifications . . . . .	.04-.05
	Responsibility to the Profession . . . . .	.10
150	Generally Accepted Auditing Standards	.01-.09
	Auditing Standards . . . . .	.02-.04
	Interpretive Publications . . . . .	.05-.06
	Other Auditing Publications . . . . .	.07-.08
	Effective Date . . . . .	.09
161	The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards	.01-.03



AU Section 110

Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor

Source: SAS No. 1, section 110; SAS No. 78; SAS No. 82.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 The objective of the ordinary audit of financial statements by the independent auditor is the expression of an opinion on the fairness with which they present, in all material respects, financial position, results of operations, and its cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. The auditor's report is the medium through which he expresses his opinion or, if circumstances require, disclaims an opinion. In either case, he states whether his audit has been made in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. These standards require him to state whether, in his opinion, the financial statements are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles and to identify those circumstances in which such principles have not been consistently observed in the preparation of the financial statements of the current period in relation to those of the preceding period.

Distinction Between Responsibilities of Auditor and Management

.02 The auditor has a responsibility to plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether caused by error or fraud.¹ Because of the nature of audit evidence and the characteristics of fraud, the auditor is able to obtain reasonable, but not absolute, assurance that material misstatements are detected.² The auditor has no responsibility to plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance that misstatements, whether caused by errors or fraud, that are not material to the financial statements are detected. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.03 The financial statements are management's responsibility. The auditor's responsibility is to express an opinion on the financial statements. Management is responsible for adopting sound accounting policies and for establishing and

¹ See section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, and section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*. The auditor's consideration of illegal acts and responsibility for detecting misstatements resulting from illegal acts is defined in section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*. For those illegal acts that are defined in that section as having a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts, the auditor's responsibility to detect misstatements resulting from such illegal acts is the same as that for error or fraud. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

² See section 230, *Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work*, paragraphs .10 through .13. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

maintaining internal control that will, among other things, initiate, record, process, and report transactions (as well as events and conditions) consistent with management's assertions embodied in the financial statements. The entity's transactions and the related assets, liabilities, and equity are within the direct knowledge and control of management. The auditor's knowledge of these matters and internal control is limited to that acquired through the audit. Thus, the fair presentation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles³ is an implicit and integral part of management's responsibility. The independent auditor may make suggestions about the form or content of the financial statements or draft them, in whole or in part, based on information from management during the performance of the audit. However, the auditor's responsibility for the financial statements he or she has audited is confined to the expression of his or her opinion on them. [Revised, April 1989, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78. Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997. Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

Professional Qualifications

.04 The professional qualifications required of the independent auditor are those of a person with the education and experience to practice as such. They do not include those of a person trained for or qualified to engage in another profession or occupation. For example, the independent auditor, in observing the taking of a physical inventory, does not purport to act as an appraiser, a valuer, or an expert in materials. Similarly, although the independent auditor is informed in a general manner about matters of commercial law, he does not purport to act in the capacity of a lawyer and may appropriately rely upon the advice of attorneys in all matters of law. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.05 In the observance of generally accepted auditing standards, the independent auditor must exercise his judgment in determining which auditing procedures are necessary in the circumstances to afford a reasonable basis for his opinion. His judgment is required to be the informed judgment of a qualified professional person. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

Detection of Fraud

[.06-.09] [Superseded January 1977 by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 16, as superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 53, as superseded by section 316. Paragraphs renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

³ The responsibilities and functions of the independent auditor are also applicable to financial statements presented in conformity with a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles; references in this section to financial statements presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles also include those presentations. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78. Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

Responsibility to the Profession

.10 The independent auditor also has a responsibility to his profession, the responsibility to comply with the standards accepted by his fellow practitioners. In recognition of the importance of such compliance, the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants has adopted, as part of its Code of Professional Conduct, rules which support the standards and provide a basis for their enforcement. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]



AU Section 150

Generally Accepted Auditing Standards

(Supersedes SAS No. 1, section 150)

Source: SAS No. 95; SAS No. 98.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2001, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 An independent auditor plans, conducts, and reports the results of an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). Auditing standards provide a measure of audit quality and the objectives to be achieved in an audit. Auditing procedures differ from auditing standards. Auditing procedures are acts that the auditor performs during the course of an audit to comply with auditing standards.

Auditing Standards

.02 The general, field work, and reporting standards (the 10 standards) approved and adopted by the membership of the AICPA, as amended by the AICPA Auditing Standards Board (ASB), are as follows:

General Standards

1. The audit is to be performed by a person or persons having adequate technical training and proficiency as an auditor.
2. In all matters relating to the assignment, an independence in mental attitude is to be maintained by the auditor or auditors.
3. Due professional care is to be exercised in the performance of the audit and the preparation of the report.

Standards of Field Work

1. The work is to be adequately planned and assistants, if any, are to be properly supervised.
2. A sufficient understanding of internal control is to be obtained to plan the audit and to determine the nature, timing, and extent of tests to be performed.
3. Sufficient competent evidential matter is to be obtained through inspection, observation, inquiries, and confirmations to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion regarding the financial statements under audit.

Standards of Reporting

1. The report shall state whether the financial statements are presented in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).
2. The report shall identify those circumstances in which such principles have not been consistently observed in the current period in relation to the preceding period.

3. Informative disclosures in the financial statements are to be regarded as reasonably adequate unless otherwise stated in the report.
4. The report shall contain either an expression of opinion regarding the financial statements, taken as a whole, or an assertion to the effect that an opinion cannot be expressed. When an overall opinion cannot be expressed, the reasons therefor should be stated. In all cases where an auditor's name is associated with financial statements, the report should contain a clear-cut indication of the character of the auditor's work, if any, and the degree of responsibility the auditor is taking.

.03 Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards*, of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct [ET section 202.01], requires an AICPA member who performs an audit (the auditor) to comply with standards promulgated by the ASB.¹ The ASB develops and issues standards in the form of Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs) through a due process that includes deliberation in meetings open to the public, public exposure of proposed SASs, and a formal vote. The SASs are codified within the framework of the 10 standards.

.04 The auditor should have sufficient knowledge of the SASs to identify those that are applicable to his or her audit. The nature of the 10 standards and the SASs requires the auditor to exercise professional judgment in applying them. Materiality and audit risk also underlie the application of the 10 standards and the SASs, particularly those related to field work and reporting.² The auditor should be prepared to justify departures from the SASs.

Interpretive Publications

.05 *Interpretive publications* consist of auditing Interpretations of the SASs, appendixes to the SASs,³ auditing guidance included in AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides, and AICPA auditing Statements of Position.⁴ Interpretive publications are not auditing standards. Interpretive publications are recommendations on the application of the SASs in specific circumstances, including engagements for entities in specialized industries. An interpretive publication is issued under the authority of the ASB after all ASB members have been provided an opportunity to consider and comment on whether the proposed interpretive publication is consistent with the SASs. [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.06 The auditor should be aware of and consider interpretive publications applicable to his or her audit. If the auditor does not apply the auditing guidance included in an applicable interpretive publication, the auditor should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the SAS provisions addressed by such auditing guidance.

¹ In certain engagements, the auditor also may be subject to other auditing requirements, such as Government Auditing Standards issued by the comptroller general of the United States, or rules and regulations promulgated by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission.

² See section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*.

³ Appendixes to SASs referred to in paragraph .05 of this section do not include previously issued appendixes to original pronouncements that when adopted modified other SASs. [Footnote added, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

⁴ Auditing Interpretations of the SASs are included in the codified version of the SASs and are cross-referenced from the related AU sections in Appendix C. AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides and auditing Statements of Position are listed in Appendix D. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

Other Auditing Publications

.07 *Other auditing publications* include AICPA auditing publications not referred to above; auditing articles in the *Journal of Accountancy* and other professional journals; auditing articles in the *AICPA CPA Letter*; continuing professional education programs and other instruction materials, textbooks, guide books, audit programs, and checklists; and other auditing publications from state CPA societies, other organizations, and individuals.⁵ Other auditing publications have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply the SASs.

.08 If an auditor applies the auditing guidance included in an other auditing publication, he or she should be satisfied that, in his or her judgment, it is both relevant to the circumstances of the audit, and appropriate. In determining whether an other auditing publication is appropriate, the auditor may wish to consider the degree to which the publication is recognized as being helpful in understanding and applying the SASs and the degree to which the issuer or author is recognized as an authority in auditing matters. Other auditing publications published by the AICPA that have been reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff are presumed to be appropriate.⁶

Effective Date

.09 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2001.

⁵ The auditor is not expected to be aware of the full body of other auditing publications. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

⁶ Other auditing publications published by the AICPA that have been reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff are listed in AU Appendix F. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]



AU Section 161***The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards***

(Supersedes SAS No. 4)^[1]

Source: SAS No. 25; SAS No. 98.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1979.

.01 The independent auditor is responsible for compliance with generally accepted auditing standards in an audit engagement. Rule 202 [ET section 202.01] of the Rules of Conduct of the Code of Professional Conduct of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants requires members to comply with such standards when associated with financial statements.

.02 A firm of independent auditors has a responsibility to adopt a system of quality control in conducting an audit practice.² Thus, a firm should establish quality control policies and procedures to provide it with reasonable assurance that its personnel comply with generally accepted auditing standards in its audit engagements. The nature and extent of a firm's quality control policies and procedures depend on factors such as its size, the degree of operating autonomy allowed its personnel and its practice offices, the nature of its practice, its organization, and appropriate cost-benefit considerations. [Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96. As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.03 Generally accepted auditing standards relate to the conduct of individual audit engagements; quality control standards relate to the conduct of a firm's audit practice as a whole. Thus, generally accepted auditing standards and quality control standards are related, and the quality control policies and procedures that a firm adopts may affect both the conduct of individual audit engagements and the conduct of a firm's audit practice as a whole. However, deficiencies in or instances of noncompliance with a firm's quality control policies and procedures do not, in and of themselves, indicate that a particular audit engagement was not performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

^[1] [Footnote deleted by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

² The elements of quality control are identified in Statement on Quality Control Standards (SQCS) No. 2, *System of Quality Control for a CPA Firm's Accounting and Auditing Practice* [QC section 20]. A system of quality control is broadly defined as a process to provide the firm with reasonable assurance that its personnel comply with applicable professional standards and the firm's standards of quality. [Footnote added, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

AU Section 200
THE GENERAL STANDARDS

TABLE OF CONTENTS		
<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
201	Nature of the General Standards	.01
210	Training and Proficiency of the Independent Auditor	.01-.05
220	Independence	.01-.07
230	Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work	.01-.13
	Professional Skepticism .....	.07-.09
	Reasonable Assurance .....	.10-.13



AU Section 201***Nature of the General Standards***

Source: SAS No. 1, section 201.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 The general standards are personal in nature and are concerned with the qualifications of the auditor and the quality of his work as distinct from those standards which relate to the performance of his field work and to his reporting. These personal, or general, standards apply alike to the areas of field work and reporting.



AU Section 210***Training and Proficiency of the Independent Auditor***

Source: SAS No. 1, section 210; SAS No. 5.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 The first general standard is:

The audit is to be performed by a person or persons having adequate technical training and proficiency as an auditor.

.02 This standard recognizes that however capable a person may be in other fields, including business and finance, he cannot meet the requirements of the auditing standards without proper education and experience in the field of auditing.

.03 In the performance of the audit which leads to an opinion, the independent auditor holds himself out as one who is proficient in accounting and auditing. The attainment of that proficiency begins with the auditor's formal education and extends into his subsequent experience. The independent auditor must undergo training adequate to meet the requirements of a professional. This training must be adequate in technical scope and should include a commensurate measure of general education. The junior assistant, just entering upon an auditing career, must obtain his professional experience with the proper supervision and review of his work by a more experienced superior. The nature and extent of supervision and review must necessarily reflect wide variances in practice. The auditor charged with final responsibility for the engagement must exercise a seasoned judgment in the varying degrees of his supervision and review of the work done and judgment exercised by his subordinates, who in turn must meet the responsibility attaching to the varying gradations and functions of their work.

.04 The independent auditor's formal education and professional experience complement one another; each auditor exercising authority upon an engagement should weigh these attributes in determining the extent of his supervision of subordinates and review of their work. It should be recognized that the training of a professional man includes a continual awareness of developments taking place in business and in his profession. He must study, understand, and apply new pronouncements on accounting principles and auditing procedures as they are developed by authoritative bodies within the accounting profession.

.05 In the course of his day-to-day practice, the independent auditor encounters a wide range of judgment on the part of management, varying from true objective judgment to the occasional extreme of deliberate misstatement. He is retained to audit and report upon the financial statements of a business because, through his training and experience, he has become skilled in accounting and auditing and has acquired the ability to consider objectively

and to exercise independent judgment with respect to the information recorded in books of account or otherwise disclosed by his audit. [As amended July, 1975 by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 5.]

AU Section 220

Independence

Source: SAS No. 1, section 220.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 The second general standard is:

In all matters relating to the assignment, an independence in mental attitude is to be maintained by the auditor or auditors.

.02 This standard requires that the auditor be independent; aside from being in public practice (as distinct from being in private practice), he must be without bias with respect to the client since otherwise he would lack that impartiality necessary for the dependability of his findings, however excellent his technical proficiency may be. However, independence does not imply the attitude of a prosecutor but rather a judicial impartiality that recognizes an obligation for fairness not only to management and owners of a business but also to creditors and those who may otherwise rely (in part, at least) upon the independent auditor's report, as in the case of prospective owners or creditors.

.03 It is of utmost importance to the profession that the general public maintain confidence in the independence of independent auditors. Public confidence would be impaired by evidence that independence was actually lacking, and it might also be impaired by the existence of circumstances which reasonable people might believe likely to influence independence. To be independent, the auditor must be intellectually honest; to be *recognized* as independent, he must be free from any obligation to or interest in the client, its management, or its owners. For example, an independent auditor auditing a company of which he was also a director might be intellectually honest, but it is unlikely that the public would accept him as independent since he would be in effect auditing decisions which he had a part in making. Likewise, an auditor with a substantial financial interest in a company might be unbiased in expressing his opinion on the financial statements of the company, but the public would be reluctant to believe that he was unbiased. Independent auditors should not only be independent in fact; they should avoid situations that may lead outsiders to doubt their independence.

.04 The profession has established, through the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct, precepts to guard against the *presumption* of loss of independence. "Presumption" is stressed because the possession of intrinsic independence is a matter of personal quality rather than of rules that formulate certain objective tests. Insofar as these precepts have been incorporated in the profession's code, they have the force of professional law for the independent auditor.

.05 The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) has also adopted requirements for independence of auditors who report on financial statements filed with it that differ from the AICPA requirements in certain respects.^[1]

^[1] [Footnote deleted, December 2001, to acknowledge the dissolution of the Independence Standard Board.]

.06 The independent auditor should administer his practice within the spirit of these precepts and rules if he is to achieve a proper degree of independence in the conduct of his work.

.07 To emphasize independence from management, many corporations follow the practice of having the independent auditor appointed by the board of directors or elected by the stockholders.

AU Section 230***Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work***

Source: SAS No. 1, section 230; SAS No. 41; SAS No. 82; SAS No. 99.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 The third general standard is:

Due professional care is to be exercised in the planning and performance of the audit and the preparation of the report.¹

[As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.02 This standard requires the independent auditor to plan and perform his or her work with due professional care. Due professional care imposes a responsibility upon each professional within an independent auditor's organization to observe the standards of field work and reporting. [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.03 *Cooley on Torts*, a legal treatise, describes the obligation for due care as follows:

Every man who offers his services to another and is employed assumes the duty to exercise in the employment such skill as he possesses with reasonable care and diligence. In all these employments where peculiar skill is requisite, if one offers his services, he is understood as holding himself out to the public as possessing the degree of skill commonly possessed by others in the same employment, and if his pretensions are unfounded, he commits a species of fraud upon every man who employs him in reliance on his public profession. But no man, whether skilled or unskilled, undertakes that the task he assumes shall be performed successfully, and without fault or error; he undertakes for good faith and integrity, but not for infallibility, and he is liable to his employer for negligence, bad faith, or dishonesty, but not for losses consequent upon pure errors of judgment.²

[As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.04 The matter of due professional care concerns what the independent auditor does and how well he or she does it. The quotation from *Cooley on Torts*

* [Title amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

¹ This amendment revises the third general standard of the ten generally accepted auditing standards. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

² D. Haggard, *Cooley on Torts*, 472 (4th ed., 1932). [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

provides a source from which an auditor's responsibility for conducting an audit with due professional care can be derived. The remainder of the section discusses the auditor's responsibility in the context of an audit. [As amended, April 1982, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 41. As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.05 An auditor should possess "the degree of skill commonly possessed" by other auditors and should exercise it with "reasonable care and diligence" (that is, with due professional care). [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.06 Auditors should be assigned to tasks and supervised commensurate with their level of knowledge, skill, and ability so that they can evaluate the audit evidence they are examining. The auditor with final responsibility for the engagement should know, at a minimum, the relevant professional accounting and auditing standards and should be knowledgeable about the client.³ The auditor with final responsibility is responsible for the assignment of tasks to, and supervision of, assistants.⁴ [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

Professional Skepticism

.07 Due professional care requires the auditor to exercise *professional skepticism*. Professional skepticism is an attitude that includes a questioning mind and a critical assessment of audit evidence. The auditor uses the knowledge, skill, and ability called for by the profession of public accounting to diligently perform, in good faith and with integrity, the gathering and objective evaluation of evidence. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.08 Gathering and objectively evaluating audit evidence requires the auditor to consider the competency and sufficiency of the evidence. Since evidence is gathered and evaluated throughout the audit, professional skepticism should be exercised throughout the audit process. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.09 The auditor neither assumes that management is dishonest nor assumes unquestioned honesty. In exercising professional skepticism, the auditor should not be satisfied with less than persuasive evidence because of a belief that management is honest. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

Reasonable Assurance

.10 The exercise of due professional care allows the auditor to obtain *reasonable assurance* that the financial statements are free of material

³ See section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, paragraph .07. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

⁴ See section 311.11. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

misstatement, whether caused by error or fraud. Absolute assurance is not attainable because of the nature of audit evidence and the characteristics of fraud. Therefore, an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards may not detect a material misstatement. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.11 The independent auditor's objective is to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to provide him or her with a reasonable basis for forming an opinion. The nature of most evidence derives, in part, from the concept of selective testing of the data being audited, which involves judgment regarding both the areas to be tested and the nature, timing, and extent of the tests to be performed. In addition, judgment is required in interpreting the results of audit testing and evaluating audit evidence. Even with good faith and integrity, mistakes and errors in judgment can be made. Furthermore, accounting presentations contain accounting estimates, the measurement of which is inherently uncertain and depends on the outcome of future events. The auditor exercises professional judgment in evaluating the reasonableness of accounting estimates based on information that could reasonably be expected to be available prior to the completion of field work.⁵ As a result of these factors, in the great majority of cases, the auditor has to rely on evidence that is persuasive rather than convincing.⁶ [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.12 Because of the characteristics of fraud, a properly planned and performed audit may not detect a material misstatement. Characteristics of fraud include (a) concealment through collusion among management, employees, or third parties; (b) withheld, misrepresented, or falsified documentation; and (c) the ability of management to override or instruct others to override what otherwise appears to be effective controls. For example, auditing procedures may be ineffective for detecting an intentional misstatement that is concealed through collusion among personnel within the entity and third parties or among management or employees of the entity. Collusion may cause the auditor who has properly performed the audit to conclude that evidence provided is persuasive when it is, in fact, false. In addition, an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards rarely involves authentication of documentation, nor are auditors trained as or expected to be experts in such authentication. Furthermore, an auditor may not discover the existence of a modification of documentation through a side agreement that management or a third party has not disclosed. Finally, management has the ability to directly or indirectly manipulate accounting records and present fraudulent financial information by overriding controls in unpredictable ways. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82. As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

.13 Since the auditor's opinion on the financial statements is based on the concept of obtaining reasonable assurance, the auditor is not an insurer and

⁵ See section 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

⁶ See section 326, *Evidential Matter*. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

his or her report does not constitute a guarantee. Therefore, the subsequent discovery that a material misstatement, whether from error or fraud, exists in the financial statements does not, in and of itself, evidence (a) failure to obtain reasonable assurance, (b) inadequate planning, performance, or judgment, (c) the absence of due professional care, or (d) a failure to comply with generally accepted auditing standards. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

AU Section 300**THE STANDARDS OF FIELD WORK****TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
310	Appointment of the Independent Auditor	.01-.07
	Appointment of the Independent Auditor . . . . .	.03
	Appointment of the Auditor Near or After the Year-End Date . . . . .	.04
	Establishing an Understanding With the Client . . . . .	.05-.07
311	Planning and Supervision	.01-.15
	Planning . . . . .	.03-.10
	Supervision . . . . .	.11-.14
	Effective Date . . . . .	.15
9311	Planning and Supervision: Auditing Interpretations of Section 311	
	1. Communications Between the Auditor and Firm Personnel Responsible for Non-Audit Services (2/80) . . . . .	.01-.03
	[2.] Planning Considerations for an Audit of a Federally Assisted Program (4/81) [Withdrawn March, 1989]	[.04-.34]
	3. Responsibility of Assistance for the Resolution of Accounting and Auditing Issues (2/86) . . . . .	.35-.37
	[4.] Audit Considerations for the Year 2000 Issue (1/98) [Withdrawn July, 2000].	[.38-.47]
312	Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit	.01-.42
	Planning the Audit . . . . .	.12-.33
	Considerations at the Financial Statements Level . . . . .	.13-.23
	Considerations at the Individual Account-Balance or Class-of-Transactions Level . . . . .	.24-.33
	Evaluating Audit Findings . . . . .	.34-.41
	Effective Date . . . . .	.42
9312	Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit: Auditing Interpretations of Section 312	
	1. The Meaning of the Term <i>Misstatement</i> (12/00) . . . . .	.01-.04
	2. Evaluating Differences in Estimates (12/00) . . . . .	.05-.09
	3. Quantitative Measures of Materiality in Evaluating Audit Findings (12/00). . . . .	.10-.14
	4. Considering the Qualitative Characteristics of Misstatements (12/00). . . . .	.15-.17

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
313	Substantive Tests Prior to the Balance-Sheet Date	.01-.10
	Factors to Be Considered Before Applying Principal Substantive Tests to the Details of Balance-Sheet Accounts at Interim Dates . . . . .	.04-.07
	Extending Audit Conclusions to the Balance-Sheet Date . . . . .	.08-.09
	Coordinating the Timing of Auditing Procedures . . . . .	.10
315	Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors	.01-.25
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.02
	Change of Auditors . . . . .	.03-.11
	Communications Before Successor Auditor Accepts Engagement . . . . .	.07-.10
	Other Communications . . . . .	.11
	Successor Auditor's Use of Communications . . . . .	.12-.13
	Audits of Financial Statements That Have Been Previously Audited . . . . .	.14-.20
	Discovery of Possible Misstatements in Financial Statements Reported on by a Predecessor Auditor . . . . .	.21-.22
	Effective Date . . . . .	.23
	Appendix A: Illustrative Client Consent and Acknowledgment Letter . . . . .	.24
	Appendix B: Illustrative Successor Auditor Acknowledgment Letter . . . . .	.25
316	Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit	.01-.86
	Introduction and Overview . . . . .	.01-.04
	Description and Characteristics of Fraud . . . . .	.05-.12
	The Importance of Exercising Professional Skepticism . . . . .	.13
	Discussion Among Engagement Personnel Regarding the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud . . . . .	.14-.18
	Obtaining the Information Needed to Identify the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud . . . . .	.19-.34
	Making Inquiries of Management and Others Within the Entity About the Risks of Fraud . . . . .	.20-.27
	Considering the Results of the Analytical Procedures Performed in Planning the Audit . . . . .	.28-.30
	Considering Fraud Risk Factors . . . . .	.31-.33
	Considering Other Information That May Be Helpful in Identifying Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud . . . . .	.34
	Identifying Risks That May Result in a Material Misstatement Due to Fraud . . . . .	.35-.42
	Using the Information Gathered to Identify Risk of Material Misstatements Due to Fraud . . . . .	.35-.40
	A Presumption That Improper Revenue Recognition Is a Fraud Risk . . . . .	.41
	A Consideration of the Risk of Management Override of Controls . . . . .	.42

Table of Contents

59

Section

Paragraph

316	Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit—continued	
	Assessing the Identified Risks After Taking Into Account an Evaluation of the Entity's Programs and Controls That Address the Risks . . . . .	.43-.45
	Responding to the Results of the Assessment . . . . .	.46-.67
	Overall Responses to the Risk of Material Misstatement. . . . .	.50
	Responses Involving the Nature, Timing, and Extent of Procedures to Be Performed to Address the Identified Risks . . . . .	.51-.56
	Additional Examples of Responses to Identified Risks of Misstatements Arising From Fraudulent Financial Reporting . . . . .	.54
	Examples of Responses to Identified Risks of Misstatements Arising From Misappropriations of Assets . . . . .	.55-.56
	Responses to Further Address the Risk of Management Override of Controls . . . . .	.57-.67
	Evaluating Audit Evidence. . . . .	.68-.78
	Communicating About Possible Fraud to Management, the Audit Committee, and Others. . . . .	.79-.82
	Documenting the Auditor's Consideration of Fraud . . . . .	.83
	Effective Date . . . . .	.84
	Appendix: Examples of Fraud Risk Factors . . . . .	.85
	Exhibit—Management Antifraud Programs and Controls: Guidance to Help Prevent, Deter, and Detect Fraud . . . . .	.86
317	Illegal Acts by Clients	.01-.25
	Definition of Illegal Acts . . . . .	.02-.06
	Dependence on Legal Judgment . . . . .	.03
	Relation to Financial Statements . . . . .	.04-.06
	The Auditor's Consideration of the Possibility of Illegal Acts. . . . .	.07-.11
	Audit Procedures in the Absence of Evidence Concerning Possible Illegal Acts . . . . .	.08
	Specific Information Concerning Illegal Acts. . . . .	.09
	Audit Procedures in Response to Possible Illegal Acts . . . . .	.10-.11
	The Auditor's Response to Detected Illegal Acts . . . . .	.12-.21
	The Auditor's Consideration of Financial Statement Effect. . . . .	.13-.15
	Implications for Audit. . . . .	.16
	Communication With the Audit Committee . . . . .	.17
	Effect on the Auditor's Report. . . . .	.18-.21
	Other Considerations in an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards. . . . .	.22-.23
	Responsibilities in Other Circumstances. . . . .	.24
	Effective Date . . . . .	.25

Section	Paragraph
9317	Illegal Acts by Clients: Auditing Interpretations of Section 317
	1. Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit and the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (10/78)
	2. Material Weaknesses in Internal Control and the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (10/78)
319	Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit .01-.110
	Introduction01-.05
	Definition of Internal Control06-.07
	Relationship Between Objectives and Components08-.13
	Financial Reporting Objective10
	Operations and Compliance Objectives11-.12
	Safeguarding of Assets13
	Application of Components to a Financial Statement Audit.14-.15
	Effect of Information Technology on Internal Control16-.20
	Limitations of an Entity's Internal Control21-.24
	Obtaining an Understanding of Internal Control25-.61
	Understanding of Internal Control Necessary to Plan the Audit29-.57
	Control Environment34-.36
	Risk Assessment37-.40
	Control Activities41-.46
	Information and Communication47-.52
	Monitoring53-.55
	Application to Small and Midsized Entities56-.57
	Procedures to Obtain Understanding58-.60
	Documenting the Understanding61
	Assessing Control Risk62-.83
	Assessing Control Risk Below the Maximum Level70-.82
	Identifying Specific Controls Relevant to Specific Assertions71-.74
	Performing Tests of Controls75-.79
	Concluding on the Assessed Level of Control Risk80-.82
	Documenting the Assessed Level of Control Risk83
	Relationship of Understanding to Assessing Control Risk84-.89
	Further Reduction in the Assessed Level of Control Risk87-.89
	Evidential Matter to Support the Assessed Level of Control Risk90-.104
	Type of Evidential Matter92-.93
	Source of Evidential Matter94-.95
	Timeliness of Evidential Matter96-.99
	Interrelationship of Evidential Matter101-.104
	Correlation of Control Risk With Detection Risk105-.108
	Effective Date109
	Appendix: Internal Control Components110

Section

Paragraph

9319	Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit: Auditing Interpretations of Section 319 [1.] Audit Considerations for the Year 2000 Issue (1/98) [Withdrawn July, 2000]	
322	The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements	.01-.29
	Roles of the Auditor and the Internal Auditors . . . . .	.02-.03
	Obtaining an Understanding of the Internal Audit Function . . . .	.04-.08
	Assessing the Competence and Objectivity of the Internal Auditors . . .	.09-.11
	Competence of the Internal Auditors . . . . .	.09
	Objectivity of the Internal Auditors . . . . .	.10
	Assessing Competence and Objectivity . . . . .	.11
	Effect of the Internal Auditors' Work on the Audit . . . . .	.12-.17
	Understanding of Internal Control . . . . .	.13
	Risk Assessment . . . . .	.14-.16
	Financial-Statement Level . . . . .	.15
	Account-Balance or Class-of-Transaction Level . . . .	.16
	Substantive Procedures . . . . .	.17
	Extent of the Effect of the Internal Auditors' Work . . . . .	.18-.22
	Coordination of the Audit Work With Internal Auditors . . . . .	.23
	Evaluating and Testing the Effectiveness of Internal Auditors' Work . .	.24-.26
	Using Internal Auditors to Provide Direct Assistance to the Auditor . .	.27
	Effective Date . . . . .	.28
	Appendix: The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements . . . . .	.29
324	Service Organizations	.01-.63
	Introduction and Applicability . . . . .	.01-.04
	The User Auditor's Consideration of the Effect of the Service Organization on the User Organization's Internal Control and the Availability of Audit Evidence . . . . .	.05-.17
	The Effect of Use of a Service Organization on a User Organization's Internal Control . . . . .	.06
	Planning the Audit . . . . .	.07-.10
	Assessing Control Risk at the User Organization . . . . .	.11-.16
	Audit Evidence From Substantive Audit Procedures Performed by Service Auditors . . . . .	.17
	Considerations in Using a Service Auditor's Report . . . . .	.18-.21
	Responsibilities of Service Auditors . . . . .	.22-.62
	Reports on Controls Placed in Operation . . . . .	.25-.40
	Reports on Controls Placed in Operation and Tests of Operating Effectiveness . . . . .	.41-.56

Section		Paragraph
324	Service Organizations—continued	
	Responsibilities of Service Organizations and Service Auditors With Respect to Subsequent Events . . . . .	.57-.60
	Written Representations of the Service Organization’s Management . . . . .	.61
	Reporting on Substantive Procedures . . . . .	.62
	Effective Date . . . . .	.63
9324	Service Organizations: Auditing Interpretations of Section 324	
	1. Describing Tests of Operating Effectiveness and the Results of Such Tests (4/95) . . . . .	.01-.03
	2. Service Organizations That Use the Services of Other Service Organizations (Subservice Organizations) (4/95) . . . . .	.04-.18
	[3.] Responsibilities of Service Organizations and Service Auditors With Respect to Information About the Year 2000 Issue in a Service Organization’s Description of Controls (3/98) [Withdrawn July, 2000]	[.19-.34]
	4. Responsibilities of Service Organizations and Service Auditors With Respect to Forward-Looking Information in a Service Organization’s Description of Controls (2/02) . . . . .	.35-.37
	5. Statements About the Risk of Projecting Evaluations of the Effectiveness of Controls to Future Periods (2/02) . . . . .	.38-.40
	[6.] Responsibilities of Service Organizations and Service Auditors With Respect to Subsequent Events in a Service Auditor’s Engagement (2/02) [Rescinded September, 2002]	[.41-.42]
325	Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit	.01-.21
	Reportable Conditions . . . . .	.02-.03
	Identifying Reportable Conditions . . . . .	.04-.06
	Agreed-Upon Criteria . . . . .	.07-.08
	Reporting—Form and Content . . . . .	.09-.19
	Effective Date . . . . .	.20
	Appendix: Examples of Possible Reportable Conditions . . . . .	.21
9325	Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit: Auditing Interpretations of Section 325	
	1. Reporting on the Existence of Material Weaknesses (2/89) . . . . .	.01-.07
	[2.] Audit Considerations for the Year 2000 Issue (1/98) [Withdrawn July, 2000]	[.08-.17]

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
326	Evidential Matter	.01-.26
	Nature of Assertions . . . . .	.03-.08
	Use of Assertions in Developing Audit Objectives and Designing Substantive Tests . . . . .	.09-.14
	Nature of Evidential Matter . . . . .	.15-.20
	Competence of Evidential Matter . . . . .	.21
	Sufficiency of Evidential Matter . . . . .	.22-.24
	Evaluation of Evidential Matter . . . . .	.25
	Appendix: Financial Statement Assertions, Illustrative Audit Objectives, and Examples of Substantive Tests . . . . .	.26
9326	Evidential Matter: Auditing Interpretations of Section 326	
	1. Evidential Matter for an Audit of Interim Financial Statements (10/80) . . . . .	.01-.05
	2. The Effect of an Inability to Obtain Evidential Matter Relating to Income Tax Accruals (3/81) . . . . .	.06-.23
	3. The Auditor's Consideration of the Completeness Assertion (4/86) . . . . .	.24-.27
	4. Applying Auditing Procedures to Segment Disclosures in Financial Statements (8/98) . . . . .	.28-.41
328	Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures	.01-.51
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.08
	Understanding the Entity's Process for Determining Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures and the Relevant Controls, and Assessing Risk . . . . .	.09-.14
	Evaluating Conformity of Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures With GAAP . . . . .	.15-.19
	Engaging a Specialist . . . . .	.20-.22
	Testing the Entity's Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures . . . . .	.23-.42
	Testing Management's Significant Assumptions, the Valuation Model, and the Underlying Data . . . . .	.26-.39
	Developing Independent Fair Value Estimates for Corroborative Purposes . . . . .	.40
	Reviewing Subsequent Events and Transactions . . . . .	.41-.42
	Disclosures About Fair Values . . . . .	.43-.46
	Evaluating the Results of Audit Procedures . . . . .	.47
	Management Representations . . . . .	.48-.49
	Communication With Audit Committees . . . . .	.50
	Effective Date . . . . .	.51

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
329	Analytical Procedures	.01-.24
	Analytical Procedures in Planning the Audit . . . . .	.06-.08
	Analytical Procedures Used as Substantive Tests . . . . .	.09-.22
	Nature of Assertion. . . . .	.12
	Plausibility and Predictability of the Relationship . . . . .	.13-.14
	Availability and Reliability of Data . . . . .	.15-.16
	Precision of the Expectation . . . . .	.17-.19
	Investigation and Evaluation of Significant Differences . . .	.20-.21
	Documentation of Substantive Analytical Procedures . . . . .	.22
	Analytical Procedures Used in the Overall Review . . . . .	.23
	Effective Date . . . . .	.24
9329	Analytical Procedures: Auditing Interpretations of Section 329	
	[1.] Corroboration of Replies to Inquiries in Applying Analytical Review Procedures (3/79) [Withdrawn March, 1989].	[.01-.02]
330	The Confirmation Process	.01-.36
	Introduction and Applicability . . . . .	.01-.03
	Definition of the Confirmation Process . . . . .	.04
	Relationship of Confirmation Procedures to the Auditor's Assessment of Audit Risk. . . . .	.05-.14
	Assertions Addressed by Confirmations. . . . .	.11-.14
	The Confirmation Process. . . . .	.15-.30
	Designing the Confirmation Request . . . . .	.16-.27
	Form of Confirmation Request . . . . .	.17-.22
	Prior Experience. . . . .	.23
	Nature of Information Being Confirmed . . . . .	.24-.25
	Respondent . . . . .	.26-.27
	Performing Confirmation Procedures. . . . .	.28-.30
	Alternative Procedures. . . . .	.31-.32
	Evaluating the Results of Confirmation Procedures . . . . .	.33
	Confirmation of Accounts Receivable. . . . .	.34-.35
	Effective Date . . . . .	.36
331	Inventories	.01-.15
	Inventories. . . . .	.09-.13
	Inventories Held in Public Warehouses. . . . .	.14
	Effect on the Auditor's Report. . . . .	.15
9331	Inventories: Auditing Interpretations of Section 331	
	[1.] Evidential Matter for Inventories at Interim Dates (2/74) [Withdrawn December, 1992]	[.01-.05]

Table of Contents

65

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
332	Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities .01-.59 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applicability01-.04 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities Included in the Scope of This Section02-.03 Securities Included in the Scope of This Section04 The Need for Special Skill or Knowledge to Plan and Perform Auditing Procedures05-.06 Audit Risk and Materiality07-.18 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inherent Risk Assessment08 Control Risk Assessment09-.18 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Obtaining an Understanding of Internal Control to Plan the Audit09-.14 Assessing Control Risk15-.18 Designing Substantive Procedures Based on Risk Assessments . . .19-.58 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Financial Statement Assertions21-.51 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Existence or Occurrence21 Completeness22-.24 Rights and Obligations25 Valuation26-.48 Presentation and Disclosure49-.51 Additional Considerations About Hedging Activities52-.55 Assertions About Securities Based on Management's Intent and Ability56-.57 Management Representations58 Effective Date59
333	Management Representations .01-.18 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction01 Reliance on Management Representations02-.04 Obtaining Written Representations05-.12 Scope Limitations13-.14 Effective Date15 Appendix A: Illustrative Management Representation Letter16 Appendix B: Additional Illustrative Representations17 Appendix C: Illustrative Updating Management Representation Letter18
9333	Management Representations: Auditing Interpretations of Section 333 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Management Representations on Violations and Possible Violations of Laws and Regulations (3/79)01-.04
334	Related Parties .01-.12 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accounting Considerations02-.03 Audit Procedures04-.10

66	Table of Contents	
Section		Paragraph
334	Related Parties—continued	
	Determining the Existence of Related Parties . . . . .	.07
	Identifying Transactions With Related Parties . . . . .	.08
	Examining Identified Related Party Transactions . . . . .	.09-.10
	Disclosure . . . . .	.11-.12
9334	Related Parties: Auditing Interpretations of Section 334	
	[1.] Evaluating the Adequacy of Disclosure of Related Party Transactions (3/76) [Withdrawn August, 1983]	[.01-.05]
	[2.] Disclosure of Commonly Controlled Parties (3/76) [Withdrawn August, 1983]	[.06-.09]
	[3.] Definition of “Immediate Family” (3/76) [Withdrawn August, 1983]	[.10-.11]
	4. Exchange of Information Between the Principal and Other Auditor on Related Parties (4/79) . . . . .	.12-.13
	5. Examination of Identified Related Party Transactions With a Component (4/79) . . . . .	.14-.15
	6. The Nature and Extent of Auditing Procedures for Examining Related Party Transactions (5/86) . . . . .	.16-.21
	7. Management’s and Auditor’s Responsibilities for Related Party Disclosures Prefaced by Terminology Such As “Management Believes That” (5/00) . . . . .	.22-.23
336	Using the Work of a Specialist	.01-.17
	Introduction and Applicability . . . . .	.01-.05
	Decision to Use the Work of a Specialist . . . . .	.06-.07
	Qualifications and Work of a Specialist . . . . .	.08-.09
	Relationship of the Specialist to the Client . . . . .	.10-.11
	Using the Findings of the Specialist . . . . .	.12
	Effect of the Specialist’s Work on the Auditor’s Report . . . . .	.13-.14
	Reference to the Specialist in the Auditor’s Report . . . . .	.15-.16
	Effective Date . . . . .	.17
9336	Using the Work of a Specialist: Auditing Interpretations of Section 336	
	1. The Use of Legal Interpretations As Evidential Matter to Support Management’s Assertion That a Transfer of Financial Assets Has Met the Isolation Criterion in Paragraph 9(a) of Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement No. 140 (12/01) . . . . .	.01-.21

Table of Contents

67

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
337	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="flex-grow: 1;"> Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments </div> <div style="text-align: right;">.01-.14</div> </div> <div style="margin-left: 20px;"> Accounting Considerations02-.03 Auditing Considerations04-.14 Audit Procedures05-.07 Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer08-.11 Limitations on the Scope of a Lawyer's Response12-.13 Other Limitations on a Lawyer's Response14 </div>
337A	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="flex-grow: 1;">Appendix—Illustrative Audit Inquiry Letter to Legal Counsel.</div> <div style="text-align: right;">.01</div> </div>
337B	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="flex-grow: 1;">Exhibit I—Excerpts from Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5: Accounting for Contingencies</div> <div></div> </div>
337C	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="flex-grow: 1;">Exhibit II—American Bar Association Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information</div> <div></div> </div>
9337	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="flex-grow: 1;"> Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments: Auditing Interpretations of Section 337 </div> <div></div> </div> <div style="margin-left: 20px;"> 1. Specifying Relevant Dates in an Audit Inquiry Letter (3/77)01-.03 2. Relationship Between Date of Lawyer's Response and Auditor's Report (3/77)04-.05 3. Form of Audit Inquiry Letter When Client Represents That No Unasserted Claims and Assessments Exist (3/77)06-.07 4. Documents Subject to Lawyer-Client Privilege (3/77)08-.09 5. Alternative Wording of the Illustrative Audit Inquiry Letter to a Client's Lawyer (6/83)10-.14 6. Client Has Not Consulted a Lawyer (6/83)15-.17 7. Assessment of a Lawyer's Evaluation of the Outcome of Litigation (6/83)18-.23 8. Use of the Client's Inside Counsel in the Evaluation of Litigation, Claims, and Assessments (6/83)24-.27 9. Use of Explanatory Language About the Attorney-Client Privilege or the Attorney Work-Product Privilege (2/90)28-.30 10. Use of Explanatory Language Concerning Unasserted Possible Claims or Assessments in Lawyers' Responses to Audit Inquiry Letters (1/97)31-.32 </div>
339	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="flex-grow: 1;"> Audit Documentation </div> <div style="text-align: right;">.01-.15</div> </div> <div style="margin-left: 20px;"> Introduction01-.03 Content of Audit Documentation04-.09 Ownership and Confidentiality of Audit Documentation10-.13 Effective Date14 Appendix A: Audit Documentation Requirements in Other Statements on Auditing Standards15 </div>
9339	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="flex-grow: 1;"> Audit Documentation: Auditing Interpretations of Section 339 </div> <div></div> </div> <div style="margin-left: 20px;"> 1. Providing Access to or Copies of Audit Documentation To a Regulator (7/94)01-.15 </div>

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
341	The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern	.01-.18
	The Auditor's Responsibility . . . . .	.02-.04
	Audit Procedures . . . . .	.05
	Consideration of Conditions and Events . . . . .	.06
	Consideration of Management's Plans . . . . .	.07-.09
	Consideration of Financial Statement Effects . . . . .	.10-.11
	Consideration of the Effects on the Auditor's Report . . . . .	.12-.16
	Documentation . . . . .	.17
	Effective Date . . . . .	.18
9341	The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern: Auditing Interpretations of Section 341	
	1. Eliminating a Going-Concern Explanatory Paragraph From a Reissued Report (8/95) . . . . .	.01-.02
	[2.] Effect of the Year 2000 Issue on the Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern (7/98) [Withdrawn July, 2000]	[.03-.27]
342	Auditing Accounting Estimates	.01-.16
	Developing Accounting Estimates . . . . .	.05-.06
	Internal Control Related to Accounting Estimates . . . . .	.06
	Evaluating Accounting Estimates . . . . .	.07-.14
	Identifying Circumstances That Require Accounting Estimates . . . . .	.08
	Evaluating Reasonableness . . . . .	.09-.14
	Effective Date . . . . .	.15
	Appendix: Examples of Accounting Estimates . . . . .	.16
9342	Auditing Accounting Estimates: Auditing Interpretation of Section 342	
	1. Performance and Reporting Guidance Related to Fair Value Disclosures (2/93) . . . . .	.01-.10
350	Audit Sampling	.01-.47
	Uncertainty and Audit Sampling . . . . .	.07-.14
	Sampling Risk . . . . .	.12-.14
	Sampling in Substantive Tests of Details . . . . .	.15-.30
	Planning Samples . . . . .	.15-.23
	Sample Selection . . . . .	.24
	Performance and Evaluation . . . . .	.25-.30
	Sampling in Tests of Controls . . . . .	.31-.42
	Planning Samples . . . . .	.31-.37
	Sample Selection . . . . .	.38
	Performance and Evaluation . . . . .	.39-.42
	Dual-Purpose Samples . . . . .	.43
	Selecting a Sampling Approach . . . . .	.44-.45
	Effective Date . . . . .	.46
	Appendix . . . . .	.47

Table of Contents

69

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
9350	Audit Sampling: Auditing Interpretations of Section 350	
	1. Applicability (1/85) . . . . .	.01-.02
380	Communication With Audit Committees	.01-.17
	Matters to Be Communicated . . . . .	.06-.16
	The Auditor's Responsibility Under Generally Accepted Auditing Standards . . . . .	.06
	Significant Accounting Policies . . . . .	.07
	Management Judgments and Accounting Estimates . . . . .	.08
	Audit Adjustments . . . . .	.09-.10
	Auditor's Judgments About the Quality of the Entity's Accounting Principles . . . . .	.11
	Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements . . . . .	.12
	Disagreements With Management . . . . .	.13
	Consultation With Other Accountants . . . . .	.14
	Major Issues Discussed With Management Prior to Retention . . . . .	.15
	Difficulties Encountered in Performing the Audit . . . . .	.16
	Effective Date . . . . .	.17
9380	Communication With Audit Committees: Auditing Interpretations of Section 380	
	1. Applicability of Section 380 (8/93) . . . . .	.01-.03
390	Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Date	.01-.08
	Effective Date . . . . .	.08

AU Section 310

Appointment of the Independent Auditor^{**}

Source: SAS No. 1, section 310; SAS No. 45; SAS No. 83; SAS No. 89.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 The first standard of field work is:

The work is to be adequately planned and assistants, if any, are to be properly supervised.

.02 Aspects of supervising assistants are discussed in section 210, *Training and Proficiency of the Independent Auditor*, and section 311, *Planning and Supervision*. Aspects of planning the field work and the timing of auditing procedures are discussed in section 311 and section 313, *Substantive Tests Prior to the Balance-Sheet Date*. [As amended August 1983, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 45.] (See section 313.)

Appointment of the Independent Auditor

.03 Consideration of the first standard of field work recognizes that early appointment of the independent auditor has many advantages to both the auditor and his client. Early appointment enables the auditor to plan his work so that it may be done expeditiously and to determine the extent to which it can be done before the balance-sheet date. [As amended August, 1983, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 45.] (See section 313.)

Appointment of Auditor Near or After the Year-End Date

.04 Although early appointment is preferable, an independent auditor may accept an engagement near or after the close of the fiscal year. In such instances, before accepting the engagement, he should ascertain whether circumstances are likely to permit an adequate audit and expression of an unqualified opinion and, if they will not, he should discuss with the client the possible necessity for a qualified opinion or disclaimer of opinion. Sometimes the audit limitations present in such circumstances can be remedied. For example, the taking of the physical inventory can be postponed or another physical inventory can be taken which the auditor can observe. (See section 331.09–.13.)

Establishing an Understanding With the Client

.05 The auditor should establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed for each engagement.¹ Such an understanding

* [Title amended, effective for engagements for periods ending on or after June 15, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 83.]

** **Note:** Title originally amended and former paragraphs .05–.09 under the heading “Timing of Audit Work” superseded, August 1983, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 45. (See section 313.)

¹ See Statement on Quality Control Standards No. 2, *System of Quality Control for a CPA Firm’s Accounting and Auditing Practice*, paragraph 16 [QC section 20.16]. [Footnote added, effective for engagements for periods ending on or after June 15, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 83.]

reduces the risk that either the auditor or the client may misinterpret the needs or expectations of the other party. For example, it reduces the risk that the client may inappropriately rely on the auditor to protect the entity against certain risks or to perform certain functions that are the client's responsibility. The understanding should include the objectives of the engagement, management's responsibilities, the auditor's responsibilities, and limitations of the engagement.² The auditor should document the understanding in the working papers, preferably through a written communication with the client. If the auditor believes an understanding with the client has not been established, he or she should decline to accept or perform the engagement. [Paragraph added, effective for engagements for periods ending on or after June 15, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 83.]

.06 An understanding with the client regarding an audit of the financial statements generally includes the following matters.

- The objective of the audit is the expression of an opinion on the financial statements.
- Management is responsible for the entity's financial statements.
- Management is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting.
- Management is responsible for identifying and ensuring that the entity complies with the laws and regulations applicable to its activities.
- Management is responsible for making all financial records and related information available to the auditor.
- At the conclusion of the engagement, management will provide the auditor with a letter that confirms certain representations made during the audit.
- The auditor is responsible for conducting the audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Those standards require that the auditor obtain reasonable rather than absolute assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether caused by error or fraud. Accordingly, a material misstatement may remain undetected. Also, an audit is not designed to detect error or fraud that is immaterial to the financial statements. If, for any reason, the auditor is unable to complete the audit or is unable to form or has not formed an opinion, he or she may decline to express an opinion or decline to issue a report as a result of the engagement.
- An audit includes obtaining an understanding of internal control sufficient to plan the audit and to determine the nature, timing, and

² The objectives of certain engagements may differ. The understanding should reflect the effects of those objectives on the responsibilities of management and the auditor, and on the limitations of the engagement. The following are examples:

- Reviews of interim financial information (see section 722, *Interim Financial Information*, paragraph .07)
- Audits of recipients of governmental financial assistance (see section 801, *Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance*, paragraph .10)
- Application of agreed-upon procedures to specified elements, accounts or items of a financial statement (see AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*)

[Footnote added, effective for engagements for periods ending on or after June 15, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 83. Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10. Footnote revised, November 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 100.]

extent of audit procedures to be performed. An audit is not designed to provide assurance on internal control or to identify reportable conditions. However, the auditor is responsible for ensuring that the audit committee or others with equivalent authority or responsibility are aware of any reportable conditions which come to his or her attention.

- Management is responsible for adjusting the financial statements to correct material misstatements and for affirming to the auditor in the representation letter that the effects of any uncorrected misstatements³ aggregated by the auditor during the current engagement and pertaining to the latest period presented are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the financial statements taken as a whole.

These matters may be communicated in the form of an engagement letter. [Paragraph added, effective for engagements for periods ending on or after June 15, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 83. As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89.]

.07 An understanding with the client also may include other matters, such as the following:

- Arrangements regarding the conduct of the engagement (for example, timing, client assistance regarding the preparation of schedules, and the availability of documents)
- Arrangements concerning involvement of specialists or internal auditors, if applicable
- Arrangements involving a predecessor auditor
- Arrangements regarding fees and billing
- Any limitation of or other arrangements regarding the liability of the auditor or the client, such as indemnification to the auditor for liability arising from knowing misrepresentations to the auditor by management (Regulators, including the Securities and Exchange Commission, may restrict or prohibit such liability limitation arrangements.)
- Conditions under which access to the auditor's working papers may be granted to others
- Additional services to be provided relating to regulatory requirements
- Arrangements regarding other services to be provided in connection with the engagement

[Paragraph added, effective for engagements for periods ending on or after June 15, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 83.]

³ Section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, paragraph .04, states that a misstatement can result from errors or fraud. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89.]

AU Section 311

Planning and Supervision

Source: SAS No. 22; SAS No. 47; SAS No. 48; SAS No. 77.

See section 9311 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for periods ending after September 30, 1978, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 The first standard of field work requires that “the work is to be adequately planned and assistants, if any, are to be properly supervised.” This section provides guidance to the independent auditor conducting an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards on the considerations and procedures applicable to planning and supervision, including preparing an audit program, obtaining knowledge of the entity’s business, and dealing with differences of opinion among firm personnel. Planning and supervision continue throughout the audit, and the related procedures frequently overlap.

.02 The auditor with final responsibility for the audit may delegate portions of the planning and supervision of the audit to other firm personnel. For purposes of this section, (a) firm personnel other than the auditor with final responsibility for the audit are referred to as *assistants* and (b) the term *auditor* refers to either the auditor with final responsibility for the audit or assistants.

Planning

.03 Audit planning involves developing an overall strategy for the expected conduct and scope of the audit. The nature, extent, and timing of planning vary with the size and complexity of the entity, experience with the entity, and knowledge of the entity’s business. In planning the audit, the auditor should consider, among other matters:

- a. Matters relating to the entity’s business and the industry in which it operates (see paragraph .07).
- b. The entity’s accounting policies and procedures.
- c. The methods used by the entity to process significant accounting information (see paragraph .09), including the use of service organizations, such as outside service centers.
- d. Planned assessed level of control risk. (See section 319.)
- e. Preliminary judgment about materiality levels for audit purposes.
- f. Financial statement items likely to require adjustment.
- g. Conditions that may require extension or modification of audit tests, such as the risk of material error or fraud or the existence of related party transactions.
- h. The nature of reports expected to be rendered (for example, a report on consolidated or consolidating financial statements, reports on financial statements filed with the SEC, or special reports such as those on compliance with contractual provisions).

[As amended, December, 1983, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 47. (See section 312.14.) As amended, effective for periods beginning after August 31, 1984, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48.]

.04 Procedures that an auditor may consider in planning the audit usually involve review of his records relating to the entity and discussion with other firm personnel and personnel of the entity. Examples of those procedures include:

- a. Reviewing correspondence files, prior year's working papers, permanent files, financial statements, and auditor's reports.
- b. Discussing matters that may affect the audit with firm personnel responsible for non-audit services to the entity.
- c. Inquiring about current business developments affecting the entity.
- d. Reading the current year's interim financial statements.
- e. Discussing the type, scope, and timing of the audit with management of the entity, the board of directors, or its audit committee.
- f. Considering the effects of applicable accounting and auditing pronouncements, particularly new ones.
- g. Coordinating the assistance of entity personnel in data preparation.
- h. Determining the extent of involvement, if any, of consultants, specialists, and internal auditors.
- i. Establishing the timing of the audit work.
- j. Establishing and coordinating staffing requirements.

The auditor may wish to prepare a memorandum setting forth the preliminary audit plan, particularly for large and complex entities.

.05 In planning the audit, the auditor should consider the nature, extent, and timing of work to be performed and should prepare a written audit program (or set of written audit programs) for every audit. The audit program should set forth in reasonable detail the audit procedures that the auditor believes are necessary to accomplish the objectives of the audit. The form of the audit program and the extent of its detail will vary with the circumstances. In developing the program, the auditor should be guided by the results of the planning considerations and procedures. As the audit progresses, changed conditions may make it necessary to modify planned audit procedures. [As amended, effective for engagements beginning after December 15, 1995, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77.]

.06 The auditor should obtain a level of knowledge of the entity's business that will enable him to plan and perform his audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. That level of knowledge should enable him to obtain an understanding of the events, transactions, and practices that, in his judgment, may have a significant effect on the financial statements. The level of knowledge customarily possessed by management relating to managing the entity's business is substantially greater than that which is obtained by the auditor in performing his audit. Knowledge of the entity's business helps the auditor in:

- a. Identifying areas that may need special consideration.
- b. Assessing conditions under which accounting data are produced, processed, reviewed, and accumulated within the organization.
- c. Evaluating the reasonableness of estimates, such as valuation of inventories, depreciation, allowances for doubtful accounts, and percentage of completion of long-term contracts.

- d. Evaluating the reasonableness of management representations.
- e. Making judgments about the appropriateness of the accounting principles applied and the adequacy of disclosures.^[1]

.07 The auditor should obtain a knowledge of matters that relate to the nature of the entity's business, its organization, and its operating characteristics. Such matters include, for example, the type of business, types of products and services, capital structure, related parties, locations, and production, distribution, and compensation methods. The auditor should also consider matters affecting the industry in which the entity operates, such as economic conditions, government regulations, and changes in technology, as they relate to his audit. Other matters, such as accounting practices common to the industry, competitive conditions, and, if available, financial trends and ratios should also be considered by the auditor.

.08 Knowledge of an entity's business is ordinarily obtained through experience with the entity or its industry and inquiry of personnel of the entity. Working papers from prior years may contain useful information about the nature of the business, organizational structure, operating characteristics, and transactions that may require special consideration. Other sources an auditor may consult include AICPA accounting and audit guides, industry publications, financial statements of other entities in the industry, textbooks, periodicals, and individuals knowledgeable about the industry.

.09 The auditor should consider the methods the entity uses to process accounting information in planning the audit because such methods influence the design of the internal control. The extent to which computer processing is used in significant accounting applications,² as well as the complexity of that processing, may also influence the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures. Accordingly, in evaluating the effect of an entity's computer processing on an audit of financial statements, the auditor should consider matters such as—

- a. The extent to which the computer is used in each significant accounting application.
- b. The complexity of the entity's computer operations, including the use of an outside service center.³
- c. The organizational structure of the computer processing activities.
- d. The availability of data. Documents that are used to enter information into the computer for processing, certain computer files, and other evidential matter that may be required by the auditor may exist only for a short period or only in computer-readable form. In some computer systems, input documents may not exist at all because information is directly entered into the system. An entity's data retention policies may require the auditor to request retention of some information for his review or to perform audit procedures at

^[1] [Footnote deleted to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.]

² Significant accounting applications are those that relate to accounting information that can materially affect the financial statements the auditor is auditing. [Footnote added by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48.]

³ See section 324, *Service Organizations*, for guidance concerning the use of a service center for computer processing of significant accounting applications. [Footnote revised, June 1992, by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 70. Title amended, effective December 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.]

a time when the information is available. In addition, certain information generated by the computer for management's internal purposes may be useful in performing substantive tests (particularly analytical procedures).⁴

- e. The use of computer-assisted audit techniques to increase the efficiency of performing audit procedures.^[5] Using computer-assisted audit techniques may also provide the auditor with an opportunity to apply certain procedures to an entire population of accounts or transactions. In addition, in some accounting systems, it may be difficult or impossible for the auditor to analyze certain data or test specific control procedures without computer assistance.

[Paragraph added, effective for periods beginning after August 31, 1984, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48.]

.10 The auditor should consider whether specialized skills are needed to consider the effect of computer processing on the audit, to understand the controls, or to design and perform audit procedures. If specialized skills are needed, the auditor should seek the assistance of a professional possessing such skills, who may be either on the auditor's staff or an outside professional. If the use of such a professional is planned, the auditor should have sufficient computer-related knowledge to communicate the objectives of the other professional's work; to evaluate whether the specified procedures will meet the auditor's objectives; and to evaluate the results of the procedures applied as they relate to the nature, timing, and extent of other planned audit procedures. The auditor's responsibilities with respect to using such a professional are equivalent to those for other assistants.⁶ [Paragraph added, effective for periods beginning after August 31, 1984, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48.]

Supervision

.11 Supervision involves directing the efforts of assistants who are involved in accomplishing the objectives of the audit and determining whether those objectives were accomplished. Elements of supervision include instructing assistants, keeping informed of significant problems encountered, reviewing the work performed, and dealing with differences of opinion among firm personnel. The extent of supervision appropriate in a given instance depends on many factors, including the complexity of the subject matter and the qualifications of persons performing the work. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984.]

.12 Assistants should be informed of their responsibilities and the objectives of the procedures that they are to perform. They should be informed of matters that may affect the nature, extent, and timing of procedures they are to perform, such as the nature of the entity's business as it relates to their

⁴ Section 329, *Analytical Procedures*, provides guidance pertaining to such procedures. [Footnote added, effective for periods beginning after August 31, 1984, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48.]

^[5] [Footnote deleted.]

⁶ Since the use of a specialist who is effectively functioning as a member of the audit team is not covered by section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*, a computer audit specialist requires the same supervision and review as any assistant. [Footnote added, effective for periods beginning after August 31, 1984, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48.]

assignments and possible accounting and auditing problems. The auditor with final responsibility for the audit should direct assistants to bring to his attention significant accounting and auditing questions raised during the audit so that he may assess their significance. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984.]

.13 The work performed by each assistant should be reviewed to determine whether it was adequately performed and to evaluate whether the results are consistent with the conclusions to be presented in the auditor's report. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984.]

.14 The auditor with final responsibility for the audit and assistants should be aware of the procedures to be followed when differences of opinion concerning accounting and auditing issues exist among firm personnel involved in the audit. Such procedures should enable an assistant to document his disagreement with the conclusions reached if, after appropriate consultation, he believes it necessary to disassociate himself from the resolution of the matter. In this situation, the basis for the final resolution should also be documented. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984.]

Effective Date

.15 Statements on Auditing Standards generally are effective at the time of their issuance. However, since this section provides for practices that may differ in certain respects from practices heretofore considered acceptable, this section will be effective for audits made in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards for periods ending after September 30, 1978. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984.]

AU Section 9311

Planning and Supervision: Auditing Interpretations of Section 311

1. Communications Between the Auditor and Firm Personnel Responsible for Non-Audit Services

.01 Question—Section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, paragraph .04b, lists the following procedure that an auditor may consider in planning an audit: “Discussing matters that may affect the audit with firm personnel responsible for non-audit services to the entity.”

.02 What specific things should the auditor consider in performing this procedure?

.03 Interpretation—The auditor should consider the nature of non-audit services that have been performed. He should assess whether the services involve matters that might be expected to affect the entity’s financial statements or the performance of the audit, for example, tax planning or recommendations on a cost accounting system. If the auditor decides that the performance of the non-audit services or the information likely to have been gained from it may have implications for his audit, he should discuss the matter with personnel who rendered the services and consider how the expected conduct and scope of his audit may be affected. In some cases, the auditor may find it useful to review the pertinent portions of the work papers prepared for the non-audit engagement as an aid in determining the nature of the services rendered or the possible audit implications.

[Issue Date: February, 1980.]

[2.] Planning Considerations for an Audit of a Federally Assisted Program

[.04–.34] [Withdrawn March, 1989.]

3. Responsibility of Assistants for the Resolution of Accounting and Auditing Issues

.35 Question—Section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, paragraph .14, states, “The auditor with final responsibility for the audit and assistants should be aware of the procedures to be followed when differences of opinion concerning accounting and auditing issues exist among firm personnel involved in the audit.” What are the responsibilities of assistants when there are disagreements or concerns with respect to accounting and auditing issues of significance to the financial statements or auditor’s report?

.36 Response—Rule 201 of the Code of Professional Conduct [ET section 201.01] states that a member shall “Exercise due professional care in the performance of professional services.” The discussion of the third general standard [section 230, *Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work*, paragraph .02] states that “due professional care imposes a responsibility upon

each professional within an independent auditor's organization to observe the standards of field work and reporting." The first general standard requires assistants to meet the responsibility attached to the work assigned to them.

.37 Accordingly, each assistant has a professional responsibility to bring to the attention of appropriate individuals in the firm, disagreements or concerns the assistant might have with respect to accounting and auditing issues that he believes are of significance to the financial statements or auditor's report, however those disagreements or concerns may have arisen. In addition, each assistant should have a right to document his disagreement if he believes it is necessary to disassociate himself from the resolution of the matter.

[Issue Date: February, 1986; Revised: January, 2004.]

[4.] Audit Considerations for the Year 2000 Issue

[.38-.47] [Withdrawn July, 2000 by the Audit Issues Task Force.]

AU Section 312

Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit

Source: SAS No. 47; SAS No. 82; SAS No. 96; SAS No. 98.

See section 9312 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning after June 30, 1984, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 This section provides guidance on the auditor's consideration of audit risk and materiality when planning and performing an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Audit risk and materiality affect the application of generally accepted auditing standards, especially the standards of field work and reporting, and are reflected in the auditor's standard report. Audit risk and materiality, among other matters, need to be considered together in determining the nature, timing, and extent of auditing procedures and in evaluating the results of those procedures.

.02 The existence of audit risk is recognized in the description of the responsibilities and functions of the independent auditor that states, "Because of the nature of audit evidence and the characteristics of fraud, the auditor is able to obtain reasonable, but not absolute, assurance that material misstatements are detected."¹ Audit risk² is the risk that the auditor may unknowingly fail to appropriately modify his or her opinion on financial statements that are materially misstated.³ [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

* This section has been revised to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.

¹ See section 110, *Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor*, and section 230, *Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work*, for a further discussion of reasonable assurance. [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

² In addition to audit risk, the auditor is also exposed to loss or injury to his or her professional practice from litigation, adverse publicity, or other events arising in connection with financial statements audited and reported on. This exposure is present even though the auditor has performed the audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and has reported appropriately on those financial statements. Even if an auditor assesses this exposure as low, the auditor should not perform less extensive procedures than would otherwise be appropriate under generally accepted auditing standards.

³ This definition of audit risk does not include the risk that the auditor might erroneously conclude that the financial statements are materially misstated. In such a situation, the auditor would ordinarily reconsider or extend auditing procedures and request that the client perform specific tasks to re-evaluate the appropriateness of the financial statements. These steps would ordinarily lead the auditor to the correct conclusion. This definition also excludes the risk of an inappropriate reporting decision unrelated to the detection and evaluation of misstatements in the financial statements, such as an inappropriate decision regarding the form of the auditor's report because of a limitation on the scope of the audit. [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.03 The concept of materiality recognizes that some matters, either individually or in the aggregate, are important for fair presentation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles,⁴ while other matters are not important. The representation in the auditor's standard report regarding fair presentation, in all material respects, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles indicates the auditor's belief that the financial statements taken as a whole are not materially misstated. [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82. Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.04 Financial statements are materially misstated when they contain misstatements whose effect, individually or in the aggregate, is important enough to cause them not to be presented fairly, in all material respects, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Misstatements can result from errors or fraud.⁵ [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.05 In planning the audit, the auditor is concerned with matters that could be material to the financial statements. The auditor has no responsibility to plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance that misstatements, whether caused by errors or fraud, that are not material to the financial statements are detected. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.06 The term *errors* refers to unintentional misstatements or omissions of amounts or disclosures in financial statements. Errors may involve—

- Mistakes in gathering or processing data from which financial statements are prepared.
- Unreasonable accounting estimates arising from oversight or misinterpretation of facts.
- Mistakes in the application of accounting principles relating to amount, classification, manner of presentation, or disclosure.⁶

[Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.07 Although *fraud* is a broad legal concept, the auditor's interest specifically relates to fraudulent acts that cause a misstatement of financial statements.

⁴ The concepts of audit risk and materiality also are applicable to financial statements presented in conformity with a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles; references in this section to financial statements presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles also include those presentations.

⁵ The auditor's consideration of illegal acts and responsibility for detecting misstatements resulting from illegal acts is defined in section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*. For those illegal acts that are defined in that section as having a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts, the auditor's responsibility to detect misstatements resulting from such illegal acts is the same as that for errors or fraud. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

⁶ Errors do not include the effect of accounting processes employed for convenience, such as maintaining accounting records on the cash basis or the tax basis and periodically adjusting those records to prepare financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

Two types of misstatements are relevant to the auditor's consideration in a financial statement audit—misstatements arising from fraudulent financial reporting and misstatements arising from misappropriation of assets. These two types of misstatements are further described in section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*. The primary factor that distinguishes fraud from error is whether the underlying action that results in the misstatement in financial statements is intentional or unintentional. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.08 When considering the auditor's responsibility to obtain reasonable assurance that the financial statements are free from material misstatement, there is no important distinction between errors and fraud. There is a distinction, however, in the auditor's response to detected misstatements. Generally, an isolated, immaterial error in processing accounting data or applying accounting principles is not significant to the audit. In contrast, when fraud is detected, the auditor should consider the implications for the integrity of management or employees and the possible effect on other aspects of the audit. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.09 When concluding as to whether the effect of misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, is material, an auditor ordinarily should consider their nature and amount in relation to the nature and amount of items in the financial statements under audit. For example, an amount that is material to the financial statements of one entity may not be material to the financial statements of another entity of a different size or nature. Also, what is material to the financial statements of a particular entity might change from one period to another. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.10 The auditor's consideration of materiality is a matter of professional judgment and is influenced by his or her perception of the needs of a reasonable person who will rely on the financial statements. The perceived needs of a reasonable person are recognized in the discussion of materiality in Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 2, *Qualitative Characteristics of Accounting Information*, which defines materiality as "the magnitude of an omission or misstatement of accounting information that, in the light of surrounding circumstances, makes it probable that the judgment of a reasonable person relying on the information would have been changed or influenced by the omission or misstatement." That discussion recognizes that materiality judgments are made in light of surrounding circumstances and necessarily involve both quantitative and qualitative considerations. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.11 As a result of the interaction of quantitative and qualitative considerations in materiality judgments, misstatements of relatively small amounts that come to the auditor's attention could have a material effect on the financial statements. For example, an illegal payment of an otherwise immaterial amount could be material if there is a reasonable possibility that it could lead to a material contingent liability or a material loss of revenue.⁷ [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

⁷ See section 317. [Footnote renumbered and amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

Planning the Audit

.12 The auditor should consider audit risk and materiality both in (a) planning the audit and designing auditing procedures and (b) evaluating whether the financial statements taken as a whole are presented fairly, in all material respects, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. The auditor should consider audit risk and materiality in the first circumstance to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter on which to properly evaluate the financial statements in the second circumstance. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

Considerations at the Financial Statements Level^[8]

.13 The auditor should plan the audit so that audit risk will be limited to a low level that is, in his or her professional judgment, appropriate for expressing an opinion on the financial statements. Audit risk may be assessed in quantitative or nonquantitative terms. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.14 Section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, requires the auditor, in planning the audit, to take into consideration, among other matters, his or her preliminary judgment about materiality levels for audit purposes.⁹ That judgment may or may not be quantified. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.15 According to section 311, the nature, timing, and extent of planning and thus of the considerations of audit risk and materiality vary with the size and complexity of the entity, the auditor's experience with the entity, and his or her knowledge of the entity's business. Certain entity-related factors also affect the nature, timing, and extent of auditing procedures with respect to specific account balances and classes of transactions and related assertions. (See paragraphs .24 through .33.) [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.16 An assessment of the risk of material misstatement (whether caused by error or fraud) should be made during planning.¹⁰ The auditor's understanding of internal control may heighten or mitigate the auditor's concern about

[8] [Footnote renumbered and deleted by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

⁹ This section amends section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, paragraph .03e, by substituting the words "Preliminary judgment about materiality levels" in place of the words "Preliminary estimates of materiality levels." [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

¹⁰ Prior to or in conjunction with the information gathering procedures described in section 316.19–.34, members of the audit team should discuss the potential for material misstatement due to fraud. The discussion should include (1) an exchange of ideas or brainstorming among the audit team members and (2) an emphasis on the importance of maintaining the proper state of mind throughout the audit regarding the potential for material misstatement due to fraud. As part of planning, the auditor also should perform the following procedures to obtain information that is used (as described in section 316.35 through .42) to identify the risks of material misstatement due to fraud:

- a. Make inquiries of management and others within the entity to obtain their views about the risks of fraud and how they are addressed.
- b. Consider any unusual or unexpected relationships that have been identified in performing analytical procedures in planning the audit.
- c. Consider whether one or more fraud risk factors exist.
- d. Consider other information that may be helpful in the identification of risks material misstatement due to fraud.

The auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud should be ongoing throughout the audit (section 316.68). [Footnote added, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

the risk of material misstatement.¹¹ As part of that understanding, the auditor is required by section 316.43–.45 to evaluate whether the entity's programs and controls that address the identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud have been suitably designed and placed in operation and to assess these risks taking into account this evaluation.^[12] The auditor should consider the effect of these assessments on the overall audit strategy and the expected conduct and scope of the audit. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82. Revised, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

.17 Whenever the auditor has concluded that there is significant risk of material misstatement of the financial statements, the auditor should consider this conclusion in determining the nature, timing, or extent of procedures; assigning staff; or requiring appropriate levels of supervision. The knowledge, skill, and ability of personnel assigned significant engagement responsibilities should be commensurate with the auditor's assessment of the level of risk for the engagement. Ordinarily, higher risk requires more experienced personnel or more extensive supervision by the auditor with final responsibility for the engagement during both the planning and the conduct of the engagement. Higher risk may cause the auditor to expand the extent of procedures applied, apply procedures closer to or as of year end, particularly in critical audit areas, or modify the nature of procedures to obtain more persuasive evidence. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.18 In an audit of an entity with operations in multiple locations or components, the auditor should consider the extent to which auditing procedures should be performed at selected locations or components. The factors an auditor should consider regarding the selection of a particular location or component include (a) the nature and amount of assets and transactions executed at the location or component, (b) the degree of centralization of records or information processing, (c) the effectiveness of the control environment, particularly with respect to management's direct control over the exercise of authority delegated to others and its ability to effectively supervise activities at the location or component, (d) the frequency, timing, and scope of monitoring activities by the entity or others at the location or component, and (e) judgments about materiality of the location or component. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.19 In planning the audit, the auditor should use his or her judgment as to the appropriately low level of audit risk and his or her preliminary judgment about materiality levels in a manner that can be expected to provide, within the inherent limitations of the auditing process, sufficient evidential matter to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. Materiality levels include an overall level for each statement; however, because the statements are interrelated, and for reasons of efficiency, the auditor ordinarily considers materiality for planning purposes in terms of the smallest aggregate level of misstatements that could be considered

¹¹ See section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82. Footnote renumbered, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

^[12] [Footnote renumbered and deleted, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

material to any one of the financial statements. For example, if the auditor believes that misstatements aggregating approximately \$100,000 would have a material effect on income but that such misstatements would have to aggregate approximately \$200,000 to materially affect financial position, it would not be appropriate for him or her to design auditing procedures that would be expected to detect misstatements only if they aggregate approximately \$200,000. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.20 The auditor plans the audit to obtain reasonable assurance of detecting misstatements that he or she believes could be large enough, individually or in the aggregate, to be quantitatively material to the financial statements. Although the auditor should be alert for misstatements that could be qualitatively material, it ordinarily is not practical to design procedures to detect them. Section 326, *Evidential Matter*, states that “an auditor typically works within economic limits; his or her opinion, to be economically useful, must be formed within a reasonable length of time and at reasonable cost.” [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.21 In some situations, the auditor considers materiality for planning purposes before the financial statements to be audited are prepared. In other situations, planning takes place after the financial statements under audit have been prepared, but the auditor may be aware that they require significant modification. In both types of situations, the auditor’s preliminary judgment about materiality might be based on the entity’s annualized interim financial statements or financial statements of one or more prior annual periods, as long as recognition is given to the effects of major changes in the entity’s circumstances (for example, a significant merger) and relevant changes in the economy as a whole or the industry in which the entity operates. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.22 Assuming, theoretically, that the auditor’s judgment about materiality at the planning stage was based on the same information available at the evaluation stage, materiality for planning and evaluation purposes would be the same. However, it ordinarily is not feasible for the auditor, when planning an audit, to anticipate all of the circumstances that may ultimately influence judgments about materiality in evaluating the audit findings at the completion of the audit. Thus, the auditor’s preliminary judgment about materiality ordinarily will differ from the judgment about materiality used in evaluating the audit findings. If significantly lower materiality levels become appropriate in evaluating audit findings, the auditor should re-evaluate the sufficiency of the auditing procedures he or she has performed. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.23 In planning auditing procedures, the auditor should also consider the nature, cause (if known), and amount of misstatements that he or she is aware of from the audit of the prior period’s financial statements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

Considerations at the Individual Account-Balance or Class-of-Transactions Level

.24 The auditor recognizes that there is an inverse relationship between audit risk and materiality considerations. For example, the risk that a particular account balance or class of transactions and related assertions could be misstated

by an extremely large amount might be very low, but the risk that it could be misstated by an extremely small amount might be very high. Holding other planning considerations equal, either a decrease in the level of audit risk that the auditor judges to be appropriate in an account balance or a class of transactions or a decrease in the amount of misstatements in the balance or class that the auditor believes could be material would require the auditor to do one or more of the following: (a) select a more effective auditing procedure, (b) perform auditing procedures closer to year end, or (c) increase the extent of a particular auditing procedure. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.25 In determining the nature, timing, and extent of auditing procedures to be applied to a specific account balance or class of transactions, the auditor should design procedures to obtain reasonable assurance of detecting misstatements that he or she believes, based on the preliminary judgment about materiality, could be material, when aggregated with misstatements in other balances or classes, to the financial statements taken as a whole. Auditors use various methods to design procedures to detect such misstatements. In some cases, auditors explicitly estimate, for planning purposes, the maximum amount of misstatements in the balance or class that, when combined with misstatements in other balances or classes, could exist without causing the financial statements to be materially misstated. In other cases, auditors relate their preliminary judgment about materiality to a specific account balance or class of transactions without explicitly estimating such misstatements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.26 The auditor needs to consider audit risk at the individual account-balance or class-of-transactions level because such consideration directly assists in determining the scope of auditing procedures for the balance or class and related assertions. The auditor should seek to restrict audit risk at the individual balance or class level in such a way that will enable him or her, at the completion of the audit, to express an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole at an appropriately low level of audit risk. Auditors use various approaches to accomplish that objective. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.27 At the account-balance or class-of-transactions level, audit risk consists of (a) the risk (consisting of inherent risk and control risk) that the balance or class and related assertions contain misstatements (whether caused by error or fraud) that could be material to the financial statements when aggregated with misstatements in other balances or classes and (b) the risk (detection risk) that the auditor will not detect such misstatements. The discussion that follows describes audit risk in terms of three component risks.¹³ The way the auditor considers these component risks and combines them involves professional judgment and depends on the audit approach.

- a. Inherent risk* is the susceptibility of an assertion to a material misstatement, assuming that there are no related controls. The risk of such misstatement is greater for some assertions and related balances or

¹³ The formula in the appendix [paragraph .48] to section 350, *Audit Sampling*, describes audit risk in terms of four component risks. Detection risk is presented in terms of two components: the risk that analytical procedures and other relevant substantive tests would fail to detect misstatements equal to tolerable misstatement, and the allowable risk of incorrect acceptance for the substantive test of details. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997. Footnote renumbered, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

classes than for others. For example, complex calculations are more likely to be misstated than simple calculations. Cash is more susceptible to theft than an inventory of coal. Accounts consisting of amounts derived from accounting estimates pose greater risks than do accounts consisting of relatively routine, factual data. External factors also influence inherent risk. For example, technological developments might make a particular product obsolete, thereby causing inventory to be more susceptible to overstatement. In addition to those factors that are peculiar to a specific assertion for an account balance or a class of transactions, factors that relate to several or all of the balances or classes may influence the inherent risk related to an assertion for a specific balance or class. These latter factors include, for example, a lack of sufficient working capital to continue operations or a declining industry characterized by a large number of business failures.

- b. *Control risk* is the risk that a material misstatement that could occur in an assertion will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis by the entity's internal control. That risk is a function of the effectiveness of the design and operation of internal control in achieving the entity's objectives relevant to preparation of the entity's financial statements. Some control risk will always exist because of the inherent limitations of internal control.
- c. *Detection risk* is the risk that the auditor will not detect a material misstatement that exists in an assertion. Detection risk is a function of the effectiveness of an auditing procedure and of its application by the auditor. It arises partly from uncertainties that exist when the auditor does not examine 100 percent of an account balance or a class of transactions and partly because of other uncertainties that exist even if he or she were to examine 100 percent of the balance or class. Such other uncertainties arise because an auditor might select an inappropriate auditing procedure, misapply an appropriate procedure, or misinterpret the audit results. These other uncertainties can be reduced to a negligible level through adequate planning and supervision and conduct of a firm's audit practice in accordance with appropriate quality control standards.

[Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

.28 Inherent risk and control risk differ from detection risk in that they exist independently of the audit of financial statements, whereas detection risk relates to the auditor's procedures and can be changed at his or her discretion. Detection risk should bear an inverse relationship to inherent and control risk. The less the inherent and control risk the auditor believes exists, the greater the detection risk that can be accepted. Conversely, the greater the inherent and control risk the auditor believes exists, the less the detection risk that can be accepted. These components of audit risk may be assessed in quantitative terms such as percentages or in nonquantitative terms that range, for example, from a minimum to a maximum. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.29 When the auditor assesses inherent risk for an assertion related to an account balance or a class of transactions, he or she evaluates numerous factors that involve professional judgment. In doing so, the auditor considers not only factors peculiar to the related assertion, but also, other factors pervasive to the

financial statements taken as a whole that may also influence inherent risk related to the assertion. If an auditor concludes that the effort required to assess inherent risk for an assertion would exceed the potential reduction in the extent of auditing procedures derived from such an assessment, the auditor should assess inherent risk as being at the maximum when designing auditing procedures. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.30 The auditor also uses professional judgment in assessing control risk for an assertion related to the account balance or class of transactions. The auditor's assessment of control risk is based on the sufficiency of evidential matter obtained to support the effectiveness of internal control in preventing or detecting misstatements in financial statement assertions. If the auditor believes controls are unlikely to pertain to an assertion or are unlikely to be effective, or believes that evaluating their effectiveness would be inefficient, he or she would assess control risk for that assertion at the maximum. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.31 The auditor might make separate or combined assessments of inherent risk and control risk. If the auditor considers inherent risk or control risk, separately or in combination, to be less than the maximum, he or she should have an appropriate basis for these assessments. This basis may be obtained, for example, through the use of questionnaires, checklists, instructions, or similar generalized materials and, in the case of control risk, the understanding of internal control and the performance of suitable tests of controls. However, professional judgment is required in interpreting, adapting, or expanding such generalized material as appropriate in the circumstances. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.32 The detection risk that the auditor can accept in the design of auditing procedures is based on the level to which he or she seeks to restrict audit risk related to the account balance or class of transactions and on the assessment of inherent and control risks. As the auditor's assessment of inherent risk and control risk decreases, the detection risk that can be accepted increases. It is not appropriate, however, for an auditor to rely completely on assessments of inherent risk and control risk to the exclusion of performing substantive tests of account balances and classes of transactions where misstatements could exist that might be material when aggregated with misstatements in other balances or classes. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.33 An audit of financial statements is a cumulative process; as the auditor performs planned auditing procedures, the evidence obtained may cause him or her to modify the nature, timing, and extent of other planned procedures. As a result of performing auditing procedures or from other sources during the audit, information may come to the auditor's attention that differs significantly from the information on which the audit plan was based. For example, the extent of misstatements detected may alter the judgment about the levels of inherent and control risks, and other information obtained about the financial statements may alter the preliminary judgment about materiality. In such cases, the auditor may need to re-evaluate the auditing procedures he or she plans to apply, based on the revised consideration of audit risk and materiality for all or certain of the account balances or classes of transactions and related assertions. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.]

Evaluating Audit Findings

.34 In evaluating whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, the auditor should consider the effects, both individually and in the aggregate, of misstatements that are not corrected by the entity. In evaluating the effects of misstatements, the auditor should include both qualitative and quantitative considerations (see paragraphs .08–.11). The consideration and aggregation of misstatements should include the auditor's best estimate of the total misstatements in the account balances or classes of transactions that he or she has examined (hereafter referred to as likely misstatements¹⁴), not just the amount of misstatements specifically identified (hereafter referred to as known misstatements).¹⁵ Likely misstatements should be aggregated in a way that enables the auditor to consider whether, in relation to individual amounts, subtotals, or totals in the financial statements, they materially misstate the financial statements taken as a whole. Qualitative considerations also influence the auditor in reaching a conclusion as to whether misstatements are material. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997. As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.35 When the auditor tests an account balance or a class of transactions and related assertions by an analytical procedure, he or she ordinarily would not specifically identify misstatements but would only obtain an indication of whether misstatement might exist in the balance or class and possibly its approximate magnitude. If the analytical procedure indicates that a misstatement might exist, but not its approximate amount, the auditor ordinarily would have to employ other procedures to enable him or her to estimate the likely misstatement in the balance or class. When an auditor uses audit sampling to test an assertion for an account balance or a class of transactions, he or she projects the amount of known misstatements identified in the sample to the items in the balance or class from which the sample was selected. That projected misstatement, along with the results of other substantive tests, contributes to the auditor's assessment of likely misstatement in the balance or class.^[16–17] [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997. As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.36 The risk of material misstatement of the financial statements is generally greater when account balances and classes of transactions include accounting estimates rather than essentially factual data because of the inherent subjectivity in estimating future events. Estimates, such as those for

¹⁴ The term *likely misstatements* includes any known misstatements.

See section 316.75–.77 for a further discussion of the auditor's consideration of differences between the accounting records and the underlying facts and circumstances. Those paragraphs provide specific guidance on the auditor's consideration of an audit adjustment that is, or may be, the result of fraud. [Footnote added, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98. Footnote renumbered and revised, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

¹⁵ If the auditor were to examine all of the items in a balance or a class, the likely misstatement applicable to recorded transactions in the balance or class would be the amount of known misstatements specifically identified. [Footnote added, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98. Footnote renumbered, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

^[16–17] [Footnote renumbered and deleted by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002. Footnote subsequently renumbered, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

inventory obsolescence, uncollectible receivables, and warranty obligations, are subject not only to the unpredictability of future events but also to misstatements that may arise from using inadequate or inappropriate data or misapplying appropriate data. Since no one accounting estimate can be considered accurate with certainty, the auditor recognizes that a difference between an estimated amount best supported by the audit evidence and the estimated amount included in the financial statements may be reasonable, and such difference would not be considered to be a likely misstatement. However, if the auditor believes the estimated amount included in the financial statements is unreasonable, he or she should treat the difference between that estimate and the closest reasonable estimate as a likely misstatement. The auditor should also consider whether the difference between estimates best supported by the audit evidence and the estimates included in the financial statements, which are individually reasonable, indicate a possible bias on the part of the entity's management. For example, if each accounting estimate included in the financial statements was individually reasonable, but the effect of the difference between each estimate and the estimate best supported by the audit evidence was to increase income, the auditor should reconsider the estimates taken as a whole. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997. As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.37 In prior periods, likely misstatements may not have been corrected by the entity because they did not cause the financial statements for those periods to be materially misstated. Those misstatements might also affect the current period's financial statements.¹⁸ If the auditor believes that there is an unacceptably high risk that the current period's financial statements may be materially misstated when those prior-period likely misstatements that affect the current period's financial statements are considered along with likely misstatements arising in the current period, the auditor should include in aggregate likely misstatement the effect on the current period's financial statements of those prior-period likely misstatements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997.]

.38 If the auditor concludes, based on the accumulation of sufficient evidential matter, that the effects of likely misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, cause the financial statements to be materially misstated, the auditor should request management to eliminate the misstatement. If the material misstatement is not eliminated, the auditor should issue a qualified or an adverse opinion on the financial statements. Material misstatements may be eliminated by, for example, application of appropriate accounting principles, other adjustments in amounts, or the addition of appropriate disclosure of inadequately disclosed matters. Even though the effects of likely misstatements on the financial statements may be immaterial, the auditor should recognize that an accumulation of immaterial misstatements in the balance sheet could contribute to material misstatements of future financial statements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997. As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

¹⁸ The measurement of the effect, if any, on the current period's financial statements of misstatements uncorrected in prior periods involves accounting considerations and is therefore not addressed in this section. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002. Footnote subsequently renumbered, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

.39 If the auditor concludes that the effects of likely misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, do not cause the financial statements to be materially misstated, he or she should recognize that they could still be materially misstated because of further misstatement remaining undetected. As the aggregate likely misstatements increase, the risk that the financial statements may be materially misstated also increases. The auditor generally reduces this risk of material misstatement in planning the audit by restricting the extent of detection risk he or she is willing to accept for an assertion related to an account balance or a class of transactions. The auditor can reduce this risk of material misstatement by modifying the nature, timing, and extent of planned auditing procedures in performing the audit. (See paragraph .33.) Nevertheless, if the auditor believes that such risk is unacceptably high, he or she should perform additional auditing procedures or satisfy himself or herself that the entity has adjusted the financial statements to reduce the risk of material misstatement to an acceptable level. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997. As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.40 The auditor should document the nature and effect of aggregated misstatements. The auditor also should document his or her conclusion as to whether the aggregated misstatements cause the financial statements to be materially misstated. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after May 15, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96.]

.41 In aggregating likely misstatements that the entity has not corrected, pursuant to paragraphs .34 and .35, the auditor may designate an amount below which misstatements need not be accumulated. This amount should be set so that any such misstatements, either individually or when aggregated with other such misstatements, would not be material to the financial statements, after the possibility of further undetected misstatements is considered. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82. Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96, January 2002. As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

Effective Date

.42 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning after June 30, 1984. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82, February 1997. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96, January 2002.]

AU Section 9312

Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit: Auditing Interpretations of Section 312

1. The Meaning of the Term *Misstatement*

.01 Question—Section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, paragraph .04, states that financial statements would be considered materially misstated if “they contain misstatements whose effect, individually or in the aggregate, is important enough to cause them not to be presented fairly, in all material respects, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.” Section 312.04 also states that misstatements can result from errors or fraud. The term *misstatement* is used throughout generally accepted auditing standards; however, this term is not defined. What is the meaning of the term *misstatement*?

.02 Interpretation—In the absence of materiality considerations, a misstatement causes the financial statements not to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.¹ A misstatement may consist of any of the following:

- a. A difference between the amount, classification, or presentation of a reported financial statement element, account, or item and the amount, classification, or presentation that would have been reported under generally accepted accounting principles
- b. The omission of a financial statement element, account, or item
- c. A financial statement disclosure that is not presented in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles
- d. The omission of information required to be disclosed in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

.03 Misstatements may be of two types: known and likely. Section 312.35 refers to known misstatements as “the amount of misstatements specifically identified.” For example, the failure to accrue an unpaid invoice for goods received or services rendered prior to the end of the period presented would be a known misstatement. Section 312.35 refers to likely misstatements as “the auditor’s best estimate of the total misstatements in the account balances or classes of transactions....” Likely misstatements may be identified when an auditor performs analytical or sampling procedures. For example, if an auditor applies sampling procedures to a certain class of transactions that identify a known misstatement in the items sampled, the auditor will then determine the likely misstatement by projecting the known difference identified in the sample to the total population tested. With regard to analytical procedures, section 312.35 states, in part—

When the auditor tests an account balance or class of transactions and related assertions by an analytical procedure, he or she ordinarily would not specifically identify misstatements but would only obtain an indication of whether

¹ Reference to generally accepted accounting principles includes, where applicable, a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles as defined in section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraph .04.

misstatements might exist in the balance or class and possibly its approximate magnitude. If the analytical procedure indicates that a misstatement might exist, but not its approximate amount, the auditor ordinarily would have to employ other procedures to enable him or her to estimate the likely misstatement in the balance or class.

.04 Likely misstatements also are associated with accounting estimates. Section 312.36 states, in part—

The risk of material misstatement of the financial statements is generally greater when account balances and classes of transactions include accounting estimates rather than essentially factual data because of the inherent subjectivity in estimating future events. Estimates, such as those for inventory obsolescence, uncollectible receivables, and warranty obligations, are subject not only to the unpredictability of future events but also to misstatements that may arise from using inadequate or inappropriate data or misapplying appropriate data. Since no one accounting estimate can be considered accurate with certainty, the auditor recognizes that a difference between an estimated amount best supported by the audit evidence and the estimated amount included in the financial statements may be reasonable, and such difference would not be considered to be a likely misstatement. However, if the auditor believes the estimated amount included in the financial statements is unreasonable, he or she should treat the difference between that estimate and the closest reasonable estimate as a likely misstatement and aggregate it with other likely misstatements.

[Issue Date: December, 2000.]

2. Evaluating Differences in Estimates

.05 Question—Section 312.36 states, in part—

Since no one accounting estimate can be considered accurate with certainty, the auditor recognizes that a difference between an estimated amount best supported by the audit evidence and the estimated amount included in the financial statements may be reasonable, and such difference would not be considered to be a likely misstatement. However, if the auditor believes the estimated amount included in the financial statements is unreasonable, he or she should treat the difference between that estimate and the closest reasonable estimate as a likely misstatement and aggregate it with other likely misstatements.

With respect to an estimate, what should the auditor consider in determining the amount of the likely misstatements to be aggregated?

.06 Interpretation—In determining the amount of the likely misstatements to be aggregated, the auditor considers the “closest reasonable estimate” which may be a range of acceptable amounts or a point estimate, if that is a better estimate than any other amount.

.07 In some cases the auditor may use a method that produces a range of acceptable amounts to determine the reasonableness of amounts recorded. For example, the auditor’s analysis of specific problem accounts receivable and recent trends in bad-debt write-offs as a percent of sales may cause the auditor to conclude that the allowance for doubtful accounts should be between \$130,000 and \$160,000. If management’s recorded estimate falls within that range, the auditor ordinarily would conclude that the recorded amount is reasonable and no difference would be aggregated. If management’s recorded estimate falls outside the auditor’s range of acceptable amounts, the difference

between the recorded amount and the amount at the closest end of the auditor's range would be aggregated as a misstatement. For example, if management has recorded \$110,000 as the allowance, the amount by which the recorded estimate falls outside the range (\$20,000) is aggregated as a misstatement.

.08 In other cases the auditor may determine that a point estimate is a better estimate than any other amount. In those situations, the auditor would use that amount to determine the reasonableness of the recorded amount. The auditor would compare the point estimate to the amount recorded by the client and include any difference in the aggregation of misstatements.²

.09 Section 312.36 indicates that the auditor should be alert to the possibility that management's recorded estimates are clustered at either end of the auditor's range of acceptable amounts, indicating a possible bias on the part of management. Section 312.36 states, in part—

The auditor should also consider whether the difference between estimates best supported by the audit evidence and the estimates included in the financial statements, which are individually reasonable, indicate a possible bias on the part of the entity's management. For example, if each accounting estimate included in the financial statements was individually reasonable, but the effect of the difference between each estimate and the estimate best supported by the audit evidence was to increase income, the auditor should reconsider the estimates taken as a whole.

In these circumstances, the auditor should reconsider whether other recorded estimates reflect a similar bias and should perform additional audit procedures that address those estimates. In addition, the auditor should be alert to the possibility that management's recorded estimates were clustered at one end of the range of acceptable amounts in the preceding year and clustered at the other end of the range of acceptable amounts in the current year, thus indicating the possibility that management is using swings in accounting estimates to offset higher or lower than expected earnings. If the auditor believes that such circumstances exist, the auditor should consider whether these matters should be communicated to the entity's audit committee, as described in section 380, *Communication With Audit Committees*, paragraphs .08 and .11.

[Issue Date: December, 2000.]

3. Quantitative Measures of Materiality in Evaluating Audit Findings

.10 Question—Section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, provides guidance to the auditor on evaluating the effect of misstatements on the financial statements under audit. Section 312.10 states, in part—

The auditor's consideration of materiality is a matter of professional judgment and is influenced by his or her perception of the needs of a reasonable person who will rely on the financial statements.

Section 312.34 further describes the auditor's evaluation of the quantitative aspects of materiality. It states, in part—

In evaluating whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, the auditor should aggregate misstatements that the entity has not corrected in a way that enables him or her to consider whether, in relation to individual amounts, subtotals, or totals in the financial statements, they materially misstate the financial statements taken as a whole.

² See Interpretation No. 14, "Reasonable Estimation of the Amount of a Loss" of FASB Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*.

What factors should the auditor consider in assessing the *quantitative* impact of identified misstatements?

.11 Interpretation—The quantitative evaluation of identified misstatements is a matter of professional judgment and should reflect a measure of materiality that is based on the element or elements of the financial statements that, in the auditor's judgment, are expected to affect the judgment of a reasonable person who will rely on the financial statements, considering the nature of the reporting entity. For example, it is generally recognized that after-tax income from continuing operations is, in most circumstances, the measure of greatest significance to the financial statement users of entities whose debt or equity securities are publicly traded. Depending on the entity's particular circumstances, other elements of the financial statements that may be useful in making a quantitative assessment of the materiality of identified misstatements include current assets, net working capital, total assets, total revenues, gross profit, total equity, and cash flows from operations. In all instances, the element or elements selected should reflect, in the auditor's judgment, the measures most likely to be considered important by the financial statement users.

.12 Question—An entity's after-tax income or loss from continuing operations may be nominal or may fluctuate widely from year to year due to the inclusion in the results of operations of significant, unusual, or infrequently occurring income or expense items. What other quantitative measures could be considered if after-tax income or loss from continuing operations is nominal or fluctuates widely from period to period?

.13 Interpretation—In certain circumstances, a quantitative measure of materiality based on after-tax income from continuing operations may not be appropriate. The auditor may identify another element or elements that are appropriate in the circumstances or may compute an amount of current-year after-tax income from continuing operations adjusted to exclude unusual or infrequently occurring items of income or expense.³

.14 The selection of an alternate element or elements for use in assessing a quantitative measure of materiality is a matter of the auditor's professional judgment. In choosing an alternate element or elements, the auditor should evaluate the perceived needs of the financial statement users, the particular circumstances that caused the abnormal results for the current year, the likelihood of their recurrence, and any other matters that, in the auditor's judgment, may be relevant to a quantitative assessment of materiality.

[Issue Date: December, 2000.]

4. Considering the Qualitative Characteristics of Misstatements

.15 Question—Section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, paragraph .34, states, in part—

Qualitative considerations also influence the auditor in reaching a conclusion as to whether misstatements are material.

What qualitative factors should the auditor consider in assessing whether misstatements are material?

³ Paragraph 26 of APB Opinion No. 30, *Reporting the Results of Operations—Reporting the Effects of Disposal of a Segment of a Business, and Extraordinary, Unusual and Infrequently Occurring Events and Transactions*, discusses unusual or infrequently occurring items.

.16 Interpretation—Section 312.10 states that the auditor's consideration of materiality is a matter of professional judgment and is influenced by his or her perception of the needs of a reasonable person. Section 312.11 states—

As a result of the interaction of quantitative and qualitative considerations in materiality judgments, misstatements of relatively small amounts that come to the auditor's attention could have a material effect on the financial statements. For example, an illegal payment of an otherwise immaterial amount could be material if there is a reasonable possibility that it could lead to a material contingent liability or a material loss of revenue.

Section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .36, states that the significance of an item to a particular entity (for example, inventories to a manufacturing company), the pervasiveness of the misstatement (such as whether it affects the amounts and presentation of numerous financial statement items), and the effect of the misstatement on the financial statements taken as a whole are all factors to be considered in making a judgment regarding materiality. Section 312.10 also makes reference to the discussion of materiality in Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 2, *Qualitative Characteristics of Accounting Information*. FASB Concepts Statement No. 2, paragraphs 123 through 132, includes a discussion about matters that might affect a materiality judgment.

.17 The auditor considers relevant qualitative factors in his or her qualitative considerations. Qualitative factors the auditor may consider relevant to his or her consideration include the following:

- a. The potential effect of the misstatement on trends, especially trends in profitability.
- b. A misstatement that changes a loss into income or vice versa.
- c. The effect of the misstatement on segment information, for example, the significance of the matter to a particular segment important to the future profitability of the entity, the pervasiveness of the matter on the segment information, and the impact of the matter on trends in segment information, all in relation to the financial statements taken as a whole. (See Interpretation No. 4 of section 326, *Evidential Matter*, "Applying Auditing Procedures to Segment Disclosures in Financial Statements" [section 9326.39]).
- d. The potential effect of the misstatement on the entity's compliance with loan covenants, other contractual agreements, and regulatory provisions.
- e. The existence of statutory or regulatory reporting requirements that affect materiality thresholds.
- f. A misstatement that has the effect of increasing management's compensation, for example, by satisfying the requirements for the award of bonuses or other forms of incentive compensation.
- g. The sensitivity of the circumstances surrounding the misstatement, for example, the implications of misstatements involving fraud and possible illegal acts, violations of contractual provisions, and conflicts of interest.
- h. The significance of the financial statement element affected by the misstatement, for example, a misstatement affecting recurring earnings as contrasted to one involving a non-recurring charge or credit, such as an extraordinary item.

- i.* The effects of misclassifications, for example, misclassification between operating and non-operating income or recurring and non-recurring income items or a misclassification between fundraising costs and program activity costs in a not-for-profit organization.
- j.* The significance of the misstatement or disclosures relative to known user needs, for example—
 - The significance of earnings and earnings per share to public-company investors and the significance of equity amounts to private-company creditors.
 - The magnifying effects of a misstatement on the calculation of purchase price in a transfer of interests (buy/sell agreement).
 - The effect of misstatements of earnings when contrasted with expectations.

Obtaining the views and expectations of the entity's audit committee and management may be helpful in gaining or corroborating an understanding of user needs, such as those illustrated above.

- k.* The definitive character of the misstatement, for example, the precision of an error that is objectively determinable as contrasted with a misstatement that unavoidably involves a degree of subjectivity through estimation, allocation, or uncertainty.
- l.* The motivation of management with respect to the misstatement, for example, (i) an indication of a possible pattern of bias by management when developing and accumulating accounting estimates or (ii) a misstatement precipitated by management's continued unwillingness to correct weaknesses in the financial reporting process.
- m.* The existence of offsetting effects of individually significant but different misstatements.
- n.* The likelihood that a misstatement that is currently immaterial may have a material effect in future periods because of a cumulative effect, for example, that builds over several periods.
- o.* The cost of making the correction—it may not be cost-beneficial for the client to develop a system to calculate a basis to record the effect of an immaterial misstatement. On the other hand, if management appears to have developed a system to calculate an amount that represents an immaterial misstatement, it may reflect a motivation of management as noted in paragraph .17(*l*) above.
- p.* The risk that possible additional undetected misstatements would affect the auditor's evaluation.

[Issue Date: December, 2000.]

AU Section 313***Substantive Tests Prior to the Balance-Sheet Date***

(Supersedes SAS No. 1, section 310.05-.09)*

Source: SAS No. 45.

Effective for periods ended after September 30, 1983, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 This section provides guidance for audits of financial statements concerning—

- a. Factors to be considered before applying principal substantive tests to the details of particular asset or liability accounts as of a date (*interim date*) that is prior to the balance-sheet date.
- b. Auditing procedures to provide a reasonable basis for extending from an interim date to the balance-sheet date (*remaining period*) the audit conclusions from such principal substantive tests.
- c. Coordinating the timing of auditing procedures.

Guidance concerning the timing of tests of controls is provided in section 319.99. [Revised, May 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.02 Audit testing at interim dates may permit early consideration of significant matters affecting the year-end financial statements (for example, related party transactions, changed conditions, recent accounting pronouncements, and financial statement items likely to require adjustment). In addition, much of the audit planning, including obtaining an understanding of internal control, assessing control risk and the application of substantive tests to transactions can be conducted prior to the balance-sheet date.¹

.03 Applying principal substantive tests to the details of an asset or liability account as of an interim date rather than as of the balance-sheet date potentially increases the risk that misstatements that may exist at the balance-sheet date will not be detected by the auditor. The potential for such increased audit risk tends to become greater as the remaining period is lengthened. This potential incremental audit risk can be controlled, however,

* Editor's note deleted to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.

¹ Substantive tests such as the following can be applied to transactions through any selected date(s) prior to the balance-sheet date and completed as part of the year-end procedures: (1) tests of details of the additions to and reductions of accounts such as property, investments, and debt and equity capital; (2) tests of details of transactions affecting income and expense accounts; (3) tests of accounts that are not to be audited by testing the details of items composing the balance (for example, warranty reserves, clearing accounts, certain deferred charges); and (4) analytical procedures applied to income and expense accounts.

if the substantive tests to cover the remaining period can be designed in a way that will provide a reasonable basis for extending to the balance-sheet date the audit conclusions from the tests of details at the interim date.

Factors to Be Considered Before Applying Principal Substantive Tests to the Details of Balance-Sheet Accounts at Interim Dates

.04 Before applying principal substantive tests to the details of asset or liability accounts at an interim date, the auditor should assess the difficulty in controlling the incremental audit risk. Paragraphs .05 through .07 discuss considerations that affect that assessment. In addition, the auditor should consider the cost of the substantive tests that are necessary to cover the remaining period in a way that will provide the appropriate audit assurance at the balance-sheet date. Applying principal substantive tests to the details of asset and liability accounts at an interim date may not be cost-effective if substantive tests to cover the remaining period cannot be restricted due to the assessed level of control risk.

.05 Assessing control risk at below the maximum is not required in order to have a reasonable basis for extending audit conclusions from an interim date to the balance-sheet date; however, if the auditor assesses control risk at the maximum during the remaining period, he should consider whether the effectiveness of certain of the substantive tests to cover that period will be impaired. For example, effective controls may be lacking over the internal documents that provide indications of transactions that have been executed. Substantive tests that are based on such documents and relate to the completeness assertion for the remaining period may be ineffective because the documents may be incomplete. Likewise, substantive tests covering the remaining period that relate to the existence assertion at the balance-sheet date may be ineffective if effective controls over the custody and physical movement of assets are not present. In both of the above examples, if the auditor concludes that the effectiveness of such substantive tests would be impaired, additional assurance should be sought or the accounts should be examined as of the balance-sheet date.

.06 The auditor should consider whether there are rapidly changing business conditions or circumstances that might predispose management to misstate financial statements in the remaining period.² If such conditions or circumstances are present, the auditor might conclude that the substantive tests to cover the remaining period would not be effective in controlling the incremental audit risk associated with them. In those situations, the asset and liability accounts affected should ordinarily be examined as of the balance-sheet date.

.07 The auditor should consider whether the year-end balances of the particular asset or liability accounts that might be selected for interim examination are reasonably predictable with respect to amount, relative significance, and composition. He should also consider whether the entity's proposed procedures for analyzing and adjusting such accounts at interim dates and for establishing proper accounting cutoffs are appropriate. In addition, the auditor

² See section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, paragraph .85 (Appendix). [Footnote revised, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

should consider whether the accounting system will provide information concerning the balances at the balance-sheet date and the transactions in the remaining period that is sufficient to permit investigation of (a) significant unusual transactions or entries (including those at or near year-end); (b) other causes of significant fluctuations, or expected fluctuations that did not occur; and (c) changes in the composition of the account balances. If the auditor concludes that evidential matter related to the above would not be sufficient for purposes of controlling audit risk, the account should be examined as of the balance-sheet date.

Extending Audit Conclusions to the Balance-Sheet Date

.08 Substantive tests should be designed to cover the remaining period in such a way that the assurance from those tests and the substantive tests applied to the details of the balance as of an interim date, and any audit assurance provided from the assessed level of control risk, achieve the audit objectives at the balance-sheet date. Such tests ordinarily should include (a) comparison of information concerning the balance at the balance-sheet date with the comparable information at the interim date to identify amounts that appear unusual and investigation of any such amounts and (b) other analytical procedures or substantive tests of details, or a combination of both, to provide a reasonable basis for extending to the balance-sheet date the audit conclusions relative to the assertions tested directly or indirectly at the interim date.³

.09 If misstatements are detected in account balances at interim dates, the auditor may be required to modify the planned nature, timing, or extent of the substantive tests covering the remaining period that relate to such accounts or to reperform certain auditing procedures at the balance-sheet date. The assessment of possible misstatement as of the balance-sheet date should be based on the auditor's judgment of the state of the particular account(s) as of that date, after considering (a) the possible implications of the nature and cause of the misstatements detected at the interim date, (b) the possible relationship to other phases of the audit, (c) the corrections subsequently recorded by the entity, and (d) the results of auditing procedures covering the remaining period (including those that are responsive to the particular possibilities for misstatement). For example, the auditor might conclude that the estimate of unrecorded credit memos at an interim date is representative of such misstatements at the balance-sheet date, based on substantive tests covering the remaining period. On the other hand, the assessment of the possible effects at the balance-sheet date of other types of cutoff misstatements at an interim date might be based on the results of reperforming substantive tests of the cutoff.

Coordinating the Timing of Auditing Procedures

.10 The timing of auditing procedures also involves consideration of whether related auditing procedures are properly coordinated. This includes, for example—

- a. Coordinating the auditing procedures applied to related party transactions and balances.⁴

³ Factors to be considered in determining the relative mix of tests of details and analytical procedures include (1) the nature of the transactions and balances in relation to the assertions involved, (2) the availability of historical data or other criteria for use in analytical procedures, and (3) the availability of records required for effective tests of details and the nature of the tests to which they are susceptible.

⁴ See section 334, *Related Parties*.

- b.* Coordinating the testing of interrelated accounts and accounting cutoffs.
- c.* Maintaining temporary audit control over assets that are readily negotiable and simultaneously testing such assets and cash on hand and in banks, bank loans, and other related items.

Decisions about coordinating related auditing procedures should be made in the light of the assessed level of control risk and of the particular auditing procedures that could be applied, either for the remaining period or at year-end, or both.

AU Section 315

Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors

(Supersedes SAS No. 7)

Source: SAS No. 84; SAS No. 93.

Effective with respect to acceptance of an engagement after March 31, 1998, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction

.01 This section provides guidance on communications between predecessor and successor auditors when a change of auditors is in process or has taken place. It also provides communications guidance when possible misstatements are discovered in financial statements reported on by a predecessor auditor. This section applies whenever an independent auditor is considering accepting an engagement to audit or reaudit (see paragraph .14 of this section) financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, and after such auditor has been appointed to perform such an engagement.

.02 For the purposes of this section, the term *predecessor auditor* refers to an auditor who (a) has reported on the most recent audited financial statements¹ or was engaged to perform but did not complete an audit of the financial statements² and (b) has resigned, declined to stand for reappointment, or been notified that his or her services have been, or may be, terminated. The term *successor auditor* refers to an auditor who is considering accepting an engagement to audit financial statements but has not communicated with the predecessor auditor as provided in paragraphs .07 through .10 and to an auditor who has accepted such an engagement. [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

Change of Auditors

.03 An auditor should not accept an engagement until the communications described in paragraphs .07 through .10 have been evaluated.³ However, an auditor may make a proposal for an audit engagement before communicating with the predecessor auditor. The auditor may wish to advise the prospective

¹ The provisions of this section are not required if the most recent audited financial statements are more than two years prior to the beginning of the earliest period to be audited by the successor auditor.

² There may be two predecessor auditors: the auditor who reported on the most recent audited financial statements and the auditor who was engaged to perform but did not complete an audit of any subsequent financial statements. [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

³ When the most recent financial statements have been compiled or reviewed in accordance with the Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services, the accountant who reported on those financial statements is not a predecessor auditor. Although not required by this section, in these circumstances the successor auditor may find the matters described in paragraphs .08 and .09 useful in determining whether to accept the engagement.

client (for example, in a proposal) that acceptance cannot be final until the communications have been evaluated.

.04 Other communications between the successor and predecessor auditors, described in paragraph .11, are advisable to assist in the planning of the engagement. However, the timing of these other communications is more flexible. The successor auditor may initiate these other communications either prior to acceptance of the engagement or subsequent thereto.

.05 When more than one auditor is considering accepting an engagement, the predecessor auditor should not be expected to be available to respond to inquiries until a successor auditor has been selected by the prospective client and has accepted the engagement subject to the evaluation of the communications with the predecessor auditor as provided in paragraphs .07 through .10.

.06 The initiative for communicating rests with the successor auditor. The communication may be either written or oral. Both the predecessor and successor auditors should hold in confidence information obtained from each other. This obligation applies whether or not the successor auditor accepts the engagement.

Communications Before Successor Auditor Accepts Engagement

.07 Inquiry of the predecessor auditor is a necessary procedure because the predecessor auditor may be able to provide information that will assist the successor auditor in determining whether to accept the engagement. The successor auditor should bear in mind that, among other things, the predecessor auditor and the client may have disagreed about accounting principles, auditing procedures, or similarly significant matters.

.08 The successor auditor should request permission from the prospective client to make an inquiry of the predecessor auditor prior to final acceptance of the engagement. Except as permitted by the Rules of the Code of Professional Conduct, an auditor is precluded from disclosing confidential information obtained in the course of an engagement unless the client specifically consents. Thus, the successor auditor should ask the prospective client to authorize the predecessor auditor to respond fully to the successor auditor's inquiries. If a prospective client refuses to permit the predecessor auditor to respond or limits the response, the successor auditor should inquire as to the reasons and consider the implications of that refusal in deciding whether to accept the engagement.

.09 The successor auditor should make specific and reasonable inquiries of the predecessor auditor regarding matters that will assist the successor auditor in determining whether to accept the engagement. Matters subject to inquiry should include—

- Information that might bear on the integrity of management.
- Disagreements with management as to accounting principles, auditing procedures, or other similarly significant matters.
- Communications to audit committees or others with equivalent authority and responsibility⁴ regarding fraud, illegal acts by clients, and internal-control-related matters.⁵

⁴ For entities that do not have audit committees, the phrase "others with equivalent authority and responsibility" may include the board of directors, the board of trustees, or the owner in owner-managed entities.

⁵ See section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*; section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*; and section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*.

- The predecessor auditor's understanding as to the reasons for the change of auditors.

The successor auditor may wish to consider other reasonable inquiries.

.10 The predecessor auditor should respond promptly and fully, on the basis of known facts, to the successor auditor's reasonable inquiries. However, should the predecessor auditor decide, due to unusual circumstances such as impending, threatened, or potential litigation; disciplinary proceedings; or other unusual circumstances, not to respond fully to the inquiries, the predecessor auditor should clearly state that the response is limited. If the successor auditor receives a limited response, its implications should be considered in deciding whether to accept the engagement.

Other Communications

.11 The successor auditor should request that the client authorize the predecessor auditor to allow a review of the predecessor auditor's working papers. The predecessor auditor may wish to request a consent and acknowledgment letter from the client to document this authorization in an effort to reduce misunderstandings about the scope of the communications being authorized.⁶ It is customary in such circumstances for the predecessor auditor to make himself or herself available to the successor auditor and make available for review certain of the working papers. The predecessor auditor should determine which working papers are to be made available for review and which may be copied. The predecessor auditor should ordinarily permit the successor auditor to review working papers, including documentation of planning, internal control, audit results, and other matters of continuing accounting and auditing significance, such as the working paper analysis of balance sheet accounts, and those relating to contingencies. Also, the predecessor auditor should reach an understanding with the successor auditor as to the use of the working papers.⁷ The extent, if any, to which a predecessor auditor permits access to the working papers is a matter of judgment.

Successor Auditor's Use of Communications

.12 The successor auditor must obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to afford a reasonable basis for expressing an opinion on the financial statements he or she has been engaged to audit, including evaluating the consistency of the application of accounting principles. The audit evidence used in analyzing the impact of the opening balances on the current-year financial statements and consistency of accounting principles is a matter of professional judgment. Such audit evidence may include the most recent audited financial statements, the predecessor auditor's report thereon,⁸ the results of inquiry of the predecessor auditor, the results of the successor auditor's review of the predecessor auditor's working papers relating to the most recently completed audit, and audit procedures performed on the current period's transactions that

⁶ Appendix A [paragraph .24] contains an illustrative client consent and acknowledgment letter.

⁷ Before permitting access to the working papers, the predecessor auditor may wish to obtain a written communication from the successor auditor regarding the use of the working papers. Appendix B [paragraph .25] contains an illustrative successor auditor acknowledgment letter.

⁸ The successor auditor may wish to make inquiries about the professional reputation and standing of the predecessor auditor. See section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*, paragraph 10a.

may provide evidence about the opening balances or consistency. For example, evidence gathered during the current year's audit may provide information about the realizability and existence of receivables and inventory recorded at the beginning of the year. The successor auditor may also apply appropriate auditing procedures to account balances at the beginning of the period under audit and to transactions in prior periods. [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.13 The successor auditor's review of the predecessor auditor's working papers may affect the nature, timing, and extent of the successor auditor's procedures with respect to the opening balances and consistency of accounting principles. However, the nature, timing, and extent of audit work performed and the conclusions reached in both these areas are solely the responsibility of the successor auditor. In reporting on the audit, the successor auditor should not make reference to the report or work of the predecessor auditor as the basis, in part, for the successor auditor's own opinion.

Audits of Financial Statements That Have Been Previously Audited

.14 If an auditor is asked to audit and report on financial statements that have been previously audited and reported on (henceforth referred to as a reaudit), the auditor considering acceptance of the reaudit engagement is also a successor auditor, and the auditor who previously reported is also a predecessor auditor. In addition to the communications described in paragraphs .07 through .10, the successor auditor should state that the purpose of the inquiries is to obtain information about whether to accept an engagement to perform a reaudit.

.15 If the successor auditor accepts the reaudit engagement, he or she may consider the information obtained from inquiries of the predecessor auditor and review of the predecessor auditor's report and working papers in planning the reaudit. However, the information obtained from those inquiries and any review of the predecessor auditor's report and working papers is not sufficient to afford a basis for expressing an opinion. The nature, timing, and extent of the audit work performed and the conclusions reached in the reaudit are solely the responsibility of the successor auditor performing the reaudit.

.16 The successor auditor should plan and perform the reaudit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. The successor auditor should not assume responsibility for the predecessor auditor's work or issue a report that reflects divided responsibility as described in section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*. Furthermore, the predecessor auditor is not a specialist as defined in section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*, or an internal auditor as defined in section 322, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*.

.17 If the successor auditor has audited the current period, the results of that audit may be considered in planning and performing the reaudit of the preceding period or periods and may provide evidential matter that is useful in performing the reaudit.

.18 If, in a reaudit engagement, the successor auditor is unable to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to express an opinion on the financial statements, the successor auditor should qualify or disclaim an opinion because of the inability to perform procedures the successor auditor considers necessary in the circumstances.

.19 The successor auditor should request working papers for the period or periods under reaudit and the period prior to the reaudit period. However, the extent, if any, to which the predecessor auditor permits access to the working papers is a matter of judgment. (See paragraph .11 of this section.)

.20 In a reaudit, the successor auditor generally will be unable to observe inventory or make physical counts at the reaudit date or dates in the manner discussed in paragraphs .09 through .11 of section 331, *Inventories*. In such cases, the successor auditor may consider the knowledge obtained from his or her review of the predecessor auditor's working papers and inquiries of the predecessor auditor to determine the nature, timing, and extent of procedures to be applied in the circumstances. The successor auditor performing the reaudit should, if material, observe or perform some physical counts of inventory at a date subsequent to the period of the reaudit, in connection with a current audit or otherwise, and apply appropriate tests of intervening transactions. Appropriate procedures may include tests of prior transactions, reviews of records of prior counts, and the application of analytical procedures, such as gross profit tests.

Discovery of Possible Misstatements in Financial Statements Reported on by a Predecessor Auditor

.21 If during the audit or reaudit, the successor auditor becomes aware of information that leads him or her to believe that financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor may require revision, the successor auditor should request that the client inform the predecessor auditor of the situation and arrange for the three parties to discuss this information and attempt to resolve the matter. The successor auditor should communicate to the predecessor auditor any information that the predecessor auditor may need to consider in accordance with section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*, which sets out the procedures that an auditor should follow when the auditor subsequently discovers facts that may have affected the audited financial statements previously reported on.⁹

.22 If the client refuses to inform the predecessor auditor or if the successor auditor is not satisfied with the resolution of the matter, the successor auditor should evaluate (a) possible implications on the current engagement and (b) whether to resign from the engagement. Furthermore, the successor auditor may wish to consult with his or her legal counsel in determining an appropriate course of further action.

Effective Date

.23 This section will be effective with respect to acceptance of an engagement after March 31, 1998. Earlier application is permitted.

⁹ See section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .70 through .74, for reporting guidance.

Appendix A

Illustrative Client Consent and Acknowledgment Letter

1. Paragraph .11 of this section states, “The successor auditor should request that the client authorize the predecessor auditor to allow a review of the predecessor auditor’s working papers. The predecessor auditor may wish to request a consent and acknowledgment letter from the client to document this authorization in an effort to reduce misunderstandings about the scope of the communications being authorized.” The following letter is presented for illustrative purposes only and is not required by professional standards.

[Date]

ABC Enterprises
[Address]

You have given your consent to allow [*name of successor CPA firm*], as successor independent auditors for ABC Enterprises (ABC), access to our working papers for our audit of the December 31, 19X1, financial statements of ABC. You also have given your consent to us to respond fully to [*name of successor CPA firm*] inquiries. You understand and agree that the review of our working papers is undertaken solely for the purpose of obtaining an understanding about ABC and certain information about our audit to assist [*name of successor CPA firm*] in planning the audit of the December 31, 19X2, financial statements of ABC.

Please confirm your agreement with the foregoing by signing and dating a copy of this letter and returning it to us.

Attached is the form of the letter we will furnish [*name of successor CPA firm*] regarding the use of the working papers.

Very truly yours,

[Predecessor Auditor]

By: _____

Accepted:

ABC Enterprises

By: _____ Date: _____

Appendix B

Illustrative Successor Auditor Acknowledgment Letter

1. Paragraph .11, footnote 7, of this section states, “Before permitting access to the working papers, the predecessor auditor may wish to obtain a written communication from the successor auditor regarding the use of the working papers.” The following letter is presented for illustrative purposes only and is not required by professional standards.

[Date]

[Successor Auditor]

[Address]

We have previously audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the December 31, 20X1, financial statements of ABC Enterprises (ABC). We rendered a report on those financial statements and have not performed any audit procedures subsequent to the audit report date. In connection with your audit of ABC's 20X2 financial statements, you have requested access to our working papers prepared in connection with that audit. ABC has authorized our firm to allow you to review those working papers.

Our audit, and the working papers prepared in connection therewith, of ABC's financial statements were not planned or conducted in contemplation of your review. Therefore, items of possible interest to you may not have been specifically addressed. Our use of professional judgment and the assessment of audit risk and materiality for the purpose of our audit mean that matters may have existed that would have been assessed differently by you. We make no representation as to the sufficiency or appropriateness of the information in our working papers for your purposes.

We understand that the purpose of your review is to obtain information about ABC and our 19X1 audit results to assist you in planning your 19X2 audit of ABC. For that purpose only, we will provide you access to our working papers that relate to that objective.

Upon request, we will provide copies of those working papers that provide factual information about ABC. You agree to subject any such copies or information otherwise derived from our working papers to your normal policy for retention of working papers and protection of confidential client information. Furthermore, in the event of a third-party request for access to your working papers prepared in connection with your audits of ABC, you agree to obtain our permission before voluntarily allowing any such access to our working papers or information otherwise derived from our working papers, and to obtain on our behalf any releases that you obtain from such third party. You agree to advise us promptly and provide us a copy of any subpoena, summons, or other court order for access to your working papers that include copies of our working papers or information otherwise derived therefrom.

Please confirm your agreement with the foregoing by signing and dating a copy of this letter and returning it to us.

Very truly yours,

[Predecessor Auditor]

By: _____

Accepted:

[Successor Auditor]

By: _____ Date: _____

Even with the client's consent, access to the predecessor auditor's working papers may still be limited. Experience has shown that the predecessor auditor may be willing to grant broader access if given additional assurance concerning the use of the working papers. Accordingly, the successor auditor might consider agreeing to the following limitations on the review of the predecessor auditor's working papers in order to obtain broader access:

- The successor auditor will not comment, orally or in writing, to anyone as a result of the review as to whether the predecessor auditor's engagement was performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards.
- The successor auditor will not provide expert testimony or litigation support services or otherwise accept an engagement to comment on issues relating to the quality of the predecessor auditor's audit.
- The successor auditor will not use the audit procedures or results thereof documented in the predecessor auditor's working papers as evidential matter in rendering an opinion on the 19X2 financial statements of ABC Enterprises, except as contemplated in Statement on Auditing Standards No. 84.

The following paragraph illustrates the above:

Because your review of our working papers is undertaken solely for the purpose described above and may not entail a review of all our working papers, you agree that (1) the information obtained from the review will not be used by you for any other purpose, (2) you will not comment, orally or in writing, to anyone as a result of that review as to whether our audit was performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, (3) you will not provide expert testimony or litigation support services or otherwise accept an engagement to comment on issues relating to the quality of our audit, and (4) you will not use the audit procedures or results thereof documented in our working papers as evidential matter in rendering your opinion on the 19X2 financial statements of ABC, except as contemplated in Statement on Auditing Standards No. 84.

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

AU Section 316

Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit

(Supersedes SAS No. 82)

Source: SAS No. 99.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2002.

Introduction and Overview

.01 Section 110, *Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor*, paragraph .02, states, “The auditor has a responsibility to plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether caused by error or fraud. [footnote omitted]”¹ This section establishes standards and provides guidance to auditors in fulfilling that responsibility, as it relates to fraud, in an audit of financial statements conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).²

.02 The following is an overview of the organization and content of this section:

- *Description and characteristics of fraud.* This section describes fraud and its characteristics. (See paragraphs .05 through .12.)
- *The importance of exercising professional skepticism.* This section discusses the need for auditors to exercise professional skepticism when considering the possibility that a material misstatement due to fraud could be present. (See paragraph .13.)
- *Discussion among engagement personnel regarding the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.* This section requires, as part of planning the audit, that there be a discussion among the audit team members to consider how and where the entity’s financial statements might be susceptible to material misstatement due to fraud and to reinforce the importance of adopting an appropriate mindset of professional skepticism. (See paragraphs .14 through .18.)

¹ The auditor’s consideration of illegal acts and responsibility for detecting misstatements resulting from illegal acts is defined in section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*. For those illegal acts that are defined in that section as having a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts, the auditor’s responsibility to detect misstatements resulting from such illegal acts is the same as that for errors (see section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, or fraud).

² Auditors are sometimes requested to perform other services related to fraud detection and prevention, for example, special investigations to determine the extent of a suspected or detected fraud. These other services usually include procedures that extend beyond or are different from the procedures ordinarily performed in an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). AT section 101, *Attest Engagements*, and CS section 100, *Consulting Services: Definitions and Standards*, provide guidance to accountants relating to the performance of such services.

- *Obtaining the information needed to identify risks of material misstatement due to fraud.* This section requires the auditor to gather information necessary to identify risks of material misstatement due to fraud, by
 - a. Inquiring of management and others within the entity about the risks of fraud. (See paragraphs .20 through .27.)
 - b. Considering the results of the analytical procedures performed in planning the audit. (See paragraphs .28 through .30.)
 - c. Considering fraud risk factors. (See paragraphs .31 through .33, and the Appendix, “Examples of Fraud Risk Factors” [paragraph .85].)
 - d. Considering certain other information. (See paragraph .34.)
- *Identifying risks that may result in a material misstatement due to fraud.* This section requires the auditor to use the information gathered to identify risks that may result in a material misstatement due to fraud. (See paragraphs .35 through .42.)
- *Assessing the identified risks after taking into account an evaluation of the entity’s programs and controls.* This section requires the auditor to evaluate the entity’s programs and controls that address the identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud, and to assess the risks taking into account this evaluation. (See paragraphs .43 through .45.)
- *Responding to the results of the assessment.* This section emphasizes that the auditor’s response to the risks of material misstatement due to fraud involves the application of professional skepticism when gathering and evaluating audit evidence. (See paragraph .46 through .49.) The section requires the auditor to respond to the results of the risk assessment in three ways:
 - a. A response that has an overall effect on how the audit is conducted, that is, a response involving more general considerations apart from the specific procedures otherwise planned. (See paragraph .50.)
 - b. A response to identified risks that involves the nature, timing, and extent of the auditing procedures to be performed. (See paragraphs .51 through .56.)
 - c. A response involving the performance of certain procedures to further address the risk of material misstatement due to fraud involving management override of controls. (See paragraphs .57 through .67.)
- *Evaluating audit evidence.* This section requires the auditor to assess the risks of material misstatement due to fraud throughout the audit and to evaluate at the completion of the audit whether the accumulated results of auditing procedures and other observations affect the assessment. (See paragraphs .68 through .74.) It also requires the auditor to consider whether identified misstatements may be indicative of fraud and, if so, directs the auditor to evaluate their implications. (See paragraphs .75 through .78.)
- *Communicating about fraud to management, the audit committee, and others.* This section provides guidance regarding the auditor’s communications about fraud to management, the audit committee, and others. (See paragraphs .79 through .82.)
- *Documenting the auditor’s consideration of fraud.* This section describes related documentation requirements. (See paragraph .83.)

.03 The requirements and guidance set forth in this section are intended to be integrated into an overall audit process, in a logical manner that is consistent with the requirements and guidance provided in other sections, including section 311, *Planning and Supervision*; section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*; and section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*. Even though some requirements and guidance set forth in this section are presented in a manner that suggests a sequential audit process, auditing in fact involves a continuous process of gathering, updating, and analyzing information throughout the audit. Accordingly the sequence of the requirements and guidance in this section may be implemented differently among audit engagements.

.04 Although this section focuses on the auditor's consideration of fraud in an audit of financial statements, it is management's responsibility to design and implement programs and controls to prevent, deter, and detect fraud.³ That responsibility is described in section 110.03, which states, "Management is responsible for adopting sound accounting policies and for establishing and maintaining internal control that will, among other things, initiate, record, process, and report transactions (as well as events and conditions) consistent with management's assertions embodied in the financial statements." Management, along with those who have responsibility for oversight of the financial reporting process (such as the audit committee, board of trustees, board of directors, or the owner in owner-managed entities), should set the proper tone; create and maintain a culture of honesty and high ethical standards; and establish appropriate controls to prevent, deter, and detect fraud. When management and those responsible for the oversight of the financial reporting process fulfill those responsibilities, the opportunities to commit fraud can be reduced significantly.

Description and Characteristics of Fraud

.05 Fraud is a broad legal concept and auditors do not make legal determinations of whether fraud has occurred. Rather, the auditor's interest specifically relates to acts that result in a material misstatement of the financial statements. The primary factor that distinguishes fraud from error is whether the underlying action that results in the misstatement of the financial statements is intentional or unintentional. For purposes of the section, *fraud* is an intentional act that results in a material misstatement in financial statements that are the subject of an audit.⁴

.06 Two types of misstatements are relevant to the auditor's consideration of fraud—misstatements arising from fraudulent financial reporting and misstatements arising from misappropriation of assets.

- *Misstatements arising from fraudulent financial reporting* are intentional misstatements or omissions of amounts or disclosures in financial

³ In its October 1987 report, the National Commission on Fraudulent Financial Reporting, also known as the Treadway Commission, noted, "The responsibility for reliable financial reporting resides first and foremost at the corporate level. Top management, starting with the chief executive officer, sets the tone and establishes the financial reporting environment. Therefore, reducing the risk of fraudulent financial reporting must start with the reporting company."

⁴ Intent is often difficult to determine, particularly in matters involving accounting estimates and the application of accounting principles. For example, unreasonable accounting estimates may be unintentional or may be the result of an intentional attempt to misstate the financial statements. Although an audit is not designed to determine intent, the auditor has a responsibility to plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether the misstatement is intentional or not.

statements designed to deceive financial statement users where the effect causes the financial statements not to be presented, in all material respects, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).⁵ Fraudulent financial reporting may be accomplished by the following:

- Manipulation, falsification, or alteration of accounting records or supporting documents from which financial statements are prepared
- Misrepresentation in or intentional omission from the financial statements of events, transactions, or other significant information
- Intentional misapplication of accounting principles relating to amounts, classification, manner of presentation, or disclosure

Fraudulent financial reporting need not be the result of a grand plan or conspiracy. It may be that management representatives rationalize the appropriateness of a material misstatement, for example, as an aggressive rather than indefensible interpretation of complex accounting rules, or as a temporary misstatement of financial statements, including interim statements, expected to be corrected later when operational results improve.

- *Misstatements arising from misappropriation of assets* (sometimes referred to as theft or defalcation) involve the theft of an entity's assets where the effect of the theft causes the financial statements not to be presented, in all material respects, in conformity with GAAP. Misappropriation of assets can be accomplished in various ways, including embezzling receipts, stealing assets, or causing an entity to pay for goods or services that have not been received. Misappropriation of assets may be accompanied by false or misleading records or documents, possibly created by circumventing controls. The scope of this section includes only those misappropriations of assets for which the effect of the misappropriation causes the financial statements not to be fairly presented, in all material respects, in conformity with GAAP.

.07 Three conditions generally are present when fraud occurs. First, management or other employees have an *incentive* or are under *pressure*, which provides a reason to commit fraud. Second, circumstances exist—for example, the absence of controls, ineffective controls, or the ability of management to override controls—that provide an *opportunity* for a fraud to be perpetrated. Third, those involved are able to *rationalize* committing a fraudulent act. Some individuals possess an *attitude*, character, or set of ethical values that allow them to knowingly and intentionally commit a dishonest act. However, even otherwise honest individuals can commit fraud in an environment that imposes sufficient pressure on them. The greater the incentive or pressure, the more likely an individual will be able to rationalize the acceptability of committing fraud.

.08 Management has a unique ability to perpetrate fraud because it frequently is in a position to directly or indirectly manipulate accounting records and present fraudulent financial information. Fraudulent financial reporting often involves management override of controls that otherwise may

⁵ Reference to generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) includes, where applicable, a comprehensive basis of accounting other than GAAP as defined in section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraph .04.

appear to be operating effectively.⁶ Management can either direct employees to perpetrate fraud or solicit their help in carrying it out. In addition, management personnel at a component of the entity may be in a position to manipulate the accounting records of the component in a manner that causes a material misstatement in the consolidated financial statements of the entity. Management override of controls can occur in unpredictable ways.

.09 Typically, management and employees engaged in fraud will take steps to conceal the fraud from the auditors and others within and outside the organization. Fraud may be concealed by withholding evidence or misrepresenting information in response to inquiries or by falsifying documentation. For example, management that engages in fraudulent financial reporting might alter shipping documents. Employees or members of management who misappropriate cash might try to conceal their thefts by forging signatures or falsifying electronic approvals on disbursement authorizations. An audit conducted in accordance with GAAS rarely involves the authentication of such documentation, nor are auditors trained as or expected to be experts in such authentication. In addition, an auditor may not discover the existence of a modification of documentation through a side agreement that management or a third party has not disclosed.

.10 Fraud also may be concealed through collusion among management, employees, or third parties. Collusion may cause the auditor who has properly performed the audit to conclude that evidence provided is persuasive when it is, in fact, false. For example, through collusion, false evidence that controls have been operating effectively may be presented to the auditor, or consistent misleading explanations may be given to the auditor by more than one individual within the entity to explain an unexpected result of an analytical procedure. As another example, the auditor may receive a false confirmation from a third party that is in collusion with management.

.11 Although fraud usually is concealed and management's intent is difficult to determine, the presence of certain conditions may suggest to the auditor the possibility that fraud may exist. For example, an important contract may be missing, a subsidiary ledger may not be satisfactorily reconciled to its control account, or the results of an analytical procedure performed during the audit may not be consistent with expectations. However, these conditions may be the result of circumstances other than fraud. Documents may legitimately have been lost or misfiled; the subsidiary ledger may be out of balance with its control account because of an unintentional accounting error; and unexpected analytical relationships may be the result of unanticipated changes in underlying economic factors. Even reports of alleged fraud may not always be reliable because an employee or outsider may be mistaken or may be motivated for unknown reasons to make a false allegation.

.12 As indicated in paragraph .01, the auditor has a responsibility to plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether caused by fraud or error.⁷ However, absolute assurance is not attainable and thus even

⁶ Frauds have been committed by management override of existing controls using such techniques as (a) recording fictitious journal entries, particularly those recorded close to the end of an accounting period to manipulate operating results, (b) intentionally biasing assumptions and judgments used to estimate account balances, and (c) altering records and terms related to significant and unusual transactions.

⁷ For a further discussion of the concept of reasonable assurance, see section 230, *Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work*, paragraphs .10 through .13.

a properly planned and performed audit may not detect a material misstatement resulting from fraud. A material misstatement may not be detected because of the nature of audit evidence or because the characteristics of fraud as discussed above may cause the auditor to rely unknowingly on audit evidence that appears to be valid, but is, in fact, false and fraudulent. Furthermore, audit procedures that are effective for detecting an error may be ineffective for detecting fraud.

The Importance of Exercising Professional Skepticism

.13 Due professional care requires the auditor to exercise professional skepticism. See section 230, *Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work*, paragraphs .07 through .09. Because of the characteristics of fraud, the auditor's exercise of professional skepticism is important when considering the risk of material misstatement due to fraud. Professional skepticism is an attitude that includes a questioning mind and a critical assessment of audit evidence. The auditor should conduct the engagement with a mindset that recognizes the possibility that a material misstatement due to fraud could be present, regardless of any past experience with the entity and regardless of the auditor's belief about management's honesty and integrity. Furthermore, professional skepticism requires an ongoing questioning of whether the information and evidence obtained suggests that a material misstatement due to fraud has occurred. In exercising professional skepticism in gathering and evaluating evidence, the auditor should not be satisfied with less-than-persuasive evidence because of a belief that management is honest.

Discussion Among Engagement Personnel Regarding the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud

.14 Prior to or in conjunction with the information-gathering procedures described in paragraphs .19 through .34 of this section, members of the audit team should discuss the potential for material misstatement due to fraud. The discussion should include:

- An exchange of ideas or "brainstorming" among the audit team members, including the auditor with final responsibility for the audit, about how and where they believe the entity's financial statements might be susceptible to material misstatement due to fraud, how management could perpetrate and conceal fraudulent financial reporting, and how assets of the entity could be misappropriated. (See paragraph .15.)
- An emphasis on the importance of maintaining the proper state of mind throughout the audit regarding the potential for material misstatement due to fraud. (See paragraph .16.)

.15 The discussion among the audit team members about the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud should include a consideration of the known external and internal factors affecting the entity that might (a) create incentives/pressures for management and others to commit fraud, (b) provide the opportunity for fraud to be perpetrated, and (c) indicate a culture or environment that enables management to rationalize committing fraud. The discussion should occur with an attitude that includes a questioning mind as described in paragraph .16 and, for this purpose, setting aside any prior beliefs the audit team members may have that

management is honest and has integrity. In this regard, the discussion should include a consideration of the risk of management override of controls.⁸ Finally, the discussion should include how the auditor might respond to the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud.

.16 The discussion among the audit team members should emphasize the need to maintain a questioning mind and to exercise professional skepticism in gathering and evaluating evidence throughout the audit, as described in paragraph .13. This should lead the audit team members to continually be alert for information or other conditions (such as those presented in paragraph .68) that indicate a material misstatement due to fraud may have occurred. It should also lead audit team members to thoroughly probe the issues, acquire additional evidence as necessary, and consult with other team members and, if appropriate, experts in the firm, rather than rationalize or dismiss information or other conditions that indicate a material misstatement due to fraud may have occurred.

.17 Although professional judgment should be used in determining which audit team members should be included in the discussion, the discussion ordinarily should involve the key members of the audit team. A number of factors will influence the extent of the discussion and how it should occur. For example, if the audit involves more than one location, there could be multiple discussions with team members in differing locations. Another factor to consider in planning the discussions is whether to include specialists assigned to the audit team. For example, if the auditor has determined that a professional possessing information technology skills is needed on the audit team (see section 319.32), it may be useful to include that individual in the discussion.

.18 Communication among the audit team members about the risks of material misstatement due to fraud also should continue throughout the audit—for example, in evaluating the risks of material misstatement due to fraud at or near the completion of the field work. (See paragraph .74 and footnote 28.)

Obtaining the Information Needed to Identify the Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud

.19 Section 311.06–.08 provides guidance about how the auditor obtains knowledge about the entity's business and the industry in which it operates. In performing that work, information may come to the auditor's attention that should be considered in identifying risks of material misstatement due to fraud. As part of this work, the auditor should perform the following procedures to obtain information that is used (as described in paragraphs .35 through .42) to identify the risks of material misstatement due to fraud:

- a. Make inquiries of management and others within the entity to obtain their views about the risks of fraud and how they are addressed. (See paragraphs .20 through .27.)
- b. Consider any unusual or unexpected relationships that have been identified in performing analytical procedures in planning the audit. (See paragraphs .28 through .30.)

⁸ See footnote 6.

- c. Consider whether one or more fraud risk factors exist. (See paragraphs .31 through .33, and the Appendix [paragraph .85].)
- d. Consider other information that may be helpful in the identification of risks of material misstatement due to fraud. (See paragraph .34.)

Making Inquiries of Management and Others Within the Entity About the Risks of Fraud

.20 The auditor should inquire of management about:⁹

- Whether management has knowledge of any fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity
- Whether management is aware of allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity, for example, received in communications from employees, former employees, analysts, regulators, short sellers, or others
- Management's understanding about the risks of fraud in the entity, including any specific fraud risks the entity has identified or account balances or classes of transactions for which a risk of fraud may be likely to exist
- Programs and controls¹⁰ the entity has established to mitigate specific fraud risks the entity has identified, or that otherwise help to prevent, deter, and detect fraud, and how management monitors those programs and controls. For examples of programs and controls an entity may implement to prevent, deter, and detect fraud, see the exhibit titled "Management Antifraud Programs and Controls" [paragraph .86] at the end of this section.
- For an entity with multiple locations, (a) the nature and extent of monitoring of operating locations or business segments, and (b) whether there are particular operating locations or business segments for which a risk of fraud may be more likely to exist
- Whether and how management communicates to employees its views on business practices and ethical behavior

.21 The inquiries of management also should include whether management has reported to the audit committee or others with equivalent authority and responsibility¹¹ (hereafter referred to as the audit committee) on how the entity's internal control¹² serves to prevent, deter, or detect material misstatements due to fraud.

.22 The auditor also should inquire directly of the audit committee (or at least its chair) regarding the audit committee's views about the risks of fraud

⁹ In addition to these inquiries, section 333, *Management Representations*, requires the auditor to obtain selected written representations from management regarding fraud.

¹⁰ Section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, paragraphs .06 and .07, defines internal control and its five interrelated components (the control environment, risk assessment, control activities, information and communication, and monitoring). Entity programs and controls intended to address the risks of fraud may be part of any of the five components discussed in section 319.

¹¹ Examples of "others with equivalent authority and responsibility" may include the board of directors, the board of trustees, or the owner in an owner-managed entity, as appropriate.

¹² See footnote 10.

and whether the audit committee has knowledge of any fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity. An entity's audit committee sometimes assumes an active role in oversight of the entity's assessment of the risks of fraud and the programs and controls the entity has established to mitigate these risks. The auditor should obtain an understanding of how the audit committee exercises oversight activities in that area.

.23 For entities that have an internal audit function, the auditor also should inquire of appropriate internal audit personnel about their views about the risks of fraud, whether they have performed any procedures to identify or detect fraud during the year, whether management has satisfactorily responded to any findings resulting from these procedures, and whether the internal auditors have knowledge of any fraud or suspected fraud.

.24 In addition to the inquiries outlined in paragraphs .20 through .23, the auditor should inquire of others within the entity about the existence or suspicion of fraud. The auditor should use professional judgment to determine those others within the entity to whom inquiries should be directed and the extent of such inquiries. In making this determination, the auditor should consider whether others within the entity may be able to provide information that will be helpful to the auditor in identifying risks of material misstatement due to fraud—for example, others who may have additional knowledge about or be able to corroborate risks of fraud identified in the discussions with management (see paragraph .20) or the audit committee (see paragraph .22).

.25 Examples of others within the entity to whom the auditor may wish to direct these inquiries include:

- Employees with varying levels of authority within the entity, including, for example, entity personnel with whom the auditor comes into contact during the course of the audit in obtaining (a) an understanding of the entity's systems and internal control, (b) in observing inventory or performing cutoff procedures, or (c) in obtaining explanations for fluctuations noted as a result of analytical procedures
- Operating personnel not directly involved in the financial reporting process
- Employees involved in initiating, recording, or processing complex or unusual transactions—for example, a sales transaction with multiple elements, or a significant related party transaction
- In-house legal counsel

.26 The auditor's inquiries of management and others within the entity are important because fraud often is uncovered through information received in response to inquiries. One reason for this is that such inquiries may provide individuals with an opportunity to convey information to the auditor that otherwise might not be communicated. Making inquiries of others within the entity, in addition to management, may be useful in providing the auditor with a perspective that is different from that of individuals involved in the financial reporting process. The responses to these other inquiries might serve to corroborate responses received from management, or alternatively, might provide information regarding the possibility of management override of controls—for example, a response from an employee indicating an unusual change in the way transactions have been processed. In addition, the auditor may obtain information from these inquiries regarding how effectively management has communicated standards of ethical behavior to individuals throughout the organization.

.27 The auditor should be aware when evaluating management's responses to the inquiries discussed in paragraph .20 that management is often in the best position to perpetrate fraud. The auditor should use professional judgment in deciding when it is necessary to corroborate responses to inquiries with other information. However, when responses are inconsistent among inquiries, the auditor should obtain additional audit evidence to resolve the inconsistencies.

Considering the Results of the Analytical Procedures Performed in Planning the Audit

.28 Section 329, *Analytical Procedures*, paragraphs .04 and .06, requires that analytical procedures be performed in planning the audit with an objective of identifying the existence of unusual transactions or events, and amounts, ratios, and trends that might indicate matters that have financial statement and audit planning implications. In performing analytical procedures in planning the audit, the auditor develops expectations about plausible relationships that are reasonably expected to exist, based on the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment. When comparison of those expectations with recorded amounts or ratios developed from recorded amounts yields unusual or unexpected relationships, the auditor should consider those results in identifying the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

.29 In planning the audit, the auditor also should perform analytical procedures relating to revenue with the objective of identifying unusual or unexpected relationships involving revenue accounts that may indicate a material misstatement due to fraudulent financial reporting. An example of such an analytical procedure that addresses this objective is a comparison of sales volume, as determined from recorded revenue amounts, with production capacity. An excess of sales volume over production capacity may be indicative of recording fictitious sales. As another example, a trend analysis of revenues by month and sales returns by month during and shortly after the reporting period may indicate the existence of undisclosed side agreements with customers to return goods that would preclude revenue recognition.¹³

.30 Analytical procedures performed during planning may be helpful in identifying the risks of material misstatement due to fraud. However, because such analytical procedures generally use data aggregated at a high level, the results of those analytical procedures provide only a broad initial indication about whether a material misstatement of the financial statements may exist. Accordingly, the results of analytical procedures performed during planning should be considered along with other information gathered by the auditor in identifying the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

Considering Fraud Risk Factors

.31 Because fraud is usually concealed, material misstatements due to fraud are difficult to detect. Nevertheless, the auditor may identify events or conditions that indicate incentives/pressures to perpetrate fraud, opportunities to carry out the fraud, or attitudes/rationalizations to justify a fraudulent action. Such events or conditions are referred to as "fraud risk factors." Fraud risk factors do not necessarily indicate the existence of fraud; however, they often are present in circumstances where fraud exists.

¹³ See paragraph .70 for a discussion of the need to update these analytical procedures during the overall review stage of the audit.

.32 When obtaining information about the entity and its environment, the auditor should consider whether the information indicates that one or more fraud risk factors are present. The auditor should use professional judgment in determining whether a risk factor is present and should be considered in identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

.33 Examples of fraud risk factors related to fraudulent financial reporting and misappropriation of assets are presented in the Appendix [paragraph .85]. These illustrative risk factors are classified based on the three conditions generally present when fraud exists: *incentive/pressure* to perpetrate fraud, an *opportunity* to carry out the fraud, and *attitude/rationalization* to justify the fraudulent action. Although the risk factors cover a broad range of situations, they are only examples and, accordingly, the auditor may wish to consider additional or different risk factors. Not all of these examples are relevant in all circumstances, and some may be of greater or lesser significance in entities of different size or with different ownership characteristics or circumstances. Also, the order of the examples of risk factors provided is not intended to reflect their relative importance or frequency of occurrence.

Considering Other Information That May Be Helpful in Identifying Risks of Material Misstatement Due to Fraud

.34 The auditor should consider other information that may be helpful in identifying risks of material misstatement due to fraud. Specifically, the discussion among the engagement team members (see paragraphs .14 through .18) may provide information helpful in identifying such risks. In addition, the auditor should consider whether information from the results of (a) procedures relating to the acceptance and continuance of clients and engagements¹⁴ and (b) reviews of interim financial statements may be relevant in the identification of such risks. Finally, as part of the consideration of audit risk at the individual account balance or class of transaction level (see section 312.24 through .33), the auditor should consider whether identified inherent risks would provide useful information in identifying the risks of material misstatement due to fraud (see paragraph .39).

Identifying Risks That May Result in a Material Misstatement Due to Fraud

Using the Information Gathered to Identify Risk of Material Misstatements Due to Fraud

.35 In identifying risks of material misstatement due to fraud, it is helpful for the auditor to consider the information that has been gathered (see paragraphs .19 through .34) in the context of the three conditions present when a material misstatement due to fraud occurs—that is, incentives/pressures, opportunities, and attitudes/rationalizations (see paragraph .07). However, the auditor should not assume that all three conditions must be observed or evident before concluding that there are identified risks. Although the risk of material misstatement due to fraud may be greatest when all three fraud conditions are observed or evident, the auditor cannot assume that the inability

¹⁴ See Statement on Quality Control Standards (SQCS) No. 2, *System of Quality Control for a CPA Firm's Accounting and Auditing Practice* [QC section 20.14–.16], as amended.

to observe one or two of these conditions means there is no risk of material misstatement due to fraud. In fact, observing that individuals have the requisite attitude to commit fraud, or identifying factors that indicate a likelihood that management or other employees will rationalize committing a fraud, is difficult at best.

.36 In addition, the extent to which each of the three conditions referred to above are present when fraud occurs may vary. In some instances the significance of incentives/pressures may result in a risk of material misstatement due to fraud, apart from the significance of the other two conditions. For example, an incentive/pressure to achieve an earnings level to preclude a loan default, or to “trigger” incentive compensation plan awards, may alone result in a risk of material misstatement due to fraud. In other instances, an easy opportunity to commit the fraud because of a lack of controls may be the dominant condition precipitating the risk of fraud, or an individual’s attitude or ability to rationalize unethical actions may be sufficient to motivate that individual to engage in fraud, even in the absence of significant incentives/pressures or opportunities.

.37 The auditor’s identification of fraud risks also may be influenced by characteristics such as the size, complexity, and ownership attributes of the entity. For example, in the case of a larger entity, the auditor ordinarily considers factors that generally constrain improper conduct by management, such as the effectiveness of the audit committee and the internal audit function, and the existence and enforcement of a formal code of conduct. In the case of a smaller entity, some or all of these considerations may be inapplicable or less important, and management may have developed a culture that emphasizes the importance of integrity and ethical behavior through oral communication and management by example. Also, the risks of material misstatement due to fraud may vary among operating locations or business segments of an entity, requiring an identification of the risks related to specific geographic areas or business segments, as well as for the entity as a whole.¹⁵

.38 The auditor should evaluate whether identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud can be related to specific financial-statement account balances or classes of transactions and related assertions, or whether they relate more pervasively to the financial statements as a whole. Relating the risks of material misstatement due to fraud to the individual accounts, classes of transactions, and assertions will assist the auditor in subsequently designing appropriate auditing procedures.

.39 Certain accounts, classes of transactions, and assertions that have high inherent risk because they involve a high degree of management judgment and subjectivity also may present risks of material misstatement due to fraud because they are susceptible to manipulation by management. For example, liabilities resulting from a restructuring may be deemed to have high inherent risk because of the high degree of subjectivity and management judgment involved in their estimation. Similarly, revenues for software developers may be deemed to have high inherent risk because of the complex accounting principles applicable to the recognition and measurement of software revenue transactions. Assets resulting from investing activities may be deemed to have high inherent risk because of the subjectivity and management judgment involved in estimating fair values of those investments.

¹⁵ Section 312.18 provides guidance on the auditor’s consideration of the extent to which auditing procedures should be performed at selected locations or components.

.40 In summary, the identification of a risk of material misstatement due to fraud involves the application of professional judgment and includes the consideration of the attributes of the risk, including:

- The *type* of risk that may exist, that is, whether it involves fraudulent financial reporting or misappropriation of assets
- The *significance* of the risk, that is, whether it is of a magnitude that could lead to result in a possible material misstatement of the financial statements
- The *likelihood* of the risk, that is, the likelihood that it will result in a material misstatement in the financial statements¹⁶
- The *pervasiveness* of the risk, that is, whether the potential risk is pervasive to the financial statements as a whole or specifically related to a particular assertion, account, or class of transactions.

A Presumption That Improper Revenue Recognition Is a Fraud Risk

.41 Material misstatements due to fraudulent financial reporting often result from an overstatement of revenues (for example, through premature revenue recognition or recording fictitious revenues) or an understatement of revenues (for example, through improperly shifting revenues to a later period). Therefore, the auditor should ordinarily presume that there is a risk of material misstatement due to fraud relating to revenue recognition. (See paragraph .54 for examples of auditing procedures related to the risk of improper revenue recognition.)¹⁷

A Consideration of the Risk of Management Override of Controls

.42 Even if specific risks of material misstatement due to fraud are not identified by the auditor, there is a possibility that management override of controls could occur, and accordingly, the auditor should address that risk (see paragraph .57) apart from any conclusions regarding the existence of more specifically identifiable risks.

Assessing the Identified Risks After Taking Into Account an Evaluation of the Entity's Programs and Controls That Address the Risks

.43 Section 319 requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of each of the five components of internal control sufficient to plan the audit. It also notes that such knowledge should be used to identify types of potential misstatements, consider factors that affect the risk of material misstatement, design tests of controls when applicable, and design substantive tests. Additionally, section 319 notes that controls, whether manual or automated, can be circumvented by collusion of two or more people or inappropriate management override of internal control.

¹⁶ The occurrence of material misstatements of financial statements due to fraud is relatively infrequent in relation to the total population of published financial statements. However, the auditor should not use this as a basis to conclude that one or more risks of a material misstatement due to fraud are not present in a particular entity.

¹⁷ For a discussion of indicators of improper revenue recognition and common techniques for overstating revenue and illustrative audit procedures, see the AICPA Audit Guide *Auditing Revenue in Certain Industries*.

.44 As part of the understanding of internal control sufficient to plan the audit, the auditor should evaluate whether entity programs and controls that address identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud have been suitably designed and placed in operation.¹⁸ These programs and controls may involve (a) specific controls designed to mitigate specific risks of fraud—for example, controls to address specific assets susceptible to misappropriation, and (b) broader programs designed to prevent, deter, and detect fraud—for example, programs to promote a culture of honesty and ethical behavior. The auditor should consider whether such programs and controls mitigate the identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud or whether specific control deficiencies may exacerbate the risks (see paragraph .80). The exhibit at the end of this section [paragraph .88] discusses examples of programs and controls an entity might implement to create a culture of honesty and ethical behavior, and that help to prevent, deter, and detect fraud.

.45 After the auditor has evaluated whether the entity's programs and controls that address identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud have been suitably designed and placed in operation, the auditor should assess these risks taking into account that evaluation. This assessment should be considered when developing the auditor's response to the identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud (see paragraphs .46 through .67).¹⁹

Responding to the Results of the Assessment

.46 The auditor's response to the assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud involves the application of professional skepticism in gathering and evaluating audit evidence. As noted in paragraph .13, professional skepticism is an attitude that includes a critical assessment of the competency and sufficiency of audit evidence. Examples of the application of professional skepticism in response to the risks of material misstatement due to fraud are (a) designing additional or different auditing procedures to obtain more reliable evidence in support of specified financial statement account balances, classes of transactions, and related assertions, and (b) obtaining additional corroboration of management's explanations or representations concerning material matters, such as through third-party confirmation, the use of a specialist, analytical procedures, examination of documentation from independent sources, or inquiries of others within or outside the entity.

.47 The auditor's response to the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements due to fraud is influenced by the nature and significance of the risks identified as being present (paragraphs .35 through .42) and the entity's programs and controls that address these identified risks (paragraphs .43 through .45).

.48 The auditor responds to risks of material misstatement due to fraud in the following three ways:

- a. A response that has an overall effect on how the audit is conducted—that is, a response involving more general considerations apart from the specific procedures otherwise planned (see paragraph .50).

¹⁸ See footnote 10.

¹⁹ Notwithstanding that the auditor assesses identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud, the assessment need not encompass an overall judgment about whether risk for the entity is classified as *high*, *medium*, or *low* because such a judgment is too broad to be useful in developing the auditor's response described in paragraphs .46 through .67.

- b. A response to identified risks involving the nature, timing, and extent of the auditing procedures to be performed (see paragraphs .51 through .56).
- c. A response involving the performance of certain procedures to further address the risk of material misstatement due to fraud involving management override of controls, given the unpredictable ways in which such override could occur (see paragraphs .57 through .67).

.49 The auditor may conclude that it would not be practicable to design auditing procedures that sufficiently address the risks of material misstatement due to fraud. In that case, withdrawal from the engagement with communication to the appropriate parties may be an appropriate course of action (see paragraph .78).

Overall Responses to the Risk of Material Misstatement

.50 Judgments about the risk of material misstatement due to fraud have an overall effect on how the audit is conducted in the following ways:

- *Assignment of personnel and supervision.* The knowledge, skill, and ability of personnel assigned significant engagement responsibilities should be commensurate with the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud for the engagement (see section 210, *Training and Proficiency of the Independent Auditor*, paragraph .03). For example, the auditor may respond to an identified risk of material misstatement due to fraud by assigning additional persons with specialized skill and knowledge, such as forensic and information technology (IT) specialists, or by assigning more experienced personnel to the engagement. In addition, the extent of supervision should reflect the risks of material misstatement due to fraud (see section 311.11).
- *Accounting principles.* The auditor should consider management's selection and application of significant accounting principles, particularly those related to subjective measurements and complex transactions. In this respect, the auditor may have a greater concern about whether the accounting principles selected and policies adopted are being applied in an inappropriate manner to create a material misstatement of the financial statements. In developing judgments about the quality of such principles (see section 380, *Communication With Audit Committees*, paragraph .11), the auditor should consider whether their collective application indicates a bias that may create such a material misstatement of the financial statements.
- *Predictability of auditing procedures.* The auditor should incorporate an element of unpredictability in the selection from year to year of auditing procedures to be performed—for example, performing substantive tests of selected account balances and assertions not otherwise tested due to their materiality or risk, adjusting the timing of testing from that otherwise expected, using differing sampling methods, and performing procedures at different locations or at locations on an unannounced basis.

Responses Involving the Nature, Timing, and Extent of Procedures to Be Performed to Address the Identified Risks

.51 The auditing procedures performed in response to identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud will vary depending upon the types of risks

identified and the account balances, classes of transactions, and related assertions that may be affected. These procedures may involve both substantive tests and tests of the operating effectiveness of the entity's programs and controls. However, because management may have the ability to override controls that otherwise appear to be operating effectively (see paragraph .08), it is unlikely that audit risk can be reduced to an appropriately low level by performing only tests of controls.

.52 The auditor's responses to address specifically identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud may include changing the nature, timing, and extent of auditing procedures in the following ways:

- The *nature* of auditing procedures performed may need to be changed to obtain evidence that is more reliable or to obtain additional corroborative information. For example, more evidential matter may be needed from independent sources outside the entity, such as public-record information about the existence and nature of key customers, vendors, or counterparties in a major transaction. Also, physical observation or inspection of certain assets may become more important (see section 326, *Evidential Matter*, paragraphs .15 through .21). Furthermore, the auditor may choose to employ computer-assisted audit techniques to gather more extensive evidence about data contained in significant accounts or electronic transaction files. Finally, inquiry of additional members of management or others may be helpful in identifying issues and corroborating other evidential matter (see paragraphs .24 through .26 and paragraph .53).
- The *timing* of substantive tests may need to be modified. The auditor might conclude that substantive testing should be performed at or near the end of the reporting period to best address an identified risk of material misstatement due to fraud (see section 313, *Substantive Tests Prior to the Balance-Sheet Date*). That is, the auditor might conclude that, given the risks of intentional misstatement or manipulation, tests to extend audit conclusions from an interim date to the period-end reporting date would not be effective.

In contrast, because an intentional misstatement—for example, a misstatement involving inappropriate revenue recognition—may have been initiated in an interim period, the auditor might elect to apply substantive tests to transactions occurring earlier in or throughout the reporting period.

- The *extent* of the procedures applied should reflect the assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud. For example, increasing sample sizes or performing analytical procedures at a more detailed level may be appropriate (see section 350, *Audit Sampling*, paragraph .23, and section 329). Also, computer-assisted audit techniques may enable more extensive testing of electronic transactions and account files. Such techniques can be used to select sample transactions from key electronic files, to sort transactions with specific characteristics, or to test an entire population instead of a sample.

.53 The following are examples of modification of the nature, timing, and extent of tests in response to identified risks of material misstatements due to fraud.

- Performing procedures at locations on a surprise or unannounced basis, for example, observing inventory on unexpected dates or at unexpected locations or counting cash on a surprise basis.

- Requesting that inventories be counted at the end of the reporting period or on a date closer to period end to minimize the risk of manipulation of balances in the period between the date of completion of the count and the end of the reporting period.
- Making oral inquiries of major customers and suppliers in addition to sending written confirmations, or sending confirmation requests to a specific party within an organization.
- Performing substantive analytical procedures using disaggregated data, for example, comparing gross profit or operating margins by location, line of business, or month to auditor-developed expectations.²⁰
- Interviewing personnel involved in activities in areas where a risk of material misstatement due to fraud has been identified to obtain their insights about the risk and how controls address the risk (also see paragraph .24).
- If other independent auditors are auditing the financial statements of one or more subsidiaries, divisions, or branches, discussing with them the extent of work that needs to be performed to address the risk of material misstatement due to fraud resulting from transactions and activities among these components.

Additional Examples of Responses to Identified Risks of Misstatements Arising From Fraudulent Financial Reporting

.54 The following are additional examples of responses to identified risks of material misstatements relating to fraudulent financial reporting:

- *Revenue recognition.* Because revenue recognition is dependent on the particular facts and circumstances, as well as accounting principles and practices that can vary by industry, the auditor ordinarily will develop auditing procedures based on the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment, including the composition of revenues, specific attributes of the revenue transactions, and unique industry considerations. If there is an identified risk of material misstatement due to fraud that involves improper revenue recognition, the auditor also may want to consider:
 - Performing substantive analytical procedures relating to revenue using disaggregated data, for example, comparing revenue reported by month and by product line or business segment during the current reporting period with comparable prior periods. Computer-assisted audit techniques may be useful in identifying unusual or unexpected revenue relationships or transactions.
 - Confirming with customers certain relevant contract terms and the absence of side agreements, because the appropriate accounting often is influenced by such terms or agreements.²¹ For example, acceptance criteria, delivery and payment terms, the absence of future or continuing vendor obligations, the right to return the product, guaranteed resale amounts, and cancellation or refund provisions often are relevant in such circumstances.

²⁰ Section 329, *Analytical Procedures*, provides guidance on performing analytical procedures as substantive tests.

²¹ Section 330, *The Confirmation Process*, provides guidance about the confirmation process in audits performed in accordance with GAAS.

- Inquiring of the entity's sales and marketing personnel or in-house legal counsel regarding sales or shipments near the end of the period and their knowledge of any unusual terms or conditions associated with these transactions.
 - Being physically present at one or more locations at period end to observe goods being shipped or being readied for shipment (or returns awaiting processing) and performing other appropriate sales and inventory cutoff procedures.
 - For those situations for which revenue transactions are electronically initiated, processed, and recorded, testing controls to determine whether they provide assurance that recorded revenue transactions occurred and are properly recorded.
- *Inventory quantities.* If there is an identified risk of material misstatement due to fraud that affects inventory quantities, examining the entity's inventory records may help identify locations or items that require specific attention during or after the physical inventory count. Such a review may lead to a decision to observe inventory counts at certain locations on an unannounced basis (see paragraph .53) or to conduct inventory counts at all locations on the same date. In addition, it may be appropriate for inventory counts to be conducted at or near the end of the reporting period to minimize the risk of inappropriate manipulation during the period between the count and the end of the reporting period.

It also may be appropriate for the auditor to perform additional procedures during the observation of the count, for example, more rigorously examining the contents of boxed items, the manner in which the goods are stacked (for example, hollow squares) or labeled, and the quality (that is, purity, grade, or concentration) of liquid substances such as perfumes or specialty chemicals. Using the work of a specialist may be helpful in this regard.²² Furthermore, additional testing of count sheets, tags, or other records, or the retention of copies of these records, may be warranted to minimize the risk of subsequent alteration or inappropriate compilation.

Following the physical inventory count, the auditor may want to employ additional procedures directed at the quantities included in the priced out inventories to further test the reasonableness of the quantities counted—for example, comparison of quantities for the current period with prior periods by class or category of inventory, location or other criteria, or comparison of quantities counted with perpetual records. The auditor also may consider using computer-assisted audit techniques to further test the compilation of the physical inventory counts—for example, sorting by tag number to test tag controls or by item serial number to test the possibility of item omission or duplication.

- *Management estimates.* The auditor may identify a risk of material misstatement due to fraud involving the development of management estimates. This risk may affect a number of accounts and assertions, including asset valuation, estimates relating to specific transactions (such as acquisitions, restructurings, or disposals of a segment of the

²² Section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*, provides guidance to an auditor who uses the work of a specialist in performing an audit in accordance with GAAS.

business), and other significant accrued liabilities (such as pension and other postretirement benefit obligations, or environmental remediation liabilities). The risk may also relate to significant changes in assumptions relating to recurring estimates. As indicated in section 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*, estimates are based on subjective as well as objective factors and there is a potential for bias in the subjective factors, even when management's estimation process involves competent personnel using relevant and reliable data.

In addressing an identified risk of material misstatement due to fraud involving accounting estimates, the auditor may want to supplement the audit evidence otherwise obtained (see section 342.09 through .14). In certain circumstances (for example, evaluating the reasonableness of management's estimate of the fair value of a derivative), it may be appropriate to engage a specialist or develop an independent estimate for comparison to management's estimate. Information gathered about the entity and its environment may help the auditor evaluate the reasonableness of such management estimates and underlying judgments and assumptions.

A retrospective review of similar management judgments and assumptions applied in prior periods (see paragraphs .63 through .65) may also provide insight about the reasonableness of judgments and assumptions supporting management estimates.

Examples of Responses to Identified Risks of Misstatements Arising From Misappropriations of Assets

.55 The auditor may have identified a risk of material misstatement due to fraud relating to misappropriation of assets. For example, the auditor may conclude that the risk of asset misappropriation at a particular operating location is significant because a large amount of easily accessible cash is maintained at that location, or there are inventory items such as laptop computers at that location that can easily be moved and sold.

.56 The auditor's response to a risk of material misstatement due to fraud relating to misappropriation of assets usually will be directed toward certain account balances. Although some of the audit responses noted in paragraphs .52 through .54 may apply in such circumstances, such as the procedures directed at inventory quantities, the scope of the work should be linked to the specific information about the misappropriation risk that has been identified. For example, if a particular asset is highly susceptible to misappropriation and a potential misstatement would be material to the financial statements, obtaining an understanding of the controls related to the prevention and detection of such misappropriation and testing the operating effectiveness of such controls may be warranted. In certain circumstances, physical inspection of such assets (for example, counting cash or securities) at or near the end of the reporting period may be appropriate. In addition, the use of substantive analytical procedures, such as the development by the auditor of an expected dollar amount at a high level of precision, to be compared with a recorded amount, may be effective in certain circumstances.

Responses to Further Address the Risk of Management Override of Controls

.57 As noted in paragraph .08, management is in a unique position to perpetrate fraud because of its ability to directly or indirectly manipulate accounting records and prepare fraudulent financial statements by overriding

established controls that otherwise appear to be operating effectively. By its nature, management override of controls can occur in unpredictable ways. Accordingly, in addition to overall responses (paragraph .50) and responses that address specifically identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud (see paragraphs .51 through .56), the procedures described in paragraphs .58 through .67 should be performed to further address the risk of management override of controls.

.58 *Examining journal entries and other adjustments for evidence of possible material misstatement due to fraud.* Material misstatements of financial statements due to fraud often involve the manipulation of the financial reporting process by (a) recording inappropriate or unauthorized journal entries throughout the year or at period end, or (b) making adjustments to amounts reported in the financial statements that are not reflected in formal journal entries, such as through consolidating adjustments, report combinations, and reclassifications. Accordingly, the auditor should design procedures to test the appropriateness of journal entries recorded in the general ledger and other adjustments (for example, entries posted directly to financial statement drafts) made in the preparation of the financial statements. More specifically, the auditor should:

- a. Obtain an understanding of the entity's financial reporting process²³ and the controls over journal entries and other adjustments. (See paragraphs .59 and .60.)
- b. Identify and select journal entries and other adjustments for testing. (See paragraph .61.)
- c. Determine the timing of the testing. (See paragraph .62.)
- d. Inquire of individuals involved in the financial reporting process about inappropriate or unusual activity relating to the processing of journal entries and other adjustments.

.59 The auditor's understanding of the entity's financial reporting process may help in identifying the type, number, and monetary value of journal entries and other adjustments that typically are made in preparing the financial statements. For example, the auditor's understanding may include the sources of significant debits and credits to an account, who can initiate entries to the general ledger or transaction processing systems, what approvals are required for such entries, and how journal entries are recorded (for example, entries may be initiated and recorded online with no physical evidence, or may be created in paper form and entered in batch mode).

.60 An entity may have implemented specific controls over journal entries and other adjustments. For example, an entity may use journal entries that are preformatted with account numbers and specific user approval criteria, and may have automated controls to generate an exception report for any entries that were unsuccessfully proposed for recording or entries that were recorded and processed outside of established parameters. The auditor should obtain an understanding of the design of such controls over journal entries and other adjustments and determine whether they are suitably designed and have been placed in operation.

²³ Section 319 requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of the automated and manual procedures an entity uses to prepare financial statements and related disclosures, and how misstatements may occur. This understanding includes (a) the procedures used to enter transaction totals into the general ledger; (b) the procedures used to initiate, record, and process journal entries in the general ledger; and (c) other procedures used to record recurring and nonrecurring adjustments to the financial statements.

.61 The auditor should use professional judgment in determining the nature, timing, and extent of the testing of journal entries and other adjustments. For purposes of identifying and selecting specific entries and other adjustments for testing, and determining the appropriate method of examining the underlying support for the items selected, the auditor should consider:

- *The auditor's assessment of the risk of material misstatement due to fraud.* The presence of fraud risk factors or other conditions may help the auditor to identify specific classes of journal entries for testing and indicate the extent of testing necessary.
- *The effectiveness of controls that have been implemented over journal entries and other adjustments.* Effective controls over the preparation and posting of journal entries and adjustments may affect the extent of substantive testing necessary, provided that the auditor has tested the operating effectiveness of those controls. However, even though controls might be implemented and operating effectively, the auditor's procedures for testing journal entries and other adjustments should include the identification and testing of specific items.
- *The entity's financial reporting process and the nature of the evidence that can be examined.* The auditor's procedures for testing journal entries and other adjustments will vary based on the nature of the financial reporting process. For many entities, routine processing of transactions involves a combination of manual and automated steps and procedures. Similarly, the processing of journal entries and other adjustments might involve both manual and automated procedures and controls. Regardless of the method, the auditor's procedures should include selecting from the general ledger journal entries to be tested and examining support for those items. In addition, the auditor should be aware that journal entries and other adjustments might exist in either electronic or paper form. When information technology (IT) is used in the financial reporting process, journal entries and other adjustments might exist only in electronic form. Electronic evidence often requires extraction of the desired data by an auditor with IT knowledge and skills or the use of an IT specialist. In an IT environment, it may be necessary for the auditor to employ computer-assisted audit techniques (for example, report writers, software or data extraction tools, or other systems-based techniques) to identify the journal entries and other adjustments to be tested.
- *The characteristics of fraudulent entries or adjustments.* Inappropriate journal entries and other adjustments often have certain unique identifying characteristics. Such characteristics may include entries (a) made to unrelated, unusual, or seldom-used accounts, (b) made by individuals who typically do not make journal entries, (c) recorded at the end of the period or as post-closing entries that have little or no explanation or description, (d) made either before or during the preparation of the financial statements that do not have account numbers, or (e) containing round numbers or a consistent ending number.
- *The nature and complexity of the accounts.* Inappropriate journal entries or adjustments may be applied to accounts that (a) contain transactions that are complex or unusual in nature, (b) contain significant estimates and period-end adjustments, (c) have been prone to errors in the past, (d) have not been reconciled on a timely basis or contain unreconciled differences, (e) contain intercompany transactions,

or (f) are otherwise associated with an identified risk of material misstatement due to fraud. The auditor should recognize, however, that inappropriate journal entries and adjustments also might be made to other accounts. In audits of entities that have several locations or components, the auditor should consider the need to select journal entries from locations based on the factors set forth in section 312.18.

- *Journal entries or other adjustments processed outside the normal course of business.* Standard journal entries used on a recurring basis to record transactions such as monthly sales, purchases, and cash disbursements, or to record recurring periodic accounting estimates generally are subject to the entity's internal controls. Nonstandard entries (for example, entries used to record nonrecurring transactions, such as a business combination, or entries used to record a nonrecurring estimate, such as an asset impairment) might not be subject to the same level of internal control. In addition, other adjustments such as consolidating adjustments, report combinations, and reclassifications generally are not reflected in formal journal entries and might not be subject to the entity's internal controls. Accordingly, the auditor should consider placing additional emphasis on identifying and testing items processed outside of the normal course of business.

.62 Because fraudulent journal entries often are made at the end of a reporting period, the auditor's testing ordinarily should focus on the journal entries and other adjustments made at that time. However, because material misstatements in financial statements due to fraud can occur throughout the period and may involve extensive efforts to conceal how it is accomplished, the auditor should consider whether there also is a need to test journal entries throughout the period under audit.

.63 *Reviewing accounting estimates for biases that could result in material misstatement due to fraud.* In preparing financial statements, management is responsible for making a number of judgments or assumptions that affect significant accounting estimates²⁴ and for monitoring the reasonableness of such estimates on an ongoing basis. Fraudulent financial reporting often is accomplished through intentional misstatement of accounting estimates. As discussed in section 312.36, the auditor should consider whether differences between estimates best supported by the audit evidence and the estimates included in the financial statements, even if they are individually reasonable, indicate a possible bias on the part of the entity's management, in which case the auditor should reconsider the estimates taken as a whole.

.64 The auditor also should perform a retrospective review of significant accounting estimates reflected in the financial statements of the prior year to determine whether management judgments and assumptions relating to the estimates indicate a possible bias on the part of management. The significant accounting estimates selected for testing should include those that are based on highly sensitive assumptions or are otherwise significantly affected by judgments made by management. With the benefit of hindsight, a retrospective review should provide the auditor with additional information about whether there may be a possible bias on the part of management in making the current-year estimates. This review, however, is not intended to call into question the auditor's professional judgments made in the prior year that were based on information available at the time.

²⁴ See section 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*, paragraphs .02 and .16, for a definition of accounting estimates and a listing of examples.

.65 If the auditor identifies a possible bias on the part of management in making accounting estimates, the auditor should evaluate whether circumstances producing such a bias represent a risk of a material misstatement due to fraud. For example, information coming to the auditor's attention may indicate a risk that adjustments to the current-year estimates might be recorded at the instruction of management to arbitrarily achieve a specified earnings target.

.66 *Evaluating the business rationale for significant unusual transactions.* During the course of the audit, the auditor may become aware of significant transactions that are outside the normal course of business for the entity, or that otherwise appear to be unusual given the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment. The auditor should gain an understanding of the business rationale for such transactions and whether that rationale (or the lack thereof) suggests that the transactions may have been entered into to engage in fraudulent financial reporting or conceal misappropriation of assets.

.67 In understanding the business rationale for the transactions, the auditor should consider:

- Whether the form of such transactions is overly complex (for example, involves multiple entities within a consolidated group or unrelated third parties).
- Whether management has discussed the nature of and accounting for such transactions with the audit committee or board of directors.
- Whether management is placing more emphasis on the need for a particular accounting treatment than on the underlying economics of the transaction.
- Whether transactions that involve unconsolidated related parties, including special purpose entities, have been properly reviewed and approved by the audit committee or board of directors.
- Whether the transactions involve previously unidentified related parties²⁵ or parties that do not have the substance or the financial strength to support the transaction without assistance from the entity under audit.

Evaluating Audit Evidence

.68 *Assessing risks of material misstatement due to fraud throughout the audit.* The auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud should be ongoing throughout the audit. Conditions may be identified during fieldwork that change or support a judgment regarding the assessment of the risks, such as the following:

- Discrepancies in the accounting records, including:
 - Transactions that are not recorded in a complete or timely manner or are improperly recorded as to amount, accounting period, classification, or entity policy
 - Unsupported or unauthorized balances or transactions
 - Last-minute adjustments that significantly affect financial results

²⁵ Section 334, *Related Parties*, provides guidance with respect to the identification of related-party relationships and transactions, including transactions that may be outside the ordinary course of business (see, in particular, section 334.06).

- Evidence of employees' access to systems and records inconsistent with that necessary to perform their authorized duties
- Tips or complaints to the auditor about alleged fraud
- Conflicting or missing evidential matter, including:
 - Missing documents
 - Documents that appear to have been altered²⁶
 - Unavailability of other than photocopied or electronically transmitted documents when documents in original form are expected to exist
 - Significant unexplained items on reconciliations
 - Inconsistent, vague, or implausible responses from management or employees arising from inquiries or analytical procedures (See paragraph .72.)
 - Unusual discrepancies between the entity's records and confirmation replies
 - Missing inventory or physical assets of significant magnitude
 - Unavailable or missing electronic evidence, inconsistent with the entity's record retention practices or policies
 - Inability to produce evidence of key systems development and program change testing and implementation activities for current-year system changes and deployments
- Problematic or unusual relationships between the auditor and management, including:
 - Denial of access to records, facilities, certain employees, customers, vendors, or others from whom audit evidence might be sought²⁷
 - Undue time pressures imposed by management to resolve complex or contentious issues
 - Complaints by management about the conduct of the audit or management intimidation of audit team members, particularly in connection with the auditor's critical assessment of audit evidence or in the resolution of potential disagreements with management
 - Unusual delays by the entity in providing requested information
 - Unwillingness to facilitate auditor access to key electronic files for testing through the use of computer-assisted audit techniques
 - Denial of access to key IT operations staff and facilities, including security, operations, and systems development personnel
 - An unwillingness to add or revise disclosures in the financial statements to make them more complete and transparent

.69 *Evaluating whether analytical procedures performed as substantive tests or in the overall review stage of the audit indicate a previously unrecognized risk of material misstatement due to fraud.* As discussed in paragraphs .28 through .30, the auditor should consider whether analytical procedures performed in planning the audit result in identifying any unusual or unexpected relationships that should be considered

²⁶ As discussed in paragraph .09, auditors are not trained as or expected to be experts in the authentication of documents; however, if the auditor believes that documents may not be authentic, he or she should investigate further and consider using the work of a specialist to determine the authenticity.

²⁷ Denial of access to information may constitute a limitation on the scope of the audit that may require the auditor to consider qualifying or disclaiming an opinion on the financial statements. (See section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .24.)

in assessing the risks of material misstatement due to fraud. The auditor also should evaluate whether analytical procedures that were performed as substantive tests or in the overall review stage of the audit (see section 329) indicate a previously unrecognized risk of material misstatement due to fraud.

.70 If not already performed during the overall review stage of the audit, the auditor should perform analytical procedures relating to revenue, as discussed in paragraph .29, through the end of the reporting period.

.71 Determining which particular trends and relationships may indicate a risk of material misstatement due to fraud requires professional judgment. Unusual relationships involving year-end revenue and income often are particularly relevant. These might include, for example, (a) uncharacteristically large amounts of income being reported in the last week or two of the reporting period from unusual transactions, as well as (b) income that is inconsistent with trends in cash flow from operations.

.72 Some unusual or unexpected analytical relationships may have been identified and may indicate a risk of material misstatement due to fraud because management or employees generally are unable to manipulate certain information to create seemingly normal or expected relationships. Some examples are as follows:

- The relationship of net income to cash flows from operations may appear unusual because management recorded fictitious revenues and receivables but was unable to manipulate cash.
- Changes in inventory, accounts payable, sales, or cost of sales from the prior period to the current period may be inconsistent, indicating a possible employee theft of inventory, because the employee was unable to manipulate all of the related accounts.
- A comparison of the entity's profitability to industry trends, which management cannot manipulate, may indicate trends or differences for further consideration when identifying risks of material misstatement due to fraud.
- A comparison of bad debt write-offs to comparable industry data, which employees cannot manipulate, may provide unexplained relationships that could indicate a possible theft of cash receipts.
- An unexpected or unexplained relationship between sales volume as determined from the accounting records and production statistics maintained by operations personnel—which may be more difficult for management to manipulate—may indicate a possible misstatement of sales.

.73 The auditor also should consider whether responses to inquiries throughout the audit about analytical relationships have been vague or implausible, or have produced evidence that is inconsistent with other evidential matter accumulated during the audit.

.74 *Evaluating the risks of material misstatement due to fraud at or near the completion of fieldwork.* At or near the completion of fieldwork, the auditor should evaluate whether the accumulated results of auditing procedures and other observations (for example, conditions and analytical relationships noted in paragraphs .69 through .73) affect the assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud made earlier in the audit. This evaluation primarily is a qualitative matter based on the auditor's judgment.

Such an evaluation may provide further insight about the risks of material misstatement due to fraud and whether there is a need to perform additional or different audit procedures. As part of this evaluation, the auditor with final responsibility for the audit should ascertain that there has been appropriate communication with the other audit team members throughout the audit regarding information or conditions indicative of risks of material misstatement due to fraud.²⁸

.75 *Responding to misstatements that may be the result of fraud.*

When audit test results identify misstatements in the financial statements, the auditor should consider whether such misstatements may be indicative of fraud.²⁹ That determination affects the auditor's evaluation of materiality and the related responses necessary as a result of that evaluation.³⁰

.76 If the auditor believes that misstatements are or may be the result of fraud, but the effect of the misstatements is not material to the financial statements, the auditor nevertheless should evaluate the implications, especially those dealing with the organizational position of the person(s) involved. For example, fraud involving misappropriations of cash from a small petty cash fund normally would be of little significance to the auditor in assessing the risk of material misstatement due to fraud because both the manner of operating the fund and its size would tend to establish a limit on the amount of potential loss, and the custodianship of such funds normally is entrusted to a nonmanagement employee.³¹ Conversely, if the matter involves higher-level management, even though the amount itself is not material to the financial statements, it may be indicative of a more pervasive problem, for example, implications about the integrity of management.³² In such circumstances, the auditor should reevaluate the assessment of the risk of material misstatement due to fraud and its resulting impact on (a) the nature, timing, and extent of the tests of balances or transactions and (b) the assessment of the effectiveness of controls if control risk was assessed below the maximum.

.77 If the auditor believes that the misstatement is or may be the result of fraud, and either has determined that the effect could be material to the financial statements or has been unable to evaluate whether the effect is material, the auditor should:

- a. Attempt to obtain additional evidential matter to determine whether material fraud has occurred or is likely to have occurred, and, if so, its effect on the financial statements and the auditor's report thereon.³³

²⁸ To accomplish this communication, the auditor with final responsibility for the audit may want to arrange another discussion among audit team members about the risks of material misstatement due to fraud (see paragraphs .14 through .18).

²⁹ See footnote 4.

³⁰ Section 312.34 states in part, "Qualitative considerations also influence the auditor in reaching a conclusion as to whether misstatements are material." Section 312.11 states, "As a result of the interaction of quantitative and qualitative considerations in materiality judgments, misstatements of relatively small amounts that come to the auditor's attention could have a material effect on the financial statements."

³¹ However, see paragraphs .79 through .82 of this section for a discussion of the auditor's communication responsibilities.

³² Section 312.08 states that there is a distinction between the auditor's response to detected misstatements due to error and those due to fraud. When fraud is detected, the auditor should consider the implications for the integrity of management or employees and the possible effect on other aspects of the audit.

³³ See section 508 for guidance on auditors' reports issued in connection with audits of financial statements.

- b. Consider the implications for other aspects of the audit (see paragraph .76).
- c. Discuss the matter and the approach for further investigation with an appropriate level of management that is at least one level above those involved, and with senior management and the audit committee.³⁴
- d. If appropriate, suggest that the client consult with legal counsel.

.78 The auditor's consideration of the risks of material misstatement and the results of audit tests may indicate such a significant risk of material misstatement due to fraud that the auditor should consider withdrawing from the engagement and communicating the reasons for withdrawal to the audit committee or others with equivalent authority and responsibility.³⁵ Whether the auditor concludes that withdrawal from the engagement is appropriate may depend on (a) the implications about the integrity of management and (b) the diligence and cooperation of management or the board of directors in investigating the circumstances and taking appropriate action. Because of the variety of circumstances that may arise, it is not possible to definitively describe when withdrawal is appropriate.³⁶ The auditor may wish to consult with legal counsel when considering withdrawal from an engagement.

Communicating About Possible Fraud to Management, the Audit Committee, and Others³⁷

.79 Whenever the auditor has determined that there is evidence that fraud may exist, that matter should be brought to the attention of an appropriate level of management. This is appropriate even if the matter might be considered inconsequential, such as a minor defalcation by an employee at a low level in the entity's organization. Fraud involving senior management and fraud (whether caused by senior management or other employees) that causes a material misstatement of the financial statements should be reported directly to the audit committee. In addition, the auditor should reach an understanding with the audit committee regarding the nature and extent of communications with the committee about misappropriations perpetrated by lower-level employees.

.80 If the auditor, as a result of the assessment of the risks of material misstatement, has identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud that have continuing control implications (whether or not transactions or adjustments that could be the result of fraud have been detected), the auditor should

³⁴ If the auditor believes senior management may be involved, discussion of the matter directly with the audit committee may be appropriate.

³⁵ See footnote 11.

³⁶ If the auditor, subsequent to the date of the report on the audited financial statements, becomes aware that facts existed at that date that might have affected the report had the auditor been aware of such facts, the auditor should refer to section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*, for guidance. Furthermore, section 315, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*, paragraphs .21 and .22, provide guidance regarding communication with a predecessor auditor.

³⁷ The requirements to communicate noted in paragraphs .79 through .82 extend to any intentional misstatement of financial statements (see paragraph .03). However, the communication may use terms other than fraud—for example, irregularity, intentional misstatement, misappropriation, or defalcations—if there is possible confusion with a legal definition of fraud or other reason to prefer alternative terms.

consider whether these risks represent reportable conditions relating to the entity's internal control that should be communicated to senior management and the audit committee.³⁸ (See section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*, paragraph .04). The auditor also should consider whether the absence of or deficiencies in programs and controls to mitigate specific risks of fraud or to otherwise help prevent, deter, and detect fraud (see paragraph .44) represent reportable conditions that should be communicated to senior management and the audit committee.

.81 The auditor also may wish to communicate other risks of fraud identified as a result of the assessment of the risks of material misstatements due to fraud. Such a communication may be a part of an overall communication to the audit committee of business and financial statement risks affecting the entity and/or in conjunction with the auditor communication about the quality of the entity's accounting principles (see section 380.11).

.82 The disclosure of possible fraud to parties other than the client's senior management and its audit committee ordinarily is not part of the auditor's responsibility and ordinarily would be precluded by the auditor's ethical or legal obligations of confidentiality unless the matter is reflected in the auditor's report. The auditor should recognize, however, that in the following circumstances a duty to disclose to parties outside the entity may exist:

- a. To comply with certain legal and regulatory requirements³⁹
- b. To a successor auditor when the successor makes inquiries in accordance with section 315, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*⁴⁰
- c. In response to a subpoena
- d. To a funding agency or other specified agency in accordance with requirements for the audits of entities that receive governmental financial assistance⁴¹

Because potential conflicts between the auditor's ethical and legal obligations for confidentiality of client matters may be complex, the auditor may wish to consult with legal counsel before discussing matters covered by paragraphs .79 through .81 with parties outside the client.

Documenting the Auditor's Consideration of Fraud

.83 The auditor should document the following:

- The discussion among engagement personnel in planning the audit regarding the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud, including how and when the discussion occurred, the audit team members who participated, and the subject matter discussed (See paragraphs .14 through .17.)

³⁸ Alternatively, the auditor may decide to communicate solely with the audit committee.

³⁹ These requirements include reports in connection with the termination of the engagement, such as when the entity reports an auditor change on Form 8-K and the fraud or related risk factors constitute a *reportable event* or is the source of a *disagreement*, as these terms are defined in Item 304 of Regulation S-K. These requirements also include reports that may be required, under certain circumstances, pursuant to Section 10A(b)1 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 relating to an illegal act that has a material effect on the financial statements.

⁴⁰ Section 315 requires the specific permission of the client.

⁴¹ For example, *Government Auditing Standards* (the Yellow Book) require auditors to report fraud or illegal acts directly to parties outside the audited entity in certain circumstances.

- The procedures performed to obtain information necessary to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement due to fraud (See paragraphs .19 through .34.)
- Specific risks of material misstatement due to fraud that were identified (see paragraphs .35 through .45), and a description of the auditor's response to those risks (See paragraphs .46 through .56.)
- If the auditor has not identified in a particular circumstance, improper revenue recognition as a risk of material misstatement due to fraud, the reasons supporting the auditor's conclusion (See paragraph .41.)
- The results of the procedures performed to further address the risk of management override of controls (See paragraphs .58 through .67.)
- Other conditions and analytical relationships that caused the auditor to believe that additional auditing procedures or other responses were required and any further responses the auditor concluded were appropriate, to address such risks or other conditions (See paragraphs .68 through .73.)
- The nature of the communications about fraud made to management, the audit committee, and others (See paragraphs .79 through .82.)

Effective Date

.84 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2002. Early application of the provisions of this section is permissible.

Appendix

Examples of Fraud Risk Factors

A.1 This appendix contains examples of risk factors discussed in paragraphs .31 through .33 of the section. Separately presented are examples relating to the two types of fraud relevant to the auditor's consideration—that is, fraudulent financial reporting and misappropriation of assets. For each of these types of fraud, the risk factors are further classified based on the three conditions generally present when material misstatements due to fraud occur: (a) incentives/pressures, (b) opportunities, and (c) attitudes/rationalizations. Although the risk factors cover a broad range of situations, they are only examples and, accordingly, the auditor may wish to consider additional or different risk factors. Not all of these examples are relevant in all circumstances, and some may be of greater or lesser significance in entities of different size or with different ownership characteristics or circumstances. Also, the order of the examples of risk factors provided is not intended to reflect their relative importance or frequency of occurrence.

Risk Factors Relating to Misstatements Arising From Fraudulent Financial Reporting

A.2 The following are examples of risk factors relating to misstatements arising from fraudulent financial reporting.

Incentives/Pressures

- a. Financial stability or profitability is threatened by economic, industry, or entity operating conditions, such as (or as indicated by):
 - High degree of competition or market saturation, accompanied by declining margins
 - High vulnerability to rapid changes, such as changes in technology, product obsolescence, or interest rates
 - Significant declines in customer demand and increasing business failures in either the industry or overall economy
 - Operating losses making the threat of bankruptcy, foreclosure, or hostile takeover imminent
 - Recurring negative cash flows from operations or an inability to generate cash flows from operations while reporting earnings and earnings growth
 - Rapid growth or unusual profitability, especially compared to that of other companies in the same industry
 - New accounting, statutory, or regulatory requirements
- b. Excessive pressure exists for management to meet the requirements or expectations of third parties due to the following:
 - Profitability or trend level expectations of investment analysts, institutional investors, significant creditors, or other external parties (particularly expectations that are unduly aggressive or unrealistic), including expectations created by management in, for example, overly optimistic press releases or annual report messages

- Need to obtain additional debt or equity financing to stay competitive—including financing of major research and development or capital expenditures
 - Marginal ability to meet exchange listing requirements or debt repayment or other debt covenant requirements
 - Perceived or real adverse effects of reporting poor financial results on significant pending transactions, such as business combinations or contract awards
- c. Information available indicates that management or the board of directors' personal financial situation is threatened by the entity's financial performance arising from the following:
- Significant financial interests in the entity
 - Significant portions of their compensation (for example, bonuses, stock options, and earn-out arrangements) being contingent upon achieving aggressive targets for stock price, operating results, financial position, or cash flow¹
 - Personal guarantees of debts of the entity
- d. There is excessive pressure on management or operating personnel to meet financial targets set up by the board of directors or management, including sales or profitability incentive goals.

Opportunities

- a. The nature of the industry or the entity's operations provides opportunities to engage in fraudulent financial reporting that can arise from the following:
- Significant related-party transactions not in the ordinary course of business or with related entities not audited or audited by another firm
 - A strong financial presence or ability to dominate a certain industry sector that allows the entity to dictate terms or conditions to suppliers or customers that may result in inappropriate or non-arm's-length transactions
 - Assets, liabilities, revenues, or expenses based on significant estimates that involve subjective judgments or uncertainties that are difficult to corroborate
 - Significant, unusual, or highly complex transactions, especially those close to period end that pose difficult "substance over form" questions
 - Significant operations located or conducted across international borders in jurisdictions where differing business environments and cultures exist
 - Significant bank accounts or subsidiary or branch operations in tax-haven jurisdictions for which there appears to be no clear business justification

¹ Management incentive plans may be contingent upon achieving targets relating only to certain accounts or selected activities of the entity, even though the related accounts or activities may not be material to the entity as a whole.

- b. There is ineffective monitoring of management as a result of the following:
 - Domination of management by a single person or small group (in a nonowner-managed business) without compensating controls
 - Ineffective board of directors or audit committee oversight over the financial reporting process and internal control
- c. There is a complex or unstable organizational structure, as evidenced by the following:
 - Difficulty in determining the organization or individuals that have controlling interest in the entity
 - Overly complex organizational structure involving unusual legal entities or managerial lines of authority
 - High turnover of senior management, counsel, or board members
- d. Internal control components are deficient as a result of the following:
 - Inadequate monitoring of controls, including automated controls and controls over interim financial reporting (where external reporting is required)
 - High turnover rates or employment of ineffective accounting, internal audit, or information technology staff
 - Ineffective accounting and information systems, including situations involving reportable conditions

Attitudes/Rationalizations

Risk factors reflective of attitudes/rationalizations by board members, management, or employees, that allow them to engage in and/or justify fraudulent financial reporting, may not be susceptible to observation by the auditor. Nevertheless, the auditor who becomes aware of the existence of such information should consider it in identifying the risks of material misstatement arising from fraudulent financial reporting. For example, auditors may become aware of the following information that may indicate a risk factor:

- Ineffective communication, implementation, support, or enforcement of the entity's values or ethical standards by management or the communication of inappropriate values or ethical standards
- Nonfinancial management's excessive participation in or preoccupation with the selection of accounting principles or the determination of significant estimates
- Known history of violations of securities laws or other laws and regulations, or claims against the entity, its senior management, or board members alleging fraud or violations of laws and regulations
- Excessive interest by management in maintaining or increasing the entity's stock price or earnings trend
- A practice by management of committing to analysts, creditors, and other third parties to achieve aggressive or unrealistic forecasts
- Management failing to correct known reportable conditions on a timely basis
- An interest by management in employing inappropriate means to minimize reported earnings for tax-motivated reasons
- Recurring attempts by management to justify marginal or inappropriate accounting on the basis of materiality

- The relationship between management and the current or predecessor auditor is strained, as exhibited by the following:
 - Frequent disputes with the current or predecessor auditor on accounting, auditing, or reporting matters
 - Unreasonable demands on the auditor, such as unreasonable time constraints regarding the completion of the audit or the issuance of the auditor's report
 - Formal or informal restrictions on the auditor that inappropriately limit access to people or information or the ability to communicate effectively with the board of directors or audit committee
 - Domineering management behavior in dealing with the auditor, especially involving attempts to influence the scope of the auditor's work or the selection or continuance of personnel assigned to or consulted on the audit engagement

Risk Factors Relating to Misstatements Arising From Misappropriation of Assets

A.3 Risk factors that relate to misstatements arising from misappropriation of assets are also classified according to the three conditions generally present when fraud exists: incentives/pressures, opportunities, and attitudes/rationalizations. Some of the risk factors related to misstatements arising from fraudulent financial reporting also may be present when misstatements arising from misappropriation of assets occur. For example, ineffective monitoring of management and weaknesses in internal control may be present when misstatements due to either fraudulent financial reporting or misappropriation of assets exist. The following are examples of risk factors related to misstatements arising from misappropriation of assets.

Incentives/Pressures

- a. Personal financial obligations may create pressure on management or employees with access to cash or other assets susceptible to theft to misappropriate those assets.
- b. Adverse relationships between the entity and employees with access to cash or other assets susceptible to theft may motivate those employees to misappropriate those assets. For example, adverse relationships may be created by the following:
 - Known or anticipated future employee layoffs
 - Recent or anticipated changes to employee compensation or benefit plans
 - Promotions, compensation, or other rewards inconsistent with expectations

Opportunities

- a. Certain characteristics or circumstances may increase the susceptibility of assets to misappropriation. For example, opportunities to misappropriate assets increase when there are the following:
 - Large amounts of cash on hand or processed
 - Inventory items that are small in size, of high value, or in high demand

- Easily convertible assets, such as bearer bonds, diamonds, or computer chips
- Fixed assets that are small in size, marketable, or lacking observable identification of ownership
- b. Inadequate internal control over assets may increase the susceptibility of misappropriation of those assets. For example, misappropriation of assets may occur because there is the following:
 - Inadequate segregation of duties or independent checks
 - Inadequate management oversight of employees responsible for assets, for example, inadequate supervision or monitoring of remote locations
 - Inadequate job applicant screening of employees with access to assets
 - Inadequate recordkeeping with respect to assets
 - Inadequate system of authorization and approval of transactions (for example, in purchasing)
 - Inadequate physical safeguards over cash, investments, inventory, or fixed assets
 - Lack of complete and timely reconciliations of assets
 - Lack of timely and appropriate documentation of transactions, for example, credits for merchandise returns
 - Lack of mandatory vacations for employees performing key control functions
 - Inadequate management understanding of information technology, which enables information technology employees to perpetrate a misappropriation
 - Inadequate access controls over automated records, including controls over and review of computer systems event logs.

Attitudes/Rationalizations

Risk factors reflective of employee attitudes/rationalizations that allow them to justify misappropriations of assets, are generally not susceptible to observation by the auditor. Nevertheless, the auditor who becomes aware of the existence of such information should consider it in identifying the risks of material misstatement arising from misappropriation of assets. For example, auditors may become aware of the following attitudes or behavior of employees who have access to assets susceptible to misappropriation:

- Disregard for the need for monitoring or reducing risks related to misappropriations of assets
- Disregard for internal control over misappropriation of assets by overriding existing controls or by failing to correct known internal control deficiencies
- Behavior indicating displeasure or dissatisfaction with the company or its treatment of the employee
- Changes in behavior or lifestyle that may indicate assets have been misappropriated

Exhibit

Management Antifraud Programs and Controls

Guidance to Help Prevent, Deter, and Detect Fraud

(This exhibit is reprinted for the reader's convenience but is not an integral part of the section.)

This document is being issued jointly by the following organizations:

American Institute of Certified Public Accountants

Association of Certified Fraud Examiners

Financial Executives International

Information Systems Audit and Control Association

The Institute of Internal Auditors

Institute of Management Accountants

Society for Human Resource Management

In addition, we would also like to acknowledge the American Accounting Association, the Defense Industry Initiative, and the National Association of Corporate Directors for their review of the document and helpful comments and materials.

We gratefully acknowledge the valuable contribution provided by the Anti-Fraud Detection Subgroup:

Daniel D. Montgomery, *Chair*

Toby J.F. Bishop

Dennis H. Chookaszian

Susan A. Finn

Dana Hermanson

David L. Landsittel

Carol A. Langelier

Joseph T. Wells

Janice Wilkins

Finally, we thank the staff of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants for their support on this project:

Charles E. Landes

Director

Audit and Attest Standards

Richard Lanza

Senior Program Manager

Chief Operating Office

Kim M. Gibson

Senior Technical Manager

Audit and Attest Standards

Hugh Kelsey

Program Manager

Knowledge Management

This document was commissioned by the Fraud Task Force of the AICPA's Auditing Standards Board. This document has not been adopted, approved, disapproved, or otherwise acted upon by a board, committee, governing body, or membership of the above issuing organizations.

Preface

Some organizations have significantly lower levels of misappropriation of assets and are less susceptible to fraudulent financial reporting than other organizations because these organizations take proactive steps to prevent or deter fraud. It is only those organizations that seriously consider fraud risks and take proactive steps to create the right kind of climate to reduce its occurrence that have success in preventing fraud. This document identifies the key participants in this antifraud effort, including the board of directors, management, internal and independent auditors, and certified fraud examiners.

Management may develop and implement some of these programs and controls in response to specific identified risks of material misstatement of financial statements due to fraud. In other cases, these programs and controls may be a part of the entity's enterprise-wide risk management activities.

Management is responsible for designing and implementing systems and procedures for the prevention and detection of fraud and, along with the board of directors, for ensuring a culture and environment that promotes honesty and ethical behavior. However, because of the characteristics of fraud, a material misstatement of financial statements due to fraud may occur notwithstanding the presence of programs and controls such as those described in this document.

Introduction

Fraud can range from minor employee theft and unproductive behavior to misappropriation of assets and fraudulent financial reporting. Material financial statement fraud can have a significant adverse effect on an entity's market value, reputation, and ability to achieve its strategic objectives. A number of highly publicized cases have heightened the awareness of the effects of fraudulent financial reporting and have led many organizations to be more proactive in taking steps to prevent or deter its occurrence. Misappropriation of assets, though often not material to the financial statements, can nonetheless result in substantial losses to an entity if a dishonest employee has the incentive and opportunity to commit fraud.

The risk of fraud can be reduced through a combination of prevention, deterrence, and detection measures. However, fraud can be difficult to detect because it often involves concealment through falsification of documents or collusion among management, employees, or third parties. Therefore, it is important to place a strong emphasis on fraud prevention, which may reduce opportunities for fraud to take place, and fraud deterrence, which could persuade individuals that they should not commit fraud because of the likelihood of detection and punishment. Moreover, prevention and deterrence measures are much less costly than the time and expense required for fraud detection and investigation.

An entity's management has both the responsibility and the means to implement measures to reduce the incidence of fraud. The measures an organization takes to prevent and deter fraud also can help create a positive workplace environment that can enhance the entity's ability to recruit and retain high-quality employees.

Research suggests that the most effective way to implement measures to reduce wrongdoing is to base them on a set of core values that are embraced by the entity. These values provide an overarching message about the key principles guiding all employees' actions. This provides a platform upon which a more detailed code of conduct can be constructed, giving more specific guidance about permitted and prohibited behavior, based on applicable laws and the organization's values. Management needs to clearly articulate that all employees will be held accountable to act within the organization's code of conduct.

This document identifies measures entities can implement to prevent, deter, and detect fraud. It discusses these measures in the context of three fundamental elements. Broadly stated, these fundamental elements are (1) create and maintain a *culture* of honesty and high ethics; (2) *evaluate* the risks of fraud and implement the processes, procedures, and controls needed to mitigate the risks and reduce the opportunities for fraud; and (3) develop an appropriate *oversight* process. Although the entire management team shares the responsibility for implementing and monitoring these activities, with oversight from the board of directors, the entity's chief executive officer (CEO) should initiate and support such measures. Without the CEO's active support, these measures are less likely to be effective.

The information presented in this document generally is applicable to entities of all sizes. However, the degree to which certain programs and controls are applied in smaller, less-complex entities and the formality of their application are likely to differ from larger organizations. For example, management of a smaller entity (or the owner of an owner-managed entity), along with those

charged with governance of the financial reporting process, are responsible for creating a culture of honesty and high ethics. Management also is responsible for implementing a system of internal controls commensurate with the nature and size of the organization, but smaller entities may find that certain types of control activities are not relevant because of the involvement of and controls applied by management. However, all entities must make it clear that unethical or dishonest behavior will not be tolerated.

Creating a Culture of Honesty and High Ethics

It is the organization's responsibility to create a culture of honesty and high ethics and to clearly communicate acceptable behavior and expectations of each employee. Such a culture is rooted in a strong set of core values (or value system) that provides the foundation for employees as to how the organization conducts its business. It also allows an entity to develop an ethical framework that covers (1) fraudulent financial reporting, (2) misappropriation of assets, and (3) corruption as well as other issues.¹

Creating a culture of honesty and high ethics should include the following.

Setting the Tone at the Top

Directors and officers of corporations set the “tone at the top” for ethical behavior within any organization. Research in moral development strongly suggests that honesty can best be reinforced when a proper example is set—sometimes referred to as the tone at the top. The management of an entity cannot act one way and expect others in the entity to behave differently.

In many cases, particularly in larger organizations, it is necessary for management to both behave ethically and openly communicate its expectations for ethical behavior because most employees are not in a position to observe management's actions. Management must show employees through its words and actions that dishonest or unethical behavior will not be tolerated, even if the result of the action benefits the entity. Moreover, it should be evident that all employees will be treated equally, regardless of their position.

For example, statements by management regarding the absolute need to meet operating and financial targets can create undue pressures that may lead employees to commit fraud to achieve them. Setting unachievable goals for employees can give them two unattractive choices: fail or cheat. In contrast, a statement from management that says, “We are aggressive in pursuing our targets, while requiring truthful financial reporting at all times,” clearly indicates to employees that integrity is a requirement. This message also conveys that the entity has “zero tolerance” for unethical behavior, including fraudulent financial reporting.

The cornerstone of an effective antifraud environment is a culture with a strong value system founded on integrity. This value system often is reflected in a code of conduct.² The code of conduct should reflect the core values of the entity and guide employees in making appropriate decisions during their workday. The code of conduct might include such topics as ethics, confidentiality,

¹ Corruption includes bribery and other illegal acts.

² An entity's value system also could be reflected in an ethics policy, a statement of business principles, or some other concise summary of guiding principles.

conflicts of interest, intellectual property, sexual harassment, and fraud.³ For a code of conduct to be effective, it should be communicated to all personnel in an understandable fashion. It also should be developed in a participatory and positive manner that will result in both management and employees taking ownership of its content. Finally, the code of conduct should be included in an employee handbook or policy manual, or in some other formal document or location (for example, the entity's intranet) so it can be referred to when needed.

Senior financial officers hold an important and elevated role in corporate governance. While members of the management team, they are uniquely capable and empowered to ensure that all stakeholders' interests are appropriately balanced, protected, and preserved. For examples of codes of conduct, see Attachment 1, "AICPA 'CPA's Handbook of Fraud and Commercial Crime Prevention,' An Organizational Code of Conduct," and Attachment 2, "Financial Executives International Code of Ethics Statement" provided by Financial Executives International. In addition, visit the Institute of Management Accountant's Ethics Center at www.imanet.org for their members' standards of ethical conduct.

Creating a Positive Workplace Environment

Research results indicate that wrongdoing occurs less frequently when employees have positive feelings about an entity than when they feel abused, threatened, or ignored. Without a positive workplace environment, there are more opportunities for poor employee morale, which can affect an employee's attitude about committing fraud against an entity. Factors that detract from a positive work environment and may increase the risk of fraud include:

- Top management that does not seem to care about or reward appropriate behavior
- Negative feedback and lack of recognition for job performance
- Perceived inequities in the organization
- Autocratic rather than participative management
- Low organizational loyalty or feelings of ownership
- Unreasonable budget expectations or other financial targets
- Fear of delivering "bad news" to supervisors and/or management
- Less-than-competitive compensation
- Poor training and promotion opportunities
- Lack of clear organizational responsibilities
- Poor communication practices or methods within the organization

The entity's human resources department often is instrumental in helping to build a corporate culture and a positive work environment. Human resource professionals are responsible for implementing specific programs and initiatives, consistent with management's strategies, that can help to mitigate many

³ Although the discussion in this document focuses on fraud, the subject of fraud often is considered in the context of a broader set of principles that govern an organization. Some organizations, however, may elect to develop a fraud policy separate from an ethics policy. Specific examples of topics in a fraud policy might include a requirement to comply with all laws and regulations and explicit guidance regarding making payments to obtain contracts, holding pricing discussions with competitors, environmental discharges, relationships with vendors, and maintenance of accurate books and records.

of the detractors mentioned above. Mitigating factors that help create a positive work environment and reduce the risk of fraud may include:

- Recognition and reward systems that are in tandem with goals and results
- Equal employment opportunities
- Team-oriented, collaborative decision-making policies
- Professionally administered compensation programs
- Professionally administered training programs and an organizational priority of career development

Employees should be empowered to help create a positive workplace environment and support the entity's values and code of conduct. They should be given the opportunity to provide input to the development and updating of the entity's code of conduct, to ensure that it is relevant, clear, and fair. Involving employees in this fashion also may effectively contribute to the oversight of the entity's code of conduct and an environment of ethical behavior (see the section titled "Developing an Appropriate Oversight Process").

Employees should be given the means to obtain advice internally before making decisions that appear to have significant legal or ethical implications. They should also be encouraged and given the means to communicate concerns, anonymously if preferred, about potential violations of the entity's code of conduct, without fear of retribution. Many organizations have implemented a process for employees to report on a confidential basis any actual or suspected wrongdoing, or potential violations of the code of conduct or ethics policy. For example, some organizations use a telephone "hotline" that is directed to or monitored by an ethics officer, fraud officer, general counsel, internal audit director, or another trusted individual responsible for investigating and reporting incidents of fraud or illegal acts.

Hiring and Promoting Appropriate Employees

Each employee has a unique set of values and personal code of ethics. When faced with sufficient pressure and a perceived opportunity, some employees will behave dishonestly rather than face the negative consequences of honest behavior. The threshold at which dishonest behavior starts, however, will vary among individuals. If an entity is to be successful in preventing fraud, it must have effective policies that minimize the chance of hiring or promoting individuals with low levels of honesty, especially for positions of trust.

Proactive hiring and promotion procedures may include:

- Conducting background investigations on individuals being considered for employment or for promotion to a position of trust⁴
- Thoroughly checking a candidate's education, employment history, and personal references
- Periodic training of all employees about the entity's values and code of conduct, (training is addressed in the following section)
- Incorporating into regular performance reviews an evaluation of how each individual has contributed to creating an appropriate workplace environment in line with the entity's values and code of conduct

⁴ Some organizations also have considered follow-up investigations, particularly for employees in positions of trust, on a periodic basis (for example, every five years) or as circumstances dictate.

- Continuous objective evaluation of compliance with the entity's values and code of conduct, with violations being addressed immediately

Training

New employees should be trained at the time of hiring about the entity's values and its code of conduct. This training should explicitly cover expectations of all employees regarding (1) their duty to communicate certain matters; (2) a list of the types of matters, including actual or suspected fraud, to be communicated along with specific examples; and (3) information on how to communicate those matters. There also should be an affirmation from senior management regarding employee expectations and communication responsibilities. Such training should include an element of "fraud awareness," the tone of which should be positive but nonetheless stress that fraud can be costly (and detrimental in other ways) to the entity and its employees.

In addition to training at the time of hiring, employees should receive refresher training periodically thereafter. Some organizations may consider ongoing training for certain positions, such as purchasing agents or employees with financial reporting responsibilities. Training should be specific to an employee's level within the organization, geographic location, and assigned responsibilities. For example, training for senior manager level personnel would normally be different from that of nonsupervisory employees, and training for purchasing agents would be different from that of sales representatives.

Confirmation

Management needs to clearly articulate that all employees will be held accountable to act within the entity's code of conduct. All employees within senior management and the finance function, as well as other employees in areas that might be exposed to unethical behavior (for example, procurement, sales and marketing) should be required to sign a code of conduct statement annually, at a minimum.

Requiring periodic confirmation by employees of their responsibilities will not only reinforce the policy but may also deter individuals from committing fraud and other violations and might identify problems before they become significant. Such confirmation may include statements that the individual understands the entity's expectations, has complied with the code of conduct, and is not aware of any violations of the code of conduct other than those the individual lists in his or her response. Although people with low integrity may not hesitate to sign a false confirmation, most people will want to avoid making a false statement in writing. Honest individuals are more likely to return their confirmations and to disclose what they know (including any conflicts of interest or other personal exceptions to the code of conduct). Thorough follow-up by internal auditors or others regarding nonreplies may uncover significant issues.

Discipline

The way an entity reacts to incidents of alleged or suspected fraud will send a strong deterrent message throughout the entity, helping to reduce the number of future occurrences. The following actions should be taken in response to an alleged incident of fraud:

- A thorough investigation of the incident should be conducted.⁵
- Appropriate and consistent actions should be taken against violators.
- Relevant controls should be assessed and improved.
- Communication and training should occur to reinforce the entity's values, code of conduct, and expectations.

Expectations about the consequences of committing fraud must be clearly communicated throughout the entity. For example, a strong statement from management that dishonest actions will not be tolerated, and that violators may be terminated and referred to the appropriate authorities, clearly establishes consequences and can be a valuable deterrent to wrongdoing. If wrongdoing occurs and an employee is disciplined, it can be helpful to communicate that fact, on a no-name basis, in an employee newsletter or other regular communication to employees. Seeing that other people have been disciplined for wrongdoing can be an effective deterrent, increasing the perceived likelihood of violators being caught and punished. It also can demonstrate that the entity is committed to an environment of high ethical standards and integrity.

Evaluating Antifraud Processes and Controls

Neither fraudulent financial reporting nor misappropriation of assets can occur without a perceived opportunity to commit and conceal the act. Organizations should be proactive in reducing fraud opportunities by (1) identifying and measuring fraud risks, (2) taking steps to mitigate identified risks, and (3) implementing and monitoring appropriate preventive and detective internal controls and other deterrent measures.

Identifying and Measuring Fraud Risks

Management has primary responsibility for establishing and monitoring all aspects of the entity's fraud risk-assessment and prevention activities.⁶ Fraud risks often are considered as part of an enterprise-wide risk management program, though they may be addressed separately.⁷ The fraud risk-assessment process should consider the vulnerability of the entity to fraudulent activity (fraudulent financial reporting, misappropriation of assets, and corruption) and whether any of those exposures could result in a material misstatement of the financial statements or material loss to the organization. In identifying fraud risks, organizations should consider organizational, industry, and country-specific characteristics that influence the risk of fraud.

⁵ Many entities of sufficient size are employing antifraud professionals, such as certified fraud examiners, who are responsible for resolving allegations of fraud within the organization and who also assist in the detection and deterrence of fraud. These individuals typically report their findings internally to the corporate security, legal, or internal audit departments. In other instances, such individuals may be empowered directly by the board of directors or its audit committee.

⁶ Management may elect to have internal audit play an active role in the development, monitoring, and ongoing assessment of the entity's fraud risk-management program. This may include an active role in the development and communication of the entity's code of conduct or ethics policy, as well as in investigating actual or alleged instances of noncompliance.

⁷ Some organizations may perform a periodic self-assessment using questionnaires or other techniques to identify and measure risks. Self-assessment may be less reliable in identifying the risk of fraud due to a lack of experience with fraud (although many organizations experience some form of fraud and abuse, material financial statement fraud or misappropriation of assets is a rare event for most) and because management may be unwilling to acknowledge openly that they might commit fraud given sufficient pressure and opportunity.

The nature and extent of management's risk assessment activities should be commensurate with the size of the entity and complexity of its operations. For example, the risk assessment process is likely to be less formal and less structured in smaller entities. However, management should recognize that fraud can occur in organizations of any size or type, and that almost any employee may be capable of committing fraud given the right set of circumstances. Accordingly, management should develop a heightened "fraud awareness" and an appropriate fraud risk-management program, with oversight from the board of directors or audit committee.

Mitigating Fraud Risks

It may be possible to reduce or eliminate certain fraud risks by making changes to the entity's activities and processes. An entity may choose to sell certain segments of its operations, cease doing business in certain locations, or reorganize its business processes to eliminate unacceptable risks. For example, the risk of misappropriation of funds may be reduced by implementing a central lockbox at a bank to receive payments instead of receiving money at the entity's various locations. The risk of corruption may be reduced by closely monitoring the entity's procurement process. The risk of financial statement fraud may be reduced by implementing shared services centers to provide accounting services to multiple segments, affiliates, or geographic locations of an entity's operations. A shared services center may be less vulnerable to influence by local operations managers and may be able to implement more extensive fraud detection measures cost-effectively.

Implementing and Monitoring Appropriate Internal Controls

Some risks are inherent in the environment of the entity, but most can be addressed with an appropriate system of internal control. Once fraud risk assessment has taken place, the entity can identify the processes, controls, and other procedures that are needed to mitigate the identified risks. Effective internal control will include a well-developed control environment, an effective and secure information system, and appropriate control and monitoring activities.⁸ Because of the importance of information technology in supporting operations and the processing of transactions, management also needs to implement and maintain appropriate controls, whether automated or manual, over computer-generated information.

In particular, management should evaluate whether appropriate internal controls have been implemented in any areas management has identified as posing a higher risk of fraudulent activity, as well as controls over the entity's financial reporting process. Because fraudulent financial reporting may begin in an interim period, management also should evaluate the appropriateness of internal controls over interim financial reporting.

Fraudulent financial reporting by upper-level management typically involves override of internal controls within the financial reporting process. Because management has the ability to override controls, or to influence others to perpetrate or conceal fraud, the need for a strong value system and a culture of ethical financial reporting becomes increasingly important. This helps create an environment in which other employees will decline to participate in committing a

⁸ The report of the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations (COSO) of the Treadway Commission, *Internal Control—Integrated Framework*, provides reasonable criteria for management to use in evaluating the effectiveness of the entity's system of internal control.

fraud and will use established communication procedures to report any requests to commit wrongdoing. The potential for management override also increases the need for appropriate oversight measures by the board of directors or audit committee, as discussed in the following section.

Fraudulent financial reporting by lower levels of management and employees may be deterred or detected by appropriate monitoring controls, such as having higher-level managers review and evaluate the financial results reported by individual operating units or subsidiaries. Unusual fluctuations in results of particular reporting units, or the lack of expected fluctuations, may indicate potential manipulation by departmental or operating unit managers or staff.

Developing an Appropriate Oversight Process

To effectively prevent or deter fraud, an entity should have an appropriate oversight function in place. Oversight can take many forms and can be performed by many within and outside the entity, under the overall oversight of the audit committee (or board of directors where no audit committee exists).

Audit Committee or Board of Directors

The audit committee (or the board of directors where no audit committee exists) should evaluate management's identification of fraud risks, implementation of antifraud measures, and creation of the appropriate "tone at the top." Active oversight by the audit committee can help to reinforce management's commitment to creating a culture with "zero tolerance" for fraud. An entity's audit committee also should ensure that senior management (in particular, the CEO) implements appropriate fraud deterrence and prevention measures to better protect investors, employees, and other stakeholders. The audit committee's evaluation and oversight not only helps make sure that senior management fulfills its responsibility, but also can serve as a deterrent to senior management engaging in fraudulent activity (that is, by ensuring an environment is created whereby any attempt by senior management to involve employees in committing or concealing fraud would lead promptly to reports from such employees to appropriate persons, including the audit committee).

The audit committee also plays an important role in helping the board of directors fulfill its oversight responsibilities with respect to the entity's financial reporting process and the system of internal control.⁹ In exercising this oversight responsibility, the audit committee should consider the potential for management override of controls or other inappropriate influence over the financial reporting process. For example, the audit committee may obtain from the internal auditors and independent auditors their views on management's involvement in the financial reporting process and, in particular, the ability of management to override information processed by the entity's financial reporting system (for example, the ability for management or others to initiate or record nonstandard journal entries). The audit committee also may consider reviewing the entity's reported information for reasonableness compared with prior or forecasted results, as well as with peers or industry averages. In addition, information received in communications from the independent auditors¹⁰ can assist the audit committee in assessing the strength of the entity's internal control and the potential for fraudulent financial reporting.

⁹ See the Report of the NACD Blue Ribbon Commission on the Audit Committee, (Washington, D.C.: National Association of Corporate Directors, 2000). For the board's role in the oversight of risk management, see Report of the NACD Blue Ribbon Commission on Risk Oversight, (Washington, D.C.: National Association of Corporate Directors, 2002).

¹⁰ See section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*, and section 380, *Communications With Audit Committees*.

As part of its oversight responsibilities, the audit committee should encourage management to provide a mechanism for employees to report concerns about unethical behavior, actual or suspected fraud, or violations of the entity's code of conduct or ethics policy. The committee should then receive periodic reports describing the nature, status, and eventual disposition of any fraud or unethical conduct. A summary of the activity, follow-up and disposition also should be provided to the full board of directors.

If senior management is involved in fraud, the next layer of management may be the most likely to be aware of it. As a result, the audit committee (and other directors) should consider establishing an open line of communication with members of management one or two levels below senior management to assist in identifying fraud at the highest levels of the organization or investigating any fraudulent activity that might occur.¹¹ The audit committee typically has the ability and authority to investigate any alleged or suspected wrongdoing brought to its attention. Most audit committee charters empower the committee to investigate any matters within the scope of its responsibilities, and to retain legal, accounting, and other professional advisers as needed to advise the committee and assist in its investigation.

All audit committee members should be financially literate, and each committee should have at least one financial expert. The financial expert should possess:

- An understanding of generally accepted accounting principles and audits of financial statements prepared under those principles. Such understanding may have been obtained either through education or experience. It is important for someone on the audit committee to have a working knowledge of those principles and standards.
- Experience in the preparation and/or the auditing of financial statements of an entity of similar size, scope and complexity as the entity on whose board the committee member serves. The experience would generally be as a chief financial officer, chief accounting officer, controller, or auditor of a similar entity. This background will provide a necessary understanding of the transactional and operational environment that produces the issuer's financial statements. It will also bring an understanding of what is involved in, for example, appropriate accounting estimates, accruals, and reserve provisions, and an appreciation of what is necessary to maintain a good internal control environment.
- Experience in internal governance and procedures of audit committees, obtained either as an audit committee member, a senior corporate manager responsible for answering to the audit committee, or an external auditor responsible for reporting on the execution and results of annual audits.

Management

Management is responsible for overseeing the activities carried out by employees, and typically does so by implementing and monitoring processes and controls such as those discussed previously. However, management also may initiate, participate in, or direct the commission and concealment of a fraudulent act. Accordingly, the audit committee (or the board of directors where no audit committee exists) has the responsibility to oversee the activities of senior management and to consider the risk of fraudulent financial reporting involving

¹¹ *Report of the NACD Best Practices Council: Coping with Fraud and Other Illegal Activity, A Guide for Directors, CEOs, and Senior Managers* (1998) sets forth "basic principles" and "implementation approaches" for dealing with fraud and other illegal activity.

the override of internal controls or collusion (see discussion on the audit committee and board of directors above).

Public companies should include a statement in the annual report acknowledging management's responsibility for the preparation of the financial statements and for establishing and maintaining an effective system of internal control. This will help improve the public's understanding of the respective roles of management and the auditor. This statement has also been generally referred to as a "Management Report" or "Management Certificate." Such a statement can provide a convenient vehicle for management to describe the nature and manner of preparation of the financial information and the adequacy of the internal accounting controls. Logically, the statement should be presented in close proximity to the formal financial statements. For example, it could appear near the independent auditor's report, or in the financial review or management analysis section.

Internal Auditors

An effective internal audit team can be extremely helpful in performing aspects of the oversight function. Their knowledge about the entity may enable them to identify indicators that suggest fraud has been committed. The *Standards for the Professional Practice of Internal Auditing* (IIA Standards), issued by the Institute of Internal Auditors, state, "The internal auditor should have sufficient knowledge to identify the indicators of fraud but is not expected to have the expertise of a person whose primary responsibility is detecting and investigating fraud." Internal auditors also have the opportunity to evaluate fraud risks and controls and to recommend action to mitigate risks and improve controls. Specifically, the IIA Standards require internal auditors to assess risks facing their organizations. This risk assessment is to serve as the basis from which audit plans are devised and against which internal controls are tested. The IIA Standards require the audit plan to be presented to and approved by the audit committee (or board of directors where no audit committee exists). The work completed as a result of the audit plan provides assurance on which management's assertion about controls can be made.

Internal audits can be both a detection and a deterrence measure. Internal auditors can assist in the deterrence of fraud by examining and evaluating the adequacy and the effectiveness of the system of internal control, commensurate with the extent of the potential exposure or risk in the various segments of the organization's operations. In carrying out this responsibility, internal auditors should, for example, determine whether:

- The organizational environment fosters control consciousness.
- Realistic organizational goals and objectives are set.
- Written policies (for example, a code of conduct) exist that describe prohibited activities and the action required whenever violations are discovered.
- Appropriate authorization policies for transactions are established and maintained.
- Policies, practices, procedures, reports, and other mechanisms are developed to monitor activities and safeguard assets, particularly in high-risk areas.
- Communication channels provide management with adequate and reliable information.
- Recommendations need to be made for the establishment or enhancement of cost-effective controls to help deter fraud.

Internal auditors may conduct proactive auditing to search for corruption, misappropriation of assets, and financial statement fraud. This may include the use of computer-assisted audit techniques to detect particular types of fraud. Internal auditors also can employ analytical and other procedures to isolate anomalies and perform detailed reviews of high-risk accounts and transactions to identify potential financial statement fraud. The internal auditors should have an independent reporting line directly to the audit committee, to enable them to express any concerns about management's commitment to appropriate internal controls or to report suspicions or allegations of fraud involving senior management.

Independent Auditors

Independent auditors can assist management and the board of directors (or audit committee) by providing an assessment of the entity's process for identifying, assessing, and responding to the risks of fraud. The board of directors (or audit committee) should have an open and candid dialogue with the independent auditors regarding management's risk assessment process and the system of internal control. Such a dialogue should include a discussion of the susceptibility of the entity to fraudulent financial reporting and the entity's exposure to misappropriation of assets.

Certified Fraud Examiners

Certified fraud examiners may assist the audit committee and board of directors with aspects of the oversight process either directly or as part of a team of internal auditors or independent auditors. Certified fraud examiners can provide extensive knowledge and experience about fraud that may not be available within a corporation. They can provide more objective input into management's evaluation of the risk of fraud (especially fraud involving senior management, such as financial statement fraud) and the development of appropriate antifraud controls that are less vulnerable to management override. They can assist the audit committee and board of directors in evaluating the fraud risk assessment and fraud prevention measures implemented by management. Certified fraud examiners also conduct examinations to resolve allegations or suspicions of fraud, reporting either to an appropriate level of management or to the audit committee or board of directors, depending upon the nature of the issue and the level of personnel involved.

Other Information

To obtain more information on fraud and implementing antifraud programs and controls, please go to the following Web sites where additional materials, guidance, and tools can be found.

American Institute of Certified Public Accountants	www.aicpa.org
Association of Certified Fraud Examiners	www.cfenet.com
Financial Executives International	www.fei.org
Information Systems Audit and Control Association	www.isaca.org
The Institute of Internal Auditors	www.theiia.org
Institute of Management Accountants	www.imanet.org
National Association of Corporate Directors	www.nacdonline.org
Society for Human Resource Management	www.shrm.org

Attachment 1: AICPA "CPA's Handbook of Fraud and Commercial Crime Prevention," An Organizational Code of Conduct

The following is an example of an organizational code of conduct, which includes definitions of what is considered unacceptable, and the consequences of any breaches thereof. The specific content and areas addressed in an entity's code of conduct should be specific to that entity.

Organizational Code of Conduct

The Organization and its employees must, at all times, comply with all applicable laws and regulations. The Organization will not condone the activities of employees who achieve results through violation of the law or unethical business dealings. This includes any payments for illegal acts, indirect contributions, rebates, and bribery. The Organization does not permit any activity that fails to stand the closest possible public scrutiny.

All business conduct should be well above the minimum standards required by law. Accordingly, employees must ensure that their actions cannot be interpreted as being, in any way, in contravention of the laws and regulations governing the Organization's worldwide operations.

Employees uncertain about the application or interpretation of any legal requirements should refer the matter to their superior, who, if necessary, should seek the advice of the legal department.

General Employee Conduct

The Organization expects its employees to conduct themselves in a businesslike manner. Drinking, gambling, fighting, swearing, and similar unprofessional activities are strictly prohibited while on the job.

Employees must not engage in sexual harassment, or conduct themselves in a way that could be construed as such, for example, by using inappropriate language, keeping or posting inappropriate materials in their work area, or accessing inappropriate materials on their computer.

Conflicts of Interest

The Organization expects that employees will perform their duties conscientiously, honestly, and in accordance with the best interests of the Organization. Employees must not use their position or the knowledge gained as a result of their position for private or personal advantage. Regardless of the circumstances, if employees sense that a course of action they have pursued, are presently pursuing, or are contemplating pursuing may involve them in a conflict of interest with their employer, they should immediately communicate all the facts to their superior.

Outside Activities, Employment, and Directorships

All employees share a serious responsibility for the Organization's good public relations, especially at the community level. Their readiness to help with religious, charitable, educational, and civic activities brings credit to the Organization and is encouraged. Employees must, however, avoid acquiring any business interest or participating in any other activity outside the Organization that would, or would appear to:

- Create an excessive demand upon their time and attention, thus depriving the Organization of their best efforts on the job.
- Create a conflict of interest—an obligation, interest, or distraction—that may interfere with the independent exercise of judgment in the Organization's best interest.

Relationships With Clients and Suppliers

Employees should avoid investing in or acquiring a financial interest for their own accounts in any business organization that has a contractual relationship with the Organization, or that provides goods or services, or both to the Organization, if such investment or interest could influence or create the impression of influencing their decisions in the performance of their duties on behalf of the Organization.

Gifts, Entertainment, and Favors

Employees must not accept entertainment, gifts, or personal favors that could, in any way, influence, or appear to influence, business decisions in favor of any person or organization with whom or with which the Organization has, or is likely to have, business dealings. Similarly, employees must not accept any other preferential treatment under these circumstances because their position with the Organization might be inclined to, or be perceived to, place them under obligation.

Kickbacks and Secret Commissions

Regarding the Organization's business activities, employees may not receive payment or compensation of any kind, except as authorized under the Organization's remuneration policies. In particular, the Organization strictly prohibits the acceptance of kickbacks and secret commissions from suppliers or others. Any breach of this rule will result in immediate termination and prosecution to the fullest extent of the law.

Organization Funds and Other Assets

Employees who have access to Organization funds in any form must follow the prescribed procedures for recording, handling, and protecting money as detailed in the Organization's instructional manuals or other explanatory materials, or both. The Organization imposes strict standards to prevent fraud and dishonesty. If employees become aware of any evidence of fraud and dishonesty, they should immediately advise their superior or the Law Department so that the Organization can promptly investigate further.

When an employee's position requires spending Organization funds or incurring any reimbursable personal expenses, that individual must use good judgment on the Organization's behalf to ensure that good value is received for every expenditure.

Organization funds and all other assets of the Organization are for Organization purposes only and not for personal benefit. This includes the personal use of organizational assets, such as computers.

Organization Records and Communications

Accurate and reliable records of many kinds are necessary to meet the Organization's legal and financial obligations and to manage the affairs of the Organization. The Organization's books and records must reflect in an accurate and timely manner all business transactions. The employees responsible for accounting and recordkeeping must fully disclose and record all assets, liabilities, or both, and must exercise diligence in enforcing these requirements.

Employees must not make or engage in any false record or communication of any kind, whether internal or external, including but not limited to:

- False expense, attendance, production, financial, or similar reports and statements
- False advertising, deceptive marketing practices, or other misleading representations

Dealing With Outside People and Organizations

Employees must take care to separate their personal roles from their Organization positions when communicating on matters not involving Organization business. Employees must not use organization identification, stationery, supplies, and equipment for personal or political matters.

When communicating publicly on matters that involve Organization business, employees must not presume to speak for the Organization on any topic, unless they are certain that the views they express are those of the Organization, and it is the Organization's desire that such views be publicly disseminated.

When dealing with anyone outside the Organization, including public officials, employees must take care not to compromise the integrity or damage the reputation of either the Organization, or any outside individual, business, or government body.

Prompt Communications

In all matters relevant to customers, suppliers, government authorities, the public and others in the Organization, all employees must make every effort to achieve complete, accurate, and timely communications—responding promptly and courteously to all proper requests for information and to all complaints.

Privacy and Confidentiality

When handling financial and personal information about customers or others with whom the Organization has dealings, observe the following principles:

1. Collect, use, and retain only the personal information necessary for the Organization's business. Whenever possible, obtain any relevant information directly from the person concerned. Use only reputable and reliable sources to supplement this information.
2. Retain information only for as long as necessary or as required by law. Protect the physical security of this information.
3. Limit internal access to personal information to those with a legitimate business reason for seeking that information. Use only personal information for the purposes for which it was originally obtained. Obtain the consent of the person concerned before externally disclosing any personal information, unless legal process or contractual obligation provides otherwise.

Attachment 2: Financial Executives International Code of Ethics Statement

The mission of Financial Executives International (FEI) includes significant efforts to promote ethical conduct in the practice of financial management throughout the world. Senior financial officers hold an important and elevated role in corporate governance. While members of the management team, they are uniquely capable and empowered to ensure that all stakeholders' interests are appropriately balanced, protected, and preserved. This code provides principles that members are expected to adhere to and advocate. They embody rules regarding individual and peer responsibilities, as well as responsibilities to employers, the public, and other stakeholders.

All members of FEI will:

1. Act with honesty and integrity, avoiding actual or apparent conflicts of interest in personal and professional relationships.
 2. Provide constituents with information that is accurate, complete, objective, relevant, timely, and understandable.
 3. Comply with rules and regulations of federal, state, provincial, and local governments, and other appropriate private and public regulatory agencies.
 4. Act in good faith; responsibly; and with due care, competence, and diligence, without misrepresenting material facts or allowing one's independent judgment to be subordinated.
 5. Respect the confidentiality of information acquired in the course of one's work except when authorized or otherwise legally obligated to disclose. Confidential information acquired in the course of one's work will not be used for personal advantage.
 6. Share knowledge and maintain skills important and relevant to constituents' needs.
 7. Proactively promote ethical behavior as a responsible partner among peers, in the work environment, and in the community.
 8. Achieve responsible use of and control over all assets and resources employed or entrusted.
-

AU Section 317

Illegal Acts by Clients

(Supersedes section 328)

Source: SAS No. 54.

See section 9317 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 This section prescribes the nature and extent of the consideration an independent auditor should give to the possibility of illegal acts by a client in an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. The section also provides guidance on the auditor's responsibilities when a possible illegal act is detected.

Definition of Illegal Acts

.02 The term *illegal acts*, for purposes of this section, refers to violations of laws or governmental regulations. Illegal acts by clients are acts attributable to the entity whose financial statements are under audit or acts by management or employees acting on behalf of the entity. Illegal acts by clients do not include personal misconduct by the entity's personnel unrelated to their business activities.

Dependence on Legal Judgment

.03 Whether an act is, in fact, illegal is a determination that is normally beyond the auditor's professional competence. An auditor, in reporting on financial statements, presents himself as one who is proficient in accounting and auditing. The auditor's training, experience, and understanding of the client and its industry may provide a basis for recognition that some client acts coming to his attention may be illegal. However, the determination as to whether a particular act is illegal would generally be based on the advice of an informed expert qualified to practice law or may have to await final determination by a court of law.

Relation to Financial Statements

.04 Illegal acts vary considerably in their relation to the financial statements. Generally, the further removed an illegal act is from the events and transactions ordinarily reflected in financial statements, the less likely the auditor is to become aware of the act or to recognize its possible illegality.

.05 The auditor considers laws and regulations that are generally recognized by auditors to have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts. For example, tax laws affect accruals and the amount recognized as expense in the accounting period; applicable laws and regulations may affect the amount of revenue accrued under government contracts. However, the auditor considers such laws or regulations from the

perspective of their known relation to audit objectives derived from financial statements assertions rather than from the perspective of legality *per se*. The auditor's responsibility to detect and report misstatements resulting from illegal acts having a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts is the same as that for misstatements caused by error or fraud as described in section 110, *Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor*.

.06 Entities may be affected by many other laws or regulations, including those related to securities trading, occupational safety and health, food and drug administration, environmental protection, equal employment, and price-fixing or other antitrust violations. Generally, these laws and regulations relate more to an entity's operating aspects than to its financial and accounting aspects, and their financial statement effect is indirect. An auditor ordinarily does not have sufficient basis for recognizing possible violations of such laws and regulations. Their indirect effect is normally the result of the need to disclose a contingent liability because of the allegation or determination of illegality. For example, securities may be purchased or sold based on inside information. While the direct effects of the purchase or sale may be recorded appropriately, their indirect effect, the possible contingent liability for violating securities laws, may not be appropriately disclosed. Even when violations of such laws and regulations can have consequences material to the financial statements, the auditor may not become aware of the existence of the illegal act unless he is informed by the client, or there is evidence of a governmental agency investigation or enforcement proceeding in the records, documents, or other information normally inspected in an audit of financial statements.

The Auditor's Consideration of the Possibility of Illegal Acts

.07 As explained in paragraph .05, certain illegal acts have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts. Other illegal acts, such as those described in paragraph .06, may, in particular circumstances, be regarded as having material but indirect effects on financial statements. The auditor's responsibility with respect to detecting, considering the financial statement effects of, and reporting these other illegal acts is described in this section. These other illegal acts are hereinafter referred to simply as *illegal acts*. The auditor should be aware of the possibility that such illegal acts may have occurred. If specific information comes to the auditor's attention that provides evidence concerning the existence of possible illegal acts that could have a material indirect effect on the financial statements, the auditor should apply audit procedures specifically directed to ascertaining whether an illegal act has occurred. However, because of the characteristics of illegal acts explained above, an audit made in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards provides no assurance that illegal acts will be detected or that any contingent liabilities that may result will be disclosed.

Audit Procedures in the Absence of Evidence Concerning Possible Illegal Acts

.08 Normally, an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards does not include audit procedures specifically designed to detect illegal acts. However, procedures applied for the purpose of forming an opinion

on the financial statements may bring possible illegal acts to the auditor's attention. For example, such procedures include reading minutes; inquiring of the client's management and legal counsel concerning litigation, claims, and assessments; performing substantive tests of details of transactions or balances. The auditor should make inquiries of management concerning the client's compliance with laws and regulations. Where applicable, the auditor should also inquire of management concerning—

- The client's policies relative to the prevention of illegal acts.
- The use of directives issued by the client and periodic representations obtained by the client from management at appropriate levels of authority concerning compliance with laws and regulations.

The auditor also obtains written representations from management concerning the absence of violations or possible violations of laws or regulations whose effects should be considered for disclosure in the financial statements or as a basis for recording a loss contingency. (See section 333, *Management Representations*.) The auditor need perform no further procedures in this area absent specific information concerning possible illegal acts.

Specific Information Concerning Possible Illegal Acts

.09 In applying audit procedures and evaluating the results of those procedures, the auditor may encounter specific information that may raise a question concerning possible illegal acts, such as the following:

- Unauthorized transactions, improperly recorded transactions, or transactions not recorded in a complete or timely manner in order to maintain accountability for assets
- Investigation by a governmental agency, an enforcement proceeding, or payment of unusual fines or penalties
- Violations of laws or regulations cited in reports of examinations by regulatory agencies that have been made available to the auditor
- Large payments for unspecified services to consultants, affiliates, or employees
- Sales commissions or agents' fees that appear excessive in relation to those normally paid by the client or to the services actually received
- Unusually large payments in cash, purchases of bank cashiers' checks in large amounts payable to bearer, transfers to numbered bank accounts, or similar transactions
- Unexplained payments made to government officials or employees
- Failure to file tax returns or pay government duties or similar fees that are common to the entity's industry or the nature of its business

Audit Procedures in Response to Possible Illegal Acts

.10 When the auditor becomes aware of information concerning a possible illegal act, the auditor should obtain an understanding of the nature of the act, the circumstances in which it occurred, and sufficient other information to evaluate the effect on the financial statements. In doing so, the auditor should inquire of management at a level above those involved, if possible. If management

does not provide satisfactory information that there has been no illegal act, the auditor should—

- a. Consult with the client's legal counsel or other specialists about the application of relevant laws and regulations to the circumstances and the possible effects on the financial statements. Arrangements for such consultation with client's legal counsel should be made by the client.
- b. Apply additional procedures, if necessary, to obtain further understanding of the nature of the acts.

.11 The additional audit procedures considered necessary, if any, might include procedures such as the following:

- a. Examine supporting documents, such as invoices, canceled checks, and agreements and compare with accounting records.
- b. Confirm significant information concerning the matter with the other party to the transaction or with intermediaries, such as banks or lawyers.
- c. Determine whether the transaction has been properly authorized.
- d. Consider whether other similar transactions or events may have occurred, and apply procedures to identify them.

The Auditor's Response to Detected Illegal Acts

.12 When the auditor concludes, based on information obtained and, if necessary, consultation with legal counsel, that an illegal act has or is likely to have occurred, the auditor should consider the effect on the financial statements as well as the implications for other aspects of the audit.

The Auditor's Consideration of Financial Statement Effect

.13 In evaluating the materiality of an illegal act that comes to his attention, the auditor should consider both the quantitative and qualitative materiality of the act. For example, section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, paragraph .11, states that "an illegal payment of an otherwise immaterial amount could be material if there is a reasonable possibility that it could lead to a material contingent liability or a material loss of revenue."

.14 The auditor should consider the effect of an illegal act on the amounts presented in financial statements including contingent monetary effects, such as fines, penalties and damages. Loss contingencies resulting from illegal acts that may be required to be disclosed should be evaluated in the same manner as other loss contingencies. Examples of loss contingencies that may arise from an illegal act are: threat of expropriation of assets, enforced discontinuance of operations in another country, and litigation.

.15 The auditor should evaluate the adequacy of disclosure in the financial statements of the potential effects of an illegal act on the entity's operations. If material revenue or earnings are derived from transactions involving illegal acts, or if illegal acts create significant unusual risks associated with material revenue or earnings, such as loss of a significant business relationship, that information should be considered for disclosure.

Implications for Audit

.16 The auditor should consider the implications of an illegal act in relation to other aspects of the audit, particularly the reliability of representations of management. The implications of particular illegal acts will depend on the relationship of the perpetration and concealment, if any, of the illegal act to specific control procedures and the level of management or employees involved.

Communication With the Audit Committee

.17 The auditor should assure himself that the audit committee, or others with equivalent authority and responsibility, is adequately informed with respect to illegal acts that come to the auditor's attention.¹ The auditor need not communicate matters that are clearly inconsequential and may reach agreement in advance with the audit committee on the nature of such matters to be communicated. The communication should describe the act, the circumstances of its occurrence, and the effect on the financial statements. Senior management may wish to have its remedial actions communicated to the audit committee simultaneously. Possible remedial actions include disciplinary action against involved personnel, seeking restitution, adoption of preventive or corrective company policies, and modifications of specific control activities. If senior management is involved in an illegal act, the auditor should communicate directly with the audit committee. The communication may be oral or written. If the communication is oral, the auditor should document it.

Effect on the Auditor's Report

.18 If the auditor concludes that an illegal act has a material effect on the financial statements, and the act has not been properly accounted for or disclosed, the auditor should express a qualified opinion or an adverse opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole, depending on the materiality of the effect on the financial statements.

.19 If the auditor is precluded by the client from obtaining sufficient competent evidential matter to evaluate whether an illegal act that could be material to the financial statements has, or is likely to have, occurred, the auditor generally should disclaim an opinion on the financial statements.

.20 If the client refuses to accept the auditor's report as modified for the circumstances described in paragraphs .18 and .19, the auditor should withdraw from the engagement and indicate the reasons for withdrawal in writing to the audit committee or board of directors.

.21 The auditor may be unable to determine whether an act is illegal because of limitations imposed by the circumstances rather than by the client or because of uncertainty associated with interpretation of applicable laws or regulations or surrounding facts. In these circumstances, the auditor should consider the effect on his report.²

¹ For entities that do not have audit committees, the phrase "others with equivalent authority and responsibility" may include the board of directors, the board of trustees, or the owner in owner-managed entities.

² See section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*.

Other Considerations in an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards

.22 In addition to the need to withdraw from the engagement, as described in paragraph .20, the auditor may conclude that withdrawal is necessary when the client does not take the remedial action that the auditor considers necessary in the circumstances even when the illegal act is not material to the financial statements. Factors that should affect the auditor's conclusion include the implications of the failure to take remedial action, which may affect the auditor's ability to rely on management representations, and the effects of continuing association with the client. In reaching a conclusion on such matters, the auditor may wish to consult with his own legal counsel.

.23 Disclosure of an illegal act to parties other than the client's senior management and its audit committee or board of directors is not ordinarily part of the auditor's responsibility, and such disclosure would be precluded by the auditor's ethical or legal obligation of confidentiality, unless the matter affects his opinion on the financial statements. The auditor should recognize, however, that in the following circumstances a duty to notify parties outside the client may exist.³

- a. When the entity reports an auditor change under the appropriate securities law on Form 8-K⁴
- b. To a successor auditor when the successor makes inquiries in accordance with section 315, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*⁵
- c. In response to a subpoena
- d. To a funding agency or other specified agency in accordance with requirements for the audits of entities that receive financial assistance from a government agency

Because potential conflicts with the auditor's ethical and legal obligations for confidentiality may be complex, the auditor may wish to consult with legal counsel before discussing illegal acts with parties outside the client.

Responsibilities in Other Circumstances

.24 An auditor may accept an engagement that entails a greater responsibility for detecting illegal acts than that specified in this section. For example, a governmental unit may engage an independent auditor to perform an audit in accordance with the Single Audit Act of 1984. In such an engagement,

³ Auditors may be required, under certain circumstances, pursuant to the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 (codified in section 10A(b)1 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) to make a report to the Securities and Exchange Commission relating to an illegal act that has a material effect on the financial statements. [Footnote added, July 1997, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995.]

⁴ Disclosure to the Securities and Exchange Commission may be necessary if, among other matters, the auditor withdraws because the board of directors has not taken appropriate remedial action. Such failure may be a reportable disagreement on Form 8-K. [Footnote renumbered, July 1997, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995.]

⁵ In accordance with section 315, communications between predecessor and successor auditors require the specific permission of the client. [Footnote renumbered, July 1997, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995.]

the independent auditor is responsible for testing and reporting on the governmental unit's compliance with certain laws and regulations applicable to Federal financial assistance programs. Also, an independent auditor may undertake a variety of other special engagements. For example, a corporation's board of directors or its audit committee may engage an auditor to apply agreed-upon procedures and report on compliance with the corporation's code of conduct under the attestation standards.

Effective Date

.25 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989. Early application of the provisions of this section is permissible.

AU Section 9317

Illegal Acts by Clients: Auditing Interpretations of Section 317

1. Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit and the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act

.01 Question—The second standard of field work requires the auditor to obtain a sufficient understanding of internal control to plan the audit and to determine the nature, timing, and extent of tests to be performed. Is the auditor of an entity subject to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 required, because of the *Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977* and the provisions of section 317, to expand his consideration of internal control beyond that which is required by the second standard of field work?

.02 Interpretation—No. There is nothing in the Act or the related legislative history that purports to alter the auditor's duty to his client or the purpose of his consideration of internal control. The Act creates express new duties only for companies subject to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, not for auditors.

[Issue Date: October, 1978.]

2. Material Weaknesses in Internal Control and the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act

.03 Question—What course of action should be followed by the auditor of an entity subject to the internal accounting control provision of the *Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977* to comply with section 317 when a material weakness in internal control comes to his attention?

.04 Interpretation—The standards applied by an auditor in determining a material weakness in internal control may differ from the standards for determining a violation of the Act. Nevertheless, a specific material weakness may ultimately be determined to be a violation and, hence, an illegal act. Therefore, the auditor should inquire of the client's management and consult with the client's legal counsel as to whether the material weakness is a violation of the Act.

.05 In consultation with management and legal counsel, consideration should be given to corrective action taken or in process. If management has concluded that corrective action for a material weakness is not practicable, consideration should be given to the reasons underlying that conclusion, including management's evaluation of the costs of correction in relation to the expected benefit to be derived.¹ If it is determined that there has been a viola-

¹ The legislative history of the Act indicates that cost-benefit considerations are appropriate in determining compliance with the accounting provisions of the Act. For example, the Senate committee report stated that "the size of the business, diversity of operations, degree of centralization of financial and operating management, amount of contact by top management with day-to-day operations, and numerous other circumstances are factors which management must consider in establishing and maintaining an internal accounting control system."

tion of the Act and appropriate consideration is not given to the violation, the auditor should consider withdrawing from the current engagement or dissociating himself from any future relationship with the client (see section 317.22).

.06 A violation of the internal accounting control provision of the Act would not, in and of itself, have a direct effect on amounts presented in audited financial statements. However, the contingent monetary effect on an entity ultimately determined to have willfully violated the internal accounting control provision of the Act could be fines of up to \$10,000 for the violation. The auditor should consider the materiality of such contingent monetary effect in relation to the audited financial statements taken as a whole. Other loss contingencies, as defined by FASB Statement No. 5 [AC section C59], ordinarily would not result from a weakness in internal control which gives rise to such a violation of the Act.

[Issue Date: October, 1978.]

AU Section 319

Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit

Source: SAS No. 55; SAS No. 78; SAS No. 94.*

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1990, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction

.01 This section provides guidance on the independent auditor's consideration of an entity's internal control in an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. It defines internal control,¹ describes the objectives and components of internal control, and explains how an auditor should consider internal control in planning and performing an audit. In particular, this section provides guidance about implementing the second standard of field work: "A sufficient understanding of internal control is to be obtained to plan the audit and to determine the nature, timing, and extent of tests to be performed."

.02 In all audits, the auditor should obtain an understanding of internal control sufficient to plan the audit by performing procedures to understand the design of controls relevant to an audit of financial statements and determining whether they have been placed in operation. In obtaining this understanding, the auditor considers how an entity's use of information technology (IT)² and manual procedures may affect controls relevant to the audit. The auditor then assesses control risk for the assertions embodied in the account balance, transaction class, and disclosure components of the financial statements.

.03 The auditor may determine that assessing control risk below the maximum level³ for certain assertions would be effective and more efficient

* This section has been revised to reflect the amendments and conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1997. The amendments are made to recognize the definition and description of internal control contained in *Internal Control—Integrated Framework*, published by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO Report). This section has also been amended to reflect the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after June 1, 2001. Earlier application is permissible.

¹ Internal control *also may be referred to as internal control structure*.

² Information technology (IT) encompasses automated means of originating, processing, storing, and communicating information, and includes recording devices, communication systems, computer systems (including hardware and software components and data), and other electronic devices. An entity's use of IT may be extensive; however, the auditor is primarily interested in the entity's use of IT to initiate, record, process, and report transactions or other financial data.

³ Control risk may be assessed in quantitative terms, such as percentages, or in nonquantitative terms that range, for example, from a maximum to a minimum. The term *maximum level* is used in this section to mean the greatest probability that a material misstatement that could occur in a financial statement assertion will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis by an entity's internal control.

than performing only substantive tests. In addition, the auditor may determine that it is not practical or possible to restrict detection risk to an acceptable level by performing only substantive tests for one or more financial statement assertions. In such circumstances, the auditor should obtain evidential matter about the effectiveness of both the design and operation of controls to reduce the assessed level of control risk. Such evidential matter may be obtained from tests of controls planned and performed concurrent with or subsequent to obtaining the understanding.⁴ Such evidential matter also may be obtained from procedures that were not specifically planned as tests of controls but that nevertheless provide evidential matter about the effectiveness of the design and operation of the controls. For certain assertions, the auditor may desire to further reduce the assessed level of control risk. In such cases, the auditor considers whether evidential matter sufficient to support a further reduction is likely to be available and whether performing additional tests of controls to obtain such evidential matter would be efficient.

.04 Alternatively, the auditor may assess control risk at the maximum level because he or she believes controls are unlikely to pertain to an assertion or are unlikely to be effective, or because evaluating the effectiveness of controls would be inefficient. However, the auditor needs to be satisfied that performing only substantive tests would be effective in restricting detection risk to an acceptable level. When evidence of an entity's initiation, recording, or processing of financial data exists only in electronic form, the auditor's ability to obtain the desired assurance only from substantive tests would significantly diminish.

.05 The auditor uses the understanding of internal control and the assessed level of control risk in determining the nature, timing, and extent of substantive tests for financial statement assertions.

Definition of Internal Control

.06 *Internal control* is a process—effected by an entity's board of directors, management, and other personnel—designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of objectives in the following categories: (a) reliability of financial reporting, (b) effectiveness and efficiency of operations, and (c) compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

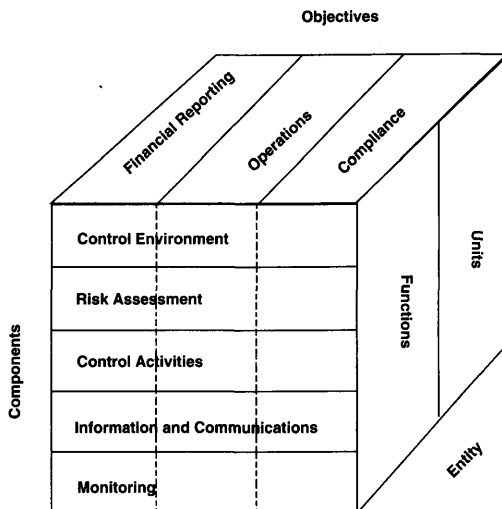
.07 Internal control consists of five interrelated components:

- a. *Control environment* sets the tone of an organization, influencing the control consciousness of its people. It is the foundation for all other components of internal control, providing discipline and structure.
- b. *Risk assessment* is the entity's identification and analysis of relevant risks to achievement of its objectives, forming a basis for determining how the risks should be managed.
- c. *Control activities* are the policies and procedures that help ensure that management directives are carried out.
- d. *Information and communication* systems support the identification, capture, and exchange of information in a form and time frame that enable people to carry out their responsibilities.
- e. *Monitoring* is a process that assesses the quality of internal control performance over time.

⁴ If the auditor is unable to obtain such evidential matter, he or she should consider the guidance in section 326, *Evidential Matter*, paragraphs .14 and .25.

Relationship Between Objectives and Components

.08 There is a direct relationship between objectives, which are what an entity strives to achieve, and components, which represent what is needed to achieve the objectives. In addition, internal control is relevant to the entire entity, or to any of its operating units or business functions. This relationship is depicted as follows:



.09 Although an entity's internal control addresses objectives in each of the categories referred to in paragraph .06, not all of these objectives and related controls are relevant to an audit of the entity's financial statements. Also, although internal control is relevant to the entire entity or to any of its operating units or business functions, an understanding of internal control relevant to each of the entity's operating units and business functions may not be necessary to plan and perform an effective audit.

Financial Reporting Objective

.10 Generally, controls that are relevant to an audit pertain to the entity's objective of preparing financial statements for external purposes that are fairly presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.⁵

Operations and Compliance Objectives

.11 The controls relating to operations and compliance⁶ objectives may be relevant to an audit if they pertain to data the auditor evaluates or uses in applying auditing procedures. For example, controls pertaining to nonfinancial

⁵ The term *comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles* is defined in section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraph .04. Hereafter, reference to generally accepted accounting principles in this section includes, where applicable, an other comprehensive basis of accounting.

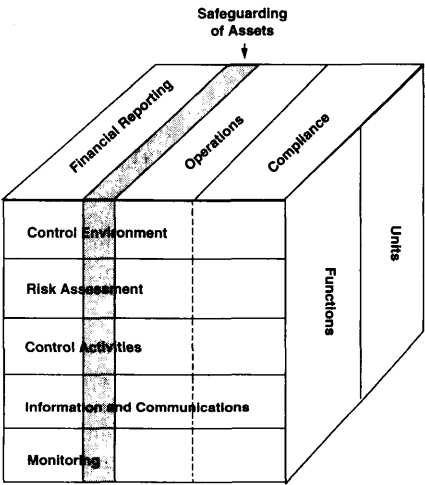
⁶ An auditor may need to consider controls relevant to compliance objectives when performing an audit in accordance with section 801, *Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance*.

data that the auditor uses in analytical procedures, such as production statistics, or pertaining to detecting noncompliance with laws and regulations that may have a direct and material effect on the financial statements, such as controls over compliance with income tax laws and regulations used to determine the income tax provision, may be relevant to an audit.

.12 An entity generally has controls relating to objectives that are not relevant to an audit and therefore need not be considered. For example, controls concerning compliance with health and safety regulations or concerning the effectiveness and efficiency of certain management decision-making processes (such as the appropriate price to charge for its products or whether to make expenditures for certain research and development or advertising activities), although important to the entity, ordinarily do not relate to a financial statement audit. Similarly, an entity may rely on a sophisticated system of automated controls to provide efficient and effective operations (such as a commercial airline's system of automated controls to maintain flight schedules), but these controls ordinarily would not be relevant to the financial statement audit and therefore need not be considered.

Safeguarding of Assets

.13 Internal control over safeguarding of assets against unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition may include controls relating to financial reporting and operations objectives. This relationship is depicted as follows:



In obtaining an understanding of each of the components of internal control to plan the audit, the auditor's consideration of safeguarding controls is generally limited to those relevant to the reliability of financial reporting. For example, use of a lockbox system for collecting cash or access controls, such as passwords, that limit access to the data and programs that process cash disbursements may be relevant to a financial statement audit. Conversely, controls to prevent the excess use of materials in production generally are not relevant to a financial statement audit.

Application of Components to a Financial Statement Audit

.14 The division of internal control into five components provides a useful framework for auditors to consider the impact of an entity's internal control in

an audit. However, it does not necessarily reflect how an entity considers and implements internal control. Also, the auditor's primary consideration is whether a specific control affects financial statement assertions rather than its classification into any particular component. Controls relevant to the audit are those that individually or in combination with others are likely to prevent or detect material misstatements in financial statement assertions. Such controls may exist in any of the five components.

.15 The five components of internal control are applicable to the audit of every entity. The components should be considered in the context of—

- The entity's size.
- The entity's organization and ownership characteristics.
- The nature of the entity's business.
- The diversity and complexity of the entity's operations.
- Applicable legal and regulatory requirements.
- The nature and complexity of the systems that are part of the entity's internal control, including the use of service organizations.⁷

Effect of Information Technology on Internal Control

.16 An entity's use of IT may affect any of the five components of internal control relevant to the achievement of the entity's financial reporting, operations, or compliance objectives, and its operating units or business functions. For example, an entity may use IT as part of discrete systems that support only particular business units, functions, or activities, such as a unique accounts receivable system for a particular business unit or a system that controls the operation of factory equipment. Alternatively, an entity may have complex, highly integrated systems that share data and that are used to support all aspects of the entity's financial reporting, operations, and compliance objectives.

.17 The use of IT also affects the fundamental manner in which transactions are initiated, recorded, processed, and reported.⁸ In a manual system, an entity uses manual procedures and records in paper format (for example, individuals may manually record sales orders on paper forms or journals, authorize credit, prepare shipping reports and invoices, and maintain accounts receivable records). Controls in such a system also are manual and may include such procedures as approvals and reviews of activities, and reconciliations and follow-up of reconciling items. Alternatively, an entity may have information systems that use automated procedures to initiate, record, process, and report transactions, in which case records in electronic format replace such paper documents as purchase orders, invoices, shipping documents, and related accounting records. Controls in systems that use IT consist of a combination of automated controls (for example, controls embedded in computer programs) and manual controls. Further, manual controls may be independent of IT, may use information produced by IT, or may be limited to monitoring the effective functioning of IT and of automated controls, and to handling exceptions. An entity's mix of manual and automated controls varies with the nature and complexity of the entity's use of IT.

⁷ See section 324, *Service Organizations*, for guidance if an entity obtains services that are part of its information system from another organization.

⁸ Paragraph 12 of the appendix [paragraph .110] defines *initiation, recording, processing, and reporting* as used throughout this section.

.18 IT provides potential benefits of effectiveness and efficiency for an entity's internal control because it enables an entity to—

- Consistently apply predefined business rules and perform complex calculations in processing large volumes of transactions or data.
- Enhance the timeliness, availability, and accuracy of information.
- Facilitate the additional analysis of information.
- Enhance the ability to monitor the performance of the entity's activities and its policies and procedures.
- Reduce the risk that controls will be circumvented.
- Enhance the ability to achieve effective segregation of duties by implementing security controls in applications, databases, and operating systems.

.19 IT also poses specific risks to an entity's internal control, including—

- Reliance on systems or programs that are inaccurately processing data, processing inaccurate data, or both.
- Unauthorized access to data that may result in destruction of data or improper changes to data, including the recording of unauthorized or nonexistent transactions or inaccurate recording of transactions.
- Unauthorized changes to data in master files.
- Unauthorized changes to systems or programs.
- Failure to make necessary changes to systems or programs.
- Inappropriate manual intervention.
- Potential loss of data.

.20 The extent and nature of these risks to internal control vary depending on the nature and characteristics of the entity's information system. For example, multiple users, either external or internal, may access a common database of information that affects financial reporting. In such circumstances, a lack of control at a single user entry point might compromise the security of the entire database, potentially resulting in improper changes to or destruction of data. When IT personnel or users are given, or can gain, access privileges beyond those necessary to perform their assigned duties, a breakdown in segregation of duties can occur. This could result in unauthorized transactions or changes to programs or data that affect the financial statements. Therefore, the nature and characteristics of an entity's use of IT in its information system affect the entity's internal control.

Limitations of an Entity's Internal Control

.21 Internal control, no matter how well designed and operated, can provide only reasonable assurance of achieving an entity's control objectives. The likelihood of achievement is affected by limitations inherent to internal control. These include the realities that human judgment in decision-making can be faulty and that breakdowns in internal control can occur because of human failures such as simple errors or mistakes. For example, errors may occur in designing, maintaining, or monitoring automated controls. If an entity's IT personnel do not completely understand how an order entry system

processes sales transactions, they may erroneously design changes to the system to process sales for a new line of products. On the other hand, such changes may be correctly designed but misunderstood by individuals who translate the design into program code. Errors also may occur in the use of information produced by IT. For example, automated controls may be designed to report transactions over a specified dollar limit for management review, but individuals responsible for conducting the review may not understand the purpose of such reports and, accordingly, may fail to review them or investigate unusual items.

.22 Additionally, controls, whether manual or automated, can be circumvented by the collusion of two or more people or inappropriate management override of internal control. For example, management may enter into side agreements with customers that alter the terms and conditions of the entity's standard sales contract in ways that would preclude revenue recognition. Also, edit routines in a software program that are designed to identify and report transactions that exceed specified credit limits may be overridden or disabled.

.23 Internal control is influenced by the quantitative and qualitative estimates and judgments made by management in evaluating the cost-benefit relationship of an entity's internal control. The cost of an entity's internal control should not exceed the benefits that are expected to be derived. Although the cost-benefit relationship is a primary criterion that should be considered in designing internal control, the precise measurement of costs and benefits usually is not possible.

.24 Custom, culture, and the corporate governance system may inhibit fraud, but they are not absolute deterrents. An effective control environment, too, may help reduce the risk of fraud. For example, an effective board of directors, audit committee, and internal audit function may constrain improper conduct by management. Alternatively, the control environment may reduce the effectiveness of other components. For example, when the nature of management incentives increases the risk of material misstatement of financial statements, the effectiveness of control activities may be reduced.

Obtaining an Understanding of Internal Control

.25 In all audits, the auditor should obtain an understanding of each of the five components of internal control sufficient to plan the audit. A sufficient understanding is obtained by performing procedures to understand the design of controls relevant to an audit of financial statements and determining whether they have been placed in operation. In planning the audit, such knowledge should be used to—

- Identify types of potential misstatement.
- Consider factors that affect the risk of material misstatement.
- Design tests of controls, when applicable. Paragraphs .65 through .69 of this section discuss factors the auditor considers in determining whether to perform tests of controls.
- Design substantive tests.

.26 The nature, timing, and extent of procedures the auditor chooses to perform to obtain the understanding will vary depending on the size and complexity of the entity, previous experience with the entity, the nature of the

specific controls used by the entity including the entity's use of IT, the nature and extent of changes in systems and operations, and the nature of the entity's documentation of specific controls. For example, the understanding of risk assessment needed to plan an audit for an entity operating in a relatively stable environment may be limited. Also, the understanding of monitoring needed to plan an audit for a small, noncomplex entity may be limited. Similarly, the auditor may need only a limited understanding of control activities to plan an audit for a noncomplex entity that has significant owner-manager approval and review of transactions and accounting records. On the other hand, the auditor may need a greater understanding of control activities to plan an audit for an entity that has a large volume of revenue transactions and that relies on IT to measure and bill for services based on a complex, frequently changing rate structure.

.27 Whether a control has been *placed in operation* at a point in time is different from its *operating effectiveness* over a period of time. In obtaining knowledge about whether controls have been placed in operation, the auditor determines that the entity is using them. Operating effectiveness, on the other hand, is concerned with how the control (whether manual or automated) was applied, the consistency with which it was applied, and by whom it was applied. The auditor determines whether controls have been placed in operation as part of the understanding of internal control necessary to plan the audit. The auditor evaluates the operating effectiveness of controls as part of assessing control risk, as discussed in paragraphs .62 through .83 of this section. Although understanding internal control and assessing control risk are discussed separately in this section, they may be performed concurrently in an audit. Furthermore, some of the procedures performed to obtain the understanding may provide evidential matter about the operating effectiveness of controls relevant to certain assertions.

.28 The auditor's understanding of internal control may sometimes raise doubts about the auditability of an entity's financial statements. Concerns about the integrity of the entity's management may be so serious as to cause the auditor to conclude that the risk of management misrepresentation in the financial statements is such that an audit cannot be conducted. Concerns about the nature and extent of an entity's records may cause the auditor to conclude that it is unlikely that sufficient competent evidential matter will be available to support an opinion on the financial statements.

Understanding of Internal Control Necessary to Plan the Audit

.29 In making a judgment about the understanding of internal control necessary to plan the audit, the auditor considers the knowledge obtained from other sources about the types of misstatement that could occur, the risk that such misstatements may occur, and the factors that influence the design of tests of controls, when applicable, and substantive tests. Other sources of such knowledge include information from previous audits and the auditor's understanding of the industry and market in which the entity operates. The auditor also considers his or her assessment of inherent risk, judgments about materiality, and the complexity and sophistication of the entity's operations and systems, including the extent to which the entity relies on manual controls or on automated controls.

.30 In making a judgment about the understanding of internal control necessary to plan the audit, the auditor also considers IT risks that could result

in misstatements. For example, if an entity uses IT to perform complex calculations, the entity receives the benefit of having the calculations consistently performed. However, the use of IT also presents risks, such as the risk that improperly authorized, incorrectly defined, or improperly implemented changes to the system or programs performing the calculations, or to related program tables or master files, could result in consistently performing those calculations inaccurately. As an entity's operations and systems become more complex and sophisticated, it becomes more likely that the auditor would need to increase his or her understanding of the internal control components to obtain the understanding necessary to design tests of controls, when applicable, and substantive tests.

.31 The auditor should consider whether specialized skills are needed for the auditor to determine the effect of IT on the audit, to understand the IT controls, or to design and perform tests of IT controls or substantive tests. A professional possessing IT skills may be either on the auditor's staff or an outside professional. In determining whether such a professional is needed on the audit team, the auditor considers factors such as the following:

- The complexity of the entity's systems and IT controls and the manner in which they are used in conducting the entity's business
- The significance of changes made to existing systems, or the implementation of new systems
- The extent to which data is shared among systems
- The extent of the entity's participation in electronic commerce
- The entity's use of emerging technologies
- The significance of audit evidence that is available only in electronic form

.32 Procedures that the auditor may assign to a professional possessing IT skills include inquiring of an entity's IT personnel how data and transactions are initiated, recorded, processed, and reported and how IT controls are designed; inspecting systems documentation; observing the operation of IT controls; and planning and performing tests of IT controls. If the use of a professional possessing IT skills is planned, the auditor should have sufficient IT-related knowledge to communicate the audit objectives to the professional, to evaluate whether the specified procedures will meet the auditor's objectives, and to evaluate the results of the procedures as they relate to the nature, timing, and extent of other planned audit procedures.⁹

.33 Paragraphs .34 through .57 of this section provide an overview of the five internal control components and the auditor's understanding of the components relating to a financial statement audit. A more detailed discussion of these components is provided in the appendix [paragraph .110].

Control Environment

.34 The control environment sets the tone of an organization, influencing the control consciousness of its people. It is the foundation for all other components of internal control, providing discipline and structure. Control environment factors include the following:

- a. Integrity and ethical values
- b. Commitment to competence

⁹ See section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, paragraph .10.

- c. Board of directors or audit committee participation
- d. Management's philosophy and operating style
- e. Organizational structure
- f. Assignment of authority and responsibility
- g. Human resource policies and practices

.35 The auditor should obtain sufficient knowledge of the control environment to understand management's and the board of directors' attitude, awareness, and actions concerning the control environment, considering both the substance of controls and their collective effect. The auditor should concentrate on the substance of controls rather than their form, because controls may be established but not acted upon. For example, management may establish a formal code of conduct but act in a manner that condones violations of that code.

.36 When obtaining an understanding of the control environment, the auditor considers the collective effect on the control environment of strengths and weaknesses in various control environment factors. Management's strengths and weaknesses may have a pervasive effect on internal control. For example, owner-manager controls may mitigate a lack of segregation of duties in a small business, or an active and independent board of directors may influence the philosophy and operating style of senior management in larger entities. Alternatively, management's failure to commit sufficient resources to address security risks presented by IT may adversely affect internal control by allowing improper changes to be made to computer programs or to data, or by allowing unauthorized transactions to be processed. Similarly, human resource policies and practices directed toward hiring competent financial, accounting, and IT personnel may not mitigate a strong bias by top management to overstate earnings.

Risk Assessment

.37 An entity's risk assessment for financial reporting purposes is its identification, analysis, and management of risks relevant to the preparation of financial statements that are fairly presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. For example, risk assessment may address how the entity considers the possibility of unrecorded transactions or identifies and analyzes significant estimates recorded in the financial statements. Risks relevant to reliable financial reporting also relate to specific events or transactions.

.38 Risks relevant to financial reporting include external and internal events and circumstances that may occur and adversely affect an entity's ability to initiate, record, process, and report financial data consistent with the assertions of management in the financial statements.¹⁰ Risks can arise or change due to circumstances such as the following:

- Changes in operating environment
- New personnel
- New or revamped information systems
- Rapid growth
- New technology
- New business models, products, or activities

¹⁰ These assertions are discussed in section 326.

- Corporate restructurings
- Expanded foreign operations
- New accounting pronouncements

.39 The auditor should obtain sufficient knowledge of the entity's risk assessment process to understand how management considers risks relevant to financial reporting objectives and decides about actions to address those risks. This knowledge might include understanding how management identifies risks, estimates the significance of the risks, assesses the likelihood of their occurrence, and relates them to financial reporting. The use of IT may be an important element in an entity's risk assessment process, including providing timely information to facilitate the identification and management of risks.

.40 An entity's risk assessment differs from the auditor's consideration of audit risk in a financial statement audit. The purpose of an entity's risk assessment is to identify, analyze, and manage risks that affect entity objectives. In a financial statement audit, the auditor assesses inherent and control risks to evaluate the likelihood that material misstatements could occur in the financial statements.

Control Activities

.41 Control activities are the policies and procedures that help ensure that management directives are carried out. They help ensure that necessary actions are taken to address risks to achievement of the entity's objectives. Control activities, whether automated or manual, have various objectives and are applied at various organizational and functional levels. Generally, control activities that may be relevant to an audit may be categorized as policies and procedures that pertain to the following:

- Performance reviews
- Information processing
- Physical controls
- Segregation of duties

.42 The auditor should obtain an understanding of those control activities relevant to planning the audit. As the auditor obtains an understanding of the other components, he or she is also likely to obtain knowledge about some control activities. For example, in obtaining an understanding of the documents, records, and processing steps in the financial reporting information system that pertain to cash, the auditor is likely to become aware of whether bank accounts are reconciled. The auditor should consider the knowledge about the presence or absence of control activities obtained from the understanding of the other components in determining whether it is necessary to devote additional attention to obtaining an understanding of control activities to plan the audit. Ordinarily, audit planning does not require an understanding of the control activities related to each account balance, transaction class, and disclosure component in the financial statements or to every assertion relevant to them.

.43 The auditor should obtain an understanding of how IT affects control activities that are relevant to planning the audit. Some entities and auditors may view the IT control activities in terms of application controls and general controls. Application controls apply to the processing of individual applications. Accordingly, application controls relate to the use of IT to initiate, record,

process, and report transactions or other financial data. These controls help ensure that transactions occurred, are authorized, and are completely and accurately recorded and processed. Examples include edit checks of input data, numerical sequence checks, and manual follow-up of exception reports.

.44 Application controls may be performed by IT (for example, automated reconciliation of subsystems) or by individuals. When application controls are performed by people interacting with IT, they may be referred to as user controls. The effectiveness of user controls, such as reviews of computer-produced exception reports or other information produced by IT, may depend on the accuracy of the information produced. For example, a user may review an exception report to identify credit sales over a customer's authorized credit limit without performing procedures to verify its accuracy. In such cases, the effectiveness of the user control (that is, the review of the exception report) depends on both the effectiveness of the user review and the accuracy of the information in the report produced by IT.

.45 General controls are policies and procedures that relate to many applications and support the effective functioning of application controls by helping to ensure the continued proper operation of information systems. General controls commonly include controls over data center and network operations; system software acquisition and maintenance; access security; and application system acquisition, development, and maintenance.

.46 The use of IT affects the way that control activities are implemented. For example, when IT is used in an information system, segregation of duties often is achieved by implementing security controls.

Information and Communication

.47 The information system relevant to financial reporting objectives, which includes the accounting system, consists of the procedures, whether automated or manual, and records established to initiate, record, process, and report entity transactions (as well as events and conditions) and to maintain accountability for the related assets, liabilities, and equity. The quality of system-generated information affects management's ability to make appropriate decisions in controlling the entity's activities and to prepare reliable financial reports.

.48 Communication involves providing an understanding of individual roles and responsibilities pertaining to internal control over financial reporting.

.49 The auditor should obtain sufficient knowledge of the information system relevant to financial reporting to understand—

- The classes of transactions in the entity's operations that are significant to the financial statements.
- The procedures, both automated and manual, by which transactions are initiated, recorded, processed, and reported from their occurrence to their inclusion in the financial statements.
- The related accounting records, whether electronic or manual, supporting information, and specific accounts in the financial statements involved in initiating, recording, processing, and reporting transactions.
- How the information system captures other events and conditions that are significant to the financial statements.
- The financial reporting process used to prepare the entity's financial statements, including significant accounting estimates and disclosures.

.50 When IT is used to initiate, record, process, or report transactions or other financial data for inclusion in financial statements, the systems and programs may include controls related to the corresponding assertions for significant accounts or may be critical to the effective functioning of manual controls that depend on IT.

.51 In obtaining an understanding of the financial reporting process, the auditor should understand the automated and manual procedures an entity uses to prepare financial statements and related disclosures, and how misstatements may occur. Such procedures include—

- *The procedures used to enter transaction totals into the general ledger.* In some information systems, IT may be used to automatically transfer such information from transaction processing systems to general ledger or financial reporting systems. The automated processes and controls in such systems may reduce the risk of inadvertent error but do not overcome the risk that individuals may inappropriately override such automated processes, for example, by changing the amounts being automatically passed to the general ledger or financial reporting system. Furthermore, in planning the audit, the auditor should be aware that when IT is used to automatically transfer information there may be little or no visible evidence of such intervention in the information systems.
- *The procedures used to initiate, record, and process journal entries in the general ledger.* An entity's financial reporting process used to prepare the financial statements typically includes the use of standard journal entries that are required on a recurring basis to record transactions such as monthly sales, purchases, and cash disbursements, or to record accounting estimates that are periodically made by management such as changes in the estimate of uncollectible accounts receivable. An entity's financial reporting process also includes the use of nonstandard journal entries to record nonrecurring or unusual transactions or adjustments such as a business combination or disposal, or a nonrecurring estimate such as an asset impairment. In manual, paper-based general ledger systems, such journal entries may be identified through inspection of ledgers, journals, and supporting documentation. However, when IT is used to maintain the general ledger and prepare financial statements, such entries may exist only in electronic form and may be more difficult to identify through physical inspection of printed documents.
- *Other procedures used to record recurring and nonrecurring adjustments to the financial statements.* These are procedures that are not reflected in formal journal entries, such as consolidating adjustments, report combinations, and reclassifications.

.52 The auditor also should obtain sufficient knowledge of the means the entity uses to communicate financial reporting roles and responsibilities and significant matters relating to financial reporting.

Monitoring

.53 An important management responsibility is to establish and maintain internal control. Management monitors controls to consider whether they are operating as intended and that they are modified as appropriate for changes in conditions.

.54 Monitoring is a process that assesses the quality of internal control performance over time. It involves assessing the design and operation of controls on a timely basis and taking necessary corrective actions. This process is accomplished through ongoing activities, separate evaluations, or a combination of the two. In many entities, internal auditors or personnel performing similar functions contribute to the monitoring of an entity's activities. Monitoring activities may include using information from communications from external parties such as customer complaints and regulator comments that may indicate problems or highlight areas in need of improvement. In many entities, much of the information used in monitoring may be produced by the entity's information system. If management assumes that data used for monitoring are accurate without having a basis for that assumption, errors may exist in the information, potentially leading management to incorrect conclusions from its monitoring activities.

.55 The auditor should obtain sufficient knowledge of the major types of activities the entity uses to monitor internal control over financial reporting, including the source of the information related to those activities, and how those activities are used to initiate corrective actions. When obtaining an understanding of the internal audit function, the auditor should follow the guidance in section 322, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, paragraphs .04 through .08.

Application to Small and Midsized Entities

.56 The way in which the objectives of internal control are achieved will vary based on an entity's size and complexity, among other considerations. Specifically, small and midsized entities may use less formal means to ensure that internal control objectives are achieved. For example, smaller entities with active management involvement in the financial reporting process may not have extensive descriptions of accounting procedures, sophisticated information systems, or written policies. Smaller entities may not have a written code of conduct but, instead, develop a culture that emphasizes the importance of integrity and ethical behavior through oral communication and by management example. Similarly, smaller entities may not have an independent or outside member on their board of directors.

.57 When small or midsized entities are involved in complex transactions or are subject to legal and regulatory requirements also found in larger entities, more formal means of ensuring that internal control objectives are achieved may be present. Also, small and midsized entities may use IT in various ways to achieve their objectives. For example, a small entity may use sophisticated applications of IT as part of its information system. The impact of IT on an entity's internal control is related more to the nature and complexity of the systems in use than to the entity's size.

Procedures to Obtain Understanding

.58 In obtaining an understanding of controls that are relevant to audit planning, the auditor should perform procedures to obtain sufficient knowledge about the design of the relevant controls pertaining to each of the five internal control components and determine whether they have been placed in operation. This knowledge is ordinarily obtained through previous experience with the entity and procedures such as inquiries of appropriate management, supervisory, and staff personnel; inspection of entity documents and records; and observation of entity activities and operations. The nature and extent of

the procedures performed generally vary from entity to entity and are influenced by the size and complexity of the entity, the auditor's previous experience with the entity, the nature of the particular control, and the nature of the entity's documentation of specific controls.

.59 For example, the auditor's prior experience with the entity may provide an understanding of its classes of transactions. Inquiries of appropriate entity personnel and inspection of documents and records, such as source documents, journals, and ledgers, may provide an understanding of the accounting records. Similarly, in obtaining an understanding of the design of automated controls and determining whether they have been placed in operation, the auditor may make inquiries of appropriate entity personnel and inspect relevant systems documentation, reports (for example, exception reports or reports evidencing the processing of transactions or application of other controls), or other documents.

.60 The auditor's assessments of inherent risk and judgments about materiality for various account balances and transaction classes also affect the nature and extent of the procedures performed to obtain the understanding. For example, the auditor may conclude that planning the audit of the prepaid insurance account does not require specific procedures to be included in obtaining the understanding of internal control.

Documenting the Understanding

.61 The auditor should document the understanding of the entity's internal control components obtained to plan the audit. The form and extent of this documentation is influenced by the nature and complexity of the entity's controls. For example, documentation of the understanding of internal control of a complex information system in which a large volume of transactions are electronically initiated, recorded, processed, or reported may include flowcharts, questionnaires, or decision tables. For an information system making limited or no use of IT or for which few transactions are processed (for example, long-term debt), documentation in the form of a memorandum may be sufficient. Generally, the more complex the entity's internal control and the more extensive the procedures performed by the auditor, the more extensive the auditor's documentation should be.

Assessing Control Risk

.62 Section 326, *Evidential Matter*, states that most of the independent auditor's work in forming an opinion on financial statements consists of obtaining and evaluating evidential matter concerning the assertions in such financial statements. These assertions are embodied in the account balance, transaction class, and disclosure components of financial statements and are classified according to the following broad categories:

- Existence or occurrence
- Completeness
- Rights and obligations
- Valuation or allocation
- Presentation and disclosure

In planning and performing an audit, an auditor considers these assertions in the context of their relationship to a specific account balance or class of transactions.

.63 The risk of material misstatement¹¹ in financial statement assertions consists of inherent risk, control risk, and detection risk. Inherent risk is the susceptibility of an assertion to a material misstatement assuming there are no related controls. Control risk is the risk that a material misstatement that could occur in an assertion will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis by the entity's internal control. Detection risk is the risk that the auditor will not detect a material misstatement that exists in an assertion.

.64 Assessing control risk is the process of evaluating the effectiveness of an entity's internal control in preventing or detecting material misstatements in the financial statements. Control risk should be assessed in terms of financial statement assertions.

.65 After obtaining the understanding of internal control, the auditor may assess control risk at the maximum level¹² for some or all assertions because he or she believes controls are unlikely to pertain to an assertion or are unlikely to be effective, or because evaluating the effectiveness of controls would be inefficient. However, the auditor needs to be satisfied that performing only substantive tests would be effective in restricting detection risk to an acceptable level. For example, the auditor may determine that performing only substantive tests would be effective and more efficient than performing tests of controls for assertions related to fixed assets and to long-term debt in an entity where a limited number of transactions are related to those financial statement components, and when the auditor can readily obtain corroborating evidence in the form of documents and confirmations. In circumstances where the auditor is performing only substantive tests in restricting detection risk to an acceptable level and where the information used by the auditor to perform such substantive tests is produced by the entity's information system, the auditor should obtain evidence about the accuracy and completeness of the information.

.66 In other circumstances, the auditor may determine that assessing control risk below the maximum level for certain assertions would be effective and more efficient than performing only substantive tests. In addition, the auditor may determine that it is not practical or possible to restrict detection risk to an acceptable level by performing only substantive tests for one or more financial statement assertions. In such circumstances, the auditor should obtain evidential matter about the effectiveness of both the design and operation of controls to reduce the assessed level of control risk.¹³

.67 In determining whether assessing control risk at the maximum level or at a lower level would be an effective approach for specific assertions, the auditor should consider—

- The nature of the assertion.
- The volume of transactions or data related to the assertion.

¹¹ For purposes of this section, a material misstatement in a financial statement assertion is a misstatement whether caused by error or fraud as discussed in section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, that either individually or when aggregated with other misstatements in other assertions would be material to the financial statements taken as a whole.

¹² See footnote 3.

¹³ See footnote 4.

- The nature and complexity of the systems, including the use of IT, by which the entity processes and controls information supporting the assertion.
- The nature of the available evidential matter, including audit evidence that is available only in electronic form.

.68 In circumstances where a significant amount of information supporting one or more financial statement assertions is electronically initiated, recorded, processed, or reported, the auditor may determine that it is not possible to design effective substantive tests that by themselves would provide sufficient evidence that the assertions are not materially misstated. For such assertions, significant audit evidence may be available only in electronic form. In such cases, its competence and sufficiency as evidential matter usually depend on the effectiveness of controls over its accuracy and completeness. Furthermore, the potential for improper initiation or alteration of information to occur and not be detected may be greater if information is initiated, recorded, processed, or reported only in electronic form and appropriate controls are not operating effectively. In such circumstances, the auditor should perform tests of controls to gather evidential matter to use in assessing control risk.

.69 Examples of situations where the auditor may find it impossible to design effective substantive tests that by themselves would provide sufficient evidence that certain assertions are not materially misstated include the following:

- An entity that conducts business using IT to initiate orders for goods based on predetermined decision rules and to pay the related payables based on system-generated information regarding receipt of goods. No other documentation of orders or goods received is produced or maintained.
- An entity that provides electronic services to customers (for example, an Internet service provider or a telephone company) and uses IT to log services provided to users, initiate bills for the services, process the billing transactions, and automatically record such amounts in electronic accounting records that are used to produce the financial statements.

Assessing Control Risk Below the Maximum Level

.70 Assessing control risk below the maximum level involves¹⁴—

- Identifying specific controls relevant to specific assertions.
- Performing tests of controls.
- Concluding on the assessed level of control risk.

Identifying Specific Controls Relevant to Specific Assertions

.71 The auditor's understanding about internal control should be used to identify the types of potential misstatements that could occur and to consider factors that affect the risk of material misstatement. In assessing control risk,

¹⁴ Section 324 describes reports that an auditor may obtain that may assist in identifying controls relevant to specific assertions and obtaining evidential matter regarding their operating effectiveness when an entity uses a service organization.

the auditor should identify the controls that are likely to prevent or detect material misstatement in specific assertions. In identifying controls relevant to specific financial statement assertions, the auditor should consider that the controls can have either a pervasive effect on many assertions or a specific effect on an individual assertion, depending on the nature of the particular internal control component involved. For example, the conclusion that an entity's control environment is highly effective may influence the auditor's decision about the number of an entity's locations at which auditing procedures are to be performed or whether to perform certain auditing procedures for some account balances or transaction classes at an interim date. Either decision affects the way in which auditing procedures are applied to specific assertions, even though the auditor may not have specifically considered each individual assertion that is affected by such decisions.

.72 Conversely, some control activities may have a specific effect on an individual assertion embodied in a particular account balance or transaction class. For example, the control activities that an entity established to ensure that its personnel are properly counting and recording the annual physical inventory relate directly to the existence assertion for the inventory account balance.

.73 Controls can be either directly or indirectly related to an assertion. The more indirect the relationship, the less effective that control may be in reducing control risk for that assertion. For example, a sales manager's review of a summary of sales activity for specific stores by region ordinarily is indirectly related to the completeness assertion for sales revenue. Accordingly, it may be less effective in reducing control risk for that assertion than controls more directly related to that assertion, such as matching shipping documents with billing documents.

.74 General controls relate to many applications and support the effective functioning of application controls by helping to ensure the continued proper operation of information systems. The auditor should consider the need to identify not only application controls directly related to one or more assertions, but also relevant general controls.

Performing Tests of Controls

.75 Procedures directed toward evaluating the effectiveness of the design of a control are concerned with whether that control is suitably designed to prevent or detect material misstatements in specific financial statement assertions. Procedures to obtain such evidential matter ordinarily include inquiries of appropriate entity personnel; inspection of documents, reports, or electronic files; and observation of the application of specific controls. For entities with complex internal control, the auditor should consider the use of flowcharts, questionnaires, or decision tables to facilitate the application of procedures directed toward evaluating the effectiveness of the design of a control.

.76 Procedures to obtain evidential matter about the effectiveness of the operation of a control are referred to as tests of controls (paragraphs .90 through .104 of this section discuss characteristics of evidential matter to consider when performing tests of controls). Tests of controls directed toward the operating effectiveness of a control are concerned with how the control (whether manual or automated) was applied, the consistency with which it was applied during the audit period, and by whom it was applied. These tests ordinarily include procedures such as inquiries of appropriate entity personnel; inspection of documents, reports, or electronic files, indicating performance

of the control; observation of the application of the control; and reperformance of the application of the control by the auditor. In some circumstances, a specific procedure may address the effectiveness of both design and operation. However, a combination of procedures may be necessary to evaluate the effectiveness of the design or operation of a control.

.77 In designing tests of automated controls, the auditor should consider the need to obtain evidence supporting the effective operation of controls directly related to the assertions as well as other indirect controls on which these controls depend. For example, the auditor may identify a “user review of an exception report of credit sales over a customer’s authorized credit limit” as a direct control related to an assertion. In such cases, the auditor should consider the effectiveness of the user review of the report and also the controls related to the accuracy of the information in the report (for example, the general controls).

.78 Because of the inherent consistency of IT processing, the auditor may be able to reduce the extent of testing of an automated control. For example, a programmed application control should function consistently unless the program (including the tables, files, or other permanent data used by the program) is changed. Once the auditor determines that an automated control is functioning as intended (which could be done at the time the control is initially implemented or at some other date), the auditor should consider performing tests to determine that the control continues to function effectively. Such tests might include determining that changes to the program are not made without being subject to the appropriate program change controls, that the authorized version of the program is used for processing transactions, and that other relevant general controls are effective. Such tests also might include determining that changes to the programs have not been made, as may be the case when the entity uses packaged software applications without modifying or maintaining them.

.79 To test automated controls, the auditor may need to use techniques that are different from those used to test manual controls. For example, computer-assisted audit techniques may be used to test automated controls or data related to assertions. Also, the auditor may use other automated tools or reports produced by IT to test the operating effectiveness of general controls, such as program change controls, access controls, and system software controls. The auditor should consider whether specialized skills are needed to design and perform such tests of controls.

Concluding on the Assessed Level of Control Risk

.80 The conclusion reached as a result of assessing control risk is referred to as the assessed level of control risk. In determining the evidential matter necessary to support an assessed level of control risk below the maximum level, the auditor should consider the characteristics of evidential matter about control risk discussed in paragraphs .90 through .104. Generally, however, the lower the assessed level of control risk, the greater the assurance the evidential matter must provide that the controls relevant to an assertion are designed and operating effectively.

.81 The auditor uses the assessed level of control risk (together with the assessed level of inherent risk) to determine the acceptable level of detection risk for financial statement assertions. The auditor uses the acceptable level of detection risk to determine the nature, timing, and extent of the auditing procedures

to be applied to the account balance or class of transactions to detect material misstatements in the financial statement assertions. Auditing procedures designed to detect such misstatements are referred to in this section as substantive tests.

.82 As the acceptable level of detection risk decreases, the assurance provided from substantive tests should increase. Consequently, the auditor may do one or more of the following:

- Change the nature of substantive tests from a less effective to a more effective procedure, such as using tests directed toward independent parties outside the entity rather than tests directed toward parties or documentation within the entity.
- Change the timing of substantive tests, such as performing them at year end rather than at an interim date.
- Change the extent of substantive tests, such as using a larger sample size.

Documenting the Assessed Level of Control Risk

.83 In addition to the documentation of the understanding of internal control discussed in paragraph .61, the auditor should document his or her conclusions about the assessed level of control risk. Conclusions about the assessed level of control risk may differ as they relate to various account balances or classes of transactions. For those financial statement assertions where control risk is assessed at the maximum level, the auditor should document his or her conclusion that control risk is at the maximum level but need not document the basis for that conclusion. For those assertions where the assessed level of control risk is below the maximum level, the auditor should document the basis for his or her conclusion that the effectiveness of the design and operation of controls supports that assessed level. The nature and extent of the auditor's documentation are influenced by the assessed level of control risk, the nature of the entity's internal control, and the nature of the entity's documentation of internal control.

Relationship of Understanding to Assessing Control Risk

.84 Although understanding internal control and assessing control risk are discussed separately in this section, they may be performed concurrently in an audit. The objective of procedures performed to obtain an understanding of internal control (discussed in paragraphs .58 through .60) is to provide the auditor with knowledge necessary for audit planning. The objective of tests of controls (discussed in paragraphs .75 through .79) is to provide the auditor with evidential matter to use in assessing control risk. However, procedures performed to achieve one objective may also pertain to the other objective.

.85 Based on the assessed level of control risk the auditor expects to support and audit efficiency considerations, the auditor often plans to perform some tests of controls concurrently with obtaining the understanding of internal control. In addition, even though some of the procedures performed to obtain the understanding were not specifically planned as tests of controls, they may nevertheless provide evidential matter about the effectiveness of both the design and operation of the controls relevant to certain assertions. For

example, because of the inherent consistency of IT processing, performing procedures to determine whether an automated control has been placed in operation may serve as a test of that control's operating effectiveness, depending on such factors as whether the program has been changed or whether there is a significant risk of unauthorized change or other improper intervention. Also, in obtaining an understanding of the control environment, the auditor may have made inquiries about management's use of budgets, observed management's comparison of monthly budgeted and actual expenses, and inspected reports pertaining to the investigation of variances between budgeted and actual amounts. Although these procedures provide knowledge about the design of the entity's budgeting policies and whether they have been placed in operation, they may also provide evidential matter about the effectiveness of the operation of budgeting policies in preventing or detecting material misstatements in the classification of expenses. In some circumstances, that evidential matter may be sufficient to support an assessed level of control risk that is below the maximum level for the presentation and disclosure assertions pertaining to expenses in the income statement.

.86 When the auditor concludes that procedures performed to obtain the understanding of internal control also provide evidential matter for assessing control risk, he or she should consider the guidance in paragraphs .90 through .104 in judging the degree of assurance provided by that evidential matter. Although such evidential matter may not provide sufficient assurance to support an assessed level of control risk that is below the maximum level for certain assertions, it may do so for other assertions and thus provide a basis for modifying the nature, timing, or extent of the substantive tests that the auditor plans for those assertions. However, such procedures are not sufficient to support an assessed level of control risk below the maximum level if they do not provide sufficient evidential matter to evaluate the effectiveness of both the design and operation of a control relevant to an assertion.

Further Reduction in the Assessed Level of Control Risk

.87 After obtaining the understanding of internal control and assessing control risk, the auditor may desire to further reduce the assessed level of control risk for certain assertions. In such cases, the auditor considers whether additional evidential matter sufficient to support a further reduction is likely to be available, and whether it would be efficient to perform tests of controls to obtain that evidential matter. The results of the procedures performed to obtain the understanding of internal control, as well as pertinent information from other sources, help the auditor to evaluate those two factors.

.88 In considering efficiency, the auditor recognizes that additional evidential matter that supports a further reduction in the assessed level of control risk for an assertion would result in less audit effort for the substantive tests of that assertion. The auditor weighs the increase in audit effort associated with the additional tests of controls that is necessary to obtain such evidential matter against the resulting decrease in audit effort associated with the reduced substantive tests.

.89 For those assertions for which the auditor performs additional tests of controls, the auditor determines the assessed level of control risk that the results of those tests will support. This assessed level of control risk is used in determining the appropriate detection risk to accept for those assertions and, accordingly, in determining the nature, timing, and extent of substantive tests for such assertions.

Evidential Matter to Support the Assessed Level of Control Risk

.90 When the auditor assesses control risk below the maximum level, he or she should obtain sufficient evidential matter to support that assessed level. The evidential matter¹⁵ that is sufficient to support a specific assessed level of control risk is a matter of judgment. Evidential matter varies substantially in the assurance it provides to the auditor as he or she develops an assessed level of control risk. The type of evidential matter, its source, its timeliness, and the existence of other evidential matter related to the conclusion to which it leads all bear on the degree of assurance evidential matter provides.

.91 These characteristics influence the nature, timing, and extent of the tests of controls that the auditor applies to obtain evidential matter about control risk. The auditor selects such tests from a variety of techniques such as inquiry, observation, inspection, and reperformance of a control that pertains to an assertion. No one specific test of controls is always necessary, applicable, or equally effective in every circumstance.

Type of Evidential Matter

.92 The nature of the particular controls that pertain to an assertion influences the type of evidential matter that is available to evaluate the effectiveness of the design or operation of those controls. For some controls, documentation of design or operation may exist. In such circumstances, the auditor may decide to inspect the documentation to obtain evidential matter about the effectiveness of design or operation.

.93 For other controls, however, such documentation may not be available or relevant. For example, documentation of design or operation may not exist for some factors in the control environment, such as assignment of authority and responsibility, or for some types of control activities, such as undocumented monitoring controls or control activities performed by a computer. In such circumstances, evidential matter about the effectiveness of design or operation may be obtained through such methods as observation, inquiry, or the use of computer-assisted audit techniques.

Source of Evidential Matter

.94 Generally, evidential matter about the effectiveness of the design and operation of controls obtained directly by the auditor, such as through observation, provides more assurance than evidential matter obtained indirectly or by inference, such as through inquiry. For example, evidential matter that is obtained by the auditor's direct personal observation of the individual who applies a control generally provides more assurance than making inquiries about the application of the control. The auditor should consider, however, that the observed application of a control might not be performed in the same manner when the auditor is not present.

.95 Inquiry alone generally will not provide sufficient evidential matter to support a conclusion about the effectiveness of design or operation of a specific control. When the auditor determines that a specific control may have

¹⁵ See also section 326 for guidance on evidential matter.

a significant effect in reducing control risk to a low level for a specific assertion, he or she ordinarily needs to perform additional tests to obtain sufficient evidential matter to support the conclusion about the effectiveness of the design or operation of that control.

Timeliness of Evidential Matter

.96 The timeliness of the evidential matter concerns when it was obtained and the portion of the audit period to which it applies. In evaluating the degree of assurance that is provided by evidential matter, the auditor should consider that the evidential matter obtained by some tests of controls, such as observation, pertains only to the point in time at which the auditing procedure was applied. Consequently, such evidential matter may be insufficient to evaluate the effectiveness of the design or operation of controls for periods not subjected to such tests. In such circumstances, the auditor may decide to supplement those tests with other tests of controls that are capable of providing evidential matter about the entire audit period. For example, for an application control performed by a computer program, the auditor may test the operation of the control at a particular point in time to obtain evidential matter about whether the control is operating effectively at that point in time. The auditor may then perform tests of controls directed toward obtaining evidential matter about whether the application control operated consistently during the audit period, such as tests of general controls pertaining to the modification and use of that computer program during the audit period.

.97 Evidential matter about the effective design or operation of controls that was obtained in prior audits may be considered by the auditor in assessing control risk in the current audit. To evaluate the use of such evidential matter for the current audit, the auditor should consider the significance of the assertion involved, the specific controls that were evaluated during the prior audits, the degree to which the effective design and operation of those controls were evaluated, the results of the tests of controls used to make those evaluations, and the evidential matter about design or operation that may result from substantive tests performed in the current audit. The auditor should also consider that the longer the time elapsed since tests of controls were performed to obtain evidential matter about control risk, the less assurance they may provide.

.98 When considering evidential matter obtained from prior audits, the auditor should obtain evidential matter in the current period about whether changes have occurred in internal control, including its policies, procedures, and personnel, subsequent to the prior audits, as well as the nature and extent of any such changes. For example, in performing the prior audit, the auditor may have determined that an automated control was functioning as intended. The auditor should obtain evidence to determine whether changes to the automated control have been made that would affect its continued effective functioning. Consideration of evidential matter about these changes, together with the considerations in the preceding paragraph, may support either increasing or decreasing the evidential matter about the effectiveness of design and operation to be obtained in the current period.

.99 When the auditor obtains evidential matter about the design or operation of controls during an interim period, he or she should determine what additional evidential matter should be obtained for the remaining period. In making that determination, the auditor should consider the significance of the assertion involved, the specific controls that were evaluated during the interim period, the degree to which the effective design and operation of those

controls were evaluated, the results of the tests of controls used to make that evaluation, the length of the remaining period, and the evidential matter about design or operation that may result from the substantive tests performed in the remaining period. The auditor should obtain evidential matter about the nature and extent of any significant changes in internal control, including its policies, procedures, and personnel, that occur subsequent to the interim period.

Interrelationship of Evidential Matter

.100 The auditor should consider the combined effect of various types of evidential matter relating to the same assertion in evaluating the degree of assurance that evidential matter provides. In some circumstances, a single type of evidential matter may not be sufficient to evaluate the effective design or operation of a control. To obtain sufficient evidential matter in such circumstances, the auditor may perform other tests of controls pertaining to that control. For example, an auditor may observe the procedures for opening the mail and processing cash receipts to evaluate the operating effectiveness of controls over cash receipts. Because an observation is pertinent only at the point in time at which it is made, the auditor may supplement the observation with inquiries of entity personnel and inspection of documentation about the operation of such controls at other times during the audit period.

.101 In addition, when evaluating the degree of assurance provided by evidential matter, the auditor should consider the interrelationship of an entity's control environment, risk assessment, control activities, information and communication, and monitoring. Although an individual internal control component may affect the nature, timing, or extent of substantive tests for a specific financial statement assertion, the auditor should consider the evidential matter about an individual component in relation to the evidential matter about the other components in assessing control risk for a specific assertion.

.102 Generally, when various types of evidential matter support the same conclusion about the design or operation of a control, the degree of assurance provided increases. Conversely, if various types of evidential matter lead to different conclusions about the design or operation of a control, the assurance provided decreases. For example, based on the evidential matter that the control environment is effective, the auditor may have reduced the number of locations at which auditing procedures will be performed. If, however, when evaluating specific control activities, the auditor obtains evidential matter that such activities are ineffective, he or she may re-evaluate his or her conclusion about the control environment and, among other things, decide to perform auditing procedures at additional locations.

.103 Similarly, evidential matter indicating that the control environment is ineffective may adversely affect an otherwise effective control for a particular assertion. For example, a control environment that is likely to permit unauthorized changes in a computer program may reduce the assurance provided by evidential matter obtained from evaluating the effectiveness of the program at a particular point in time. In such circumstances, the auditor may decide to obtain additional evidential matter about the design and operation of that program during the audit period. For example, the auditor might obtain and control a copy of the program and use computer-assisted audit techniques to compare that copy with the program that the entity uses to process data.

.104 An audit of financial statements is a cumulative process; as the auditor assesses control risk, the information obtained may cause him or her to modify the nature, timing, or extent of the other planned tests of controls for

assessing control risk. In addition, information may come to the auditor's attention as a result of performing substantive tests or from other sources during the audit that differs significantly from the information on which his or her planned tests of controls for assessing control risk were based. For example, the extent of misstatements that the auditor detects by performing substantive tests may alter his or her judgment about the assessed level of control risk. In such circumstances, the auditor may need to re-evaluate the planned substantive procedures, based on a revised consideration of the assessed level of control risk for all or some of the financial statement assertions.

Correlation of Control Risk With Detection Risk

.105 The ultimate purpose of assessing control risk is to contribute to the auditor's evaluation of the risk that material misstatements exist in the financial statements. The process of assessing control risk (together with assessing inherent risk) provides evidential matter about the risk that such misstatements may exist in the financial statements. The auditor uses this evidential matter as part of the reasonable basis for an opinion referred to in the third standard of field work, which follows:

Sufficient competent evidential matter is to be obtained through inspection, observation, inquiries, and confirmations to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion regarding the financial statements under audit.

.106 After considering the level to which he or she seeks to restrict the risk of a material misstatement in the financial statements and the assessed levels of inherent risk and control risk, the auditor performs substantive tests to restrict detection risk to an acceptable level. As the assessed level of control risk decreases, the acceptable level of detection risk increases. Accordingly, the auditor may alter the nature, timing, and extent of the substantive tests performed.

.107 Although the inverse relationship between control risk and detection risk may permit the auditor to change the nature or the timing of substantive tests or limit their extent, ordinarily the assessed level of control risk cannot be sufficiently low to eliminate the need to perform any substantive tests to restrict detection risk for all of the assertions relevant to significant account balances or transaction classes. Consequently, regardless of the assessed level of control risk, the auditor should perform substantive tests for significant account balances and transaction classes.

.108 The substantive tests that the auditor performs consist of tests of details of transactions and balances, and analytical procedures. In assessing control risk, the auditor also may use tests of details of transactions as tests of controls. The objective of tests of details of transactions performed as substantive tests is to detect material misstatements in the financial statements. The objective of tests of details of transactions performed as tests of controls is to evaluate whether a control operated effectively. Although these objectives are different, both may be accomplished concurrently through performance of a test of details on the same transaction. The auditor should recognize, however, that careful consideration should be given to the design and evaluation of such tests to ensure that both objectives will be accomplished.

Effective Date

.109 This amendment is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after June 1, 2001. Earlier application is permissible.

Appendix

Internal Control Components

1. This appendix discusses the five internal control components set forth in paragraph .07 and further described in paragraphs .34 through .57 as they relate to a financial statement audit.

Control Environment

2. The control environment sets the tone of an organization, influencing the control consciousness of its people. It is the foundation for all other components of internal control, providing discipline and structure.
3. The control environment encompasses the following factors:
 - a. *Integrity and ethical values.* The effectiveness of controls cannot rise above the integrity and ethical values of the people who create, administer, and monitor them. Integrity and ethical values are essential elements of the control environment, affecting the design, administration, and monitoring of other components. Integrity and ethical behavior are the product of the entity's ethical and behavioral standards, how they are communicated, and how they are reinforced in practice. They include management's actions to remove or reduce incentives and temptations that might prompt personnel to engage in dishonest, illegal, or unethical acts. They also include the communication of entity values and behavioral standards to personnel through policy statements and codes of conduct and by example.
 - b. *Commitment to competence.* Competence is the knowledge and skills necessary to accomplish tasks that define the individual's job. Commitment to competence includes management's consideration of the competence levels for particular jobs and how those levels translate into requisite skills and knowledge.
 - c. *Board of directors or audit committee participation.* An entity's control consciousness is influenced significantly by the entity's board of directors or audit committee. Attributes include the board or audit committee's independence from management, the experience and stature of its members, the extent of its involvement and scrutiny of activities, the appropriateness of its actions, the degree to which difficult questions are raised and pursued with management, and its interaction with internal and external auditors.
 - d. *Management's philosophy and operating style.* Management's philosophy and operating style encompass a broad range of characteristics. Such characteristics may include the following: management's approach to taking and monitoring business risks; management's attitudes and actions toward financial reporting (conservative or aggressive selection from available alternative accounting principles, and conscientiousness and conservatism with which accounting estimates are developed); and management's attitudes toward information processing and accounting functions and personnel.

- e. *Organizational structure.* An entity's organizational structure provides the framework within which its activities for achieving entity-wide objectives are planned, executed, controlled, and monitored. Establishing a relevant organizational structure includes considering key areas of authority and responsibility and appropriate lines of reporting. An entity develops an organizational structure suited to its needs. The appropriateness of an entity's organizational structure depends, in part, on its size and the nature of its activities.
- f. *Assignment of authority and responsibility.* This factor includes how authority and responsibility for operating activities are assigned and how reporting relationships and authorization hierarchies are established. It also includes policies relating to appropriate business practices, knowledge and experience of key personnel, and resources provided for carrying out duties. In addition, it includes policies and communications directed at ensuring that all personnel understand the entity's objectives, know how their individual actions interrelate and contribute to those objectives, and recognize how and for what they will be held accountable.
- g. *Human resource policies and practices.* Human resource policies and practices relate to hiring, orientation, training, evaluating, counseling, promoting, compensating, and remedial actions. For example, standards for hiring the most qualified individuals—with emphasis on educational background, prior work experience, past accomplishments, and evidence of integrity and ethical behavior—demonstrate an entity's commitment to competent and trustworthy people. Training policies that communicate prospective roles and responsibilities and include practices such as training schools and seminars illustrate expected levels of performance and behavior. Promotions driven by periodic performance appraisals demonstrate the entity's commitment to the advancement of qualified personnel to higher levels of responsibility.

Application to Small and Midsized Entities

- 4. Small and midsized entities may implement the control environment factors differently than larger entities. For example, smaller entities might not have a written code of conduct but, instead, develop a culture that emphasizes the importance of integrity and ethical behavior through oral communication and by management example. Similarly, smaller entities may not have an independent or outside member on their board of directors.

Risk Assessment

- 5. An entity's risk assessment for financial reporting purposes is its identification, analysis, and management of risks relevant to the preparation of financial statements that are fairly presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. For example, risk assessment may address how the entity considers the possibility of unrecorded transactions or identifies and analyzes significant estimates recorded in the financial statements. Risks relevant to reliable financial reporting also relate to specific events or transactions.

6. Risks relevant to financial reporting include external and internal events and circumstances that may occur and adversely affect an entity's ability to initiate, record, process, and report financial data consistent with the assertions of management in the financial statements. Once risks are identified, management considers their significance, the likelihood of their occurrence, and how they should be managed. Management may initiate plans, programs, or actions to address specific risks or it may decide to accept a risk because of cost or other considerations. Risks can arise or change due to circumstances such as the following:
- *Changes in operating environment.* Changes in the regulatory or operating environment can result in changes in competitive pressures and significantly different risks.
 - *New personnel.* New personnel may have a different focus on or understanding of internal control.
 - *New or revamped information systems.* Significant and rapid changes in information systems can change the risk relating to internal control.
 - *Rapid growth.* Significant and rapid expansion of operations can strain controls and increase the risk of a breakdown in controls.
 - *New technology.* Incorporating new technologies into production processes or information systems may change the risk associated with internal control.
 - *New business models, products, or activities.* Entering into business areas or transactions with which an entity has little experience may introduce new risks associated with internal control.
 - *Corporate restructurings.* Restructurings may be accompanied by staff reductions and changes in supervision and segregation of duties that may change the risk associated with internal control.
 - *Expanded foreign operations.* The expansion or acquisition of foreign operations carries new and often unique risks that may affect internal control, for example, additional or changed risks from foreign currency transactions.
 - *New accounting pronouncements.* Adoption of new accounting principles or changing accounting principles may affect risks in preparing financial statements.

Application to Small and Midsized Entities

7. The basic concepts of the risk assessment process should be present in every entity, regardless of size, but the risk assessment process is likely to be less formal and less structured in small and midsized entities than in larger ones. All entities should have established financial reporting objectives, but they may be recognized implicitly rather than explicitly in smaller entities. Management may be able to learn about risks related to these objectives through direct personal involvement with employees and outside parties.

Control Activities

8. Control activities are the policies and procedures that help ensure that necessary actions are taken to address risks to achievement of the entity's objectives. Control activities, whether automated or manual, have various objectives and are applied at various organizational and functional levels.
9. Generally, control activities that may be relevant to an audit may be categorized as policies and procedures that pertain to the following:
 - *Performance reviews.* These control activities include reviews of actual performance versus budgets, forecasts, and prior period performance; relating different sets of data—operating or financial—to one another, together with analyses of the relationships and investigative and corrective actions; and review of functional or activity performance, such as a bank's consumer loan manager's review of reports by branch, region, and loan type for loan approvals and collections.
 - *Information processing.* A variety of controls are performed to check accuracy, completeness, and authorization of transactions. The two broad groupings of information systems control activities are application controls and general controls. Application controls apply to the processing of individual applications. These controls help ensure that transactions occurred, are authorized, and are completely and accurately recorded and processed. General controls commonly include controls over data center and network operations; system software acquisition and maintenance; access security; and application system acquisition, development, and maintenance. These controls apply to mainframe, miniframe, and end-user environments. Examples of such general controls are program change controls, controls that restrict access to programs or data, controls over the implementation of new releases of packaged software applications, and controls over system software that restrict access to or monitor the use of system utilities that could change financial data or records without leaving an audit trail.
 - *Physical controls.* These activities encompass the physical security of assets, including adequate safeguards such as secured facilities, over access to assets and records; authorization for access to computer programs and data files; and periodic counting and comparison with amounts shown on control records. The extent to which physical controls intended to prevent theft of assets are relevant to the reliability of financial statement preparation, and therefore the audit, depends on circumstances such as when assets are highly susceptible to misappropriation. For example, these controls would ordinarily not be relevant when any inventory losses would be detected pursuant to periodic physical inspection and recorded in the financial statements. However, if for financial reporting purposes management relies solely on perpetual inventory records, the physical security controls would be relevant to the audit.
 - *Segregation of duties.* Assigning different people the responsibilities of authorizing transactions, recording transactions, and

maintaining custody of assets is intended to reduce the opportunities to allow any person to be in a position to both perpetrate and conceal errors or fraud in the normal course of his or her duties.

Application to Small and Midsized Entities

10. The concepts underlying control activities in small or midsized organizations are likely to be similar to those in larger entities, but the formality with which they operate varies. Further, smaller entities may find that certain types of control activities are not relevant because of controls applied by management. For example, management's retention of authority for approving credit sales, significant purchases, and draw-downs on lines of credit can provide strong control over those activities, lessening or removing the need for more detailed control activities. An appropriate segregation of duties often appears to present difficulties in smaller organizations. Even companies that have only a few employees, however, may be able to assign their responsibilities to achieve appropriate segregation or, if that is not possible, to use management oversight of the incompatible activities to achieve control objectives.

Information and Communication

11. An information system consists of infrastructure (physical and hardware components), software, people, procedures (manual and automated), and data. Infrastructure and software will be absent, or have less significance, in systems that are exclusively or primarily manual. Many information systems make extensive use of information technology.
12. The information system relevant to financial reporting objectives, which includes the accounting system, consists of the procedures, whether automated or manual, and records established to initiate, record, process, and report entity transactions (as well as events and conditions) and to maintain accountability for the related assets, liabilities, and equity. Transactions may be initiated manually or automatically by programmed procedures. Recording includes identifying and capturing the relevant information for transactions or events. Processing includes functions such as edit and validation, calculation, measurement, valuation, summarization, and reconciliation, whether performed by automated or manual procedures. Reporting relates to the preparation of financial reports as well as other information, in electronic or printed format, that the entity uses in monitoring and other functions. The quality of system-generated information affects management's ability to make appropriate decisions in managing and controlling the entity's activities and to prepare reliable financial reports.
13. Accordingly, an information system encompasses methods and records that—
 - Identify and record all valid transactions.
 - Describe on a timely basis the transactions in sufficient detail to permit proper classification of transactions for financial reporting.

- Measure the value of transactions in a manner that permits recording their proper monetary value in the financial statements.
 - Determine the time period in which transactions occurred to permit recording of transactions in the proper accounting period.
 - Present properly the transactions and related disclosures in the financial statements.
14. Communication involves providing an understanding of individual roles and responsibilities pertaining to internal control over financial reporting. It includes the extent to which personnel understand how their activities in the financial reporting information system relate to the work of others and the means of reporting exceptions to an appropriate higher level within the entity. Open communication channels help ensure that exceptions are reported and acted on.
 15. Communication takes such forms as policy manuals, accounting and financial reporting manuals, and memoranda. Communication also can be made electronically, orally, and through the actions of management.

Application to Small and Midsized Entities

16. Information systems in small or midsized organizations are likely to be less formal than in larger organizations, but their role is just as significant. Smaller entities with active management involvement may not need extensive descriptions of accounting procedures, sophisticated accounting records, or written policies. Communication may be less formal and easier to achieve in a small or midsized company than in a larger enterprise due to the smaller organization's size and fewer levels as well as management's greater visibility and availability.

Monitoring

17. Monitoring is a process that assesses the quality of internal control performance over time. It involves assessing the design and operation of controls on a timely basis and taking necessary corrective actions. This process is accomplished through ongoing monitoring activities, separate evaluations, or a combination of the two.
18. Ongoing monitoring activities are built into the normal recurring activities of an entity and include regular management and supervisory activities. Managers of sales, purchasing, and production at divisional and corporate levels are in touch with operations and may question reports that differ significantly from their knowledge of operations.
19. In many entities, internal auditors or personnel performing similar functions contribute to the monitoring of an entity's activities through separate evaluations. They regularly provide information about the functioning of internal control, focusing considerable attention on evaluating the design and operation of internal control. They communicate information about strengths and weaknesses and recommendations for improving internal control.

20. Monitoring activities may include using information from communications from external parties. Customers implicitly corroborate billing data by paying their invoices or complaining about their charges. In addition, regulators may communicate with the entity concerning matters that affect the functioning of internal control, for example, communications concerning examinations by bank regulatory agencies. Also, management may consider communications relating to internal control from external auditors in performing monitoring activities.

Application to Small and Midsized Entities

21. Ongoing monitoring activities of small and midsized entities are more likely to be informal and are typically performed as a part of the overall management of the entity's operations. Management's close involvement in operations often will identify significant variances from expectations and inaccuracies in financial data.
-

AU Section 322

The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements

(Supersedes SAS No. 9)

Source: SAS No. 65.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending after December 15, 1991, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 The auditor considers many factors in determining the nature, timing, and extent of auditing procedures to be performed in an audit of an entity's financial statements. One of the factors is the existence of an internal audit function.¹ This section provides the auditor with guidance on considering the work of internal auditors and on using internal auditors to provide direct assistance to the auditor in an audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards.

Roles of the Auditor and the Internal Auditors

.02 One of the auditor's responsibilities in an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards is to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to provide a reasonable basis for the opinion on the entity's financial statements. In fulfilling this responsibility, the auditor maintains independence from the entity.²

.03 Internal auditors are responsible for providing analyses, evaluations, assurances, recommendations, and other information to the entity's management and board of directors or to others with equivalent authority and responsibility. To fulfill this responsibility, internal auditors maintain objectivity with respect to the activity being audited.

Obtaining an Understanding of the Internal Audit Function

.04 An important responsibility of the internal audit function is to monitor the performance of an entity's controls. When obtaining an understanding

¹ An *internal audit function* may consist of one or more individuals who perform internal auditing activities within an entity. This section is not applicable to personnel who have the title *internal auditor* but who do not perform internal auditing activities as described herein.

² Although internal auditors are not independent from the entity, The Institute of Internal Auditors' *Standards for the Professional Practice of Internal Auditing* defines internal auditing as an independent appraisal function and requires internal auditors to be independent of the activities they audit. This concept of independence is different from the independence the auditor maintains under the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct.

of internal control,³ the auditor should obtain an understanding of the internal audit function sufficient to identify those internal audit activities that are relevant to planning the audit. The extent of the procedures necessary to obtain this understanding will vary, depending on the nature of those activities.

.05 The auditor ordinarily should make inquiries of appropriate management and internal audit personnel about the internal auditors'—

- a. Organizational status within the entity.
- b. Application of professional standards (see paragraph .11).
- c. Audit plan, including the nature, timing, and extent of audit work.
- d. Access to records and whether there are limitations on the scope of their activities.

In addition, the auditor might inquire about the internal audit function's charter, mission statement, or similar directive from management or the board of directors. This inquiry will normally provide information about the goals and objectives established for the internal audit function.

.06 Certain internal audit activities may not be relevant to an audit of the entity's financial statements. For example, the internal auditors' procedures to evaluate the efficiency of certain management decision-making processes are ordinarily not relevant to a financial statement audit.

.07 Relevant activities are those that provide evidence about the design and effectiveness of controls that pertain to the entity's ability to initiate, record, process, and report financial data consistent with the assertions embodied in the financial statements or that provide direct evidence about potential misstatements of such data. The auditor may find the results of the following procedures helpful in assessing the relevancy of internal audit activities:

- a. Considering knowledge from prior-year audits
- b. Reviewing how the internal auditors allocate their audit resources to financial or operating areas in response to their risk-assessment process
- c. Reading internal audit reports to obtain detailed information about the scope of internal audit activities

[Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.08 If, after obtaining an understanding of the internal audit function, the auditor concludes that the internal auditors' activities are not relevant to the financial statement audit, the auditor does not have to give further consideration to the internal audit function unless the auditor requests direct assistance from the internal auditors as described in paragraph .27. Even if some of the internal auditors' activities are relevant to the audit, the auditor may conclude that it would not be efficient to consider further the work of the internal auditors. If the auditor decides that it would be efficient to consider how the internal auditors' work might affect the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures, the auditor should assess the competence and objectivity of the internal audit function in light of the intended effect of the internal auditors' work on the audit.

³ Section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, describes the procedures the auditor follows to obtain an understanding of internal control and indicates that the internal audit function is part of the entity's monitoring component.

Assessing the Competence and Objectivity of the Internal Auditors

Competence of the Internal Auditors

.09 When assessing the internal auditors' competence, the auditor should obtain or update information from prior years about such factors as—

- Educational level and professional experience of internal auditors.
- Professional certification and continuing education.
- Audit policies, programs, and procedures.
- Practices regarding assignment of internal auditors.
- Supervision and review of internal auditors' activities.
- Quality of working-paper documentation, reports, and recommendations.
- Evaluation of internal auditors' performance.

Objectivity of the Internal Auditors

.10 When assessing the internal auditors' objectivity, the auditor should obtain or update information from prior years about such factors as—

- The organizational status of the internal auditor responsible for the internal audit function, including—
 - Whether the internal auditor reports to an officer of sufficient status to ensure broad audit coverage and adequate consideration of, and action on, the findings and recommendations of the internal auditors.
 - Whether the internal auditor has direct access and reports regularly to the board of directors, the audit committee, or the owner-manager.
 - Whether the board of directors, the audit committee, or the owner-manager oversees employment decisions related to the internal auditor.
- Policies to maintain internal auditors' objectivity about the areas audited, including—
 - Policies prohibiting internal auditors from auditing areas where relatives are employed in important or audit-sensitive positions.
 - Policies prohibiting internal auditors from auditing areas where they were recently assigned or are scheduled to be assigned on completion of responsibilities in the internal audit function.

Assessing Competence and Objectivity

.11 In assessing competence and objectivity, the auditor usually considers information obtained from previous experience with the internal audit function, from discussions with management personnel, and from a recent external quality review, if performed, of the internal audit function's activities. The auditor may also use professional internal auditing standards⁴ as criteria in making the assessment. The auditor also considers the need to test the effec-

⁴ Standards have been developed for the professional practice of internal auditing by The Institute of Internal Auditors and the General Accounting Office. These standards are meant to (a) impart an understanding of the role and responsibilities of internal auditing to all levels of management, boards of directors, public bodies, external auditors, and related professional organizations; (b) permit measurement of internal auditing performance; and (c) improve the practice of internal auditing.

tiveness of the factors described in paragraphs .09 and .10. The extent of such testing will vary in light of the intended effect of the internal auditors' work on the audit. If the auditor determines that the internal auditors are sufficiently competent and objective, the auditor should then consider how the internal auditors' work may affect the audit.

Effect of the Internal Auditors' Work on the Audit

.12 The internal auditors' work may affect the nature, timing, and extent of the audit, including—

- Procedures the auditor performs when obtaining an understanding of the entity's internal control (paragraph .13).
- Procedures the auditor performs when assessing risk (paragraphs .14 through .16).
- Substantive procedures the auditor performs (paragraph .17).

When the work of the internal auditors is expected to affect the audit, the guidance in paragraphs .18 through .26 should be followed for considering the extent of the effect, coordinating audit work with internal auditors, and evaluating and testing the effectiveness of internal auditors' work.

Understanding of Internal Control

.13 The auditor obtains a sufficient understanding of the design of controls relevant to the audit of financial statements to plan the audit and to determine whether they have been placed in operation. Since a primary objective of many internal audit functions is to review, assess, and monitor controls, the procedures performed by the internal auditors in this area may provide useful information to the auditor. For example, internal auditors may develop a flowchart of a new computerized sales and receivables system. The auditor may review the flowchart to obtain information about the design of the related controls. In addition, the auditor may consider the results of procedures performed by the internal auditors on related controls to obtain information about whether the controls have been placed in operation. [Revised, February 1997, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78.]

Risk Assessment

.14 The auditor assesses the risk of material misstatement at both the financial-statement level and the account-balance or class-of-transaction level.

Financial-Statement Level

.15 At the financial-statement level, the auditor makes an overall assessment of the risk of material misstatement. When making this assessment, the auditor should recognize that certain controls may have a pervasive effect on many financial statement assertions. The control environment and accounting system often have a pervasive effect on a number of account balances and transaction classes and therefore can affect many assertions. The auditor's assessment of risk at the financial-statement level often affects the overall audit strategy. The entity's internal audit function may influence this overall assessment of risk as well as the auditor's resulting decisions concerning the nature, timing, and extent of auditing procedures to be performed. For example, if the internal auditors' plan includes relevant audit work at various locations, the auditor may coordinate work with the internal auditors (see paragraph .23) and reduce the number of the entity's locations at which the auditor would otherwise need to perform auditing procedures.

Account-Balance or Class-of-Transaction Level

.16 At the account-balance or class-of-transaction level, the auditor performs procedures to obtain and evaluate evidential matter concerning management's assertions. The auditor assesses control risk for each of the significant assertions and performs tests of controls to support assessments below the maximum. When planning and performing tests of controls, the auditor may consider the results of procedures planned or performed by the internal auditors. For example, the internal auditors' scope may include tests of controls for the completeness of accounts payable. The results of internal auditors' tests may provide appropriate information about the effectiveness of controls and change the nature, timing, and extent of testing the auditor would otherwise need to perform.

Substantive Procedures

.17 Some procedures performed by the internal auditors may provide direct evidence about material misstatements in assertions about specific account balances or classes of transactions. For example, the internal auditors, as part of their work, may confirm certain accounts receivable and observe certain physical inventories. The results of these procedures can provide evidence the auditor may consider in restricting detection risk for the related assertions. Consequently, the auditor may be able to change the timing of the confirmation procedures, the number of accounts receivable to be confirmed, or the number of locations of physical inventories to be observed.

Extent of the Effect of the Internal Auditors' Work

.18 Even though the internal auditors' work may affect the auditor's procedures, the auditor should perform procedures to obtain sufficient, competent, evidential matter to support the auditor's report. Evidence obtained through the auditor's direct personal knowledge, including physical examination, observation, computation, and inspection, is generally more persuasive than information obtained indirectly.⁵

.19 The responsibility to report on the financial statements rests solely with the auditor. Unlike the situation in which the auditor uses the work of other independent auditors,⁶ this responsibility cannot be shared with the internal auditors. Because the auditor has the ultimate responsibility to express an opinion on the financial statements, judgments about assessments of inherent and control risks, the materiality of misstatements, the sufficiency of tests performed, the evaluation of significant accounting estimates, and other matters affecting the auditor's report should always be those of the auditor.

.20 In making judgments about the extent of the effect of the internal auditors' work on the auditor's procedures, the auditor considers—

- a. The materiality of financial statement amounts—that is, account balances or classes of transactions.
- b. The risk (consisting of inherent risk and control risk) of material misstatement of the assertions related to these financial statement amounts.

⁵ See section 326, *Evidential Matter*, paragraph .19c.

⁶ See section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*.

- c. The degree of subjectivity involved in the evaluation of the audit evidence gathered in support of the assertions.⁷

As the materiality of the financial statement amounts increases and either the risk of material misstatement or the degree of subjectivity increases, the need for the auditor to perform his or her own tests of the assertions increases. As these factors decrease, the need for the auditor to perform his or her own tests of the assertions decreases.

.21 For assertions related to material financial statement amounts where the risk of material misstatement or the degree of subjectivity involved in the evaluation of the audit evidence is high, the auditor should perform sufficient procedures to fulfill the responsibilities described in paragraphs .18 and .19. In determining these procedures, the auditor gives consideration to the results of work (either tests of controls or substantive tests) performed by internal auditors on those particular assertions. However, for such assertions, the consideration of internal auditors' work cannot alone reduce audit risk to an acceptable level to eliminate the necessity to perform tests of those assertions directly by the auditor. Assertions about the valuation of assets and liabilities involving significant accounting estimates, and about the existence and disclosure of related-party transactions, contingencies, uncertainties, and subsequent events, are examples of assertions that might have a high risk of material misstatement or involve a high degree of subjectivity in the evaluation of audit evidence.

.22 On the other hand, for certain assertions related to less material financial statement amounts where the risk of material misstatement or the degree of subjectivity involved in the evaluation of the audit evidence is low, the auditor may decide, after considering the circumstances and the results of work (either tests of controls or substantive tests) performed by internal auditors on those particular assertions, that audit risk has been reduced to an acceptable level and that testing of the assertions directly by the auditor may not be necessary. Assertions about the existence of cash, prepaid assets, and fixed-asset additions are examples of assertions that might have a low risk of material misstatement or involve a low degree of subjectivity in the evaluation of audit evidence.

Coordination of the Audit Work With Internal Auditors

.23 If the work of the internal auditors is expected to have an effect on the auditor's procedures, it may be efficient for the auditor and the internal auditors to coordinate their work by—

- Holding periodic meetings.
- Scheduling audit work.
- Providing access to internal auditors' working papers.
- Reviewing audit reports.
- Discussing possible accounting and auditing issues.

Evaluating and Testing the Effectiveness of Internal Auditors' Work

.24 The auditor should perform procedures to evaluate the quality and effectiveness of the internal auditors' work, as described in paragraphs .12

⁷ For some assertions, such as existence and occurrence, the evaluation of audit evidence is generally objective. More subjective evaluation of the audit evidence is often required for other assertions, such as the valuation and disclosure assertions.

through .17, that significantly affects the nature, timing, and extent of the auditor's procedures. The nature and extent of the procedures the auditor should perform when making this evaluation are a matter of judgment depending on the extent of the effect of the internal auditors' work on the auditor's procedures for significant account balances or classes of transactions.

.25 In developing the evaluation procedures, the auditor should consider such factors as whether the internal auditors'—

- Scope of work is appropriate to meet the objectives.
- Audit programs are adequate.
- Working papers adequately document work performed, including evidence of supervision and review.
- Conclusions are appropriate in the circumstances.
- Reports are consistent with the results of the work performed.

.26 In making the evaluation, the auditor should test some of the internal auditors' work related to the significant financial statement assertions. These tests may be accomplished by either (a) examining some of the controls, transactions, or balances that the internal auditors examined or (b) examining similar controls, transactions, or balances not actually examined by the internal auditors. In reaching conclusions about the internal auditors' work, the auditor should compare the results of his or her tests with the results of the internal auditors' work. The extent of this testing will depend on the circumstances and should be sufficient to enable the auditor to make an evaluation of the overall quality and effectiveness of the internal audit work being considered by the auditor.

Using Internal Auditors to Provide Direct Assistance to the Auditor

.27 In performing the audit, the auditor may request direct assistance from the internal auditors. This direct assistance relates to work the auditor specifically requests the internal auditors to perform to complete some aspect of the auditor's work. For example, internal auditors may assist the auditor in obtaining an understanding of internal control or in performing tests of controls or substantive tests, consistent with the guidance about the auditor's responsibility in paragraphs .18 through .22. When direct assistance is provided, the auditor should assess the internal auditors' competence and objectivity (see paragraphs .09 through .11) and supervise,⁸ review, evaluate, and test the work performed by internal auditors to the extent appropriate in the circumstances. The auditor should inform the internal auditors of their responsibilities, the objectives of the procedures they are to perform, and matters that may affect the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures, such as possible accounting and auditing issues. The auditor should also inform the internal auditors that all significant accounting and auditing issues identified during the audit should be brought to the auditor's attention.

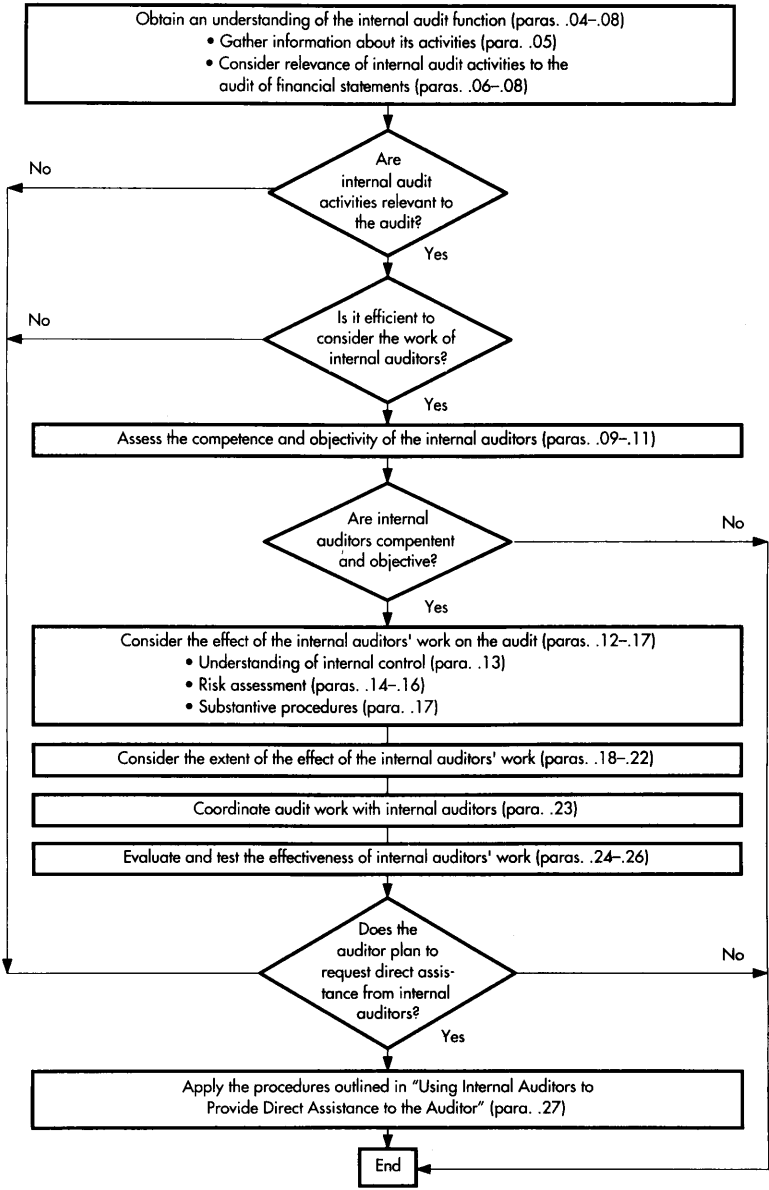
Effective Date

.28 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending after December 15, 1991. Early application of the provisions of this section is permissible.

⁸ See section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, paragraphs .11 through .14, for the type of supervisory procedures to apply.

Appendix

The Auditor’s Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements



AU Section 324

*Service Organizations**

(Supersedes SAS No. 44)

Sources: SAS No. 70; SAS No. 78; SAS No. 88; SAS No. 98.

See section 9324 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for service auditors' reports dated after March 31, 1993, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction and Applicability

.01 This section provides guidance on the factors an independent auditor should consider when auditing the financial statements of an entity that uses a service organization to process certain transactions. This section also provides guidance for independent auditors who issue reports on the processing of transactions by a service organization for use by other auditors.

.02 For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply:

- *User organization*—The entity that has engaged a service organization and whose financial statements are being audited
- *User auditor*—The auditor who reports on the financial statements of the user organization
- *Service organization*—The entity (or segment of an entity) that provides services to a user organization that are part of the user organization's information system
- *Service auditor*—The auditor who reports on controls of a service organization that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements
- *Report on controls placed in operation*—A service auditor's report on a service organization's description of its controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements, on whether such controls were suitably designed to achieve specified control objectives, and on whether they had been placed in operation as of a specific date
- *Report on controls placed in operation and tests of operating effectiveness*—A service auditor's report on a service organization's description of its controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements,¹ on whether such controls were suitably designed to achieve specified control objectives, on whether they had been placed in operation as of a specific

* Title amended, effective December 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.

¹ In this section, a service organization's controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements will be referred to as a service organization's *controls*.

date, and on whether the controls that were tested were operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable, but not absolute, assurance that the related control objectives were achieved during the period specified.

[Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.03 The guidance in this section is applicable to the audit of the financial statements of an entity that obtains services from another organization that are part of its information system. A service organization's services are part of an entity's information system if they affect any of the following:

- The classes of transactions in the entity's operations that are significant to the entity's financial statements
- The procedures, both automated and manual, by which the entity's transactions are initiated, recorded, processed, and reported from their occurrence to their inclusion in the financial statements
- The related accounting records, whether electronic or manual, supporting information, and specific accounts in the entity's financial statements involved in initiating, recording, processing and reporting the entity's transactions
- How the entity's information system captures other events and conditions that are significant to the financial statements
- The financial reporting process used to prepare the entity's financial statements, including significant accounting estimates and disclosures

Service organizations that provide such services include, for example, bank trust departments that invest and service assets for employee benefit plans or for others, mortgage bankers that service mortgages for others, and application service providers that provide packaged software applications and a technology environment that enables customers to process financial and operational transactions. The guidance in this section may also be relevant to situations in which an organization develops, provides, and maintains the software used by client organizations. The provisions of this section are not intended to apply to situations in which the services provided are limited to executing client organization transactions that are specifically authorized by the client, such as the processing of checking account transactions by a bank or the execution of securities transactions by a broker. This section also is not intended to apply to the audit of transactions arising from financial interests in partnerships, corporations, and joint ventures, such as working interests in oil and gas ventures, when proprietary interests are accounted for and reported to interest holders. [As amended, effective December 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88. Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.04 This section is organized into the following sections:

- a. The user auditor's consideration of the effect of the service organization on the user organization's internal control and the availability of evidence to—
 - Obtain the necessary understanding of the user organization's internal control to plan the audit

- Assess control risk at the user organization
- Perform substantive procedures
- b. Considerations in using a service auditor's report
- c. Responsibilities of service auditors

The User Auditor's Consideration of the Effect of the Service Organization on the User Organization's Internal Control and the Availability of Audit Evidence

.05 The user auditor should consider the discussion in paragraphs .06 through .21 when planning and performing the audit of an entity that uses a service organization to process its transactions.

The Effect of Use of a Service Organization on a User Organization's Internal Control

.06 When a user organization uses a service organization, transactions that affect the user organization's financial statements are subjected to controls that are, at least in part, physically and operationally separate from the user organization. The significance of the controls of the service organization to those of the user organization depends on the nature of the services provided by the service organization, primarily the nature and materiality of the transactions it processes for the user organization and the degree of interaction between its activities and those of the user organization. To illustrate how the degree of interaction affects user organization controls, when the user organization initiates transactions and the service organization executes and does the accounting processing of those transactions, there is a high degree of interaction between the activities at the user organization and those at the service organization. In these circumstances, it may be practicable for the user organization to implement effective controls for those transactions. However, when the service organization initiates, executes, and does the accounting processing of the user organization's transactions, there is a lower degree of interaction and it may not be practicable for the user organization to implement effective controls for those transactions. [As amended, effective December 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.]

Planning the Audit

.07 Section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, states that an auditor should obtain an understanding of each of the five components of the entity's internal control sufficient to plan the audit. This understanding may encompass controls placed in operation by the entity and by service organizations whose services are part of the entity's information system. In planning the audit, such knowledge should be used to—

- Identify types of potential misstatements.
- Consider factors that affect the risk of material misstatement.
- Design tests of controls, when applicable. Paragraphs 65 through 69 of SAS No. 55 discuss factors the auditor considers in determining whether to perform tests of controls
- Design substantive tests.

[As amended, effective for service auditor's reports covering descriptions as of or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78. As amended, effective December 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88. Revised, May 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

[.08] [Paragraph deleted by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

.09 Information about the nature of the services provided by a service organization that are part of the user organization's information system and the service organization's controls over those services may be available from a wide variety of sources, such as user manuals, system overviews, technical manuals, the contract between the user organization and the service organization, and reports by service auditors, internal auditors, or regulatory authorities on the service organization's controls. If the services and the service organization's controls over those services are highly standardized, information obtained through the user auditor's prior experience with the service organization may be helpful in planning the audit. [As amended, effective December 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.]

.10 After considering the available information, the user auditor may conclude that he or she has the means to obtain a sufficient understanding of internal control to plan the audit. If the user auditor concludes that information is not available to obtain a sufficient understanding to plan the audit, he or she may consider contacting the service organization, through the user organization, to obtain specific information or request that a service auditor be engaged to perform procedures that will supply the necessary information, or the user auditor may visit the service organization and perform such procedures. If the user auditor is unable to obtain sufficient evidence to achieve his or her audit objectives, the user auditor should qualify his or her opinion or disclaim an opinion on the financial statements because of a scope limitation. [As amended, effective December 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.]

Assessing Control Risk at the User Organization

.11 The user auditor uses his or her understanding of the internal control to assess control risk for the assertions embodied in the account balances and classes of transactions, including those that are affected by the activities of the service organization. In doing so, the user auditor may identify certain user organization controls that, if effective, would permit the user auditor to assess control risk below the maximum for particular assertions. Such controls may be applied at either the user organization or the service organization. The user auditor may conclude that it would be efficient to obtain evidential matter about the operating effectiveness of controls to provide a basis for assessing control risk below the maximum. [Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.12 A service auditor's report on controls placed in operation at the service organization should be helpful in providing a sufficient understanding to plan the audit of the user organization. Such a report, however, is not intended to provide any evidence of the operating effectiveness of the relevant controls that would allow the user auditor to reduce the assessed level of control risk below the maximum. Such evidential matter should be derived from one or more of the following:

- a. Tests of the user organization's controls over the activities of the service organization (for example, the user auditor may test the user organization's independent reperformance of selected items processed by a service organization or test the user organization's reconciliation of output reports with source documents)
- b. A service auditor's report on controls placed in operation and tests of operating effectiveness, or a report on the application of agreed-upon procedures that describes relevant tests of controls
- c. Appropriate tests of controls performed by the user auditor at the service organization

.13 The user organization may establish effective controls over the service organization's activities that may be tested and that may enable the user auditor to reduce the assessed level of control risk below the maximum for some or all of the related assertions. If a user organization, for example, uses a service organization to process its payroll transactions, the user organization may establish controls over the submission and receipt of payroll information that could prevent or detect material misstatements. The user organization might reperform the service organization's payroll calculations on a test basis. In this situation, the user auditor may perform tests of the user organization's controls over payroll processing that would provide a basis for assessing control risk below the maximum for the assertions related to payroll transactions. Alternatively, the user auditor may decide to assess control risk at the maximum level because he or she believes controls are unlikely to pertain to an assertion, are unlikely to be effective, or because he or she believes obtaining evidence about the operating effectiveness of the service organization's controls, such as those over changes in payroll programs, would not be efficient. [Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.14 The user auditor may find that controls relevant to assessing control risk below the maximum for particular assertions are applied only at the service organization. If the user auditor plans to assess control risk below the maximum for those assertions, he or she should evaluate the operating effectiveness of those controls by obtaining a service auditor's report that describes the results of the service auditor's tests of those controls (that is, a report on controls placed in operation and tests of operating effectiveness, or an agreed-upon procedures report)² or by performing tests of controls at the service organization. If the user auditor decides to use a service auditor's report, the user auditor should consider the extent of the evidence provided by the report about the effectiveness of controls intended to prevent or detect material misstatements in the particular assertions. The user auditor remains responsible for evaluating the evidence presented by the service auditor and for determining its effect on the assessment of control risk at the user organization.

.15 The user auditor's assessments of control risk regarding assertions about account balances or classes of transactions are based on the combined evidence provided by the service auditor's report and the user auditor's own procedures. In making these assessments, the user auditor should consider the nature, source, and interrelationships among the evidence, as well as the

² See AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*, for guidance on performing and reporting on agreed-upon procedures engagements. [Footnote added, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

period covered by the tests of controls. The user auditor uses the assessed levels of control risk, as well as his or her understanding of internal control, in determining the nature, timing, and extent of substantive tests for particular assertions.

.16 The guidance in section 319.90 through .99, regarding the auditor's consideration of the sufficiency of evidential matter to support a specific assessed level of control risk is applicable to user auditors considering evidential matter provided by a service auditor's report on controls placed in operation and tests of operating effectiveness. Because the report may be intended to satisfy the needs of several different user auditors, a user auditor should determine whether the specific tests of controls and results in the service auditor's report are relevant to assertions that are significant in the user organization's financial statements. For those tests of controls and results that are relevant, a user auditor should consider whether the nature, timing, and extent of such tests of controls and results provide appropriate evidence about the effectiveness of the controls to support the user auditor's assessed level of control risk. In evaluating these factors, user auditors should also keep in mind that, for certain assumptions, the shorter the period covered by a specific test and the longer the time elapsed since the performance of the test, the less support for control risk reduction the test may provide. [Revised, May 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

Audit Evidence From Substantive Audit Procedures Performed by Service Auditors

.17 Service auditors may be engaged to perform procedures that are substantive in nature for the benefit of user auditors. Such engagements may involve the performance, by the service auditor, of procedures agreed upon by the user organization and its auditor and by the service organization and its auditor. In addition, there may be requirements imposed by governmental authorities or through contractual arrangements whereby service auditors perform designated procedures that are substantive in nature. The results of the application of the required procedures to balances and transactions processed by the service organization may be used by user auditors as part of the evidence necessary to support their opinions.

Considerations in Using a Service Auditor's Report

.18 In considering whether the service auditor's report is satisfactory for his or her purposes, the user auditor should make inquiries concerning the service auditor's professional reputation. Appropriate sources of information concerning the professional reputation of the service auditor are discussed in section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*, paragraph .10a.

.19 In considering whether the service auditor's report is sufficient to meet his or her objectives, the user auditor should give consideration to the guidance in section 543.12. If the user auditor believes that the service auditor's report may not be sufficient to meet his or her objectives, the user auditor may supplement his or her understanding of the service auditor's procedures and conclusions by discussing with the service auditor the scope and results of the service auditor's work. Also, if the user auditor believes it is necessary, he or she may contact the service organization, through the user organization, to request that the service auditor perform agreed-upon procedures at the service organization, or the user auditor may perform such procedures.

.20 When assessing a service organization's controls and how they interact with a user organization's controls, the user auditor may become aware of the existence of reportable conditions. In such circumstances, the user auditor should consider the guidance provided in section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*.

.21 The user auditor should not make reference to the report of the service auditor as a basis, in part, for his or her own opinion on the user organization's financial statements. The service auditor's report is used in the audit, but the service auditor is not responsible for examining any portion of the financial statements as of any specific date or for any specified period. Thus, there cannot be a division of responsibility for the audit of the financial statements.

Responsibilities of Service Auditors

.22 The service auditor is responsible for the representations in his or her report and for exercising due care in the application of procedures that support those representations. Although a service auditor's engagement differs from an audit of financial statements conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, it should be performed in accordance with the general standards and with the relevant fieldwork and reporting standards. Although the service auditor should be independent from the service organization, it is not necessary for the service auditor to be independent from each user organization.

.23 As a result of procedures performed at the service organization, the service auditor may become aware of illegal acts, fraud, or uncorrected errors attributable to the service organization's management or employees that may affect one or more user organizations. The terms *errors*, *fraud*, and *illegal acts* are discussed in section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, and section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*; the discussions therein are relevant to this section. When the service auditor becomes aware of such matters, he or she should determine from the appropriate level of management of the service organization whether this information has been communicated appropriately to affected user organizations, unless those matters are clearly inconsequential. If the management of the service organization has not communicated the information to affected user organizations and is unwilling to do so, the service auditor should inform the service organization's audit committee or others with equivalent authority or responsibility. If the audit committee does not respond appropriately to the service auditor's communication, the service auditor should consider whether to resign from the engagement. The service auditor may wish to consult with his or her attorney in making this decision.

.24 The type of engagement to be performed and the related report to be prepared should be established by the service organization. However, when circumstances permit, discussions between the service organization and the user organizations are advisable to determine the type of report that will be most suitable for the user organizations' needs. This section provides guidance on the two types of reports that may be issued:

- a. Reports on controls placed in operation*—A service auditor's report on a service organization's description of the controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements, on whether such controls were suitably designed to achieve specified control objectives, and on whether they had been placed in operation as of a specific date. Such reports may

be useful in providing a user auditor with an understanding of the controls necessary to plan the audit and to design effective tests of controls and substantive tests at the user organization, but they are not intended to provide the user auditor with a basis for reducing his or her assessments of control risk below the maximum.

- b. *Reports on controls placed in operation and tests of operating effectiveness*—A service auditor's report on a service organization's description of the controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements, on whether such controls were suitably designed to achieve specified control objectives, on whether they had been placed in operation as of a specific date, and on whether the controls that were tested were operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable, but not absolute, assurance that the related control objectives were achieved during the period specified. Such reports may be useful in providing the user auditor with an understanding of the controls necessary to plan the audit and may also provide the user auditor with a basis for reducing his or her assessments of control risk below the maximum.

Reports on Controls Placed in Operation

.25 The information necessary for a report on controls placed in operation ordinarily is obtained through discussions with appropriate service organization personnel and through reference to various forms of documentation, such as system flowcharts and narratives.

.26 After obtaining a description of the relevant controls, the service auditor should determine whether the description provides sufficient information for user auditors to obtain an understanding of those aspects of the service organization's controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control. The description should contain a discussion of the features of the service organization's controls that would have an effect on a user organization's internal control. Such features are relevant when they directly affect the service provided to the user organization. They may include controls within the control environment, risk assessment, control activities, information and communication, and monitoring components of internal control. The control environment may include hiring practices and key areas of authority and responsibility. Risk assessment may include the identification of risks associated with processing specific transactions. Control activities may include policies and procedures over the modification of computer programs and are ordinarily designed to meet specific control objectives. The specific control objectives of the service organization should be set forth in the service organization's description of controls. Information and communication may include ways in which user transactions are initiated and processed. Monitoring may include the involvement of internal auditors. [As amended, effective for service auditor's reports covering descriptions as of or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78.]

.27 Evidence of whether controls have been placed in operation is ordinarily obtained through previous experience with the service organization and through procedures such as inquiry of appropriate management, supervisory, and staff personnel; inspection of service organization documents and records; and observation of service organization activities and operations. For the type of report described in paragraph .24a, these procedures need not be supplemented by tests of the operating effectiveness of the service organization's controls.

.28 Although a service auditor's report on controls placed in operation is as of a specified date, the service auditor should inquire about changes in the service organization's controls that may have occurred before the beginning of fieldwork. If the service auditor believes that the changes would be considered significant by user organizations and their auditors, those changes should be included in the description of the service organization's controls. If the service auditor concludes that the changes would be considered significant by user organization's and their auditors and the changes are not included in the description of the service organization's controls, the service auditor should describe the changes in his or her report. Such changes might include—

- Procedural changes made to accommodate provisions of a new FASB Statement of Financial Accounting Standards.
- Major changes in an application to permit on-line processing.
- Procedural changes to eliminate previously identified deficiencies.

Changes that occurred more than twelve months before the date being reported on normally would not be considered significant, because they generally would not affect user auditors' considerations.

.29 A service auditor's report expressing an opinion on a description of controls placed in operation at a service organization should contain—

- a. A specific reference to the applications, services, products, or other aspects of the service organization covered.
- b. A description of the scope and nature of the service auditor's procedures.
- c. Identification of the party specifying the control objectives.
- d. An indication that the purpose of the service auditor's engagement was to obtain reasonable assurance about whether (1) the service organization's description presents fairly, in all material respects, the aspects of the service organization's controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements, (2) the controls were suitably designed to achieve specified control objectives, and (3) such controls had been placed in operation as of a specific date.
- e. A disclaimer of opinion on the operating effectiveness of the controls.
- f. The service auditor's opinion on whether the description presents fairly, in all material respects, the relevant aspects of the service organization's controls that had been placed in operation as of a specific date and whether, in the service auditor's opinion, the controls were suitably designed to provide reasonable assurance that the specified control objectives would be achieved if those controls were complied with satisfactorily.
- g. A statement of the inherent limitations of the potential effectiveness of controls at the service organization and of the risk of projecting to future periods any evaluation of the description.
- h. Identification of the parties for whom the report is intended.

.30 If the service auditor believes that the description is inaccurate or insufficiently complete for user auditors, the service auditor's report should so state and should contain sufficient detail to provide user auditors with an appropriate understanding.

.31 It may become evident to the service auditor, when considering the service organization's description of controls placed in operation, that the system was designed with the assumption that certain controls would be implemented by the user organization. If the service auditor is aware of the need for such complementary user organization controls, these should be delineated in the description of controls. If the application of controls by user organizations is necessary to achieve the stated control objectives, the service auditor's report should be modified to include the phrase "and user organizations applied the controls contemplated in the design of the Service Organization's controls" following the words "complied with satisfactorily" in the scope and opinion paragraphs.

.32 The service auditor should consider conditions that come to his or her attention that, in the service auditor's judgment, represent significant deficiencies in the design or operation of the service organization's controls that preclude the service auditor from obtaining reasonable assurance that specified control objectives would be achieved. The service auditor should also consider whether any other information, irrespective of specified control objectives, has come to his or her attention that causes him or her to conclude (a) that design deficiencies exist that could adversely affect the ability to initiate, record, process, or report financial data to user organizations without error, and (b) that user organizations would not generally be expected to have controls in place to mitigate such design deficiencies. [Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.33 The description of controls and control objectives required for these reports may be prepared by the service organization. If the service auditor prepares the description of controls and control objectives, the representations in the description remain the responsibility of the service organization.

.34 For the service auditor to express an opinion on whether the controls were suitably designed to achieve the specified control objectives, it is necessary that—

- a. The service organization identify and appropriately describe such control objectives and the relevant controls.
- b. The service auditor consider the linkage of the controls to the stated control objectives.
- c. The service auditor obtain sufficient evidence to reach an opinion.

.35 The control objectives may be designated by the service organization or by outside parties such as regulatory authorities, a user group, or others. When the control objectives are not established by outside parties, the service auditor should be satisfied that the control objectives, as set forth by the service organization, are reasonable in the circumstances and consistent with the service organization's contractual obligations.

.36 The service auditor's report should state whether the controls were suitably designed to achieve the specified control objectives. The report should not state whether they were suitably designed to achieve objectives beyond the specifically identified control objectives.

.37 The service auditor's opinion on whether the controls were suitably designed to achieve the specified control objectives is not intended to provide evidence of operating effectiveness or to provide the user auditor with a basis for concluding that control risk may be assessed below the maximum.

.38 The following is a sample report on controls placed in operation at a service organization. The report should have, as an attachment, a description of the service organization's controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements. This report is illustrative only and should be modified as appropriate to suit the circumstances of individual engagements.

To XYZ Service Organization:

We have examined the accompanying description of controls related to the ____ application of XYZ Service Organization. Our examination included procedures to obtain reasonable assurance about whether (1) the accompanying description presents fairly, in all material respects, the aspects of XYZ Service Organization's controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements, (2) the controls included in the description were suitably designed to achieve the control objectives specified in the description, if those controls were complied with satisfactorily,³ and (3) such controls had been placed in operation as of _____. The control objectives were specified by _____. Our examination was performed in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and included those procedures we considered necessary in the circumstances to obtain a reasonable basis for rendering our opinion.

We did not perform procedures to determine the operating effectiveness of controls for any period. Accordingly, we express no opinion on the operating effectiveness of any aspects of XYZ Service Organization's controls, individually or in the aggregate.

In our opinion, the accompanying description of the aforementioned application presents fairly, in all material respects, the relevant aspects of XYZ Service Organization's controls that had been placed in operation as of _____. Also, in our opinion, the controls, as described, are suitably designed to provide reasonable assurance that the specified control objectives would be achieved if the described controls were complied with satisfactorily.

The description of controls at XYZ Service Organization is as of _____ and any projection of such information to the future is subject to the risk that, because of change, the description may no longer portray the controls in existence. The potential effectiveness of specific controls at the Service Organization is subject to inherent limitations and, accordingly, errors or fraud may occur and not be detected. Furthermore, the projection of any conclusions, based on our findings, to future periods is subject to the risk that changes may alter the validity of such conclusions.

This report is intended solely for use by the management of XYZ Service Organization, its customers, and the independent auditors of its customers _____.

.39 If the service auditor concludes that the description is inaccurate or insufficiently complete for user auditors, the service auditor should so state in an explanatory paragraph preceding the opinion paragraph. An example of such an explanatory paragraph follows:

³ If the application of controls by user organizations is necessary to achieve the stated control objectives, the service auditor's report should be modified to include the phrase "and user organizations applied the controls contemplated in the design of XYZ Service Organization's controls" following the words "complied with satisfactorily" in the scope and opinion paragraphs. [Footnote renumbered, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

The accompanying description states that XYZ Service Organization uses operator identification numbers and passwords to prevent unauthorized access to the system. Based on inquiries of staff personnel and inspections of activities, we determined that such procedures are employed in Applications A and B but are not required to access the system in Applications C and D.

In addition, the first sentence of the opinion paragraph would be modified to read as follows:

In our opinion, except for the matter referred to in the preceding paragraph, the accompanying description of the aforementioned application presents fairly, in all material respects, the relevant aspects of XYZ Service Organization's controls that had been placed in operation as of ____.

.40 If, after applying the criteria in paragraph .32, the service auditor concludes that there are significant deficiencies in the design or operation of the service organization's controls, the service auditor should report those conditions in an explanatory paragraph preceding the opinion paragraph. An example of an explanatory paragraph describing a significant deficiency in the design or operation of the service organization's controls follows:

As discussed in the accompanying description, from time to time the Service Organization makes changes in application programs to correct deficiencies or to enhance capabilities. The procedures followed in determining whether to make changes, in designing the changes, and in implementing them do not include review and approval by authorized individuals who are independent from those involved in making the changes. There are also no specified requirements to test such changes or provide test results to an authorized reviewer prior to implementing the changes.

In addition, the second sentence of the opinion paragraph would be modified to read as follows:

Also in our opinion, except for the deficiency referred to in the preceding paragraph, the controls, as described, are suitably designed to provide reasonable assurance that the specified control objectives would be achieved if the described controls were complied with satisfactorily.

Reports on Controls Placed in Operation and Tests of Operating Effectiveness

Paragraphs .41 through .56 repeat some of the information contained in paragraphs .25 through .40 to provide readers with a comprehensive, stand-alone presentation of the relevant considerations for each type of report.

.41 The information necessary for a report on controls placed in operation and tests of operating effectiveness ordinarily is obtained through discussions with appropriate service organization personnel, through reference to various forms of documentation, such as system flowcharts and narratives, and through the performance of tests of controls. Evidence of whether controls have been placed in operation is ordinarily obtained through previous experience with the service organization and through procedures such as inquiry of appropriate management, supervisory, and staff personnel; inspection of service organization documents and records; and observation of service organization activities and operations. The service auditor applies tests of controls to determine whether specific controls are operating with sufficient effectiveness to achieve specified control objectives. Section 350, *Audit Sampling*, provides guidance on the application and evaluation of audit sampling in performing tests of controls.

.42 After obtaining a description of the relevant controls, the service auditor should determine whether the description provides sufficient information for user auditors to obtain an understanding of those aspects of the service organization's controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control. The description should contain a discussion of the features of the service organization's controls that would have an effect on a user organization's internal control. Such features are relevant when they directly affect the service provided to the user organization. They may include controls within the control environment, risk assessment, control activities, information and communication, and monitoring components of internal control. The control environment may include hiring practices and key areas of authority and responsibility. Risk assessment may include the identification of risks associated with processing specific transactions. Control activities may include policies and procedures over the modification of computer programs and are ordinarily designed to meet specific control objectives. The specific control objectives of the service organization should be set forth in the service organization's description of controls. Information and communication may include ways in which user transactions are initiated and processed. Monitoring may include the involvement of internal auditors. [As amended, effective for service auditor's reports covering descriptions as of or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78.]

.43 The service auditor should inquire about changes in the service organization's controls that may have occurred before the beginning of field-work. If the service auditor believes the changes would be considered significant by user organizations and their auditors, those changes should be included in the description of the service organization's controls. If the service auditor concludes that the changes would be considered significant by user organizations and their auditors and the changes are not included in the description of the service organization's controls, the service auditor should describe the changes in his or her report. Such changes might include—

- Procedural changes made to accommodate provisions of a new FASB Statement of Financial Accounting Standards.
- Major changes in an application to permit on-line processing.
- Procedural changes to eliminate previously identified deficiencies.

Changes that occurred more than twelve months before the date being reported on normally would not be considered significant, because they generally would not affect user auditors' considerations.

.44 A service auditor's report expressing an opinion on a description of controls placed in operation at a service organization and tests of operating effectiveness should contain—

- a. A specific reference to the applications, services, products, or other aspects of the service organization covered.
- b. A description of the scope and nature of the service auditor's procedures.
- c. Identification of the party specifying the control objectives.
- d. An indication that the purpose of the service auditor's engagement was to obtain reasonable assurance about whether (1) the service organization's description presents fairly, in all material respects, the aspects of the service organization's controls that may be relevant

to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements, (2) the controls were suitably designed to achieve specified control objectives, and (3) such controls had been placed in operation as of a specific date.

- e. The service auditor's opinion on whether the description presents fairly, in all material respects, the relevant aspects of the service organization's controls that had been placed in operation as of a specific date and whether, in the service auditor's opinion, the controls were suitably designed to provide reasonable assurance that the specified control objectives would be achieved if those controls were complied with satisfactorily.
- f. A reference to a description of tests of specific service organization controls designed to obtain evidence about the operating effectiveness of those controls in achieving specified control objectives. The description should include the controls that were tested, the control objectives the controls were intended to achieve, the tests applied, and the results of the tests. The description should include an indication of the nature, timing, and extent of the tests, as well as sufficient detail to enable user auditors to determine the effect of such tests on user auditors' assessments of control risk. To the extent that the service auditor identified causative factors for exceptions, determined the current status of corrective actions, or obtained other relevant qualitative information about exceptions noted, such information should be provided.
- g. A statement of the period covered by the service auditor's report on the operating effectiveness of the specific controls tested.
- h. The service auditor's opinion on whether the controls that were tested were operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable, but not absolute, assurance that the related control objectives were achieved during the period specified.
- i. When all of the control objectives listed in the description of controls placed in operation are not covered by tests of operating effectiveness, a statement that the service auditor does not express an opinion on control objectives not listed in the description of tests performed at the service organization.
- j. A statement that the relative effectiveness and significance of specific service organization controls and their effect on assessments of control risk at user organizations are dependent on their interaction with the controls and other factors present at individual user organizations.
- k. A statement that the service auditor has performed no procedures to evaluate the effectiveness of controls at individual user organizations.
- l. A statement of the inherent limitations of the potential effectiveness of controls at the service organization and of the risk of projecting to the future any evaluation of the description or any conclusions about the effectiveness of controls in achieving control objectives.
- m. Identification of the parties for whom the report is intended.

.45 If the service auditor believes that the description is inaccurate or insufficiently complete for user auditors, the service auditor's report should so state and should contain sufficient detail to provide user auditors with an appropriate understanding.

.46 It may become evident to the service auditor, when considering the service organization's description of controls placed in operation, that the system was designed with the assumption that certain controls would be implemented by the user organization. If the service auditor is aware of the need for such complementary user organization controls, these should be delineated in the description of controls. If the application of controls by user organizations is necessary to achieve the stated control objectives, the service auditor's report should be modified to include the phrase "and user organizations applied the controls contemplated in the design of the Service Organization's controls" following the words "complied with satisfactorily" in the scope and opinion paragraphs. Similarly, if the operating effectiveness of controls at the service organization is dependent on the application of controls at user organizations, this should be delineated in the description of tests performed.

.47 The service auditor should consider conditions that come to his or her attention that, in the service auditor's judgment, represent significant deficiencies in the design or operation of the service organization's controls that preclude the service auditor from obtaining reasonable assurance that specified control objectives would be achieved. The service auditor should also consider whether any other information, irrespective of specified control objectives, has come to his or her attention that causes him or her to conclude (a) that design deficiencies exist that could adversely affect the ability to initiate, record, process, or report financial data to user organizations without error, and (b) that user organizations would not generally be expected to have controls in place to mitigate such design deficiencies. [Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.48 The description of controls and control objectives required for these reports may be prepared by the service organization. If the service auditor prepares the description of controls and control objectives, the representations in the description remain the responsibility of the service organization.

.49 For the service auditor to express an opinion on whether the controls were suitably designed to achieve the specified control objectives, it is necessary that—

- a. The service organization identify and appropriately describe such control objectives and the relevant controls.
- b. The service auditor consider the linkage of the controls to the stated control objectives.
- c. The service auditor obtain sufficient evidence to reach an opinion.

.50 The control objectives may be designated by the service organization or by outside parties such as regulatory authorities, a user group, or others. When the control objectives are not established by outside parties, the service auditor should be satisfied that the control objectives, as set forth by the service organization, are reasonable in the circumstances and consistent with the service organization's contractual obligations.

.51 The service auditor's report should state whether the controls were suitably designed to achieve the specified control objectives. The report should not state whether they were suitably designed to achieve objectives beyond the specifically identified control objectives.

.52 The service auditor's opinion on whether the controls were suitably designed to achieve the specified control objectives is not intended to provide

evidence of operating effectiveness or to provide the user auditor with a basis for concluding that control risk may be assessed below the maximum. Evidence that may enable the user auditor to conclude that control risk may be assessed below the maximum may be obtained from the results of specific tests of operating effectiveness.

.53 The management of the service organization specifies whether all or selected applications and control objectives will be covered by the tests of operating effectiveness. The service auditor determines which controls are, in his or her judgment, necessary to achieve the control objectives specified by management. The service auditor then determines the nature, timing, and extent of the tests of controls needed to evaluate operating effectiveness. Testing should be applied to controls in effect throughout the period covered by the report. To be useful to user auditors, the report should ordinarily cover a minimum reporting period of six months.

.54 The following is a sample report on controls placed in operation at a service organization and tests of operating effectiveness. It should be assumed that the report has two attachments: (a) a description of the service organization's controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements and (b) a description of controls for which tests of operating effectiveness were performed, the control objectives the controls were intended to achieve, the tests applied, and the results of those tests. This report is illustrative only and should be modified as appropriate to suit the circumstances of individual engagements.

To XYZ Service Organization:

We have examined the accompanying description of controls related to the ____ application of XYZ Service Organization. Our examination included procedures to obtain reasonable assurance about whether (1) the accompanying description presents fairly, in all material respects, the aspects of XYZ Service Organization's controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements, (2) the controls included in the description were suitably designed to achieve the control objectives specified in the description, if those controls were complied with satisfactorily,⁴ and (3) such controls had been placed in operation as of _____. The control objectives were specified by _____. Our examination was performed in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and included those procedures we considered necessary in the circumstances to obtain a reasonable basis for rendering our opinion.

In our opinion, the accompanying description of the aforementioned application presents fairly, in all material respects, the relevant aspects of XYZ Service Organization's controls that had been placed in operation as of _____. Also, in our opinion, the controls, as described, are suitably designed to provide reasonable assurance that the specified control objectives would be achieved if the described controls were complied with satisfactorily.

In addition to the procedures we considered necessary to render our opinion as expressed in the previous paragraph, we applied tests to specific controls, listed in Schedule X, to obtain evidence about their effectiveness in meeting the

⁴ If the application of controls by user organizations is necessary to achieve the stated control objectives, the service auditor's report should be modified to include the phrase "and user organizations applied the controls contemplated in the design of XYZ Service Organization's controls" following the words "complied with satisfactorily" in the scope and opinion paragraphs. [Footnote renumbered, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

control objectives, described in Schedule X, during the period from ____ to _____. The specific controls and the nature, timing, extent, and results of the tests are listed in Schedule X. This information has been provided to user organizations of XYZ Service Organization and to their auditors to be taken into consideration, along with information about the internal control at user organizations, when making assessments of control risk for user organizations. In our opinion the controls that were tested, as described in Schedule X, were operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable, but not absolute, assurance that the control objectives specified in Schedule X were achieved during the period from ____ to _____. [However, the scope of our engagement did not include tests to determine whether control objectives not listed in Schedule X were achieved; accordingly, we express no opinion on the achievement of control objectives not included in Schedule X.]⁵

The relative effectiveness and significance of specific controls at XYZ Service Organization and their effect on assessments of control risk at user organizations are dependent on their interaction with the controls and other factors present at individual user organizations. We have performed no procedures to evaluate the effectiveness of controls at individual user organizations.

The description of controls at XYZ Service Organization is as of ____, and information about tests of the operating effectiveness of specific controls covers the period from ____ to _____. Any projection of such information to the future is subject to the risk that, because of change, the description may no longer portray the controls in existence. The potential effectiveness of specific controls at the Service Organization is subject to inherent limitations and, accordingly, errors or fraud may occur and not be detected. Furthermore, the projection of any conclusions, based on our findings, to future periods is subject to the risk that changes may alter the validity of such conclusions.

This report is intended solely for use by the management of XYZ Service Organization, its customers, and the independent auditors of its customers.

.55 If the service auditor concludes that the description is inaccurate or insufficiently complete for user auditors, the service auditor should so state in an explanatory paragraph preceding the opinion paragraph. An example of such an explanatory paragraph follows:

The accompanying description states that XYZ Service Organization uses operator identification numbers and passwords to prevent unauthorized access to the system. Based on inquiries of staff personnel and inspection of activities, we determined that such procedures are employed in Applications A and B but are not required to access the system in Applications C and D.

In addition, the first sentence of the opinion paragraph would be modified to read as follows:

In our opinion, except for the matter referred to in the preceding paragraph, the accompanying description of the aforementioned application presents fairly, in all material respects, the relevant aspects of XYZ Service Organization's controls that had been placed in operation as of _____.

⁵ This sentence should be added when all of the control objectives listed in the description of controls placed in operation are not covered by the tests of operating effectiveness. This sentence would be omitted when all of the control objectives listed in the description of controls placed in operation are included in the tests of operating effectiveness. [Footnote renumbered, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

.56 If, after applying the criteria in paragraph .47, the service auditor concludes that there are significant deficiencies in the design or operation of the service organization's controls, the service auditor should report those conditions in an explanatory paragraph preceding the opinion paragraph. An example of an explanatory paragraph describing a significant deficiency in the design or operation of the service organization's controls follows:

As discussed in the accompanying description, from time to time the Service Organization makes changes in application programs to correct deficiencies or to enhance capabilities. The procedures followed in determining whether to make changes, in designing the changes, and in implementing them do not include review and approval by authorized individuals who are independent from those involved in making the changes. There are also no specified requirements to test such changes or provide test results to an authorized reviewer prior to implementing the changes.

In addition, the second sentence of the opinion paragraph would be modified to read as follows:

Also in our opinion, except for the deficiency referred to in the preceding paragraph, the controls, as described, are suitably designed to provide reasonable assurance that the related control objectives would be achieved if the described controls were complied with satisfactorily.

Responsibilities of Service Organizations and Service Auditors With Respect to Subsequent Events

.57 Changes in a service organization's controls that could affect user organizations' information systems may occur subsequent to the period covered by the service auditor's report but before the date of the service auditor's report. These occurrences are referred to as subsequent events. A service auditor should consider information about two types of subsequent events that come to his or her attention. [Paragraph added, effective for reports issued on or after January 1, 2003, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.58 The first type consists of events that provide additional information about conditions that existed during the period covered by the service auditor's report. This information should be used by the service auditor in determining whether controls at the service organization that could affect user organizations' information systems were placed in operation, suitably designed, and, if applicable, operating effectively during the period covered by the engagement. [Paragraph added, effective for reports issued on or after January 1, 2003, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.59 The second type consists of those events that provide information about conditions that arose subsequent to the period covered by the service auditor's report that are of such a nature and significance that their disclosure is necessary to prevent users from being misled. This type of information ordinarily will not affect the service auditor's report if the information is adequately disclosed by management in a section of the report containing "Other Information Provided by the Service Organization." If this information is not disclosed by the service organization, the service auditor should disclose it in a section of the report containing "Other Information Provided by the Service Auditor" and/or in the service auditor's report. [Paragraph added, effective for reports issued on or after January 1, 2003, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.60 Although a service auditor has no responsibility to detect subsequent events, the service auditor should inquire of management as to whether it is aware of any subsequent events through the date of the service auditor's report that would have a significant effect on user organizations. In addition, a service auditor should obtain a representation from management regarding subsequent events. [Paragraph added, effective for reports issued on or after January 1, 2003, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

Written Representations of the Service Organization's Management

.61 Regardless of the type of report issued, the service auditor should obtain written representations from the service organization's management that—

- Acknowledge management's responsibility for establishing and maintaining appropriate controls relating to the processing of transactions for user organizations.
- Acknowledge the appropriateness of the specified control objectives.
- State that the description of controls presents fairly, in all material respects, the aspects of the service organization's controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control.
- State that the controls, as described, had been placed in operation as of a specific date.
- State that management believes its controls were suitably designed to achieve the specified control objectives.
- State that management has disclosed to the service auditor any significant changes in controls that have occurred since the service organization's last examination.
- State that management has disclosed to the service auditor any illegal acts, fraud, or uncorrected errors attributable to the service organization's management or employees that may affect one or more user organizations.
- State that management has disclosed to the service auditor all design deficiencies in controls of which it is aware, including those for which management believes the cost of corrective action may exceed the benefits.
- State that management has disclosed to the service auditor any subsequent events that would have a significant effect on user organizations.

If the scope of the work includes tests of operating effectiveness, the service auditor should obtain a written representation from the service organization's management stating that management has disclosed to the service auditor all instances, of which it is aware, when controls have not operated with sufficient effectiveness to achieve the specified control objectives. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for reports issued on or after January 1, 2003, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

Reporting on Substantive Procedures

.62 The service auditor may be requested to apply substantive procedures to user transactions or assets at the service organization. In such circumstances, the service auditor may make specific reference in his or her report to

having carried out the designated procedures or may provide a separate report in accordance with AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*. Either form of reporting should include a description of the nature, timing, extent, and results of the procedures in sufficient detail to be useful to user auditors in deciding whether to use the results as evidence to support their opinions. [Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10. Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

Effective Date

.63 This section is effective for service auditors' reports dated after March 31, 1993. Earlier application of this section is encouraged. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

AU Section 9324

Service Organizations: Auditing Interpretations of Section 324

1. Describing Tests of Operating Effectiveness and the Results of Such Tests

.01 Question—Paragraph .44f of section 324, *Service Organizations*, specifies the elements that should be included in a description of tests of operating effectiveness, which is part of a report on controls placed in operation and tests of operating effectiveness. Section 324.44f states:

“...The description should include the controls that were tested, the control objectives the controls were intended to achieve, the tests applied and the results of the tests. The description should include an indication of the nature, timing, and extent of the tests, as well as sufficient detail to enable user auditors to determine the effect of such tests on user auditors’ assessments of control risk. To the extent that the service auditor identified causative factors for exceptions, determined the current status of corrective actions, or obtained other relevant qualitative information about exceptions noted, such information should be provided.”

When a service auditor performs an engagement that includes tests of operating effectiveness, what information and how much detail should be included in the description of the “tests applied” and the “results of the tests”?

.02 Interpretation—In all cases, for each control objective tested, the description of tests of operating effectiveness should include all of the elements listed in section 324.44f, whether or not the service auditor concludes that the control objective has been achieved. The description should provide sufficient information to enable user auditors to assess control risk for financial statement assertions affected by the service organization. The description need not be a duplication of the service auditor’s detailed audit program, which in some cases would make the report too voluminous for user auditors and would provide more than the required level of detail.

.03 In describing the nature, timing, and extent of the tests applied, the service auditor also should indicate whether the items tested represent a sample or all of the items in the population, but need not indicate the size of the population. In describing the results of the tests, the service auditor should include exceptions and other information that in the service auditor’s judgment could be relevant to user auditors. Such exceptions and other information should be included for each control objective, whether or not the service auditor concludes that the control objective has been achieved. When exceptions that could be relevant to user auditors are noted, the description also should include the following information:

- The size of the sample, when sampling has been used
- The number of exceptions noted
- The nature of the exceptions

If no exceptions or other information that could be relevant to user auditors are identified by the tests, the service auditor should indicate that finding (for example, "No relevant exceptions noted").

[Issue Date: April, 1995.]

2. Service Organizations That Use the Services of Other Service Organizations (Subservice Organizations)

.04 Question—A service organization may use the services of another service organization, such as a bank trust department that uses an independent computer processing service organization to perform its data processing. In this situation, the bank trust department is a service organization and the computer processing service organization is considered a subservice organization. How are a user auditor's and a service auditor's procedures affected when a service organization uses a subservice organization?

.05 Interpretation—When a service organization uses a subservice organization, the user auditor should determine whether the processing performed by the subservice organization affects assertions in the user organization's financial statements and whether those assertions are significant to the user organization's financial statements. To plan the audit and assess control risk, a user auditor may need to consider the controls at both the service organization and the subservice organization. Paragraphs .06 through .17 of section 324, *Service Organizations*, provide guidance to user auditors on considering the effect of a service organization on a user organization's internal control. Although section 324.06-.17 do not specifically refer to subservice organizations, when a subservice organization provides services to a service organization, the guidance in these paragraphs should be interpreted to include the subservice organization. For example, in situations where subservice organizations are used, the interaction between the user organization and the service organization described in section 324.06 would be expanded to include the interaction between the user organization, the service organization and the subservice organization.

.06 Similarly, a service auditor engaged to examine the controls of a service organization and issue a service auditor's report may need to consider functions performed by the subservice organization and the effect of the subservice organization's controls on the service organization.

.07 The degree of interaction and the nature and materiality of the transactions processed by the service organization and the subservice organization are the most important factors to consider in determining the significance of the subservice organization's controls to the user organization's internal control. Section 324.11-.16 describe how a user auditor's assessment of control risk is affected when a user organization uses a service organization. When a subservice organization is involved, the user auditor may need to consider activities at both the service organization and the subservice organization in applying the guidance in these paragraphs.

.08 Question—How does a user auditor obtain information about controls at a subservice organization?

.09 Interpretation—If a user auditor concludes that he or she needs information about the subservice organization to plan the audit or to assess control risk, the user auditor (a) may contact the service organization through

the user organization and may contact the subservice organization either through the user organization or the service organization to obtain specific information or (b) may request that a service auditor be engaged to perform procedures that will supply the necessary information. Alternatively, the user auditor may visit the service organization or subservice organization and perform such procedures.

.10 Question—When a service organization uses a subservice organization, what information about the subservice organization should be included in the service organization's description of controls?

.11 Interpretation—A service organization's description of controls should include a description of the functions and nature of the processing performed by the subservice organization in sufficient detail for user auditors to understand the significance of the subservice organization's functions to the processing of the user organizations' transactions. Ordinarily, disclosure of the identity of the subservice organization is not required. However, if the service organization determines that the identity of the subservice organization would be relevant to user organizations, the name of the subservice organization may be included in the description. The purpose of the description of the functions and nature of the processing performed by the subservice organization is to alert user organizations and their auditors to the fact that another entity (that is, the subservice organization) is involved in the processing of the user organizations' transactions and to summarize the functions the subservice organization performs.

.12 When a subservice organization performs services for a service organization, there are two alternative methods of presenting the description of controls. The service organization determines which method will be used.

- a. *The Carve-Out Method*—The subservice organization's relevant control objectives and controls are excluded from the description and from the scope of the service auditor's engagement. The service organization states in the description that the subservice organization's control objectives and related controls are omitted from the description and that the control objectives in the report include only the objectives the service organization's controls are intended to achieve.
- b. *The Inclusive Method*—The subservice organization's relevant controls are included in the description and in the scope of the engagement. The description should clearly differentiate between controls of the service organization and controls of the subservice organization. The set of control objectives includes all of the objectives a user auditor would expect both the service organization and the subservice organization to achieve. To accomplish this, the service organization should coordinate the preparation and presentation of the description of controls with the subservice organization.

In either method, the service organization includes in its description of controls a description of the functions and nature of the processing performed by the subservice organization, as set forth in paragraph .11.

.13 If the functions and processing performed by the subservice organization are significant to the processing of user organization transactions, and the service organization does not disclose the existence of the subservice organization and the functions it performs, the service auditor may need to issue a qualified or adverse opinion as to the fairness of the presentation of the description of controls.

.14 Question—How is the service auditor's report affected by the method of presentation selected?

.15 Interpretation—If the service organization has adopted the carve-out method, the service auditor should modify the scope paragraph of the service auditor's report to briefly summarize the functions and nature of the processing performed by the subservice organization. This summary ordinarily would be briefer than the information provided by the service organization in its description of the functions and nature of the processing performed by the subservice organization. The service auditor should include a statement in the scope paragraph of the service auditor's report indicating that the description of controls includes only the control objectives and related controls of the service organization; accordingly, the service auditor's examination does not extend to controls at the subservice organization.

.16 An example of the scope paragraph of a service auditor's report using the carve-out method is presented below. Additional or modified report language is shown in ***boldface italics***.

Sample Scope Paragraph of a Service Auditor's Report Using the Carve-Out Method

Independent Service Auditor's Report

To the Board of Directors of Example Trust Company:

We have examined the accompanying description of the controls of Example Trust Company applicable to the processing of transactions for users of the Institutional Trust Division. Our examination included procedures to obtain reasonable assurance about whether (1) the accompanying description presents fairly, in all material respects, the aspects of Example Trust Company's controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements; (2) the controls included in the description were suitably designed to achieve the control objectives specified in the description, if those controls were complied with satisfactorily, and user organizations applied the controls contemplated in the design of Example Trust Company's controls; and (3) such controls had been placed in operation as of June 30, 20XX. ***Example Trust Company uses a computer processing service organization for all of its computerized application processing. The accompanying description includes only those control objectives and related controls of Example Trust Company and does not include control objectives and related controls of the computer processing service organization. Our examination did not extend to controls of the computer processing service organization.*** The control objectives were specified by the management of Example Trust Company. Our examination was performed in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and included those procedures we considered necessary in the circumstances to obtain a reasonable basis for rendering our opinion.

[The remainder of the report is the same as the standard service auditor's report illustrated in section 324.38 and .54.]

.17 If the service organization has used the inclusive method, the service auditor should perform procedures comparable to those described in section 324.12. Such procedures may include performing tests of the service organization's controls over the activities of the subservice organization or performing

procedures at the subservice organization. If the service auditor will be performing procedures at the subservice organization, the service organization should arrange for such procedures. The service auditor should recognize that the subservice organization generally is not the client for the engagement. Accordingly, in these circumstances the service auditor should determine whether it will be possible to obtain the required evidence to support the portion of the opinion covering the subservice organization and whether it will be possible to obtain an appropriate letter of representations regarding the subservice organization's controls.

.18 An example of a service auditor's report using the inclusive method is presented below. Additional or modified report language is shown in ***boldface italics***.

Sample Service Auditor's Report Using the Inclusive Method

Independent Service Auditor's Report

To the Board of Directors of Example Trust Company:

We have examined the accompanying description of the controls of Example Trust Company ***and Computer Processing Service Organization, an independent service organization that provides computer processing services to Example Trust Company***, applicable to the processing of transactions for users of the Institutional Trust Division. Our examination included procedures to obtain reasonable assurance about whether (1) the accompanying description presents fairly, in all material respects, the aspects of Example Trust Company's ***and Computer Processing Service Organization's*** controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control as it relates to an audit of financial statements; (2) the controls included in the description were suitably designed to achieve the control objectives specified in the description, if those controls were complied with satisfactorily, and user organizations applied the controls contemplated in the design of Example Trust Company's controls; and (3) the controls had been placed in operation as of June 30, 20XX. The control objectives were specified by the management of Example Trust Company. Our examination was performed in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and included those procedures we considered necessary in the circumstances to obtain a reasonable basis for rendering our opinion.

In our opinion, the accompanying description of the aforementioned controls presents fairly, in all material respects, the relevant aspects of Example Trust Company's ***and Computer Processing Service Organization's*** controls that had been placed in operation as of June 30, 20XX. Also, in our opinion, the controls, as described, are suitably designed to provide reasonable assurance that the specified control objectives would be achieved if the described controls were complied with satisfactorily and user organizations applied the controls contemplated in the design of Example Trust Company's controls.

In addition to the procedures we considered necessary to render our opinion as expressed in the previous paragraph, we applied tests to specific controls, listed in Schedule X to obtain evidence about their effectiveness in meeting the control objectives, described in Schedule X, during the period from January 1, 20XX, to June 30, 20XX. The specific controls and the nature, timing, extent, and results of the tests are listed in Schedule X. This information has been provided to user organizations of Example Trust Company and to their auditors to be taken into consideration, along with information about internal control at user organizations, when making assessments of control risk for user organizations.

In our opinion the controls that were tested, as described in Schedule X, were operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable, but not absolute, assurance that the control objectives specified in Schedule X were achieved during the period from January 1, 20XX, to June 30, 20XX.

The relative effectiveness and significance of specific controls at Example Trust Company *and Computer Processing Service Organization*, and their effect on assessments of control risk at user organizations are dependent on their interaction with the controls and other factors present at individual user organizations. We have performed no procedures to evaluate the effectiveness of controls at individual user organizations.

The description of controls at Example Trust Company *and Computer Processing Service Organization* is as of June 30, 20XX, and information about tests of the operating effectiveness of specific controls covers the period from January 1, 20XX, to June 30, 20XX. Any projection of such information to the future is subject to the risk that, because of change, the description may no longer portray the controls in existence. The potential effectiveness of specific controls at the Service Organization *and Computer Processing Service Organization* is subject to inherent limitations and, accordingly, errors or fraud may occur and not be detected. Furthermore, the projection of any conclusions, based on our findings, to future periods is subject to the risk that changes may alter the validity of such conclusions.¹

This report is intended solely for use by the management of Example Trust Company, its users, and the independent auditors of its users.

July 10, 20XX

[Issue Date: April, 1995; Revised: February, 1997;
Revised: April, 2002.]

[3.] Responsibilities of Service Organizations and Service Auditors With Respect to Information About the Year 2000 Issue in a Service Organization's Description of Controls

[.19–.34] [Withdrawn July, 2000 by the Audit Issues Task Force.]

4. Responsibilities of Service Organizations and Service Auditors With Respect to Forward-Looking Information in a Service Organization's Description of Controls

.35 Question—Section 324.32 requires a service auditor to consider “whether any other information, irrespective of specified control objectives, has come to his or her attention that causes him or her to conclude (a) that design deficiencies exist that could adversely affect the ability to initiate, record, process, or report financial data to user organizations without error, and (b) that user organizations would not generally be expected to have controls in place to mitigate such design deficiencies.” A service auditor performing a service auditor's engagement may become aware that a service organization, whose system is correctly processing data during the period covered by the service auditor's examination, has not performed contingency planning or made adequate provision for disaster recovery, and may not be able to retrieve or process data in future periods. Does section 324.32 require a service

¹ This sentence has been expanded to describe the risks of projecting any evaluation of the controls to future periods because of the failure to make needed changes to a system or controls, as provided for in Interpretation No. 5, “Statements About the Risk of Projecting Evaluations of the Effectiveness of Controls to Future Periods” (paragraphs .38–.40).

auditor to identify, in his or her report, design deficiencies that do not affect processing during the period covered by the service auditor's examination but may represent potential problems in future periods?

.36 Interpretation—No. Section 324.32 addresses design deficiencies that could adversely affect processing *during the period covered by the service auditor's examination*. Section 324.32 does not apply to design deficiencies that potentially could affect processing *in future periods*. If the computer programs are correctly processing data during the period covered by the service auditor's examination, and such design deficiencies currently do not affect user organizations' abilities to initiate, record, process, or report financial data, the service auditor would not be required to report such design deficiencies in his or her report, based on the requirements in section 324.32. However, if a service auditor becomes aware of design deficiencies at the service organization that could potentially affect the processing of user organizations' transactions in future periods, the service auditor, in his or her judgment, may choose to communicate this information to the service organization's management and advise management to disclose this information and its plans for correcting the design deficiencies in a section of the service auditor's document titled "Other Information Provided by the Service Organization."²

.37 If the service organization includes information about the design deficiencies in the section of the document titled "Other Information Provided by the Service Organization," the service auditor should read the information and consider applying by analogy the guidance in section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*. In addition, the service auditor should include a paragraph in his or her report disclaiming an opinion on the information provided by the service organization. The following is an example of such a paragraph.

The information in section 4 describing XYZ Service Organization's plans to modify its disaster recovery plan is presented by the Service Organization to provide additional information and is not a part of the Service Organization's description of controls that may be relevant to a user organization's internal control. Such information has not been subjected to the procedures applied in the examination of the description of the controls applicable to the processing of transactions for user organizations and, accordingly, we express no opinion on it.

A service auditor also may consider communicating information about the design deficiencies in the section of the service auditor's document titled "Other Information Provided by the Service Auditor."

[Issue Date: February, 2002.]

5. Statements About the Risk of Projecting Evaluations of the Effectiveness of Controls to Future Periods

.38 Question—Section 324.29g and .44l state that a service auditor's report should contain a statement of the inherent limitations of the potential effectiveness of controls at the service organization and of the risk of projecting

² Chapter 2 of the AICPA Audit Guide *Service Organizations: Applying SAS No. 70, as Amended*, proposes four sections of a service auditor's document.

1. Independent service auditor's report (the letter from the service auditor expressing his or her opinion)
2. Service organization's description of controls
3. Information provided by the independent service auditor (This section generally contains a description of the service auditor's tests of operating effectiveness and the results of those tests.)
4. Other information provided by the service organization

to future periods any evaluation of the description. Section 324.44l goes on to state that the report also should refer to the risk of projecting to the future “any conclusions about the effectiveness of controls in achieving control objectives.” The sample service auditor’s reports in section 324.38 and .54 include illustrative paragraphs that illustrate this caveat. The following excerpt is from section 324.54:

The description of controls at XYZ Service Organization is as of _____, and information about tests of the operating effectiveness of specific controls covers the period from _____ to _____. Any projection of such information to the future is subject to the risk that, because of change, the description may no longer portray the controls in existence. The potential effectiveness of specific controls at the Service Organization is subject to inherent limitations and, accordingly, errors or fraud may occur and not be detected. Furthermore, the projection of any conclusions, based on our findings, to future periods is subject to the risk that changes may alter the validity of such conclusions.

The validity of projections to the future about the effectiveness of controls may be affected by changes made to the system and the controls, and also by the failure to make needed changes, for example, changes to accommodate new processing requirements. May a service auditor’s report be expanded to describe the risk of projecting to the future conclusions about the effectiveness of controls?

.39 Interpretation—The sample reports in section 324.38 and .54 may be expanded to describe this risk. The first and second sentences of the illustrative paragraph above address the potential effect of change on the description of controls as of a specified date; accordingly, they do not require modification because new processing requirements would not affect the description as of the specified date. However, the last sentence in the sample report paragraph above could be expanded to describe the risk of projecting an evaluation of the controls to future periods because of changes to the system or controls, or the failure to make needed changes to the system or controls.

.40 Suggested additions to the paragraph in the illustrative service auditor’s reports in section 324.38 and .54 are the following (new language is shown in italics):

The description of controls at XYZ Service Organization is as of _____, and information about tests of the operating effectiveness of specific controls covers the period from _____ to _____. Any projection of such information to the future is subject to the risk that, because of change, the description may no longer portray the controls in existence. The potential effectiveness of specific controls at the Service Organization is subject to inherent limitations and, accordingly, errors or fraud may occur and not be detected. Furthermore, the projection of any conclusions, based on our findings, to future periods is subject to the risk that changes *made to the system or controls, or the failure to make needed changes to the system or controls*, may alter the validity of such conclusions.

[Issue Date: February, 2002.]

[6.] Responsibilities of Service Organizations and Service Auditors With Respect to Subsequent Events in a Service Auditor’s Engagement

[.41–.42] [Rescinded September, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

AU Section 325

Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*

(Supersedes AU sections 323 and 642.47–.53)

Source: SAS No. 60; SAS No. 78; SAS No. 87.

See section 9325 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 This section provides guidance in identifying and reporting conditions that relate to an entity's internal control observed during an audit of financial statements. It is contemplated that the communication would generally be to the audit committee or to individuals with a level of authority and responsibility equivalent to an audit committee in organizations that do not have one, such as the board of directors, the board of trustees, an owner in an owner-managed enterprise, or others who may have engaged the auditor. For the purpose of this section, the term *audit committee* is used to refer to the appropriate recipient of the communication. This section also provides guidance on establishing, between the auditor and client, agreed-upon criteria for identifying and reporting additional matters beyond those required by this section.

Reportable Conditions

.02 During the course of an audit, the auditor may become aware of matters relating to internal control that may be of interest to the audit committee. The matters that this section requires for reporting to the audit committee are referred to as *reportable conditions*.¹ Specifically, these are matters coming to the auditor's attention that, in his judgment, should be communicated to the audit committee because they represent significant deficiencies in the design or operation of internal control, which could adversely affect the organization's ability to initiate, record, process, and report financial data consistent with the assertions of management in the financial statements.² Such deficiencies may involve aspects of the five internal control components³ of (a) the control environment, (b) risk assessment, (c) control

* This section has been revised to reflect the amendments and conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1997.

¹ This section supersedes section 323, *Required Communication of Material Weaknesses in Internal Accounting Control*, and section 642, *Reporting on Internal Accounting Control*, paragraphs .47 through .53, and related auditing interpretations. This section does not affect the reporting of material weaknesses noted in an engagement to report on an entity's internal control.

² The auditor should also consider matters coming to his attention that relate to interim financial reporting outside the entity in the communication contemplated by this section.

³ *Internal control* refers to the controls established to provide reasonable assurance that specific entity objectives will be achieved. (See section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, for additional key definitions.) [Footnote transferred from paragraph .04 to paragraph .02, February 1997.]

activities, (d) information and communication, and (e) monitoring. (See paragraph .21 for examples of reportable conditions.) [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78. Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.03 The auditor may also identify matters that, in his judgment, are not reportable conditions as defined in paragraph .02; however, the auditor may choose to communicate such matters for the benefit of management (and other recipients, as appropriate).

Identifying Reportable Conditions

.04 The auditor's objective in an audit of financial statements is to form an opinion on the entity's financial statements taken as a whole. The auditor is not obligated to search for reportable conditions. However, the auditor may become aware of possible reportable conditions through consideration of the components of internal control, application of audit procedures to balances and transactions, or otherwise during the course of the audit. The auditor's awareness of reportable conditions varies with each audit and is influenced by the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures and numerous other factors, such as an entity's size, its complexity, and the nature and diversity of its business activities. [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78.]

.05 In making the judgment as to which matters are reportable conditions, the auditor should take into consideration various factors relating to the entity, such as its size, complexity and diversity of activities, organizational structure, and ownership characteristics.

.06 The existence of reportable conditions related to internal control design or operation may already be known and, in fact, may represent a conscious decision by management—a decision of which the audit committee is aware—to accept that degree of risk because of cost or other considerations. It is the responsibility of management to make the decisions concerning costs to be incurred and related benefits. Provided the audit committee has acknowledged its understanding and consideration of such deficiencies and the associated risks, the auditor may decide the matter does not need to be reported. Periodically, the auditor should consider whether, because of changes in management, the audit committee, or simply because of the passage of time, it is appropriate and timely to report such matters.

Agreed-Upon Criteria

.07 The auditor and client may discuss internal control and concerns regarding its functioning when making arrangements for the audit. Clients may request the auditor to be alert to matters and to report conditions that go beyond those contemplated by this section. The auditor is not precluded from reporting matters that he views to be of value to management in the absence of any specific request to do so.

.08 Agreed-upon arrangements between the auditor and the client to report conditions noted may include, for example, the reporting of matters of less significance than provided for by this section, the existence of conditions

specified by the client, or the results of further investigation of matters noted to identify underlying causes. Under these arrangements, it is possible that the auditor may be requested to visit specific locations, assess specific controls, or undertake specific procedures not otherwise planned.

Reporting—Form and Content

.09 Conditions noted by the auditor that are considered reportable under this section or that are the result of agreement with the client should be reported, preferably in writing. If information is communicated orally, the auditor should document the communication by appropriate memoranda or notations in the working papers.

.10 The report should state that the communication is intended solely for the information and the use of the audit committee, management, and others within the organization and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties. When there are requirements established by governmental authorities to furnish such reports, specific reference to such regulatory authorities may be made.

.11 Any report issued on reportable conditions should—

- Indicate that the purpose of the audit was to report on the financial statements and not to provide assurance on internal control.
- Include the definition of reportable conditions.
- Include the restriction on use as discussed in paragraph .10.

.12 The following is an illustration of the sections of a report encompassing the above requirements.

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements of the ABC Corporation for the year ended December 31, 19XX, we considered its internal control in order to determine our auditing procedures for the purpose of expressing our opinion on the financial statements and not to provide assurance on the internal control. However, we noted certain matters involving the internal control and its operation that we consider to be reportable conditions under standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. Reportable conditions involve matters coming to our attention relating to significant deficiencies in the design or operation of the internal control that, in our judgment, could adversely affect the organization's ability to initiate, record, process, and report financial data consistent with the assertions of management in the financial statements.

[Include paragraphs to describe the reportable conditions noted.]

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the audit committee (board of directors, board of trustees, or owners in owner-managed enterprises), management, and others within the organization (or specified regulatory agency) and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[As amended, effective for reports issued after December 31, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 87. Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.13 In some circumstances, the auditor may wish to include additional statements in the report regarding the inherent limitations of internal control in general, the specific extent and nature of his consideration of internal control during the audit, or other matters regarding the basis for the comments made.

.14 In a communication that contains both observations deemed by the auditor to be reportable conditions, as defined, and other comments, it may be appropriate to indicate which comments are in each category.

.15 A reportable condition may be of such magnitude as to be considered a material weakness. A *material weakness* in internal control is a reportable condition in which the design or operation of one or more of the internal control components does not reduce to a relatively low level the risk that misstatements caused by error or fraud in amounts that would be material in relation to the financial statements being audited may occur and not be detected within a timely period by employees in the normal course of performing their assigned functions. Although this section does not require that the auditor separately identify and communicate material weaknesses, the auditor may choose or the client may request the auditor to separately identify and communicate as material weaknesses those reportable conditions that, in the auditor's judgment, are considered to be material weaknesses. [As modified, June 1990, by the Audit Issues Task Force.]

.16 The following is an illustration of the sections of a report that may be used when the auditor wishes, or has been requested, to advise the audit committee in writing that one or more reportable conditions have been identified, but none is deemed to be a material weakness.

[Include the first paragraph in the report illustrated in paragraph .12.]

[Include paragraphs to describe the reportable conditions noted.]

A material weakness is a reportable condition in which the design or operation of one or more of the internal control components does not reduce to a relatively low level the risk that misstatements caused by error or fraud in amounts that would be material in relation to the financial statements being audited may occur and not be detected within a timely period by employees in the normal course of performing their assigned functions.

Our consideration of internal control would not necessarily disclose all matters in internal control that might be reportable conditions and, accordingly, would not necessarily disclose all reportable conditions that are also considered to be material weaknesses as defined above. However, none of the reportable conditions described above is believed to be a material weakness.

[Include the final paragraph in the report illustrated in paragraph .12.]

.17 Because of the potential for misinterpretation of the limited degree of assurance associated with the auditor issuing a written report representing that no reportable conditions were noted during an audit, the auditor should not issue such representations.

.18 Because timely communication may be important, the auditor may choose to communicate significant matters during the course of the audit rather than after the audit is concluded. The decision on whether an interim communication should be issued would be influenced by the relative significance of the matters noted and the urgency of corrective follow-up action.

.19 The provisions in this section should not be viewed as precluding an auditor from communicating to a client a variety of observations and suggestions regarding its activities that go beyond internal control related matters. Such matters may deal with operational or administrative efficiencies, business strategies, and other items of perceived benefit to the client.

Effective Date

.20 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989, with early application permissible.

Appendix

Examples of Possible Reportable Conditions

1. As indicated in paragraph .02 of this section reportable conditions involve matters coming to the auditor's attention that relate to significant deficiencies in the design or operation of internal control that, in the auditor's judgment, could adversely affect the organization's ability to initiate, record, process, and report financial data consistent with the assertions of management in the financial statements.

2. The following are examples of matters that may be reportable conditions. They are grouped by categories of conditions and within categories by specific examples of conditions. Certain of these matters may also require communications under the provisions of other statements on auditing standards.

Deficiencies in internal control design

- Inadequate overall internal control design
- Absence of appropriate segregation of duties consistent with appropriate control objectives
- Absence of appropriate reviews and approvals of transactions, accounting entries, or systems output
- Inadequate procedures for appropriately assessing and applying accounting principles
- Inadequate provisions for the safeguarding of assets
- Absence of other controls considered appropriate for the type and level of transaction activity
- Evidence that a system fails to provide complete and accurate output that is consistent with objectives and current needs because of design flaws

Failures in the operation of internal control

- Evidence of failure of identified controls in preventing or detecting misstatements of accounting information
- Evidence that a system fails to provide complete and accurate output consistent with the entity's control objectives because of the misapplication of controls
- Evidence of failure to safeguard assets from loss, damage or misappropriation
- Evidence of intentional override of internal control by those in authority to the detriment of the overall objectives of the system
- Evidence of failure to perform tasks that are part of internal control, such as reconciliations not prepared or not timely prepared
- Evidence of willful wrongdoing by employees or management

- Evidence of manipulation, falsification, or alteration of accounting records or supporting documents
- Evidence of intentional misapplication of accounting principles
- Evidence of misrepresentation by client personnel to the auditor
- Evidence that employees or management lack the qualifications and training to fulfill their assigned functions

Others

- Absence of a sufficient level of control consciousness within the organization
- Failure to follow up and correct previously identified internal control deficiencies
- Evidence of significant or extensive undisclosed related party transactions
- Evidence of undue bias or lack of objectivity by those responsible for accounting decisions

[Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

AU Section 9325***Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit: Auditing Interpretations of Section 325*****1. Reporting on the Existence of Material Weaknesses**

.01 Question—Section 325 requires the auditor to report to the audit committee or to individuals with equivalent authority and responsibility reportable conditions noted during an audit of financial statements. It permits the issuance of reports that include a statement about whether any of the reportable conditions identified are material weaknesses. In connection with an audit, may the auditor issue a written report on material weaknesses separate from the report on reportable conditions?

.02 Interpretation—Yes. Section 325 does not preclude the auditor from issuing a separate report stating whether he or she noted any material weaknesses during the audit. Reports on material weaknesses should—

- Indicate that the purpose of the audit was to report on the financial statements and not to provide assurance on internal control.
- Include the definition of a material weakness.
- State that the communication is intended solely for the information and the use of the audit committee, management, and others within the organization and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties. When there are requirements established by governmental agencies to furnish such reports, specific reference to such regulatory authorities may be made.

.03 Section 325 prohibits the auditor from issuing a written report representing that no reportable conditions were noted during the audit. Therefore, in issuing a report stating that no material weaknesses were noted, the auditor should not imply that no reportable conditions were noted.

.04 The following is an illustration of a report encompassing the above requirements:

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements of ABC Corporation for the year ended December 31, 19XX, we considered its internal control in order to determine our auditing procedures for the purpose of expressing our opinion on the financial statements and not to provide assurance on the internal control. Our consideration of the internal control would not necessarily disclose all matters in the internal control that might be material weaknesses under standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A material weakness is a condition in which the design or operation of one or more of the internal control components does not reduce to a relatively low level the risk that misstatements caused by error or fraud in amounts that would be material in relation to the financial statements being audited may occur and not be detected within a timely period by employees in the normal course of performing their assigned functions. However, we noted no matters involving the internal control and its operation that we consider to be material weaknesses as defined above.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the audit committee (board of directors, board of trustees, or owners in owner-managed enterprises), management, and others within the organization (or specified regulatory agency) and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

.05 If conditions believed to be material weaknesses are disclosed, the report should describe the weaknesses that have come to the auditor's attention. The last sentence of the first paragraph of the report illustrated in paragraph .04 should be modified as follows and paragraphs describing the material weaknesses should follow the first paragraph:

However, we noted the following matters involving internal control and its operation that we consider to be material weaknesses as defined above.

.06 In some cases reports on material weaknesses may include comments on specific aspects of internal control or on additional matters. For example, a regulatory agency may require comments on the accounting system and controls (but not on the control environment) or on compliance with certain provisions in contracts or regulations. In such cases the language in paragraph .04 should be modified to:

- a. identify clearly the specific aspects of internal controls or the additional matters covered by the report
- b. distinguish any additional matters from internal control
- c. describe in reasonable detail the scope of the review and tests concerning the additional matters
- d. express conclusions in language comparable to that in paragraph .04 or .05, as appropriate

.07 The identification of the specific aspects of internal control or additional matters covered in the report should be as specific as the auditor considers necessary to prevent misunderstanding in this respect. Such identification can be made in some cases by reference to specific portions of other documents such as contracts or regulations.

[Issue Date: February, 1989; Revised: February, 1999.]

[2.] Audit Considerations for the Year 2000 Issue

[.08-.17] [Withdrawn July, 2000 by the Audit Issues Task Force.]

AU Section 326

Evidential Matter

(Supersedes section 330, "Evidential Matter")

Source: SAS No. 31; SAS No. 48; SAS No. 80.

See section 9326 for interpretations of this section.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: August, 1980

.01 The third standard of field work is:

Sufficient competent evidential matter is to be obtained through inspection, observation, inquiries, and confirmations to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion regarding the financial statements under audit.

.02 Most of the independent auditor's work in forming his or her opinion on financial statements consists of obtaining and evaluating evidential matter¹ concerning the assertions in such financial statements. The measure of the validity of such evidence for audit purposes lies in the judgment of the auditor; in this respect audit evidence differs from legal evidence, which is circumscribed by rigid rules. Evidential matter varies substantially in its influence on the auditor as he or she develops an opinion with respect to financial statements under audit. The pertinence of the evidence, its objectivity, its timeliness, and the existence of other evidential matter corroborating the conclusions to which it leads all bear on its competence.

Nature of Assertions

.03 Assertions are representations by management that are embodied in financial statement components. They can be either explicit or implicit and can be classified according to the following broad categories:

- Existence or occurrence
- Completeness
- Rights and obligations
- Valuation or allocation
- Presentation and disclosure

.04 Assertions about existence or occurrence address whether assets or liabilities of the entity exist at a given date and whether recorded transactions have occurred during a given period. For example, management asserts that finished goods inventories in the balance sheet are available for sale. Similarly, management asserts that sales in the income statement represent the exchange of goods or services with customers for cash or other consideration.

¹ See section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, paragraphs .90 through .104, for further guidance on evidential matter. [Footnote added, May 1994, to cross-reference guidance on evidential matter to section 319. Footnote revised, May 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.05 Assertions about completeness address whether all transactions and accounts that should be presented in the financial statements are so included. For example, management asserts that all purchases of goods and services are recorded and are included in the financial statements. Similarly, management asserts that notes payable in the balance sheet include all such obligations of the entity.

.06 Assertions about rights and obligations address whether assets are the rights of the entity and liabilities are the obligations of the entity at a given date. For example, management asserts that amounts capitalized for leases in the balance sheet represent the cost of the entity's rights to leased property and that the corresponding lease liability represents an obligation of the entity.

.07 Assertions about valuation or allocation address whether asset, liability, equity, revenue, and expense components have been included in the financial statements at appropriate amounts. For example, management asserts that property is recorded at historical cost and that such cost is systematically allocated to appropriate accounting periods. Similarly, management asserts that trade accounts receivable included in the balance sheet are stated at net realizable value. [As amended, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

.08 Assertions about presentation and disclosure address whether particular components of the financial statements are properly classified, described, and disclosed. For example, management asserts that obligations classified as long-term liabilities in the balance sheet will not mature within one year. Similarly, management asserts that amounts presented as extraordinary items in the income statement are properly classified and described.

Use of Assertions in Developing Audit Objectives and Designing Substantive Tests

.09 In obtaining evidential matter in support of financial statement assertions, the auditor develops specific audit objectives in the light of those assertions. In developing the audit objectives of a particular engagement, the auditor should consider the specific circumstances of the entity, including the nature of its economic activity and the accounting practices unique to its industry. For example, one audit objective related to the assertion about completeness that an auditor might develop for inventory balances is that inventory quantities include all products, materials, and supplies on hand.

.10 There is not necessarily a one-to-one relationship between audit objectives and procedures. Some auditing procedures may relate to more than one objective. On the other hand, a combination of auditing procedures may be needed to achieve a single objective. Paragraph .26 provides illustrative audit objectives for inventories of a manufacturing company for each of the broad categories of assertions listed in paragraph .03 and examples of substantive tests that may achieve those audit objectives.

.11 In selecting particular substantive tests to achieve the audit objectives he or she has developed, an auditor considers, among other things, the risk of material misstatement of the financial statements, including the assessed levels of control risk, and the expected effectiveness and efficiency of such tests. These considerations include the nature and materiality of the items being tested, the kinds and competence of available evidential matter, and the nature of the audit objective to be achieved. For example, in designing

substantive tests to achieve an objective related to the assertion of existence or occurrence, the auditor selects from items contained in a financial statement amount and searches for relevant evidential matter. On the other hand, in designing procedures to achieve an objective related to the assertion of completeness, the auditor selects from evidential matter indicating that an item should be included in the relevant financial statement amount and investigates whether that item is so included.

.12 The auditor's specific audit objectives do not change whether information is processed manually or electronically. However, the methods of applying audit procedures to gather evidence may be influenced by the method of processing. The auditor may use either manual auditing procedures, information technology-assisted audit techniques, or a combination of both to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter. Because of the growth in the use of computers and other information technology, many entities process significant information electronically. Accordingly, it may be difficult or impossible for the auditor to access certain information for inspection, inquiry, or confirmation without using information technology. [Paragraph added, effective for periods beginning after August 31, 1984, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48. As amended, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

.13 The nature, timing, and extent of the procedures to be applied on a particular engagement are a matter of professional judgment to be determined by the auditor, based on the specific circumstances. However, the procedures adopted should be adequate to achieve the auditor's specific objectives and reduce detection risk to a level acceptable to the auditor. The evidential matter obtained should be sufficient for the auditor to form conclusions concerning the validity of the individual assertions embodied in the components of financial statements. The evidential matter provided by the combination of the auditor's assessment of inherent risk and control risk and on substantive tests should provide a reasonable basis for his or her opinion (see section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, paragraphs .105 through .108). [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984. As amended, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80. Revised, May 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.14 In entities where significant information is transmitted, processed, maintained, or accessed electronically, the auditor may determine that it is not practical or possible to reduce detection risk to an acceptable level by performing only substantive tests for one or more financial statement assertions. For example, the potential for improper initiation or alteration of information to occur and not be detected may be greater if information is produced, maintained, or accessed only in electronic form. In such circumstances, the auditor should perform tests of controls to gather evidential matter to use in assessing control risk,² or consider the effect on his or her report (see paragraph .25 of this section). [Paragraph added, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

² Section 319.107 states that ordinarily the assessed level of control risk cannot be sufficiently low to eliminate the need to perform any substantive tests for significant account balances and transaction classes and, consequently, the auditor should perform substantive tests for such balances and classes regardless of the assessed level of control risk. [Footnote added, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80. Footnote revised, May 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

Nature of Evidential Matter

.15 Evidential matter supporting the financial statements consists of the underlying accounting data and all corroborating information available to the auditor. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80, December 1996.]

.16 The books of original entry, the general and subsidiary ledgers, related accounting manuals, and records such as work sheets and spreadsheets supporting cost allocations, computations, and reconciliations all constitute evidence in support of the financial statements. These accounting data are often in electronic form. Accounting data alone cannot be considered sufficient support for financial statements; on the other hand, without adequate attention to the propriety and accuracy of the underlying accounting data, an opinion on financial statements would not be warranted. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984. Paragraph subsequently renumbered and amended, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

.17 Corroborating evidential matter includes both written and electronic information such as checks; records of electronic fund transfers; invoices; contracts; minutes of meetings; confirmations and other written representations by knowledgeable people; information obtained by the auditor from inquiry, observation, inspection, and physical examination; and other information developed by, or available to, the auditor which permits him or her to reach conclusions through valid reasoning. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984. Paragraph subsequently renumbered and amended, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

.18 In certain entities, some of the accounting data and corroborating evidential matter are available only in electronic form. Source documents such as purchase orders, bills of lading, invoices, and checks are replaced with electronic messages. For example, entities may use Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) or image processing systems. In EDI, the entity and its customers or suppliers use communication links to transact business electronically. Purchase, shipping, billing, cash receipt, and cash disbursement transactions are often consummated entirely by the exchange of electronic messages between the parties. In image processing systems, documents are scanned and converted into electronic images to facilitate storage and reference, and the source documents may not be retained after conversion. Certain electronic evidence may exist at a certain point in time. However, such evidence may not be retrievable after a specified period of time if files are changed and if backup files do not exist. Therefore, the auditor should consider the time during which information exists or is available in determining the nature, timing, and extent of his or her substantive tests, and, if applicable, tests of controls. [Paragraph added, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

.19 The auditor tests underlying accounting data by (a) analysis and review, (b) retracing the procedural steps followed in the accounting process and in developing the allocations involved, (c) recalculation, and (d) reconciling related types and applications of the same information. Through the performance of such procedures, the auditor may determine that the accounting

records are internally consistent. Such internal consistency ordinarily provides evidence about the fairness of presentation of the financial statements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984. Paragraph subsequently renumbered and amended, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

.20 The pertinent accounting data and corroborating evidential matter to support entries in the accounts and assertions in the financial statements ordinarily are available from the entity's files and accessible to the auditor for examination at certain points or periods in time. Both within the entity's organization and outside it are knowledgeable people to whom the auditor can direct inquiries. Assets having physical existence are available to the auditor for his or her inspection. Activities of the entity's personnel can be observed. Based on observations of these or other conditions or circumstances, the auditor may reach conclusions about the validity of various assertions in the financial statements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984. Paragraph subsequently renumbered and amended, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

Competence of Evidential Matter

.21 To be competent, evidence, regardless of its form, must be both valid and relevant. The validity of evidential matter is so dependent on the circumstances under which it is obtained that generalizations about the reliability of various kinds of evidence are subject to important exceptions. If the possibility of important exceptions is recognized, however, the following presumptions, which are not mutually exclusive, about the validity of evidential matter in auditing have some usefulness:

- a. When evidential matter can be obtained from independent sources outside an entity, it provides greater assurance of reliability for the purposes of an independent audit than that secured solely within the entity.
- b. The more effective the internal control, the more assurance it provides about the reliability of the accounting data and financial statements.
- c. The independent auditor's direct personal knowledge, obtained through physical examination, observation, computation, and inspection, is more persuasive than information obtained indirectly.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984. Paragraph subsequently renumbered and amended, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

Sufficiency of Evidential Matter

.22 The independent auditor's objective is to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to provide him or her with a reasonable basis for forming an opinion. The amount and kinds of evidential matter required to support an informed opinion are matters for the auditor to determine in the exercise of his or her professional judgment after a careful study of the circumstances in the particular case. However, in the great majority of cases, the auditor has to rely

on evidence that is persuasive rather than convincing. Both the individual assertions in financial statements and the overall proposition that the financial statements as a whole are fairly presented are of such a nature that even an experienced auditor is seldom convinced beyond all doubt with respect to all aspects of the statements being audited. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984. Paragraph subsequently renumbered and amended, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

.23 An auditor typically works within economic limits; the auditor's opinion, to be economically useful, must be formed within a reasonable length of time and at reasonable cost. The auditor must decide, again exercising professional judgment, whether the evidential matter available to him or her within the limits of time and cost is sufficient to justify expression of an opinion. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80, December 1996.]

.24 As a guiding rule, there should be a rational relationship between the cost of obtaining evidence and the usefulness of the information obtained. The matter of difficulty and expense involved in testing a particular item is not in itself a valid basis for omitting the test. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80, December 1996.]

Evaluation of Evidential Matter

.25 In evaluating evidential matter, the auditor considers whether specific audit objectives have been achieved. The independent auditor should be thorough in his or her search for evidential matter and unbiased in its evaluation. In designing audit procedures to obtain competent evidential matter, he or she should recognize the possibility that the financial statements may not be fairly presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.³ In developing his or her opinion, the auditor should consider relevant evidential matter regardless of whether it appears to corroborate or to contradict the assertions in the financial statements. To the extent the auditor remains in substantial doubt about any assertion of material significance, he or she must refrain from forming an opinion until he or she has obtained sufficient competent evidential matter to remove such substantial doubt, or the auditor must express a qualified opinion or a disclaimer of opinion.⁴ [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984. Paragraph subsequently renumbered and amended, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

³ The term *comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles* is defined in section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraph .04. [Footnote added, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

⁴ See section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .20 through .34 and .61 through .63, for further guidance on expression of a qualified opinion or a disclaimer of opinion. [Footnote added, effective for engagements beginning on or after January 1, 1997, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.]

Appendix

Financial Statement Assertions, Illustrative Audit Objectives, and Examples of Substantive Tests

Illustrations for Inventories of a Manufacturing Company

This appendix illustrates the use of assertions in developing audit objectives and designing substantive tests. The following examples of substantive tests are not intended to be all-inclusive nor is it expected that all of the procedures would be applied in an audit.

<u>Illustrative Audit Objectives</u>	<u>Examples of Substantive Tests</u>
<u>Existence or Occurrence</u>	
Inventories included in the balance sheet physically exist	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Observing physical inventory counts ● Obtaining confirmation of inventories at locations outside the entity. ● Testing of inventory transactions between a preliminary physical inventory date and the balance sheet date.
Inventories represent items held for sale or use in the normal course of business.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Reviewing perpetual inventory records, production records, and purchasing records for indications of current activity. ● Comparing inventories with a current sales catalog and subsequent sales and delivery reports. ● Using the work of specialists to corroborate the nature of specialized products.
<u>Completeness</u>	
Inventory quantities include all products, materials, and supplies on hand	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Observing physical inventory counts ● Analytically comparing the relationship of inventory balances to recent purchasing, production, and sales activities. ● Testing shipping and receiving cutoff procedures.
Inventory quantities include all products, materials, and supplies owned by the company that are in transit or stored at outside locations.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Obtaining confirmation of inventories at locations outside the entity. ● Analytically comparing the relationship of inventory balances to recent purchasing, production, and sales activities. ● Testing shipping and receiving cutoff procedures.

Illustrative Audit Objectives

Inventory listings are accurately compiled and the totals are properly included in the inventory accounts.

Examples of Substantive Tests

- Tracing test counts recorded during the physical inventory observation to the inventory listing.
- Accounting for all inventory tags and count sheets used in recording the physical inventory counts.
- Testing the clerical accuracy of inventory listings.
- Reconciling physical counts to perpetual records and general ledger balances and investigating significant fluctuations.

Rights and Obligations

The entity has legal title or similar rights of ownership to the inventories.

Inventories exclude items billed to customers or owned by others.

- Observing physical inventory counts.
- Obtaining confirmation of inventories at locations outside the entity.
- Examining paid vendors' invoices, consignment agreements, and contracts.
- Examining paid vendors' invoices, consignment agreements, and contracts.
- Testing shipping and receiving cutoff procedures.

Valuation or Allocation

Inventories are properly stated at cost (except when market is lower).

Slow-moving, excess, defective, and obsolete items included in inventories are properly identified.

Inventories are reduced, when appropriate, to replacement cost or net realizable value.

- Examining paid vendors' invoices.
- Reviewing direct labor rates.
- Testing the computation of standard overhead rates.
- Examining analyses of purchasing and manufacturing standard cost variances.
- Examining an analysis of inventory turnover.
- Reviewing industry experience and trends.
- Analytically comparing the relationship of inventory balances to anticipated sales volume.
- Touring the plant.
- Inquiring of production and sales personnel concerning possible excess or obsolete inventory items.
- Obtaining current market value quotations.
- Reviewing current production costs.

Illustrative Audit ObjectivesExamples of Substantive Tests

- Examining sales after year-end and open purchase order commitments.

Presentation and Disclosure

Inventories are properly classified in the balance sheet as current assets. The major categories of inventories and their bases of valuation are adequately disclosed in the financial statements.

The pledge or assignment of any inventories is appropriately disclosed.

- Reviewing drafts of the financial statements.
- Reviewing drafts of the financial statements.
- Comparing the disclosures made in the financial statements to the requirements of generally accepted accounting principles.
- Obtaining confirmation of inventories pledged under loan agreements.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80, December 1996.]

AU Section 9326

Evidential Matter: Auditing Interpretations of Section 326

1. Evidential Matter for an Audit of Interim Financial Statements

.01 Question—APB Opinion No. 28 [AC section I73] concluded that certain accounting principles and practices followed for annual reporting purposes may require modification at interim report dates. Paragraph 10 of Opinion No. 28 [AC section I73.103] states that the modifications are needed “so that the reported results for the interim period may better relate to the results of operations for the annual period.” The modifications introduce a need for estimates to a greater extent than is necessary for annual financial information. Does this imply a relaxation of the third standard of field work, which requires that sufficient competent evidential matter be obtained to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion regarding the financial statements under audit?

.02 Interpretation—No. The third standard of field work applies to all engagements leading to an expression of opinion on financial statements or financial information.

.03 The objective of the independent auditor’s engagement is to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to provide him with a reasonable basis for forming an opinion. The auditor develops specific audit objectives in light of assertions by management that are embodied in financial statement components. Section 326.11 states, “In selecting particular substantive tests to achieve the audit objectives he has developed, an auditor considers, among other things, the risk of material misstatement of the financial statements, including the assessed level of control risk, and the expected effectiveness and efficiency of such tests. His considerations include the nature and materiality of the items being tested, the kinds and competence of available evidential matter, and the nature of the audit objective to be achieved.”

.04 Evidential matter obtained for an audit of annual financial statements may also be useful in an audit of interim financial statements, and evidential matter obtained for an audit of interim financial statements may also be useful in an audit of annual financial statements. Section 313.02 indicates that “Audit testing at interim dates may permit early consideration of significant matters affecting the year-end financial statements (for example, related party transactions, changed conditions, recent accounting pronouncements, and financial statement items likely to require adjustment)” and that “much of the audit planning, including obtaining an understanding of internal control and assessing control risk, and the application of substantive tests to transactions can be conducted prior to the balance-sheet date.”¹ [As amended, August 1983, by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 45.] (See section 313.)

¹ See section 313, *Substantive Tests Prior to the Balance-Sheet Date* for guidance on the auditor’s considerations before applying substantive tests to the details of asset or liability accounts at interim dates, including the relationship between the assessed level of control risk and such tests, and on extending the audit conclusions from such tests to the balance-sheet date. [Footnote added, August 1983, by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 45.]

.05 The introduction by Opinion No. 28 [AC section I73] of a need for additional estimates in measuring certain items for interim financial information may lead to a need for evidence in examining those items that differs from the evidence required in an audit of annual financial information. For example, computing the provision for federal income taxes in interim information involves estimating the effective tax rate expected to be applicable for the full fiscal year, and the auditor should examine evidence as to the basis for estimating that rate. Since the effective tax rate for the full year ordinarily is known at year-end, similar evidence is not usually required in examining annual information.

[Issue Date: February, 1974; Modified: October, 1980.]

2. The Effect of an Inability to Obtain Evidential Matter Relating to Income Tax Accruals

.06 *Question*—The Internal Revenue Service's audit manual instructs its examiners on how to secure from corporate officials "tax accrual workpapers" or the "tax liability contingency analysis," including, "a memorandum discussing items reflected in the financial statements as income or expense where the ultimate tax treatment is unclear." The audit manual states that the examiner may question or summons a corporate officer or manager concerning the "knowledge of the items that make up the corporation's contingent reserve accounts." It also states that "in unusual circumstances, access may be had to the audit or tax workpapers" of an independent accountant or an accounting firm after attempting to obtain the information from the taxpayer. IRS policy also includes specific procedures to be followed in circumstances involving "Listed Transactions," to help address what the IRS considers to be abusive tax avoidance transactions (Internal Revenue Manual, section 4024.2-5, 5/14/81, and Internal Revenue Service Announcement 2002-63, 6/17/02).

.07 Concern over IRS access to tax accrual working papers might cause some clients to not prepare or maintain appropriate documentation of the calculation or contents of the accrual for income taxes included in the financial statements, or to deny the independent auditor access to such information.

.08 What effect does this situation have on the auditor's opinion on the financial statements?

.09 *Interpretation*—The client is responsible for its tax accrual, the underlying support for the accrual, and the related disclosures. Limitations on the auditor's access to information considered necessary to audit the tax accrual will affect the auditor's ability to issue an unqualified opinion on the financial statements. Thus, if the client does not have appropriate documentation of the calculation or contents of the accrual for income taxes and denies the auditor access to client personnel responsible for making the judgments and estimates relating to the accrual, the auditor should assess the importance of that inadequacy in the accounting records and the client imposed limitation on his or her ability to form an opinion on the financial statements. Also, if the client has appropriate documentation but denies the auditor access to it and to client personnel who possess the information, the auditor should assess the importance of the client-imposed scope limitation on his or her ability to form an opinion.

.10 The third standard of field work requires the auditor to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter through, among other things, inspection and inquiries to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion on the financial statements. Section 326, *Evidential Matter*, paragraph .25, requires the auditor to

obtain sufficient competent evidential matter about assertions in the financial statements of material significance or else to qualify or disclaim his or her opinion on the statements. Section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .24, states that, "When restrictions that significantly limit the scope of the audit are imposed by the client, ordinarily the auditor should disclaim an opinion on the financial statements." Also, section 333 on *Management Representations* requires the auditor to obtain written representations from management. Section 333.06 states that specific representations should relate to the following matters, "availability of all financial records and related data," and section 333.08 states that a materiality limit does not apply to that representation. Section 333.13 states that "management's refusal to furnish a written representation" constitutes a limitation on the scope of the audit sufficient to preclude an unqualified opinion.

.11 Question—A client may allow the auditor to inspect its tax accrual workpapers, but request that copies not be retained for audit documentation, particularly copies of the tax liability contingency analysis. The client also may suggest that the auditor not prepare and maintain similar documentation of his or her own. What should the auditor consider in deciding a response to such a request?

.12 Interpretation—Section 339, *Audit Documentation*, states that audit documentation is the principal record of auditing procedures applied, evidence obtained, and conclusions reached by the auditor in the engagement. Audit documentation should include sufficient competent evidential matter to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion. In addition, audit documentation should be sufficient to enable members of the engagement team with supervision and review responsibilities to understand the nature, timing, extent, and results of auditing procedures performed, and the evidence obtained. Section 326, *Evidential Matter*, paragraph .17, states that corroborating information includes information obtained by the auditor from inquiry, observation, inspection, and physical examination. The quantity, type, and content of audit documentation are matters of the auditor's professional judgment (see section 339.)

.13 The auditor's documentation of the results of auditing procedures directed at the tax accounts and related disclosures also should include sufficient competent evidential matter about the significant elements of the client's tax liability contingency analysis. This documentation should include copies of the client's documents, schedules, or analyses (or auditor-prepared summaries thereof) to enable the auditor to support his or her conclusions regarding the appropriateness of the client's accounting and disclosure of significant tax-related contingency matters. The audit documentation should reflect the procedures performed and conclusions reached by the auditor and, for significant matters, include the client's documentary support for its financial statement amounts and disclosures.

.14 The audit documentation should include the significant elements of the client's analysis of tax contingencies or reserves, including roll-forward of material changes to such reserves. In addition, the documentation should provide the client's position and support for income tax related disclosures, such as its effective tax rate reconciliation, and support for its intra-period allocation of income tax expense or benefit to continuing operations and to items other than continuing operations. Where applicable, the documentation also should include the client's basis for assessing deferred tax assets and related valuation allowances and its support for applying the "indefinite reversal criteria" in APB Opinion No. 23, *Accounting for Income Taxes—Special Areas*, including its specific plans for reinvestment of undistributed foreign earnings.

.15 Question—In some situations, a client may furnish its outside legal counsel or in-house legal or tax counsel with information concerning the tax contingencies covered by the accrual for income taxes included in the financial statements and ask counsel to provide the auditor an opinion on the adequacy of the accrual for those contingencies.

.16 In such circumstances, rather than inspecting and obtaining documentary evidence of the client's tax liability contingency analysis and making inquiries of the client, may the auditor consider the counsel as a specialist within the meaning of section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*, and rely solely on counsel's opinion as an appropriate procedure for obtaining evidential matter to support his or her opinion on the financial statements?

.17 Interpretation—No. The opinion of legal counsel in this situation would not provide sufficient competent evidential matter to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion on the financial statements.

.18 Section 336.01 defines a specialist as "a person (or firm) possessing special skill or knowledge in a particular field other than accounting or auditing." It is intended to apply to situations requiring special knowledge of matters about which the auditor does not have adequate technical training and proficiency. The auditor's education, training, and experience, on the other hand, do enable him or her to be knowledgeable concerning income tax matters and competent to assess their presentation in the financial statements.

.19 The opinion of legal counsel on specific tax issues that he or she is asked to address and to which he or she has devoted substantive attention, as contemplated by section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*, can be useful to the auditor in forming his or her own opinion. However, the audit of income tax accounts requires a combination of tax expertise and knowledge about the client's business that is accumulated during all aspects of an audit. Therefore, as stated above, it is not appropriate for the auditor to rely solely on such legal opinion.

.20 Question—A client may have obtained the advice or opinion of an outside tax adviser related to the tax accrual or matters affecting it, including tax contingencies, and further may attempt to limit the auditor's access to such advice or opinion, or limit the auditor's documentation of such advice or opinion. This limitation on the auditor's access may be proposed on the basis that such information is privileged. Can the auditor rely solely on the conclusions of third party tax advisers? What evidential matter should the auditor obtain and include in the audit documentation?

.21 Interpretation—As discussed in paragraphs .17 through .19 above, the auditor cannot accept a client's or a third party's analysis or opinion with respect to tax matters without careful consideration and application of the auditor's tax expertise and knowledge about the client's business. As a result of applying such knowledge to the facts, the auditor may encounter situations in which the auditor either disagrees with the position taken by the client, or its advisers, or does not have sufficient competent evidential matter to support his or her opinion.

.22 If the client's support for the tax accrual or matters affecting it, including tax contingencies, is based upon an opinion issued by an outside adviser with respect to a potentially material matter, the auditor should obtain access to the opinion, notwithstanding potential concerns regarding attorney-client or other forms of privilege. The audit documentation should include either the actual advice or opinions rendered by an outside adviser, or other sufficient documentation or abstracts supporting both the transactions or facts

addressed as well as the analysis and conclusions reached by the client and adviser. Alternatives such as redacted or modified opinions may be considered, but must nonetheless include sufficient content to articulate and document the client's position so that the auditor can formulate his or her conclusion. Similarly, it may be possible to accept a client's analysis summarizing an outside adviser's opinion, but the client's analysis must provide sufficient competent evidential matter for the auditor to formulate his or her conclusion. In addition, client representations may be obtained stating that the client has not received any advice or opinions that are contradictory to the client's support for the tax accrual.

.23 If the auditor is unable to accumulate sufficient competent evidence about whether there is a supported and reasonable basis for the client's position, the auditor should consider the effect of this scope limitation on his or her report.

[Issue Date: March, 1981; Amended: April 9, 2003.]

3. The Auditor's Consideration of the Completeness Assertion

.24 Question—Section 326, *Evidential Matter*, paragraph .03, identifies five categories of assertions that are embodied in financial statement components. In obtaining audit evidence about four of these categories—existence or occurrence, rights and obligations, valuation or allocation, and presentation and disclosure—the auditor considers transactions and accounts that are included in the financial statements. In contrast, in obtaining audit evidence about the completeness assertion, the auditor considers whether transactions and accounts have been improperly excluded from the financial statements. May management's written representations and the auditor's assessment of control risk constitute sufficient audit evidence about the completeness assertion? [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.25 Interpretation—Written representations from management are a part of the evidential matter the auditor obtains in an audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Management's representations about the completeness assertion, whether considered alone or in combination with the auditor's assessment of control risk, do not constitute sufficient audit evidence to support that assertion. Obtaining such representations complements but does not replace other auditing procedures that the auditor should perform. [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.26 In planning audit procedures to obtain evidence about the completeness assertion, the auditor should consider the inherent risk that transactions and accounts have been improperly omitted from the financial statements. When the auditor assesses the inherent risk of omission for a particular account balance or class of transactions to be such that he believes omissions could exist that might be material when aggregated with errors in other balances or classes, he should restrict the audit risk of omission by performing substantive tests designed to obtain evidence about the completeness assertion. Substantive tests designed primarily to obtain evidence about the completeness assertion include analytical procedures and tests of details of *related populations*.² [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

² For purposes of this interpretation, a related population is a population other than the recorded account balance or class of transactions being audited that would be expected to contain evidence of whether all accounts or transactions that should be presented in that balance or class are so included.

.27 The extent of substantive tests of completeness may properly vary in relation to the assessed level of control risk. Because of the unique nature of the completeness assertion, an assessed level of control risk below the maximum may be an effective means for the auditor to obtain evidence about that assertion. Although an assessed level of control risk below the maximum is not required to satisfy the auditor's objectives with respect to the completeness assertion, the auditor should consider that for some transactions (e.g., revenues that are received primarily in cash, such as those of a casino or of some charitable organizations) it may be difficult to limit audit risk for those assertions to an acceptable level without an assessed level of control risk below the maximum. [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

[Issue Date: April, 1986.]

4. Applying Auditing Procedures to Segment Disclosures in Financial Statements

.28 *Introduction*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. 131, *Disclosures about Segments of an Enterprise and Related Information* [AC section S30], establishes standards for the way that public business enterprises³ disclose information about segments in annual financial statements and in condensed financial statements of interim periods issued to shareholders. FASB Statement No. 131 [AC section S30] does not apply to nonpublic entities or to not-for-profit organizations, although those entities are encouraged to provide the disclosures described therein. FASB Statement No. 131 [AC section S30] is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 1997. [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.29 FASB Statement No. 131 [AC section S30] requires that public business enterprises report financial and descriptive information about their reportable operating segments including factors used to identify reportable segments; a measure of profit or loss, certain revenue and expense items, and assets of reportable operating segments and the basis of measurement of these items; and reconciliations of these measures and any other significant operating segment items to enterprise totals. FASB Statement No. 131 [AC section S30] requires that the management approach be used to identify operating segments and to measure the financial information disclosed about operating segments. The management approach focuses on the financial information that an entity's chief operating decision maker (chief executive officer, chief operating officer or other individual or group exercising similar decision-making authority) uses internally to evaluate the performance of, and to allocate resources to, segments. FASB Statement No. 131 [AC section S30] also requires that public business enterprises report certain information about products and services, geographic areas, and major customers regardless of whether that information is used by management in assessing segment performance. [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

³ FASB Statement No. 131, paragraph 9 [AC section S30.108], states: "Public business enterprises are those business enterprises that have issued debt or equity securities that are traded in a public market (a domestic or foreign stock exchange or an over-the-counter market, including local or regional markets), that are required to file financial statements with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or that provide financial statements for the purpose of issuing any class of securities in a public market."

.30 Question—What is the auditor's objective when applying auditing procedures to segment disclosures in an entity's financial statements? [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.31 Interpretation—The auditor performing an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards considers segment disclosures, as other informative disclosures, in relation to the financial statements taken as a whole. Accordingly, the auditor is not required to apply procedures as extensive as would be necessary to express an opinion on the segment information taken by itself. [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.32 Question—What should the auditor consider with respect to segment disclosures in planning the audit? [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.33 Interpretation—The auditor should obtain an understanding of who performs the function of the chief operating decision maker (CODM), and how management organizes the entity into operating segments for internal reporting purposes. The auditor also should consider the nature and extent of differences, if any, between the information systems used to generate data that the CODM uses to allocate resources to, and evaluate results of, the operating segments and the information systems that generate data for external reporting purposes. When a different system is used to generate the data underlying segment disclosures, the auditor needs to obtain only a general understanding of that system. Consistent with the management approach to accounting for segments, auditing procedures primarily are directed at obtaining sufficient competent evidential matter to support conclusions that the segment information disclosed is the same information that is used by the CODM; that the basis on which the information was prepared is the basis disclosed and the disclosures are adequate; that aggregation criteria have been appropriately applied, if applicable; and that all significant segment items are reconciled to consolidated totals in the financial statements. The types of procedures needed to obtain such evidence are described in paragraphs .35 and .37 of this Interpretation. [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.34 Question—What procedures should the auditor consider performing to evaluate whether the entity appropriately identified its reportable operating segments in accordance with FASB Statement No. 131 [AC section S30]? [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.35 Interpretation—Procedures that the auditor should consider performing to evaluate whether the entity appropriately identified its reportable operating segments in accordance with FASB Statement No. 131 [AC section S30] include the following:

- a. Inquire of management concerning its methods of identifying operating segments, and consider the reasonableness of those methods in light of the characteristics of operating segments described in FASB Statement No. 131, paragraph 10 [AC section S30.109].
- b. Review corroborating evidence, such as information that the CODM uses to assess performance and allocate resources, material presented to the board of directors, minutes from the meetings of the board of directors, and information that management provides in management's discussion and analysis (MD&A), to financial analysts, and in the chairman's letter to shareholders, for consistency with financial statement disclosures.

- c. If the CODM uses more than one set of segment information for analyzing results of operations, consider whether management's identification of operating segments is in accordance with FASB Statement No. 131, paragraphs 13 through 15 [AC section S30.112–114].
- d. Assess whether the entity has applied aggregation criteria, if applicable, and quantitative thresholds described in FASB Statement No. 131, paragraphs 17 through 24 [AC section S30.116–123], appropriately to determine its reportable operating segments.
- e. Obtain management's written representation that operating segments are appropriately identified and disclosed in accordance with FASB Statement No. 131 [AC section S30].

[Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, June 2003.]

.36 Question—What procedures should the auditor consider performing to evaluate the adequacy and completeness of management's disclosures about reportable operating segments and about products and services, geographic areas, and major customers? [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.37 Interpretation—The tests of underlying accounting records normally applied in an audit of financial statements may provide evidence about management's disclosures of information about products and services, geographic areas, and major customers, as well as how management allocates the entity's revenue, expenses, and assets among operating segments. The auditor should consider applying the following procedures to obtain additional evidence about segment disclosures:

- a. Perform analytical procedures on the information about segments to identify and provide a basis for inquiry about relationships and individual items that appear to be unusual and may indicate misstatements. Analytical procedures, for purposes of this Interpretation, consist of comparison of the segment information with comparable information for the immediately preceding year and comparison of the segment information with any available related budgeted information for the current year. In applying these procedures, the auditor should consider the types of matters that in the preceding year have required accounting adjustments of segment information.
- b. Evaluate the adequacy of disclosures with regard to (i) general information; (ii) information about reported segment profit or loss, segment assets, and the basis of measurement; and (iii) reconciliations of the totals of segment revenues, reported profit or loss, assets and other significant items to corresponding enterprise amounts, as required in FASB Statement No. 131, paragraphs 26 through 32 [AC section S30.125–131].
- c. Review the reconciliations (including supporting schedules) of the totals of segment revenues, reported profit or loss, assets, and other significant items to consolidated totals to assess whether significant items are properly disclosed.
- d. If the composition of an entity's reportable segments changes as a result of an entity's reorganization of its internal structure, assess

whether segment information for prior periods has been restated, if practicable, in accordance with FASB Statement No. 131, paragraph 34 [AC section S30.133]. If restatement is not practicable, assess whether the segment information for the current period is stated under both the old basis and the new basis of segmentation in the year in which the change occurs, if practicable, in accordance with FASB Statement No. 131, paragraph 35 [AC section S30.134].

[Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.38 Question—What are the implications related to segment information for the auditor's report on the financial statements? [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.39 Interpretation—The auditor's standard report on financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles implicitly applies to segment information included in those statements in the same manner that it applies to other informative disclosures in the financial statements. The auditor's standard report would not refer to segment information unless the audit revealed a misstatement or omission relating to the segment information that is material in relation to the financial statements taken as a whole or the auditor was unable to apply the auditing procedures that he or she considered necessary in the circumstances. The auditor should consider qualitative as well as quantitative factors in evaluating whether such a matter is material to the financial statements taken as a whole. The significance of a matter to a particular entity (for example, a misstatement of the revenue and operating profit of a relatively small segment that is represented by management to be important to the future profitability of the entity), the pervasiveness of a matter (for example, whether it affects the amounts and presentation of numerous items in the segment information), and the impact of a matter (for example, whether it distorts the trends reflected in the segment information) should all be considered in judging whether a matter relating to segment information is material to the financial statements taken as a whole. Accordingly, situations may arise in practice where the auditor will conclude that a matter relating to segment information is qualitatively material even though, in his or her judgment, it is quantitatively immaterial to the financial statements taken as a whole. [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.40 If the auditor concludes that an omission or misstatement of segment information is material to the financial statements taken as a whole, he or she should consider the reporting guidance in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .35 through .42, relating to departures from generally accepted accounting principles. If the auditor has been unable to perform auditing procedures on segment information that he or she considers necessary, the auditor should consider the reporting guidance in section 508.22 through .26 relating to scope limitations. [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

.41 Auditors are not required to refer in their audit reports (a) to changes required by the implementation of FASB Statement No. 131 [AC section S30] or (b) to subsequent changes in operating segments, provided that the financial statements clearly disclose that the information presented in segment disclosures for earlier periods has been restated, where applicable. Such disclosure would be similar to that for reclassification of prior-year financial information

made for comparative purposes. In financial statements where segment information for earlier periods has not been restated, auditors are not required to refer in their audit reports to the variance in disclosure between the comparative periods, provided the financial statements clearly disclose why the earlier periods have not been restated. [Paragraph renumbered by the amendment to Interpretation No. 2, April 2003.]

[Issue Date: August, 1998; Revised: April, 2003.]

AU Section 328

Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures

Source: SAS No. 101.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after June 15, 2003, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction

.01 The purpose of this section is to establish standards and provide guidance on auditing fair value measurements and disclosures contained in financial statements. In particular, this section addresses audit considerations relating to the measurement and disclosure of assets, liabilities, and specific components of equity presented or disclosed at fair value in financial statements. Fair value measurements of assets, liabilities, and components of equity may arise from both the initial recording of transactions and later changes in value. Changes in fair value measurements that occur over time may be treated in different ways under generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). For example, GAAP may require that some fair value changes be reflected in net income and that other fair value changes be reflected in other comprehensive income and equity.

.02 While this section provides guidance on auditing fair value measurements and disclosures, evidence obtained from other audit procedures also may provide evidence relevant to the measurement and disclosure of fair values. For example, inspection procedures to verify existence of an asset measured at fair value also may provide relevant evidence about its valuation, such as the physical condition of the asset.

.03 The auditor should obtain sufficient competent audit evidence to provide reasonable assurance that fair value measurements and disclosures are in conformity with GAAP. GAAP requires that certain items be measured at fair value. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 7, *Using Cash Flow Information and Present Value in Accounting Measurements*, defines the fair value of an asset (liability) as “the amount at which that asset (or liability) could be bought (or incurred) or sold (or settled) in a current transaction between willing parties, that is, other than in a forced or liquidation sale.”¹ Although GAAP may not

¹ Generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) contain various definitions of fair value. However, all of the definitions reflect the concepts in the definition that appears in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 7, *Using Cash Flow Information and Present Value in Accounting Measurements*. For example, Governmental Accounting Standards Board Statement of Governmental Accounting Standards No. 31, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Certain Investments and for External Investment Pools*, defines fair value as “the amount at which an investment could be exchanged in a current transaction between willing parties, other than in a forced or liquidation sale.”

prescribe the method for measuring the fair value of an item, it expresses a preference for the use of observable market prices to make that determination. In the absence of observable market prices, GAAP requires fair value to be based on the best information available in the circumstances.

.04 Management is responsible for making the fair value measurements and disclosures included in the financial statements. As part of fulfilling its responsibility, management needs to establish an accounting and financial reporting process for determining the fair value measurements and disclosures, select appropriate valuation methods, identify and adequately support any significant assumptions used, prepare the valuation, and ensure that the presentation and disclosure of the fair value measurements are in accordance with GAAP.

.05 Fair value measurements for which observable market prices are not available are inherently imprecise. That is because, among other things, those fair value measurements may be based on assumptions about future conditions, transactions, or events whose outcome is uncertain and will therefore be subject to change over time. The auditor's consideration of such assumptions is based on information available to the auditor at the time of the audit. The auditor is not responsible for predicting future conditions, transactions, or events that, had they been known at the time of the audit, may have had a significant effect on management's actions or management's assumptions underlying the fair value measurements and disclosures.²

.06 Assumptions used in fair value measurements are similar in nature to those required when developing other accounting estimates. However, if observable market prices are not available, GAAP requires that valuation methods incorporate assumptions that marketplace participants would use in their estimates of fair value whenever that information is available without undue cost and effort. If information about market assumptions is not available, an entity may use its own assumptions as long as there are no contrary data indicating that marketplace participants would use different assumptions. These concepts generally are not relevant for accounting estimates made under measurement bases other than fair value. Section 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*, provides guidance on auditing accounting estimates in general. This section addresses considerations similar to those in section 342 as well as others in the specific context of fair value measurements and disclosures in accordance with GAAP.

.07 GAAP requires or permits a variety of fair value measurements and disclosures in financial statements. GAAP also varies in the level of guidance that it provides on measuring fair values and disclosures. While this section provides guidance on auditing fair value measurements and disclosures, it does not address specific types of assets, liabilities, components of equity, transactions, or industry-specific practices.³

.08 The measurement of fair value may be relatively simple for certain assets or liabilities, for example, investments that are bought and sold in active markets that provide readily available and reliable information on the prices at which actual exchanges occur. For those items, the existence of published

² For purposes of this section, management's assumptions include assumptions developed by management under the guidance of the board of directors and assumptions developed by a specialist engaged or employed by management.

³ See, for example, section 332, *Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities*.

price quotations in an active market is the best evidence of fair value. The measurement of fair value for other assets or liabilities may be more complex. A specific asset may not have an observable market price or may possess such characteristics that it becomes necessary for management to estimate its fair value based on the best information available in the circumstances (for example, a complex derivative financial instrument). The estimation of fair value may be achieved through the use of a valuation method (for example, a model premised on discounting of estimated future cash flows).

Understanding the Entity's Process for Determining Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures and the Relevant Controls, and Assessing Risk

.09 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the entity's process for determining fair value measurements and disclosures and of the relevant controls sufficient to develop an effective audit approach.

.10 Management is responsible for establishing an accounting and financial reporting process for determining fair value measurements. In some cases, the measurement of fair value and therefore the process set up by management to determine fair value may be simple and reliable. For example, management may be able to refer to published price quotations in an active market to determine fair value for marketable securities held by the entity. Some fair value measurements, however, are inherently more complex than others and involve uncertainty about the occurrence of future events or their outcome, and therefore assumptions that may involve the use of judgment need to be made as part of the measurement process.

.11 Section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, as amended, requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of each of the five components of internal control sufficient to plan the audit. In the specific context of this section, the auditor obtains such an understanding related to the determination of the entity's fair value measurements and disclosures in order to plan the nature, timing, and extent of the audit procedures.

.12 When obtaining an understanding of the entity's process for determining fair value measurements and disclosures, the auditor considers, for example:

- Controls over the process used to determine fair value measurements, including, for example, controls over data and the segregation of duties between those committing the entity to the underlying transactions and those responsible for undertaking the valuations.
- The expertise and experience of those persons determining the fair value measurements.
- The role that information technology has in the process.
- The types of accounts or transactions requiring fair value measurements or disclosures (for example, whether the accounts arise from the recording of routine and recurring transactions or whether they arise from nonroutine or unusual transactions).
- The extent to which the entity's process relies on a service organization to provide fair value measurements or the data that supports the measurement. When an entity uses a service organization, the auditor considers the requirements of section 324, *Service Organizations*, as amended.

- The extent to which the entity engages or employs specialists in determining fair value measurements and disclosures.
- The significant management assumptions used in determining fair value.
- The documentation supporting management's assumptions.
- The process used to develop and apply management assumptions, including whether management used available market information to develop the assumptions.
- The process used to monitor changes in management's assumptions.
- The integrity of change controls and security procedures for valuation models and relevant information systems, including approval processes.
- The controls over the consistency, timeliness, and reliability of the data used in valuation models.

.13 The auditor uses his or her understanding of the entity's process, including its complexity, and of the controls when assessing the risk of material misstatement. Based on that risk assessment, the auditor determines the nature, timing, and extent of the audit procedures. The risk of material misstatement may increase as the accounting and financial reporting requirements for fair value measurements become more complex.

.14 Section 319 discusses the inherent limitations of internal control. As fair value determinations often involve subjective judgments by management, this may affect the nature of controls that are capable of being implemented, including the possibility of management override of controls (see section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*). The auditor considers the inherent limitations of internal control in such circumstances in assessing control risk.

Evaluating Conformity of Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures With GAAP

.15 The auditor should evaluate whether the fair value measurements and disclosures in the financial statements are in conformity with GAAP. The auditor's understanding of the requirements of GAAP and knowledge of the business and industry, together with the results of other audit procedures, are used to evaluate the accounting for assets or liabilities requiring fair value measurements, and the disclosures about the basis for the fair value measurements and significant uncertainties related thereto.

.16 The evaluation of the entity's fair value measurements and of the audit evidence depends, in part, on the auditor's knowledge of the nature of the business. This is particularly true where the asset or liability or the valuation method is highly complex. For example, derivative financial instruments may be highly complex, with a risk that differing assumptions used in determining fair values will result in different conclusions. The measurement of the fair value of some items, for example "in process research and development" or intangible assets acquired in a business combination, may involve special considerations that are affected by the nature of the entity and its operations. Also, the auditor's knowledge of the business, together with the results of other audit procedures, may help identify assets for which management should assess the need to recognize an impairment loss under applicable GAAP.

.17 The auditor should evaluate management's intent to carry out specific courses of action where intent is relevant to the use of fair value measurements, the related requirements involving presentation and disclosures, and how changes in fair values are reported in financial statements. The auditor also should evaluate management's ability to carry out those courses of action. Management often documents plans and intentions relevant to specific assets or liabilities and GAAP may require it to do so. While the extent of evidence to be obtained about management's intent and ability is a matter of professional judgment, the auditor's procedures ordinarily include inquiries of management, with appropriate corroboration of responses, for example, by:

- Considering management's past history of carrying out its stated intentions with respect to assets or liabilities.
- Reviewing written plans and other documentation, including, where applicable, budgets, minutes, and other such items.
- Considering management's stated reasons for choosing a particular course of action.
- Considering management's ability to carry out a particular course of action given the entity's economic circumstances, including the implications of its contractual commitments.

.18 When there are no observable market prices and the entity estimates fair value using a valuation method, the auditor should evaluate whether the entity's method of measurement is appropriate in the circumstances. That evaluation requires the use of professional judgment. It also involves obtaining an understanding of management's rationale for selecting a particular method by discussing with management its reasons for selecting the valuation method. The auditor considers whether:

- a. Management has sufficiently evaluated and appropriately applied the criteria, if any, provided by GAAP to support the selected method.
- b. The valuation method is appropriate in the circumstances given the nature of the item being valued.
- c. The valuation method is appropriate in relation to the business, industry, and environment in which the entity operates.

Management may have determined that different valuation methods result in a range of significantly different fair value measurements. In such cases, the auditor evaluates how the entity has investigated the reasons for these differences in establishing its fair value measurements.

.19 The auditor should evaluate whether the entity's method for determining fair value measurements is applied consistently and if so, whether the consistency is appropriate considering possible changes in the environment or circumstances affecting the entity, or changes in accounting principles. If management has changed the method for determining fair value, the auditor considers whether management can adequately demonstrate that the method to which it has changed provides a more appropriate basis of measurement or whether the change is supported by a change in the GAAP requirements or a change in circumstances.⁴ For example, the introduction of an active market for an equity security may indicate that the use of the discounted cash flows method to estimate the fair value of the security is no longer appropriate.

⁴ Paragraph 16 of Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 20, *Accounting Changes*, states that the presumption that an entity should not change an accounting principle may be overcome only if the entity justifies the use of an alternative acceptable accounting principle on the basis that it is preferable.

Engaging a Specialist

.20 The auditor should consider whether to engage a specialist and use the work of that specialist as evidential matter in performing substantive tests to evaluate material financial statement assertions. The auditor may have the necessary skill and knowledge to plan and perform audit procedures related to fair values or may decide to use the work of a specialist. If the use of such a specialist is planned, the auditor should consider the guidance in section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*.

.21 When planning to use the work of a specialist in auditing fair value measurements, the auditor considers whether the specialist's understanding of the definition of fair value and the method that the specialist will use to determine fair value are consistent with those of management and with GAAP. For example, the method used by a specialist for estimating the fair value of real estate or a complex derivative may not be consistent with the measurement principles specified in GAAP. Accordingly, the auditor considers such matters, often through discussions with the specialist or by reading the report of the specialist.

.22 Section 336 provides that, while the reasonableness of assumptions and the appropriateness of the methods used and their application are the responsibility of the specialist, the auditor obtains an understanding of the assumptions and methods used. However, if the auditor believes the findings are unreasonable, he or she applies additional procedures as required in section 336.

Testing the Entity's Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures

.23 Based on the auditor's assessment of the risk of material misstatement, the auditor should test the entity's fair value measurements and disclosures. Because of the wide range of possible fair value measurements, from relatively simple to complex, and the varying levels of risk of material misstatement associated with the process for determining fair values, the auditor's planned audit procedures can vary significantly in nature, timing, and extent. For example, substantive tests of the fair value measurements may involve (a) testing management's significant assumptions, the valuation model, and the underlying data (see paragraphs .26 through .39), (b) developing independent fair value estimates for corroborative purposes (see paragraph .40), or (c) reviewing subsequent events and transactions (see paragraphs .41 and .42).

.24 Some fair value measurements are inherently more complex than others. This complexity arises either because of the nature of the item being measured at fair value or because of the valuation method used to determine fair value. For example, in the absence of quoted prices in an active market, an estimate of a security's fair value may be based on valuation methods such as the discounted cash flow method or the transactions method. Complex fair value measurements normally are characterized by greater uncertainty regarding the reliability of the measurement process. This greater uncertainty may be a result of:

- The length of the forecast period
- The number of significant and complex assumptions associated with the process

- A higher degree of subjectivity associated with the assumptions and factors used in the process
- A higher degree of uncertainty associated with the future occurrence or outcome of events underlying the assumptions used
- Lack of objective data when highly subjective factors are used

.25 The auditor uses both the understanding of management's process for determining fair value measurements and his or her assessment of the risk of material misstatement to determine the nature, timing, and extent of the audit procedures. The following are examples of considerations in the development of audit procedures:

- The fair value measurement (for example, a valuation by an independent appraiser) may be made at a date that does not coincide with the date at which the entity is required to measure and report that information in its financial statements. In such cases, the auditor obtains evidence that management has taken into account the effect of events, transactions, and changes in circumstances occurring between the date of the fair value measurement and the reporting date.
- Collateral often is assigned for certain types of investments in debt instruments that either are required to be measured at fair value or are evaluated for possible impairment. If the collateral is an important factor in measuring the fair value of the investment or evaluating its carrying amount, the auditor obtains sufficient competent audit evidence regarding the existence, value, rights, and access to or transferability of such collateral, including consideration of whether all appropriate liens have been filed, and considers whether appropriate disclosures about the collateral have been made.
- In some situations, additional procedures, such as the inspection of an asset by the auditor, may be necessary to obtain sufficient competent audit evidence about the appropriateness of a fair value measurement. For example, inspection of the asset may be necessary to obtain information about the current physical condition of the asset relevant to its fair value, or inspection of a security may reveal a restriction on its marketability that may affect its value.

Testing Management's Significant Assumptions, the Valuation Model, and the Underlying Data

.26 The auditor's understanding of the reliability of the process used by management to determine fair value is an important element in support of the resulting amounts and therefore affects the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures. When testing the entity's fair value measurements and disclosures, the auditor evaluates whether:

- a. Management's assumptions are reasonable and reflect, or are not inconsistent with, market information (see paragraph .06).
- b. The fair value measurement was determined using an appropriate model, if applicable.
- c. Management used relevant information that was reasonably available at the time.

.27 Estimation methods and assumptions, and the auditor's consideration and comparison of fair value measurements determined in prior periods, if any, to results obtained in the current period, may provide evidence of the reliability of management's processes. However, the auditor also considers whether variances from the prior-period fair value measurements result from changes in market or economic circumstances.

.28 Where applicable, the auditor should evaluate whether the significant assumptions used by management in measuring fair value, taken individually and as a whole, provide a reasonable basis for the fair value measurements and disclosures in the entity's financial statements.

.29 Assumptions are integral components of more complex valuation methods, for example, valuation methods that employ a combination of estimates of expected future cash flows together with estimates of the values of assets or liabilities in the future, discounted to the present. Auditors pay particular attention to the significant assumptions underlying a valuation method and evaluate whether such assumptions are reasonable and reflect, or are not inconsistent with, market information (see paragraph .06).

.30 Specific assumptions will vary with the characteristics of the item being valued and the valuation approach used (for example, cost, market, or income). For example, where the discounted cash flows method (a method under the income approach) is used, there will be assumptions about the level of cash flows, the period of time used in the analysis, and the discount rate.

.31 Assumptions ordinarily are supported by differing types of evidence from internal and external sources that provide objective support for the assumptions used. The auditor evaluates the source and reliability of evidence supporting management's assumptions, including consideration of the assumptions in light of historical and market information.

.32 Audit procedures dealing with management's assumptions are performed in the context of the audit of the entity's financial statements. The objective of the audit procedures is therefore not intended to obtain sufficient competent audit evidence to provide an opinion on the assumptions themselves. Rather, the auditor performs procedures to evaluate whether the assumptions provide a reasonable basis for measuring fair values in the context of an audit of the financial statements taken as a whole.

.33 Identifying those assumptions that appear to be significant to the fair value measurement requires the exercise of judgment by management. The auditor focuses attention on the significant assumptions that management has identified. Generally, significant assumptions cover matters that materially affect the fair value measurement and may include those that are:

- a. Sensitive to variation or uncertainty in amount or nature. For example, assumptions about short-term interest rates may be less susceptible to significant variation compared to assumptions about long-term interest rates.
- b. Susceptible to misapplication or bias.

.34 The auditor considers the sensitivity of the valuation to changes in significant assumptions, including market conditions that may affect the value. Where applicable, the auditor encourages management to use techniques such as sensitivity analysis to help identify particularly sensitive assumptions. If management has not identified particularly sensitive assumptions, the auditor considers whether to employ techniques to identify those assumptions.

.35 The evaluation of whether the assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the fair value measurements relates to the whole set of assumptions as well as to each assumption individually. Assumptions are frequently interdependent and therefore need to be internally consistent. A particular assumption that may appear reasonable when taken in isolation may not be reasonable when used in conjunction with other assumptions. The auditor considers whether management has identified the significant assumptions and factors influencing the measurement of fair value.

.36 To be reasonable, the assumptions on which the fair value measurements are based (for example, the discount rate used in calculating the present value of future cash flows),⁵ individually and taken as a whole, need to be realistic and consistent with:

- a. The general economic environment, the economic environment of the specific industry, and the entity's economic circumstances;
- b. Existing market information;
- c. The plans of the entity, including what management expects will be the outcome of specific objectives and strategies;
- d. Assumptions made in prior periods, if appropriate;
- e. Past experience of, or previous conditions experienced by, the entity to the extent currently applicable;
- f. Other matters relating to the financial statements, for example, assumptions used by management in accounting estimates for financial statement accounts other than those relating to fair value measurements and disclosures; and
- g. The risk associated with cash flows, if applicable, including the potential variability in the amount and timing of the cash flows and the related effect on the discount rate.

Where assumptions are reflective of management's intent and ability to carry out specific courses of action, the auditor considers whether they are consistent with the entity's plans and past experience.

.37 If management relies on historical financial information in the development of assumptions, the auditor considers the extent to which such reliance is justified. However, historical information might not be representative of future conditions or events, for example, if management intends to engage in new activities or circumstances change.

.38 For items valued by the entity using a valuation model, the auditor does not function as an appraiser and is not expected to substitute his or her judgment for that of the entity's management. Rather, the auditor reviews the model and evaluates whether the assumptions used are reasonable and the model is appropriate considering the entity's circumstances. For example, it may be inappropriate to use discounted cash flows for valuing an equity investment in a start-up enterprise if there are no current revenues on which to base the forecast of future earnings or cash flows.

.39 The auditor should test the data used to develop the fair value measurements and disclosures and evaluate whether the fair value measurements have been properly determined from such data and management's assumptions. Specifically, the auditor evaluates whether the data on which the

⁵ The auditor also should consider requirements of GAAP that may influence the selection of assumptions (see FASB Concepts Statement No. 7).

fair value measurements are based, including the data used in the work of a specialist, is accurate, complete, and relevant; and whether fair value measurements have been properly determined using such data and management's assumptions. The auditor's tests also may include, for example, procedures such as verifying the source of the data, mathematical recomputation of inputs, and reviewing of information for internal consistency, including whether such information is consistent with management's intent and ability to carry out specific courses of action discussed in paragraph .17.

Developing Independent Fair Value Estimates for Corroborative Purposes

.40 The auditor may make an independent estimate of fair value (for example, by using an auditor-developed model) to corroborate the entity's fair value measurement.⁶ When developing an independent estimate using management's assumptions, the auditor evaluates those assumptions as discussed in paragraphs .28 to .37. Instead of using management's assumptions, the auditor may develop his or her own assumptions to make a comparison with management's fair value measurements. In that situation, the auditor nevertheless understands management's assumptions. The auditor uses that understanding to ensure that his or her independent estimate takes into consideration all significant variables and to evaluate any significant difference from management's estimate. The auditor also should test the data used to develop the fair value measurements and disclosures as discussed in paragraph .39.

Reviewing Subsequent Events and Transactions

.41 Events and transactions that occur after the balance-sheet date but before completion of fieldwork (for example, a sale of an investment shortly after the balance-sheet date), may provide audit evidence regarding management's fair value measurements as of the balance-sheet date.⁷ In such circumstances, the audit procedures described in paragraphs .26 through .40 may be minimized or unnecessary because the subsequent event or transaction can be used to substantiate the fair value measurement.

.42 Some subsequent events or transactions may reflect changes in circumstances occurring after the balance-sheet date and thus do not constitute competent evidence of the fair value measurement at the balance-sheet date (for example, the prices of actively traded marketable securities that change after the balance-sheet date). When using a subsequent event or transaction to substantiate a fair value measurement, the auditor considers only those events or transactions that reflect circumstances existing at the balance-sheet date.

Disclosures About Fair Values

.43 The auditor should evaluate whether the disclosures about fair values made by the entity are in conformity with GAAP.⁸ Disclosure of fair value information is an important aspect of financial statements. Often, fair value disclosure is required because of the relevance to users in the evaluation of an

⁶ See section 329, *Analytical Procedures*.

⁷ The auditor's consideration of a subsequent event or transaction, as contemplated in this paragraph, is a substantive test and thus differs from the review of subsequent events performed pursuant to section 560, *Subsequent Events*.

⁸ See also section 431, *Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements*.

entity's performance and financial position. In addition to the fair value information required under GAAP, some entities disclose voluntary additional fair value information in the notes to the financial statements.

.44 When auditing fair value measurements and related disclosures included in the notes to the financial statements, whether required by GAAP or disclosed voluntarily, the auditor ordinarily performs essentially the same types of audit procedures as those employed in auditing a fair value measurement recognized in the financial statements. The auditor obtains sufficient competent audit evidence that the valuation principles are appropriate under GAAP and are being consistently applied, and that the method of estimation and significant assumptions used are adequately disclosed in accordance with GAAP.

.45 The auditor evaluates whether the entity has made adequate disclosures about fair value information. If an item contains a high degree of measurement uncertainty, the auditor assesses whether the disclosures are sufficient to inform users of such uncertainty.⁹

.46 When disclosure of fair value information under GAAP is omitted because it is not practicable to determine fair value with sufficient reliability, the auditor evaluates the adequacy of disclosures required in these circumstances. If the entity has not appropriately disclosed fair value information required by GAAP, the auditor evaluates whether the financial statements are materially misstated.

Evaluating the Results of Audit Procedures

.47 The auditor should evaluate the sufficiency and competence of the audit evidence obtained from auditing fair value measurements and disclosures as well as the consistency of that evidence with other audit evidence obtained and evaluated during the audit. The auditor's evaluation of whether the fair value measurements and disclosures in the financial statements are in conformity with GAAP is performed in the context of the financial statements taken as a whole (see section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, paragraphs .36 through .41).

Management Representations

.48 Section 333, *Management Representations*, requires that the independent auditor obtain written representations from management as a part of an audit of financial statements performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and provides guidance concerning the representations to be obtained. The auditor ordinarily should obtain written representations from management regarding the reasonableness of significant assumptions, including whether they appropriately reflect management's intent and ability to carry out specific courses of action on behalf of the entity where relevant to the use of fair value measurements or disclosures.

.49 Depending on the nature, materiality, and complexity of fair values, management representations about fair value measurements and disclosures contained in the financial statements also may include representations about:

- The appropriateness of the measurement methods, including related assumptions, used by management in determining fair value and the consistency in application of the methods.

⁹ See Statement of Position 94-6, *Disclosure of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties*.

- The completeness and adequacy of disclosures related to fair values.
- Whether subsequent events require adjustment to the fair value measurements and disclosures included in the financial statements.

Communication With Audit Committees

.50 Section 380, *Communication With Audit Committees*, requires auditors to determine that certain matters related to the conduct of an audit are communicated to audit committees. Certain accounting estimates are particularly sensitive because of their significance to the financial statements and because of the possibility that future events affecting them may differ markedly from management's current judgments. The auditor should determine that the audit committee is informed about the process used by management in formulating particularly sensitive accounting estimates, including fair value estimates, and about the basis for the auditor's conclusions regarding the reasonableness of those estimates. For example, the auditor considers communicating the nature of significant assumptions used in fair value measurements, the degree of subjectivity involved in the development of the assumptions, and the relative materiality of the items being measured at fair value to the financial statements as a whole. The auditor considers the guidance contained in section 380 when determining the nature and form of communication.

Effective Date

.51 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after June 15, 2003. Earlier application of the provisions of this section is permitted.

AU Section 329***Analytical Procedures***

(Supersedes section 318)

Source: SAS No. 56; SAS No. 96.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 This section provides guidance on the use of analytical procedures and requires the use of analytical procedures in the planning and overall review stages of all audits.

.02 Analytical procedures are an important part of the audit process and consist of evaluations of financial information made by a study of plausible relationships among both financial and nonfinancial data. Analytical procedures range from simple comparisons to the use of complex models involving many relationships and elements of data. A basic premise underlying the application of analytical procedures is that plausible relationships among data may reasonably be expected to exist and continue in the absence of known conditions to the contrary. Particular conditions that can cause variations in these relationships include, for example, specific unusual transactions or events, accounting changes, business changes, random fluctuations, or misstatements.

.03 Understanding financial relationships is essential in planning and evaluating the results of analytical procedures, and generally requires knowledge of the client and the industry or industries in which the client operates. An understanding of the purposes of analytical procedures and the limitations of those procedures is also important. Accordingly, the identification of the relationships and types of data used, as well as conclusions reached when recorded amounts are compared to expectations, requires judgment by the auditor.

.04 Analytical procedures are used for the following purposes:

- a.* To assist the auditor in planning the nature, timing, and extent of other auditing procedures
- b.* As a substantive test to obtain evidential matter about particular assertions related to account balances or classes of transactions
- c.* As an overall review of the financial information in the final review stage of the audit

Analytical procedures should be applied to some extent for the purposes referred to in (a) and (c) above for all audits of financial statements made in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. In addition, in some cases, analytical procedures can be more effective or efficient than tests of details for achieving particular substantive testing objectives.

.05 Analytical procedures involve comparisons of recorded amounts, or ratios developed from recorded amounts, to expectations developed by the auditor. The auditor develops such expectations by identifying and using plausible

relationships that are reasonably expected to exist based on the auditor's understanding of the client and of the industry in which the client operates. Following are examples of sources of information for developing expectations:

- a. Financial information for comparable prior period(s) giving consideration to known changes
- b. Anticipated results—for example, budgets, or forecasts including extrapolations from interim or annual data
- c. Relationships among elements of financial information within the period
- d. Information regarding the industry in which the client operates—for example, gross margin information
- e. Relationships of financial information with relevant nonfinancial information

Analytical Procedures in Planning the Audit

.06 The purpose of applying analytical procedures in planning the audit is to assist in planning the nature, timing, and extent of auditing procedures that will be used to obtain evidential matter for specific account balances or classes of transactions. To accomplish this, the analytical procedures used in planning the audit should focus on (a) enhancing the auditor's understanding of the client's business and the transactions and events that have occurred since the last audit date, and (b) identifying areas that may represent specific risks relevant to the audit. Thus, the objective of the procedures is to identify such things as the existence of unusual transactions and events, and amounts, ratios and trends that might indicate matters that have financial statement and audit planning ramifications.

.07 Analytical procedures used in planning the audit generally use data aggregated at a high level. Furthermore, the sophistication, extent and timing of the procedures, which are based on the auditor's judgment, may vary widely depending on the size and complexity of the client. For some entities, the procedures may consist of reviewing changes in account balances from the prior to the current year using the general ledger or the auditor's preliminary or unadjusted working trial balance. In contrast, for other entities, the procedures might involve an extensive analysis of quarterly financial statements. In both cases, the analytical procedures, combined with the auditor's knowledge of the business, serve as a basis for additional inquiries and effective planning.

.08 Although analytical procedures used in planning the audit often use only financial data, sometimes relevant nonfinancial information is considered as well. For example, number of employees, square footage of selling space, volume of goods produced, and similar information may contribute to accomplishing the purpose of the procedures.

Analytical Procedures Used as Substantive Tests

.09 The auditor's reliance on substantive tests to achieve an audit objective related to a particular assertion¹ may be derived from tests of details, from

¹ Assertions are representations by management that are embodied in financial statement components. See section 326, *Evidential Matter*.

analytical procedures, or from a combination of both. The decision about which procedure or procedures to use to achieve a particular audit objective is based on the auditor's judgment on the expected effectiveness and efficiency of the available procedures.

.10 The auditor considers the level of assurance, if any, he wants from substantive testing for a particular audit objective and decides, among other things, which procedure, or combination of procedures, can provide that level of assurance. For some assertions, analytical procedures are effective in providing the appropriate level of assurance. For other assertions, however, analytical procedures may not be as effective or efficient as tests of details in providing the desired level of assurance.

.11 The expected effectiveness and efficiency of an analytical procedure in identifying potential misstatements depends on, among other things, (a) the nature of the assertion, (b) the plausibility and predictability of the relationship, (c) the availability and reliability of the data used to develop the expectation, and (d) the precision of the expectation.

Nature of Assertion

.12 Analytical procedures may be effective and efficient tests for assertions in which potential misstatements would not be apparent from an examination of the detailed evidence or in which detailed evidence is not readily available. For example, comparisons of aggregate salaries paid with the number of personnel may indicate unauthorized payments that may not be apparent from testing individual transactions. Differences from expected relationships may also indicate potential omissions when independent evidence that an individual transaction should have been recorded may not be readily available.

Plausibility and Predictability of the Relationship

.13 It is important for the auditor to understand the reasons that make relationships plausible because data sometimes appear to be related when they are not, which could lead the auditor to erroneous conclusions. In addition, the presence of an unexpected relationship can provide important evidence when appropriately scrutinized.

.14 As higher levels of assurance are desired from analytical procedures, more predictable relationships are required to develop the expectation. Relationships in a stable environment are usually more predictable than relationships in a dynamic or unstable environment. Relationships involving income statement accounts tend to be more predictable than relationships involving only balance sheet accounts since income statement accounts represent transactions over a period of time, whereas balance sheet accounts represent amounts as of a point in time. Relationships involving transactions subject to management discretion are sometimes less predictable. For example, management may elect to incur maintenance expense rather than replace plant and equipment, or they may delay advertising expenditures.

Availability and Reliability of Data

.15 Data may or may not be readily available to develop expectations for some assertions. For example, to test the completeness assertion, expected sales for some entities might be developed from production statistics or square feet of selling space. For other entities, data relevant to the assertion of completeness of sales may not be readily available, and it may be more effective or efficient to use the details of shipping records to test that assertion.

.16 The auditor obtains assurance from analytical procedures based upon the consistency of the recorded amounts with expectations developed from data derived from other sources. The reliability of the data used to develop the expectations should be appropriate for the desired level of assurance from the analytical procedure. The auditor should assess the reliability of the data by considering the source of the data and the conditions under which it was gathered, as well as other knowledge the auditor may have about the data. The following factors influence the auditor's consideration of the reliability of data for purposes of achieving audit objectives:

- Whether the data was obtained from independent sources outside the entity or from sources within the entity
- Whether sources within the entity were independent of those who are responsible for the amount being audited
- Whether the data was developed under a reliable system with adequate controls
- Whether the data was subjected to audit testing in the current or prior year
- Whether the expectations were developed using data from a variety of sources

Precision of the Expectation

.17 The expectation should be precise enough to provide the desired level of assurance that differences that may be potential material misstatements, individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, would be identified for the auditor to investigate (see paragraph .20). As expectations become more precise, the range of expected differences becomes narrower and, accordingly, the likelihood increases that significant differences from the expectations are due to misstatements. The precision of the expectation depends on, among other things, the auditor's identification and consideration of factors that significantly affect the amount being audited and the level of detail of data used to develop the expectation.

.18 Many factors can influence financial relationships. For example, sales are affected by prices, volume and product mix. Each of these, in turn, may be affected by a number of factors, and offsetting factors can obscure misstatements. More effective identification of factors that significantly affect the relationship is generally needed as the desired level of assurance from analytical procedures increases.

.19 Expectations developed at a detailed level generally have a greater chance of detecting misstatement of a given amount than do broad comparisons. Monthly amounts will generally be more effective than annual amounts and comparisons by location or line of business usually will be more effective than company-wide comparisons. The level of detail that is appropriate will be influenced by the nature of the client, its size and its complexity. Generally, the risk that material misstatement could be obscured by offsetting factors increases as a client's operations become more complex and more diversified. Disaggregation helps reduce this risk.

Investigation and Evaluation of Significant Differences

.20 In planning the analytical procedures as a substantive test, the auditor should consider the amount of difference from the expectation that can be accepted without further investigation. This consideration is influenced

primarily by materiality and should be consistent with the level of assurance desired from the procedures. Determination of this amount involves considering the possibility that a combination of misstatements in the specific account balances, or class of transactions, or other balances or classes could aggregate to an unacceptable amount.²

.21 The auditor should evaluate significant unexpected differences. Reconsidering the methods and factors used in developing the expectation and inquiry of management may assist the auditor in this regard. Management responses, however, should ordinarily be corroborated with other evidential matter. In those cases when an explanation for the difference cannot be obtained, the auditor should obtain sufficient evidence about the assertion by performing other audit procedures to satisfy himself as to whether the difference is a likely misstatement.³ In designing such other procedures, the auditor should consider that unexplained differences may indicate an increased risk of material misstatement. (See section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.)

Documentation of Substantive Analytical Procedures

.22 When an analytical procedure is used as the principal substantive test of a significant financial statement assertion, the auditor should document all of the following:

- a. The expectation, where that expectation is not otherwise readily determinable from the documentation of the work performed, and factors considered in its development
- b. Results of the comparison of the expectation to the recorded amounts or ratios developed from recorded amounts
- c. Any additional auditing procedures performed in response to significant unexpected differences arising from the analytical procedure and the results of such additional procedures

[Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after May 15, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96.]

Analytical Procedures Used in the Overall Review

.23 The objective of analytical procedures used in the overall review stage of the audit is to assist the auditor in assessing the conclusions reached and in the evaluation of the overall financial statement presentation. A wide variety of analytical procedures may be useful for this purpose. The overall review would generally include reading the financial statements and notes and considering (a) the adequacy of evidence gathered in response to unusual or unexpected balances identified in planning the audit or in the course of the audit and (b) unusual or unexpected balances or relationships that were not previously identified. Results of an overall review may indicate that additional evidence may be needed. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96, January 2002.]

² See section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, paragraphs .24 through .26.

³ See section 312.35.

Effective Date

.24 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989. Early application of the provisions of this section is permissible. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96, January 2002.]

AU Section 330

The Confirmation Process

(Supersedes section 331.03–.08)

Source: SAS No. 67.

Effective for audits of fiscal periods ending after June 15, 1992, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction and Applicability

.01 This section provides guidance about the confirmation process in audits performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. This section—

- Defines the confirmation process (see paragraph .04).
- Discusses the relationship of confirmation procedures to the auditor's assessment of audit risk (see paragraphs .05 through .10).
- Describes certain factors that affect the reliability of confirmations (see paragraphs .16 through .27).
- Provides guidance on performing alternative procedures when responses to confirmation requests are not received (see paragraphs .31 and .32).
- Provides guidance on evaluating the results of confirmation procedures (see paragraph .33).
- Specifically addresses the confirmation of accounts receivable and supersedes section 331, *Inventories*, paragraphs .03–.08 and the portion of section 331.01 that addresses the confirmation of receivables (see paragraphs .34 and .35). This section does not supersede the portion of section 331.01 that addresses the observation of inventories.

.02 This section does not address the extent or timing of confirmation procedures. Guidance on the extent of audit procedures (that is, considerations involved in determining the number of items to confirm) is found in section 350, *Audit Sampling*, and section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*. Guidance on the timing of audit procedures is included in section 313, *Substantive Tests Prior to the Balance-Sheet Date*.

.03 In addition, this section does not address matters described in section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*, or in section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*.

Definition of the Confirmation Process

.04 Confirmation is the process of obtaining and evaluating a direct communication from a third party in response to a request for information about a particular item affecting financial statement assertions. The process includes—

- Selecting items for which confirmations are to be requested.

- Designing the confirmation request.
- Communicating the confirmation request to the appropriate third party.
- Obtaining the response from the third party.
- Evaluating the information, or lack thereof, provided by the third party about the audit objectives, including the reliability of that information.

Relationship of Confirmation Procedures to the Auditor's Assessment of Audit Risk

.05 Section 312 discusses the audit risk model. It describes the concept of assessing inherent and control risks, determining the acceptable level of detection risk, and designing an audit program to achieve an appropriately low level of audit risk. The auditor uses the audit risk assessment in determining the audit procedures to be applied, including whether they should include confirmation.

.06 Confirmation is undertaken to obtain evidence from third parties about financial statement assertions made by management. Section 326, *Evidential Matter*, states that, in general, it is presumed that “When evidential matter can be obtained from independent sources outside an entity, it provides greater assurance of reliability for the purposes of an independent audit than that secured solely within the entity.”

.07 The greater the combined assessed level of inherent and control risk, the greater the assurance that the auditor needs from substantive tests related to a financial statement assertion. Consequently, as the combined assessed level of inherent and control risk increases, the auditor designs substantive tests to obtain more or different evidence about a financial statement assertion. In these situations, the auditor might use confirmation procedures rather than or in conjunction with tests directed toward documents or parties within the entity.

.08 Unusual or complex transactions may be associated with high levels of inherent risk and control risk. If the entity has entered into an unusual or complex transaction and the combined assessed level of inherent and control risk is high, the auditor should consider confirming the terms of the transaction with the other parties in addition to examining documentation held by the entity. For example, if the combined assessed level of inherent and control risk over the occurrence of revenue related to an unusual, year-end sale is high, the auditor should consider confirming the terms of that sale.

.09 The auditor should assess whether the evidence provided by confirmations reduces audit risk for the related assertions to an acceptably low level. In making that assessment, the auditor should consider the materiality of the account balance and his or her inherent and control risk assessments. When the auditor concludes that evidence provided by confirmations alone is not sufficient, additional procedures should be performed. For example, to achieve an appropriately low level of audit risk related to the completeness and existence assertions for accounts receivable, an auditor may perform sales cutoff tests in addition to confirming accounts receivable.

.10 The lower the combined assessed level of inherent and control risk, the less assurance the auditor needs from substantive tests to form a conclusion about a financial statement assertion. Consequently, as the combined assessed level of inherent and control risk decreases for a particular assertion, the auditor may modify substantive tests by changing their nature from more effective (but costly) tests to less effective (and less costly) tests. For example, if the combined assessed level of inherent and control risk over the existence of cash is low, the auditor might limit substantive procedures to inspecting client-provided bank statements rather than confirming cash balances.

Assertions Addressed by Confirmations

.11 For the evidence obtained to be competent, it must be reliable and relevant. Factors affecting the reliability of confirmations are discussed in paragraphs .16 through .27. The relevance of evidence depends on its relationship to the financial statement assertion being addressed. Section 326 classifies financial statement assertions into five categories:

- a. Existence or occurrence
- b. Completeness
- c. Rights and obligations
- d. Valuation or allocation
- e. Presentation and disclosure

.12 Confirmation requests, if properly designed by the auditor, may address any one or more of those assertions. However, confirmations do not address all assertions equally well. Confirmation of goods held on consignment with the consignee would likely be more effective for the existence and the rights-and-obligations assertions than for the valuation assertion. Accounts receivable confirmations are likely to be more effective for the existence assertion than for the completeness and valuation assertions. Thus, when obtaining evidence for assertions not adequately addressed by confirmations, auditors should consider other audit procedures to complement confirmation procedures or to be used instead of confirmation procedures.

.13 Confirmation requests can be designed to elicit evidence that addresses the completeness assertion: that is, if properly designed, confirmations may provide evidence to aid in assessing whether all transactions and accounts that should be included in the financial statements are included. Their effectiveness in addressing the completeness assertion depends, in part, on whether the auditor selects from an appropriate population for testing. For example, when using confirmations to provide evidence about the completeness assertion for accounts payable, the appropriate population might be a list of vendors rather than the amounts recorded in the accounts payable subsidiary ledger.

.14 Some confirmation requests are not designed to elicit evidence regarding the completeness assertion. For example, the AICPA Standard Form to Confirm Account Balance Information With Financial Institutions is designed to substantiate information that is stated on the confirmation request; the form is not designed to provide assurance that information about accounts not listed on the form will be reported.

The Confirmation Process

.15 The auditor should exercise an appropriate level of professional skepticism throughout the confirmation process (see section 230, *Due Professional*

Care in the Performance of Work). Professional skepticism is important in designing the confirmation request, performing the confirmation procedures, and evaluating the results of the confirmation procedures.

Designing the Confirmation Request

.16 Confirmation requests should be tailored to the specific audit objectives. Thus, when designing the confirmation requests, the auditor should consider the assertion(s) being addressed and the factors that are likely to affect the reliability of the confirmations. Factors such as the form of the confirmation request, prior experience on the audit or similar engagements, the nature of the information being confirmed, and the intended respondent should affect the design of the requests because these factors have a direct effect on the reliability of the evidence obtained through confirmation procedures.

Form of Confirmation Request

.17 There are two types of confirmation requests: the positive form and the negative form. Some positive forms request the respondent to indicate whether he or she agrees with the information stated on the request. Other positive forms, referred to as blank forms, do not state the amount (or other information) on the confirmation request, but request the recipient to fill in the balance or furnish other information.

.18 Positive forms provide audit evidence only when responses are received from the recipients; nonresponses do not provide audit evidence about the financial statement assertions being addressed.

.19 Since there is a risk that recipients of a positive form of confirmation request with the information to be confirmed contained on it may sign and return the confirmation without verifying that the information is correct, blank forms may be used as one way to mitigate this risk. Thus, the use of blank confirmation requests may provide a greater degree of assurance about the information confirmed. However, blank forms might result in lower response rates because additional effort may be required of the recipients; consequently, the auditor may have to perform more alternative procedures.

.20 The negative form requests the recipient to respond only if he or she disagrees with the information stated on the request. Negative confirmation requests may be used to reduce audit risk to an acceptable level when (a) the combined assessed level of inherent and control risk is low, (b) a large number of small balances is involved, and (c) the auditor has no reason to believe that the recipients of the requests are unlikely to give them consideration. For example, in the examination of demand deposit accounts in a financial institution, it may be appropriate for an auditor to include negative confirmation requests with the customers' regular statements when the combined assessed level of inherent and control risk is low and the auditor has no reason to believe that the recipients will not consider the requests. The auditor should consider performing other substantive procedures to supplement the use of negative confirmations.

.21 Negative confirmation requests may generate responses indicating misstatements, and are more likely to do so if the auditor sends a large number of negative confirmation requests and such misstatements are widespread. The auditor should investigate relevant information provided on negative confirmations that have been returned to the auditor to determine the effect such information may have on the audit. If the auditor's investigation of re-

sponses to negative confirmation requests indicates a pattern of misstatements, the auditor should reconsider his or her combined assessed level of inherent and control risk and consider the effect on planned audit procedures.

.22 Although returned negative confirmations may provide evidence about the financial statement assertions, unreturned negative confirmation requests rarely provide significant evidence concerning financial statement assertions other than certain aspects of the existence assertion. For example, negative confirmations may provide some evidence of the existence of third parties if they are not returned with an indication that the addressees are unknown. However, unreturned negative confirmations do not provide explicit evidence that the intended third parties received the confirmation requests and verified that the information contained on them is correct.

Prior Experience

.23 In determining the effectiveness and efficiency of employing confirmation procedures, the auditor may consider information from prior years' audits or audits of similar entities. This information includes response rates, knowledge of misstatements identified during prior years' audits, and any knowledge of inaccurate information on returned confirmations. For example, if the auditor has experienced poor response rates to properly designed confirmation requests in prior audits, the auditor may instead consider obtaining audit evidence from other sources.

Nature of Information Being Confirmed

.24 When designing confirmation requests, the auditor should consider the types of information respondents will be readily able to confirm, since the nature of the information being confirmed may directly affect the competence of the evidence obtained as well as the response rate. For example, certain respondents' accounting systems may facilitate the confirmation of single transactions rather than of entire account balances. In addition, respondents may not be able to confirm the balances of their installment loans, but they may be able to confirm whether their payments are up-to-date, the amount of the payment, and the key terms of their loans.

.25 The auditor's understanding of the client's arrangements and transactions with third parties is key to determining the information to be confirmed. The auditor should obtain an understanding of the substance of such arrangements and transactions to determine the appropriate information to include on the confirmation request. The auditor should consider requesting confirmation of the terms of unusual agreements or transactions, such as bill and hold sales,¹ in addition to the amounts. The auditor also should consider whether there may be oral modifications to agreements, such as unusual payment terms or liberal rights of return. When the auditor believes there is a moderate or high degree of risk that there may be significant oral modifications, he or she should inquire about the existence and details of any such modifications to written agreements. One method of doing so is to confirm both the terms of the agreements and whether any oral modifications exist.

Respondent

.26 The auditor should direct the confirmation request to a third party who the auditor believes is knowledgeable about the information to be con-

¹ Bill and hold sales are sales of merchandise that are billed to customers before delivery and are held by the entity for the customers.

firmed. For example, to confirm a client's oral and written guarantees with a financial institution, the auditor should direct the request to a financial institution official who is responsible for the financial institution's relationship with the client or is knowledgeable about the transactions or arrangements.

.27 If information about the respondent's competence, knowledge, motivation, ability, or willingness to respond, or about the respondent's objectivity and freedom from bias with respect to the audited entity² comes to the auditor's attention, the auditor should consider the effects of such information on designing the confirmation request and evaluating the results, including determining whether other procedures are necessary. In addition, there may be circumstances (such as for significant, unusual year-end transactions that have a material effect on the financial statements or where the respondent is the custodian of a material amount of the audited entity's assets) in which the auditor should exercise a heightened degree of professional skepticism relative to these factors about the respondent. In these circumstances, the auditor should consider whether there is sufficient basis for concluding that the confirmation request is being sent to a respondent from whom the auditor can expect the response will provide meaningful and competent evidence.

Performing Confirmation Procedures

.28 During the performance of confirmation procedures, the auditor should maintain control over the confirmation requests and responses. Maintaining control³ means establishing direct communication between the intended recipient and the auditor to minimize the possibility that the results will be biased because of interception and alteration of the confirmation requests or responses.

.29 There may be situations in which the respondent, because of timeliness or other considerations, responds to a confirmation request other than in a written communication mailed to the auditor. When such responses are received, additional evidence may be required to support their validity. For example, facsimile responses involve risks because of the difficulty of ascertaining the sources of the responses. To restrict the risks associated with facsimile responses and treat the confirmations as valid audit evidence, the auditor should consider taking certain precautions, such as verifying the source and contents of a facsimile response in a telephone call to the purported sender. In addition, the auditor should consider requesting the purported sender to mail the *original* confirmation directly to the auditor. Oral confirmations should be documented in the workpapers. If the information in the oral confirmations is significant, the auditor should request the parties involved to submit written confirmation of the specific information directly to the auditor.

.30 When using confirmation requests other than the negative form, the auditor should generally follow up with a second and sometimes a third request to those parties from whom replies have not been received.

² Section 334, *Related Parties*, paragraphs .09 and .10, provide guidance on examining related-party transactions that have been identified by the auditor.

³ The need to maintain control does not preclude the use of internal auditors in the confirmation process. Section 322, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, provides guidance on considering the work of internal auditors and on using internal auditors to provide direct assistance to the auditor.

Alternative Procedures

.31 When the auditor has not received replies to positive confirmation requests, he or she should apply alternative procedures to the nonresponses to obtain the evidence necessary to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level. However, the omission of alternative procedures may be acceptable (a) when the auditor has not identified unusual qualitative factors or systematic characteristics related to the nonresponses, such as that all nonresponses pertain to year-end transactions, and (b) when testing for overstatement of amounts, the nonresponses in the aggregate, when projected as 100 percent misstatements to the population and added to the sum of all other unadjusted differences, would not affect the auditor's decision about whether the financial statements are materially misstated.

.32 The nature of alternative procedures varies according to the account and assertion in question. In the examination of accounts receivable, for example, alternative procedures may include examination of subsequent cash receipts (including matching such receipts with the actual items being paid), shipping documents, or other client documentation to provide evidence for the existence assertion. In the examination of accounts payable, for example, alternative procedures may include examination of subsequent cash disbursements, correspondence from third parties, or other records to provide evidence for the completeness assertion.

Evaluating the Results of Confirmation Procedures

.33 After performing any alternative procedures, the auditor should evaluate the combined evidence provided by the confirmations and the alternative procedures to determine whether sufficient evidence has been obtained about all the applicable financial statement assertions. In performing that evaluation, the auditor should consider (a) the reliability of the confirmations and alternative procedures; (b) the nature of any exceptions, including the implications, both quantitative and qualitative, of those exceptions; (c) the evidence provided by other procedures; and (d) whether additional evidence is needed. If the combined evidence provided by the confirmations, alternative procedures, and other procedures is not sufficient, the auditor should request additional confirmations or extend other tests, such as tests of details or analytical procedures.

Confirmation of Accounts Receivable

.34 For the purpose of this section, *accounts receivable* means—

- a. The entity's claims against customers that have arisen from the sale of goods or services in the normal course of business, and
- b. A financial institution's loans.

Confirmation of accounts receivable is a generally accepted auditing procedure. As discussed in paragraph .06, it is generally presumed that evidence obtained from third parties will provide the auditor with higher-quality audit evidence than is typically available from within the entity. Thus, there is a presumption that the auditor will request the confirmation of accounts receivable during an audit unless one of the following is true:

- Accounts receivable are immaterial to the financial statements.

- The use of confirmations would be ineffective.⁴
- The auditor's combined assessed level of inherent and control risk is low, and the assessed level, in conjunction with the evidence expected to be provided by analytical procedures or other substantive tests of details, is sufficient to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level for the applicable financial statement assertions. In many situations, both confirmation of accounts receivable and other substantive tests of details are necessary to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level for the applicable financial statement assertions.

.35 An auditor who has not requested confirmations in the examination of accounts receivable should document how he or she overcame this presumption.

Effective Date

.36 This section is effective for audits of fiscal periods ending after June 15, 1992. Early application of this section is permissible.

⁴ For example, if, based on prior years' audit experience or on experience with similar engagements, the auditor concludes that response rates to properly designed confirmation requests will be inadequate, or if responses are known or expected to be unreliable, the auditor may determine that the use of confirmations would be ineffective.

AU Section 331

*Inventories**

Source: SAS No. 1, section 331; SAS No. 43; SAS No. 67.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 Observation of inventories is a generally accepted auditing procedure. The independent auditor who issues an opinion when he has not employed them must bear in mind that he has the burden of justifying the opinion expressed. [As amended, effective for fiscal periods ending after June 15, 1992, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 67.]

.02 The purpose of this section is to provide guidelines for the independent auditor in observing inventories. This section relates only to observation of inventories and does not deal with other important auditing procedures which generally are required for the independent auditor to satisfy himself as to these assets. [Revised, December 1991, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 67.]

Receivables

[.03-.08] [Superseded November 1991 by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 67.]^[1, 2]

Inventories

.09 When inventory quantities are determined solely by means of a physical count, and all counts are made as of the balance-sheet date or as of a single date within a reasonable time before or after the balance-sheet date, it is ordinarily necessary for the independent auditor to be present at the time of count and, by suitable observation, tests, and inquiries, satisfy himself respecting the effectiveness of the methods of inventory-taking and the measure of reliance which may be placed upon the client's representations about the quantities and physical condition of the inventories.

.10 When the well-kept perpetual inventory records are checked by the client periodically by comparisons with physical counts, the auditor's observation procedures usually can be performed either during or after the end of the period under audit.

.11 In recent years, some companies have developed inventory controls or methods of determining inventories, including statistical sampling, which are highly effective in determining inventory quantities and which are sufficiently reliable to make unnecessary an annual physical count of each item of inventory. In such circumstances, the independent auditor must satisfy himself that

* Title amended, effective for audits of fiscal periods ending after June 15, 1992, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 67.

^[1, 2] [Superseded November 1991, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 67.]

the client's procedures or methods are sufficiently reliable to produce results substantially the same as those which would be obtained by a count of all items each year. The auditor must be present to observe such counts as he deems necessary and must satisfy himself as to the effectiveness of the counting procedures used. If statistical sampling methods are used by the client in the taking of the physical inventory, the auditor must be satisfied that the sampling plan is reasonable and statistically valid, that it has been properly applied, and that the results are reasonable in the circumstances. [Revised, June 1981, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 39.]

.12 When the independent auditor has not satisfied himself as to inventories in the possession of the client through the procedures described in paragraphs .09 through .11, tests of the accounting records alone will not be sufficient for him to become satisfied as to quantities; it will always be necessary for the auditor to make, or observe, some physical counts of the inventory and apply appropriate tests of intervening transactions. This should be coupled with inspection of the records of any client's counts and procedures relating to the physical inventory on which the balance-sheet inventory is based.

.13 The independent auditor may be asked to audit financial statements covering the current period and one or more periods for which he had not observed or made some physical counts of prior inventories. He may, nevertheless, be able to become satisfied as to such prior inventories through appropriate procedures, such as tests of prior transactions, reviews of the records of prior counts, and the application of gross profit tests, provided that he has been able to become satisfied as to the current inventory.

Inventories Held in Public Warehouses³

.14 If inventories are in the hands of public warehouses or other outside custodians, the auditor ordinarily would obtain direct confirmation in writing from the custodian. If such inventories represent a significant proportion of current or total assets, to obtain reasonable assurance with respect to their existence, the auditor should apply one or more of the following procedures as he considers necessary in the circumstances.

- a. Test the owner's procedures for investigating the warehouseman and evaluating the warehouseman's performance.
- b. Obtain an independent accountant's report on the warehouseman's control procedures relevant to custody of goods and, if applicable, pledging of receipts, or apply alternative procedures at the warehouse to gain reasonable assurance that information received from the warehouseman is reliable.
- c. Observe physical counts of the goods, if practicable and reasonable.
- d. If warehouse receipts have been pledged as collateral, confirm with lenders pertinent details of the pledged receipts (on a test basis, if appropriate).

[As amended, effective after August 31, 1982, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43.]

³ See section 901 for Special Report of Committee on Auditing Procedure.

Effect on the Auditor's Report

.15 For a discussion of the circumstances relating to receivables and inventories affecting the independent auditor's report, see sections 508.24 and 508.67. [As amended, effective for periods ending on or after December 31, 1974, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 2. Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, effective after August 1982.]

AU Section 332

Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities¹

(Supersedes SAS No. 81)

Source: SAS No. 92.

Effective for audits of financial statements for fiscal years ending on or after June 30, 2001. Early application is permitted.

Applicability

.01 This section provides guidance to auditors in planning and performing auditing procedures for assertions about derivative instruments, hedging activities, and investments in securities² that are made in an entity's financial statements.³ Those assertions⁴ are classified according to five broad categories that are discussed in section 326, *Evidential Matter*, paragraphs .03 through .08, and address the following:

- a. Existence or occurrence
- b. Completeness
- c. Rights and obligations
- d. Valuation or allocation
- e. Presentation and disclosure

Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities Included in the Scope of This Section

.02 The guidance in this section applies to derivative instruments, including certain derivative instruments embedded in other contracts (collectively referred to as derivatives), of all entities. This section uses the definition of derivative that is in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement

¹ The AICPA issued an Audit Guide concurrent with this section entitled *Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities* (the Guide). The Guide provides practical guidance for implementing this section.

² Throughout the remainder of this section, the word *security* or *securities* refers to an entity's investment in a security or securities.

³ The guidance provided in this section applies to audits of financial statements prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles or a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles. Such other bases of accounting are described in section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraph .04. References in this section to generally accepted accounting principles are intended to also refer to other comprehensive bases of accounting when the reference is relevant to the basis of accounting used.

⁴ Throughout the remainder of this section, the word *assertion* refers to an assertion made in an entity's financial statements.

of Financial Accounting Standards (Statement) No. 133, *Accounting for Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities*, as amended [AC section D50] (hereinafter referred to as FASB Statement No. 133). FASB Statement No. 133 addresses the accounting for derivatives that are either freestanding or embedded in contracts or agreements. For purposes of applying the guidance in this section, a derivative is a financial instrument or other contract with all three of the characteristics listed in FASB Statement No. 133, which are the following.

- a. It has (1) one or more underlyings and (2) one or more notional amounts or payment provisions or both. Those terms determine the amount of the settlement or settlements, and, in some cases, whether or not settlement is required.
- b. It requires no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors.
- c. Its terms require or permit net settlement, it can readily be settled net by a means outside the contract, or it provides for delivery of an asset that puts the recipient in a position not substantially different from net settlement.

.03 An entity may enter into a derivative⁵ for investment purposes or to designate it as a hedge of exposure to changes in fair value (referred to as a *fair value hedge*), exposure to variability in cash flows (referred to as a *cash flow hedge*), or foreign currency exposure. The guidance in this section applies to hedging activities in which the entity designates a derivative or a nonderivative financial instrument as a hedge of exposure for which FASB Statement No. 133 permits hedge accounting.

Securities Included in the Scope of This Section

.04 The guidance in this section applies to all securities. There are two types of securities—debt securities and equity securities. This section uses the definitions of debt security and equity security that are in FASB Statement No. 115, *Accounting for Certain Investments in Debt and Equity Securities* [AC section I80]. This section applies to debt and equity securities without regard to whether they are subject to the accounting requirements of FASB Statement No. 115. For example, it applies to assertions about securities accounted for under the equity method following the requirements of Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 18, *The Equity Method of Accounting for Investments in Common Stock* [AC section I82].

The Need for Special Skill or Knowledge to Plan and Perform Auditing Procedures

.05 The auditor may need special skill or knowledge to plan and perform auditing procedures for certain assertions about derivatives and securities. Examples of such auditing procedures and the special skill or knowledge required include—

⁵ To simplify the use of terminology, the remainder of this section often uses the term *derivative* to refer to both the derivative and the purpose for which the entity uses it.

- Obtaining an understanding of an entity's information system for derivatives and securities, including services provided by a service organization, which may require that the auditor have special skill or knowledge with respect to computer applications when significant information about derivatives and securities is transmitted, processed, maintained, or accessed electronically.
- Identifying controls placed in operation by a service organization that provides services to an entity that are part of the entity's information system for derivatives and securities, which may require that the auditor have an understanding of the operating characteristics of entities in a certain industry.
- Understanding the application of generally accepted accounting principles for assertions about derivatives, which might require that the auditor have special knowledge because of the complexity of those principles. In addition, a derivative may have complex features that require the auditor to have special knowledge to evaluate the measurement and disclosure of the derivative in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. For example, features embedded in contracts or agreements may require separate accounting as a derivative, and complex pricing structures may increase the complexity of the assumptions used in estimating the fair value of a derivative.
- Understanding the determination of the fair values of derivatives and securities, including the appropriateness of various types of valuation models and the reasonableness of key factors and assumptions, which may require knowledge of valuation concepts.
- Assessing inherent risk and control risk for assertions about derivatives used in hedging activities, which may require an understanding of general risk management concepts and typical asset/liability management strategies.

.06 The auditor may plan to seek the assistance of employees of the auditor's firm, or others outside the firm, with the necessary skill or knowledge. Section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, provides guidance on the use of individuals who serve as members of the audit team and assist the auditor in planning and performing auditing procedures. The auditor also may plan to use the work of a specialist. Section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*, provides guidance on the use of the work of specialists as evidential matter.

Audit Risk and Materiality

.07 Section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, provides guidance on the auditor's consideration of audit risk and materiality when planning and performing an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. It requires the auditor to design procedures to obtain reasonable assurance of detecting misstatements of assertions about derivatives and securities that, when aggregated with misstatements of other assertions, could cause the financial statements taken as a whole to be materially misstated. When designing such procedures, the auditor should consider the inherent risk and control risk for these assertions. The auditor may also consider the work performed by the entity's internal auditors in designing procedures. Guidance on considering the work performed by internal auditors is found in section 322, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*.

Inherent Risk Assessment

.08 The inherent risk for an assertion about a derivative or security is its susceptibility to a material misstatement, assuming there are no related controls. Examples of considerations that might affect the auditor's assessment of inherent risk for assertions about a derivative or security include the following.

- *Management's objectives.* Accounting requirements based on management's objectives may increase the inherent risk for certain assertions. For example, in response to management's objective of minimizing the risk of loss from changes in market conditions, the entity may enter into derivatives as hedges. The use of hedges is subject to the risk that market conditions will change in a manner other than expected when the hedge was implemented so that the hedge is no longer effective. That increases the inherent risk for certain assertions about the derivatives because in such circumstances continued application of hedge accounting would not be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.
- *The complexity of the features of the derivative or security.* The complexity of the features of the derivative or security may increase the complexity of measurement and disclosure considerations required by generally accepted accounting principles. For example, interest payments on a structured note may be based on two or more factors, such as one or more interest rates and the market price of certain equity securities. A formula may dictate the interaction of the factors, such as a prescribed interest rate less a multiple of another rate. The number and interaction of the factors may increase the inherent risk for assertions about the fair value of the note.
- *Whether the transaction that gave rise to the derivative or security involved the exchange of cash.* Derivatives that do not involve an initial exchange of cash are subject to an increased risk that they will not be identified for valuation and disclosure considerations. For example, a foreign exchange forward contract that is not recorded at its inception because the entity does not pay cash to enter into the contract is subject to an increased risk that it will not be identified for subsequent adjustment to fair value. Similarly, a stock warrant for a traded security that is donated to an entity is subject to an increased risk that it will not be identified for initial or continuing measurement at fair value.
- *The entity's experience with the derivative or security.* An entity's inexperience with a derivative or security increases the inherent risk for assertions about it. For example, under a new arrangement, an entity may pay a small deposit to enter into a futures contract for foreign currency to pay for purchases from an overseas supplier. The entity's inexperience with such derivatives may lead it to incorrectly account for the deposit, such as treating it as inventory cost, thereby increasing the risk that the contract will not be identified for subsequent adjustment to fair value.
- *Whether a derivative is freestanding or an embedded feature of an agreement.* Embedded derivatives are less likely to be identified by management, which increases the inherent risk for certain assertions. For example, an option to convert the principal outstanding under a loan agreement into equity securities is less likely to be identified for

valuation and disclosure considerations if it is a clause in a loan agreement than if it is a freestanding agreement. Similarly, a structured note may include a provision for payments related to changes in a stock index or commodities prices that requires separate accounting.

- **Whether external factors affect the assertion.** Assertions about derivatives and securities may be affected by a variety of risks related to external factors, such as—
 - *Credit risk*, which exposes the entity to the risk of loss as a result of the issuer of a debt security or the counterparty to a derivative failing to meet its obligation.
 - *Market risk*, which exposes the entity to the risk of loss from adverse changes in market factors that affect the fair value of a derivative or security, such as interest rates, foreign exchange rates, and market indexes for equity securities.
 - *Basis risk*, which exposes the entity to the risk of loss from ineffective hedging activities. Basis risk is the difference between the fair value (or cash flows) of the hedged item and the fair value (or cash flows) of the hedging derivative. The entity is subject to the risk that fair values (or cash flows) will change so that the hedge will no longer be effective.
 - *Legal risk*, which exposes the entity to the risk of loss from a legal or regulatory action that invalidates or otherwise precludes performance by one or both parties to the derivative or security.

Following are examples of how changes in external factors can affect assertions about derivatives and securities.

- The increase in credit risk associated with amounts due under debt securities issued by entities that operate in declining industries increases the inherent risk for valuation assertions about those securities.
- Significant changes in and the volatility of general interest rates increase the inherent risk for the valuation of derivatives whose value is significantly affected by interest rates.
- Significant changes in default rates and prepayments increase the inherent risk for the valuation of retained interests in a securitization.
- The fair value of a foreign currency forward contract will be affected by changes in the exchange rate, and the fair value of a put option for an available-for-sale security will be affected by changes in the fair value of the underlying security.
- **The evolving nature of derivatives and the applicable generally accepted accounting principles.** As new forms of derivatives are developed, interpretive accounting guidance for them may not be issued until after the derivatives are broadly used in the marketplace. In addition, generally accepted accounting principles for derivatives may be subject to frequent interpretation by various standard-setting bodies. Evolving interpretative guidance and its applicability increase the inherent risk for valuation and other assertions about existing forms of derivatives.
- **Significant reliance on outside parties.** An entity that relies on external expertise may be unable to appropriately challenge the specialist's methodology or assumptions. This may occur, for example, when a valuation specialist values a derivative.

- *Generally accepted accounting principles may require developing assumptions about future conditions.* As the number and subjectivity of those assumptions increase, the inherent risk of material misstatement increases for certain assertions. For example, the inherent risk for valuation assertions based on assumptions about debt securities whose value fluctuates with changes in prepayments (for example, interest-only strips) increases as the expected holding period lengthens. Similarly, the inherent risk for assertions about cash flow hedges fluctuates with the subjectivity of the assumptions about probability, timing, and amounts of future cash flows.

Control Risk Assessment

Obtaining an Understanding of Internal Control to Plan the Audit

.09 Section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of internal control that will enable the auditor to—

- a. Identify the types of potential misstatement of the assertions.
- b. Consider factors that affect the risk that the misstatements would be material to the financial statements.
- c. Design tests of controls, when applicable.
- d. Design substantive tests.

[Revised, May 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.10 Controls should be related to management's objectives for financial reporting, operations, and compliance.⁶ For example, to achieve its objectives, management of an entity with extensive derivatives transactions may implement controls that call for—

- a. Monitoring by a control staff that is fully independent of derivatives activities.
- b. Derivatives personnel to obtain, prior to exceeding limits, at least oral approval from members of senior management who are independent of derivatives activities.
- c. Senior management to properly address limit excesses and divergences from approved derivatives strategies.
- d. The accurate transmittal of derivatives positions to the risk measurement systems.
- e. The performance of appropriate reconciliations to ensure data integrity across the full range of derivatives, including any new or existing derivatives that may be monitored apart from the main processing networks.

⁶ The AICPA issued an Audit Guide concurrent with this section entitled *Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities* (the Guide). Chapter 5 of the Guide, "Control Risk Assessment," provides sample control objectives for derivatives, hedging activities, and securities which may be useful to auditors in assessing control risk for relevant assertions. Additionally, in 1996, The Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO) issued *Internal Control Issues in Derivatives Usage: An Information Tool for Considering the COSO Internal Control—Integrated Framework in Derivatives Applications*. Although the document precedes FASB Statement No. 133, its guidance may be useful to entities in developing controls over derivatives transactions and to auditors in assessing control risk for assertions about those transactions.

- f. Derivatives traders, risk managers, and senior management to define constraints on derivatives activities and justify identified excesses.
- g. Senior management, an independent group, or an individual that management designates to perform a regular review of the identified controls and financial results of the derivatives activities to determine whether controls are being effectively implemented and the entity's business objectives and strategies are being achieved.
- h. A review of limits in the context of changes in strategy, risk tolerance of the entity, and market conditions.

.11 The extent of the understanding of internal control over derivatives and securities obtained by the auditor depends on how much information the auditor needs to identify the types of potential misstatements, consider factors that affect the risk of material misstatement, design tests of controls when applicable, and design substantive tests. The understanding obtained may include controls over derivatives and securities transactions from their initiation to their inclusion in the financial statements. It may encompass controls placed in operation by the entity and by service organizations whose services are part of the entity's information system. Section 319.47 defines the information system as the procedures, whether automated or manual, and records established by an entity to initiate, record, process, and report entity transactions and to maintain accountability for the related assets, liabilities, and equity. Following the guidance in section 324, *Service Organizations*, a service organization's services are part of an entity's information system for derivatives and securities if they affect any of the following:

- a. How the entity's derivatives and securities transactions are initiated.
- b. The accounting records, supporting information, and specific accounts in the financial statements involved in the processing and reporting of the entity's derivatives and securities transactions
- c. The accounting processing involved from the initiation of those transactions to their inclusion in the financial statements, including electronic means (such as computers and electronic data interchange) used to transmit, process, maintain, and access information
- d. The process the entity uses to report information about derivatives and securities transactions in its financial statements, including significant accounting estimates and disclosures

[Revised, May 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.12 Examples of a service organization's services that would be part of an entity's information system include—

- The initiation of the purchase or sale of equity securities by a service organization acting as investment adviser or manager.
- Services that are ancillary to holding⁷ an entity's securities such as—
 - Collecting dividend and interest income and distributing that income to the entity.
 - Receiving notification of corporate actions.
 - Receiving notification of security purchase and sale transactions.

⁷ In this section, maintaining custody of securities, either in physical or electronic form, is referred to as *holding* securities, and performing ancillary services is referred to as *serving* securities.

- Receiving payments from purchasers and disbursing proceeds to sellers for security purchase and sale transactions.
- Maintaining records of securities transactions for the entity.
- A pricing service providing fair values of derivatives and securities through paper documents or electronic downloads that the entity uses to value its derivatives and securities for financial statement reporting.

.13 Examples of a service organization's services that would not be part of an entity's information system are the following:

- The execution by a securities broker of trades that are initiated by either the entity or its investment adviser
- The holding of an entity's securities

.14 An auditor who needs information about the nature of a service organization's services that are part of an entity's information system for derivatives and securities transactions, or its controls over those services, to plan the audit may be able to gather the information from a variety of sources, such as the following:

- User manuals
- System overviews
- Technical manuals
- The contract between the entity and the service organization
- Reports by auditors,⁸ internal auditors, or regulatory authorities on the information system and other controls placed in operation by a service organization
- Inquiry or observation of personnel at the entity or at the service organization

In addition, if the services and the service organization's controls over those services are highly standardized, information about the service organization's services, or its controls over those services, obtained through the auditor's prior experience with the service organization may be helpful in planning the audit.

Assessing Control Risk

.15 After obtaining the understanding of internal control over derivatives and securities transactions, the auditor should assess control risk for the related assertions. Guidance on that assessment is found in section 319.

.16 If the auditor plans to assess control risk below the maximum for one or more assertions about derivatives and securities, the auditor should identify specific controls relevant to the assertions that are likely to prevent or detect material misstatements and that have been placed in operation by either the entity or the service organization, and gather evidential matter about their operating effectiveness. Evidential matter about the operating effectiveness of a service organization's controls may be gathered through tests performed by the auditor or by an auditor engaged by either the auditor or the service organization—

⁸ Section 324 provides guidance on auditors' reports on controls placed in operation by a service organization and the operating effectiveness of those controls.

- a. As part of an engagement in which a service auditor reports on the controls placed in operation by the service organization and the operating effectiveness of those controls, as described in section 324.
- b. An agreed-upon procedures engagement.⁹
- c. To work under the direction of the auditor of the entity's financial statements.

Confirmations of balances or transactions from a service organization do not provide evidential matter about its controls.

.17 The auditor should consider the size of the entity, the entity's organizational structure, the nature of its operations, the types, frequency, and complexity of its derivatives and securities transactions, and its controls over those transactions in designing auditing procedures for assertions about derivatives and securities. For example, if the entity has a variety of derivatives and securities that are reported at fair value estimated using valuation models, the auditor may be able to reduce the substantive procedures for valuation assertions by gathering evidential matter about the controls over the design and use of the models (including the significant assumptions) and evaluating their operating effectiveness.

.18 In some circumstances, it may not be practicable or possible for the auditor to reduce audit risk to an acceptable level without identifying controls placed in operation by the entity or a service organization and gathering evidential matter about the operating effectiveness of those controls. For example, if the entity has a large number of derivatives or securities transactions, the auditor likely would be unable to reduce audit risk to an acceptable level for assertions about the occurrence of earnings on those securities, including gains and losses from sales, without identifying controls over the authorization, recording, custody, and segregation of duties for those transactions and gathering evidential matter about their operating effectiveness.¹⁰

Designing Substantive Procedures Based on Risk Assessments

.19 The auditor should use the assessed levels of inherent risk and control risk for assertions about derivatives and securities to determine the nature, timing, and extent of the substantive procedures to be performed to detect material misstatements of the financial statement assertions. Some substantive procedures address more than one assertion about a derivative or security. Whether one or a combination of substantive procedures should be used to address an assertion depends on the auditor's assessment of the inherent and control risk associated with it as well as the auditor's judgment about a procedure's effectiveness. Paragraphs .21 through .58 provide examples of substantive procedures that address assertions about derivatives and securities. In addition, the auditor should consider whether the results of other audit procedures conflict with management's assertions about derivatives and securities. The auditor should consider the impact of any such identified matters on management's assertions about derivatives and securities. Additionally, the auditor should consider the impact of such matters on the sufficiency of the evidential matter evaluated by the auditor in support of the assertions.

⁹ AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*, provides guidance on applying agreed-upon procedures to controls. [Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

¹⁰ See footnote 6.

.20 The provision by a service organization of services that are part of an entity's information system may affect the nature, timing, and extent of the auditor's substantive procedures for assertions about derivatives and securities in a variety of ways. Following are examples of such services and how they may affect the nature, timing, and extent of the auditor's substantive procedures.

- Supporting documentation, such as derivative contracts and securities purchases and sales advices, may be located at the service organization's facilities. As a result, either the auditor of the entity's financial statements, an auditor working under the direction of that auditor, or an auditor engaged by the service organization may need to visit the facilities to inspect the documentation.
- Data processors, investment advisers, holders of securities, record-keepers, and other service organizations may electronically transmit, process, maintain, or access significant information about an entity's securities. In such situations, it may not be practicable or possible for the auditor to reduce audit risk to an acceptable level without identifying controls placed in operation by the service organization or the entity and gathering evidential matter about the operating effectiveness of those controls.
- Service organizations may initiate securities transactions for an entity and hold and service the securities. In determining the level of detection risk for substantive tests, the auditor should consider whether there is a segregation of duties and other controls for the services provided. Examples include—
 - When one service organization initiates transactions as an investment adviser and another service organization holds and services those securities, the auditor may corroborate the information provided by the two organizations. For example, the auditor may confirm holdings with the holder of the securities and apply other substantive tests to transactions reported by the entity based on information provided by the investment adviser. Depending on the facts and circumstances, the auditor also may confirm transactions or holdings with the investment adviser and review the reconciliation of differences. Paragraph .24 provides additional guidance on the auditor's considerations.
 - If one service organization initiates transactions as an investment adviser and also holds and services the securities, all of the information available to the auditor is based on the service organization's information. The auditor may be unable to sufficiently limit audit risk without obtaining evidential matter about the operating effectiveness of one or more of the service organization's controls. An example of such controls is establishing independent departments that provide the investment advisory services and the holding and servicing of securities, then reconciling the information about the securities that is provided by each department.

Financial Statement Assertions

Existence or Occurrence

.21 Existence assertions address whether the derivatives and securities reported in the financial statements through recognition or disclosure exist at the date of the statement of financial position. Occurrence assertions address

whether derivatives and securities transactions reported in the financial statements, as a part of earnings, other comprehensive income, or cash flows or through disclosure, occurred. Paragraph .19 provides guidance on the auditor's determination of the nature, timing, and extent of substantive procedures to be performed. Examples of substantive procedures for existence or occurrence assertions about derivatives and securities include—

- Confirmation with the issuer of the security.
- Confirmation with the holder of the security, including securities in electronic form, or with the counterparty to the derivative.¹¹
- Confirmation of settled transactions with the broker-dealer or counterparty.
- Confirmation of unsettled transactions with the broker-dealer or counterparty.
- Physical inspection of the security or derivative contract.
- Reading executed partnership or similar agreements.
- Inspecting underlying agreements and other forms of supporting documentation, in paper or electronic form, for the following:
 - Amounts reported
 - Evidence that would preclude the sales treatment of a transfer
 - Unrecorded repurchase agreements
- Inspecting supporting documentation for subsequent realization or settlement after the end of the reporting period.
- Performing analytical procedures.¹² For example, the absence of a material difference from an expectation that interest income will be a fixed percentage of a debt security based on the effective interest rate determined when the entity purchased the security provides evidence about existence of the security.

Completeness

.22 Completeness assertions address whether all of the entity's derivatives and securities are reported in the financial statements through recognition or disclosure. They also address whether all derivatives and securities transactions are reported in the financial statements as a part of earnings, other comprehensive income, or cash flows or through disclosure. The extent of substantive procedures for completeness may properly vary in relation to the assessed level of control risk. In addition, the auditor should consider that since derivatives may not involve an initial exchange of tangible consideration, it may be difficult to limit audit risk for assertions about the completeness of derivatives to an acceptable level with an assessed level of control risk at the

¹¹ Section 330, provides guidance to auditors in using confirmations as substantive tests of financial statement assertions. Confirmations may be used as a substantive test of various financial statement assertions about derivatives and securities. For example, a confirmation may be designed to—

- Obtain information about valuation assertions or assumptions underlying valuations.
- Determine whether there are any side agreements that affect assertions about the entity's rights and obligations associated with a transaction, such as an agreement to repurchase securities sold or an agreement to pledge securities as collateral for a loan.
- Determine whether the holder of the entity's securities agrees to deliver the securities reported or their value when required by the entity.

¹² Section 329 provides guidance to auditors in using analytical procedures as substantive tests.

maximum. Paragraph .19 provides guidance on the auditor's determination of the nature, timing, and extent of substantive procedures to be performed. Examples of substantive procedures for completeness assertions about derivatives and securities are—

- Requesting the counterparty to a derivative or the holder of a security to provide information about it, such as whether there are any side agreements or agreements to repurchase securities sold.
- Requesting counterparties or holders who are frequently used, but with whom the accounting records indicate there are presently no derivatives or securities, to state whether they are counterparties to derivatives with the entity or holders of its securities.¹³
- Inspecting financial instruments and other agreements to identify embedded derivatives.
- Inspecting documentation in paper or electronic form for activity subsequent to the end of the reporting period.
- Performing analytical procedures. For example, a difference from an expectation that interest expense is a fixed percentage of a note based on the interest provisions of the underlying agreement may indicate the existence of an interest rate swap agreement.
- Comparing previous and current account detail to identify assets that have been removed from the accounts and testing those items further to determine that the criteria for sales treatment have been met.
- Reading other information, such as minutes of meetings of the board of directors or finance, asset/liability, investment, or other committees.

.23 One of the characteristics of derivatives is that they may involve only a commitment to perform under a contract and not an initial exchange of tangible consideration. Therefore, auditors designing tests related to the completeness assertion should not focus exclusively on evidence relating to cash receipts and disbursements. When testing for completeness, auditors should consider making inquiries, inspecting agreements, and reading other information, such as minutes of meetings of the board of directors or finance, asset/liability, investment, or other committees. Auditors should also consider making inquiries about aspects of operating activities that might present risks hedged using derivatives. For example, if the entity conducts business with foreign entities, the auditor should inquire about any arrangements the entity has made for purchasing foreign currency. Similarly, if an entity is in an industry in which commodity contracts are common, the auditor should inquire about any commodity contracts with fixed prices that run for unusual durations or involve unusually large quantities. The auditor also should consider inquiring as to whether the entity has converted interest-bearing debt from fixed to variable, or vice versa, using derivatives.

.24 Derivatives may not involve an initial exchange of tangible consideration, as discussed in paragraphs .22 and .23. If one or more service organizations provide services that are part of the entity's information system for derivatives, the auditor may be unable to sufficiently limit audit risk for assertions about the completeness of derivatives without obtaining evidential matter about the operating effectiveness of controls at one or more of the service

¹³ Section 330.17 discusses the blank form of positive confirmation in which the auditor does not state the amount or other information but instead asks the respondent to provide information.

organizations. Since the auditor's concern is that derivatives that do not require an initial exchange of tangible consideration may not have been recorded, testing reconciliations of information provided by two or more of the service organizations as discussed in paragraph .20 of this section may not sufficiently limit audit risk for assertions about the completeness of derivatives.

Rights and Obligations

.25 Assertions about rights and obligations address whether the entity has the rights and obligations associated with derivatives and securities, including pledging arrangements, reported in the financial statements. Paragraph .19 provides guidance on the auditor's determination of the nature, timing, and extent of substantive procedures to be performed. Examples of substantive procedures for assertions about rights and obligations associated with derivatives and securities are—

- Confirming significant terms with the counterparty to a derivative or the holder of a security, including the absence of any side agreements.
- Inspecting underlying agreements and other forms of supporting documentation, in paper or electronic form.
- Considering whether the findings of other auditing procedures, such as reviewing minutes of meetings of the board of directors and reading contracts and other agreements, provide evidence about rights and obligations, such as pledging of securities as collateral or selling securities with a commitment to repurchase them.

Valuation

.26 Assertions about the valuation of derivatives and securities address whether the amounts reported in the financial statements through measurement or disclosure were determined in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Tests of valuation assertions should be designed according to the valuation method used for the measurement or disclosure. Generally accepted accounting principles may require that a derivative or security be valued based on cost, the investee's financial results, or fair value. They also may require disclosures about the value of a derivative or security and specify that impairment losses should be recognized in earnings prior to their realization. Also, generally accepted accounting principles for securities may vary depending on the type of security, the nature of the transaction, management's objectives related to the security, and the type of entity. Procedures for evaluating management's consideration of the need to recognize impairment losses are discussed in paragraphs .47 and .48 of this section.

.27 *Valuation Based on Cost.* Procedures to obtain evidence about the cost of securities may include inspection of documentation of the purchase price, confirmation with the issuer or holder, and testing discount or premium amortization, either by recomputation or analytical procedures. The auditor should evaluate management's conclusion about the need to recognize an impairment loss for a decline in the security's fair value below its cost that is other than temporary.

.28 *Valuation Based on an Investee's Financial Results.* For valuations based on an investee's financial results, including but not limited to the equity method of accounting, the auditor should obtain sufficient evidence in support of the investee's financial results. The auditor should read available financial statements of the investee and the accompanying audit report, if any. Financial

statements of the investee that have been audited by an auditor whose report is satisfactory, for this purpose,¹⁴ to the investor's auditor may constitute sufficient evidential matter.

.29 If in the auditor's judgment additional evidential matter is needed, the auditor should perform procedures to gather such evidence. For example, the auditor may conclude that additional evidential matter is needed because of significant differences in fiscal year-ends, significant differences in accounting principles, changes in ownership, changes in conditions affecting the use of the equity method, or the materiality of the investment to the investor's financial position or results of operations. Examples of procedures the auditor may perform are reviewing information in the investor's files that relates to the investee such as investee minutes and budgets and cash flows information about the investee and making inquiries of investor management about the investee's financial results.

.30 If the investee's financial statements are not audited, or if the investee auditor's report is not satisfactory to the investor's auditor for this purpose, the investor's auditor should apply, or should request that the investor arrange with the investee to have another auditor apply, appropriate auditing procedures to such financial statements, considering the materiality of the investment in relation to the financial statements of the investor.

.31 If the carrying amount of the security reflects factors that are not recognized in the investee's financial statements or fair values of assets that are materially different from the investee's carrying amounts, the auditor should obtain sufficient evidence in support of these amounts. Paragraphs .35 through .46 of this section provide guidance on audit evidence that may be used to corroborate assertions about the fair value of derivatives and securities, and paragraphs .47 and .48 provide guidance on procedures for evaluating management's consideration of the need to recognize impairment losses.

.32 There may be a time lag in reporting between the date of the financial statements of the investor and that of the investee. A time lag in reporting should be consistent from period to period. If a time lag between the date of the entity's financial statements and those of the investee has a material effect on the entity's financial statements, the auditor should determine whether the entity's management has properly considered the lack of comparability. The effect may be material, for example, because the time lag is not consistent with the prior period in comparative statements or because a significant transaction occurred during the time lag. If a change in time lag occurs that has a material effect on the investor's financial statements, an explanatory paragraph should be added to the auditor's report because of the change in reporting period.¹⁵

.33 The auditor should evaluate management's conclusion about the need to recognize an impairment loss for a decline in the security's fair value below its carrying amount that is other than temporary. In addition, with respect to subsequent events and transactions of the investee occurring after the date of the investee's financial statements but before the date of the investor auditor's report, the auditor should read available interim financial statements of the investee and make appropriate inquiries of the investor to identify subsequent

¹⁴ In determining whether the report of another auditor is satisfactory for this purpose, the auditor may consider performing procedures such as making inquiries as to the professional reputation and standing of the other auditor, visiting the other auditor and discussing the audit procedures followed and the results thereof, and reviewing the audit program and/or working papers of the other auditor.

¹⁵ See section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .16 through .18.

events and transactions that are material to the investor's financial statements. Such events or transactions of the type contemplated in section 560, *Subsequent Events*, paragraphs .05 and .06, should be disclosed in the notes to the investor's financial statements and (where applicable) labeled as unaudited information. For the purpose of recording the investor's share of the investee's results of operations, recognition should be given to events or transactions of the type contemplated in section 560.03.

.34 Evidence relating to material transactions between the entity and the investee should be obtained to evaluate (a) the propriety of the elimination of unrealized profits and losses on transactions between the entity and the investee that is required when the equity method of accounting is used to account for an investment under generally accepted accounting principles and (b) the adequacy of disclosures about material related party transactions.

.35 *Valuation Based on Fair Value.* The auditor should obtain evidence supporting management's assertions about the fair value of derivatives and securities measured or disclosed at fair value. The method for determining fair value may be specified by generally accepted accounting principles and may vary depending on the industry in which the entity operates or the nature of the entity. Such differences may relate to the consideration of price quotations from inactive markets and significant liquidity discounts, control premiums, and commissions and other costs that would be incurred to dispose of the derivative or security. The auditor should determine whether generally accepted accounting principles specify the method to be used to determine the fair value of the entity's derivatives and securities and evaluate whether the determination of fair value is consistent with the specified valuation method. Paragraphs .35 through .46 of this section provide guidance on audit evidence that may be used to support assertions about fair value; that guidance should be considered in the context of specific accounting requirements. If the determination of fair value requires the use of estimates, the auditor should consider the guidance in section 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*. In addition, section 312.36 provides guidance on considering a difference between an estimated amount best supported by the audit evidence and the estimated amount included in the financial statements.

.36 Quoted market prices for derivatives and securities listed on national exchanges or over-the-counter markets are available from sources such as financial publications, the exchanges, the National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotations System (NASDAQ), or pricing services based on sources such as those. Quoted market prices obtained from those sources are generally considered to provide sufficient evidence of the fair value of the derivatives and securities.

.37 For certain other derivatives and securities, quoted market prices may be obtained from broker-dealers who are market makers in them or through the National Quotation Bureau. However, using such a price quote to test valuation assertions may require special knowledge to understand the circumstances in which the quote was developed. For example, quotations published by the National Quotation Bureau may not be based on recent trades and may only be an indication of interest and not an actual price for which a counterparty will purchase or sell the underlying derivative or security.

.38 If quoted market prices are not available for the derivative or security, estimates of fair value frequently can be obtained from broker-dealers or other third-party sources based on proprietary valuation models or from the entity based on internally or externally developed valuation models (for example, the

Black-Scholes option pricing model). The auditor should understand the method used by the broker-dealer or other third-party source in developing the estimate, for example, whether a pricing model or a cash flow projection was used. The auditor may also determine that it is necessary to obtain estimates from more than one pricing source. For example, this may be appropriate if either of the following occurs.

- The pricing source has a relationship with an entity that might impair its objectivity, such as an affiliate or a counterparty involved in selling or structuring the product.
- The valuation is based on assumptions that are highly subjective or particularly sensitive to changes in the underlying circumstances.

.39 For fair-value estimates obtained from broker-dealers and other third-party sources, the auditor should consider the applicability of the guidance in section 336 or section 324. The auditor's decision about whether such guidance is applicable and which guidance is applicable will depend on the circumstances. The guidance in section 336 may be applicable if the third-party source derives the fair value of the derivative or security by using modeling or similar techniques. If the entity uses a pricing service to obtain prices of securities and derivatives, the guidance in section 324 may be appropriate.

.40 If the derivative or security is valued by the entity using a valuation model, the auditor does not function as an appraiser and is not expected to substitute his or her judgment for that of the entity's management.¹⁶ Examples of valuation models include the present value of expected future cash flows, option-pricing models, matrix pricing, option-adjusted spread models, and fundamental analysis. The auditor should obtain evidence supporting management's assertions about fair value determined using a model by performing procedures such as—

- Assessing the reasonableness and appropriateness of the model. The auditor should determine whether the valuation model is appropriate for the derivative or security to which it is applied and whether the assumptions used are reasonable and appropriately supported. Estimates of expected future cash flows, for example, to determine the fair value of debt securities should be based on reasonable and supportable assumptions. The evaluation of the appropriateness of valuation models and each of the assumptions used in the models may require considerable judgment and knowledge of valuation techniques, market factors that affect value, and actual and expected market conditions, particularly in relation to similar derivatives and securities that are traded. Accordingly, the auditor may consider it necessary to involve a specialist in assessing the model.
- Calculating the value, for example using a model developed by the auditor or by a specialist engaged by the auditor, to develop an independent expectation to corroborate the reasonableness of the value calculated by the entity.
- Comparing the fair value with subsequent or recent transactions.

¹⁶ Independence Standards Board Interpretation 99-1, *FAS 133 Assistance*, provides guidance to auditors of public companies on services an auditor may provide management to assist with the application of FASB Statement No. 133 that would and would not impair the auditor's independence. Ethics Interpretation 101-3, *Performance of Nonattest Services* [ET section 101.05], provides general guidance to auditors of all entities on the effect of nonattest services on the auditor's independence. [Footnote revised, September 2003, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the revision of Ethics Interpretation 101-3.]

However, a valuation model should not be used to determine fair value when generally accepted accounting principles require that the fair value of a security be determined using quoted market prices.

.41 Evaluating evidential matter for assertions about derivatives and securities may require the auditor to use considerable judgment. That may be because the assertions, especially those about valuation, are based on highly subjective assumptions or are particularly sensitive to changes in the underlying circumstances. Valuation assertions may be based on assumptions about the occurrence of future events for which expectations are difficult to develop or on assumptions about conditions expected to exist over a long period; for example, default rates or prepayment rates. Accordingly, competent persons could reach different conclusions about estimates of fair values or estimates of ranges of fair values.

.42 Considerable judgment may also be required in evaluating evidential matter for assertions based on features of the derivative or security and applicable accounting principles, including underlying criteria such as for hedge accounting, that are extremely complex. For example, determining the fair value of a structured note may require consideration of a variety of features of the note that react differently to changes in economic conditions. In addition, one or more other derivatives may be designated to hedge changes in cash flows under the note. Evaluating evidential matter to support the fair value of the note, the determination of whether the hedge is highly effective, and the allocation of changes in fair value to earnings and other comprehensive income may require considerable judgment.

.43 In situations requiring considerable judgment, the auditor should consider the guidance in—

- a. Section 342 on obtaining and evaluating sufficient competent evidential matter to support significant accounting estimates.
- b. Section 336 on the use of the work of a specialist in performing substantive procedures.

.44 Negotiable securities, real estate, chattels, or other property is often assigned as collateral for debt securities. If the collateral is an important factor in evaluating the fair value and collectibility of the security, the auditor should obtain evidence regarding the existence, fair value, and transferability of such collateral as well as the investor's rights to the collateral.

.45 Generally accepted accounting principles may specify how to account for unrealized appreciation and depreciation in the fair value of the entity's derivatives and securities. For example, generally accepted accounting principles require the entity to report a change in the unrealized appreciation or depreciation in the fair value of—

- A derivative that is designated as a fair value hedge in earnings, with disclosure of the ineffective portion of the hedge.
- A derivative that is designated as a cash flow hedge in two components, with the ineffective portion reported in earnings and the effective portion reported in other comprehensive income.
- A derivative that was previously designated as a hedge but is no longer highly effective, or a derivative that is not designated as a hedge, in earnings.
- An available-for-sale security in other comprehensive income.

Generally accepted accounting principles may also require the entity to reclassify amounts from accumulated other comprehensive income to earnings. For

example, such reclassifications may be required because a hedged transaction is determined to no longer be probable of occurring, a hedged forecasted transaction affects earnings for the period, or a decline in fair value is determined to be other than temporary.

.46 The auditor should evaluate management's conclusion about the need to recognize in earnings an impairment loss for a decline in fair value that is other than temporary as discussed in paragraphs .47 and .48 of this section. The auditor should also gather evidential matter to support the amount of unrealized appreciation or depreciation in the fair value of a derivative that is recognized in earnings or other comprehensive income or that is disclosed because of the ineffectiveness of a hedge. That requires an understanding of the methods used to determine whether the hedge is highly effective and to determine the ineffective portion of the hedge.

.47 *Impairment Losses.* Regardless of the valuation method used, generally accepted accounting principles might require recognizing in earnings an impairment loss for a decline in fair value that is other than temporary. Determinations of whether losses are other than temporary often involve estimating the outcome of future events. Accordingly, judgment is required in determining whether factors exist that indicate that an impairment loss has been incurred at the end of the reporting period. These judgments are based on subjective as well as objective factors, including knowledge and experience about past and current events and assumptions about future events. The following are examples of such factors.

- Fair value is significantly below cost and—
 - The decline is attributable to adverse conditions specifically related to the security or to specific conditions in an industry or in a geographic area.
 - The decline has existed for an extended period of time.
 - Management does not possess both the intent and the ability to hold the security for a period of time sufficient to allow for any anticipated recovery in fair value.
- The security has been downgraded by a rating agency.
- The financial condition of the issuer has deteriorated.
- Dividends have been reduced or eliminated, or scheduled interest payments have not been made.
- The entity recorded losses from the security subsequent to the end of the reporting period.

.48 The auditor should evaluate (a) whether management has considered relevant information in determining whether factors such as those listed in paragraph .47 exist and (b) management's conclusions about the need to recognize an impairment loss. That evaluation requires the auditor to obtain evidence about such factors that tend to corroborate or conflict with management's conclusions. When the entity has recognized an impairment loss, the auditor should gather evidence supporting the amount of the impairment adjustment recorded and determine whether the entity has appropriately followed generally accepted accounting principles.

Presentation and Disclosure

.49 Assertions about presentation and disclosure address whether the classification, description, and disclosure of derivatives and securities in the

entity's financial statements are in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. The auditor should evaluate whether the presentation and disclosure of derivatives and securities are in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. As noted in section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraph .04, the auditor's opinion as to whether financial statements are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles should be based on the auditor's judgement as to whether—

- a. The accounting principles selected and applied have general acceptance.
- b. The accounting principles are appropriate in the circumstances.
- c. The financial statements, including the related notes, are informative of matters that may affect their use, understanding, and interpretation.
- d. The information presented in the financial statements is classified and summarized in a reasonable manner, that is, neither too detailed nor too condensed.
- e. The financial statements reflect the underlying transactions and events in a manner that presents the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows stated within a range of acceptable limits, that is, limits that are reasonable and practicable to attain in financial statements.

[Title of section 411 amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.50 For some derivatives and securities, generally accepted accounting principles may prescribe presentation and disclosure requirements. For example—

- Whether changes in the fair value of derivatives used to hedge risks are required to be reported as a component of earnings or other comprehensive income depends on whether they are intended to hedge the risk of changes in the fair value of assets and liabilities or changes in expected future cash flows and on the degree of effectiveness of the hedge.
- Certain securities are required to be classified into categories according to management's intent and ability, such as held-to-maturity.
- Specific information is required to be disclosed about derivatives and securities.

.51 In evaluating the adequacy of presentation and disclosure, the auditor should consider the form, arrangement, and content of the financial statements and their notes, including, for example, the terminology used, the amount of detail given, the classification of items in the statements, and the bases of amounts reported. The auditor should compare the presentation and disclosure with the requirements of generally accepted accounting principles. However, the auditor should also follow the guidance in section 431, *Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements*, in evaluating the adequacy of disclosure that is not specifically required by generally accepted accounting principles.

Additional Considerations About Hedging Activities

.52 To account for a derivative as a hedge, generally accepted accounting principles require management at the inception of the hedge to designate the

derivative as a hedge and contemporaneously formally document¹⁷ the hedging relationship, the entity's risk management objective and strategy for undertaking the hedge, and the method of assessing the effectiveness of the hedge. In addition, to qualify for hedge accounting, generally accepted accounting principles require that management have an expectation, both at the inception of the hedge and on an ongoing basis, that the hedging relationship will be highly effective in achieving the hedging strategy.¹⁸

.53 The auditor should gather evidential matter to determine whether management complied with the hedge accounting requirements of generally accepted accounting principles, including designation and documentation requirements. In addition, the auditor should gather evidential matter to support management's expectation at the inception of the hedge that the hedging relationship will be highly effective and its periodic assessment of the ongoing effectiveness of the hedging relationship as required by generally accepted accounting principles.

.54 When the entity designates a derivative as a fair value hedge, generally accepted accounting principles require that the entity adjust the carrying amount of the hedged item for the change in the hedged item's fair value that is attributable to the hedged risk. The auditor should gather evidential matter supporting the recorded change in the hedged item's fair value that is attributable to the hedged risk. Additionally, the auditor should gather evidential matter to determine whether management has properly applied generally accepted accounting principles to the hedged item.

.55 For a cash flow hedge of a forecasted transaction, generally accepted accounting principles require management to determine that the forecasted transaction is probable of occurring. Those principles require that the likelihood that the transaction will take place not be based solely on management's intent. Instead, the transaction's probability should be supported by observable facts and the attendant circumstances, such as the following:

- The frequency of similar past transactions
- The financial and operational ability of the entity to carry out the transaction
- The extent of loss that could result if the transaction does not occur
- The likelihood that transactions with substantially different characteristics might be used to achieve the same business purpose

The auditor should evaluate management's determination of whether a forecasted transaction is probable.

Assertions About Securities Based on Management's Intent and Ability

.56 Generally accepted accounting principles require that management's intent and ability be considered in valuing certain securities; for example, whether—

¹⁷ FASB Statement No. 133 requires formal documentation of prescribed aspects of hedging relationships at the inception of the hedge.

¹⁸ FASB Statement No. 133 requires management to periodically reassess the effectiveness of hedging relationships whenever financial statements or earnings are reported, and at least every three months. It also requires that all assessments of effectiveness be consistent with the risk management strategy documented for the particular hedging relationship.

- Debt securities are classified as held-to-maturity and reported at their cost depends on management's intent and ability to hold them to their maturity.
 - Equity securities are reported using the equity method depends on management's ability to significantly influence the investee.
 - Equity securities are classified as trading or available-for-sale depends on management's intent and objectives in investing in the securities.
- .57** In evaluating management's intent and ability, the auditor should—
- a. Obtain an understanding of the process used by management to classify securities as trading, available-for-sale, or held-to-maturity.
 - b. For an investment accounted for using the equity method, inquire of management as to whether the entity has the ability to exercise significant influence over the operating and financial policies of the investee and evaluate the attendant circumstances that serve as a basis for management's conclusions.
 - c. If the entity accounts for the investment contrary to the presumption established by generally accepted accounting principles for use of the equity method, obtain sufficient competent evidential matter about whether that presumption has been overcome and whether appropriate disclosure is made regarding the reasons for not accounting for the investment in keeping with that presumption.
 - d. Consider whether management's activities corroborate or conflict with its stated intent. For example, the auditor should evaluate an assertion that management intends to hold debt securities to their maturity by examining evidence such as documentation of management's strategies and sales and other historical activities with respect to those securities and similar securities.
 - e. Determine whether generally accepted accounting principles require management to document its intentions and specify the content and timeliness of that documentation.¹⁹ The auditor should inspect the documentation and obtain evidential matter about its timeliness. Unlike the formal documentation required for hedging activities, evidential matter supporting the classification of debt and equity securities may be more informal.
 - f. Determine whether management's activities, contractual agreements, or the entity's financial condition provide evidence of its ability. Examples follow.
 - (1) The entity's financial position, working capital needs, operating results, debt agreements, guarantees, alternate sources of liquidity, and other relevant contractual obligations, as well as laws and regulations, may provide evidence about an entity's ability to hold debt securities to their maturity.
 - (2) Management's cash flow projections may suggest that it does not have the ability to hold debt securities to their maturity.

¹⁹ FASB Statement No. 115 requires an investor to document the classification of debt and equity securities into one of three categories—held-to-maturity, available-for-sale, or trading—at their acquisition.

- (3) Management's inability to obtain information from an investee may suggest that it does not have the ability to significantly influence the investee.
- (4) If the entity asserts that it maintains effective control over securities transferred under a repurchase agreement, the contractual agreement may be such that the entity actually surrendered control over the securities and therefore should account for the transfer as a sale instead of a secured borrowing.

Management Representations

.58 Section 333, *Management Representations*, provides guidance to auditors in obtaining written representations from management. The auditor ordinarily should obtain written representations from management confirming aspects of management's intent and ability that affect assertions about derivatives and securities, such as its intent and ability to hold a debt security until its maturity or to enter into a forecasted transaction for which hedge accounting is applied. In addition, the auditor should consider obtaining written representations from management confirming other aspects of derivatives and securities transactions that affect assertions about them.²⁰

Effective Date

.59 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for fiscal years ending on or after June 30, 2001. Early application is permitted.

²⁰ Section 333.17 provides illustrative representations about derivatives and securities transactions.

AU Section 333

Management Representations

(Supersedes SAS No. 19)

Source: SAS No. 85; SAS No. 89; SAS No. 99.

See section 9333 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after June 30, 1998, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction

.01 This section establishes a requirement that the independent auditor obtain written representations from management as a part of an audit of financial statements performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and provides guidance concerning the representations to be obtained.

Reliance on Management Representations

.02 During an audit, management makes many representations to the auditor, both oral and written, in response to specific inquiries or through the financial statements. Such representations from management are part of the evidential matter the independent auditor obtains, but they are not a substitute for the application of those auditing procedures necessary to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion regarding the financial statements under audit. Written representations from management ordinarily confirm representations explicitly or implicitly given to the auditor, indicate and document the continuing appropriateness of such representations, and reduce the possibility of misunderstanding concerning the matters that are the subject of the representations.¹

.03 The auditor obtains written representations from management to complement other auditing procedures. In many cases, the auditor applies auditing procedures specifically designed to obtain evidential matter concerning matters that also are the subject of written representations. For example, after the auditor performs the procedures prescribed in section 334, *Related Parties*, even if the results of those procedures indicate that transactions with related parties have been properly disclosed, the auditor should obtain a written representation to document that management has no knowledge of any such transactions that have not been properly disclosed. In some circumstances, evidential matter that can be obtained by the application of auditing procedures other than inquiry is limited; therefore, the auditor obtains written representations to provide additional evidential matter. For example, if an

¹ Section 230, *Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work*, states, "The auditor neither assumes that management is dishonest nor assumes unquestioned honesty. In exercising professional skepticism, the auditor should not be satisfied with less than persuasive evidence because of a belief that management is honest."

entity plans to discontinue a line of business and the auditor is not able to obtain sufficient information through other auditing procedures to corroborate the plan or intent, the auditor obtains a written representation to provide evidence of management's intent.

.04 If a representation made by management is contradicted by other audit evidence, the auditor should investigate the circumstances and consider the reliability of the representation made. Based on the circumstances, the auditor should consider whether his or her reliance on management's representations relating to other aspects of the financial statements is appropriate and justified.

Obtaining Written Representations

.05 Written representations from management should be obtained for all financial statements and periods covered by the auditor's report.² For example, if comparative financial statements are reported on, the written representations obtained at the completion of the most recent audit should address all periods being reported on. The specific written representations obtained by the auditor will depend on the circumstances of the engagement and the nature and basis of presentation of the financial statements.

.06 In connection with an audit of financial statements presented in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, specific representations should relate to the following matters.³

Financial Statements

- a. Management's acknowledgment of its responsibility for the fair presentation in the financial statements of financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.
- b. Management's belief that the financial statements are fairly presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

Completeness of Information

- c. Availability of all financial records and related data.
- d. Completeness and availability of all minutes of meetings of stockholders, directors, and committees of directors.
- e. Communications from regulatory agencies concerning noncompliance with or deficiencies in financial reporting practices.
- f. Absence of unrecorded transactions.

Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure

- g. Management's belief that the effects of any uncorrected financial statement misstatements⁴ aggregated by the auditor during the current

² An illustrative representation letter from management is contained in appendix A, "Illustrative Management Representation Letter" [paragraph .16].

³ Specific representations also are applicable to financial statements presented in conformity with a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles. The specific representations to be obtained should be based on the nature and basis of presentation of the financial statements being audited.

⁴ Section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit* paragraph .04, states that a misstatement can result from errors or fraud, and provides guidance for the auditor's evaluation of audit findings (section 312.34–.40). [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89.]

engagement and pertaining to the latest period presented are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the financial statements taken as a whole.⁵ (A summary of such items should be included in or attached to the letter.)^{6, 7}

- h. Management's acknowledgment of its responsibility for the design and implementation of programs and controls to prevent and detect fraud.
- i. Knowledge of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity involving (1) management, (2) employees who have significant roles in internal control, or (3) others where the fraud could have a material effect on the financial statements.^[8]
- j. Knowledge of any allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity received in communications from employees, former employees, analysts, regulators, short sellers, or others.
- k. Plans or intentions that may affect the carrying value or classification of assets or liabilities.
- l. Information concerning related-party transactions and amounts receivable from or payable to related parties.⁹
- m. Guarantees, whether written or oral, under which the entity is contingently liable.
- n. Significant estimates and material concentrations known to management that are required to be disclosed in accordance with the AICPA's Statement of Position 94-6, *Disclosure of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties*.
- o. Violations or possible violations of laws or regulations whose effects should be considered for disclosure in the financial statements or as a basis for recording a loss contingency.¹⁰
- p. Unasserted claims or assessments that the entity's lawyer has advised are probable of assertion and must be disclosed in accordance

⁵ If management believes that certain of the identified items are not misstatements, management's belief may be acknowledged by adding to the representation, for example, "We do not agree that items XX and XX constitute misstatements because [description of reasons]." [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89.]

⁶ Section 312 states that the auditor may designate an amount below which misstatements need not be accumulated. Similarly, the summary of uncorrected misstatements included in or attached to the representation letter need not include such misstatements. The summary should include sufficient information to provide management with an understanding of the nature, amount, and effect of the uncorrected misstatements. Similar items may be aggregated. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89.]

⁷ The communication to management of immaterial misstatements aggregated by the auditor does not constitute a communication pursuant to section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*, paragraph .17, Section 10A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, paragraphs .38 through .40. The auditor may have additional communication responsibilities pursuant to section 317, Section 10A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or section 316. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999.]

^[8] [Footnote deleted by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99, October 2002.]

⁹ See section 334. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999.]

¹⁰ See section 317. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999.]

with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies* [AC section C59].¹¹

- q. Other liabilities and gain or loss contingencies that are required to be accrued or disclosed by FASB Statement No. 5 [AC section C59].¹²
- r. Satisfactory title to assets, liens or encumbrances on assets, and assets pledged as collateral.
- s. Compliance with aspects of contractual agreements that may affect the financial statements.

Subsequent Events

- t. Information concerning subsequent events.¹³

[As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89. As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

.07 The representation letter ordinarily should be tailored to include additional appropriate representations from management relating to matters specific to the entity's business or industry.¹⁴ Examples of additional representations that may be appropriate are provided in appendix B, "Additional Illustrative Representations" [paragraph .17].

.08 Management's representations may be limited to matters that are considered either individually or collectively material to the financial statements, provided management and the auditor have reached an understanding on materiality for this purpose. Materiality may be different for different representations. A discussion of materiality may be included explicitly in the representation letter, in either qualitative or quantitative terms. Materiality considerations would not apply to those representations that are not directly related to amounts included in the financial statements, for example, items (a), (c), (d), and (e) above. In addition, because of the possible effects of fraud on other aspects of the audit, materiality would not apply to item (h) above with respect to management or those employees who have significant roles in internal control.

.09 The written representations should be addressed to the auditor. Because the auditor is concerned with events occurring through the date of his or her report that may require adjustment to or disclosure in the financial statements, the representations should be made as of a date no earlier than the date of the auditor's report. [If the auditor "dual dates" his or her report, the auditor should consider whether obtaining additional representations relating

¹¹ See section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*, paragraph .05d. If the entity has not consulted a lawyer regarding litigation, claims, and assessments, the auditor normally would rely on the review of internally available information and obtain a written representation by management regarding the lack of litigation, claims, and assessments; see auditing Interpretation No. 6, "Client Has Not Consulted a Lawyer" (section 9337.15–17). [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999.]

¹² See section 337.05b. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999.]

¹³ See section 560, *Subsequent Events*, paragraph .12, section 711, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*, paragraph .10, and section 634, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties*, paragraph .45, footnote 29. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999.]

¹⁴ Certain AICPA Audit Guides recommend that the auditor obtain written representations concerning matters that are unique to a particular industry. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999.]

to the subsequent event is appropriate. See section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraph .05]. The letter should be signed by those members of management with overall responsibility for financial and operating matters whom the auditor believes are responsible for and knowledgeable about, directly or through others in the organization, the matters covered by the representations. Such members of management normally include the chief executive officer and chief financial officer or others with equivalent positions in the entity.

.10 If current management was not present during all periods covered by the auditor's report, the auditor should nevertheless obtain written representations from current management on all such periods. The specific written representations obtained by the auditor will depend on the circumstances of the engagement and the nature and basis of presentation of the financial statements. As discussed in paragraph .08, management's representations may be limited to matters that are considered either individually or collectively material to the financial statements.

.11 In certain circumstances, the auditor may want to obtain written representations from other individuals. For example, he or she may want to obtain written representations about the completeness of the minutes of the meetings of stockholders, directors, and committees of directors from the person responsible for keeping such minutes. Also, if the independent auditor performs an audit of the financial statements of a subsidiary but does not audit those of the parent company, he or she may want to obtain representations from management of the parent company concerning matters that may affect the subsidiary, such as related-party transactions or the parent company's intention to provide continuing financial support to the subsidiary.

.12 There are circumstances in which an auditor should obtain updating representation letters from management. If a predecessor auditor is requested by a former client to reissue (or consent to the reuse of) his or her report on the financial statements of a prior period, and those financial statements are to be presented on a comparative basis with audited financial statements of a subsequent period, the predecessor auditor should obtain an updating representation letter from the management of the former client.¹⁵ Also, when performing subsequent events procedures in connection with filings under the Securities Act of 1933, the auditor should obtain certain written representations.¹⁶ The updating management representation letter should state (a) whether any information has come to management's attention that would cause them to believe that any of the previous representations should be modified, and (b) whether any events have occurred subsequent to the balance-sheet date of the latest financial statements reported on by the auditor that would require adjustment to or disclosure in those financial statements.¹⁷

Scope Limitations

.13 Management's refusal to furnish written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of the audit sufficient to preclude an unqualified opinion and is ordinarily sufficient to cause an auditor to disclaim an opinion

¹⁵ See section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .71. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999.]

¹⁶ See section 711.10. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999.]

¹⁷ An illustrative updating management representation letter is contained in appendix C, "Illustrative Updating Management Representation Letter" [paragraph .18]. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999.]

or withdraw from the engagement.¹⁸ However, based on the nature of the representations not obtained or the circumstances of the refusal, the auditor may conclude that a qualified opinion is appropriate. Further, the auditor should consider the effects of the refusal on his or her ability to rely on other management representations.

.14 If the auditor is precluded from performing procedures he or she considers necessary in the circumstances with respect to a matter that is material to the financial statements, even though management has given representations concerning the matter, there is a limitation on the scope of the *audit*, and the auditor should qualify his or her opinion or disclaim an opinion.

Effective Date

.15 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after June 30, 1998. Earlier application is permitted.

¹⁸ See section 508.22–.34. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999.]

.16

Appendix A

Illustrative Management Representation Letter

1. The following letter, which relates to an audit of financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, is presented for illustrative purposes only. The introductory paragraph should specify the financial statements and periods covered by the auditor's report, for example, "balance sheets of XYZ Company as of December 31, 19X1 and 19X0, and the related statements of income and retained earnings and cash flows for the years then ended." The written representations to be obtained should be based on the circumstances of the engagement and the nature and basis of presentation of the financial statements being audited. (See appendix B [paragraph .17]).

2. If matters exist that should be disclosed to the auditor, they should be indicated by modifying the related representation. For example, if an event subsequent to the date of the balance sheet has been disclosed in the financial statements, the final paragraph could be modified as follows: "To the best of our knowledge and belief, except as discussed in Note X to the financial statements, no events have occurred" In appropriate circumstances, item 9 could be modified as follows: "The company has no plans or intentions that may materially affect the carrying value or classification of assets and liabilities, except for its plans to dispose of segment A, as disclosed in Note X to the financial statements, which are discussed in the minutes of the December 7, 20X1, meeting of the board of directors." Similarly, if management has received a communication regarding an allegation of fraud or suspected fraud, item 8 could be modified as follows: "Except for the allegation discussed in the minutes of the December 7, 20X1, meeting of the board of directors (or disclosed to you at our meeting on October 15, 20X1), we have no knowledge of any allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the company received in communications from employees, former employees, analysts, regulators, short sellers, or others."

3. The qualitative discussion of materiality used in the illustrative letter is adapted from FASB Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 2, *Qualitative Characteristics of Accounting Information*.

4. Certain terms are used in the illustrative letter that are described elsewhere in authoritative literature. Examples are fraud, in section 316, and related parties, in section 334, footnote 1. To avoid misunderstanding concerning the meaning of such terms, the auditor may wish to furnish those definitions to management or request that the definitions be included in the written representations.

5. The illustrative letter assumes that management and the auditor have reached an understanding on the limits of materiality for purposes of the written representations. However, it should be noted that a materiality limit would not apply for certain representations, as explained in paragraph .08 of this section.

6.

[Date]

To [Independent Auditor]

We are providing this letter in connection with your audit(s) of the [identification of financial statements] of [name of entity] as of [dates] and for the [periods] for the purpose of expressing an opinion as to whether the [consolidated] financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows of [name of entity] in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. We confirm that we are responsible for the fair presentation in the [consolidated] financial statements of financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

Certain representations in this letter are described as being limited to matters that are material. Items are considered material, regardless of size, if they involve an omission or misstatement of accounting information that, in the light of surrounding circumstances, makes it probable that the judgment of a reasonable person relying on the information would be changed or influenced by the omission or misstatement.

We confirm, to the best of our knowledge and belief, [as of (date of auditor's report),] the following representations made to you during your audit(s).

1. The financial statements referred to above are fairly presented in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
2. We have made available to you all—
 - a. Financial records and related data.
 - b. Minutes of the meetings of stockholders, directors, and committees of directors, or summaries of actions of recent meetings for which minutes have not yet been prepared.
3. There have been no communications from regulatory agencies concerning noncompliance with or deficiencies in financial reporting practices.
4. There are no material transactions that have not been properly recorded in the accounting records underlying the financial statements.
5. We believe that the effects of the uncorrected financial statement misstatements summarized in the accompanying schedule are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the financial statements taken as a whole.¹
6. We acknowledge our responsibility for the design and implementation of programs and controls to prevent and detect fraud.
7. We have no knowledge of any fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity involving—
 - a. Management,
 - b. Employees who have significant roles in internal control, or
 - c. Others where the fraud could have a material effect on the financial statements.
8. We have no knowledge of any allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity received in communications from employees, former employees, analysts, regulators, short sellers, or others.

¹ If management believes that certain of the identified items are not misstatements, management's belief may be acknowledged by adding to the representation, for example, "We do not agree that items XX and XX constitute misstatements because [description of reasons]." [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89.]

9. The company has no plans or intentions that may materially affect the carrying value or classification of assets and liabilities.
10. The following have been properly recorded or disclosed in the financial statements:
 - a. Related-party transactions, including sales, purchases, loans, transfers, leasing arrangements, and guarantees, and amounts receivable from or payable to related parties.
 - b. Guarantees, whether written or oral, under which the company is contingently liable.
 - c. Significant estimates and material concentrations known to management that are required to be disclosed in accordance with the AICPA's Statement of Position 94-6, *Disclosure of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties*. [Significant estimates are estimates at the balance sheet date that could change materially within the next year. Concentrations refer to volumes of business, revenues, available sources of supply, or markets or geographic areas for which events could occur that would significantly disrupt normal finances within the next year.]
11. There are no—
 - a. Violations or possible violations of laws or regulations whose effects should be considered for disclosure in the financial statements or as a basis for recording a loss contingency.
 - b. Unasserted claims or assessments that our lawyer has advised us are probable of assertion and must be disclosed in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*.²
 - c. Other liabilities or gain or loss contingencies that are required to be accrued or disclosed by FASB Statement No. 5.
12. The company has satisfactory title to all owned assets, and there are no liens or encumbrances on such assets nor has any asset been pledged as collateral.
13. The company has complied with all aspects of contractual agreements that would have a material effect on the financial statements in the event of noncompliance.

[Add additional representations that are unique to the entity's business or industry. See paragraph .07 and appendix B [paragraph .17] of this section.]

To the best of our knowledge and belief, no events have occurred subsequent to the balance-sheet date and through the date of this letter that would require adjustment to or disclosure in the aforementioned financial statements.

[Name of Chief Executive Officer and Title]

[Name of Chief Financial Officer and Title]

[As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89. As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

² In the circumstance discussed in footnote 11 of this section, this representation might be worded as follows:

We are not aware of any pending or threatened litigation, claims, or assessments or unasserted claims or assessments that are required to be accrued or disclosed in the financial statements in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*, and we have not consulted a lawyer concerning litigation, claims, or assessments.

[Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999.]

Appendix B

Additional Illustrative Representations

1. As discussed in paragraph .07 of this section, representation letters ordinarily should be tailored to include additional appropriate representations from management relating to matters specific to the entity’s business or industry. The auditor also should be aware that certain AICPA Audit Guides recommend that the auditor obtain written representations concerning matters that are unique to a particular industry. The following is a list of additional representations that may be appropriate in certain situations. This list is not intended to be all-inclusive. The auditor also should consider the effects of pronouncements issued subsequent to the issuance of this section.

<i>General</i>	
<i>Condition</i>	<i>Illustrative Example</i>
Unaudited interim information accompanies the financial statements.	The unaudited interim financial information accompanying [<i>presented in Note X to</i>] the financial statements for the [<i>identify all related periods</i>] has been prepared and presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applicable to interim financial information [<i>and with Item 302(a) of Regulation S-K</i>]. The accounting principles used to prepare the unaudited interim financial information are consistent with those used to prepare the audited financial statements.
The impact of a new accounting principle is not known.	We have not completed the process of evaluating the impact that will result from adopting Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. [XXX, Name], as discussed in Note [X]. The company is therefore unable to disclose the impact that adopting FASB Statement No. [XXX] will have on its financial position and the results of operations when such Statement is adopted.
There is justification for a change in accounting principles.	We believe that [<i>describe the newly adopted accounting principle</i>] is preferable to [<i>describe the former accounting principle</i>] because [<i>describe management’s justification for the change in accounting principles</i>].

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Illustrative Example</i>
Financial circumstances are strained, with disclosure of management's intentions and the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.	Note [X] to the financial statements discloses all of the matters of which we are aware that are relevant to the company's ability to continue as a going concern, including significant conditions and events, and management's plans.
The possibility exists that the value of specific significant long-lived assets or certain identifiable intangibles may be impaired.	We have reviewed long-lived assets and certain identifiable intangibles to be held and used for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances have indicated that the carrying amount of its assets might not be recoverable and have appropriately recorded the adjustment.
The entity engages in transactions with special purpose entities.	<p>We have evaluated all transactions involving special purpose entities to determine that the accounting for such transactions is in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Specifically [indicate appropriate accounting principles:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Conditions pursuant to paragraph 35 of FASB Statement 140, "Accounting for Transfers and Servicing of Financial Assets and Extinguishment of Liabilities"• EITF Issue No. 96-16, "Investor's Accounting for an Investee When the Investor Has a Majority of the Voting Interest by the Minority Shareholder or Shareholders Have certain Approval or Veto Rights"• EITF Issue No. 90-15, "Impact of Nonsubstantive Lessors, Residual Value Guarantees, and Other Provisions in Leasing Transactions"• EITF Issue 96-21, "Implementation in Accounting for Leasing Transactions involving Special-Purpose Entities"• EITF 97-1, "Implementation Issues in Accounting for Lease Transactions, including Those involving Special-Purpose Entities"

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Illustrative Example</i>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• EITF Issue No. 97-2, “Application of FASB Statement No. 94 and APB Opinion No. 16 to Physician Practice Management [PPM] Entities and Certain Other Entities with Contractual Management Arrangements”• EITF Issue No. 00-4, “Majority Owner’s Accounting for a transaction in the Shares of a Consolidated Subsidiary and a Derivative Indexed to the Minority Interest in That Subsidiary.”]

The work of a specialist has been used by the entity.

We agree with the findings of specialists in evaluating the [*describe assertion*] and have adequately considered the qualifications of the specialist in determining the amounts and disclosures used in the financial statements and underlying accounting records. We did not give or cause any instructions to be given to specialists with respect to the values or amounts derived in an attempt to bias their work, and we are not otherwise aware of any matters that have had an impact on the independence or objectivity of the specialists.

Assets

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Illustrative Example</i>
<p><i>Cash</i></p> <p>Disclosure is required of compensating balances or other arrangements involving restrictions on cash balances, line of credit, or similar arrangements.</p>	<p>Arrangements with financial institutions involving compensating balances or other arrangements involving restrictions on cash balances, line of credit, or similar arrangements have been properly disclosed.</p>
<p><i>Financial Instruments</i></p> <p>Management intends to and has the ability to hold to maturity debt securities classified as held-to-maturity.</p>	<p>Debt securities that have been classified as held-to-maturity have been so classified due to the company’s intent to hold such securities</p>

(continued)

Condition

Management considers the decline in value of debt or equity securities to be temporary.

Management has determined the fair value of significant financial instruments that do not have readily determinable market values.

There are financial instruments with off-balance-sheet risk and financial instruments with concentrations of credit risk.

Receivables

Receivables have been recorded in the financial statements.

Illustrative Example

to maturity and the company's ability to do so. All other debt securities have been classified as available-for-sale or trading.

We consider the decline in value of debt or equity securities classified as either available-for-sale or held-to-maturity to be temporary.

The methods and significant assumptions used to determine fair values of financial instruments are as follows: [*describe methods and significant assumptions used to determine fair values of financial instruments*]. The methods and significant assumptions used result in a measure of fair value appropriate for financial statement measurement and disclosure purposes.

The following information about financial instruments with off-balance-sheet risk and financial instruments with concentrations of credit risk has been properly disclosed in the financial statements:

1. The extent, nature, and terms of financial instruments with off-balance-sheet risk
2. The amount of credit risk of financial instruments with off-balance-sheet risk and information about the collateral supporting such financial instruments
3. Significant concentrations of credit risk arising from all financial instruments and information about the collateral supporting such financial instruments

Receivables recorded in the financial statements represent valid claims against debtors for sales or other charges arising on or before the balance-sheet date and have been appropriately reduced to their estimated net realizable value.

Condition	Illustrative Example
<i>Inventories</i> Excess or obsolete inventories exist.	Provision has been made to reduce excess or obsolete inventories to their estimated net realizable value.
<i>Investments</i> There are unusual considerations involved in determining the application of equity accounting.	<p>[For investments in common stock that are either nonmarketable or of which the entity has a 20 percent or greater ownership interest, select the appropriate representation from the following:]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The equity method is used to account for the company's investment in the common stock of [investee] because the company has the ability to exercise significant influence over the investee's operating and financial policies.• The cost method is used to account for the company's investment in the common stock of [investee] because the company does not have the ability to exercise significant influence over the investee's operating and financial policies.
<i>Deferred Charges</i> Material expenditures have been deferred.	We believe that all material expenditures that have been deferred to future periods will be recoverable.
<i>Deferred Tax Assets</i> A deferred tax asset exists at the balance-sheet date.	The valuation allowance has been determined pursuant to the provisions of FASB Statement No. 109, <i>Accounting for Income Taxes</i> , including the company's estimation of future taxable income, if necessary, and is adequate to reduce the total deferred tax asset to an amount that will more likely than not be realized. [Complete with appropriate wording detailing how the entity determined the valuation allowance against the deferred tax asset.]

or

(continued)

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Illustrative Example</i>
	A valuation allowance against deferred tax assets at the balance-sheet date is not considered necessary because it is more likely than not the deferred tax asset will be fully realized.
<i>Liabilities</i>	
<i>Condition</i>	<i>Illustrative Example</i>
<i>Debt</i>	
Short-term debt could be refinanced on a long-term basis and management intends to do so.	The company has excluded short-term obligations totaling \$[<i>amount</i>] from current liabilities because it intends to refinance the obligations on a long-term basis. [<i>Complete with appropriate wording detailing how amounts will be refinanced as follows:</i>]
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The company has issued a long-term obligation [<i>debt security</i>] after the date of the balance sheet but prior to the issuance of the financial statements for the purpose of refinancing the short-term obligations on a long-term basis. • The company has the ability to consummate the refinancing, by using the financing agreement referred to in Note [X] to the financial statements.
Tax-exempt bonds have been issued.	Tax-exempt bonds issued have retained their tax-exempt status.
<i>Taxes</i>	
Management intends to reinvest undistributed earnings of a foreign subsidiary.	We intend to reinvest the undistributed earnings of [<i>name of foreign subsidiary</i>].
<i>Contingencies</i>	
Estimates and disclosures have been made of environmental remediation liabilities and related loss contingencies.	Provision has been made for any material loss that is probable from environmental remediation liabilities associated with [<i>name of site</i>]. We believe that such estimate is reasonable based on available information and that the liabilities and related loss contingencies and the ex-

Condition	Illustrative Example
Agreements may exist to repurchase assets previously sold.	<p>pected outcome of uncertainties have been adequately described in the company's financial statements.</p> <p>Agreements to repurchase assets previously sold have been properly disclosed.</p>
<i>Pension and Postretirement Benefits</i>	
An actuary has been used to measure pension liabilities and costs.	<p>We believe that the actuarial assumptions and methods used to measure pension liabilities and costs for financial accounting purposes are appropriate in the circumstances.</p>
There is involvement with a multiemployer plan.	<p>We are unable to determine the possibility of a withdrawal liability in a multiemployer benefit plan.</p> <p>or</p> <p>We have determined that there is the possibility of a withdrawal liability in a multiemployer plan in the amount of \$[XX].</p>
Postretirement benefits have been eliminated.	<p>We do not intend to compensate for the elimination of postretirement benefits by granting an increase in pension benefits.</p> <p>or</p> <p>We plan to compensate for the elimination of postretirement benefits by granting an increase in pension benefits in the amount of \$[XX].</p>
Employee layoffs that would otherwise lead to a curtailment of a benefit plan are intended to be temporary.	<p>Current employee layoffs are intended to be temporary.</p>
Management intends to either continue to make or not make frequent amendments to its pension or other postretirement benefit plans, which may affect the amortization period of prior service cost, or has expressed a substantive commitment to increase benefit obligations.	<p>We plan to continue to make frequent amendments to its pension or other postretirement benefit plans, which may affect the amortization period of prior service cost.</p> <p>or</p> <p>We do not plan to make frequent amendments to its pension or other postretirement benefit plans.</p>

(continued)

Equity

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Illustrative Example</i>
There are capital stock repurchase options or agreements or capital stock reserved for options, warrants, conversions, or other requirements.	Capital stock repurchase options or agreements or capital stock reserved for options, warrants, conversions, or other requirements have been properly disclosed.

Income Statement

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Illustrative Example</i>
There may be a loss from sales commitments.	Provisions have been made for losses to be sustained in the fulfillment of or from inability to fulfill any sales commitments.
There may be losses from purchase commitments.	Provisions have been made for losses to be sustained as a result of purchase commitments for inventory quantities in excess of normal requirements or at prices in excess of prevailing market prices.
Nature of the product or industry indicates the possibility of undisclosed sales terms.	We have fully disclosed to you all sales terms, including all rights of return or price adjustments and all warranty provisions.

[Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent guidance on special purpose entity transactions.]

Appendix C

Illustrative Updating Management Representation Letter

- 1. The following letter is presented for illustrative purposes only. It may be used in the circumstances described in paragraph .12 of this section. Management need not repeat all of the representations made in the previous representation letter.
- 2. If matters exist that should be disclosed to the auditor, they should be indicated by listing them following the representation. For example, if an event subsequent to the date of the balance sheet has been disclosed in the financial statements, the final paragraph could be modified as follows: “To the best of our knowledge and belief, except as discussed in Note X to the financial statements, no events have occurred. . . .”

3.

[Date]

To [Auditor]

In connection with your audit(s) of the [identification of financial statements] of [name of entity] as of [dates] and for the [periods] for the purpose of expressing an opinion as to whether the [consolidated] financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows of [name of entity] in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, you were previously provided with a representation letter under date of [date of previous representation letter]. No information has come to our attention that would cause us to believe that any of those previous representations should be modified.

To the best of our knowledge and belief, no events have occurred subsequent to [date of latest balance sheet reported on by the auditor] and through the date of this letter that would require adjustment to or disclosure in the aforementioned financial statements.

[Name of Chief Executive Officer and Title]

[Name of Chief Financial Officer and Title]

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

AU Section 9333***Management Representations: Auditing Interpretations of Section 333*****1. Management Representations on Violations and Possible Violations of Laws and Regulations**

.01 Question—Section 333, *Management Representations*, lists matters for which the auditor ordinarily obtains written representations from management. One of those matters is: Violations or possible violations of laws or regulations whose effects should be considered for disclosure in financial statements or as a basis for recording a loss contingency.

.02 Guidance on evaluating the need to disclose litigation, claims, and assessments that may result from possible violations is provided by FASB Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies* [AC section C59]. Section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*, provides guidance on evaluating the materiality of illegal acts. Does the representation regarding “possible violations” include matters beyond those described in FASB Statement No. 5 [AC section C59] and section 317?

.03 Interpretation—No. Section 333 did not change the relevant criteria for evaluating the need for disclosure of violations and possible violations of laws or regulations. In requesting the representation on possible violations, the auditor is not asking for management’s speculation on all possibilities of legal challenges to its actions.

.04 The representation concerns matters that have come to management’s attention and that are significant enough that they should be considered in determining whether financial statement disclosures are necessary. It recognizes that these are matters of judgment and that the need for disclosure is not always readily apparent.

[Issue Date: March, 1979.]

AU Section 334

Related Parties

(Supersedes Statement on Auditing Standards
No. 6, AICPA, Professional Standards,
vol. 1, AU sec. 335.01–.19)

Source: SAS No. 45.

See section 9334 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for periods ended after September 30, 1983, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 This section provides guidance on procedures that should be considered by the auditor when he is performing an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards to identify related party relationships and transactions and to satisfy himself concerning the required financial statement accounting and disclosure.¹ The procedures set forth in this section should not be considered all-inclusive. Also, not all of them may be required in every audit.

Accounting Considerations

.02 FASB Statement No. 57, *Related Party Disclosures* [AC section R36], gives the requirements for related party disclosures. Certain accounting pronouncements prescribe the accounting treatment when related parties are involved; however, established accounting principles ordinarily do not require transactions with related parties to be accounted for on a basis different from

* This section also withdraws the following auditing interpretations dated March 1976 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, AU sec. 9335.01–.11):

- Evaluating the Adequacy of Disclosure of Related Party Transactions
- Disclosure of Commonly Controlled Parties
- Definition of “Immediate Family”

¹ Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement No. 57, *Related Party Disclosures*, paragraphs 2 through 4 [AC section R36.102–.104], contains the disclosure requirements for related party relationships and transactions. The glossary of that Statement [AC section R36.406] defines related parties as follows:

Affiliates of the enterprise; entities for which investments are accounted for by the equity method by the enterprise; trusts for the benefit of employees, such as pension and profit-sharing trusts that are managed by or under the trusteeship of management; principal owners of the enterprise; its management; members of the immediate families of principal owners of the enterprise and its management; and other parties with which the enterprise may deal if one party controls or can significantly influence the management or operating policies of the other to an extent that one of the transacting parties might be prevented from fully pursuing its own separate interests. Another party also is a related party if it can significantly influence the management or operating policies of the transacting parties or if it has an ownership interest in one of the transacting parties and can significantly influence the other to an extent that one or more of the transacting parties might be prevented from fully pursuing its own separate interests.

The glossary also gives definitions of the terms “affiliate,” “control,” “immediate family,” “management,” and “principal owners” [AC section R36.401–.406]. Paragraph 1 of the FASB Statement [AC section R36.101] gives examples of related party transactions.

that which would be appropriate if the parties were not related. The auditor should view related party transactions within the framework of existing pronouncements, placing primary emphasis on the adequacy of disclosure. In addition, the auditor should be aware that the substance of a particular transaction could be significantly different from its form and that financial statements should recognize the substance of particular transactions rather than merely their legal form.²

.03 Transactions that because of their nature may be indicative of the existence of related parties include³—

- a. Borrowing or lending on an interest-free basis or at a rate of interest significantly above or below market rates prevailing at the time of the transaction.
- b. Selling real estate at a price that differs significantly from its appraised value.
- c. Exchanging property for similar property in a nonmonetary transaction.
- d. Making loans with no scheduled terms for when or how the funds will be repaid.

Audit Procedures

.04 An audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards cannot be expected to provide assurance that all related party transactions will be discovered. Nevertheless, during the course of his audit, the auditor should be aware of the possible existence of material related party transactions that could affect the financial statements and of common ownership or management control relationships for which FASB Statement No. 57 [AC section R36] requires disclosure even though there are no transactions. Many of the procedures outlined in the following paragraphs are normally performed in an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, even if the auditor has no reason to suspect that related party transactions or control relationships exist. Other audit procedures set forth in this section are specifically directed to related party transactions.

.05 In determining the scope of work to be performed with respect to possible transactions with related parties, the auditor should obtain an understanding of management responsibilities and the relationship of each component to the total entity. He should consider controls over management

² Some pronouncements specify criteria for determining, presenting, and accounting for the substance of certain transactions and events. Examples include (1) presenting consolidated financial statements instead of separate statements of the component legal entities (Accounting Research Bulletin No. 51 [AC section C51]); (2) capitalizing leases (FASB Statement No. 13 [AC section L10]); and (3) imputing an appropriate interest rate when the face amount of a note does not reasonably represent the present value of the consideration given or received in exchange for it (Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 21 [AC section I69]; FASB Statement No. 94 [AC section C51]). [Footnote revised, June 1993, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement of Position 93-3.]

³ FASB Statement No. 57, paragraph 1 [AC section R36.101], gives other examples of common types of transactions with related parties, and it states that “transactions between related parties are considered to be related party transactions even though they may not be given accounting recognition.”

activities, and he should consider the business purpose served by the various components of the entity. Normally, the business structure and style of operating are based on the abilities of management, tax and legal considerations, product diversification, and geographical location. Experience has shown, however, that business structure and operating style are occasionally deliberately designed to obscure related party transactions.

.06 In the absence of evidence to the contrary, transactions with related parties should not be assumed to be outside the ordinary course of business. The auditor should, however, be aware of the possibility that transactions with related parties may have been motivated solely, or in large measure, by conditions similar to the following:

- a. Lack of sufficient working capital or credit to continue the business
- b. An urgent desire for a continued favorable earnings record in the hope of supporting the price of the company's stock
- c. An overly optimistic earnings forecast
- d. Dependence on a single or relatively few products, customers, or transactions for the continuing success of the venture
- e. A declining industry characterized by a large number of business failures
- f. Excess capacity
- g. Significant litigation, especially litigation between stockholders and management
- h. Significant obsolescence dangers because the company is in a high-technology industry

Determining the Existence of Related Parties

.07 The auditor should place emphasis on testing material transactions with parties he knows are related to the reporting entity. Certain relationships, such as parent-subsidiary or investor-investee, may be clearly evident. Determining the existence of others requires the application of specific audit procedures, which may include the following:

- a. Evaluate the company's procedures for identifying and properly accounting for related party transactions.
- b. Request from appropriate management personnel the names of all related parties and inquire whether there were any transactions with these parties during the period.
- c. Review filings by the reporting entity with the Securities and Exchange Commission and other regulatory agencies for the names of related parties and for other businesses in which officers and directors occupy directorship or management positions.
- d. Determine the names of all pension and other trusts established for the benefit of employees and the names of their officers and trustees.⁴

⁴ According to FASB Statement No. 57, paragraph 24(f) [AC section R36.406] "trusts for the benefit of employees, such as pension and profit-sharing trusts that are managed by or under the trusteeship of management," are related parties.

- e.* Review stockholder listings of closely held companies to identify principal stockholders.
- f.* Review prior years' working papers for the names of known related parties.
- g.* Inquire of predecessor, principal, or other auditors of related entities concerning their knowledge of existing relationships and the extent of management involvement in material transactions.
- h.* Review material investment transactions during the period under audit to determine whether the nature and extent of investments during the period create related parties.

Identifying Transactions With Related Parties

.08 The following procedures are intended to provide guidance for identifying material transactions with parties known to be related and for identifying material transactions that may be indicative of the existence of previously undetermined relationships:

- a.* Provide audit personnel performing segments of the audit or auditing and reporting separately on the accounts of related components of the reporting entity with the names of known related parties so that they may become aware of transactions with such parties during their audits.
- b.* Review the minutes of meetings of the board of directors and executive or operating committees for information about material transactions authorized or discussed at their meetings.
- c.* Review proxy and other material filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission and comparable data filed with other regulatory agencies for information about material transactions with related parties.
- d.* Review conflict-of-interests statements obtained by the company from its management.⁵
- e.* Review the extent and nature of business transacted with major customers, suppliers, borrowers, and lenders for indications of previously undisclosed relationships.
- f.* Consider whether transactions are occurring, but are not being given accounting recognition, such as receiving or providing accounting, management or other services at no charge or a major stockholder absorbing corporate expenses.
- g.* Review accounting records for large, unusual, or nonrecurring transactions or balances, paying particular attention to transactions recognized at or near the end of the reporting period.
- h.* Review confirmations of compensating balance arrangements for indications that balances are or were maintained for or by related parties.

⁵ Conflict-of-interests statements are intended to provide the board of directors with information about the existence or nonexistence of relationships between the reporting persons and parties with whom the company transacts business.

- i. Review invoices from law firms that have performed regular or special services for the company for indications of the existence of related parties or related party transactions.
- j. Review confirmations of loans receivable and payable for indications of guarantees. When guarantees are indicated, determine their nature and the relationships, if any, of the guarantors to the reporting entity.

Examining Identified Related Party Transactions

.09 After identifying related party transactions, the auditor should apply the procedures he considers necessary to obtain satisfaction concerning the purpose, nature, and extent of these transactions and their effect on the financial statements. The procedures should be directed toward obtaining and evaluating sufficient competent evidential matter and should extend beyond inquiry of management. Procedures that should be considered include the following:

- a. Obtain an understanding of the business purpose of the transaction.⁶
- b. Examine invoices, executed copies of agreements, contracts, and other pertinent documents, such as receiving reports and shipping documents.
- c. Determine whether the transaction has been approved by the board of directors or other appropriate officials.
- d. Test for reasonableness the compilation of amounts to be disclosed, or considered for disclosure, in the financial statements.
- e. Arrange for the audits of intercompany account balances to be performed as of concurrent dates, even if the fiscal years differ, and for the examination of specified, important, and representative related party transactions by the auditors for each of the parties, with appropriate exchange of relevant information.
- f. Inspect or confirm and obtain satisfaction concerning the transferability and value of collateral.

.10 When necessary to fully understand a particular transaction, the following procedures, which might not otherwise be deemed necessary to comply with generally accepted auditing standards, should be considered.⁷

- a. Confirm transaction amount and terms, including guarantees and other significant data, with the other party or parties to the transaction.
- b. Inspect evidence in possession of the other party or parties to the transaction.

⁶ Until the auditor understands the business sense of material transactions, he cannot complete his audit. If he lacks sufficient specialized knowledge to understand a particular transaction, he should consult with persons who do have the requisite knowledge.

⁷ Arrangements for certain procedures should be made or approved in advance by appropriate client officials.

- c. Confirm or discuss significant information with intermediaries, such as banks, guarantors, agents, or attorneys, to obtain a better understanding of the transaction.
- d. Refer to financial publications, trade journals, credit agencies, and other information sources when there is reason to believe that unfamiliar customers, suppliers, or other business enterprises with which material amounts of business have been transacted may lack substance.
- e. With respect to material uncollected balances, guarantees, and other obligations, obtain information about the financial capability of the other party or parties to the transaction. Such information may be obtained from audited financial statements, unaudited financial statements, income tax returns, and reports issued by regulatory agencies, taxing authorities, financial publications, or credit agencies. The auditor should decide on the degree of assurance required and the extent to which available information provides such assurance.

Disclosure

.11 For each material related party transaction (or aggregation of similar transactions) or common ownership or management control relationship for which FASB Statement No. 57 [AC section R36] requires disclosure, the auditor should consider whether he has obtained sufficient competent evidential matter to understand the relationship of the parties and, for related party transactions, the effects of the transaction on the financial statements. He should then evaluate all the information available to him concerning the related party transaction or control relationship and satisfy himself on the basis of his professional judgment that it is adequately disclosed in the financial statements.⁸

.12 Except for routine transactions, it will generally not be possible to determine whether a particular transaction would have taken place if the parties had not been related, or assuming it would have taken place, what the terms and manner of settlement would have been. Accordingly, it is difficult to substantiate representations that a transaction was consummated on terms equivalent to those that prevail in arm's-length transactions.⁹ If such a representation is included in the financial statements and the auditor believes that the representation is unsubstantiated by management, he should express a qualified or adverse opinion because of a departure from generally accepted accounting principles, depending on materiality (see section 508.35 and .36).

⁸ The disclosure standards are contained in FASB Statement No. 57, paragraphs 2 through 4 [AC section R36.102-.104]. Also, see section 431, *Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements*.

⁹ FASB Statement No. 57, paragraph 3 [AC section R36.103], states that if representations are made about transactions with related parties, the representations "shall not imply that the related party transactions were consummated on terms equivalent to those that prevail in arm's-length transactions unless such representations can be substantiated."

AU Section 9334****Related Parties: Auditing Interpretations of Section 334*****[1.] Evaluating the Adequacy of Disclosure of Related Party Transactions**

[.01–.05] [Withdrawn August, 1983, by SAS No. 45.] (See section 334.)

[2.] Disclosure of Commonly Controlled Parties

[.06–.09] [Withdrawn August, 1983, by SAS No. 45.] (See section 334.)

[3.] Definition of “Immediate Family”

[.10–.11] [Withdrawn August, 1983, by SAS No. 45.] (See section 334.)

4. Exchange of Information Between the Principal and Other Auditor on Related Parties

.12 Question—Section 334, *Related Parties*, paragraphs .04 and .07, states that “during the course of his audit, the auditor should be aware of the possible existence of material related party transactions,” and that determining the existence of related party transactions may require the inquiry of the “principal, or other auditors of related entities concerning their knowledge of existing relationships and the extent of management involvement in material transactions.” When should that inquiry be made?

.13 Interpretation—The principal auditor and the other auditor should each obtain from the other the names of known related parties and the other information referred to above. Ordinarily, that exchange of information should be made at an early stage of the audit.

[Issue Date: April, 1979.]

5. Examination of Identified Related Party Transactions with a Component

.14 Question—According to section 334.09, once related party transactions have been identified, “the auditor should apply the procedures he considers necessary to obtain satisfaction concerning the purpose, nature and extent of these transactions and their effect on the financial statements.” When there is a principal auditor-other auditor relationship, how may the auditors obtain that satisfaction regarding transactions that may involve not only the components¹ they are auditing, but also, other components?

* [Section number changed August, 1983, to correspond to section 334, *Related Parties*.]

¹ For the purpose of this interpretation, the entities whose separate financial statements collectively comprise the consolidated or other financial statements are referred to as components.

.15 Interpretation—Audit procedures may sometimes have to be applied to records of components being audited by the other. One auditor may arrange to perform those procedures himself, or he may request the other to do so.² There may be circumstances when there are unusual or complex related party transactions and an auditor believes that access to relevant portions of the other's work papers is essential to his understanding of the effects of those transactions on the financial statements he is auditing. In those circumstances, access ordinarily should be provided.³

[Issue Date: April, 1979.]

6. The Nature and Extent of Auditing Procedures for Examining Related Party Transactions

.16 Question—Section 334, *Related Parties*, provides general guidance about the types of procedures an auditor might apply to identified related party transactions. How extensive should the auditor's procedures be to examine related party transactions?

.17 Interpretation—The auditor's procedures should be sufficient to provide reasonable assurance that related party transactions are adequately disclosed and that identified related party transactions do not contain misstatements that, when aggregated with misstatements in other balances or classes of transactions, could be material to the financial statements taken as a whole. As in examining any other material account balance or class of transactions, the auditor needs to consider audit risk⁴ and design and apply appropriate substantive tests to evaluate management's assertions.

.18 The risk associated with management's assertions about related party transactions is often assessed as higher than for many other types of transactions because of the possibility that the parties to the transaction are motivated by reasons other than those that exist for most business transactions.⁵

.19 The higher the auditor's assessment of risk regarding related party transactions, the more extensive or effective the audit tests should be. For example, the auditor's tests regarding valuation of a receivable from an entity under common control might be more extensive than for a trade receivable of the same size because the common parent may be motivated to obscure the substance of the transaction. In assessing the risk of the related party transactions the auditor obtains an understanding of the business purpose of the transactions. Until the auditor understands the business sense of material transactions, he cannot complete his audit. If he lacks sufficient specialized knowledge to obtain that understanding for a particular transaction, he should consult with persons who do have the requisite knowledge. In addition, to un-

² In this case, the auditor should follow the guidance in the interpretation titled *Specific Procedures Performed by Other Auditors at the Principal Auditor's Request*, section 9543.01-.03.

³ There is no intention in this interpretation to modify section 543.12c regarding the principal auditor's consideration of review of the other auditor's workpapers when he decides not to make reference to the other auditor.

⁴ Audit risk and its components are described in section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*.

⁵ See section 334.06.

derstand the transaction, or obtain evidence regarding it, the auditor may have to refer to audited or unaudited financial statements of the related party, apply procedures at the related party, or in some cases audit the financial statements of the related party.

.20 Question—Section 334, *Related Parties*, paragraph .07, states that specific audit procedures should be applied to determine if related parties exist. That paragraph also suggests some specific audit procedures to identify related parties that the auditor should consider. What other audit procedures for determining the existence of related parties should the auditor consider?

.21 Interpretation—The auditor should consider obtaining representations from the entity's senior management and its board of directors about whether they or any other related parties engaged in any transactions with the entity during the period.

[Issue Date: May, 1986.]

7. Management's and Auditor's Responsibilities With Regard to Related Party Disclosures Prefaced by Terminology Such As "Management Believes That"

.22 Question—Management discloses in its financial statements that a related party transaction was consummated on terms equivalent to those that prevail in arm's length transactions, and prefaces the representation with a phrase such as "Management believes that" or "It is the Company's belief that." Does the use of such terminology change management's responsibility to substantiate the representation?

.23 Interpretation—No. FASB Statement No. 57, *Related Party Disclosures*, paragraph 3 [AC section R36.103], states that the representations about a related party transaction "shall not imply that the related party transactions were consummated on terms equivalent to those that prevail in arm's-length transactions unless such representations can be substantiated." A preface to a disclosure such as "Management believes that" or "It is the Company's belief that" does not change management's responsibility to substantiate the representation. Section 334, *Related Parties*, paragraph .12, indicates that if such a representation is included in the financial statements and the auditor believes that the representation is unsubstantiated by management, he should express a qualified or adverse opinion because of a departure from generally accepted accounting principles, depending on materiality.

[Issue Date: May, 2000.]

AU Section 336***Using the Work of a Specialist***

(Supersedes SAS No. 11)

Source: SAS No. 73.

See section 9336 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for audits of periods ending on or after December 15, 1994.

Introduction and Applicability

.01 The purpose of this section is to provide guidance to the auditor who uses the work of a specialist in performing an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. For purposes of this section, a specialist is a person (or firm) possessing special skill or knowledge in a particular field other than accounting or auditing.¹

.02 Specialists to which this section applies include, but are not limited to, actuaries, appraisers, engineers, environmental consultants, and geologists. This section also applies to attorneys engaged as specialists in situations other than to provide services to a client concerning litigation, claims, or assessments to which section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*, applies. For example, attorneys may be engaged by a client or by the auditor as specialists in a variety of other circumstances, including interpreting the provisions of a contractual agreement.

.03 The guidance in this section is applicable when—

- a. Management engages or employs a specialist and the auditor uses that specialist's work as evidential matter in performing substantive tests to evaluate material financial statement assertions.
- b. Management engages a specialist employed by the auditor's firm to provide advisory services² and the auditor uses that specialist's work as evidential matter in performing substantive tests to evaluate material financial statement assertions.
- c. The auditor engages a specialist and uses that specialist's work as evidential matter in performing substantive tests to evaluate material financial statement assertions.

.04 The guidance provided in this section applies to audits of financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP)³ and to engagements performed under section 623, *Special Reports*, including a comprehensive basis of accounting other than GAAP.

¹ In general, the auditor's education, training, and experience enable him or her to be knowledgeable concerning income tax matters and to be competent to assess their presentation in the financial statements.

² The auditor should consider the effect, if any, that using the work of a specialist employed by the auditor's firm has on independence.

³ References in this section to "financial statements" and to "generally accepted accounting principles" include special reports covered under section 623, *Special Reports*.

.05 This section does not apply to situations covered by section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, in which a specialist employed by the auditor's firm participates in the audit.

Decision to Use the Work of a Specialist

.06 The auditor's education and experience enable him or her to be knowledgeable about business matters in general, but the auditor is not expected to have the expertise of a person trained for or qualified to engage in the practice of another profession or occupation. During the audit, however, an auditor may encounter complex or subjective matters potentially material to the financial statements. Such matters may require special skill or knowledge and in the auditor's judgment require using the work of a specialist to obtain competent evidential matter.

.07 Examples of the types of matters that the auditor may decide require him or her to consider using the work of a specialist include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Valuation (for example, special-purpose inventories, high-technology materials or equipment, pharmaceutical products, complex financial instruments, real estate, restricted securities, works of art, and environmental contingencies)
- b. Determination of physical characteristics relating to quantity on hand or condition (for example, quantity or condition of minerals, mineral reserves, or materials stored in stockpiles)
- c. Determination of amounts derived by using specialized techniques or methods (for example, actuarial determinations for employee benefits obligations and disclosures, and determinations for insurance loss reserves⁴)
- d. Interpretation of technical requirements, regulations, or agreements (for example, the potential significance of contracts or other legal documents or legal title to property)

Qualifications and Work of a Specialist

.08 The auditor should consider the following to evaluate the professional qualifications of the specialist in determining that the specialist possesses the necessary skill or knowledge in the particular field:

- a. The professional certification, license, or other recognition of the competence of the specialist in his or her field, as appropriate
- b. The reputation and standing of the specialist in the views of peers and others familiar with the specialist's capability or performance
- c. The specialist's experience in the type of work under consideration

.09 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the nature of the work performed or to be performed by the specialist. This understanding should cover the following:

- a. The objectives and scope of the specialist's work

⁴ In the specific situation involving the audit of an insurance entity's loss reserves, an outside loss reserve specialist—that is, one who is not an employee or officer of the insurance entity—should be used. When the auditor has the requisite knowledge and experience, the auditor may serve as the loss reserve specialist. (See Statement of Position 92-4, *Auditing Insurance Entities' Loss Reserves*.)

- b. The specialist's relationship to the client (see paragraphs .10 and .11)
- c. The methods or assumptions used
- d. A comparison of the methods or assumptions used with those used in the preceding period
- e. The appropriateness of using the specialist's work for the intended purpose⁵
- f. The form and content of the specialist's findings that will enable the auditor to make the evaluation described in paragraph .12

Relationship of the Specialist to the Client

.10 The auditor should evaluate the relationship⁶ of the specialist to the client, including circumstances that might impair the specialist's objectivity. Such circumstances include situations in which the client has the ability—through employment, ownership, contractual right, family relationship, or otherwise—to directly or indirectly control or significantly influence the specialist.

.11 When a specialist does not have a relationship with the client, the specialist's work usually will provide the auditor with greater assurance of reliability. However, the work of a specialist who has a relationship with the client may be acceptable under certain circumstances. If the specialist has a relationship with the client, the auditor should assess the risk that the specialist's objectivity might be impaired. If the auditor believes the relationship might impair the specialist's objectivity, the auditor should perform additional procedures with respect to some or all of the specialist's assumptions, methods, or findings to determine that the findings are not unreasonable or should engage another specialist for that purpose.

Using the Findings of the Specialist

.12 The appropriateness and reasonableness of methods and assumptions used and their application are the responsibility of the specialist. The auditor should (a) obtain an understanding of the methods and assumptions used by the specialist, (b) make appropriate tests of data provided to the specialist, taking into account the auditor's assessment of control risk, and (c) evaluate whether the specialist's findings support the related assertions in the financial statements. Ordinarily, the auditor would use the work of the specialist unless the auditor's procedures lead him or her to believe the findings are unreasonable in the circumstances. If the auditor believes the findings are unreasonable, he or she should apply additional procedures, which may include obtaining the opinion of another specialist.

Effect of the Specialist's Work on the Auditor's Report

.13 If the auditor determines that the specialist's findings support the related assertions in the financial statements, he or she reasonably may con-

⁵ In some cases, the auditor may decide it is necessary to contact the specialist to determine that the specialist is aware that his or her work will be used for evaluating the assertions in the financial statements.

⁶ The term *relationship* includes, but is not limited to, those situations discussed in section 334, *Related Parties*, footnote 1.

clude that sufficient competent evidential matter has been obtained. If there is a material difference between the specialist's findings and the assertions in the financial statements, he or she should apply additional procedures. If after applying any additional procedures that might be appropriate the auditor is unable to resolve the matter, the auditor should obtain the opinion of another specialist, unless it appears to the auditor that the matter cannot be resolved. A matter that has not been resolved ordinarily will cause the auditor to conclude that he or she should qualify the opinion or disclaim an opinion because the inability to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter as to an assertion of material significance in the financial statements constitutes a scope limitation. (See section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .22 and .23.)

.14 The auditor may conclude after performing additional procedures, including possibly obtaining the opinion of another specialist, that the assertions in the financial statements are not in conformity with GAAP. In that event, the auditor should express a qualified or adverse opinion. (See section 508.35, .36, and .41.)

Reference to the Specialist in the Auditor's Report

.15 Except as discussed in paragraph .16, the auditor should not refer to the work or findings of the specialist. Such a reference might be misunderstood to be a qualification of the auditor's opinion or a division of responsibility, neither of which is intended. Further, there may be an inference that the auditor making such reference performed a more thorough audit than an auditor not making such reference.

.16 The auditor may, as a result of the report or findings of the specialist, decide to add explanatory language to his or her standard report or depart from an unqualified opinion. Reference to and identification of the specialist may be made in the auditor's report if the auditor believes such reference will facilitate an understanding of the reason for the explanatory paragraph or the departure from the unqualified opinion.

Effective Date

.17 This section is effective for audits of periods ending on or after December 15, 1994. Early application of the provisions of this section is encouraged.

AU Section 9336

Using the Work of a Specialist: Auditing Interpretations of Section 336

1. The Use of Legal Interpretations As Evidential Matter to Support Management's Assertion That a Transfer of Financial Assets Has Met the Isolation Criterion in Paragraph 9(a) of Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement No. 140

.01 *Introduction*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. 140,¹ *Accounting for Transfers and Servicing of Financial Assets and Extinguishments of Liabilities*, requires that a transferor of financial assets must surrender control over the financial assets to account for the transfer as a sale. Paragraph 9(a) states one of several conditions that must be met to provide evidence of surrender of control:

The transferred assets have been isolated from the transferor—put presumptively beyond the reach of the transferor and its creditors, even in bankruptcy or other receivership.

Paragraph 27 of FASB Statement No. 140 describes in greater detail the evidence required to support management's assertion that transferred financial assets have been isolated:

The nature and extent of supporting evidence required for an assertion in financial statements that transferred financial assets have been isolated—put presumptively beyond the reach of the transferor and its creditors, either by a single transaction or a series of transactions taken as a whole—depend on the facts and circumstances. All available evidence that either supports or questions an assertion shall be considered. That consideration includes making judgments about whether the contract or circumstances permit the transferor to revoke the transfer. It also may include making judgments about the kind of bankruptcy or other receivership into which a transferor or SPE might be placed, whether a transfer of financial assets would likely be deemed a true sale at law, whether the transferor is affiliated with the transferee, and other factors pertinent under applicable law. Derecognition of transferred assets is appropriate only if the available evidence provides reasonable assurance that the transferred assets would be beyond the reach of the powers of a bankruptcy trustee or other receiver for the transferor or any consolidated affiliate of the transferor that is not a special-purpose corporation or other entity designed to make remote the possibility that it would enter bankruptcy or other receivership.

A determination about whether the isolation criterion has been met to support a conclusion regarding surrender of control is largely a matter of law. This aspect of surrender of control, therefore, is assessed primarily from a legal perspective.

¹ Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. 140, *Accounting for Transfers and Servicing of Financial Assets and Extinguishments of Liabilities*, is a replacement of FASB Statement No. 125 and is effective for transfers and servicing of financial assets and extinguishments of liabilities occurring after March 31, 2001, except as provided in paragraphs 19–25 of FASB Statement No. 140 as amended by FASB Technical Bulletin (FTB) No. 01-1, *Effective Date for Certain Financial Institutions of Certain Provisions of Statement 140 Related to the Isolation of Transferred Financial Assets*.

.02 Effective Date and Applicability—This interpretation is effective for auditing procedures related to transfers of financial assets that are required to be accounted for under FASB Statement No. 140, as amended by FASB Technical Bulletin (FTB) No. 01-1, *Effective Date for Certain Financial Institutions of Certain Provisions of Statement 140 Related to the Isolation of Transferred Financial Assets*.²

.03 Question—What should the auditor consider in determining whether to use the work of a legal specialist³ to obtain persuasive evidence to support management's assertion that a transfer of financial assets meets the isolation criterion of FASB Statement No. 140?

.04 Interpretation—Section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*, paragraph .06, states that “during the audit...an auditor may encounter complex or subjective matters potentially material to the financial statements. Such matters may require special skill or knowledge and in the auditor's judgment require using the work of a specialist to obtain competent evidential matter.”

.05 Use of a legal specialist may not be necessary to obtain competent evidential matter to support management's assertion that the isolation criterion is met in certain situations, such as when there is a routine transfer of financial assets that does not result in any continuing involvement by the transferor.⁴

.06 Many transfers of financial assets involve complex legal structures, continuing involvement by the transferor, or other legal issues that, in the auditor's judgment, make it difficult to determine whether the isolation criterion is met. In these situations, use of a legal specialist usually is necessary. A legal specialist formulating an opinion as to whether a transfer isolates the transferred assets beyond the reach of the transferor and its creditors may consider, among other things, the structure of the transaction taken as a whole, the nature of any continuing involvement, the type of insolvency or other receivership proceedings to which the transferor might become subject, and other factors pertinent under applicable law.

.07 If a legal opinion is used as evidence to support the accounting conclusion related to multiple transfers under a single structure, and such transfers occur over an extended period of time under that structure, the auditor should evaluate the need for management to obtain periodic updates of that opinion to confirm that there have been no subsequent changes in relevant law or applicable regulations that may change the applicability of the previous opinion to such transfers. The auditor also should evaluate the need for management to obtain periodic updates of an opinion to confirm that there

² FTB No. 01-1 amends FASB Statement No. 140 to change the effective date for paragraphs 9(a), 27, 28, and 80–84 of FASB Statement No. 140 for transfers of financial assets by certain financial institutions. Paragraphs 6–8 of FTB No. 01-1 also provide additional transition time for transfers by financial institutions to certain master trusts.

³ Client's internal or external attorney who is knowledgeable about relevant sections of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code and other federal, state, or foreign laws, as applicable.

⁴ FASB Emerging Issues Task Force Topic No. D-99, *Questions and Answers Related to Servicing Activities in a Qualifying Special-Purpose Entity under FASB Statement No. 140*, characterizes no continuing involvement with the transferred assets as “no servicing responsibilities, no participation in future cash flows, no recourse obligations other than standard representations and warranties that the financial assets transferred met the delivery requirements under the arrangement, no further involvement of any kind.”

If a contractual provision (such as a call or removal of accounts provision) gives the transferor the unilateral ability to require the return of specific financial assets, the auditor should consider the effect of paragraph 9(c) of FASB Statement No. 140.

have been no subsequent changes in relevant law or applicable regulations that may affect the conclusions reached in the previous opinion in the case of other transfers (see paragraph 55 of FASB Statement No. 140).

.08 If management's assertion with respect to a new transaction is that the transaction structure is the same as a prior structure for which a legal opinion that complies with this interpretation was used as evidence to support an assertion that the transfer of assets met the isolation criterion, the auditor should evaluate the need for management to obtain an update of that opinion to confirm that there have been no changes in relevant law, applicable regulations, or in the pertinent facts of the transaction that may affect the applicability of the previous opinion to the new transaction.

.09 Question—If the auditor determines that the use of a legal specialist is required, what should he or she consider in assessing the adequacy of the legal opinion?

.10 Interpretation—In assessing the adequacy of the legal opinion, the auditor should consider whether the legal specialist has experience with relevant matters, including knowledge of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code, and other federal, state, or foreign law, as applicable, as well as knowledge of the transaction upon which management's assertion is based. For transactions that may be affected by provisions of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act, the auditor should consider whether the legal specialist has experience with the rights and powers of receivers, conservators, and liquidating agents under that Act. The auditor should obtain an understanding of the assumptions that are used by the legal specialist, and make appropriate tests of any information that management provides to the legal specialist and upon which the specialist indicates it relied. For example, testing management's information underlying a legal specialist's assumption regarding the adequacy of consideration received may depend on the nature of the transaction and the relationship of the parties. When the legal specialist's opinion has assumed the adequacy of consideration for transfers from a particular legal entity to its wholly owned subsidiary, changes in the subsidiary's capital accounts plus other consideration generally would be sufficient audit evidence as to the adequacy of consideration. In the case of other transfers, such as those that are not to a wholly owned subsidiary of a particular legal entity that is the transferor, obtaining additional audit evidence may be necessary to evaluate management's assertion with regard to the adequacy of consideration upon which the legal specialist relied, because changes in the transferee's capital accounts do not solely benefit the transferring entity.

.11 The auditor also should consider the form and content of the documentation that the legal specialist provides and evaluate whether the legal specialist's findings support management's assertions with respect to the isolation criterion. Section 336.13 states that "if the auditor determines that the specialist's findings support the related assertions in the financial statements, he or she reasonably may conclude that sufficient competent evidential matter has been obtained." FASB Statement No. 140's requirement regarding reasonable assurance that the transferred assets would be isolated provides the basis for what auditors should consider in evaluating the work of a legal specialist.

.12 Findings of a legal specialist that relate to the isolation of transferred financial assets are often in the form of a reasoned legal opinion that is restricted to particular facts and circumstances relevant to the specific transaction. The reasoning of such opinion may rely upon analogy to legal precedents that may not involve facts and circumstances that are comparable to that

specific transaction. The auditor also should consider the effect of any limitations or disclaimers of opinion in assessing the adequacy of any legal opinion.

.13 An example of the conclusions in a legal opinion for an entity that is subject to the U.S. Bankruptcy Code that provides persuasive evidence, in the absence of contradictory evidence, to support management's assertion that the transferred financial assets have been put presumptively beyond the reach of the entity and its creditors, even in bankruptcy or other receivership, follows:

"We believe (or it is our opinion) that in a properly presented and argued case, as a legal matter, in the event the Seller were to become a Debtor, the transfer of the Financial Assets from the Seller to the Purchaser would be considered to be a sale (or a true sale) of the Financial Assets from the Seller to the Purchaser and not a loan and, accordingly, the Financial Assets and the proceeds thereof transferred to the Purchaser by the Seller in accordance with the Purchase Agreement would not be deemed to be property of the Seller's estate for purposes of [the relevant sections] of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code."

The following additional paragraph addressing substantive consolidation applies when the entity to which the assets are sold (as described in the opinion) is an affiliate of the selling entity and may also apply in other situations as noted by the legal specialist. For example, if a so-called "two-step" structure has been used to achieve isolation, this paragraph usually will be required with respect to the transferee in the first step of such structure (see paragraph .15 and related footnotes for additional guidance on the second step of a two-step structure as described in paragraph 83 of FASB Statement No. 140). When the transferor has entered into transactions with an affiliate that could affect the issue of substantive consolidation, the opinion should address the effect of that involvement on the opinion.

"Based upon the assumptions of fact and the discussion set forth above, and on a reasoned analysis of analogous case law, we are of the opinion that in a properly presented and argued case, as a legal matter, in a proceeding under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code,⁵ in which the Seller is a Debtor, a court would not grant an order consolidating the assets and liabilities of the Purchaser with those of the Seller in a case involving the insolvency of the Seller under the doctrine of substantive consolidation."

In the case of a transferor that is not entitled to become a debtor under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code, a legal opinion regarding whether the isolation criterion is met would consider whether isolation is satisfactorily achieved under the insolvency or receivership laws that apply to the transferor.

.14 Following are two examples of the conclusions in a legal opinion for an entity that is subject to receivership or conservatorship under provisions of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act. The conclusions in these two examples provide persuasive evidence, in the absence of contradictory evidence, to support management's assertion that the transferred financial assets have been put presumptively beyond the reach of the entity and its creditors, even in conservatorship or receivership. Insolvency and receivership laws applicable to depository institutions, and how those laws affect the legal isolation criterion, differ depending upon the nature of the depository institution and its

⁵ For an entity subject to additional regulation (e.g., a broker-dealer subject to the Securities Investor Protection Act), the legal opinion also generally should address the effect of such regulation and the policies of the regulators implementing such regulations (e.g., the Securities Investor Protection Corporation).

chartering authority. Accordingly, legal opinions addressing the legal isolation criterion may be formulated in different ways to accommodate those differences.⁶

Example 1: “*We believe (or it is our opinion) that in a properly presented and argued case, as a legal matter, in the event the Seller were to become subject to receivership or conservatorship, the transfer of the Financial Assets from the Seller to the Purchaser would be considered to be a sale (or a true sale) of the Financial Assets from the Seller to the Purchaser and not a loan and, accordingly, the Financial Assets and the proceeds thereof transferred to the Purchaser by the Seller in accordance with the Purchase Agreement would not be deemed to be property of, or subject to repudiation, reclamation, recovery, or recharacterization by, the receiver or conservator appointed with respect to the Seller.*”⁷

Example 2: “The Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) has issued a regulation, ‘Treatment by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation as Conservator or Receiver of Financial Assets Transferred by an Insured Depository Institution in Connection with a Securitization or Participation,’ 12 CFR section 360.6 (the Rule). Based on and subject to the discussion, assumptions, and qualifications herein, it is our opinion that:

- A. Following the appointment of the FDIC as the conservator or receiver for the Bank:
 - (i) The Rule will apply to the Transfers,
 - (ii) Under the Rule, the FDIC acting as conservator or receiver for the Bank could not, by exercise of its authority to disaffirm or repudiate contracts under 12 U.S.C. §1821(e), reclaim or recover the Transferred Assets from the Issuer or recharacterize the Transferred Assets as property of the Bank or of the conservatorship or receivership for the Bank,
 - (iii) Neither the FDIC (acting for itself as a creditor or as representative of the Bank or its shareholders or creditors) nor any creditor of the Bank would have the right, under any bankruptcy or insolvency law applicable in the conservatorship or receivership of the Bank, to avoid the Transfers, to recover the Transferred Assets, or to require the Transferred Assets to be turned over to the FDIC or such creditor, and
 - (iv) There is no other power exercisable by the FDIC as conservator or receiver for the Bank that would permit the FDIC as such conservator or receiver to reclaim or recover the Transferred Assets from the Issuer, or to recharacterize the Transferred Assets as property of the Bank or of the conservatorship or receivership for the Bank; provided, however, that we offer no opinion as to whether, in receivership, the FDIC or any creditor of the Bank may take any such actions if the Holders [*holders of beneficial interests in the transferred assets*] receive payment of the principal amount of the Interests and the interest earned thereon (at the contractual yield) through the date the Holders are so paid; and

⁶ For an entity subject to conservatorship or liquidation under the National Credit Union Act, the examples and discussion in this paragraph would be modified to make appropriate references to “liquidation” and “liquidating agent” and additional information relating to rights and regulations of the National Credit Union Administration.

⁷ When the opinion indicates that isolation is achieved without reference to a true sale, the opinion also should provide reasonable assurance that the transferred assets are beyond the reach of the transferor and its creditors other than the transferee to the same extent that is provided in example 2, paragraph B.

- B. Prior to the appointment of the FDIC as conservator or receiver for the Bank, the Bank and its other creditors would not have the right to reclaim or recover the Transferred Assets from the Issuer, except by the exercise of a contractual provision [insert appropriate citation] to require the transfer, or return, of the Transferred Assets that exists solely as a result of the contract between the Bank and the Issuer.”⁸

The following additional paragraph addressing substantive consolidation applies when the entity to which the assets are sold or transferred (as described in the opinion) is an affiliate of the selling entity and may also apply in other situations as noted by the legal specialist.⁹ For example, if a so-called two-step structure has been used to achieve isolation, the following paragraph usually will be required with respect to the transferee in the first step of the structure (see paragraph .15 and related footnotes for additional guidance on the second step of a two-step structure as described in paragraph 83 of FASB Statement No. 140). When the transferor has entered into transactions with an affiliate that could affect the issue of substantive consolidation, the opinion should address the effect of that involvement on the opinion.

“Based upon the assumptions of fact and the discussion set forth above, and on a reasoned analysis of analogous case law, *we are of the opinion that* in a properly presented and argued case, as a legal matter, in a receivership, conservatorship, or liquidation proceeding in respect of the Seller, a court *would not* grant an order consolidating the assets and liabilities of the Purchaser with those of the Seller.”

Certain powers to repudiate contracts, recover, reclaim, or recharacterize transferred assets as property of a transferor that are exercisable by the FDIC under the Federal Deposit Insurance Act may, as of the date of the transfer, be limited by a regulation that may be repealed or amended only in respect of transfers occurring on or after the effective date of such repeal or amendment.¹⁰ With respect to the powers of a receiver or conservator that may not be exercised under that regulation, it is acceptable for attorneys to rely upon the effectiveness of the limitation on such powers set forth in the applicable regulation, provided that the attorney states, based on reasonable assumptions, that: (1) the affected transfer of financial assets meets all qualification requirements of the regulation, and (2) the regulation had not, as of the date of the opinion, been amended, repealed, or held inapplicable by a court with jurisdiction with respect to such transfer. The opinion should separately address any powers of repudiation, recovery, reclamation, or recharacterization exercisable by a receiver or conservator notwithstanding that regulation (for example, rights, powers, or remedies regarding transfers specifically excluded from the regulation) in a manner that provides the same level of assurance as would be provided in the case of opinions that conform with requirements of paragraph .13, except that such opinion shall address powers arising under the Federal Deposit Insurance Act. The considerations in the immediately preceding three sentences are adequately addressed either by the example 1 opinion or the example 2 opinion described in this paragraph or by the variations described in the second paragraph of footnote 8 and in footnote 9.

⁸ See the second paragraph of footnote 4.

Paragraph B is not required if the opinion includes both a conclusion, as set forth in example 1, that the transfer constitutes a “true sale” and the conclusions set forth of example 2, paragraph A. It is not necessary to include any provision of example 2 if the opinion is as set forth in example 1.

⁹ An additional substantive consolidation opinion is not required if the opinion states that its conclusion includes the inability to recover the transferred financial assets or recharacterize the transfer by application of the doctrine of “substantive consolidation.”

¹⁰ The applicable regulation is 12 CFR section 360.6, effective September 11, 2000.

.15 A legal letter that includes an inadequate opinion, inappropriate limitations, or a disclaimer of opinion, or that effectively limits the scope of the opinion to facts and circumstances that are not applicable to the transaction, does not provide persuasive evidence to support the entity's assertion that the transferred assets have been put presumptively beyond the reach of the transferor and its creditors, even in bankruptcy or other receivership. Likewise, a legal letter that includes conclusions that are expressed using some of the following language would not provide persuasive evidence that a transfer of financial assets has met the isolation criterion of FASB Statement No. 140 (see paragraphs .20 and .21 of this interpretation):

- "We are unable to express an opinion..."
- "It is our opinion, based upon limited facts..."
- "We are of the view..." or "it appears..."
- "There is a reasonable basis to conclude that..."
- "In our opinion, the transfer would *either* be a sale or a grant of a perfected security interest..."¹¹
- "In our opinion, there is a reasonable possibility..."
- "In our opinion, the transfer *should* be considered a sale..."
- "It is our opinion that the company will be able to assert meritorious arguments..."
- "In our opinion, it is more likely than not ..."
- "In our opinion, the transfer would *presumptively* be..."
- "In our opinion, it is probable that..."

Furthermore, conclusions about hypothetical transactions may not be relevant to the transaction that is the subject of management's assertions. Section 326, *Evidential Matter*, paragraph .21, states that "to be competent, evidence, regardless of its form, must be both valid and relevant." Additionally, conclusions about hypothetical transactions may not contemplate all of the facts and circumstances or the provisions in the agreements of the transaction that is the subject of management's assertions, and generally would not provide persuasive evidence.¹²

.16 *Question*—Are legal opinions that restrict the use of the opinion to the client, or to third parties other than the auditor, acceptable audit evidence?

.17 *Interpretation*—No. Footnote 5 to section 336.09 states: "In some cases, the auditor may decide it is necessary to contact the specialist to determine

¹¹ Certain transferors are subject only to receivership (and not to proceedings under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code or the Federal Deposit Insurance Act) under laws that do not allow a receiver to reach assets in which a security interest has been granted. In such circumstances, an opinion that concludes that the transfer would either be a sale or a grant of a security interest that puts the transferred assets beyond the reach of such receiver and other creditors would provide persuasive evidence that the isolation criterion is met.

In certain circumstances, a legal specialist may provide an opinion on both steps of a two-step structure. Such language would be acceptable in an opinion for a transfer of assets in the second step of a two-step structure as described in paragraph 83 of FASB Statement No. 140 provided that the opinion on the transfer in the first step is consistent with paragraphs .13 or .14 of this interpretation.

¹² For example, a memorandum of law from a legal specialist usually analyzes (and may make conclusions about) a transaction that may be completed subsequently. Such memorandum generally would not provide persuasive evidence unless the conclusions conform with this interpretation and a legal specialist opines that such conclusions apply to a completed transaction that is the subject of management's assertion.

that the specialist is aware that his or her work will be used for evaluating the assertions in the financial statements.” Given the importance of the legal opinion to the assertion in this case, and the precision that legal specialists use in drafting such opinions, an auditor should not use as evidence a legal opinion that he or she deems otherwise adequate if the letter restricts use of the findings expressed therein to the client or to third parties other than the auditor. In that event, the auditor should request that the client obtain the legal specialist’s written permission for the auditor to use the opinion for the purpose of evaluating management’s assertion that a transfer of financial assets meets the isolation criterion of FASB Statement No. 140.

.18 An example of a letter from a legal specialist to a client that adequately communicates permission for the auditor to use the legal specialist’s opinion for the purpose of evaluating management’s assertion that a transfer of financial assets meets the isolation criterion of FASB Statement No. 140 is as follows:

“Notwithstanding any language to the contrary in our opinions of even date with respect to certain bankruptcy issues relating to the above-referenced transaction, you are authorized to make available to your auditors such opinions solely as evidential matter in support of their evaluation of management’s assertion that the transfer of the receivables meets the isolation criterion of FASB Statement No. 140, provided a copy of this letter is furnished to them in connection therewith. In authorizing you to make copies of such opinions available to your auditors for such purpose, we are not undertaking or assuming any duty or obligation to your auditors or establishing any lawyer-client relationship with them. Further, we do not undertake or assume any responsibility with respect to financial statements of you or your affiliates.”¹³

.19 A letter from a legal specialist to a client might authorize the client to make copies of the legal opinion available to the auditor to use in his or her evaluation of management’s assertion that a transfer of financial assets meets the isolation criterion of FASB Statement No. 140, but then state that the auditor is not authorized to rely thereon. Such “use but not rely on” language, or other language that similarly restricts the auditor’s use of the legal specialist’s opinion, does not adequately communicate permission for the auditor to use the legal specialist’s opinion as evidential matter. The auditor may wish to consult with his or her legal counsel in circumstances where it is not clear that the auditor may use the legal specialist’s opinion.

.20 Question—If the auditor determines that it is appropriate to use the work of a legal specialist, and either the resulting legal response does not provide persuasive evidence that a transfer of assets has met the isolation criterion, or the legal specialist does not grant permission for the auditor to use a legal opinion that is restricted to the client or to third parties other than the auditor, what other steps might an auditor consider?

.21 Interpretation—When other relevant evidential matter exists, the auditor should consider it before reaching a conclusion about the appropriateness of management’s accounting for a transfer.¹⁴ However, since the isolation aspect of surrender of control is assessed primarily from a legal perspective, the auditor usually will not be able to obtain persuasive evidence in a form other than a legal opinion. In the absence of persuasive evidence that a transfer

¹³ This language may appear in the legal specialist’s opinion rather than in a separate letter. In that case, the wording would be modified slightly to indicate the context.

¹⁴ See section 336.13 as to additional procedures that may be applied.

has met the isolation criterion, derecognition of the transferred assets is not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles and the auditor should consider the need to express a qualified or adverse opinion in accordance with section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .35 through .60. However, if permission for the auditor to use a legal opinion that he or she deems otherwise adequate is not granted, this would be a scope limitation and the auditor should consider the need to express a qualified opinion or to disclaim an opinion in accordance with section 508.22–.26 and 508.61–.63.

[Issue Date: December, 2001.]

AU Section 337

Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments¹

Source: SAS No. 12.

See section 9337 for interpretations of this section.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: January, 1976.

.01 This section provides guidance on the procedures an independent auditor should consider for identifying litigation, claims, and assessments and for satisfying himself as to the financial accounting and reporting for such matters when he is performing an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards.

Accounting Considerations

.02 Management is responsible for adopting policies and procedures to identify, evaluate, and account for litigation, claims, and assessments as a basis for the preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

.03 The standards of financial accounting and reporting for loss contingencies, including those arising from litigation, claims, and assessments, are set forth in Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5 [AC section C59], *Accounting for Contingencies*.²

Auditing Considerations

.04 With respect to litigation, claims, and assessments, the independent auditor should obtain evidential matter relevant to the following factors:

- a. The existence of a condition, situation, or set of circumstances indicating an uncertainty as to the possible loss to an entity arising from litigation, claims, and assessments.
- b. The period in which the underlying cause for legal action occurred.
- c. The degree of probability of an unfavorable outcome.
- d. The amount or range of potential loss.

¹ This section supersedes the commentary, "Lawyers' Letters," January 1974 (section 1001), and auditing interpretations of section 560.12 on lawyers' letters, January 1975 (section 9560.01-.26). It amends section 560.12(d) to read as follows: "Inquire of client's legal counsel concerning litigation, claims, and assessments (see section 337)."

² Pertinent portions are reprinted in Exhibit I, section 337B. FASB Statement No. 5 [AC section C59], also describes the standards of financial accounting and reporting for gain contingencies. The auditor's procedures with respect to gain contingencies are parallel to those described in this SAS for loss contingencies.

Audit Procedures

.05 Since the events or conditions that should be considered in the financial accounting for and reporting of litigation, claims, and assessments are matters within the direct knowledge and, often, control of management of an entity, management is the primary source of information about such matters. Accordingly, the independent auditor's procedures with respect to litigation, claims, and assessments should include the following:

- a. Inquire of and discuss with management the policies and procedures adopted for identifying, evaluating, and accounting for litigation, claims, and assessments.
- b. Obtain from management a description and evaluation of litigation, claims, and assessments that existed at the date of the balance sheet being reported on, and during the period from the balance sheet date to the date the information is furnished, including an identification of those matters referred to legal counsel, and obtain assurances from management, ordinarily in writing, that they have disclosed all such matters required to be disclosed by Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5 [AC section C59].
- c. Examine documents in the client's possession concerning litigation, claims, and assessments, including correspondence and invoices from lawyers.
- d. Obtain assurance from management, ordinarily in writing, that it has disclosed all unasserted claims that the lawyer has advised them are probable of assertion and must be disclosed in accordance with Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5 [AC section C59]. Also the auditor, with the client's permission, should inform the lawyer that the client has given the auditor this assurance. This client representation may be communicated by the client in the inquiry letter or by the auditor in a separate letter.³

.06 An auditor ordinarily does not possess legal skills and, therefore, cannot make legal judgments concerning information coming to his attention. Accordingly, the auditor should request the client's management to send a letter of inquiry to those lawyers with whom management consulted concerning litigation, claims, and assessments.

.07 The audit normally includes certain other procedures undertaken for different purposes that might also disclose litigation, claims, and assessments. Examples of such procedures are as follows:

- a. Reading minutes of meetings of stockholders, directors, and appropriate committees held during and subsequent to the period being audited.
- b. Reading contracts, loan agreements, leases, and correspondence from taxing or other governmental agencies, and similar documents.

³ An example of a separate letter is as follows: We are writing to inform you that (name of company) has represented to us that (except as set forth below and excluding any such matters listed in the letter of audit inquiry) there are no unasserted possible claims that you have advised are probable of assertion and must be disclosed in accordance with Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5 [AC section C59] in its financial statements at (balance sheet date) and for the (period) then ended. (List unasserted possible claims, if any.) Such a letter should be signed and sent by the auditor.

- c. Obtaining information concerning guarantees from bank confirmation forms.
- d. Inspecting other documents for possible guarantees by the client.

Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer⁴

.08 A letter of audit inquiry to the client's lawyer is the auditor's primary means of obtaining corroboration of the information furnished by management concerning litigation, claims, and assessments.⁵ Evidential matter obtained from the client's inside general counsel or legal department may provide the auditor with the necessary corroboration. However, evidential matter obtained from inside counsel is not a substitute for information outside counsel refuses to furnish.

.09 The matters that should be covered in a letter of audit inquiry include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Identification of the company, including subsidiaries, and the date of the audit.
- b. A list prepared by management (or a request by management that the lawyer prepare a list) that describes and evaluates pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments with respect to which the lawyer has been engaged and to which he has devoted substantive attention on behalf of the company in the form of legal consultation or representation.
- c. A list prepared by management that describes and evaluates unasserted claims and assessments that management considers to be probable of assertion, and that, if asserted, would have at least a reasonable possibility of an unfavorable outcome, with respect to which the lawyer has been engaged and to which he has devoted substantive attention on behalf of the company in the form of legal consultation or representation.
- d. As to each matter listed in item *b*, a request that the lawyer either furnish the following information or comment on those matters as to which his views may differ from those stated by management, as appropriate:
 - (1) A description of the nature of the matter, the progress of the case to date, and the action the company intends to take (for example, to contest the matter vigorously or to seek an out-of-court settlement).
 - (2) An evaluation of the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome and an estimate, if one can be made, of the amount or range of potential loss.
 - (3) With respect to a list prepared by management, an identification of the omission of any pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments or a statement that the list of such matters is complete.

⁴ An illustrative inquiry letter to legal counsel is contained in the Appendix (section 337A).

⁵ It is not intended that the lawyer be requested to undertake a reconsideration of all matters upon which he was consulted during the period under audit for the purpose of determining whether he can form a conclusion regarding the probability of assertion of any possible claim inherent in any of the matters so considered.

- e. As to each matter listed in item c, a request that the lawyer comment on those matters as to which his views concerning the description or evaluation of the matter may differ from those stated by management.
- f. A statement by the client that the client understands that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for the client with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment that may call for financial statement disclosure, the lawyer has formed a professional conclusion that the client should disclose or consider disclosure concerning such possible claim or assessment, the lawyer, as a matter of professional responsibility to the client, will so advise the client and will consult with the client concerning the question of such disclosure and the applicable requirements of Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5 [AC section C59].
- g. A request that the lawyer confirm whether the understanding described in item f is correct.
- h. A request that the lawyer specifically identify the nature of and reasons for any limitation on his response.

Inquiry need not be made concerning matters that are not considered material, provided the client and the auditor have reached an understanding on the limits of materiality for this purpose.

.10 In special circumstances, the auditor may obtain a response concerning matters covered by the audit inquiry letter in a conference, which offers an opportunity for a more detailed discussion and explanation than a written reply. A conference may be appropriate when the evaluation of the need for accounting for or disclosure of litigation, claims, and assessments involves such matters as the evaluation of the effect of legal advice concerning unsettled points of law, the effect of uncorroborated information, or other complex judgments. The auditor should appropriately document conclusions reached concerning the need for accounting for or disclosure of litigation, claims, and assessments.

.11 In some circumstances, a lawyer may be required by his Code of Professional Responsibility to resign his engagement if his advice concerning financial accounting and reporting for litigation, claims, and assessments is disregarded by the client. When the auditor is aware that a client has changed lawyers or that a lawyer engaged by the client has resigned, the auditor should consider the need for inquiries concerning the reasons the lawyer is no longer associated with the client.

Limitations on the Scope of a Lawyer's Response⁶

.12 A lawyer may appropriately limit his response to matters to which he has given substantive attention in the form of legal consultation or representation. Also, a lawyer's response may be limited to matters that are consid-

⁶ The American Bar Association has approved a "Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information," which explains the concerns of lawyers and the nature of the limitations an auditor is likely to encounter. That Statement of Policy is reprinted as Exhibit II (section 337C) for the convenience of readers, but is not an integral part of this Statement.

ered individually or collectively material to the financial statements, provided the lawyer and auditor have reached an understanding on the limits of materiality for this purpose. Such limitations are not limitations on the scope of the audit.

.13 A lawyer's refusal to furnish the information requested in an inquiry letter either in writing or orally (see paragraphs .09 and .10) would be a limitation on the scope of the audit sufficient to preclude an unqualified opinion (see section 508.22 and .23).⁷ A lawyer's response to such an inquiry and the procedures set forth in paragraph .05 provide the auditor with sufficient evidential matter to satisfy himself concerning the accounting for and reporting of pending and threatened litigation, claims and assessments. The auditor obtains sufficient evidential matter to satisfy himself concerning reporting for those unasserted claims and assessments required to be disclosed in financial statements from the foregoing procedures and the lawyer's specific acknowledgement of his responsibility to his client in respect of disclosure obligations (see paragraph .09g). This approach with respect to unasserted claims and assessments is necessitated by the public interest in protecting the confidentiality of lawyer-client communications.

Other Limitations on a Lawyer's Response

.14 A lawyer may be unable to respond concerning the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome of litigation, claims, and assessments or the amount or range of potential loss, because of inherent uncertainties. Factors influencing the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome may sometimes not be within a lawyer's competence to judge; historical experience of the entity in similar litigation or the experience of other entities may not be relevant or available; and the amount of the possible loss frequently may vary widely at different stages of litigation. Consequently, a lawyer may not be able to form a conclusion with respect to such matters. In such circumstances, the auditor ordinarily will conclude that the financial statements are affected by an uncertainty concerning the outcome of a future event which is not susceptible of reasonable estimation, and should look to the guidance in section 508.45 through .49 to determine the effect, if any, of the lawyer's response on the auditor's report. [Revised, February 1997, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

⁷ A refusal to respond should be distinguished from an inability to form a conclusion with respect to certain matters of judgment (see paragraph .14). Also, lawyers outside the United States sometimes follow practices at variance with those contemplated by this section to the extent that different procedures from those outlined herein may be necessary. In such circumstances, the auditor should exercise judgment in determining whether alternative procedures are adequate to comply with the requirements of this section.

AU Section 337A**Appendix—Illustrative Audit Inquiry Letter to Legal Counsel**

Source: SAS No. 12.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: January, 1976.

.01 In connection with an audit of our financial statements at (balance sheet date) and for the (period) then ended, management of the Company has prepared, and furnished to our auditors (name and address of auditors), a description and evaluation of certain contingencies, including those set forth below involving matters with respect to which you have been engaged and to which you have devoted substantive attention on behalf of the Company in the form of legal consultation or representation. These contingencies are regarded by management of the Company as material for this purpose (management may indicate a materiality limit if an understanding has been reached with the auditor). Your response should include matters that existed at (balance sheet date) and during the period from that date to the date of your response.

Pending or Threatened Litigation (excluding unasserted claims)

[Ordinarily the information would include the following: (1) the nature of the litigation, (2) the progress of the case to date, (3) how management is responding or intends to respond to the litigation (for example, to contest the case vigorously or to seek an out-of-court settlement), and (4) an evaluation of the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome and an estimate, if one can be made, of the amount or range of potential loss.] Please furnish to our auditors such explanation, if any, that you consider necessary to supplement the foregoing information, including an explanation of those matters as to which your views may differ from those stated and an identification of the omission of any pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments or a statement that the list of such matters is complete.

Unasserted Claims and Assessments (considered by management to be probable of assertion, and that, if asserted, would have at least a reasonable possibility of an unfavorable outcome)

[Ordinarily management's information would include the following: (1) the nature of the matter, (2) how management intends to respond if the claim is asserted, and (3) an evaluation of the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome and an estimate, if one can be made, of the amount or range of potential loss.] Please furnish to our auditors such explanation, if any, that you consider necessary to supplement the foregoing information, including an explanation of those matters as to which your views may differ from those stated.

We understand that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for us with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment that may call for financial statement disclosure, if you have formed a professional conclusion that we should disclose or consider disclosure

concerning such possible claim or assessment, as a matter of professional responsibility to us, you will so advise us and will consult with us concerning the question of such disclosure and the applicable requirements of Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5. Please specifically confirm to our auditors that our understanding is correct.

Please specifically identify the nature of and reasons for any limitation on your response.

[The auditor may request the client to inquire about additional matters, for example, unpaid or unbilled charges or specified information on certain contractually assumed obligations of the company, such as guarantees of indebtedness of others.]

AU Section 337B

Exhibit I—Excerpts from Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5: Accounting for Contingencies

Source: SAS No. 12.

March, 1975.

The following excerpts are reprinted with the permission of the Financial Accounting Standards Board.

Introduction

1. For the purpose of this Statement, a contingency is defined as an existing condition, situation, or set of circumstances involving uncertainty as to possible gain (hereinafter a “gain contingency”) or loss¹ (hereinafter a “loss contingency”) to an enterprise that will ultimately be resolved when one or more future events occur or fail to occur. Resolution of the uncertainty may confirm the acquisition of an asset or the reduction of a liability or the loss or impairment of an asset or the incurrence of a liability. . . .

3. When a loss contingency exists, the likelihood that the future event or events will confirm the loss or impairment of an asset or the incurrence of a liability can range from probable to remote. This Statement uses the terms *probable*, *reasonably possible*, and *remote* to identify three areas within that range, as follows:

- a. *Probable.* The future event or events are likely to occur.
- b. *Reasonably possible.* The chance of the future event or events occurring is more than remote but less than likely.
- c. *Remote.* The chance of the future event or events occurring is slight. . . .

Standards of Financial Accounting and Reporting

Accrual of Loss Contingencies

8. An estimated loss from a loss contingency (as defined in paragraph 1) shall be accrued by a charge to income³ if *both* of the following conditions are met:

- a. Information available prior to issuance of the financial statements indicates that it is probable that an asset had been impaired or a liability had been incurred at the date of the financial statements.⁴

¹ The term *loss* is used for convenience to include many charges against income that are commonly referred to as *expenses* and others that are commonly referred to as *losses*.

³ [Superseded, effective for financial statements for fiscal years beginning after October 15, 1977, by FASB Statement No. 16.]

⁴ *Date of the financial statements* means the end of the most recent accounting period for which financial statements are being presented.

It is implicit in this condition that it must be probable that one or more future events will occur confirming the fact of the loss.

- b. The amount of loss can be reasonably estimated.

Disclosure of Loss Contingencies

9. Disclosure of the nature of an accrual⁵ made pursuant to the provisions of paragraph 8, and in some circumstances the amount accrued, may be necessary for the financial statements not to be misleading.

10. If no accrual is made for a loss contingency because one or both of the conditions in paragraph 8 are not met, or if an exposure to loss exists in excess of the amount accrued pursuant to the provisions of paragraph 8, disclosure of the contingency shall be made when there is at least a reasonable possibility that a loss or an additional loss may have been incurred.⁶ The disclosure shall indicate the nature of the contingency and shall give an estimate of the possible loss or range of loss or state that such an estimate cannot be made. Disclosure is not required of a loss contingency involving an unasserted claim or assessment when there has been no manifestation by a potential claimant of an awareness of a possible claim or assessment unless it is considered probable that a claim will be asserted and there is a reasonable possibility that the outcome will be unfavorable.

11. After the date of an enterprise's financial statements but before those financial statements are issued, information may become available indicating that an asset was impaired or a liability was incurred after the date of the financial statements or that there is at least a reasonable possibility that an asset was impaired or a liability was incurred after that date. The information may relate to a loss contingency that existed at the date of the financial statements, e.g., an asset that was not insured at the date of the financial statements. On the other hand, the information may relate to a loss contingency that did not exist at the date of the financial statements, e.g., threat of expropriation of assets after the date of the financial statements or the filing for bankruptcy by an enterprise whose debt was guaranteed after the date of the financial statements. In none of the cases cited in this paragraph was an asset impaired or a liability incurred at the date of the financial statements, and the condition for accrual in paragraph 8(a) is, therefore, not met. Disclosure of those kinds of losses or loss contingencies may be necessary, however, to keep the financial statements from being misleading. If disclosure is deemed necessary, the financial statements shall indicate the nature of the loss or loss contingency and give an estimate of the amount or range of loss or possible loss or state that such an estimate cannot be made. Occasionally, in the case of a loss arising after the date of the financial statements where the amount of asset impairment or liability incurrence can be reasonably estimated, disclosure may best be made by supplementing the historical financial statements with pro forma financial data giving effect to the loss as if it had occurred at the date of

⁵ Terminology used shall be descriptive of the nature of the accrual (see paragraphs 57–64 of *Accounting Terminology Bulletin No. 1*, "Review and Resume").

⁶ For example, disclosure shall be made of any loss contingency that meets the condition in paragraph 8(a) but that is not accrued because the amount of loss cannot be reasonably estimated (paragraph 8(b)). Disclosure is also required of some loss contingencies that do not meet the condition in paragraph 8(a)—namely, those contingencies for which there is a *reasonable possibility* that a loss may have been incurred even though information may not indicate that it is *probable* that an asset had been impaired or a liability had been incurred at the date of the financial statements.

the financial statements. It may be desirable to present pro forma statements, usually a balance sheet only, in columnar form on the face of the historical financial statements. . . .

Litigation, Claims, and Assessments

33. The following factors, among others, must be considered in determining whether accrual and/or disclosure is required with respect to pending or threatened litigation and actual or possible claims and assessments:

- a. The period in which the underlying cause (i.e., the cause for action) of the pending or threatened litigation or of the actual or possible claim or assessment occurred.
- b. The degree of probability of an unfavorable outcome.
- c. The ability to make a reasonable estimate of the amount of loss.

34. As a condition for accrual of a loss contingency, paragraph 8(a) requires that information available prior to the issuance of financial statements indicate that it is probable that an asset had been impaired or a liability had been incurred at the date of the financial statements. Accordingly, accrual would clearly be inappropriate for litigation, claims, or assessments whose underlying cause is an event or condition occurring after the date of financial statements but before those financial statements are issued, for example, a suit for damages alleged to have been suffered as a result of an accident that occurred after the date of the financial statements. Disclosure may be required, however, by paragraph 11.

35. On the other hand, accrual may be appropriate for litigation, claims, or assessments whose underlying cause is an event occurring on or before the date of an enterprise's financial statements even if the enterprise does not become aware of the existence or possibility of the lawsuit, claim, or assessment until after the date of the financial statements. If those financial statements have not been issued, accrual of a loss related to the litigation, claim, or assessment would be required if the probability of loss is such that the condition in paragraph 8(a) is met and the amount of loss can be reasonably estimated.

36. If the underlying cause of the litigation, claim, or assessment is an event occurring before the date of an enterprise's financial statements, the probability of an outcome unfavorable to the enterprise must be assessed to determine whether the condition in paragraph 8(a) is met. Among the factors that should be considered are the nature of the litigation, claim, or assessment, the progress of the case (including progress after the date of the financial statements but before those statements are issued), the opinions or views of legal counsel and other advisers, the experience of the enterprise in similar cases, the experience of other enterprises, and any decision of the enterprise's management as to how the enterprise intends to respond to the lawsuit, claim, or assessment (for example, a decision to contest the case vigorously or a decision to seek an out-of-court settlement). The fact that legal counsel is unable to express an opinion that the outcome will be favorable to the enterprise should not necessarily be interpreted to mean that the condition for accrual of a loss in paragraph 8(a) is met.

37. The filing of a suit or formal assertion of a claim or assessment does not automatically indicate that accrual of a loss may be appropriate. The degree of probability of an unfavorable outcome must be assessed. The condition for accrual in paragraph 8(a) would be met if an unfavorable outcome is determined

to be probable. If an unfavorable outcome is determined to be reasonably possible but not probable, or if the amount of loss cannot be reasonably estimated, accrual would be inappropriate, but disclosure would be required by paragraph 10 of this Statement.

38. With respect to unasserted claims and assessments, an enterprise must determine the degree of probability that a suit may be filed or a claim or assessment may be asserted and the possibility of an unfavorable outcome. For example, a catastrophe, accident, or other similar physical occurrence predictably engenders claims for redress, and in such circumstances their assertion may be probable; similarly, an investigation of an enterprise by a governmental agency, if enforcement proceedings have been or are likely to be instituted, is often followed by private claims for redress, and the probability of their assertion and the possibility of loss should be considered in each case. By way of further example, an enterprise may believe there is a possibility that it has infringed on another enterprise's patent rights, but the enterprise owning the patent rights has not indicated an intention to take any action and has not even indicated an awareness of the possible infringement. In that case, a judgment must first be made as to whether the assertion of a claim is probable. If the judgment is that assertion is not probable, no accrual or disclosure would be required. On the other hand, if the judgment is that assertion is probable, then a second judgment must be made as to the degree of probability of an unfavorable outcome. If an unfavorable outcome is probable and the amount of loss can be reasonably estimated, accrual of a loss is required by paragraph 8. If an unfavorable outcome is probable but the amount of loss cannot be reasonably estimated, accrual would not be appropriate, but disclosure would be required by paragraph 10. If an unfavorable outcome is reasonably possible but not probable, disclosure would be required by paragraph 10.

39. As a condition for accrual of a loss contingency, paragraph 8(b) requires that the amount of loss can be reasonably estimated. In some cases, it may be determined that a loss was incurred because an unfavorable outcome of the litigation, claim, or assessment is probable (thus satisfying the condition in paragraph 8(a)), but the range of possible loss is wide. For example, an enterprise may be litigating an income tax matter. In preparation for the trial, it may determine that, based on recent decisions involving one aspect of the litigation, it is probable that it will have to pay additional taxes of \$2 million. Another aspect of the litigation may, however, be open to considerable interpretation, and depending on the interpretation by the court the enterprise may have to pay taxes of \$8 million over and above the \$2 million. In that case, paragraph 8 requires accrual of the \$2 million if that is considered a reasonable estimate of the loss. Paragraph 10 requires disclosure of the additional exposure to loss if there is a reasonable possibility that additional taxes will be paid. Depending on the circumstances, paragraph 9 may require disclosure of the \$2 million that was accrued.

AU Section 337C

Exhibit II—American Bar Association Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information

Source: SAS No. 12.

Preamble

The public interest in protecting the confidentiality of lawyer-client communications is fundamental. The American legal, political and economic systems depend heavily upon voluntary compliance with the law and upon ready access to a respected body of professionals able to interpret and advise on the law. The expanding complexity of our laws and governmental regulations increases the need for prompt, specific and unhampered lawyer-client communication. The benefits of such communication and early consultation underlie the strict statutory and ethical obligations of the lawyer to preserve the confidences and secrets of the client, as well as the long-recognized testimonial privilege for lawyer-client communication.

Both the Code of Professional Responsibility and the cases applying the evidentiary privilege recognize that the privilege against disclosure can be knowingly and voluntarily waived by the client. It is equally clear that disclosure to a third party may result in loss of the "confidentiality" essential to maintain the privilege. Disclosure to a third party of the lawyer-client communication on a particular subject may also destroy the privilege as to other communications on that subject. Thus, the mere disclosure by the lawyer to the outside auditor, with due client consent, of the substance of communications between the lawyer and client may significantly impair the client's ability in other contexts to maintain the confidentiality of such communications.

Under the circumstances a policy of audit procedure which requires clients to give consent and authorize lawyers to respond to general inquiries and disclose information to auditors concerning matters which have been communicated in confidence is essentially destructive of free and open communication and early consultation between lawyer and client. The institution of such a policy would inevitably discourage management from discussing potential legal problems with counsel for fear that such discussion might become public and precipitate a loss to or possible liability of the business enterprise and its stockholders that might otherwise never materialize.

It is also recognized that our legal, political and economic systems depend to an important extent on public confidence in published financial statements.

Note: This document, in the form herein set forth, was approved by the Board of Governors of the American Bar Association in December 1975, which official action permitted its release to lawyers and accountants as the standard recommended by the American Bar Association for the lawyer's response to letters of audit inquiry.

To meet this need the accounting profession must adopt and adhere to standards and procedures that will command confidence in the auditing process. It is not, however, believed necessary, or sound public policy, to intrude upon the confidentiality of the lawyer-client relationship in order to command such confidence. On the contrary, the objective of fair disclosure in financial statements is more likely to be better served by maintaining the integrity of the confidential relationship between lawyer and client, thereby strengthening corporate management's confidence in counsel and encouraging its readiness to seek advice of counsel and to act in accordance with counsel's advice.

Consistent with the foregoing public policy considerations, it is believed appropriate to distinguish between, on the one hand, litigation which is pending or which a third party has manifested to the client a present intention to commence and, on the other hand, other contingencies of a legal nature or having legal aspects. As regards the former category, unquestionably the lawyer representing the client in a litigation matter may be the best source for a description of the claim or claims asserted, the client's position (e.g., denial, contest, etc.), and the client's possible exposure in the litigation (to the extent the lawyer is in a position to do so). As to the latter category, it is submitted that, for the reasons set forth above, it is not in the public interest for the lawyer to be required to respond to general inquiries from auditors concerning possible claims.

It is recognized that the disclosure requirements for enterprises subject to the reporting requirements of the Federal securities laws are a major concern of managements and counsel, as well as auditors. It is submitted that compliance therewith is best assured when clients are afforded maximum encouragement, by protecting lawyer-client confidentiality, freely to consult counsel. Likewise, lawyers must be keenly conscious of the importance of their clients being competently advised in these matters.

Statement of Policy

NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED that it is desirable and in the public interest that this Association adopt the following Statement of Policy regarding the appropriate scope of the lawyer's response to the auditor's request, made by the client at the request of the auditor, for information concerning matters referred to the lawyer during the course of his representation of the client:

(1) *Client Consent to Response.* The lawyer may properly respond to the auditor's requests for information concerning loss contingencies (the term and concept established by Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5, promulgated by the Financial Accounting Standards Board in March 1975 and discussed in Paragraph 5.1 of the accompanying Commentary), to the extent hereinafter set forth, subject to the following:

- a. Assuming that the client's initial letter requesting the lawyer to provide information to the auditor is signed by an agent of the client having apparent authority to make such a request, the lawyer may provide to the auditor information requested, without further consent, unless such information discloses a confidence or a secret or requires an evaluation of a claim.
- b. In the normal case, the initial request letter does not provide the necessary consent to the disclosure of a confidence or secret or to the evaluation of a claim since that consent may only be given after full disclosure to the client of the legal consequences of such action.

- c. Lawyers should bear in mind, in evaluating claims, that an adverse party may assert that any evaluation of potential liability is an admission.
- d. In securing the client's consent to the disclosure of confidences or secrets, or the evaluation of claims, the lawyer may wish to have a draft of his letter reviewed and approved by the client before releasing it to the auditor; in such cases, additional explanation would in all probability be necessary so that the legal consequences of the consent are fully disclosed to the client.

(2) *Limitation on Scope of Response.* It is appropriate for the lawyer to set forth in his response, by way of limitation, the scope of his engagement by the client. It is also appropriate for the lawyer to indicate the date as of which information is furnished and to disclaim any undertaking to advise the auditor of changes which may thereafter be brought to the lawyer's attention. *Unless the lawyer's response indicates otherwise, (a) it is properly limited to matters which have been given substantive attention by the lawyer in the form of legal consultation and, where appropriate, legal representation since the beginning of the period or periods being reported upon, and (b) if a law firm or a law department, the auditor may assume that the firm or department has endeavored, to the extent believed necessary by the firm or department, to determine from lawyers currently in the firm or department who have performed services for the client since the beginning of the fiscal period under audit whether such services involved substantive attention in the form of legal consultation concerning those loss contingencies referred to in Paragraph 5(a) below but, beyond that, no review has been made of any of the client's transactions or other matters for the purpose of identifying loss contingencies to be described in the response.*

(3) *Response may be Limited to Material Items.* In response to an auditor's request for disclosure of loss contingencies of a client, it is appropriate for the lawyer's response to indicate that the response is limited to items which are considered individually or collectively material to the presentation of the client's financial statements.

(4) *Limited Responses.* Where the lawyer is limiting his response in accordance with the Statement of Policy, his response should so indicate (see Paragraph 8). If in any other respect the lawyer is not undertaking to respond to or comment on particular aspects of the inquiry when responding to the auditor, he should consider advising the auditor that his response is limited, in order to avoid any inference that the lawyer has responded to all aspects; otherwise, he may be assuming a responsibility which he does not intend.

(5) *Loss Contingencies.* When properly requested by the client, it is appropriate for the lawyer to furnish to the auditor information concerning the following matters if the lawyer has been engaged by the client to represent or advise the client professionally with respect thereto and he has devoted substantive attention to them in the form of legal representation or consultation:

- a. *overtly threatened or pending litigation*, whether or not specified by the client;
- b. *a contractually assumed obligation* which the client has specifically identified and upon which the client has specifically requested, in the inquiry letter or a supplement thereto, comment to the auditor;

* As contemplated by Paragraph 8 of this Statement of Policy, this sentence is intended to be the subject of incorporation by reference as therein provided.

- c. *an unasserted possible claim or assessment* which the client has specifically identified and upon which the client has specifically requested, in the inquiry letter or a supplement thereto, comment to the auditor.

With respect to clause (a), overtly threatened litigation means that a potential claimant has manifested to the client an awareness of and present intention to assert a possible claim or assessment unless the likelihood of litigation (or of settlement when litigation would normally be avoided) is considered remote. With respect to clause (c), where there has been no manifestation by a potential claimant of an awareness of and present intention to assert a possible claim or assessment, consistent with the considerations and concerns outlined in the Preamble and Paragraph 1 hereof, the client should request the lawyer to furnish information to the auditor only if the client has determined that it is probable that a possible claim will be asserted, that there is a reasonable possibility that the outcome (assuming such assertion) will be unfavorable, and that the resulting liability would be material to the financial condition of the client. Examples of such situations might (depending in each case upon the particular circumstances) include the following: (i) a catastrophe, accident or other similar physical occurrence in which the client's involvement is open and notorious, or (ii) an investigation by a government agency where enforcement proceedings have been instituted or where the likelihood that they will not be instituted is remote, under circumstances where assertion of one or more private claims for redress would normally be expected, or (iii) a public disclosure by the client acknowledging (and thus focusing attention upon) the existence of one or more probable claims arising out of an event or circumstance. In assessing whether or not the assertion of a possible claim is probable, it is expected that the client would normally employ, by reason of the inherent uncertainties involved and insufficiency of available data, concepts parallel to those used by the lawyer (discussed below) in assessing whether or not an unfavorable outcome is probable; thus, assertion of a possible claim would be considered probable only when the prospects of its being asserted seem reasonably certain (i.e., supported by extrinsic evidence strong enough to establish a presumption that it will happen) and the prospects of nonassertion seem slight.

It would not be appropriate, however, for the lawyer to be requested to furnish information in response to an inquiry letter or supplement thereto if it appears that (a) the client has been required to specify unasserted possible claims without regard to the standard suggested in the preceding paragraph, or (b) the client has been required to specify all or substantially all unasserted possible claims as to which legal advice may have been obtained, since, in either case, such a request would be in substance a general inquiry and would be inconsistent with the intent of this Statement of Policy.

The information that lawyers may properly give to the auditor concerning the foregoing matters would include (to the extent appropriate) an identification of the proceedings or matter, the stage of proceedings, the claim(s) asserted, and the position taken by the client.

In view of the inherent uncertainties, the lawyer should normally refrain from expressing judgments as to outcome except in those relatively few clear cases where it appears to the lawyer that an unfavorable outcome is either "probable" or "remote"; for purposes of any such judgment it is appropriate to use the following meanings:

- (i) *probable*—an unfavorable outcome for the client is probable if the prospects of the claimant not succeeding are judged to be extremely doubtful and the prospects for success by the client in its defense are judged to be slight.

- (ii) *remote*—an unfavorable outcome is remote if the prospects for the client not succeeding in its defense are judged to be extremely doubtful and the prospects of success by the claimant are judged to be slight.

If, in the opinion of the lawyer, considerations within the province of his professional judgment bear on a particular loss contingency to the degree necessary to make an informed judgment, he may in appropriate circumstances communicate to the auditor his view that an unfavorable outcome is “probable” or “remote,” applying the above meanings. No inference should be drawn, from the absence of such a judgment, that the client will not prevail.

The lawyer also may be asked to estimate, in dollar terms, the potential amount of loss or range of loss in the event that an unfavorable outcome is not viewed to be “remote.” In such a case, the amount or range of potential loss will normally be as inherently impossible to ascertain, with any degree of certainty, as the outcome of the litigation. Therefore, it is appropriate for the lawyer to provide an estimate of the amount or range of potential loss (if the outcome should be unfavorable) only if he believes that the probability of inaccuracy of the estimate of the amount or range of potential loss is slight.

The considerations bearing upon the difficulty in estimating loss (or range of loss) where pending litigation is concerned are obviously even more compelling in the case of unasserted possible claims. In most cases, the lawyer will not be able to provide any such estimate to the auditor.

As indicated in Paragraph 4 hereof, the auditor may assume that all loss contingencies specified by the client in the manner specified in clauses (b) and (c) above have received comment in the response, unless otherwise therein indicated. The lawyer should not be asked, nor need the lawyer undertake, to furnish information to the auditor concerning loss contingencies except as contemplated by this Paragraph 5.

(6) *Lawyer's Professional Responsibility.* Independent of the scope of his response to the auditor's request for information, the lawyer, depending upon the nature of the matters as to which he is engaged, may have as part of his professional responsibility to his client an obligation to advise the client concerning the need for or advisability of public disclosure of a wide range of events and circumstances. The lawyer has an obligation not knowingly to participate in any violation by the client of the disclosure requirements of the securities laws. In appropriate circumstances, the lawyer also may be required under the Code of Professional Responsibility to resign his engagement if his advice concerning disclosures is disregarded by the client. The auditor may properly assume that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for the client with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment which may call for financial statement disclosure, the lawyer has formed a professional conclusion that the client must disclose or consider disclosure concerning such possible claim or assessment, the lawyer, as a matter of professional responsibility to the client, will so advise the client and will consult with the client concerning the question of such disclosure and the applicable requirements[†] of FAS 5.

[†] Under FAS 5, when there has been no manifestation by a potential claimant of an awareness of a possible claim or assessment, disclosure of an unasserted possible claim is required only if the enterprise concludes that (i) it is probable that a claim will be asserted, (ii) there is a reasonable possibility, if the claim is in fact asserted, that the outcome will be unfavorable, and (iii) the liability resulting from such unfavorable outcome would be material to its financial condition.

(7) *Limitation on Use of Response.* Unless otherwise stated in the lawyer's response, it shall be solely for the auditor's information in connection with his audit of the financial condition of the client and is not to be quoted in whole or in part or otherwise referred to in any financial statements of the client or related documents, nor is it to be filed with any governmental agency or other person, without the lawyer's prior written consent.[‡] Notwithstanding such limitation, the response can properly be furnished to others in compliance with court process or when necessary in order to defend the auditor against a challenge of the audit by the client or a regulatory agency, provided that the lawyer is given written notice of the circumstances at least twenty days before the response is so to be furnished to others, or as long in advance as possible if the situation does not permit such period of notice.[‡]

(8) *General.* This Statement of Policy, together with the accompanying Commentary (which is an integral part hereof), has been developed for the general guidance of the legal profession. In a particular case, the lawyer may elect to supplement or modify the approach hereby set forth. If desired, this Statement of Policy may be incorporated by reference in the lawyer's response by the following statement: "This response is limited by, and in accordance with, the ABA Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information (December 1975); without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the limitations set forth in such Statement on the scope and use of this response (Paragraphs 2 and 7) are specifically incorporated herein by reference, and any description herein of any 'loss contingencies' is qualified in its entirety by Paragraph 5 of the Statement and the accompanying Commentary (which is an integral part of the Statement)."

*The accompanying Commentary is an integral part
of this Statement of Policy.*

Commentary

Paragraph 1 (Client Consent to Response)

In responding to any aspect of an auditor's inquiry letter, the lawyer must be guided by his ethical obligations as set forth in the Code of Professional Responsibility. Under Canon 4 of the Code of Professional Responsibility a lawyer is enjoined to preserve the client's confidences (defined as information protected by the attorney-client privilege under applicable law) and the client's secrets (defined as other information gained in the professional relationship that the client has requested be held inviolate or the disclosure of which would be embarrassing or would be likely to be detrimental to the client). The observance of this ethical obligation, in the context of public policy, "... not only facilitates the full development of facts essential to proper representation of the client but also encourages laymen to seek early legal assistance." (Ethical Consideration 4-1).

The lawyer's ethical obligation therefore includes a much broader range of information than that protected by the attorney-client privilege. As stated in Ethical Consideration 4-4: "The attorney-client privilege is more limited than the ethical obligation of a lawyer to guard the confidences and secrets of his

[‡] As contemplated by Paragraph 8 of this Statement of Policy, this sentence is intended to be the subject of incorporation by reference as therein provided.

client. This ethical precept, unlike the evidentiary privilege, exists without regard to the nature or source of information or the fact that others share the knowledge."

In recognition of this ethical obligation, the lawyer should be careful to disclose fully to his client any confidence, secret or evaluation that is to be revealed to another, including the client's auditor, and to satisfy himself that the officer or agent of a corporate client consenting to the disclosure understands the legal consequences thereof and has authority to provide the required consent.

The law in the area of attorney-client privilege and the impact of statements made in letters to auditors upon that privilege has not yet been developed. Based upon cases treating the attorney-client privilege in other contexts, however, certain generalizations can be made with respect to the possible impact of statements in letters to auditors.

It is now generally accepted that a corporation may claim the attorney-client privilege. Whether the privilege extends beyond the control group of the corporation (a concept found in the existing decisional authority), and if so, how far, is yet unresolved.

If a client discloses to a third party a part of any privileged communication he has made to his attorney, there may have been a waiver as to the whole communication; further, it has been suggested that giving accountants access to privileged statements made to attorneys may waive any privilege as to those statements. Any disclosure of privileged communications relating to a particular subject matter may have the effect of waiving the privilege on other communications with respect to the same subject matter.

To the extent that the lawyer's knowledge of unasserted possible claims is obtained by means of confidential communications from the client, any disclosure thereof might constitute a waiver as fully as if the communication related to pending claims.

A further difficulty arises with respect to requests for evaluation of either pending or unasserted possible claims. It might be argued that any evaluation of a claim, to the extent based upon a confidential communication with the client, waives any privilege with respect to that claim.

Another danger inherent in a lawyer's placing a value on a claim, or estimating the likely result, is that such a statement might be treated as an admission or might be otherwise prejudicial to the client.

The Statement of Policy has been prepared in the expectation that judicial development of the law in the foregoing areas will be such that useful communication between lawyers and auditors in the manner envisaged in the Statement will not prove prejudicial to clients engaged in or threatened with adversary proceedings. If developments occur contrary to this expectation, appropriate review and revision of the Statement of Policy may be necessary.

Paragraph 2 (Limitation on Scope of Response)

In furnishing information to an auditor, the lawyer can properly limit himself to loss contingencies which he is handling on a substantive basis for the client in the form of legal consultation (advice and other attention to matters not in litigation by the lawyer in his professional capacity) or legal representation (counsel of record or other direct professional responsibility for a

matter in litigation). Some auditors' inquiries go further and ask for information on matters of which the lawyer "has knowledge." Lawyers are concerned that such a broad request may be deemed to include information coming from a variety of sources including social contact and thirdparty contacts as well as professional engagement and that the lawyer might be criticized or subjected to liability if some of this information is forgotten at the time of the auditor's request.

It is also believed appropriate to recognize that the lawyer will not necessarily have been authorized to investigate, or have investigated, all legal problems of the client, even when on notice of some facts which might conceivably constitute a legal problem upon exploration and development. Thus, consideration in the form of preliminary or passing advice, or regarding an incomplete or hypothetical state of facts, or where the lawyer has not been requested to give studied attention to the matter in question, would not come within the concept of "substantive attention" and would therefore be excluded. Similarly excluded are matters which may have been mentioned by the client but which are not actually being handled by the lawyer. Paragraph 2 undertakes to deal with these concerns.

Paragraph 2 is also intended to recognize the principle that the appropriate lawyer to respond as to a particular loss contingency is the lawyer having charge of the matter for the client (e.g., the lawyer representing the client in a litigation matter and/or the lawyer having overall charge and supervision of the matter), and that the lawyer not having that kind of role with respect to the matter should not be expected to respond merely because of having become aware of its existence in a general or incidental way.

The internal procedures to be followed by a law firm or law department may vary based on factors such as the scope of the lawyer's engagement and the complexity and magnitude of the client's affairs. Such procedures could, but need not, include use of a docket system to record litigation, consultation with lawyers in the firm or department having principal responsibility for the client's affairs or other procedures which, in light of the cost to the client, are not disproportionate to the anticipated benefit to be derived. Although these procedures may not necessarily identify all matters relevant to the response, the evolution and application of the lawyer's customary procedures should constitute a reasonable basis for the lawyer's response.

As the lawyer's response is limited to matters involving his professional engagement as counsel, such response should not include information concerning the client which the lawyer receives in another role. In particular, a lawyer who is also a director or officer of the client would not include information which he received as a director or officer unless the information was also received (or, absent the dual role, would in the normal course be received) in his capacity as legal counsel in the context of his professional engagement. Where the auditor's request for information is addressed to a law firm as a firm, the law firm may properly assume that its response is not expected to include any information which may have been communicated to the particular individual by reason of his serving in the capacity of director or officer of the client. The question of the individual's duty, in his role as a director or officer, is not here addressed.

Paragraph 3 (Response May Cover only Material Items in Certain Cases)

Paragraph 3 makes it clear that the lawyer may optionally limit his responses to those items which are individually or collectively material to the

auditor's inquiry. If the lawyer takes responsibility for making a determination that a matter is not material for the purposes of his response to the audit inquiry, he should make it clear that his response is so limited. The auditor, in such circumstance, should properly be entitled to rely upon the lawyer's response as providing him with the necessary corroboration. It should be emphasized that the employment of inside general counsel by the client should not detract from the acceptability of his response since inside general counsel is as fully bound by the professional obligations and responsibilities contained in the Code of Professional Responsibility as outside counsel. If the audit inquiry sets forth a definition of materiality but the lawyer utilizes a different test of materiality, he should specifically so state. The lawyer may wish to reach an understanding with the auditor concerning the test of materiality to be used in his response, but he need not do so if he assumes responsibility for the criteria used in making materiality determinations. Any such understanding with the auditor should be referred to or set forth in the lawyer's response. In this connection, it is assumed that the test of materiality so agreed upon would not be so low in amount as to result in a disservice to the client and an unreasonable burden on counsel.

Paragraph 4 (Limited Responses)

The Statement of Policy is designed to recognize the obligation of the auditor to complete the procedures considered necessary to satisfy himself as to the fair presentation of the company's financial condition and results, in order to render a report which includes an opinion not qualified because of a limitation on the scope of the audit. In this connection, reference is made to SEC Accounting Series Release No. 90 [Financial Reporting Release No. 1, section 607.01(b)], in which it is stated:

"A 'subject to' or 'except for' opinion paragraph in which these phrases refer to the scope of the audit, indicating that the accountant has not been able to satisfy himself on some significant element in the financial statements, is not acceptable in certificates filed with the Commission in connection with the public offering of securities. The 'subject to' qualification is appropriate when the reference is to a middle paragraph or to footnotes explaining the status of matters which cannot be resolved at statement date."

Paragraph 5 (Loss Contingencies)

Paragraph 5 of the Statement of Policy summarizes the categories of "loss contingencies" about which the lawyer may furnish information to the auditor. The term loss contingencies and the categories relate to concepts of accounting accrual and disclosure specified for the accounting profession in Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5 ("FAS 5") issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board in March, 1975.

5.1 Accounting Requirements

To understand the significance of the auditor's inquiry and the implications of any response the lawyer may give, the lawyer should be aware of the following accounting concepts and requirements set out in FAS 5:¹¹

- (a) A "loss contingency" is an existing condition, situation or set of circumstances involving uncertainty as to possible loss to an enter-

¹¹ Citations are to paragraph numbers of FAS 5.

prise that will ultimately be resolved when one or more events occur or fail to occur. Resolutions of the uncertainty may confirm the loss or impairment of an asset or the incurrence of a liability.

(Para. 1)

- (b) When a “loss contingency” exists, the likelihood that a future event or events will confirm the loss or impairment of an asset or the incurrence of a liability can range from probable to remote. There are three areas within that range, defined as follows:
 - (i) *Probable*—“The future event or events are likely to occur.”
 - (ii) *Reasonably possible*—“The chance of the future event or events occurring is more than remote but less than likely.”
 - (iii) *Remote*—“The chance of the future event or events occurring is slight.”

(Para. 3)

- (c) *Accrual* in a client’s financial statements by a charge to income of the period will be required if *both* the following conditions are met:
 - (i) “Information available prior to issuance of the financial statements indicates that it is *probable* that an asset had been impaired or a liability had been incurred at the date of the financial statements. It is implicit in this condition that it must be *probable* that one or more future events will occur confirming the fact of the loss.” (emphasis added; footnote omitted)
 - (ii) “The amount of loss can be reasonably estimated.”

(Para. 8)

- (d) If there is no *accrual* of the loss contingency in the client’s financial statements because one of the two conditions outlined in (c) above are not met, *disclosure* may be required as provided in the following:

“If no accrual is made for a loss contingency because one or both of the conditions in paragraph 8 are not met, or if an exposure to loss exists in excess of the amount accrued pursuant to the provisions of paragraph 8, *disclosure* of the contingency shall be made when there is at least a reasonable possibility that a loss or an additional loss may have been incurred. The disclosure shall indicate the nature of the contingency and shall give an estimate of the possible loss or range of loss or state that such an estimate cannot be made. Disclosure is not required of a loss contingency involving an *unasserted claim* or assessment when there has been no manifestation by potential claimant of an awareness of a possible claim or assessment unless it is considered probable that a claim will be asserted and there is a reasonable possibility that the outcome will be unfavorable.” (emphasis added; footnote omitted)

(Para. 10)

- (e) The accounting requirements recognize or specify that (i) the opinions or views of counsel are not the sole source of evidential matter in making determinations about the accounting recognition or treatment to be given to litigation, and (ii) the fact that the lawyer is not

able to express an opinion that the outcome will be favorable does not necessarily require an accrual of a loss. Paragraphs 36 and 37 of FAS 5 state as follows:

"If the underlying cause of the litigation, claim, or assessment is an event occurring before the date of an enterprise's financial statements, the probability of an outcome unfavorable to the enterprise must be assessed to determine whether the condition in paragraph 8(a) is met. Among the factors that should be considered are the nature of the litigation, claim, or assessment, the progress of the case (including progress after the date of the financial statements but before those statements are issued), the opinions or views of legal counsel and other advisers, the experience of the enterprise in similar cases, the experience of other enterprises, and any decision of the enterprise's management as to how the enterprise intends to respond to the lawsuit, claim, or assessment (for example, a decision to contest the case vigorously or a decision to seek an out-of-court settlement). The fact that legal counsel is unable to express an opinion that the outcome will be favorable to the enterprise should not necessarily be interpreted to mean that the condition for accrual of a loss in paragraph 8(a) is met.

"The filing of a suit or formal assertion of a claim or assessment does not automatically indicate that accrual of a loss may be appropriate. The degree of probability of an unfavorable outcome must be assessed. The condition for accrual in paragraph 8(a) would be met if an unfavorable outcome is determined to be probable. If an unfavorable outcome is determined to be reasonably possible but not probable, or if the amount of loss cannot be reasonably estimated, accrual would be inappropriate, but disclosure would be required by paragraph 10 of this Statement."

- (f) Paragraph 38 of FAS 5 focuses on certain examples concerning the determination by the enterprise whether an assertion of an *unasserted possible claim* may be considered probable:

"With respect to unasserted claims and assessments, an enterprise must determine the degree of probability that a suit may be filed or a claim or assessment may be asserted and the possibility of an unfavorable outcome. For example, a catastrophe, accident, or other similar physical occurrence predictably engenders claims for redress, and in such circumstances their assertion may be probable; similarly, an investigation of an enterprise by a governmental agency, if enforcement proceedings have been or are likely to be instituted, is often followed by private claims for redress, and the probability of their assertion and the possibility of loss should be considered in each case. By way of further example, an enterprise may believe there is a possibility that it has infringed on another enterprise's patent rights, but the enterprise owning the patent rights has not indicated an intention to take any action and has not even indicated an awareness of the possible infringement. In that case, a judgment must first be made as to whether the assertion of a claim is probable. If the judgment is that assertion is not probable, no accrual or disclosure would be required. On the other

hand, if the judgment is that assertion is probable, then a second judgment must be made as to the degree of probability of an unfavorable outcome. If an unfavorable outcome is probable and the amount of loss can be reasonably estimated, accrual of a loss is required by paragraph 8. If an unfavorable outcome is probable but the amount of loss cannot be reasonably estimated, accrual would not be appropriate, but disclosure would be required by paragraph 10. If an unfavorable outcome is reasonably possible but not probable, disclosure would be required by paragraph 10."

For a more complete presentation of FAS 5, reference is made to Exhibit I, section 337B, in which are set forth excerpts selected by the AICPA as relevant to a Statement on Auditing Standards, issued by its Auditing Standards Executive Committee, captioned "Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments."

5.2 *Lawyer's Response*

Concepts of probability inherent in the usage of terms like "probable" or "reasonably possible" or "remote" mean different things in different contexts. Generally, the outcome of, or the loss which may result from, litigation cannot be assessed in any way that is comparable to a statistically or empirically determined concept of "probability" that may be applicable when determining such matters as reserves for warranty obligations or accounts receivable or loan losses when there is a large number of transactions and a substantial body of known historical experience for the enterprise or comparable enterprises. While lawyers are accustomed to counseling clients during the progress of litigation as to the possible amount required for settlement purposes, the estimated risks of the proceedings at particular times and the possible application or establishment of points of law that may be relevant, such advice to the client is not possible at many stages of the litigation and may change dramatically depending upon the development of the proceedings. Lawyers do not generally quantify for clients the "odds" in numerical terms; if they do, the quantification is generally only undertaken in an effort to make meaningful, for limited purposes, a whole host of judgmental factors applicable at a particular time, without any intention to depict "probability" in any statistical, scientific or empirically-grounded sense. Thus, for example, statements that litigation is being defended vigorously and that the client has meritorious defenses do not, and do not purport to, make a statement about the probability of outcome in any measurable sense.

Likewise, the "amount" of loss—that is, the total of costs and damages that ultimately might be assessed against a client—will, in most litigation, be a subject of wide possible variance at most stages; it is the rare case where the amount is precise and where the question is whether the client against which claim is made is liable either for all of it or none of it.

In light of the foregoing considerations, it must be concluded that, as a general rule, it should not be anticipated that meaningful quantifications of "probability" of outcome or amount of damages can be given by lawyers in assessing litigation. To provide content to the definitions set forth in Paragraph 5 of the Statement of Policy, this Commentary amplifies the meanings of the terms under discussion, as follows:

"probable"—An unfavorable outcome is normally "probable" if, but only if, investigation, preparation (including development of the factual data and

legal research) and progress of the matter have reached a stage where a judgment can be made, taking all relevant factors into account which may affect the outcome, that it is extremely doubtful that the client will prevail.

"remote"—The prospect for an unfavorable outcome appears, at the time, to be slight; i.e., it is extremely doubtful that the client will not prevail. Normally, this would entail the ability to make an unqualified judgment, taking into account all relevant factors which may affect the outcome, that the client may confidently expect to prevail on a motion for summary judgment on all issues due to the clarity of the facts and the law.

In other words, for purposes of the lawyer's response to the request to advise auditors about litigation, an unfavorable outcome will be "probable" only if the chances of the client prevailing appear slight and of the claimant losing appear extremely doubtful; it will be "remote" when the client's chances of losing appear slight and of not winning appear extremely doubtful. It is, therefore, to be anticipated that, in most situations, an unfavorable outcome will be neither "probable" nor "remote" as defined in the Statement of Policy.

The discussion above about the very limited basis for furnishing judgments about the outcome of litigation applies with even more force to a judgment concerning whether or not the assertion of a claim not yet asserted is "probable." That judgment will infrequently be one within the professional competence of lawyers and therefore the lawyer should not undertake such assessment except where such judgment may become meaningful because of the presence of special circumstances, such as catastrophes, investigations and previous public disclosure as cited in Paragraph 5 of the Statement of Policy, or similar extrinsic evidence relevant to such assessment. Moreover, it is unlikely, absent relevant extrinsic evidence, that the client or anyone else will be in a position to make an informed judgment that assertion of a possible claim is "probable" as opposed to "reasonably possible" (in which event disclosure is not required). In light of the legitimate concern that the public interest would not be well served by resolving uncertainties in a way that invites the assertion of claims or otherwise causes unnecessary harm to the client and its stockholders, a decision to treat an unasserted claim as "probable" of assertion should be based only upon compelling judgment.

Consistent with these limitations believed appropriate for the lawyer, he should not represent to the auditor, nor should any inference from his response be drawn, that the unasserted possible claims identified by the client (as contemplated by Paragraph 5(c) of the Statement of Policy) represent all such claims of which the lawyer may be aware or that he necessarily concurs in his client's determination of which unasserted possible claims warrant specification by the client; within proper limits, this determination is one which the client is entitled to make—and should make—and it would be inconsistent with his professional obligations for the lawyer to volunteer information arising from his confidential relationship with his client.

As indicated in Paragraph 5, the lawyer also may be asked to estimate the potential loss (or range) in the event that an unfavorable outcome is not viewed to be "remote." In such a case, the lawyer would provide an estimate only if he believes that the probability of inaccuracy of the estimate of the range or amount is slight. What is meant here is that the estimate of amount of loss presents the same difficulty as assessment of outcome and that the same formulation of "probability" should be used with respect to the determination of estimated loss amounts as should be used with respect to estimating the outcome of the matter.

In special circumstances, with the proper consent of the client, the lawyer may be better able to provide the auditor with information concerning loss contingencies through conferences where there is opportunity for more detailed discussion and interchange. However, the principles set forth in the Statement of Policy and this Commentary are fully applicable to such conferences.

Subsumed throughout this discussion is the ongoing responsibility of the lawyer to assist his client, at the client's request, in complying with the requirements of FAS 5 to the extent such assistance falls within his professional competence. This will continue to involve, to the extent appropriate, privileged discussions with the client to provide a better basis on which the client can make accrual and disclosure determinations in respect of its financial statements.

In addition to the considerations discussed above with respect to the making of any judgment or estimate by the lawyer in his response to the auditor, including with respect to a matter specifically identified by the client, the lawyer should also bear in mind the risk that the furnishing of such a judgment or estimate to any one other than the client might constitute an admission or be otherwise prejudicial to the client's position in its defense against such litigation or claim (see Paragraph 1 of the Statement of Policy and of this Commentary).

Paragraph 6 (Lawyer's Professional Responsibility)

The client must satisfy whatever duties it has relative to timely disclosure, including appropriate disclosure concerning material loss contingencies, and, to the extent such matters are given substantive attention in the form of legal consultation, the lawyer, when his engagement is to advise his client concerning a disclosure obligation, has a responsibility to advise his client concerning its obligations in this regard. Although lawyers who normally confine themselves to a legal specialty such as tax, antitrust, patent or admiralty law, unlike lawyers consulted about SEC or general corporate matters, would not be expected to advise generally concerning the client's disclosure obligations in respect of a matter on which the lawyer is working, the legal specialist should counsel his client with respect to the client's obligations under FAS 5 to the extent contemplated herein. Without regard to legal specialty, the lawyer should be mindful of his professional responsibility to the client described in Paragraph 6 of the Statement of Policy concerning disclosure.

The lawyer's responsibilities with respect to his client's disclosure obligations have been a subject of considerable discussion and there may be, in due course, clarification and further guidance in this regard. In any event, where in the lawyer's view it is clear that (i) the matter is of material importance and seriousness, and (ii) there can be no reasonable doubt that its non-disclosure in the client's financial statements would be a violation of law giving rise to material claims, rejection by the client of his advice to call the matter to the attention of the auditor would almost certainly require the lawyer's withdrawal from employment in accordance with the Code of Professional Responsibility. (See, e.g., Disciplinary Rule 7-102 (A)(3) and (7), and Disciplinary Rule 2-110 (B)(2).) Withdrawal under such circumstances is obviously undesirable and might present serious problems for the client. Accordingly, in the context of financial accounting and reporting for loss contingencies arising from unasserted claims, the standards for which are contained in FAS 5, clients should be urged to disclose to the auditor information concerning an unasserted possible claim or assessment (not otherwise specifically identified by the client)

where in the course of the services performed for the client it has become clear to the lawyer that (i) the client has no reasonable basis to conclude that assertion of the claim is not probable (employing the concepts hereby enunciated) and (ii) given the probability of assertion, disclosure of the loss contingency in the client's financial statements is beyond reasonable dispute required.

Paragraph 7 (Limitation on Use of Response)

Some inquiry letters make specific reference to, and one might infer from others, an intention to quote verbatim or include the substance of the lawyer's reply in footnotes to the client's financial statements. Because the client's prospects in pending litigation may shift as a result of interim developments, and because the lawyer should have an opportunity, if quotation is to be made, to review the footnote in full, it would seem prudent to limit the use of the lawyer's reply letter. Paragraph 7 sets out such a limitation.

Paragraph 7 also recognizes that it may be in the client's interest to protect information contained in the lawyer's response to the auditor, if and to the extent possible, against unnecessary further disclosure or use beyond its intended purpose of informing the auditor. For example, the response may contain information which could prejudice efforts to negotiate a favorable settlement of a pending litigation described in the response. The requirement of consent to further disclosure, or of reasonable advance notice where disclosure may be required by court process or necessary in defense of the audit, is designed to give the lawyer an opportunity to consult with the client as to whether consent should be refused or limited or, in the case of legal process or the auditor's defense of the audit, as to whether steps can and should be taken to challenge the necessity of further disclosure or to seek protective measures in connection therewith. It is believed that the suggested standard of twenty days advance notice would normally be a minimum reasonable time for this purpose.

Paragraph 8 (General)

It is reasonable to assume that the Statement of Policy will receive wide distribution and will be readily available to the accounting profession. Specifically, the Statement of Policy has been reprinted as Exhibit II to the Statement on Auditing Standards, "Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments," issued by the Auditing Standards Executive Committee of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. Accordingly, the mechanic for its incorporation by reference will facilitate lawyer-auditor communication. The incorporation is intended to include not only limitations, such as those provided by Paragraphs 2 and 7 of the Statement of Policy, but also the explanatory material set forth in this Commentary.

Annex A

[Illustrative forms of letters for full response by outside practitioner or law firm and inside general counsel to the auditor's inquiry letter. These illustrative forms, which are not part of the Statement of Policy, have been prepared by the Committee on Audit Inquiry Responses solely in order to assist those who may wish to have, for reference purposes, a form of response which in-

corporate the principles of the Statement of Policy and accompanying Commentary. Other forms of response letters will be appropriate depending on the circumstances.]

Illustrative form of letter for use by outside practitioner or law firm:

[Name and Address of Accounting Firm]

Re: [Name of Client] [and Subsidiaries]

Dear Sirs:

By letter date [insert date of request] Mr. [insert name and title of officer signing request] of [insert name of client] [(the "Company") or (together with its subsidiaries, the "Company")] has requested us to furnish you with certain information in connection with your examination of the accounts of the Company as at [insert fiscal year-end].

[Insert description of the scope of the lawyer's engagement; the following are sample descriptions:]

While this firm represents the Company on a regular basis, our engagement has been limited to specific matters as to which we were consulted by the Company.
[or]

We call your attention to the fact that this firm has during the past year represented the Company only in connection with certain [Federal income tax matters] [litigation] [real estate transactions] [describe other specific matters, as appropriate] and has not been engaged for any other purpose.

Subject to the foregoing and to the last paragraph of this letter, we advise you that since [insert date of beginning of fiscal period under audit] we have not been engaged to give substantive attention to, or represent the Company in connection with, [material][#] loss contingencies coming within the scope of clause (a) of Paragraph 5 of the Statement of Policy referred to in the last paragraph of this letter, except as follows:

[Describe litigation and claims which fit the foregoing criteria.]

[If the inquiry letter requests information concerning specified unasserted possible claims or assessments and/or contractually assumed obligations:]

With respect to the matters specifically identified in the Company's letter and upon which comment has been specifically requested, as contemplated by clauses (b) or (c) of Paragraph 5 of the ABA Statement of Policy, we advise you, subject to the last paragraph of this letter, as follows:

[Insert information as appropriate]

The information set forth herein is [as of the date of this letter] [as of [insert date], the date on which we commenced our internal review procedures for purposes of preparing this response], except as otherwise noted, and we disclaim any undertaking to advise you of changes which thereafter may be brought to our attention.

[Insert information with respect to outstanding bills for services and disbursements.]

[#] **Note:** See Paragraph 3 of the Statement of Policy and the accompanying Commentary for guidance where the response is limited to material items.

This response is limited by, and in accordance with, the ABA Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information (December 1975); without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the limitations set forth in such Statement on the scope and use of this response (Paragraphs 2 and 7) are specifically incorporated herein by reference, and any description herein of any "loss contingencies" is qualified in its entirety by Paragraph 5 of the Statement and the accompanying Commentary (which is an integral part of the Statement). Consistent with the last sentence of Paragraph 6 of the ABA Statement of Policy and pursuant to the Company's request, this will confirm as correct the Company's understanding as set forth in its audit inquiry letter to us that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for the Company with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment that may call for financial statement disclosure, we have formed a professional conclusion that the Company must disclose or consider disclosure concerning such possible claim or assessment, we, as a matter of professional responsibility to the Company, will so advise the Company and will consult with the Company concerning the question of such disclosure and the applicable requirements of Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5. [Describe any other or additional limitation as indicated by Paragraph 4 of the Statement]

Very truly yours,

Illustrative form of letter for use by inside general counsel:

[Name and Address of Accounting Firm]

Re: [Name of Company] [and Subsidiaries]

Dear Sirs:

As General Counsel** of [insert name of client] [(the "Company")], I advise you as follows in connection with its subsidiaries, the "Company"), I advise you as follows in connection with your examination of the accounts of the Company as at [insert fiscal year-end].

I call your attention to the fact that as General Counsel** for the Company I have general supervision of the Company's legal affairs. [If the general legal supervisory responsibilities of the person signing the letter are limited, set forth here a clear description of those legal matters over which such person exercises general supervision, indicating exceptions to such supervision and situations where primary reliance should be placed on other sources.] In such capacity, I have reviewed litigation and claims threatened or asserted involving the Company and have consulted with outside legal counsel with respect thereto where I have deemed appropriate.

Subject to the foregoing and to the last paragraph of this letter, I advise you that since [insert date of beginning of fiscal period under audit] neither I, nor any of the lawyers over whom I exercise general legal supervision, have given substantive attention to, or represented the Company in connection with, [material]^{††} loss contingencies coming within the scope of clause (a) of Paragraph 5 of the Statement of Policy referred to in the last paragraph of this letter, except as follows:

[Describe litigation and claims which fit the foregoing criteria.]

[If information concerning specified unasserted possible claims or assessments and/or contractually assumed obligations is to be supplied:]

With respect to matters which have been specifically identified as contemplated by clauses (b) or (c) of Paragraph 5 of the ABA Statement of Policy, I advise you, subject to the last paragraph of this letter, as follows:

[Insert information as appropriate]

The information set forth herein is [as of the date of this letter] as of [insert date], the date on which we commenced our internal review procedures for purposes of preparing this response], except as otherwise noted, and I disclaim any undertaking to advise you of changes which thereafter may be brought to my attention or to the attention of the lawyers over whom I exercise general legal supervision.

This response is limited by, and in accordance with, the ABA Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information (December 1975); without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the limitations set forth in such Statement on the scope and use of this response (Paragraphs 2 and 7) are specifically incorporated herein by reference, and any description herein of any "loss contingencies" is qualified in its entirety by

** It may be appropriate in some cases for the response to be given by inside counsel other than inside general counsel in which event this letter should be appropriately modified.

†† **Note:** See Paragraph 3 of the Statement of Policy and the accompanying Commentary for guidance where the response is limited to material items.

Paragraph 5 of the Statement and the accompanying Commentary (which is an integral part of the Statement). Consistent with the last sentence of Paragraph 6 of the ABA Statement of Policy, this will confirm as correct the Company's understanding that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for the Company with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment that may call for financial statement disclosure, I have formed a professional conclusion that the Company must disclose or consider disclosure concerning such possible claim or assessment, I, as a matter of professional responsibility to the Company, will so advise the Company and will consult with the Company concerning the question of such disclosure and the applicable requirements of Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5. [Describe any other or additional limitation as indicated by Paragraph 4 of the Statement.]

Very truly yours,

AU Section 9337

Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments: Auditing Interpretations of Section 337

1. Specifying Relevant Date in an Audit Inquiry Letter

.01 Question—Should the auditor request the client to specify, in his audit inquiry letter to a lawyer prepared in accordance with section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*, the date by which the lawyer's response should be sent to the auditor. Also, should the letter request the lawyer to specify in his response the latest date covered by his review (the "effective date")?

.02 Interpretation—Yes. It should be recognized that, to adequately respond to an audit inquiry letter, lawyers will ordinarily employ some internal review procedures which will be facilitated by specifying the earliest acceptable effective date of the response and the latest date by which it should be sent to the auditor. Ordinarily, a two-week period should be allowed between the specified effective date of the lawyer's response and the latest date by which the response should be sent to the auditor. Clearly stating the relevant dates in the letter and specifying these dates to the lawyer in a timely manner will allow the responding lawyer an adequate amount of time to complete his review procedures and assist the auditor in coordinating the timing of the completion of his field work with the latest date covered by the lawyer's review.

.03 Further, the lawyer should be requested to specify the effective date of his response. If the lawyer's response does not specify an effective date, the auditor can assume that the date of the lawyer's response is the effective date.

[Issue Date: March, 1977.]

2. Relationship Between Date of Lawyer's Response and Auditor's Report

.04 Question—The illustrative form of audit inquiry letter included in the Appendix [section 337A] to section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*, requests a response as to matters that existed at the balance sheet date and during the period from that date to the date of the response. What is the relationship between the effective date of the lawyer's response and the date of the auditor's report, which is generally the date of the completion of field work?

.05 Interpretation—Section 560.10 through .12 indicates that the auditor is concerned with events, which may require adjustment to, or disclosure in, the financial statements, occurring through the date of his report. Therefore, the latest date of the period covered by the lawyer's response (the "effective date") should be as close to the completion of field work as is practicable in the circumstances. Consequently, specifying the effective date of the lawyer's re-

sponse to reasonably approximate the expected date of the completion of the field work will in most instances obviate the need for an updated response from the lawyer.

[Issue Date: March, 1977.]

3. Form of Audit Inquiry Letter When Client Represents That No Unasserted Claims and Assessments Exist

.06 Question—The illustrative audit inquiry letter included in the Appendix [section 337A] to section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*, assumes that the client specifies certain unasserted claims and assessments. However, in some cases, clients have stated that there are no such claims or assessments (to be specified to the lawyer for comment) that are probable of assertion and that, if asserted, would have a reasonable possibility of an unfavorable outcome. What appropriate revision to the wording of the letter can be used in such situations?

.07 Interpretation—Wording that could be used in an audit inquiry letter, instead of the heading and first paragraph in the section relating to unasserted claims and assessments included in the Appendix [section 337A] to section 337, when the client believes that there are no unasserted claims or assessments (to be specified to the lawyer for comment) that are probable of assertion and that, if asserted, would have a reasonable possibility of an unfavorable outcome as specified by FASB Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies* [AC section C59], is as follows:

Unasserted claims and assessments—We have represented to our auditors that there are no unasserted possible claims that you have advised us are probable of assertion and must be disclosed, in accordance with Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5. (The second paragraph in the section relating to unasserted claims and assessments would not be altered.)

[Issue Date: March, 1977.]

4. Documents Subject to Lawyer-Client Privilege

.08 Question—Section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*, paragraph .05c, states: "Examine documents in the client's possession concerning litigation, claims, and assessments, including correspondence and invoices from lawyers." Would this include a review of documents at the client's location considered by the lawyer and the client to be subject to the lawyer-client privilege?

.09 Interpretation—No. Although ordinarily an auditor would consider the inability to review information that could have a significant bearing on his audit as a scope restriction, in recognition of the public interest in protecting the confidentiality of lawyer-client communications (see section 337.13), section 337.05c is not intended to require an auditor to examine documents that the client identifies as subject to the lawyer-client privilege. In the event of questions concerning the applicability of this privilege, the auditor may request confirmation from the client's counsel that the information is subject to that privilege and that the information was considered by the lawyer in respond-

ing to the audit inquiry letter or, if the matters are being handled by another lawyer, an identification of such lawyer for the purpose of sending him an audit inquiry letter.

[Issue Date: March, 1977.]

5. Alternative Wording of the Illustrative Audit Inquiry Letter to a Client's Lawyer

.10 Question—The Appendix [section 337A] of section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*, provides an illustrative audit inquiry letter to legal counsel. That inquiry letter is based on the assumptions that (1) management of the company has prepared and furnished to the auditor and has set forth in the audit inquiry letter a description and evaluation of pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments and (2) management has identified and specified for comment in the audit inquiry letter unasserted claims or assessments that are probable of assertion and that, if asserted, would have at least a reasonable possibility of an unfavorable outcome. In many engagements, circumstances may render certain portions of the illustrative letter inappropriate. For instance, many clients ask their lawyers to prepare the list that describes and evaluates pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments rather than have management furnish such information. How can the wording of the inquiry letter be modified to recognize circumstances that differ from those assumed in the illustrative letter and to be more specific regarding the timing of the lawyer's response?

.11 Interpretation—Section 337.09, outlines the matters that should be covered in a letter of audit inquiry. Although section 337 provides an illustrative audit inquiry letter to legal counsel, it should be modified, if necessary, to fit the circumstances. The modified illustrative audit inquiry letter that follows is based on a typical situation: management requests the lawyer to prepare the list that describes and evaluates pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments, and also represents that there are no unasserted claims or assessments that are probable of assertion and that, if asserted, would have a reasonable possibility of an unfavorable outcome as specified by FASB Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies* [AC section C59]. It also includes a separate response section with language that clarifies the auditor's expectations regarding the timing of the lawyer's response.

"In connection with an audit of our financial statements as of (balance-sheet date) and for the (period) then ended, please furnish our auditors, (name and address of auditors), with the information requested below concerning certain contingencies involving matters with respect to which you have devoted substantive attention on behalf of the Company in the form of legal consultation or representation." [When a materiality limit has been established based on an understanding between management and the auditor, the following sentence should be added: This request is limited to contingencies amounting to (amount) individually or items involving lesser amounts that exceed (amount) in the aggregate.]

.12 Pending or Threatened Litigation, Claims, and Assessments

"Regarding pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments, please include in your response: (1) the nature of each matter, (2) the progress of each matter to date, (3) how the Company is responding or intends to respond

(for example, to contest the case vigorously or seek an out-of-court settlement), and (4) an evaluation of the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome and an estimate, if one can be made, of the amount or range of potential loss.”

.13 Unasserted Claims and Assessments

“We have represented to our auditors that there are no unasserted possible claims or assessments that you have advised us are probable of assertion and must be disclosed in accordance with FASB Statement No. 5 [AC section C59].¹ We understand that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for us with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment that may call for financial statement disclosure, you have formed a professional conclusion that we should disclose or consider disclosure concerning such possible claim or assessment, as a matter of professional responsibility to us, you will so advise us and will consult with us concerning the question of such disclosure and the applicable requirements of FASB Statement No. 5 [AC section C59]. Please specifically confirm to our auditors that our understanding is correct.”

.14 Response

“Your response should include matters that existed as of (balance-sheet date) and during the period from that date to the effective date of your response.”

“Please specifically identify the nature of and reasons for any limitations on your response.”

“Our auditors expect to have the audit completed about (expected completion date). They would appreciate receiving your reply by that date with a specified effective date no earlier than (ordinarily two weeks before expected completion date).”²

[Issue Date: June, 1983.]

6. Client Has Not Consulted a Lawyer

.15 Question—Section 337.06 requires an auditor to request that the client’s management send a letter of inquiry to those lawyers with whom management has consulted concerning litigation, claims, or assessments. In some instances, management may not have consulted a lawyer. In such circumstances, what should the auditor do to obtain sufficient, competent evidential matter regarding litigation, claims, and assessments?

.16 Interpretation—Section 337 is expressly limited to inquiry of lawyers with whom management has consulted. If the client has not consulted a lawyer, the auditor normally would rely on the review of internally available information as outlined in section 337.05 and .07, and the written repre-

¹ A parenthetical statement such as “(excerpts of which can be found in the ABA’s *Auditor’s Letter Handbook*)” might be added here if the auditor believes that it would be helpful to the lawyer’s understanding of the requirements of FASB Statement No. 5 [AC section C59]. *The Auditor’s Letter Handbook* contains, among other things, a copy of section 337, the ABA’s *Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers’ Responses to Auditors’ Requests for Information* [section 337C], and excerpts from FASB Statement No. 5 [AC section C59].

² Two auditing interpretations (see sections 9337.01–.05) address relevant dates in an audit inquiry letter and the relationship between the date of the lawyer’s response and the audit report date.

sentation of management regarding litigation, claims, and assessments as required by section 333, *Management Representations*, paragraph .06o and p. In those circumstances, the representation regarding litigation, claims, and assessments might be worded as follows:

"We are not aware of any pending or threatened litigation, claims, or assessments or unasserted claims or assessments that are required to be accrued or disclosed in the financial statements in accordance with FASB Statement No. 5 [AC section C59], and we have not consulted a lawyer concerning litigation, claims, or assessments."

.17 If information comes to the auditor's attention that may indicate potentially material litigation, claims, and assessments, the auditor should discuss with the client its possible need to consult legal counsel so that the client may evaluate its responsibility under FASB Statement No. 5 [AC section C59] to accrue or disclose loss contingencies. Depending on the severity of the matter, refusal by the client to consult legal counsel in those circumstances may result in a scope limitation, and the auditor should consider the effect of such a limitation on his audit report.

[Issue Date: June, 1983; Revised: January, 2004.]

7. Assessment of a Lawyer's Evaluation of the Outcome of Litigation

.18 *Question*—Section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*, paragraph .09d(2), states that a letter of audit inquiry should include a request for the lawyer's evaluation of the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome of pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments to which he has devoted substantive attention. However, written responses from lawyers vary considerably and may contain evaluation wording that is vague or ambiguous and, thus, of limited use to the auditor. What constitutes a clear response and what should the auditor do if he considers the response unclear?

.19 *Interpretation*—The American Bar Association's *Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information* (ABA Statement) is reprinted as Exhibit II [section 337C] to section 337. While Paragraph 5 of the ABA Statement [section 337C] states that the lawyer "may in appropriate circumstances communicate to the auditor his view that an unfavorable outcome is 'probable' or 'remote'," he is not required to use those terms in communicating his evaluation to the auditor. The auditor may find other wording sufficiently clear as long as the terms can be used to classify the outcome of the uncertainty under one of the three probability classifications established in FASB Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies* [AC section C59].³

.20 Some examples of evaluations concerning litigation that may be considered to provide sufficient clarity that the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome is "remote" even though they do not use that term are:

- ☐ "We are of the opinion that this action will not result in any liability to the company."

³ FASB Statement No. 5 [AC section C59] uses the terms "probable," "reasonably possible," and "remote" to describe different degrees of likelihood that future events will confirm a loss or an impairment of an asset or incurrence of a liability, and the accounting standards for accrual and disclosure are based on those terms.

- ☐ “It is our opinion that the possible liability to the company in this proceeding is nominal in amount.”
- ☐ “We believe the company will be able to defend this action successfully.”
- ☐ “We believe that the plaintiff’s case against the company is without merit.”
- ☐ “Based on the facts known to us, after a full investigation, it is our opinion that no liability will be established against the company in these suits.”

.21 Absent any contradictory information obtained by the auditor either in other parts of the lawyer’s letter or otherwise, the auditor need not obtain further clarification of evaluations such as the foregoing.

.22 Because of inherent uncertainties described in section 337.14 and in the ABA Policy Statement [section 337C], an evaluation furnished by the lawyer may indicate significant uncertainties or stipulations as to whether the client will prevail. The following are examples of lawyers’ evaluations that are unclear as to the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome:

- ☐ “This action involves unique characteristics wherein authoritative legal precedents do not seem to exist. We believe that the plaintiff will have serious problems establishing the company’s liability under the act; nevertheless, if the plaintiff is successful, the award may be substantial.”
- ☐ “It is our opinion that the company will be able to assert meritorious defenses to this action.” (The term “meritorious defenses” indicates that the company’s defenses will not be summarily dismissed by the court; it does not necessarily indicate counsel’s opinion that the company will prevail.)
- ☐ “We believe the action can be settled for less than the damages claimed.”
- ☐ “We are unable to express an opinion as to the merits of the litigation at this time. The company believes there is absolutely no merit to the litigation.” (If client’s counsel, with the benefit of all relevant information, is unable to conclude that the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome is “remote,” it is unlikely that management would be able to form a judgment to that effect.)
- ☐ “In our opinion, the company has a substantial chance of prevailing in this action.” (A “substantial chance,” a “reasonable opportunity,” and similar terms indicate more uncertainty than an opinion that the company will prevail.)

.23 If the auditor is uncertain as to the meaning of the lawyer’s evaluation, he should request clarification either in a follow-up letter or a conference with the lawyer and client, appropriately documented. If the lawyer is still unable to give an unequivocal evaluation of the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome in writing or orally, the auditor should look to the guidance in section 508.45 through .49 to determine the effect, if any, of the lawyer’s response on the auditor’s report.

[Issue Date: June, 1983; Revised: February, 1997.]

8. Use of the Client's Inside Counsel in the Evaluation of Litigation, Claims, and Assessments

.24 Question—Section 337.06 requires an auditor to request that the client's management send a letter of inquiry to those lawyers with whom management has consulted concerning litigation, claims, and assessments. Sometimes, the client's inside general counsel or legal department (hereinafter referred to as "inside counsel") is handling litigation, claims, and assessments either exclusive of or in conjunction with outside lawyers. In such circumstances, when does inside counsel's response constitute sufficient, competent evidential matter regarding litigation, claims, and assessments?

.25 Interpretation—Section 337.08 states that "Evidential matter obtained from the client's inside general counsel or legal department may provide the auditor with the necessary corroboration." Inside counsel can range from one lawyer to a large staff, with responsibilities ranging from specific internal matters to a comprehensive coverage of all of the client's legal needs, including litigation with outside parties. Because both inside counsel and outside lawyers are bound by the ABA's Code of Professional Responsibilities, there is no difference in their professional obligations and responsibilities. In some circumstances, outside lawyers, if used at all, may be used only for limited purposes, such as data accumulation or account collection activity. In such circumstances, inside counsel has the primary responsibility for corporate legal matters and is in the best position to know and precisely describe the status of all litigation, claims, and assessments or to corroborate information furnished by management.

.26 Audit inquiry letters should be sent to those lawyers, which may be either inside counsel or outside lawyers, who have the primary responsibility for, and knowledge about, particular litigation, claims, and assessments. If inside counsel in handling litigation, claims, and assessments exclusively, their evaluation and response ordinarily would be considered adequate. Similarly, if both inside counsel and outside lawyers have been involved in the matters, but inside counsel has assumed the primary responsibility for the matters, inside counsel's evaluation may well be considered adequate.⁴ However, there may be circumstances when litigation, claims, or assessments involving substantial overall participation by outside lawyers are of such significance to the financial statements that the auditor should consider obtaining the outside lawyers' response that they have not formulated a substantive conclusion that differs in any material respect from inside counsel's evaluation, even though inside counsel may have primary responsibility.

.27 If both inside counsel and outside lawyers have devoted substantive attention to a legal matter, but their evaluations of the possible outcome differ, the auditor should discuss the differences with the parties involved. Failure to reach agreement between the lawyers may require the auditor to consider appropriate modification of his audit report.

[Issue Date: June, 1983.]

9. Use of Explanatory Language About the Attorney-Client Privilege or the Attorney Work-Product Privilege

.28 Question—In some cases, in order to emphasize the preservation of the attorney-client privilege or the attorney work-product privilege, some cli-

⁴ This does not alter the caveat in section 337.08 that "evidential matter obtained from inside counsel is not a substitute for information outside counsel refuses to furnish."

ents have included the following or substantially similar language in the audit inquiry letter to legal counsel:

We do not intend that either our request to you to provide information to our auditor or your response to our auditor should be construed in any way to constitute a waiver of the attorney-client privilege or the attorney work-product privilege.

For the same reason, some lawyers have included the following or substantially similar language in their response letters to auditors:

The Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM] has advised us that, by making the request set forth in its letter to us, the Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM] does not intend to waive the attorney-client privilege with respect to any information which the Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM] has furnished to us. Moreover, please be advised that our response to you should not be construed in any way to constitute a waiver of the protection of the attorney work-product privilege with respect to any of our files involving the Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM].

Does the explanatory language about the attorney-client privilege or the attorney work-product privilege result in a limitation on the scope of the audit?

.29 Answer—No. According to the *Report by the American Bar Association's Subcommittee on Audit Inquiry Responses*, explanatory language similar to the foregoing in the letters of the client or the lawyer is not a limitation on the scope of the lawyer's response. The report states that such language simply makes explicit what has always been implicit, namely, the language states clearly that neither the client nor the lawyer intended a waiver. The report further states that non-inclusion of either or both of the foregoing statements by the client or the lawyer in their respective letters at any time in the past or the future would not constitute an expression of intent to waive the privileges. The *Report by the American Bar Association's Subcommittee on Audit Inquiry Responses* is reprinted in paragraph .30.

.30 Report of the Subcommittee on Audit Inquiry Responses*

Because of a recent court case and other judicial decisions involving lawyers' responses to auditors' requests for information, an area of uncertainty or concern has been brought to the Subcommittee's attention and is the subject of the following comment:

This Committee's report does not modify the ABA Statement of Policy, nor does it constitute an interpretation thereof. The Preamble to the ABA Statement of Policy states as follows:

Both the Code of Professional Responsibility and the cases applying the evidentiary privilege recognize that the privilege against disclosure can be knowingly and voluntarily waived by the client. It is equally clear that disclosure to a third party may result in loss of the "confidentiality" essential to maintain the privilege. Disclosure to a third party of the lawyer-client communication on a particular subject may also destroy the privilege as to other communications on that subject. Thus, the mere disclosure by the lawyer to the outside auditor, with due client consent, of the substance of communications between the lawyer and client may significantly impair the client's ability in other contexts to maintain the confidentiality of such communications.

* "Excerpted from 'Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information,' *The Business Lawyer*, vol. 31, no. 3, April 1976, copyright 1976 American Bar Association, reprinted by permission of the American Bar Association."

Under the circumstances a policy of audit procedure which requires clients to give consent and authorize lawyers to respond to general inquiries and disclose information to auditors concerning matters which have been communicated in confidence is essentially destructive of free and open communication and early consultation between lawyer and client. The institution of such a policy would inevitably discourage management from discussing potential legal problems with counsel for fear that such discussion might become public and precipitate a loss to or possible liability of the business enterprise and its stockholders that might otherwise never materialize.

It is also recognized that our legal, political, and economic systems depend to an important extent on public confidence in published financial statements. To meet this need the accounting profession must adopt and adhere to standards and procedures that will command confidence in the auditing process. It is not, however, believed necessary, or sound public policy, to intrude upon the confidentiality of the lawyer-client relationship in order to command such confidence. On the contrary, the objective of fair disclosure in financial statements is more likely to be better served by maintaining the integrity of the confidential relationship between lawyer and client, thereby strengthening corporate management's confidence in counsel and to act in accordance with counsel's advice.

Paragraph (1) of the ABA Statement of Policy provides as follows:

(1) *Client Consent to Response.* The lawyer may properly respond to the auditor's requests for information concerning loss contingencies (the term and concept established by Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5, promulgated by the Financial Accounting Standards Board in March 1975 and discussed in Paragraph 5.1 of the accompanying commentary), to the extent hereinafter set forth, subject to the following:

(a) Assuming that the client's initial letter requesting the lawyer to provide information to the auditor is signed by an agent of the client having apparent authority to make such a request, the lawyer may provide to the auditor information requested, without further consent, unless such information discloses a confidence or a secret or requires an evaluation of a claim.

(b) In the normal case, the initial request letter does not provide the necessary consent to the disclosure of a confidence or secret or to the evaluation of a claim since that consent may only be given after full disclosure to the client of the legal consequences of such action.

(c) Lawyers should bear in mind, in evaluating claims, that an adverse party may assert that any evaluation of potential liability is an admission.

(d) In securing the client's consent to the disclosure of confidences or secrets, or the evaluation of claims, the lawyer may wish to have a draft of his letter reviewed and approved by the client before releasing it to the auditor; in such cases, additional explanation would in all probability be necessary so that the legal consequences of the consent are fully disclosed to the client.

In order to preserve explicitly the evidentiary privileges, some lawyers have suggested that clients include language in the following or substantially similar form:

We do not intend that either our request to you to provide information to our auditor or your response to our auditor should be construed in any way to constitute a waiver of the attorney-client privilege or the attorney work-product privilege.

If client's request letter does not contain language similar to that in the preceding paragraph, the lawyer's statement that the client has so advised him or her may be based upon the fact that the client has in fact so advised the lawyer, in writing or orally, in other communications or in discussions.

For the same reason, the response letter from some lawyers also includes language in the following or substantially similar form:

The Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM] has advised us that, by making the request set forth in its letter to us, the Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM] does not intend to waive the attorney-client privilege with respect to any information which the Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM] has furnished to us. Moreover, please be advised that our response to you should not be construed in any way to constitute a waiver of the protection of the attorney work-product privilege with respect to any of our files involving the Company [OR OTHER DEFINED TERM].

We believe that language similar to the foregoing in letters of the client or the lawyer simply makes explicit what has always been implicit, namely, it expressly states clearly that neither the client nor the lawyer intended a waiver. It follows that non-inclusion of either or both of the foregoing statements by the client or the lawyer in their respective letters at any time in the past or the future would not constitute an expression of intent to waive the privileges.

On the other hand, the inclusion of such language does not necessarily assure the client that, depending on the facts and circumstances, a waiver may not be found by a court of law to have occurred.

We do not believe that the foregoing types of inclusions cause a negative impact upon the public policy considerations described in the Preamble to the ABA Statement of Policy nor do they intrude upon the arrangements between the legal profession and the accounting profession contemplated by the ABA Statement of Policy. Moreover, we do not believe that such language interferes in any way with the standards and procedures of the accounting profession in the auditing process nor should it be construed as a limitation upon the lawyer's reply to the auditors. We have been informed that the Auditing Standards Board of the AICPA has adopted an interpretation of SAS 12 recognizing the propriety of these statements.

Lawyers, in any case, should be encouraged to have their draft letters to auditors reviewed and approved by the client before releasing them to the auditors and may wish to explain to the client the legal consequences of the client's consent to lawyer's response as contemplated by sub-paragraph 1(d) of the Statement of Policy.

December 1989

[Issue Date: February, 1990.]

10. Use of Explanatory Language Concerning Unasserted Possible Claims or Assessments in Lawyers' Responses to Audit Inquiry Letters

.31 Question—In order to emphasize the preservation of the attorney-client privilege with respect to unasserted possible claims or assessments, some lawyers include the following or substantially similar language in their responses to audit inquiry letters:

"Please be advised that pursuant to clauses (b) and (c) of Paragraph 5 of the ABA Statement of Policy [American Bar Association's *Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers' Responses to Auditors' Requests for Information*] and related Commentary referred to in the last paragraph of this letter, it would be

inappropriate for this firm to respond to a general inquiry relating to the existence of unasserted possible claims or assessments involving the Company. We can only furnish information concerning those unasserted possible claims or assessments upon which the Company has specifically requested in writing that we comment. We also cannot comment upon the adequacy of the Company's listing, if any, of unasserted possible claims or assessments or its assertions concerning the advice, if any, about the need to disclose same."

Does the inclusion of this or similar language result in a limitation on the scope of the audit?

.32 Interpretation—No. Additional language similar to the foregoing in a letter of a lawyer is not a limitation on the scope of the audit. However, the ABA Statement of Policy [section 337C] and the understanding between the legal and accounting professions assumes that the lawyer, under certain circumstances, will advise and consult with the client concerning the client's obligation to make financial statement disclosure with respect to unasserted possible claims or assessments.⁵ Confirmation of this understanding should be included in the lawyer's response.

[Issue Date: January, 1997.]

⁵ See Paragraph 6 of the ABA Statement of Policy [section 337C] and its Commentary [section 337C]. In addition, Annex A to the ABA Statement of Policy [section 337C] contains the following illustrative language in the lawyers' response letter to the auditors:

"Consistent with the last sentence of Paragraph 6 of the ABA Statement of Policy and pursuant to the Company's request, this will confirm as correct the Company's understanding as set forth in its audit inquiry letter to us that whenever, in the course of performing legal services for the Company with respect to a matter recognized to involve an unasserted possible claim or assessment that may call for financial statement disclosure, we have formed a professional conclusion that the Company must disclose or consider disclosure concerning such possible claim or assessment, we, as a matter of professional responsibility to the Company, will so advise the Company and will consult with the Company concerning the question of such disclosure and the applicable requirements of FASB Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies* [AC section C59]."

AU Section 339

Audit Documentation¹

(Supersedes SAS Nos. 1, section 338, and 41)

Source: SAS No. 96.

See section 9339 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after May 15, 2002. Earlier application is permitted.

Introduction

.01 The auditor should prepare and maintain audit documentation, the form and content of which should be designed to meet the circumstances of the particular audit engagement. Audit documentation is the principal record of auditing procedures applied, evidence obtained, and conclusions reached by the auditor in the engagement. The quantity, type, and content of audit documentation are matters of the auditor's professional judgment.

.02 Other Statements on Auditing Standards contain specific documentation requirements (see Appendix A [paragraph .15]). Additionally, specific documentation requirements may be included in other standards (for example, government auditing standards), laws, and regulations applicable to the engagement.

.03 Audit documentation serves mainly to:

- a. Provide the principal support for the auditor's report, including the representation regarding observance of the standards of fieldwork, which is implicit in the reference in the report to generally accepted auditing standards.²
- b. Aid the auditor in the conduct and supervision of the audit.

Content of Audit Documentation

.04 Audit documentation should be sufficient to show that standards of fieldwork have been observed as follows:

- a. The work has been adequately planned and supervised.
- b. A sufficient understanding of internal control has been obtained to plan the audit and to determine the nature, timing, and extent of tests to be performed.
- c. Sufficient competent evidential matter has been obtained through the auditing procedures applied to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion.

¹ *Audit Documentation* also may be referred to as *working papers*.

² However, there is no intention to imply that the auditor would be precluded from supporting his or her report by other means in addition to audit documentation.

.05 Examples of audit documentation are audit programs,³ analyses, memoranda, letters of confirmation and representation, abstracts or copies of entity documents, and schedules or commentaries prepared or obtained by the auditor. Audit documentation may be in paper form, electronic form, or other media.

.06 Audit documentation should be sufficient to (a) enable members of the engagement team with supervision and review responsibilities to understand the nature, timing, extent, and results of auditing procedures performed, and the evidence obtained;⁴ (b) indicate the engagement team member(s) who performed and reviewed the work; and (c) show that the accounting records agree or reconcile with the financial statements or other information being reported on.

.07 In determining the nature and extent of the documentation for a particular audit area or auditing procedure, the auditor should consider the following factors:

- Risk of material misstatement associated with the assertion, or account or class of transactions
- Extent of judgment involved in performing the work and evaluating the results
- Nature of the auditing procedure
- Significance of the evidence obtained to the assertion being tested
- Nature and extent of exceptions identified
- The need to document a conclusion or the basis for a conclusion not readily determinable from the documentation of the work performed

.08 Audit documentation should include abstracts or copies of significant contracts or agreements that were examined to evaluate the accounting for significant transactions. Additionally, audit documentation of tests of operating effectiveness of controls and substantive tests of details that involve inspection of documents or confirmation should include an identification of the items tested.⁵

³ See section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, paragraph .05, for guidance regarding preparation of audit programs.

⁴ A firm of independent auditors has a responsibility to adopt a system of quality control policies and procedures to provide the firm with reasonable assurance that its personnel comply with applicable professional standards, including generally accepted auditing standards, and the firm's standards of quality in conducting individual audit engagements. Review of audit documentation and discussions with engagement team members are among the procedures a firm performs when monitoring compliance with the quality control policies and procedures that it has established. (Also, see section 161, *The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards*.)

⁵ The identification of the items tested may be satisfied by indicating the source from which the items were selected and the specific selection criteria, for example:

- When a haphazard or random sample is selected, the documentation should include identifying characteristics (for example, the specific invoice numbers of the items included in the sample).
- When all items over a specified dollar amount are selected from a listing, the documentation need describe only the scope and the identification of the listing (for example, all invoices over \$25,000 from the December sales journal).
- When a systematic sample is selected from a population of documents, the documentation need only provide an identification of the source of the documents and an indication of the starting point and the sampling interval (for example, a systematic sample of shipping reports was selected from the shipping log for the period from X to Y, starting with report number 14564 and selecting every 250th report from that point).

.09 In addition, the auditor should document audit findings or issues that in his or her judgment are significant, actions taken to address them (including any additional evidence obtained), and the basis for the final conclusions reached. Significant audit findings or issues include the following:

- Matters that both (a) are significant and (b) involve issues regarding the appropriate selection, application, and consistency of accounting principles with regard to the financial statements, including related disclosures. Such matters often relate to (a) accounting for complex or unusual transactions or (b) estimates and uncertainties and, if applicable, the related management assumptions.
- Results of auditing procedures that indicate that (a) the financial statements or disclosures could be materially misstated or (b) auditing procedures need to be significantly modified.
- Circumstances that cause significant difficulty in applying auditing procedures the auditor considered necessary.⁶
- Other findings that could result in modification of the auditor's report.

Ownership and Confidentiality of Audit Documentation

.10 Audit documentation is the property of the auditor, and some states recognize this right of ownership in their statutes. The auditor should adopt reasonable procedures to retain audit documentation for a period of time sufficient to meet the needs of his or her practice and to satisfy any applicable legal or regulatory requirements for records retention.⁷

.11 The auditor has an ethical, and in some situations a legal, obligation to maintain the confidentiality of client information.⁸ Because audit documentation often contains confidential client information, the auditor should adopt reasonable procedures to maintain the confidentiality of that information.

.12 The auditor also should adopt reasonable procedures to prevent unauthorized access to the audit documentation.

.13 Certain audit documentation may sometimes serve as a useful reference source for the client, but it should not be regarded as a part of, or a substitute for, the client's accounting records.

Effective Date

.14 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after May 15, 2002. Earlier application is permitted.

⁶ See section 380, *Communication With Audit Committees*, paragraph .16, for guidance regarding communication with the audit committee of any serious difficulties encountered in dealing with management related to the performance of the audit.

⁷ The procedures should enable the auditor to access electronic audit documentation throughout the retention period.

⁸ Also, see Rule 301, *Confidential Client Information* [ET section 301.01], of the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct.

Appendix A

Audit Documentation Requirements in Other Statements on Auditing Standards

1. Documentation requirements are included in other Statements on Auditing Standards. This section does not change the requirement in:

- a. Section 310, *Establishing an Understanding With the Client*, paragraph .05, to document the understanding with the client.
- b. Section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*, paragraph .05d, to document in either the audit inquiry letter or a separate letter to the client's lawyer, that the client has assured the auditor that it has disclosed all unasserted claims that the lawyer has advised the client are probable of assertion and must be disclosed in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*. Also, this section does not change the requirement in section 337.10 to document the conclusions reached as a result of responses obtained in a conference relating to matters covered by the audit inquiry letter.
- c. Section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, paragraph .05, to prepare a written audit program (or set of written audit programs) for every audit.
- d. Section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, paragraph .40, to document the nature and effect of aggregated misstatements and the auditor's conclusion as to whether the aggregated misstatements cause the financial statements to be materially misstated.
- e. Section 534, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries*, paragraph .02, to obtain written representations from management regarding the purpose and uses of financial statements prepared in conformity with the accounting principles of another country.
- f. Section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*, paragraph .17, to document oral communications to the audit committee or others with equivalent authority and responsibility regarding illegal acts that come to the auditor's attention.
- g. Section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, paragraph .61, to document the understanding of the entity's internal control components obtained to plan the audit. Also, this section does not change the requirement in section 319.83 for the auditor to document his or her conclusions about the assessed level of control risk.
- h. Section 329, *Analytical Procedures*, paragraph .22, to document (1) the expectation, where that expectation is not otherwise readily determinable from the documentation of the work performed, and factors considered in its development; (2) the results of the comparison

of the expectation to the recorded amounts or ratios developed from recorded amounts; and (3) any additional auditing procedures performed in response to significant unexpected differences arising from the analytical procedure and the results of such additional procedures.

- i. Section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .71, for the predecessor auditor to obtain representation letters from management of the former client and from the successor auditor before reissuing (or consenting to the reissue of) a report previously issued on the financial statements of a prior period.
- j. Section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, paragraph .17, to document (1) the conditions or events that led him or her to believe that there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern; (2) the work performed in connection with the auditor's evaluation of management's plans; (3) the auditor's conclusion as to whether substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time remains or is alleviated; and (4) the consideration and effect of that conclusion on the financial statements, disclosures, and the audit report.
- k. Section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*, paragraph .09, to document oral communications with the audit committee or others with equivalent authority and responsibility of conditions noted by the auditor that are considered reportable or that are the result of agreement with the client.
- l. Section 380, *Communication With Audit Committees* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, paragraph .03, to document any oral communications with the audit committee, made pursuant to the SAS, regarding the scope and results of the audit.
- m. Section 330, *The Confirmation Process* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, paragraph .29, to document oral confirmations. Also, when the auditor has not requested confirmations in the examination of accounts receivable, this section does not change the requirement in section 330.35 to document how the auditor overcame this presumption.
- n. Section 801, *Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance*, paragraph .23, to document the oral communications to management and the audit committee or others with equivalent authority and responsibility when the auditor becomes aware during an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards that the entity is subject to an audit requirement that may not be encompassed in the terms of the engagement.
- o. Section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, paragraph .83, to document the following:
 - The discussion among engagement personnel in planning the audit regarding the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud, including how and when the discussion occurred, the audit team members who participated, and the subject matter discussed.
 - The procedures performed to obtain information necessary to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.

- Specific risk of material misstatement due to fraud that were identified and a description of the auditor's response to those risks.
 - If the auditor has not identified in a particular circumstance, improper revenue recognition as a risk of material misstatement due to fraud, the reasons supporting the auditor's conclusion.
 - The results of the procedures performed to further address the risk of management override of controls.
 - Other conditions and analytical relationships that caused the auditor to believe that additional auditing procedures or other responses were required and any further responses the auditor concluded were appropriate, to address such risks or other conditions.
 - The nature of communications about fraud made to management, the audit committee and others.
- p. Section 333, *Management Representations*, to obtain written representations from management.

[Revised, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

AU Section 9339**Audit Documentation:
Auditing Interpretations of Section 339****1. Providing Access to or Copies of Audit Documentation to a Regulator^{1, 2}**

.01 Question—Section 339, *Audit Documentation*, paragraph .11, states that “the auditor has an ethical, and in some situations a legal, obligation to maintain the confidentiality of client information...Because audit documentation often contains confidential client information, the auditor should adopt reasonable procedures to maintain the confidentiality of that information.” However, auditors are sometimes required by law, regulation or audit contract,³ to provide a regulator, or a duly appointed representative, access to audit documentation. For example, a regulator may request access to the audit documentation to fulfill a quality review requirement or to assist in establishing the scope of a regulatory examination. Furthermore, as part of the regulator’s review of the audit documentation, the regulator may request copies of all or selected portions of the audit documentation during or after the review. The regulator may intend, or decide, to make copies (or information derived from the audit documentation) available to others, including other governmental agencies, for their particular purposes, with or without the knowledge of the auditor or the client. When a regulator requests the auditor to provide access to (and possibly copies of) audit documentation pursuant to law, regulation or audit contract, what steps should the auditor take?

.02 Interpretation—When a regulator requests access to audit documentation pursuant to law, regulation or audit contract, the auditor should take the following steps:

- a. Consider advising the client that the regulator has requested access to (and possibly copies of) the audit documentation and that the auditor intends to comply with such request.⁴

¹ The term “regulator(s)” includes federal, state and local government officials with legal oversight authority over the entity. Examples of regulators who may request access to audit documentation include, but are not limited to, state insurance and utility regulators, various health care authorities, and federal agencies such as the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Office of Thrift Supervision, the Department of Housing and Urban Development, the Department of Labor, and the Rural Electrification Administration.

² The guidance in this Interpretation does not apply to requests from the Internal Revenue Service, firm practice-monitoring programs to comply with AICPA or state professional requirements such as peer or quality reviews, proceedings relating to alleged ethics violations, or subpoenas.

³ For situations in which the auditor is not required by law, regulation or audit contract to provide a regulator access to the audit documentation, reference should be made to the guidance in paragraphs .11–.15 of this Interpretation.

⁴ The auditor may wish (and in some cases may be required by law, regulation, or audit contract) to confirm in writing with the client that the auditor may be required to provide a regulator access to the audit documentation. Sample language that may be used follows: “The audit documentation for this engagement is the property of (*name of auditor*) and constitutes confidential information. However, we may be requested to make certain audit documentation available to (*name of regulator*) pursuant to authority given to it by law or regulation. If requested, access to such audit documentation will be provided under the supervision of (*name of auditor*) personnel. Furthermore, upon request, we may provide copies of selected audit documentation to (*name of regulator*). The (*name of regulator*) may intend, or decide, to distribute the copies or information contained therein to others, including other governmental agencies.”

- b. Make appropriate arrangements with the regulator for the review.
- c. Maintain control over the audit documentation, and
- d. Consider submitting the letter described in paragraph .05 of this Interpretation to the regulator.

.03 The auditor should make appropriate arrangements with the regulator. These arrangements ordinarily would include the specific details such as the date, time and location of the review. The audit documentation may be made available to a regulator at the offices of the client, the auditor, or a mutually agreed-upon location, so long as the auditor maintains control. Furthermore, the auditor should take appropriate steps to maintain control of the audit documentation. For example, the auditor (or his or her representative) should consider being present when the audit documentation is reviewed by the regulator. Maintaining control of audit documentation is necessary to ensure the continued integrity of the audit documentation and to ensure confidentiality of client information.

.04 Ordinarily, the auditor should not agree to transfer ownership of the audit documentation to a regulator. Furthermore, the auditor should not agree, without client authorization, that the information contained therein about the client may be communicated to or made available to any other party. In this regard, the action of an auditor providing access to, or copies of, the audit documentation shall not constitute transfer of ownership or authorization to make them available to any other party.

.05 An audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards is not intended to, and does not, satisfy a regulator's oversight responsibilities. To avoid any misunderstanding, prior to allowing a regulator access to the audit documentation, the auditor should consider submitting a letter to the regulator that:

- a. Sets forth the auditor's understanding of the purpose for which access is being requested
- b. Describes the audit process and the limitations inherent in a financial statement audit
- c. Explains the purpose for which the audit documentation was prepared, and that any individual conclusions must be read in the context of the auditor's report on the financial statements
- d. States, except when not applicable, that the audit was not planned or conducted in contemplation of the purpose for which access is being granted or to assess the entity's compliance with laws and regulations
- e. States that the audit and the audit documentation should not supplant other inquiries and procedures that should be undertaken by the regulator for its purposes
- f. Requests confidential treatment under the Freedom of Information Act or similar laws and regulations,⁵ when a request for the audit documentation is made, and that written notice be given to the auditor before transmitting any information contained in the audit documentation to others, including other governmental agencies, except when such transfer is required by law or regulation, and

⁵ The auditor may need to consult the regulations of individual agencies and, if necessary, consult with legal counsel regarding the specific procedures and requirements necessary to gain confidential treatment.

- g. States that if any copies are to be provided, they will be identified as “Confidential Treatment Requested by (*name of auditor, address, telephone number*).”

The auditor may wish to obtain a signed acknowledgment copy of the letter as evidence of the regulator’s receipt of the letter.

.06 An example of a letter containing the elements described in paragraph .05 of this Interpretation is presented below:

Illustrative Letter to Regulator⁶

(*Date*)

(*Name and Address of Regulatory Agency*)

Your representatives have requested access to our audit documentation in connection with our audit of the December 31, 20XX financial statements of (*name of client*). It is our understanding that the purpose of your request is (*state purpose: for example, “to facilitate your regulatory examination”*).⁷

Our audit of (*name of client*) December 31, 20XX financial statements was conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America,⁸ the objective⁹ of which is to form an opinion as to whether the financial statements, which are the responsibility and representations of management, present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position, results of operations and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.¹⁰ Under generally accepted auditing standards, we have the responsibility, within the inherent limitations of the auditing process, to design our audit to provide reasonable assurance that errors and fraud that have a material effect on the financial statements will be detected, and to exercise due care in the conduct of our audit. The concept of selective testing of the data being audited, which involves judgment both as to the number of transactions to be audited and as to the areas to be tested, has been generally accepted as a valid and sufficient basis for an auditor to express an opinion on financial statements. Thus, our audit, based on the concept of selective testing, is subject to the inherent risk that material errors or fraud, if they exist, would not be detected. In addition, an audit does not address the possibility that material errors or fraud may occur in the future. Also, our use of professional judgment and the assessment of materiality for the purpose of our audit means that matters may have existed that would have been assessed differently by you.

⁶ The auditor should appropriately modify this letter when the audit has been performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and also in accordance with additional auditing requirements specified by a regulatory agency (for example, the requirements specified in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States).

⁷ If the auditor is not required by law, regulation, or audit contract to provide a regulator access to the audit documentation but otherwise intends to provide such access (see paragraphs .11–.15 of this Interpretation), the letter should include a statement that: “Management of (*name of client*) has authorized us to provide you access to our audit documentation for (*state purpose*).”

⁸ Refer to footnote 6.

⁹ In an audit performed in accordance with the *Single Audit Act of 1984*, and certain other federal audit requirements, an additional objective of the audit is to assess compliance with laws and regulations applicable to federal financial assistance. Accordingly, in these situations, the above letter should be modified to include the additional objective.

¹⁰ If the financial statements have been prepared in conformity with regulatory accounting practices, the phrase “financial position, results of operations and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles” should be replaced with appropriate wording such as, in the case of an insurance company, the “admitted assets, liabilities ... of the XYZ Insurance Company in conformity with accounting practices prescribed or permitted by the state of ... insurance department.”

The audit documentation was prepared for the purpose of providing the principal support for our report on (*name of client*) December 31, 20XX financial statements and to aid in the conduct and supervision of our audit. The audit documentation is the principal record of auditing procedures performed, evidence obtained and conclusions reached in the engagement. The auditing procedures that we performed were limited to those we considered necessary under generally accepted auditing standards¹¹ to enable us to formulate and express an opinion on the financial statements¹² taken as a whole. Accordingly, we make no representation as to the sufficiency or appropriateness, for your purposes, of either the information contained in our audit documentation or our auditing procedures. In addition, any notations, comments, and individual conclusions appearing on any of the audit documents do not stand alone, and should not be read as an opinion on any individual amounts, accounts, balances or transactions.

Our audit of (*name of client*) December 31, 20XX financial statements was performed for the purpose stated above and has not been planned or conducted in contemplation of your (*state purpose: for example, "regulatory examination"*) or for the purpose of assessing (*name of client*) compliance with laws and regulations.¹³ Therefore, items of possible interest to you may not have been specifically addressed. Accordingly, our audit and the audit documentation prepared in connection therewith, should not supplant other inquiries and procedures that should be undertaken by the (*name of regulatory agency*) for the purpose of monitoring and regulating the financial affairs of the (*name of client*). In addition, we have not audited any financial statements of (*name of client*) since (*date of audited balance sheet referred to in the first paragraph above*) nor have we performed any auditing procedures since (*date*), the date of our auditor's report, and significant events or circumstances may have occurred since that date.

The audit documentation constitutes and reflects work performed or evidence obtained by (*name of auditor*) in its capacity as independent auditor for (*name of client*). The documents contain trade secrets and confidential commercial and financial information of our firm and (*name of client*) that is privileged and confidential, and we expressly reserve all rights with respect to disclosures to third parties. Accordingly, we request confidential treatment under the Freedom of Information Act or similar laws and regulations¹⁴ when requests are made for the audit documentation or information contained therein or any documents created by the (*name of regulatory agency*) containing information derived therefrom. We further request that written notice be given to our firm before distribution of the information in the audit documentation (or copies thereof) to others, including other governmental agencies, except when such distribution is required by law or regulation.

[If it is expected that copies will be requested, add:

Any copies of our audit documentation we agree to provide you will be identified as "Confidential Treatment Requested by (*name of auditor, address, telephone number*)."]

Firm signature

¹¹ Refer to footnote 6.

¹² Refer to footnote 9.

¹³ Refer to footnote 9.

¹⁴ This illustrative paragraph may not in and of itself be sufficient to gain confidential treatment under the rules and regulations of certain regulatory agencies. The auditor should consider tailoring this paragraph to the circumstances after consulting the regulations of each applicable regulatory agency and, if necessary, consult with legal counsel regarding the specific procedures and requirements to gain confidential treatment.

.07 Question—A regulator may request access to the audit documentation before the audit has been completed and the report released. May the auditor allow access in such circumstances?

.08 Interpretation—When the audit has not been completed, the audit documentation is necessarily incomplete because (a) additional information may be added as a result of further tests and review by supervisory personnel and (b) any audit results and conclusions reflected in the incomplete audit documentation may change. Accordingly, it is preferable that access be delayed until all auditing procedures have been completed and all internal reviews have been performed. If access is provided prior to completion of the audit, the auditor should consider issuing the letter referred to in paragraph .05 of this Interpretation, appropriately modified, and including additional language along the following lines:

“We have been engaged to audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America the December 31, 20XX, financial statements of XYZ Company, but have not as yet completed our audit. Accordingly, at this time we do not express any opinion on the Company’s financial statements. Furthermore, the contents of the audit documentation may change as a result of additional auditing procedures and review of the audit documentation by supervisory personnel of our firm. Accordingly, our audit documentation is incomplete.”

Because the audit documentation may change prior to completion of the audit, the auditor ordinarily should not provide copies of the audit documentation until the audit has been completed.

.09 Question—Some regulators may engage an independent party, such as another independent public accountant, to perform the audit documentation review on behalf of the regulatory agency. Are there any special precautions the auditor should observe in these circumstances?

.10 Interpretation—The auditor should be satisfied that the party engaged by the regulator is subject to the same confidentiality restrictions as the regulatory agency itself. This can be accomplished by obtaining acknowledgment, preferably in writing, from the regulator stating that the third party is acting on behalf of the regulator and agreement from the third party that he or she is subject to the same restrictions on disclosure and use of audit documentation and the information contained therein as the regulator.

.11 Question—When a regulator requests the auditor to provide access to (and possibly copies of) audit documentation and the auditor is not otherwise required by law, regulation or audit contract to provide such access, what steps should the auditor take?

.12 Interpretation—The auditor should obtain an understanding of the reasons for the regulator’s request for access to the audit documentation and may wish to consider consulting with legal counsel regarding the request. If the auditor decides to provide such access, the auditor should obtain the client’s consent, preferably in writing, to provide the regulator access to the audit documentation.

.13 Following is an example of language that may be used in the written communication to the client:

“The audit documentation for this engagement is the property of (name of auditor) and constitutes confidential information. However, we have been requested to make certain audit documentation available to (name of regulator)

The Standards of Field Work

for *(describe the regulator’s basis for its request)*. Access to such audit documentation will be provided under the supervision of *(name of auditor)* personnel. Furthermore, upon request, we may provide copies of selected audit documentation to *(name of regulator)*.

“You have authorized *(name of auditor)* to allow *(name of regulator)* access to the audit documentation in the manner discussed above. Please confirm your agreement to the above by signing below and returning to *(name of auditor, address)*.”

Firm signature

Agreed and acknowledged:

(Name and title)

(Date)

.14 If the client requests to review the audit documentation before allowing the regulator access, the auditor may provide the client with the opportunity to obtain an understanding of the nature of the information about its financial statements contained in the audit documentation that is being made available to the regulator. When a client reviews the audit documentation, the auditor should maintain control of the audit documentation as discussed in paragraph .03 of this Interpretation.

.15 The auditor should also refer to the guidance in paragraphs .03–.10 of this Interpretation which provide guidance on making arrangements with the regulator for access to the audit documentation, maintaining control over the audit documentation and submitting a letter describing various matters to the regulator.

[Issue Date: July, 1994; Revised: June, 1996;
Revised: October, 2000; Revised: January, 2002.]

AU Section 341

The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern

(Supersedes section 340)

Source: SAS No. 59; SAS No. 64; SAS No. 77; SAS No. 96.

See section 9341 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 This section provides guidance to the auditor in conducting an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards with respect to evaluating whether there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.^{1,2} Continuation of an entity as a going concern is assumed in financial reporting in the absence of significant information to the contrary. Ordinarily, information that significantly contradicts the going concern assumption relates to the entity's inability to continue to meet its obligations as they become due without substantial disposition of assets outside the ordinary course of business, restructuring of debt, externally forced revisions of its operations, or similar actions.

The Auditor's Responsibility

.02 The auditor has a responsibility to evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, not to exceed one year beyond the date of the financial statements being audited (hereinafter referred to as a *reasonable period of time*). The auditor's evaluation is based on his knowledge of relevant conditions and events that exist at or have occurred prior to the completion of fieldwork. Information about such conditions or events is obtained from the application of auditing procedures planned and performed to achieve audit objectives that are related to management's assertions embodied in the financial statements being audited, as described in section 326, *Evidential Matter*.

¹ This section does not apply to an audit of financial statements based on the assumption of liquidation (for example, when [a] an entity is in the process of liquidation, [b] the owners have decided to commence dissolution or liquidation, or [c] legal proceedings, including bankruptcy, have reached a point at which dissolution or liquidation is probable). See Auditing Interpretation, "Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared on a Liquidation Basis of Accounting" (section 9508.33--38).

² The guidance provided in this section applies to audits of financial statements prepared either in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles or in accordance with a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles. References in this section to generally accepted accounting principles are intended to include a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles (excluding liquidation basis).

.03 The auditor should evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time in the following manner:

- a. The auditor considers whether the results of his procedures performed in planning, gathering evidential matter relative to the various audit objectives, and completing the audit identify conditions and events that, when considered in the aggregate, indicate there could be substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time. It may be necessary to obtain additional information about such conditions and events, as well as the appropriate evidential matter to support information that mitigates the auditor's doubt.
- b. If the auditor believes there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, he should (1) obtain information about management's plans that are intended to mitigate the effect of such conditions or events, and (2) assess the likelihood that such plans can be effectively implemented.
- c. After the auditor has evaluated management's plans, he concludes whether he has substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time. If the auditor concludes there is substantial doubt, he should (1) consider the adequacy of disclosure about the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, and (2) include an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) in his audit report to reflect his conclusion. If the auditor concludes that substantial doubt does not exist, he should consider the need for disclosure.

.04 The auditor is not responsible for predicting future conditions or events. The fact that the entity may cease to exist as a going concern subsequent to receiving a report from the auditor that does not refer to substantial doubt, even within one year following the date of the financial statements, does not, in itself, indicate inadequate performance by the auditor. Accordingly, the absence of reference to substantial doubt in an auditor's report should not be viewed as providing assurance as to an entity's ability to continue as a going concern.

Audit Procedures

.05 It is not necessary to design audit procedures solely to identify conditions and events that, when considered in the aggregate, indicate there could be substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time. The results of auditing procedures designed and performed to achieve other audit objectives should be sufficient for that purpose. The following are examples of procedures that may identify such conditions and events:

- Analytical procedures
- Review of subsequent events
- Review of compliance with the terms of debt and loan agreements
- Reading of minutes of meetings of stockholders, board of directors, and important committees of the board

- Inquiry of an entity's legal counsel about litigation, claims, and assessments
- Confirmation with related and third parties of the details of arrangements to provide or maintain financial support

Consideration of Conditions and Events

.06 In performing audit procedures such as those presented in paragraph .05, the auditor may identify information about certain conditions or events that, when considered in the aggregate, indicate there could be substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time. The significance of such conditions and events will depend on the circumstances, and some may have significance only when viewed in conjunction with others. The following are examples of such conditions and events:

- *Negative trends*—for example, recurring operating losses, working capital deficiencies, negative cash flows from operating activities, adverse key financial ratios
- *Other indications of possible financial difficulties*—for example, default on loan or similar agreements, arrearages in dividends, denial of usual trade credit from suppliers, restructuring of debt, noncompliance with statutory capital requirements, need to seek new sources or methods of financing or to dispose of substantial assets
- *Internal matters*—for example, work stoppages or other labor difficulties, substantial dependence on the success of a particular project, uneconomic long-term commitments, need to significantly revise operations
- *External matters that have occurred*—for example, legal proceedings, legislation, or similar matters that might jeopardize an entity's ability to operate; loss of a key franchise, license, or patent; loss of a principal customer or supplier; uninsured or underinsured catastrophe such as a drought, earthquake, or flood

Consideration of Management's Plans

.07 If, after considering the identified conditions and events in the aggregate, the auditor believes there is substantial doubt about the ability of the entity to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, he should consider management's plans for dealing with the adverse effects of the conditions and events. The auditor should obtain information about the plans and consider whether it is likely the adverse effects will be mitigated for a reasonable period of time and that such plans can be effectively implemented. The auditor's considerations relating to management plans may include the following:

- Plans to dispose of assets
 - Restrictions on disposal of assets, such as covenants limiting such transactions in loan or similar agreements or encumbrances against assets
 - Apparent marketability of assets that management plans to sell
 - Possible direct or indirect effects of disposal of assets

- Plans to borrow money or restructure debt
 - Availability of debt financing, including existing or committed credit arrangements, such as lines of credit or arrangements for factoring receivables or sale-leaseback of assets
 - Existing or committed arrangements to restructure or subordinate debt or to guarantee loans to the entity
 - Possible effects on management's borrowing plans of existing restrictions on additional borrowing or the sufficiency of available collateral
- Plans to reduce or delay expenditures
 - Apparent feasibility of plans to reduce overhead or administrative expenditures, to postpone maintenance or research and development projects, or to lease rather than purchase assets
 - Possible direct or indirect effects of reduced or delayed expenditures
- Plans to increase ownership equity
 - Apparent feasibility of plans to increase ownership equity, including existing or committed arrangements to raise additional capital
 - Existing or committed arrangements to reduce current dividend requirements or to accelerate cash distributions from affiliates or other investors

.08 When evaluating management's plans, the auditor should identify those elements that are particularly significant to overcoming the adverse effects of the conditions and events and should plan and perform auditing procedures to obtain evidential matter about them. For example, the auditor should consider the adequacy of support regarding the ability to obtain additional financing or the planned disposal of assets.

.09 When prospective financial information is particularly significant to management's plans, the auditor should request management to provide that information and should consider the adequacy of support for significant assumptions underlying that information. The auditor should give particular attention to assumptions that are—

- Material to the prospective financial information.
- Especially sensitive or susceptible to change.
- Inconsistent with historical trends.

The auditor's consideration should be based on knowledge of the entity, its business, and its management and should include (a) reading of the prospective financial information and the underlying assumptions and (b) comparing prospective financial information in prior periods with actual results and comparing prospective information for the current period with results achieved to date. If the auditor becomes aware of factors, the effects of which are not reflected in such prospective financial information, he should discuss those factors with management and, if necessary, request revision of the prospective financial information.

Consideration of Financial Statement Effects

.10 When, after considering management's plans, the auditor concludes there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, the auditor should consider the possible effects on the financial statements and the adequacy of the related disclosure. Some of the information that might be disclosed includes—

- Pertinent conditions and events giving rise to the assessment of substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time.
- The possible effects of such conditions and events.
- Management's evaluation of the significance of those conditions and events and any mitigating factors.
- Possible discontinuance of operations.
- Management's plans (including relevant prospective financial information).³
- Information about the recoverability or classification of recorded asset amounts or the amounts or classification of liabilities.

.11 When, primarily because of the auditor's consideration of management's plans, he concludes that substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time is alleviated, he should consider the need for disclosure of the principal conditions and events that initially caused him to believe there was substantial doubt. The auditor's consideration of disclosure should include the possible effects of such conditions and events, and any mitigating factors, including management's plans.

Consideration of the Effects on the Auditor's Report

.12 If, after considering identified conditions and events and management's plans, the auditor concludes that substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time remains, the audit report should include an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) to reflect that conclusion.⁴ The auditor's conclusion about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern should be expressed through the use of the phrase "substantial doubt about its (the entity's) ability to continue as a going concern" [or similar wording that includes the terms substantial doubt *and* going concern] as illustrated in paragraph .13. [As amended, effective for reports issued after December 31, 1990, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 64.]

.13 An example follows of an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) in the auditor's report describing an uncertainty about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time.⁵

³ It is not intended that such prospective financial information constitute prospective financial statements meeting the minimum presentation guidelines set forth in AT section 301, *Financial Forecasts and Projections*, nor that the inclusion of such information require any consideration beyond that normally required by generally accepted auditing standards. [Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

⁴ The inclusion of an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) in the auditor's report contemplated by this section should serve adequately to inform the users of the financial statements. Nothing in this section, however, is intended to preclude an auditor from declining to express an opinion in cases involving uncertainties. If he disclaims an opinion, the uncertainties and their possible effects on the financial statements should be disclosed in an appropriate manner (see paragraph .10), and the auditor's report should give all the substantive reasons for his disclaimer of opinion (see section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*).

⁵ In a going-concern explanatory paragraph, the auditor should not use conditional language in expressing a conclusion concerning the existence of substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern. Examples of inappropriate wording in the explanatory paragraph would be, "If the Company continues to suffer recurring losses from operations and continues to have a net capital deficiency, there may be substantial doubt about its ability to continue as a going concern" or "The Company has been unable to renegotiate its expiring credit agreements. Unless the Company is able to obtain financial support, there is substantial doubt about its ability to continue as a going concern." [Footnote added, effective for reports issued after December 15, 1995, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77.]

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, the Company has suffered recurring losses from operations and has a net capital deficiency that raise substantial doubt about its ability to continue as a going concern. Management's plans in regard to these matters are also described in Note X. The financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

[As amended, effective for reports issued after December 31, 1990, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 64.]

.14 If the auditor concludes that the entity's disclosures with respect to the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time are inadequate, a departure from generally accepted accounting principles exists. This may result in either a qualified (except for) or an adverse opinion. Reporting guidance for such situations is provided in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*.

.15 Substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time that arose in the current period does not imply that a basis for such doubt existed in the prior period and, therefore, should not affect the auditor's report on the financial statements of the prior period that are presented on a comparative basis. When financial statements of one or more prior periods are presented on a comparative basis with financial statements of the current period, reporting guidance is provided in section 508.

.16 If substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time existed at the date of prior period financial statements that are presented on a comparative basis, and that doubt has been removed in the current period, the explanatory paragraph included in the auditor's report (following the opinion paragraph) on the financial statements of the prior period should not be repeated.

Documentation

.17 As stated in paragraph .03 of this section, the auditor considers whether the results of the auditing procedures performed in planning, gathering evidential matter relative to the various audit objectives, and completing the audit identify conditions and events that, when considered in the aggregate, indicate there could be substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time. If, after considering the identified conditions and events in the aggregate, the auditor believes there is substantial doubt about the ability of the entity to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, he or she follows the guidance in paragraphs .07 through .16. In connection with that guidance, the auditor should document all of the following:

- a. The conditions or events that led him or her to believe that there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time.
- b. The elements of management's plans that the auditor considered to be particularly significant to overcoming the adverse effects of the conditions or events.
- c. The auditing procedures performed and evidence obtained to evaluate the significant elements of management's plans.

- d. The auditor's conclusion as to whether substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time remains or is alleviated. If substantial doubt remains, the auditor also should document the possible effects of the conditions or events on the financial statements and the adequacy of the related disclosures. If substantial doubt is alleviated, the auditor also should document the conclusion as to the need for disclosure of the principal conditions and events that initially caused him or her to believe there was substantial doubt.
- e. The auditor's conclusion as to whether he or she should include an explanatory paragraph in the audit report. If disclosures with respect to an entity's ability to continue as a going concern are inadequate, the auditor also should document the conclusion as to whether to express a qualified or adverse opinion for the resultant departure from generally accepted accounting principles.

[Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after May 15, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96.]

Effective Date

.18 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989. Early application of the provisions of this section is permissible. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96, January 2002.]

AU Section 9341***The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern: Auditing Interpretations of Section 341*****1. Eliminating a Going-Concern Explanatory Paragraph From a Reissued Report**

.01 Question—An auditor may be asked to reissue his or her report on financial statements and eliminate the going-concern explanatory paragraph that appeared in the original report. Such requests ordinarily occur after the conditions that gave rise to substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern have been resolved. For example, subsequent to the date of the auditor's original report, an entity might obtain needed financing. In such circumstances, may the auditor reissue his or her report and eliminate the going-concern explanatory paragraph that appeared in the original report?

.02 Interpretation—An auditor has no obligation to reissue his or her report.¹ However, if the auditor decides to reissue the report,² the auditor should perform the following procedures when determining whether to reissue the report without the going-concern explanatory paragraph that appeared in the original report:

- Audit the event or transaction that prompted the request to reissue the report without the going-concern explanatory paragraph.
- Perform the procedures listed in section 560, *Subsequent Events*, paragraph .12, at or near the date of reissuance.
- Consider the factors described in section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, paragraphs .06 through .11, based on the conditions and circumstances at the date of reissuance.

The auditor may perform any other procedures that he or she deems necessary in the circumstances. Based on the information that the auditor becomes aware of as a result of performing the procedures mentioned above, the auditor should reassess the going-concern status of the entity.

[Issue Date: August, 1995.]

[2.] Effect of the Year 2000 Issue on the Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern

[.03-.27] [Withdrawn July, 2000 by the Audit Issues Task Force.]

¹ If the auditor decides not to reissue his or her report, the auditor may agree to be engaged to audit the financial statements for a period subsequent to that covered by the original report. This might be the case, for example, if the entity is experiencing profitable operations.

² Section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraph .05, states that an auditor may either "dual-date" or "later-date" his or her reissued report.

AU Section 342***Auditing Accounting Estimates***

Source: SAS No. 57.

See section 9342 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 This section provides guidance to auditors on obtaining and evaluating sufficient competent evidential matter to support significant accounting estimates in an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. For purposes of this section, an *accounting estimate* is an approximation of a financial statement element, item, or account. Accounting estimates are often included in historical financial statements because—

- a. The measurement of some amounts or the valuation of some accounts is uncertain, pending the outcome of future events.
- b. Relevant data concerning events that have already occurred cannot be accumulated on a timely, cost-effective basis.

.02 Accounting estimates in historical financial statements measure the effects of past business transactions or events, or the present status of an asset or liability. Examples of accounting estimates include net realizable values of inventory and accounts receivable, property and casualty insurance loss reserves, revenues from contracts accounted for by the percentage-of-completion method, and pension and warranty expenses.¹

.03 Management is responsible for making the accounting estimates included in the financial statements. Estimates are based on subjective as well as objective factors and, as a result, judgment is required to estimate an amount at the date of the financial statements. Management's judgment is normally based on its knowledge and experience about past and current events and its assumptions about conditions it expects to exist and courses of action it expects to take.

.04 The auditor is responsible for evaluating the reasonableness of accounting estimates made by management in the context of the financial statements taken as a whole. As estimates are based on subjective as well as objective factors, it may be difficult for management to establish controls over them. Even when management's estimation process involves competent personnel using relevant and reliable data, there is potential for bias in the subjective factors. Accordingly, when planning and performing procedures to evaluate accounting estimates, the auditor should consider, with an attitude of professional skepticism, both the subjective and objective factors.

¹ Additional examples of accounting estimates included in historical financial statements are presented in paragraph .16.

Developing Accounting Estimates

.05 Management is responsible for establishing a process for preparing accounting estimates. Although the process may not be documented or formally applied, it normally consists of—

- a.* Identifying situations for which accounting estimates are required.
- b.* Identifying the relevant factors that may affect the accounting estimate.
- c.* Accumulating relevant, sufficient, and reliable data on which to base the estimate.
- d.* Developing assumptions that represent management's judgment of the most likely circumstances and events with respect to the relevant factors.
- e.* Determining the estimated amount based on the assumptions and other relevant factors.
- f.* Determining that the accounting estimate is presented in conformity with applicable accounting principles and that disclosure is adequate.

The risk of material misstatement of accounting estimates normally varies with the complexity and subjectivity associated with the process, the availability and reliability of relevant data, the number and significance of assumptions that are made, and the degree of uncertainty associated with the assumptions.

Internal Control Related to Accounting Estimates

.06 An entity's internal control may reduce the likelihood of material misstatements of accounting estimates. Specific relevant aspects of internal control include the following:

- a.* Management communication of the need for proper accounting estimates
- b.* Accumulation of relevant, sufficient, and reliable data on which to base an accounting estimate
- c.* Preparation of the accounting estimate by qualified personnel
- d.* Adequate review and approval of the accounting estimates by appropriate levels of authority, including—
 1. Review of sources of relevant factors
 2. Review of development of assumptions
 3. Review of reasonableness of assumptions and resulting estimates
 4. Consideration of the need to use the work of specialists
 5. Consideration of changes in previously established methods to arrive at accounting estimates
- e.* Comparison of prior accounting estimates with subsequent results to assess the reliability of the process used to develop estimates
- f.* Consideration by management of whether the resulting accounting estimate is consistent with the operational plans of the entity.

Evaluating Accounting Estimates

.07 The auditor's objective when evaluating accounting estimates is to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to provide reasonable assurance that—

- a. All accounting estimates that could be material to the financial statements have been developed.
- b. Those accounting estimates are reasonable in the circumstances.
- c. The accounting estimates are presented in conformity with applicable accounting principles² and are properly disclosed.³

Identifying Circumstances That Require Accounting Estimates

.08 In evaluating whether management has identified all accounting estimates that could be material to the financial statements, the auditor considers the circumstances of the industry or industries in which the entity operates, its methods of conducting business, new accounting pronouncements, and other external factors. The auditor should consider performing the following procedures:

- a. Consider assertions embodied in the financial statements to determine the need for estimates. (See paragraph .16 for examples of accounting estimates included in financial statements.)
- b. Evaluate information obtained in performing other procedures, such as—
 - 1. Information about changes made or planned in the entity's business, including changes in operating strategy, and the industry in which the entity operates that may indicate the need to make an accounting estimate (section 311, *Planning and Supervision*).
 - 2. Changes in the methods of accumulating information.
 - 3. Information concerning identified litigation, claims, and assessments (section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*), and other contingencies.
 - 4. Information from reading available minutes of meetings of stockholders, directors, and appropriate committees.
 - 5. Information contained in regulatory or examination reports, supervisory correspondence, and similar materials from applicable regulatory agencies.
- c. Inquire of management about the existence of circumstances that may indicate the need to make an accounting estimate.

Evaluating Reasonableness

.09 In evaluating the reasonableness of an estimate, the auditor normally concentrates on key factors and assumptions that are—

- a. Significant to the accounting estimate.
- b. Sensitive to variations.
- c. Deviations from historical patterns.
- d. Subjective and susceptible to misstatement and bias.

² Section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, discusses the auditor's responsibility for evaluating conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. [Title of section 411 amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

³ Section 431, *Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements*, discusses the auditor's responsibility to consider whether the financial statements include adequate disclosures of material matters in light of the circumstances and facts of which he is aware.

The auditor normally should consider the historical experience of the entity in making past estimates as well as the auditor's experience in the industry. However, changes in facts, circumstances, or entity's procedures may cause factors different from those considered in the past to become significant to the accounting estimate.⁴

.10 In evaluating reasonableness, the auditor should obtain an understanding of how management developed the estimate. Based on that understanding, the auditor should use one or a combination of the following approaches:

- a. Review and test the process used by management to develop the estimate.
- b. Develop an independent expectation of the estimate to corroborate the reasonableness of management's estimate.
- c. Review subsequent events or transactions occurring prior to completion of fieldwork.

.11 Review and test management's process. In many situations, the auditor assesses the reasonableness of an accounting estimate by performing procedures to test the process used by management to make the estimate. The following are procedures the auditor may consider performing when using this approach:

- a. Identify whether there are controls over the preparation of accounting estimates and supporting data that may be useful in the evaluation.
- b. Identify the sources of data and factors that management used in forming the assumptions, and consider whether such data and factors are relevant, reliable, and sufficient for the purpose based on information gathered in other audit tests.
- c. Consider whether there are additional key factors or alternative assumptions about the factors.
- d. Evaluate whether the assumptions are consistent with each other, the supporting data, relevant historical data, and industry data.
- e. Analyze historical data used in developing the assumptions to assess whether the data is comparable and consistent with data of the period under audit, and consider whether such data is sufficiently reliable for the purpose.
- f. Consider whether changes in the business or industry may cause other factors to become significant to the assumptions.
- g. Review available documentation of the assumptions used in developing the accounting estimates and inquire about any other plans, goals, and objectives of the entity, as well as consider their relationship to the assumptions.
- h. Consider using the work of a specialist regarding certain assumptions (section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*).
- i. Test the calculations used by management to translate the assumptions and key factors into the accounting estimate.

.12 *Develop an expectation.* Based on the auditor's understanding of the facts and circumstances, he may independently develop an expectation as to the estimate by using other key factors or alternative assumptions about those factors.

⁴ In addition to other evidential matter about the estimate, in certain instances, the auditor may wish to obtain written representation from management regarding the key factors and assumptions.

.13 *Review subsequent events or transactions.* Events or transactions sometimes occur subsequent to the date of the balance sheet, but prior to the completion of fieldwork, that are important in identifying and evaluating the reasonableness of accounting estimates or key factors or assumptions used in the preparation of the estimate. In such circumstances, an evaluation of the estimate or of a key factor or assumption may be minimized or unnecessary as the event or transaction can be used by the auditor in evaluating their reasonableness.

.14 As discussed in section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, paragraph .36, the auditor evaluates the reasonableness of accounting estimates in relationship to the financial statements taken as a whole:

Since no one accounting estimate can be considered accurate with certainty, the auditor recognizes that a difference between an estimated amount best supported by the audit evidence and the estimated amount included in the financial statements may be reasonable, and such difference would not be considered to be a likely misstatement. However, if the auditor believes the estimated amount included in the financial statements is unreasonable, he should treat the difference between that estimate and the closest reasonable estimate as a likely misstatement and aggregate it with other likely misstatements. The auditor should also consider whether the difference between estimates best supported by the audit evidence and the estimates included in the financial statements, which are individually reasonable, indicate a possible bias on the part of the entity's management. For example, if each accounting estimate included in the financial statements was individually reasonable, but the effect of the difference between each estimate and the estimate best supported by the audit evidence was to increase income, the auditor should reconsider the estimates taken as a whole.

Effective Date

.15 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989. Early application of the provisions of this section is permissible.

Appendix

Examples of Accounting Estimates

The following are examples of accounting estimates that are included in financial statements. The list is presented for information only. It should not be considered all-inclusive.

Receivables:

- Uncollectible receivables
- Allowance for loan losses
- Uncollectible pledges

Inventories:

- Obsolete inventory
- Net realizable value of inventories where future selling prices and future costs are involved
- Losses on purchase commitments

Financial instruments:

- Valuation of securities
- Trading versus investment security classification
- Probability of high correlation of a hedge
- Sales of securities with puts and calls

Productive facilities, natural resources and intangibles:

- Useful lives and residual values
- Depreciation and amortization methods
- Recoverability of costs
- Recoverable reserves

Accruals:

- Property and casualty insurance company loss reserves
- Compensation in stock option plans and deferred plans
- Warranty claims
- Taxes on real and personal property
- Renegotiation refunds
- Actuarial assumptions in pension costs

Revenues:

- Airline passenger revenue
- Subscription income
- Freight and cargo revenue
- Dues income
- Losses on sales contracts

Contracts:

- Revenue to be earned
- Costs to be incurred
- Percent of completion

Leases:

- Initial direct costs
- Executory costs
- Residual values

Litigation:

- Probability of loss
- Amount of loss

Rates:

- Annual effective tax rate in interim reporting
- Imputed interest rates on receivables and payables
- Gross profit rates under program method of accounting

Other:

- Losses and net realizable value on disposal of segment or restructuring of a business
- Fair values in nonmonetary exchanges
- Interim period costs in interim reporting
- Current values in personal financial statements

AU Section 9342***Auditing Accounting Estimates: Auditing Interpretations of Section 342*****1. Performance and Reporting Guidance Related to Fair Value Disclosures**

.01 Question—In December 1991, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) issued Statement No. 107, *Disclosures about Fair Value of Financial Instruments* [AC section F25], which requires all entities to disclose the fair value of certain financial instruments for which it is practicable to estimate fair value. Some entities may disclose the information required by FASB Statement No. 107 and also disclose voluntarily the fair value of assets and liabilities not encompassed by FASB Statement No. 107. What are the auditor's responsibilities in situations in which entities are disclosing required or both required and voluntary fair value financial information?

.02 Interpretation—The auditor should determine whether the fair value disclosures represent only those required by FASB Statement No. 107 or whether additional voluntary fair value information has been disclosed by the entity. When auditing management's estimate of both required and voluntary fair value information, the auditor should obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to reasonably assure that—

- the valuation principles are acceptable, are being consistently applied, and are supported by the underlying documentation, and
- the method of estimation and significant assumptions used are properly disclosed.

If such assurance cannot be obtained, the auditor should evaluate whether the financial statements are materially affected by the departure from generally accepted accounting principles.

.03 Required Information Presented—When an entity discloses in its basic financial statements only information required by FASB Statement No. 107, the auditor may issue a standard unqualified opinion (assuming no other report modifications are necessary). The auditor may add an emphasis-of-matter paragraph describing the nature and possible range of such fair value information especially when management's best estimate of value is used in the absence of quoted market values (FASB Statement No. 107, paragraph 11 [AC section F25.115D]) and the range of possible values is significant. If the entity has not disclosed required fair value information, the auditor should evaluate whether the financial statements are materially affected by the departure from generally accepted accounting principles.

.04 Required and Voluntary Information Presented—When voluntary information is presented in addition to required information the auditor may audit the voluntary information only if both the following conditions exist:

- the measurement and disclosure criteria used to prepare the fair value financial information are reasonable

- competent persons using the measurement and disclosure criteria would ordinarily obtain materially similar measurements or disclosures.

In applying this guidance to fair value disclosures, the intention is that another auditor would reach similar conclusions regarding the reasonableness of the valuation or estimation techniques and methods used by the entity.

.05 Voluntary disclosures may supplement required disclosures in such a fashion as to constitute either a complete balance sheet (the fair value of all material items in the balance sheet) or a presentation of less than a complete balance sheet.

.06 When the audited disclosures constitute a complete balance sheet presentation, the auditor should add a paragraph to the report, similar to the following:

We have also audited in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America the supplemental fair value balance sheet of ABC Company as of December 31, 20XX. As described in Note X, the supplemental fair value balance sheet has been prepared by management to present relevant financial information that is not provided by the historical-cost balance sheets and is not intended to be a presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. In addition, the supplemental fair value balance sheet does not purport to present the net realizable, liquidation, or market value of ABC Company as a whole. Furthermore, amounts ultimately realized by ABC Company from the disposal of assets may vary significantly from the fair values presented. In our opinion, the supplemental fair value balance sheet referred to above presents fairly, in all material respects, the information set forth therein as described in Note X.

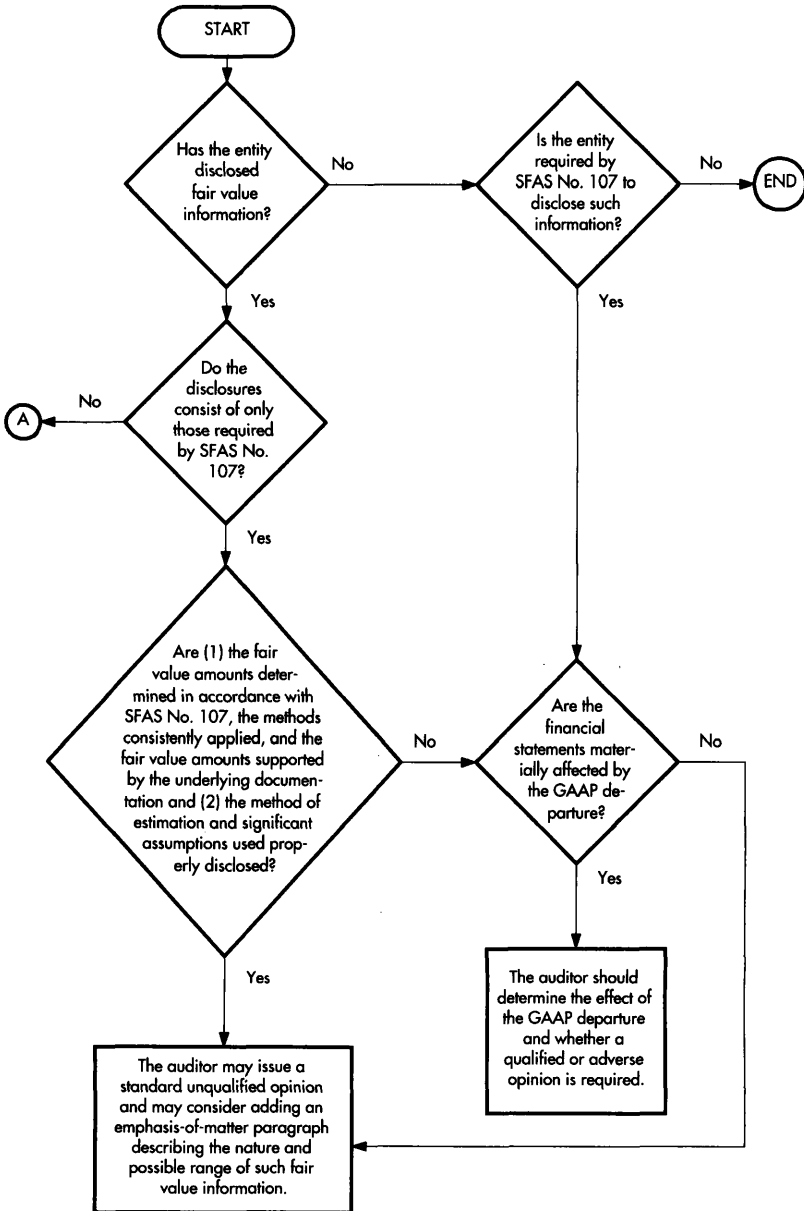
.07 When the audited disclosures do not constitute a complete balance sheet presentation and are located on the face of the financial statements or in the footnotes, the auditor may issue a standard unqualified opinion and need not mention the disclosures in the report. When the audited disclosures do not constitute a complete balance sheet presentation and are included in a supplemental schedule or exhibit, the auditor should add an additional paragraph to the report as discussed in section 551, *Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in the Auditor-Submitted Documents*, paragraph .12.

.08 In some situations, the auditor may not be engaged to audit the voluntary information or may be unable to audit it because it does not meet both conditions in paragraph .04 of this interpretation. When the unaudited voluntary disclosures are included in an auditor-submitted document and located on the face of the financial statements, the footnotes, or in a supplemental schedule to the basic financial statements, the voluntary disclosures should be labelled “unaudited” and the auditor should disclaim an opinion on the unaudited information as discussed in section 551.13.

.09 When the unaudited voluntary disclosures are included in a client-prepared document and are located on the face of the financial statements, the footnotes, or in a supplemental schedule, the voluntary disclosures should be labelled “unaudited.” When such unaudited information is not presented on the face of the financial statements, the footnotes, or in a supplemental schedule, the auditor should consider the guidance in section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*.

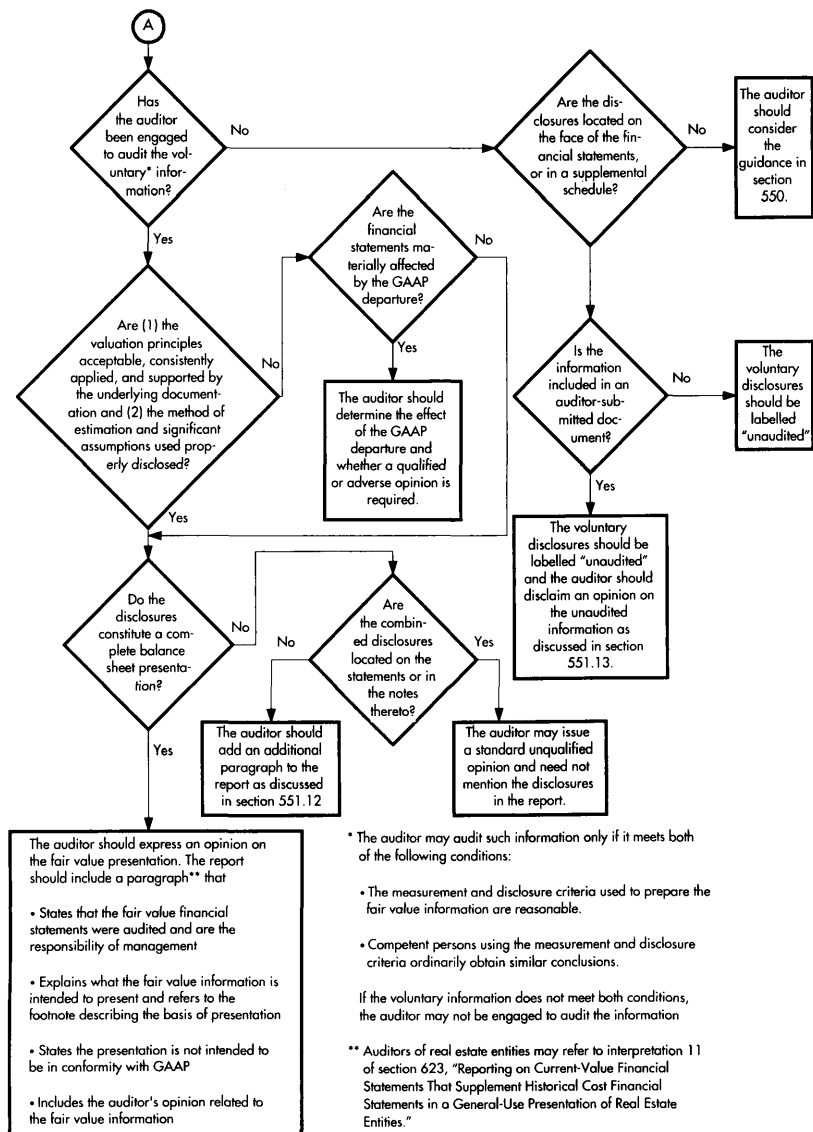
.10 The auditing guidance related to each of these alternatives is presented in the following flowcharts:

AUDITING GUIDANCE FOR FAIR VALUE INFORMATION Required* Information Only



* Required by Statement of Financial Accounting Standards (SFAS) No. 107, *Disclosures about Fair Value of Financial Instruments*.

AUDITING GUIDANCE FOR FAIR VALUE INFORMATION Required and Voluntary Information



[Issue Date: February, 1993; Revised: October, 2000.]

AU Section 350

Audit Sampling

(Supersedes SAS No. 1, sections 320A and 320B)

Source: SAS No. 39; SAS No. 43; SAS No. 45.

See section 9350 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for periods ended on or after June 25, 1983, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 Audit sampling is the application of an audit procedure to less than 100 percent of the items within an account balance or class of transactions for the purpose of evaluating some characteristic of the balance or class.¹ This section provides guidance for planning, performing, and evaluating audit samples.

.02 The auditor often is aware of account balances and transactions that may be more likely to contain misstatements.² He considers this knowledge in planning his procedures, including audit sampling. The auditor usually will have no special knowledge about other account balances and transactions that, in his judgment, will need to be tested to fulfill his audit objectives. Audit sampling is especially useful in these cases.

.03 There are two general approaches to audit sampling: nonstatistical and statistical. Both approaches require that the auditor use professional judgment in planning, performing, and evaluating a sample and in relating the evidential matter produced by the sample to other evidential matter when forming a conclusion about the related account balance or class of transactions. The guidance in this section applies equally to nonstatistical and statistical sampling.

.04 The third standard of field work states, "Sufficient competent evidential matter is to be obtained through inspection, observation, inquiries, and confirmations to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion regarding the financial statements under audit." Either approach to audit sampling, when properly applied, can provide sufficient evidential matter.

.05 The sufficiency of evidential matter is related to the design and size of an audit sample, among other factors. The size of a sample necessary to provide sufficient evidential matter depends on both the objectives and the efficiency of the sample. For a given objective, the efficiency of the sample relates to its design; one sample is more efficient than another if it can achieve the same objectives with a smaller sample size. In general, careful design can produce more efficient samples.

¹ There may be other reasons for an auditor to examine less than 100 percent of the items comprising an account balance or class of transactions. For example, an auditor may examine only a few transactions from an account balance or class of transactions to (a) gain an understanding of the nature of an entity's operations or (b) clarify his understanding of the entity's internal control. In such cases, the guidance in this statement is not applicable.

² For purposes of this section the use of the term misstatement can include both errors and fraud as appropriate for the design of the sampling application. Errors and fraud are discussed in section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*.

.06 Evaluating the competence of evidential matter is solely a matter of auditing judgment and is not determined by the design and evaluation of an audit sample. In a strict sense, the sample evaluation relates only to the likelihood that existing monetary misstatements or deviations from prescribed controls are proportionately included in the sample, not to the auditor's treatment of such items. Thus, the choice of nonstatistical or statistical sampling does not directly affect the auditor's decisions about the auditing procedures to be applied, the competence of the evidential matter obtained with respect to individual items in the sample, or the actions that might be taken in light of the nature and cause of particular misstatements.

Uncertainty and Audit Sampling

.07 Some degree of uncertainty is implicit in the concept of "a reasonable basis for an opinion" referred to in the third standard of field work. The justification for accepting some uncertainty arises from the relationship between such factors as the cost and time required to examine all of the data and the adverse consequences of possible erroneous decisions based on the conclusions resulting from examining only a sample of the data. If these factors do not justify the acceptance of some uncertainty, the only alternative is to examine all of the data. Since this is seldom the case, the basic concept of sampling is well established in auditing practice.

.08 The uncertainty inherent in applying audit procedures is referred to as audit risk. Audit risk consists of (a) the risk (consisting of inherent risk and control risk) that the balance or class and related assertions contain misstatements that could be material to the financial statements when aggregated with misstatements in other balances or classes and (b) the risk (detection risk) that the auditor will not detect such misstatement. The risk of these adverse events occurring jointly can be viewed as a function of the respective individual risks. Using professional judgment, the auditor evaluates numerous factors to assess inherent risk and control risk (assessing control risk at less than the maximum level involves performing tests of controls), and performs substantive tests (analytical procedures and test of details of account balances or classes of transactions) to restrict detection risk.

.09 Audit risk includes both uncertainties due to sampling and uncertainties due to factors other than sampling. These aspects of audit risk are sampling risk and nonsampling risk, respectively. [As amended August, 1983, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 45.] (See section 313.)

.10 Sampling risk arises from the possibility that, when a test of controls or a substantive test is restricted to a sample, the auditor's conclusions may be different from the conclusions he would reach if the test were applied in the same way to all items in the account balance or class of transactions. That is, a particular sample may contain proportionately more or less monetary misstatements or deviations from prescribed controls than exist in the balance or class as a whole. For a sample of a specific design, sampling risk varies inversely with sample size: the smaller the sample size, the greater the sampling risk.

.11 Nonsampling risk includes all the aspects of audit risk that are not due to sampling. An auditor may apply a procedure to all transactions or balances and still fail to detect a material misstatement. Nonsampling risk includes the possibility of selecting audit procedures that are not appropriate to achieve the specific objective. For example, confirming recorded receivables

cannot be relied on to reveal unrecorded receivables. Nonsampling risk also arises because the auditor may fail to recognize misstatements included in documents that he examines, which would make that procedure ineffective even if he were to examine all items. Nonsampling risk can be reduced to a negligible level through such factors as adequate planning and supervision (see section 311, *Planning and Supervision*) and proper conduct of a firm's audit practice (see section 161, *The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards*). [As amended August, 1983, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 45.] (See section 313.)

Sampling Risk

.12 The auditor should apply professional judgment in assessing sampling risk. In performing substantive tests of details the auditor is concerned with two aspects of sampling risk:

- *The risk of incorrect acceptance* is the risk that the sample supports the conclusion that the recorded account balance is not materially misstated when it is materially misstated.
- *The risk of incorrect rejection* is the risk that the sample supports the conclusion that the recorded account balance is materially misstated when it is not materially misstated.

The auditor is also concerned with two aspects of sampling risk in performing tests of controls when sampling is used:

- *The risk of assessing control risk too low* is the risk that the assessed level of control risk based on the sample is less than the true operating effectiveness of the control.
- *The risk of assessing control risk too high* is the risk that the assessed level of control risk based on the sample is greater than the true operating effectiveness of the control.

.13 The risk of incorrect rejection and the risk of assessing control risk too high relate to the efficiency of the audit. For example, if the auditor's evaluation of an audit sample leads him to the initial erroneous conclusion that a balance is materially misstated when it is not, the application of additional audit procedures and consideration of other audit evidence would ordinarily lead the auditor to the correct conclusion. Similarly, if the auditor's evaluation of a sample leads him to unnecessarily assess control risk too high for an assertion, he would ordinarily increase the scope of substantive tests to compensate for the perceived ineffectiveness of the controls. Although the audit may be less efficient in these circumstances, the audit is, nevertheless, effective.

.14 The risk of incorrect acceptance and the risk of assessing control risk too low relate to the effectiveness of an audit in detecting an existing material misstatement. These risks are discussed in the following paragraphs.

Sampling in Substantive Tests of Details

Planning Samples

.15 Planning involves developing a strategy for conducting an audit of financial statements. For general guidance on planning, see section 311, *Planning and Supervision*.

.16 When planning a particular sample for a substantive test of details, the auditor should consider

- The relationship of the sample to the relevant audit objective (see section 326, *Evidential Matter*).
- Preliminary judgments about materiality levels.
- The auditor's allowable risk of incorrect acceptance.
- Characteristics of the population, that is, the items comprising the account balance or class of transactions of interest.

.17 When planning a particular sample, the auditor should consider the specific audit objective to be achieved and should determine that the audit procedure, or combination of procedures, to be applied will achieve that objective. The auditor should determine that the population from which he draws the sample is appropriate for the specific audit objective. For example, an auditor would not be able to detect understatements of an account due to omitted items by sampling the recorded items. An appropriate sampling plan for detecting such understatements would involve selecting from a source in which the omitted items are included. To illustrate, subsequent cash disbursements might be sampled to test recorded accounts payable for understatement because of omitted purchases, or shipping documents might be sampled for understatement of sales due to shipments made but not recorded as sales.

.18 Evaluation in monetary terms of the results of a sample for a substantive test of details contributes directly to the auditor's purpose, since such an evaluation can be related to his judgment of the monetary amount of misstatements that would be material. When planning a sample for a substantive test of details, the auditor should consider how much monetary misstatement in the related account balance or class of transactions may exist without causing the financial statements to be materially misstated. This maximum monetary misstatement for the balance or class is called *tolerable misstatement* for the sample. Tolerable misstatement is a planning concept and is related to the auditor's preliminary judgments about materiality levels in such a way that tolerable misstatement, combined for the entire audit plan, does not exceed those estimates.

.19 The second standard of field work states, "A sufficient understanding of the internal control structure is to be obtained to plan the audit and to determine the nature, timing, and extent of tests to be performed." After assessing and considering the levels of inherent and control risks, the auditor performs substantive tests to restrict detection risk to an acceptable level. As the assessed levels of inherent risk, control risk, and detection risk for other substantive procedures directed toward the same specific audit objective decreases, the auditor's allowable risk of incorrect acceptance for the substantive tests of details increases and, thus, the smaller the required sample size for the substantive tests of details. For example, if inherent and control risks are assessed at the maximum, and no other substantive tests directed toward the same specific audit objectives are performed, the auditor should allow for a low risk of incorrect acceptance for the substantive tests of details.³ Thus, the auditor would select a larger sample size for the tests of details than if he allowed a higher risk of incorrect acceptance.

³ Some auditors prefer to think of risk levels in quantitative terms. For example, in the circumstances described, an auditor might think in terms of a 5 percent risk of incorrect acceptance for the substantive test of details. Risk levels used in sampling applications in other fields are not necessarily relevant in determining appropriate levels for applications in auditing because an audit includes many interrelated tests and sources of evidence.

.20 The Appendix illustrates how the auditor may relate the risk of incorrect acceptance for a particular substantive test of details to his assessments of inherent risk, control risk, and the risk that analytical procedures and other relevant substantive tests would fail to detect material misstatement.

.21 As discussed in section 326, the sufficiency of tests of details for a particular account balance or class of transactions is related to the individual importance of the items examined as well as to the potential for material misstatement. When planning a sample for a substantive test of details, the auditor uses his judgment to determine which items, if any, in an account balance or class of transactions should be individually examined and which items, if any, should be subject to sampling. The auditor should examine those items for which, in his judgment, acceptance of some sampling risk is not justified. For example, these may include items for which potential misstatements could individually equal or exceed the tolerable misstatement. Any items that the auditor has decided to examine 100 percent are not part of the items subject to sampling. Other items that, in the auditor's judgment, need to be tested to fulfill the audit objective but need not be examined 100 percent, would be subject to sampling.

.22 The auditor may be able to reduce the required sample size by separating items subject to sampling into relatively homogeneous groups on the basis of some characteristic related to the specific audit objective. For example, common bases for such groupings are the recorded or book value of the items, the nature of controls related to processing the items, and special considerations associated with certain items. An appropriate number of items is then selected from each group.

.23 To determine the number of items to be selected in a sample for a particular substantive test of details, the auditor should consider the tolerable misstatement, the allowable risk of incorrect acceptance, and the characteristics of the population. An auditor applies professional judgment to relate these factors in determining the appropriate sample size. The Appendix illustrates the effect these factors may have on sample size.

Sample Selection

.24 Sample items should be selected in such a way that the sample can be expected to be representative of the population. Therefore, all items in the population should have an opportunity to be selected. For example, haphazard and random-based selection of items represents two means of obtaining such samples.⁴

Performance and Evaluation

.25 Auditing procedures that are appropriate to the particular audit objective should be applied to each sample item. In some circumstances the auditor may not be able to apply the planned audit procedures to selected sample items because, for example, supporting documentation may be missing. The auditor's treatment of unexamined items will depend on their effect on his evaluation of the sample. If the auditor's evaluation of the sample results would not be altered by considering those unexamined items to be misstated, it is not necessary to examine the items. However, if considering those unexamined

⁴ Random-based selection includes, for example, random sampling, stratified random sampling, sampling with probability proportional to size, and systematic sampling (for example, every hundredth item) with one or more random starts.

items to be misstated would lead to a conclusion that the balance or class contains material misstatement, the auditor should consider alternative procedures that would provide him with sufficient evidence to form a conclusion. The auditor should also consider whether the reasons for his inability to examine the items have implications in relation to his planned assessed level of control risk or his degree of reliance on management representations.

.26 The auditor should project the misstatement results of the sample to the items from which the sample was selected.^{5,6} There are several acceptable ways to project misstatements from a sample. For example, an auditor may have selected a sample of every twentieth item (50 items) from a population containing one thousand items. If he discovered overstatements of \$3,000 in that sample, the auditor could project a \$60,000 overstatement by dividing the amount of misstatement in the sample by the fraction of total items from the population included in the sample. The auditor should add that projection to the misstatements discovered in any items examined 100 percent. This total projected misstatement should be compared with the tolerable misstatement for the account balance or class of transactions, and appropriate consideration should be given to sampling risk. If the total projected misstatement is less than tolerable misstatement for the account balance or class of transactions, the auditor should consider the risk that such a result might be obtained even though the true monetary misstatement for the population exceeds tolerable misstatement. For example, if the tolerable misstatement in an account balance of \$1 million is \$50,000 and the total projected misstatement based on an appropriate sample (see paragraph .23) is \$10,000, he may be reasonably assured that there is an acceptably low sampling risk that the true monetary misstatement for the population exceeds tolerable misstatement. On the other hand, if the total projected misstatement is close to the tolerable misstatement, the auditor may conclude that there is an unacceptably high risk that the actual misstatements in the population exceed the tolerable misstatement. An auditor uses professional judgment in making such evaluations.

.27 In addition to the evaluation of the frequency and amounts of monetary misstatements, consideration should be given to the qualitative aspects of the misstatements. These include (a) the nature and cause of misstatements, such as whether they are differences in principle or in application, are errors or are caused by fraud, or are due to misunderstanding of instructions or to carelessness, and (b) the possible relationship of the misstatements to other phases of the audit. The discovery of fraud ordinarily requires a broader consideration of possible implications than does the discovery of an error.

.28 If the sample results suggest that the auditor's planning assumptions were incorrect, he should take appropriate action. For example, if monetary misstatements are discovered in a substantive test of details in amounts or frequency that is greater than is consistent with the assessed levels of inherent and control risk, the auditor should alter his risk assessments. The auditor should also consider whether to modify the other audit tests that were designed based upon the inherent and control risk assessments. For example, a large number of misstatements discovered in confirmation of receivables may indi-

⁵ If the auditor has separated the items subject to sampling into relatively homogeneous groups (see paragraph .22), he separately projects the misstatement results of each group and sums them.

⁶ See section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, paragraphs .75–.78, for a further discussion of the auditor's consideration of differences between the accounting records and the underlying facts and circumstances. This section provides specific guidance on the auditor's consideration of an audit adjustment that is, or may be, fraud. [Footnote revised, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

cate the need to reconsider the control risk assessment related to the assertions that impacted the design of substantive tests of sales or cash receipts.

.29 The auditor should relate the evaluation of the sample to other relevant audit evidence when forming a conclusion about the related account balance or class of transactions.

.30 Projected misstatement results for all audit sampling applications and all known misstatements from nonsampling applications should be considered in the aggregate along with other relevant audit evidence when the auditor evaluates whether the financial statements taken as a whole may be materially misstated.

Sampling in Tests of Controls

Planning Samples

.31 When planning a particular audit sample for a test of controls, the auditor should consider

- The relationship of the sample to the objective of the test of controls.
- The maximum rate of deviations from prescribed controls that would support his planned assessed level of control risk.
- The auditor's allowable risk of assessing control risk too low.
- Characteristics of the population, that is, the items comprising the account balance or class of transactions of interest.

.32 For many tests of controls, sampling does not apply. Procedures performed to obtain an understanding of internal control sufficient to plan an audit do not involve sampling.⁷ Sampling generally is not applicable to tests of controls that depend primarily on appropriate segregation of duties or that otherwise provide no documentary evidence of performance. In addition, sampling may not apply to tests of certain documented controls. Sampling may not apply to tests directed toward obtaining evidence about the design or operation of the control environment or the accounting system. For example, inquiry or observation of explanation of variances from budgets when the auditor does not desire to estimate the rate of deviation from the prescribed control.

.33 When designing samples for tests of controls the auditor ordinarily should plan to evaluate operating effectiveness in terms of deviations from prescribed controls, as to either the rate of such deviations or the monetary amount of the related transactions.⁸ In this context, pertinent controls are ones that, had they not been included in the design of internal control would have adversely affected the auditor's planned assessed level of control risk. The auditor's overall assessment of control risk for a particular assertion involves combining judgments about the prescribed controls, the deviations from prescribed controls, and the degree of assurance provided by the sample and other tests of controls.

⁷ The auditor often plans to perform tests of controls concurrently with obtaining an understanding of internal control (see section 319.85) for the purpose of estimating the rate of deviation from the prescribed controls, as to either the rate of such deviations or monetary amount of the related transactions. Sampling, as defined in this section, applies to such tests of controls. [Footnote revised, May 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

⁸ For simplicity the remainder of this section will refer to only the rate of deviations.

.34 The auditor should determine the maximum rate of deviations from the prescribed control that he would be willing to accept without altering his planned assessed level of control risk. This is the *tolerable rate*. In determining the tolerable rate, the auditor should consider (a) the planned assessed level of control risk, and (b) the degree of assurance desired by the evidential matter in the sample. For example, if the auditor plans to assess control risk at a low level, and he desires a high degree of assurance from the evidential matter provided by the sample for tests of controls (i.e., not perform other tests of controls for the assertion), he might decide that a tolerable rate of 5 percent or possibly less would be reasonable. If the auditor either plans to assess control risk at a higher level, or he desires assurance from other tests of controls along with that provided by the sample (such as inquiries of appropriate entity personnel or observation of the application of the policy or procedure), the auditor might decide that a tolerable rate of 10 percent or more is reasonable.

.35 In assessing the tolerable rate of deviations, the auditor should consider that, while deviations from pertinent controls increase the risk of material misstatements in the accounting records, such deviations do not necessarily result in misstatements. For example, a recorded disbursement that does not show evidence of required approval may nevertheless be a transaction that is properly authorized and recorded. Deviations would result in misstatements in the accounting records only if the deviations and the misstatements occurred on the same transactions. Deviations from pertinent controls at a given rate ordinarily would be expected to result in misstatements at a lower rate.

.36 In some situations, the risk of material misstatement for an assertion may be related to a combination of controls. If a combination of two or more controls is necessary to affect the risk of material misstatement for an assertion, those controls should be regarded as a single procedure, and deviations from any controls in combination should be evaluated on that basis.

.37 Samples taken to test the operating effectiveness of controls are intended to provide a basis for the auditor to conclude whether the controls are being applied as prescribed. When the degree of assurance desired by the evidential matter in the sample is high, the auditor should allow for a low level of sampling risk (that is, the risk of assessing control risk too low).⁹

.38 To determine the number of items to be selected for a particular sample for a test of controls, the auditor should consider the tolerable rate of deviation from the controls being tested, the likely rate of deviations, and the allowable risk of assessing control risk too low. An auditor applies professional judgment to relate these factors in determining the appropriate sample size.

Sample Selection

.39 Sample items should be selected in such a way that the sample can be expected to be representative of the population. Therefore, all items in the population should have an opportunity to be selected. Random-based selection of items represents one means of obtaining such samples. Ideally, the auditor should use a selection method that has the potential for selecting items from the entire period under audit. Section 319.99 provides guidance applicable to the auditor's use of sampling during interim and remaining periods. [Revised,

⁹ The auditor who prefers to think of risk levels in quantitative terms might consider, for example, a 5 percent to 10 percent risk of assessing control risk too low.

May 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

Performance and Evaluation

.40 Auditing procedures that are appropriate to achieve the objective of the test of controls should be applied to each sample item. If the auditor is not able to apply the planned audit procedures or appropriate alternative procedures to selected items, he should consider the reasons for this limitation, and he should ordinarily consider those selected items to be deviations from the prescribed policy or procedure for the purpose of evaluating the sample.

.41 The deviation rate in the sample is the auditor's best estimate of the deviation rate in the population from which it was selected. If the estimated deviation rate is less than the tolerable rate for the population, the auditor should consider the risk that such a result might be obtained even though the true deviation rate for the population exceeds the tolerable rate for the population. For example, if the tolerable rate for a population is 5 percent and no deviations are found in a sample of 60 items, the auditor may conclude that there is an acceptably low sampling risk that the true deviation rate in the population exceeds the tolerable rate of 5 percent. On the other hand, if the sample includes, for example, two or more deviations, the auditor may conclude that there is an unacceptably high sampling risk that the rate of deviations in the population exceeds the tolerable rate of 5 percent. An auditor applies professional judgment in making such an evaluation.

.42 In addition to the evaluation of the frequency of deviations from pertinent procedures, consideration should be given to the qualitative aspects of the deviations. These include (a) the nature and cause of the deviations, such as whether they are errors or irregularities or are due to misunderstanding of instructions or to carelessness, and (b) the possible relationship of the deviations to other phases of the audit. The discovery of an irregularity ordinarily requires a broader consideration of possible implications than does the discovery of an error.

.43 If the auditor concludes that the sample results do not support the planned assessed level of control risk for an assertion, he should re-evaluate the nature, timing, and extent of substantive procedures based on a revised consideration of the assessed level of control risk for the relevant financial statement assertions.

Dual-Purpose Samples

.44 In some circumstances the auditor may design a sample that will be used for dual purposes: assessing control risk and testing whether the recorded monetary amount of transactions is correct. In general, an auditor planning to use a dual-purpose sample would have made a preliminary assessment that there is an acceptably low risk that the rate of deviations from the prescribed control in the population exceeds the tolerable rate. For example, an auditor designing a test of a control procedure over entries in the voucher register may plan a related substantive test at a risk level that anticipates an assessment level of control risk below the maximum. The size of a sample designed for dual purposes should be the larger of the samples that would otherwise have been designed for the two separate purposes. In evaluating such tests, deviations from pertinent procedures and monetary misstatements should be evaluated separately using the risk levels applicable for the respective purposes.

Selecting a Sampling Approach

.45 As discussed in paragraph .04, either a nonstatistical or statistical approach to audit sampling, when properly applied, can provide sufficient evidential matter.

.46 Statistical sampling helps the auditor (*a*) to design an efficient sample, (*b*) to measure the sufficiency of the evidential matter obtained, and (*c*) to evaluate the sample results. By using statistical theory, the auditor can quantify sampling risk to assist himself in limiting it to a level he considers acceptable. However, statistical sampling involves additional costs of training auditors, designing individual samples to meet the statistical requirements, and selecting the items to be examined. Because either nonstatistical or statistical sampling can provide sufficient evidential matter, the auditor chooses between them after considering their relative cost and effectiveness in the circumstances.

Effective Date

.47 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ended on or after June 25, 1983. Earlier application is encouraged. [As amended, effective retroactively to June 25, 1982, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43.]

Appendix

Relating the Risk of Incorrect Acceptance for a Substantive Test of Details to Other Sources of Audit Assurance

1. Audit risk, with respect to a particular account balance or class of transactions, is the risk that there is a monetary misstatement greater than tolerable misstatement affecting an assertion in an account balance or class of transactions that the auditor fails to detect. The auditor uses professional judgment in determining the allowable risk for a particular audit after he consider such factors as the risk of material misstatement in the financial statements, the cost to reduce the risk, and the effect of the potential misstatements on the use and understanding of the financial statements.

2. An auditor assesses inherent and control risk, and plans and performs substantive tests (analytical procedures and substantive tests of details) in whatever combination to reduce audit risk to an appropriate level. However, the second standard of field work contemplates that ordinarily the assessed level of control risk cannot be sufficiently low to eliminate the need to perform any substantive tests to restrict detection risk for all of the assertions relevant to significant account balances or transactions classes.

3. The sufficiency of audit sample sizes, whether nonstatistical or statistical, is influenced by several factors. Table 1 illustrates how several of these factors may affect sample sizes for a substantive test of details. Factors a, b and c in table 1 should be considered together (see paragraph .08). For example, high inherent risk, the lack of effective controls, and the absence of other substantive tests related to the same audit objective ordinarily require larger sample sizes for related substantive tests of details than if there were other sources to provide the basis for assessing inherent or control risks below the maximum, or if other substantive tests related to the same objective were performed. Alternatively, low inherent risk, effective controls, or effective analytical procedures and other relevant substantive tests may lead the auditor to conclude that the sample, if any, needed for an additional test of details can be small.

4. The following model expresses the general relationship of the risks associated with the auditor's assessment of inherent and control risks, and the effectiveness of analytical procedures (including other relevant substantive tests) and substantive tests of details. The model is not intended to be a mathematical formula including all factors that may influence the determination of individual risk components; however, some auditors find such a model to be useful when planning appropriate risk levels for audit procedures to achieve the auditor's desired audit risk.

$$AR = IR \times CR \times AP \times TD$$

An auditor might use this model to obtain an understanding of an appropriate risk of incorrect acceptance for a substantive test of details as follows:

$$TD = AR / (IR \times CR \times AP)$$

AR = The allowable audit risk that monetary misstatements equal to tolerable misstatement might remain undetected for the account balance or class of transactions and related assertions after the auditor

has completed all audit procedures deemed necessary.¹ The auditor uses his professional judgment to determine the allowable audit risk after considering factors such as those discussed in paragraph 1 of this appendix.

- IR = Inherent risk is the susceptibility of an assertion to a material misstatement assuming there are no related internal control structure policies or procedures.
- CR = Control risk is the risk that a material misstatement that could occur in an assertion will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis by the entity's controls. The auditor may assess control risk at the maximum, or assess control risk below the maximum based on the sufficiency of evidential matter obtained to support the effectiveness of controls. The quantification for this model relates to the auditor's evaluation of the overall effectiveness of those controls that would prevent or detect material misstatements equal to tolerable misstatement in the related account balance or class of transactions. For example, if the auditor believes that pertinent controls would prevent or detect misstatements equal to tolerable misstatement about half the time, he would assess this risk as 50 percent. (CR is not the same as the risk of assessing control risk too low.)
- AP = The auditor's assessment of the risk that analytical procedures and other relevant substantive tests would fail to detect misstatements that could occur in an assertion equal to tolerable misstatement, given that such misstatements occur and are not detected by the internal control structure.
- TD = The allowable risk of incorrect acceptance for the substantive test of details, given that misstatements equal to tolerable misstatement occur in an assertion and are not detected by internal control or analytical procedures and other relevant substantive tests.

5. The auditor planning a statistical sample can use the relationship in paragraph 4 of this Appendix to assist in planning his allowable risk of incorrect acceptance for a specific substantive test of details. To do so, he selects an acceptable audit risk (AR), and substantively quantifies his judgment of risks IR, CR and AP. Some levels of these risks are implicit in evaluating audit evidence and reaching conclusions. Auditors using the relationship prefer to evaluate these judgment risks explicitly.

6. The relationships between these independent risks are illustrated in table 2. In table 2 it is assumed, for illustrative purposes, that the auditor has chosen an audit risk of 5 percent for an assertion where inherent risk has been assessed at the maximum. Table 2 incorporates the premise that no internal control can be expected to be completely effective in detecting aggregate misstatements equal to tolerable misstatement that might occur. The table also illustrates the fact that the risk level for substantive tests for particular assertions is not an isolated decision. Rather, it is a direct consequence of the auditor's assessments of inherent and control risks, and judgments about the effectiveness of analytical procedures and other relevant substantive tests, and it cannot be properly considered out of this context. [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ended after September 30, 1983, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 45.] (See section 313.)

¹ For purposes of this Appendix, the nonsampling risk aspect of audit risk is assumed to be negligible, based on the level of quality controls in effect. [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ended after September 30, 1983, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 45.] (See section 313.)

Table 1

**Factors Influencing Sample Sizes for a
Substantive Test of Details in Sample Planning**

<i>Factor</i>	<i>Conditions leading to</i>		<i>Related factor for substantive sample planning</i>
	<i>Smaller sample size</i>	<i>Larger sample size</i>	
<i>a. Assessment of inherent risk.</i>	Low assessed level of inherent risk.	High assessed level of inherent risk.	Allowable risk of incorrect acceptance.
<i>b. Assessment of control risk.</i>	Low assessed level of control risk.	High assessed level of control risk.	Allowable risk of incorrect acceptance.
<i>c. Assessment of risk for other substantive tests related to the same assertion (including analytical procedures and other relevant substantive tests).</i>	Low assessment of risk associated with other relevant substantive tests.	High assessment of risk associated with other relevant substantive tests.	Allowable risk of incorrect acceptance.
<i>d. Measure of tolerable misstatement for a specific account.</i>	Larger measure of tolerable misstatement.	Smaller measure of tolerable misstatement.	Tolerable misstatement.
<i>e. Expected size and frequency of misstatements.</i>	Smaller misstatements or lower frequency.	Larger misstatements or higher frequency.	Assessment of population characteristics.
<i>f. Number of items in the population.</i>	Virtually no effect on sample size unless population is very small.		

Table 2

Allowable Risk of Incorrect Acceptance (TD)
for Various Assessments of CR and AP; for AR = .05 and IR = 1.0

Auditor's subjective assessment control risk.		Auditor's subjective assess- ment of risk that analytical procedures and other relevant substantive tests might fail to detect aggregate misstate- ments equal to tolerable misstatement.			
CR		AP			
		10%	30%	50%	100%
		TD			
10%		*	*	*	50%
30%		*	55%	33%	16%
50%		*	33%	20%	10%
100%		50%	16%	10%	5%

* The allowable level of AR of 5 percent exceeds the product of IR, CR, and AP, and thus, the planned substantive test of details may not be necessary.

Note: The table entries for TD are computed from the illustrated model: TD equals $AR / (IR \times CR \times AP)$. For example, for $IR = 1.0$, $CR = .50$, $AP = .30$, $TD = .05 / (1.0 \times .50 \times .30)$ or .33 (equals 33%).

AU Section 9350***Audit Sampling: Auditing Interpretations of Section 350*****1. Applicability**

.01 Question—Section 350, *Audit Sampling*, paragraph .01, footnote 1, states that there may be reasons other than sampling for an auditor to examine less than 100 percent of the items comprising an account balance or class of transactions. For what reasons might an auditor's examination of less than 100 percent of the items comprising an account balance or class of transactions *not* be considered audit sampling?

.02 Interpretation—The auditor's examination of less than 100 percent of the items comprising an account balance or class of transactions would not be considered to be an audit sampling application under the following circumstances.

- a. *It is not the auditor's intent to extend the conclusion that he reaches by examining the items to the remainder of the items in the account balance or class.* Audit sampling is defined as the application of an audit procedure to less than 100 percent of the items within an account balance or class of transactions for the purpose of evaluating some characteristic of the balance or class. Thus, if the purpose of the auditor's application of an auditing procedure to less than 100 percent of the items in an account balance or class of transactions is something other than evaluating a trait of the entire balance or class, he is not using audit sampling.

For example, an auditor might trace several transactions through an entity's accounting system to gain an understanding of the nature of the entity's operations or clarify his understanding of the design of the entity's internal control. In such cases the auditor's intent is to gain a general understanding of the accounting system or other relevant parts of the internal control, rather than the evaluation of a characteristic of all transactions processed. As a result, the auditor is not using audit sampling.

Occasionally auditors perform procedures such as checking arithmetical calculations or tracing journal entries into ledger accounts on a test basis. When such procedures are applied to less than 100 percent of the arithmetical calculations or ledger postings that affect the financial statements, audit sampling may not be involved if the procedure is not a test to evaluate a characteristic of an account balance or class of transactions, but is intended only to provide limited knowledge that supplements the auditor's other evidential matter regarding a financial statement assertion.

- b. *Although he might not be examining all the items in an account balance or class of transactions, the auditor might be examining 100 percent of the items in a given population.* A "population" for audit sampling purposes does not necessarily need to be an entire account balance or class of transactions. For example, in some circumstances,

an auditor might examine all of the items that comprise an account balance or class of transactions that exceed a given amount or that have an unusual characteristic and either apply other auditing procedures (e.g., analytical procedures) to those items that do not exceed the given amount or possess the unusual characteristic or apply no auditing procedures to them because of their insignificance. Again, the auditor is not using audit sampling. Rather, he has broken the account balance or class of transactions into two groups. One group is tested 100 percent, the other group is either tested by analytical procedures or considered insignificant. The auditor would be using audit sampling only if he applied an auditing procedure to less than all of the items in the second group to form a conclusion about that group. For the same reason, cutoff tests often do not involve audit sampling applications. In performing cutoff tests auditors often examine all significant transactions for a period surrounding the cutoff date and, as a result, such tests do not involve the application of audit sampling.

- c. *The auditor is testing controls that are not documented.* Auditors choose from a variety of methods including inquiry, observation, and examination of documentary evidence in testing controls. For example, observation of a client's physical inventory count procedures is a test that is performed primarily through the auditor's observation of controls over such things as inventory movement, counting procedures and other procedures used by the client to control the count of the inventory. The procedures that the auditor uses to observe the client's physical inventory count generally do not require use of audit sampling. However, audit sampling may be used in certain tests of controls or substantive tests of details of inventory, for example, in tracing selected test counts into inventory records.
- d. *The auditor is not performing a substantive test of details.* Substantive tests consist of tests of details of transactions and balances, analytical review and or from a combination of both. In performing substantive tests, audit sampling is generally used only in testing details of transactions and balances.

[Issue Date: January, 1985.]

AU Section 380

Communication With Audit Committees

Source: SAS No. 61; SAS No. 89; SAS No. 90.

See section 9380 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 This section establishes a requirement for the auditor to determine that certain matters related to the conduct of an audit are communicated to those who have responsibility for oversight of the financial reporting process.¹ For purposes of this document, the recipient of the communications is referred to as the *audit committee*. The communications required by this section are applicable to (1) entities that either have an audit committee or that have otherwise formally designated oversight of the financial reporting process to a group equivalent to an audit committee (such as a finance committee or budget committee) and (2) all Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) engagements.²

.02 This section requires the auditor to ensure that the audit committee receives additional information regarding the scope and results of the audit that may assist the audit committee in overseeing the financial reporting and

¹ Communication with the audit committee by the independent auditor on certain specified matters when they arise in the conduct of an audit is required by other standards, including—

- Section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*.
- Section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.
- Section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*.
- Section 801, *Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance*.

In addition, section 722, *Interim Financial Information*, requires that certain information be communicated to audit committees as a result of performing a review of interim financial information. [Footnote revised, November 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 100.]

² For purposes of this section, an SEC engagement is defined as one that involves the audit of the financial statements of—

1. An issuer making an initial filing, including amendments, under the Securities Act of 1933 and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.
2. A registrant that files periodic reports with the SEC under the Investment Company Act of 1940 or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (except a broker or dealer registered only because of section 15(a) of the 1934 Act).
3. A bank or other lending institution that files periodic reports with the Comptroller of the Currency, the Federal Reserve System, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or the Federal Home Loan Bank Board because the powers, functions, and duties of the SEC to enforce its periodic reporting provisions are vested, pursuant to section 12(i) of the 1934 Act, in those agencies. (Section 12(g) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 provides an exemption from periodic reporting to the SEC to [1] entities with less than \$5 million in total assets on the last day of each of the entity's three most recent fiscal years and fewer than 500 shareholders and [2] entities with fewer than 300 shareholders. Accordingly, such entities are not encompassed within the scope of this definition.)
4. A company whose financial statements appear in the annual report or proxy statement of any investment fund because it is a sponsor or manager of such a fund, but which is not itself a registrant required to file periodic reports under the 1940 Act or section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

disclosure process for which management is responsible. This section does not require communications with management; however, it does not *preclude* communications with management or other individuals within the entity who may, in the auditor's judgment, benefit from the communications.

.03 The communications may be oral or written. If information is communicated orally, the auditor should document the communication by appropriate memoranda or notations in the working papers.³ When the auditor communicates in writing, the report should indicate that it is intended solely for the information and use of the audit committee or the board of directors and, if appropriate, management, and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

.04 The communications specified by this section are incidental to the audit. Accordingly, they are not required to occur before the issuance of the auditor's report on the entity's financial statements so long as the communications occur on a timely basis. There may be occasions, however, when discussion of certain of the matters (specified by paragraphs .06 through .14 below) with the audit committee prior to the issuance of the report may, in the auditor's judgment, be desirable.

.05 It may be appropriate for management to communicate to the audit committee certain of the matters specified in this section. In such circumstances, the auditor should be satisfied that such communications have, in fact, occurred. Generally, it is not necessary to repeat the communication of recurring matters each year. Periodically, however, the auditor should consider whether, because of changes in the audit committee or simply because of the passage of time, it is appropriate and timely to report such matters. Finally, this section is not intended to restrict the communication of other matters.

Matters to Be Communicated

The Auditor's Responsibility Under Generally Accepted Auditing Standards

.06 An audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards may address many matters of interest to an audit committee. For example, an audit committee is usually interested in internal control and in whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. In order for the audit committee to understand the nature of the assurance provided by an audit, the auditor should communicate the level of responsibility assumed for these matters under generally accepted auditing standards. It is also important for the audit committee to understand that an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards is designed to obtain reasonable, rather than absolute, assurance about the financial statements.

Significant Accounting Policies

.07 The auditor should determine that the audit committee is informed about the initial selection of and changes in significant accounting policies or

³ The auditor may wish to review the minutes, if any, prepared by the audit committee for consistency with the auditor's understanding of the communications. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2000, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90.]

their application. The auditor should also determine that the audit committee is informed about the methods used to account for significant unusual transactions and the effect of significant accounting policies in controversial or emerging areas for which there is a lack of authoritative guidance or consensus. For example, significant accounting issues may exist in areas such as revenue recognition, off-balance-sheet financing, and accounting for equity investments.

Management Judgments and Accounting Estimates

.08 Accounting estimates are an integral part of the financial statements prepared by management and are based upon management's current judgments. Those judgments are normally based on knowledge and experience about past and current events and assumptions about future events. Certain accounting estimates are particularly sensitive because of their significance to the financial statements and because of the possibility that future events affecting them may differ markedly from management's current judgments. The auditor should determine that the audit committee is informed about the process used by management in formulating particularly sensitive accounting estimates and about the basis for the auditor's conclusions regarding the reasonableness of those estimates.

Audit Adjustments

.09 The auditor should inform the audit committee about adjustments arising from the audit that could, in his judgment, either individually or in the aggregate, have a significant effect on the entity's financial reporting process. For purposes of this section, an audit adjustment, whether or not recorded by the entity, is a proposed correction of the financial statements that, in the auditor's judgment, may not have been detected except through the auditing procedures performed. Matters underlying adjustments proposed by the auditor but not recorded by the entity could potentially cause future financial statements to be materially misstated, even though the auditor has concluded that the adjustments are not material to the current financial statements. [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89.]

.10 The auditor also should inform the audit committee⁴ about uncorrected misstatements aggregated by the auditor during the current engagement and pertaining to the latest period presented that were determined by management to be immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the financial statements taken as a whole.⁵ [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89.]

⁴ The presentation to the audit committee should be similar to the summary of uncorrected misstatements included in or attached to the management representation letter. See footnote 6 of section 333, *Management Representations*. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89.]

⁵ The communication to management and the audit committee of immaterial misstatements aggregated by the auditor does not constitute a communication pursuant to section 317.17, Section 10A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or section 316.79–82. The auditor may have additional communication responsibilities pursuant to section 317, Section 10A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or section 316. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89. Footnote revised, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

Auditor's Judgments About the Quality of the Entity's Accounting Principles

.11 In connection with each SEC engagement (see paragraph .01), the auditor should discuss with the audit committee the auditor's judgments about the quality, not just the acceptability, of the entity's accounting principles as applied in its financial reporting. Since the primary responsibility for establishing an entity's accounting principles rests with management, the discussion generally would include management as an active participant. The discussion should be open and frank and generally should include such matters as the consistency of the entity's accounting policies and their application, and the clarity and completeness of the entity's financial statements, which include related disclosures. The discussion should also include items that have a significant impact on the representational faithfulness, verifiability, and neutrality of the accounting information included in the financial statements.⁶ Examples of items that may have such an impact are the following:

- Selection of new or changes to accounting policies
- Estimates, judgments, and uncertainties
- Unusual transactions
- Accounting policies relating to significant financial statement items, including the timing of transactions and the period in which they are recorded

Objective criteria have not been developed to aid in the consistent evaluation of the quality of an entity's accounting principles as applied in its financial statements. The discussion should be tailored to the entity's specific circumstances, including accounting applications and practices not explicitly addressed in the accounting literature, for example, those that may be unique to an industry. [Paragraph added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2000, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90.]

Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements

.12 The audit committee often considers information prepared by management that accompanies the entity's financial statements. An example of information of this nature would be the "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" that certain entities that file reports with the SEC are required to present in annual reports to shareholders. Section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, establishes the auditor's responsibility for such information.⁷ The auditor should discuss with the audit committee his responsibility

⁶ These characteristics of accounting information are discussed in the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 2, *Qualitative Characteristics of Accounting Information*. FASB Concepts Statement No. 2 notes that consistently understating results or overly optimistic estimates of realization are inconsistent with these characteristics. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2000, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90.]

⁷ Guidance on the auditor's consideration of other information is also provided by section 558, *Required Supplementary Information*; section 551, *Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents*; and section 711, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90, December 1999.]

for other information in documents containing audited financial statements, any procedures performed, and the results. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90, December 1999.]

Disagreements With Management

.13 Disagreements with management may occasionally arise over the application of accounting principles to the entity's specific transactions and events and the basis for management's judgments about accounting estimates. Disagreements may also arise regarding the scope of the audit, disclosures to be included in the entity's financial statements, and the wording of the auditor's report. The auditor should discuss with the audit committee any disagreements with management,⁸ whether or not satisfactorily resolved, about matters that individually or in the aggregate could be significant to the entity's financial statements or the auditor's report. For purposes of this section, disagreements do not include differences of opinion based on incomplete facts or preliminary information that are later resolved. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90, December 1999.]

Consultation With Other Accountants

.14 In some cases, management may decide to consult with other accountants about auditing and accounting matters. When the auditor is aware that such consultation has occurred, he should discuss with the audit committee his views about significant matters that were the subject of such consultation.⁹ [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90, December 1999.]

Major Issues Discussed With Management Prior to Retention

.15 The auditor should discuss with the audit committee any major issues that were discussed with management in connection with the initial or recurring retention of the auditor including, among other matters, any discussions regarding the application of accounting principles and auditing standards. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90, December 1999.]

⁸ The glossary to Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. 57, *Related Party Disclosures* [AC section R36], defines management as follows:

Persons who are responsible for achieving the objectives of the enterprise and who have the authority to establish policies and make decisions by which those objectives are to be pursued. Management normally includes members of the board of directors, the chief executive officer, chief operating officer, vice presidents in charge of principal business functions (such as sales, administration, or finance), and other persons who perform similar policy-making functions. Persons without formal titles also may be members of management.

[Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90, December 1999.]

⁹ Circumstances in which the auditor should be informed of such consultations are described in section 625, *Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles*, paragraph .07. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90, December 1999.]

Difficulties Encountered in Performing the Audit

.16 The auditor should inform the audit committee of any serious difficulties he encountered in dealing with management related to the performance of the audit. This may include, among other things, unreasonable delays by management in permitting the commencement of the audit or in providing needed information, and whether the timetable set by management was unreasonable under the circumstances. Other matters that the auditor may encounter include the unavailability of client personnel and the failure of client personnel to complete client-prepared schedules on a timely basis. If the auditor considers these matters significant, he should inform the audit committee. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89, December 1999. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90, December 1999.]

Effective Date

.17 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989. Early application of the provisions of this section is permissible.

AU Section 9380

Communication With Audit Committees: Auditing Interpretations of Section 380

1. Applicability of Section 380

.01 Question—Section 380, *Communication With Audit Committees*, requires the auditor to determine that certain matters related to the conduct of an audit are communicated to those who have responsibility for oversight of the financial reporting process. Paragraph .01 indicates that the section is applicable to “(1) entities that either have an audit committee or that have otherwise formally designated oversight of the financial reporting process to a group equivalent to an audit committee (such as a finance committee or budget committee) and (2) all Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) engagements.”¹

.02 When a non-SEC client has no designated group equivalent to an audit committee with formal responsibility for the financial reporting process, does the auditor have a responsibility to communicate section 380 matters to the governing or oversight body or person(s)?

.03 Interpretation—No. If a governing or oversight body, such as a board of directors or a board of trustees, has not established an audit committee or formally designated a group with equivalent responsibility for the financial reporting process, the auditor is not required to make the communications. Similarly, the auditor has no responsibility to communicate section 380 matters if the client has no governing or oversight body (for example, a small owner-managed entity). However, the auditor is not precluded from communicating any or all matters described in section 380 in such cases.

[Issue Date: August, 1993.]

¹ See section 380.01, footnote 2.

AU Section 390***Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Date***

Source: SAS No. 46.

Effective, unless otherwise indicated: October 31, 1983.

.01 This section provides guidance on the considerations and procedures to be applied by an auditor who, subsequent to the date of his report on audited financial statements, concludes that one or more auditing procedures considered necessary at the time of the audit in the circumstances then existing were omitted from his audit of the financial statements, but there is no indication that those financial statements are not fairly presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or with another comprehensive basis of accounting.¹ This circumstance should be distinguished from that described in section 561, which applies if an auditor, subsequent to the date of his report on audited financial statements, becomes aware that facts regarding those financial statements may have existed at that date that might have affected his report had he then been aware of them.

.02 Once he has reported on audited financial statements, an auditor has no responsibility to carry out any retrospective review of his work. However, reports and working papers relating to particular engagements may be subjected to postissuance review in connection with a firm's internal inspection program,² peer review, or otherwise, and the omission of a necessary auditing procedure may be disclosed.

.03 A variety of conditions might be encountered in which an auditing procedure considered necessary at the time of the audit in the circumstances then existing has been omitted; therefore, the considerations and procedures described herein necessarily are set forth only in general terms. The period of time during which the auditor considers whether this section applies to the circumstances of a particular engagement and then takes the actions, if any, that are required hereunder may be important. Because of legal implications that may be involved in taking the actions contemplated herein, the auditor would be well advised to consult with his attorney when he encounters the circumstances to which this section may apply, and, with the attorney's advice and assistance, determine an appropriate course of action.

.04 When the auditor concludes that an auditing procedure considered necessary at the time of the audit in the circumstances then existing was omitted from his audit of financial statements, he should assess the importance of the omitted procedure to his present ability to support his previously ex-

¹ The provisions of this section are not intended to apply to an engagement in which an auditor's work is at issue in a threatened or pending legal proceeding or regulatory investigation. (*A threatened legal proceeding* means that a potential claimant has manifested to the auditor an awareness of, and present intention to assert, a possible claim.)

² See section 161, *The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards*, paragraph .02, and related quality control standards regarding the quality control function of inspection.

pressed opinion regarding those financial statements taken as a whole. A review of his working papers, discussion of the circumstances with engagement personnel and others, and a re-evaluation of the overall scope of his audit may be helpful in making this assessment. For example, the results of other procedures that were applied may tend to compensate for the one omitted or make its omission less important. Also, subsequent audits may provide audit evidence in support of the previously expressed opinion.

.05 If the auditor concludes that the omission of a procedure considered necessary at the time of the audit in the circumstances then existing impairs his present ability to support his previously expressed opinion regarding the financial statements taken as a whole, and he believes there are persons currently relying, or likely to rely, on his report, he should promptly undertake to apply the omitted procedure or alternative procedures that would provide a satisfactory basis for his opinion.

.06 When as a result of the subsequent application of the omitted procedure or alternative procedures, the auditor becomes aware that facts regarding the financial statements existed at the date of his report that would have affected that report had he been aware of them, he should be guided by the provisions of section 561.05—.09.

.07 If in the circumstances described in paragraph .05, the auditor is unable to apply the previously omitted procedure or alternative procedures, he should consult his attorney to determine an appropriate course of action concerning his responsibilities to his client, regulatory authorities, if any, having jurisdiction over the client, and persons relying, or likely to rely, on his report.

Effective Date

.08 This section is effective as of October 31, 1983.

AU Section 400**THE FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD STANDARDS
OF REPORTING****TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
410	Adherence to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles	.01-.02
9410	Adherence to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles: Auditing Interpretations of Section 410	
	[1.] Accounting Principles Recommended by Trade Associations (11/74) [Withdrawn August, 1982]	[.01-.03]
	[2.] The Impact of FASB Statement No. 2 on Auditor's Report Issued Prior to the Statement's Effective Date (1/75) [Superseded October, 1979]	[.04-.12]
	3. The Impact on an Auditor's Report on an FASB Statement Prior to the Statement's Effective Date (10/79) . . .	.13-.18
411	The Meaning of <i>Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i>	.01-.18
	Application to Nongovernmental Entities . . . . .	.10-.11
	Application to State and Local Governmental Entities . . . . .	.12-.13
	Application to Federal Governmental Entities . . . . .	.14-.15
	Effective Date . . . . .	.16
	Transition . . . . .	.17
	GAAP Hierarchy Summary . . . . .	.18
9411	The Meaning of <i>Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i> : Auditing Interpretations of Section 411	
	[1.] The Auditor's Consideration of Accounting Principles Set Forth in Industry Audit and Accounting Guides (9/80) [Deleted September, 1984]	[.01-.04]
	[2.] The Auditor's Consideration of Accounting Principles Promulgated by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (12/84) [Withdrawn April, 1988]	[.05-.10]
	3. The Auditor's Consideration of Management's Adoption of Accounting Principles for New Transactions or Events (3/95) . . .	.11-.15
420	Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles	.01-.25
	Accounting Changes Affecting Consistency . . . . .	.06-.14
	Change in Accounting Principle . . . . .	.06

Section		Paragraph
420	Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles—continued	
	Change in the Reporting Entity . . . . .	.07-.09
	Correction of an Error in Principle. . . . .	.12
	Change in Principle Inseparable From Change in Estimate. . . . .	.13
	Changes in Presentation of Cash Flows . . . . .	.14
	Changes Not Affecting Consistency . . . . .	.15-.21
	Change in Accounting Estimate. . . . .	.15
	Error Correction Not Involving Principle . . . . .	.16
	Changes in Classification and Reclassifications . . . . .	.17
	Substantially Different Transactions or Events . . . . .	.19
	Changes Expected to Have a Material Future Effect. . . . .	.20
	Disclosure of Changes Not Affecting Consistency . . . . .	.21
	Periods to Which the Consistency Standard Relates . . . . .	.22
	First Year Audits . . . . .	.24-.25
9420	Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles: Auditing Interpretations of Section 420	
	[1.] The Effect of APB Opinion No. 30 on Consistency (1/74) [Superseded October, 1979]	[.01-.10]
	2. The Effect of APB Opinion No. 28 on Consistency (2/74) . . . . .	.11-.15
	3. Impact on the Auditor's Report of FIFO to LIFO Change in Comparative Financial Statements (1/75). . . . .	.16-.23
	[4.] The Effect of FASB Statement No. 13 on Consistency (1/78) [Withdrawn March, 1989]	[.24-.27]
	[5.] The Effects of Changes in Accounting Principles and Classification on Consistency (10/79) [Withdrawn December, 1992].	[.28-.31]
	[6.] The Effect of FASB Statement No. 34 on Consistency (2/80) [Withdrawn March, 1989]	[.32-.43]
	[7.] The Effect of FASB Statement No. 31 on Consistency (3/80) [Withdrawn March, 1989]	[.44-.51]
	8. The Effect of Accounting Changes by an Investee on Consistency (7/80). . . . .	.52-.57
	[9.] The Effect of Adoption of FASB Statement No. 35 on Consistency (12/80) [Withdrawn March, 1989].	[.58-.63]

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
9420	Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles: Auditing Interpretations of Section 420—continued	
	10. Change in Presentation of Accumulated Benefit Information in the Financial Statements of a Defined Benefit Pension Plan (12/80) .....	.64-.65
	[11.] The Effect of the Adoption of FASB Statement No. 36 on Consistency (12/80) [Withdrawn March, 1989]	[.66-.68]
	12. The Effect on the Auditor's Report of an Entity's Adoption of a New Accounting Standard That Does Not Require the Entity to Disclose the Effect of the Change in the Year of Adoption (4/02) .....	.69-.72
431	Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements	.01-.04
435	Segment Information	
9435	Segment Information: Auditing Interpretations of Section 435	
	[1.] Applicability of Section 435 to Nonpublic Companies (5/78) [Deleted May, 1980]	[.01-.07]



AU Section 410***Adherence to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles***

Source: SAS No. 1, section 410; SAS No. 62.

See section 9410 for interpretations of this section.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 The first standard of reporting is:

The report shall state whether the financial statements are presented in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

.02 The term “generally accepted accounting principles” as used in reporting standards is construed to include not only accounting principles and practices but also the methods of applying them. The first reporting standard is construed not to require a statement of fact by the auditor but an opinion as to whether the financial statements are presented in conformity with such principles.¹ If limitations on the scope of the audit make it impossible for the auditor to form an opinion as to such conformity, appropriate qualification of his report is required. [Amended by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 14, effective with respect to engagements to issue special reports on data for periods beginning after December 31, 1976.]

[.03-.04] [Superseded July 1975 by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 5, as superseded by section 411.]

¹ When an auditor reports on financial statements prepared in accordance with a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles, the first standard of reporting is satisfied by disclosing in the auditor's report that the statements have been prepared in conformity with another comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles and by expressing an opinion (or disclaiming an opinion) on whether the financial statements are presented in conformity with the comprehensive basis of accounting used (see section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraphs .02-.10).



AU Section 9410***Adherence to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles: Auditing Interpretations of Section 410*****[1.] Accounting Principles Recommended by Trade Associations^[1]**

[.01–.03] [Withdrawn August, 1982 by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43.]

[2.] The Impact of FASB Statement No. 2 on Auditor's Report Issued Prior to the Statement's Effective Date²

[.04–.12] [Superseded October, 1979 by Interpretation No. 3, paragraphs .13–.18.]

3. The Impact on an Auditor's Report of an FASB Statement Prior to the Statement's Effective Date

.13 Question—What is the impact on the auditor's report when he is reporting on financial statements issued before the effective date of a Statement of Financial Accounting Standards and the financial statements will have to be restated in the future because the FASB statement will require retroactive application of its provisions by prior period adjustment?

.14 Interpretation—Where the accounting principles being followed are currently acceptable, the auditor should not qualify his opinion if a company does not adopt before an FASB Statement becomes effective accounting principles that will be prescribed by that Statement. For example, Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement No. 2 [AC section R50], *Accounting for Research and Development Costs*, was issued in October 1974, but was effective for fiscal years beginning on or after January 1, 1975. This Statement requires companies to expense research and development costs encompassed by the Statement in the period they are incurred. Companies that had deferred research and development costs were required to restate their financial statements by prior period adjustment in the period in which FASB Statement No. 2 [AC section R50] became effective. Deferring research and development costs before FASB Statement No. 2 [AC section R50] became effective was an acceptable alternative principle under GAAP, although FASB Statement No. 2 [AC section R50] proscribed such treatment for fiscal years beginning on or after January 1, 1975. Other reporting considerations are addressed in the following paragraphs.

.15 Section 508, Reports on Audited Financial Statements, paragraph .41 states: "Information essential for a fair presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles should be set forth in the financial statements (which include related notes)." For financial statements that are prepared on the basis of accounting principles that are acceptable at the financial-statement date but that will not be acceptable in the future, the auditor should con-

^[1] [Footnote deleted.]

² Originally issued under the title "Effect on the Auditor's Opinion of FASB Statement on Research and Development Costs" (*Journal of Accountancy*, Jan. '75, p. 74).

sider whether disclosure of the impending change in principle and the resulting restatement are essential data. If he decides that the matter should be disclosed and it is not, the auditor should express a qualified or adverse opinion as to conformity with GAAP, as required by section 508.41.

.16 To evaluate the adequacy of disclosure of the prospective change in principle, the auditor should assess the potential effect on the financial statements. Using the research and development cost example given above, the effect of the anticipated prior period adjustment to write off previously deferred research and development costs would in some instances be so material that disclosure would be essential for an understanding of the financial statements. In cases such as this, where the estimated impact is so material, disclosure can best be made by supplementing the historical financial statements with pro forma financial data that give effect to the future adjustment as if it had occurred on the date of the balance sheet. (See section 560.05.) The pro forma data may be presented in columnar form alongside the historical statements, in the notes to the historical statements, or in separate pro forma statements presented with the historical statements.

.17 The auditor also should consider whether disclosure is needed for other effects that may result upon the required future adoption of an accounting principle. For example, the future adoption of such a principle may result in a reduction to stockholders' equity that may cause the company to be in violation of its debt covenants, which in turn may accelerate the due date for repayment of debt.

.18 Even if the auditor decides that the disclosure of the forthcoming change and its effects are adequate and, consequently, decides not to qualify his opinion, he nevertheless may decide to include an explanatory paragraph in his report if the effects of the change are expected to be unusually material. The explanatory paragraph should not be construed as a qualification of the auditor's opinion; it is intended to highlight circumstances of particular importance and to aid in interpreting the financial statements (see section 508.19).

[Issue Date: October, 1979; Revised: December, 1992;
Revised: June, 1993; Revised: February, 1997.]

AU Section 411

The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*

(Supersedes SAS No. 5)

Source: SAS No. 69; SAS No. 91; SAS No. 93.

See section 9411 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending after March 15, 1992, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 An independent auditor's report contains an opinion as to whether the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, an entity's financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. An identification of the country of origin of those generally accepted accounting principles also is required (see section 508.08*h*).

The purpose of this section is to explain the meaning of "present fairly . . . in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles." [As amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.02 The first standard of reporting requires an auditor who has audited financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards to state in the auditor's report whether the statements are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. The phrase "generally accepted accounting principles" is a technical accounting term that encompasses the conventions, rules, and procedures necessary to define accepted accounting practice at a particular time. It includes not only broad guidelines of general application, but also detailed practices and procedures. Those conventions, rules, and procedures provide a standard by which to measure financial presentations. [Revised, June 1993, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement of Position 93-3.]

.03 The independent auditor's judgment concerning the "fairness" of the overall presentation of financial statements should be applied within the framework of generally accepted accounting principles. Without that framework, the auditor would have no uniform standard for judging the presentation of financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in financial statements.

.04 The auditor's opinion that financial statements present fairly an entity's financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles should be based on his or her judgment as to whether (a) the accounting principles selected and applied have general acceptance; (b) the accounting principles are appropriate in the circumstances; (c) the financial statements, including the related notes, are informative

* Title amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.

of matters that may affect their use, understanding, and interpretation (see section 431); (d) the information presented in the financial statements is classified and summarized in a reasonable manner, that is, neither too detailed nor too condensed (see section 431); and (e) the financial statements reflect the underlying transactions and events in a manner that presents the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows stated within a range of acceptable limits, that is, limits that are reasonable and practicable to attain in financial statements.¹

.05 Independent auditors agree on the existence of a body of generally accepted accounting principles, and they are knowledgeable about these principles and in the determination of their general acceptance. Nevertheless, the determination that a particular accounting principle is generally accepted may be difficult because no single reference source exists for all such principles. The sources of established accounting principles that are generally accepted in the United States of America are—

- a. Accounting principles promulgated by a body designated by the AICPA Council to establish such principles, pursuant to rule 203 [ET section 203.01] of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct. Rule 203 [ET section 203.01] provides that an auditor should not express an unqualified opinion if the financial statements contain a material departure from such pronouncements unless, due to unusual circumstances, adherence to the pronouncements would make the statements misleading. Rule 203 [ET section 203.01] implies that application of officially established accounting principles almost always results in the fair presentation of financial position, results of operations, and cash flows, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Nevertheless, rule 203 [ET section 203.01] provides for the possibility that literal application of such a pronouncement might, in unusual circumstances, result in misleading financial statements. (See section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .14 and .15.)
- b. Pronouncements of bodies, composed of expert accountants, that deliberate accounting issues in public forums for the purpose of establishing accounting principles or describing existing accounting practices that are generally accepted, provided those pronouncements have been exposed for public comment and have been cleared by a body referred to in category (a).²
- c. Pronouncements of bodies, organized by a body referred to in category (a) and composed of expert accountants, that deliberate accounting issues in public forums for the purpose of interpreting or establishing accounting principles or describing existing accounting practices that are generally accepted, or pronouncements referred to in category (b) that have been cleared by a body referred to in category (a) but have not been exposed for public comment.
- d. Practices or pronouncements that are widely recognized as being generally accepted because they represent prevalent practice in a particular industry, or the knowledgeable application to specific circumstances of pronouncements that are generally accepted.

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

¹ The concept of materiality is inherent in the auditor's judgments. That concept involves qualitative as well as quantitative judgments (see sections 150.04, 312.10, and 508.36).

² For purposes of this section, the word *cleared* means that a body referred to in subparagraphs (a) has indicated that it does not object to the issuance of the proposed pronouncement.

.06 Generally accepted accounting principles recognize the importance of reporting transactions and events in accordance with their substance. The auditor should consider whether the substance of transactions or events differs materially from their form.

.07 If the accounting treatment of a transaction or event is not specified by a pronouncement covered by rule 203 [ET section 203.01], the auditor should consider whether the accounting treatment is specified by another source of established accounting principles. If an established accounting principle from one or more sources in category (b), (c), or (d) is relevant to the circumstances, the auditor should be prepared to justify a conclusion that another treatment is generally accepted. If there is a conflict between accounting principles relevant to the circumstances from one or more sources in category (b), (c), or (d), the auditor should follow the treatment specified by the source in the higher category—for example, follow category (b) treatment over category (c)—or be prepared to justify a conclusion that a treatment specified by a source in the lower category better presents the substance of the transaction in the circumstances.

.08 The auditor should be aware that the accounting requirements adopted by regulatory agencies for reports filed with them may differ from generally accepted accounting principles in certain respects. Section 544, *Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraph .04 and section 623, *Special Reports* provide guidance if the auditor is reporting on financial statements prepared in conformity with a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.

.09 Because of developments such as new legislation or the evolution of a new type of business transaction, there sometimes are no established accounting principles for reporting a specific transaction or event. In those instances, it might be possible to report the event or transaction on the basis of its substance by selecting an accounting principle that appears appropriate when applied in a manner similar to the application of an established principle to an analogous transaction or event.

Application to Nongovernmental Entities

.10 For financial statements of entities other than governmental entities—³

- a. Category (a), officially established accounting principles, consists of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statements of Financial Accounting Standards and Interpretations, Accounting Principles Board (APB) Opinions, and AICPA Accounting Research Bulletins.
- b. Category (b) consists of FASB Technical Bulletins and, if cleared⁴ by the FASB, AICPA Industry Audit and Accounting Guides and AICPA Statements of Position.
- c. Category (c) consists of AICPA Accounting Standards Executive Committee (AcSEC) Practice Bulletins that have been cleared⁴ by

³ Rules and interpretive releases of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) have an authority similar to category (a) pronouncements for SEC registrants. In addition, the SEC staff issues Staff Accounting Bulletins that represent practices followed by the staff in administering SEC disclosure requirements. Also, the Introduction to the FASB's *EITF Abstracts* states that the Securities and Exchange Commission's Chief Accountant has said that the SEC staff would challenge any accounting that differs from a consensus of the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force, because the consensus position represents the best thinking on areas for which there are no specific standards.

⁴ The auditor should assume that such pronouncements have been cleared by the FASB unless the pronouncement indicates otherwise.

the FASB and consensus positions of the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force.

- d. Category (d) includes AICPA accounting interpretations and implementation guides ("Qs and As") published by the FASB staff, and practices that are widely recognized and prevalent either generally or in the industry.

.11 In the absence of a pronouncement covered by rule 203 [ET section 203.01] or another source of established accounting principles, the auditor of financial statements of entities other than governmental entities may consider other accounting literature, depending on its relevance in the circumstances. Other accounting literature includes, for example, FASB Statements of Financial Accounting Concepts; AICPA Issues Papers; International Accounting Standards of the International Accounting Standards Committee; Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) Statements, Interpretations, and Technical Bulletins; Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB) Statements, Interpretations, and Technical Bulletins; pronouncements of other professional associations or regulatory agencies; Technical Information Service Inquiries and Replies included in AICPA Technical Practice Aids; and accounting textbooks, handbooks, and articles. The appropriateness of other accounting literature depends on its relevance to particular circumstances, the specificity of the guidance, and the general recognition of the issuer or author as an authority. For example, FASB Statements of Financial Accounting Concepts would normally be more influential than other sources in this category. [Revised, June 1993, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement of Position 93-3.]

Application to State and Local Governmental Entities

.12 For financial statements of state and local governmental entities⁵—

- a. Category (a), officially established accounting principles, consists of GASB Statements and Interpretations, as well as AICPA and FASB pronouncements specifically made applicable to state and local governmental entities by GASB Statements or Interpretations. GASB Statements and Interpretations are periodically incorporated in the *Codification of Governmental Accounting and Financial Reporting Standards*.
- b. Category (b) consists of GASB Technical Bulletins and, if specifically made applicable to state and local governmental entities by the AICPA and cleared⁶ by the GASB, AICPA Industry Audit and Accounting Guides and AICPA Statements of Position.
- c. Category (c) consists of AICPA AcSEC Practice Bulletins if specifically made applicable to state and local governmental entities and cleared⁶ by the GASB, as well as consensus positions of a group of accountants organized by the GASB that attempts to reach consensus positions on accounting issues applicable to state and local governmental entities.⁷

⁵ State and local governmental entities include public benefit corporations and authorities; public employee retirement systems; and governmental utilities, hospitals and other health care providers, and colleges and universities.

⁶ The auditor should assume that such pronouncements specifically made applicable to state and local governments have been cleared by the GASB unless the pronouncement indicates otherwise.

⁷ As of the date of this section, the GASB had not organized such a group.

- d. Category (d) includes implementation guides ("Qs and As") published by the GASB staff, as well as practices that are widely recognized and prevalent in state and local government.

.13 In the absence of a pronouncement covered by rule 203 [ET section 203.01] or another source of established accounting principles, the auditor of financial statements of state and local governmental entities may consider other accounting literature, depending on its relevance in the circumstances. Other accounting literature includes, for example, GASB Concepts Statements; the pronouncements referred to in categories (a) through (d) of paragraph .10 when not specifically made applicable to state and local governmental entities either by the GASB or by the organization issuing them; FASB Concepts Statements; FASAB Statements, Interpretations, Technical Bulletins, and Concepts Statements; AICPA Issues Papers; International Accounting Standards of the International Accounting Standards Committee; pronouncements of other professional associations or regulatory agencies; Technical Information Service Inquiries and Replies included in AICPA Technical Practice Aids; and accounting textbooks, handbooks, and articles. The appropriateness of other accounting literature depends on its relevance to particular circumstances, the specificity of the guidance, and the general recognition of the issuer or author as an authority. For example, GASB Concepts Statements would normally be more influential than other sources in this category. [Revised, June 1993, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement of Position 93-3.]

Application to Federal Governmental Entities

.14 For financial statements of federal governmental entities⁸—

- a. Category (a), officially established accounting principles, consists of Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB) Statements and Interpretations, as well as AICPA and FASB pronouncements specifically made applicable to federal governmental entities by FASAB Statements or Interpretations. FASAB Statements and Interpretations will be periodically incorporated in a publication by the FASAB.
- b. Category (b) consists of FASAB Technical Bulletins and, if specifically made applicable to federal governmental entities by the AICPA and cleared by the FASAB, AICPA Industry Audit and Accounting Guides and AICPA Statements of Position.⁹
- c. Category (c) consists of AICPA AcSEC Practice Bulletins if specifically made applicable to federal governmental entities and cleared by the FASAB, as well as Technical Releases of the Accounting and Auditing Policy Committee of the FASAB.
- d. Category (d) includes implementation guides published by the FASAB staff, as well as practices that are widely recognized and prevalent in the federal government.

[Paragraph added, effective April 2000, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91.]

⁸ Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB) Concepts Statement No. 2, *Entity and Display*, defines federal governmental entities. [Footnote added, effective April 2000, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91.]

⁹ The auditor should assume that such pronouncements specifically made applicable to federal governmental entities have been cleared by the FASAB, unless the pronouncement indicates otherwise. [Footnote added, effective April 2000, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91.]

.15 In the absence of a pronouncement covered by rule 203 [ET section 203.01] or another source of established accounting principles, the auditor of financial statements of a federal governmental entity may consider other accounting literature, depending on its relevance in the circumstances. Other accounting literature includes, for example, FASAB Concepts Statements; the pronouncements referred to in categories (a) through (d) of paragraph .10 when not specifically made applicable to federal governmental entities by the FASAB; FASB Concepts Statements; GASB Statements, Interpretations, Technical Bulletins, and Concepts Statements; AICPA Issues Papers; International Accounting Standards of the International Accounting Standards Committee; pronouncements of other professional associations or regulatory agencies; Technical Information Service Inquiries and Replies included in AICPA Technical Practice Aids; and accounting textbooks, handbooks, and articles. The appropriateness of other accounting literature depends on its relevance to particular circumstances, the specificity of the guidance, and the general recognition of the issuer or author as an authority. For example, FASAB Concepts Statements would normally be more influential than other sources in this category. [Paragraph added, effective April 2000, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91.]

Effective Date

.16 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending after March 15, 1992. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91, April 2000.]

Transition

.17 Most of the pronouncements or practices in categories (b), (c), and (d) of paragraphs .10 and .12 had equal authoritative standing prior to the issuance of this section. An entity following an accounting treatment in category (c) or (d) as of March 15, 1992, need not change to an accounting treatment in a category (b) or category (c) pronouncement whose effective date is before March 15, 1992. For example, a nongovernmental entity that followed a prevalent industry practice (category (d)) as of March 15, 1992, need not change to an accounting treatment included in a pronouncement in category (b) or (c) (for example, an accounting principle in a cleared AICPA Statement of Position or AcSEC Practice Bulletin) whose effective date is before March 15, 1992. For pronouncements whose effective date is subsequent to March 15, 1992, and for entities initially applying an accounting principle after March 15, 1992 (except for FASB Emerging Issues Task Force consensus positions issued before March 16, 1992, which become effective in the hierarchy for initial application of an accounting principle after March 15, 1993), the auditor should follow the applicable hierarchy established by paragraphs .10 and .12 in determining whether an entity's financial statements are fairly presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91, April 2000.]

.18 GAAP Hierarchy Summary[†]

<i>Nongovernmental Entities</i>	<i>State and Local Governments</i>	<i>Federal Governmental Entities</i>
<i>Established Accounting Principles</i>		
.10a FASB Statements and Interpretations, APB Opinions, and AICPA Accounting Research Bulletins	.12a GASB Statements and Interpretations, plus AICPA and FASB pronouncements if made applicable to state and local governments by a GASB Statement or Interpretation	.14a FASAB Statements and Interpretations plus AICPA and FASB pronouncements if made applicable to federal governmental entities by a FASAB Statement or Interpretation
.10b FASB Technical Bulletins, AICPA Industry Audit and Accounting Guides, and AICPA Statements of Position	.12b GASB Technical Bulletins, and the following pronouncements if specifically made applicable to state and local governments by the AICPA: AICPA Industry Audit and Accounting Guides and AICPA Statements of Position	.14b FASAB Technical Bulletins and the following pronouncements if specifically made applicable to federal governmental entities by the AICPA and cleared by the FASAB: AICPA Industry Audit and Accounting Guides and AICPA Statements of Position
.10c Consensus positions of the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force and AICPA Practice Bulletins	.12c Consensus positions of the GASB Emerging Issues Task Force [‡] and AICPA Practice Bulletins if specifically made applicable to state and local governments by the AICPA	.14c AICPA AcSEC Practice Bulletins if specifically made applicable to federal governmental entities and cleared by the FASAB and Technical Releases of the Accounting and Auditing Policy Committee of the FASAB
.10d AICPA accounting interpretations, "Qs and As" published by the FASB staff, as well as industry practices widely recognized and prevalent	.12d "Qs and As" published by the GASB staff, as well as industry practices widely recognized and prevalent	.14d Implementation guides published by the FASAB staff and practices that are widely recognized and prevalent in the federal government

(continued)

[†] Paragraph references correspond to the paragraphs of this section that describe the categories of the GAAP hierarchy.[‡] As of the date of this section, the GASB had not organized such a group.

Federal Governmental Entities	
State and Local Governments	
Other Accounting Literature ¹¹	
.11	Other accounting literature, including FASB Concepts Statements; AICPA Issues Papers; International Accounting Standards Committee Statements; GASB Statements, Interpretations, and Technical Bulletins; FASAB Statements, Interpretations, and Technical Bulletins; pronouncements of other professional associations or regulatory agencies; AICPA <i>Technical Practice Aids</i> ; and accounting textbooks, handbooks, and articles
.13	Other accounting literature, including GASB Concepts Statements; pronouncements in categories (a) through (d) of the hierarchy for nongovernmental entities when not specifically made applicable to state and local governments; FASB Concepts Statements; FASAB Statements, Interpretations, Technical Bulletins, and Concepts Statements; AICPA Issues Papers; International Accounting Standards Committee Statements; pronouncements of other professional associations or regulatory agencies; AICPA <i>Technical Practice Aids</i> ; and accounting textbooks, handbooks, and articles
.15	Other accounting literature, including FASAB Concepts Statements; pronouncements in categories (a) through (d) of the hierarchy in paragraph .10 when not specifically made applicable to federal governmental entities; FASB Concepts Statements; GASB Statements, Interpretations, Technical Bulletins, and Concepts Statements; AICPA Issues Papers; International Accounting Standards of the Committee; pronouncements of other professional associations or regulatory agencies; AICPA <i>Technical Practice Aids</i> ; and accounting textbooks, handbooks, and articles

[Revised, June 1993, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement of Position 93-3. Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective April 2000, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91.]

¹¹ In the absence of established accounting principles, the auditor may consider other accounting literature, depending on its relevance in the circumstances.

AU Section 9411***The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles: Auditing Interpretations of Section 411*****[1.] The Auditor's Consideration of Accounting Principles Set Forth in Industry Audit and Accounting Guides**

[.01-.04] [Deleted September, 1984.]

[2.] The Auditor's Consideration of Accounting Principles Promulgated by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board

[.05-.10] [Withdrawn April, 1988 by SAS No. 52.]

3. The Auditor's Consideration of Management's Adoption of Accounting Principles for New Transactions or Events

.11 *Question*—When an entity engages in new types of transactions or encounters new events that are material and for which there are no established sources of accounting principles, what should the auditor consider in formulating a judgment about the general acceptance and appropriateness in the circumstances of the accounting principles selected by management?

.12 *Interpretation*—When an entity adopts accounting principles in response to new types of transactions or events that are material and for which there are no established sources of accounting principles, the auditor should understand the basis used by management to select the particular accounting principle. In assessing the appropriateness of the accounting principle selected by management, the auditor may consider whether there are analogous transactions or events for which there are established accounting principles. If the auditor has identified analogous transactions or events for which there are established accounting principles, he or she should follow the guidance in section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraph .09. Section 411.09 states that "there sometimes are no established accounting principles for reporting a specific transaction or event. In those instances, it might be possible to report the event or transaction on the basis of its substance by selecting an accounting principle that appears appropriate when applied in a manner similar to the application of an established principle to an analogous transaction or event."

.13 In addition, the auditor also may consider the appropriateness of other accounting literature, as discussed in section 411.11 for nongovernmental entities or section 411.13 for governmental entities. The appropriateness of

* Title of section 411 amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.

other accounting literature depends on its relevance to particular circumstances, the specificity of the guidance, and the general recognition of the issuer or author as an authority.

.14 Section 411.04 recognizes that an auditor's opinion that financial statements are presented fairly in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles should be based on his or her judgment as to whether the accounting principles selected and applied have general acceptance and are appropriate in the circumstances.

.15 Furthermore, in engagements where section 380, *Communication With Audit Committees*, applies, the auditor should determine that the audit committee (or its equivalent) is informed about the initial selection of and changes in significant accounting policies or their application. The auditor should also determine that the audit committee (or its equivalent) is informed about the methods used to account for significant unusual transactions and the effect of significant accounting policies in controversial or emerging areas for which there is a lack of authoritative guidance or consensus.

[Issue Date: March, 1995; Revised: October, 2000.]

AU Section 420***Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles***

Source: SAS No. 1, section 420; SAS No. 43; SAS No. 88.

See section 9420 for interpretations of this section.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 The second standard of reporting (referred to herein as the consistency standard) is:

The report shall identify those circumstances in which such principles have not been consistently observed in the current period in relation to the preceding period.

.02 The objective of the consistency standard is to ensure that if comparability of financial statements between periods has been materially affected by changes in accounting principles, there will be appropriate reporting by the independent auditor regarding such changes.¹ It is also implicit in the objective that such principles have been consistently observed within each period. The auditor's standard report implies that the auditor is satisfied that the comparability of financial statements between periods has not been materially affected by changes in accounting principles and that such principles have been consistently applied between or among periods because either (a) no change in accounting principles has occurred, or (b) there has been a change in accounting principles or in the method of their application, but the effect of the change on the comparability of the financial statements is not material. In these cases, the auditor would not refer to consistency in his report.

.03 Proper application of the consistency standard by the independent auditor requires an understanding of the relationship of consistency to comparability. Although lack of consistency may cause lack of comparability, other factors unrelated to consistency may also cause lack of comparability.²

.04 A comparison of the financial statements of an entity between years may be affected by (a) accounting changes, (b) an error in previously issued financial statements, (c) changes in classification, and (d) events or transactions substantially different from those accounted for in previously issued statements. Accounting change, as defined in APB Opinion No. 20 [AC section A06], means a change in (1) an accounting principle, (2) an accounting estimate, or (3) the reporting entity (which is a special type of change in accounting principle).

¹ The appropriate form of reporting on a lack of consistency is discussed in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs 16 through 18. [Footnote added to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.]

² For a discussion of comparability of financial statements of a single enterprise, see paragraphs 111 through 119 of FASB Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 2, "Qualitative Characteristics of Accounting Information." [Footnote renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Revised, June, 1993, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement of Position 93-3.]

.05 Changes in accounting principle having a material effect on the financial statements require recognition in the independent auditor's report through the addition of an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph). Other factors affecting comparability in financial statements may require disclosure, but they would not ordinarily be commented upon in the independent auditor's report.

Accounting Changes Affecting Consistency

Change in Accounting Principle

.06 "A change in accounting principle results from adoption of a generally accepted accounting principle different from the one used previously for reporting purposes. The term *accounting principle* includes not only accounting principles and practices but also the methods of applying them."³ A change in accounting principle includes, for example, a change from the straight-line method to the declining balance method of depreciation for all assets in a class or for all newly acquired assets in a class. The consistency standard is applicable to this type of change and requires recognition in the auditor's report through the addition of an explanatory paragraph. [As modified, effective January 1, 1975, by FASB Statement No. 2 (AC section R50).]

Change in the Reporting Entity

.07 A change in the reporting entity is a special type of change in accounting principle which results in financial statements that, in effect, are those of a different reporting entity. This type is limited mainly to—

- a. Presenting consolidated or combined statements in place of statements of individual companies.
- b. Changing specific subsidiaries comprising the group of companies for which consolidated statements are presented.
- c. Changing the companies included in combined financial statements.

A business combination accounted for by the pooling of interests method also results in a different reporting entity.⁴ [As amended, effective December 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.]

.08 A change in the reporting entity resulting from a transaction or event, such as a pooling of interests, or the creation, cessation, or complete or partial purchase or disposition of a subsidiary or other business unit, does not require that an explanatory paragraph about consistency be included in the auditor's report. A change in the reporting entity that does not result from a transaction or event requires recognition in the auditor's report through inclusion of an explanatory paragraph. [Paragraph added, effective December 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.]

.09 When companies have merged or combined in a pooling of interests, appropriate effect of the pooling should be given in the presentation of financial position, results of operations, cash flows, and other historical financial data of the continuing business for the year in which the combination is consummated

³ Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 20, paragraph 7 [AC section A06.105]. [Footnote renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.]

⁴ APB Opinion 20, paragraph .12. [Footnote added, effective December 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.]

and, in comparative financial statements, for years prior to the year of pooling, as described in APB Opinion No. 16, *Business Combinations* [AC section B50]. If prior year financial statements, presented in comparison with current year financial statements, are not restated to give appropriate recognition to a pooling of interests, a departure from generally accepted accounting principles has occurred which necessitates that the auditor express a qualified or an adverse opinion as discussed in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .35 through .40. Since the inconsistency arises not from a change in the application of an accounting principle in the current year, but from the lack of such application to prior years, an explanatory paragraph (in addition to the modification relating to the departure from generally accepted accounting principles) is not required. [Paragraph added to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective December 1999, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.]

[.10] [Paragraph added to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph renumbered and deleted by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

[.11] [Paragraph renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph subsequently renumbered and deleted by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

Correction of an Error in Principle

.12 A change from an accounting principle that is not generally accepted to one that is generally accepted, including correction of a mistake in the application of a principle, is a correction of an error. Although this type of change in accounting principle should be accounted for as the correction of an error,⁵ the change requires recognition in the auditor's report through the addition of an explanatory paragraph. [Paragraph renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.][⁶]

Change in Principle Inseparable From Change in Estimate

.13 The effect of a change in accounting principle may be inseparable from the effect of a change in estimate.⁷ Although the accounting for such a change

⁵ See paragraphs 13, 36, and 37 of Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 20 [AC section A35.104–105]. [Footnote renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

[⁶] [Footnote deleted to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

⁷ See paragraph 11 of Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 20 [AC section A06.110]. [Footnote renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

is the same as that accorded a change only in estimate, a change in principle is involved. Accordingly, this type of change requires recognition in the independent auditor's report through the addition of an explanatory paragraph. [Paragraph renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

Changes in Presentation of Cash Flows

.14 For purposes of presenting cash flows, FASB Statement No. 95, *Statement of Cash Flows* [AC section C25], states that, "An enterprise shall disclose its policy for determining which items are treated as cash equivalents. Any change to that policy is a change in accounting principle that shall be effected by restating financial statements for earlier years presented for comparative purposes." Accordingly, this type of change in presentation of cash flows requires recognition in the independent auditor's report through the addition of an explanatory paragraph. [Paragraph added to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

Changes Not Affecting Consistency

Change in Accounting Estimate

.15 Accounting estimates (such as service lives and salvage values of depreciable assets and provisions for warranty costs, uncollectible receivables, and inventory obsolescence) are necessary in the preparation of financial statements. Accounting estimates change as new events occur and as additional experience and information are acquired. This type of accounting change is required by altered conditions that affect comparability but do not involve the consistency standard. The independent auditor, in addition to satisfying himself with respect to the conditions giving rise to the change in accounting estimate, should satisfy himself that the change does not include the effect of a change in accounting principle. Provided he is so satisfied, he need not comment on the change in his report.^[8] However, an accounting change of this type having a material effect on the financial statements may require disclosure in a note to the financial statements.⁹ [Paragraph renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

Error Correction Not Involving Principle

.16 Correction of an error in previously issued financial statements resulting from mathematical mistakes, oversight, or misuse of facts that existed

^[8] [Footnote deleted. Footnote renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

⁹ See paragraph 33 of Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 20 [AC section A06.132]. [Footnote renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

at the time the financial statements were originally prepared does not involve the consistency standard if no element of accounting principles or their application is included. Accordingly, the independent auditor need not recognize the correction in his report.¹⁰ [Paragraph renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

Changes in Classification and Reclassifications

.17 Classifications in the current financial statements may be different from classifications in the prior year's financial statements. Although changes in classification are usually not of sufficient importance to necessitate disclosure, material changes in classification should be indicated and explained in the financial statements or notes. These changes and material reclassifications made in previously issued financial statements to enhance comparability with current financial statements ordinarily would not need to be referred to in the independent auditor's report. [Paragraph renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

Variations in Presentation of Statement of Changes in Financial Position

[.18] [Paragraph renumbered and deleted to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

Substantially Different Transactions or Events

.19 Accounting principles are adopted when events or transactions first become material in their effect. Such adoption, as well as modification or adoption of an accounting principle necessitated by transactions or events that are clearly different in substance from those previously occurring, do not involve the consistency standard although disclosure in the notes to the financial statements may be required. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982. Paragraph subsequently renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

Changes Expected to Have a Material Future Effect

.20 If an accounting change has no material effect on the financial statements in the current year, but the change is reasonably certain to have substantial effect in later years, the change should be disclosed in the notes to

¹⁰ If the independent auditor had previously reported on the financial statements containing the error, he should refer to section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*. [Footnote renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

the financial statements whenever the statements of the period of change are presented, but the independent auditor need not recognize the change in his report. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982. Paragraph subsequently renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

Disclosure of Changes Not Affecting Consistency

.21 While the matters do not require the addition of an explanatory paragraph about consistency in the independent auditor's report, the auditor should qualify his opinion as to the disclosure matter if necessary disclosures are not made. (See section 431.) [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982. Paragraph subsequently renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

Periods to Which the Consistency Standard Relates

.22 When the independent auditor reports only on the current period, he should obtain sufficient, competent evidential matter about consistency of the application of accounting principles, regardless of whether financial statements for the preceding period are presented. (The term "current period" means the most recent year, or period of less than one year, upon which the independent auditor is reporting.) When the independent auditor reports on two or more years, he should address the consistency of the application of accounting principles between such years and the consistency of such years with the year prior thereto if such prior year is presented with the financial statements being reported upon. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982. Paragraph subsequently renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

Consistency Expression

[.23] [Paragraph renumbered and deleted to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

First Year Audits

.24 When the independent auditor has not audited the financial statements of a company for the preceding year, he should adopt procedures that are practicable and reasonable in the circumstances to assure himself that the accounting principles employed are consistent between the current and the preceding year. Where adequate records have been maintained by the client, it is usually practicable and reasonable to extend auditing procedures to gather sufficient competent evidential matter about consistency. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

.25 Inadequate financial records or limitations imposed by the client may preclude the independent auditor from obtaining sufficient, competent evidential matter about the consistent application of accounting principles between the current and the prior year, as well as to the amounts of assets or liabilities at the beginning of the current year. Where such amounts could materially affect current operating results, the independent auditor would also be unable to express an opinion on the current year's results of operations and cash flows. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88, December 1999.]

AU Section 9420

Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles: Auditing Interpretations of Section 420

[1.] The Effect of APB Opinion No. 30 on Consistency¹

[.01–.10] [Superseded October, 1979 by Interpretation No. 5, paragraphs .28–.31.]

2. The Effect of APB Opinion No. 28 on Consistency

.11 Question—Independent auditors may be engaged to report on financial information for an annual period and a subsequent interim period. Should the auditor add an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) to his report in those circumstances where accounting principles and practices used in preparing the annual financial information have been modified in accordance with APB Opinion No. 28 [AC section I73] in preparing the interim financial statements?

.12 Interpretation—No. The auditor should not add an explanatory paragraph to his report because of these modifications. Although the modifications deemed appropriate under Opinion No. 28 [AC section I73] may appear to be changes in the methods of applying accounting principles, they differ from changes in methods that require an explanatory paragraph since the modifications are made in order to recognize a difference in circumstances, that is, a difference between presenting financial information for a year and presenting financial information for only a part of a year.

.13 Section 420, *Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraph .02, states: “The objective of the consistency standard is to ensure that if comparability of financial statements between periods has been materially affected by changes in accounting principles there will be appropriate reporting by the independent auditor regarding such changes.” Section 420.02 refers to changes in methods that lessen the usefulness of financial statements in comparing the financial information of one period with that of an earlier period. Thus, the purpose of an explanatory paragraph about consistency in the auditor’s report is to alert readers of the report not to make an unqualified comparison of the financial information for the two periods.

.14 The modifications introduced by Opinion No. 28 [AC section I73], however, do not lessen the comparability of the financial information of an interim period with that of a preceding annual period. On the contrary, those modifications are intended to enhance comparability between the two sets of financial information. As paragraph 10 of Opinion No. 28 [AC section I73.103] states, the modifications are needed “so that the reported results for the interim period may better relate to the results of operations for the annual period.”

¹ Originally issued under the title “Reporting on Consistency and Extraordinary Items” (*Journal of Accountancy*, Jan. ’74, p. 67).

.15 Thus the modifications introduced by Opinion No. 28 [AC section I73] are not of the type that would require an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) in the auditor's report. Independent auditors should, of course, add an explanatory paragraph if changes of the type that lessen comparability are introduced in the interim financial information.

[Issue Date: February, 1974.]

3. Impact on the Auditor's Report of FIFO to LIFO Change in Comparative Financial Statements

.16 *Question*—Changing economic conditions have caused some companies to change their inventory pricing methods from the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method to the last in, first out (LIFO) method. When a company presents comparative financial statements and the year of the FIFO to LIFO change is the earliest year both presented and reported on, should the auditor refer to that change in accounting principle in his report?

.17 *Interpretation*—The auditor would not be required to refer in his report to a FIFO to LIFO change in the circumstances described above.

.18 A change in accounting principle usually results in including the cumulative effect of the change in net income of the period of the change. A change in inventory pricing method from FIFO to LIFO, however, is a change in accounting principle that ordinarily does not affect retained earnings at the beginning of the period in which the change was made. (See APB Opinion No. 20, paragraphs 14(d) and 26.)²

.19 An example of typical disclosure of a FIFO to LIFO change in the year of the change is as follows:

"In 1974, the company adopted the last in, first out (LIFO) method of costing inventory. Previously, the first in, first out (FIFO) method of costing inventory was used. Management believes that the LIFO method has the effect of minimizing the impact of price level changes on inventory valuations and generally matches current costs against current revenues in the income statement. The effect of the change was to reduce net income by \$xxxx (\$.xx per share) from that which would otherwise have been reported. There is no cumulative effect on prior years since the ending inventory as previously reported (1973) is the beginning inventory for LIFO purposes. Accordingly, pro forma results of operations for the prior year had LIFO been followed is not determinable."

.20 Section 420, *Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraph .22 discusses the periods to which the consistency standard relates: "When the independent auditor reports on two or more years, he should address the consistency of the application of accounting principles between such years. . . ." For a FIFO to LIFO change made in the earliest year presented and reported on, there is no inconsistency in the application of accounting principles, and comparability between the earliest year and subsequent years is not affected since no cumulative effect is reported in the year of the change. Consequently, the independent auditor need not refer to the change in inventory pricing methods.

[.21-.23] [Paragraphs deleted to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.]

² AC section A06.122.

[Issue Date: January, 1975; Amended: April, 1989.]

[4.] The Effect of FASB Statement No. 13 on Consistency^[3]

[.24-.27] [Withdrawn March, 1989 by the Auditing Standards Board.]

[5.] The Effects of Changes in Accounting Principles and Classification on Consistency

[.28-.31] [Withdrawn December, 1992 by the Audit Issues Task Force.]

[6.] The Effect of FASB Statement No. 34 on Consistency

[.32-.43] [Withdrawn March, 1989 by the Auditing Standards Board.]

[7.] The Effect of FASB Statement No. 31 on Consistency

[.44-.51] [Withdrawn March, 1989 by the Auditing Standards Board.]

8. The Effect of Accounting Changes by an Investee on Consistency

.52 Question—Does a change in accounting principle by an investee accounted for by the equity method require the auditor to add an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) to his report on the financial statements of the investor?

.53 Interpretation—Changes in accounting principle affect the comparability of financial statements regardless of whether such changes originate at the investor level or are made solely by an investee.⁴ Section 420, *Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraph .02, states: "The objective of the consistency standard is to ensure that if comparability of financial statements between periods has been materially affected by changes in accounting principles there will be appropriate reporting by the independent auditor regarding such changes."

.54 Thus, the auditor would need to add an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) to his report when there has been a change in accounting principle by an investee accounted for by the equity method that causes a material lack of comparability in the financial statements of an investor.

[.55-.57] [Paragraphs deleted to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.]

[Issue Date: July, 1980; Revised: June, 1993.]

[9.] The Effect of Adoption of FASB Statement No. 35 on Consistency

[.58-.63] [Withdrawn March, 1989 by the Auditing Standards Board.]

10. Change in Presentation of Accumulated Benefit Information in the Financial Statements of a Defined Benefit Pension Plan

.64 Question—FASB Statement No. 35, *Accounting and Reporting by Defined Benefit Pension Plans* [AC section Pe5] requires the presentation of

^[3] [Footnote deleted.]

⁴ For a discussion of comparability of financial statements of a single enterprise, see paragraphs 111 through 119 of FASB Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 2, "Qualitative Characteristics of Accounting Information."

information regarding the actuarial present value of accumulated plan benefits and year-to-year changes therein of a defined benefit pension plan but permits certain flexibility in presenting such information. The information may be included on the face of a financial statement (a separate statement or one that combines accumulated benefit information with asset information), or it may be included in the notes to the financial statements. Furthermore, the benefit information may be as of the beginning of the period being reported upon or as of the end of that period. Does a change in the format of presentation of accumulated benefit information or a change in the date as of which such information is presented require the auditor to add an explanatory paragraph (after the opinion paragraph) to his report because of the change?

.65 Interpretation—Such changes in the presentation of information regarding accumulated benefits are considered reclassifications or variations in the nature of information presented. Changes such as these that are material should be explained in the financial statements or notes, but these changes ordinarily would not require the auditor to add this explanatory paragraph to his report (see section 420.17).

[Issue Date: December, 1980.]

11. The Effect of the Adoption of FASB Statement No. 36 on Consistency

[.66–.68] [Withdrawn March, 1989 by the Auditing Standards Board.]

12. The Effect on the Auditor's Report of an Entity's Adoption of a New Accounting Standard That Does Not Require the Entity to Disclose the Effect of the Change in the Year of Adoption

.69 Question—An entity adopts a new accounting standard (for example, Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 133, *Accounting for Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities*) and the standard does not require the entity to disclose, and the entity has not disclosed or determined, the effect of the change in the year of adoption.⁵

.70 Section 420, *Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraph .05 states, in part, that:

Changes in accounting principle having a *material* [emphasis added] effect on the financial statements require recognition in the independent auditor's report through the addition of an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph).

.71 If an accounting standard does not require the entity to disclose, and the entity has not disclosed or determined, the effect of the change in accounting principle in the year of adoption, how should the auditor determine materiality for purposes of applying the consistency standard?

.72 Interpretation—According to section 420.02, the objective of the second standard of reporting (referred to in section 420 as the *consistency standard*) is to:

... ensure that if comparability of financial statements between periods has been materially affected by changes in accounting principles, there will be appropriate reporting by the independent auditor regarding such changes. [Footnote omitted]

⁵ Accounting Principles Board Opinion (APB) No. 20, *Accounting Changes*, does not apply to initial adoption of an accounting standard that specifies the manner of reporting the accounting change to conform with the conclusions of that standard. See APB No. 20, paragraph 4.

When an accounting standard does not require the entity to disclose the effect of the change in accounting principle in the year of adoption, section 420 does not require the auditor to independently determine the effect of that change in the year of adoption. Therefore, to determine whether to add an explanatory paragraph to the audit report for the accounting change resulting from adoption of such an accounting standard, the auditor should consider (a) the materiality of the cumulative effect of the change, where the accounting standard specifies that the cumulative effect of the change be recorded as of the beginning of the reporting period, and (b) the entity's voluntary disclosure, and the related support, regarding how it believes the change in accounting principle affected the financial statements in the year of adoption, when such disclosure is made. An explanatory paragraph would be required only if the cumulative effect of the change is material or if management discloses that it believes that the effect is or may be material in the year of adoption.

[Issue Date: April, 2002.]

AU Section 431***Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements***

(Supersedes SAS No. 1, section 430)

Source: SAS No. 32.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: October, 1980.

.01 The third standard of reporting is:

Informative disclosures in the financial statements are to be regarded as reasonably adequate unless otherwise stated in the report.

.02 The presentation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles includes adequate disclosure of material matters. These matters relate to the form, arrangement, and content of the financial statements and their appended notes, including, for example, the terminology used, the amount of detail given, the classification of items in the statements, and the bases of amounts set forth. An independent auditor considers whether a particular matter should be disclosed in light of the circumstances and facts of which he is aware at the time.

.03 If management omits from the financial statements, including the accompanying notes, information that is required by generally accepted accounting principles, the auditor should express a qualified or an adverse opinion and should provide the information in his report, if practicable, unless its omission from the auditor's report is recognized as appropriate by a specific Statement on Auditing Standards.¹ In this context, *practicable* means that the information is reasonably obtainable from management's accounts and records and that providing the information in the report does not require the auditor to assume the position of a preparer of financial information. For example, the auditor would not be expected to prepare a basic financial statement or segment information and include it in his report when management omits such information.

.04 In considering the adequacy of disclosure, and in other aspects of his audit, the auditor uses information received in confidence from the client. Without such confidence, the auditor would find it difficult to obtain information necessary for him to form an opinion on financial statements. Thus, the auditor should not ordinarily make available, without the client's consent, information that is not required to be disclosed in financial statements to comply with generally accepted accounting principles (see AICPA Code of Professional Conduct, Rule 301 [ET section 301.01]).

¹ An independent auditor may participate in preparing financial statements, including accompanying notes. The financial statements, including accompanying notes, however, remain the representations of management, and such participation by the auditor does not require him to modify the report (see section 110.03).

AU Section 435**Segment Information**

Source: SAS No. 21.

**Notice of Rescission of Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS)
No. 21, *Segment Information*, and Issuance of Interpretation
on Auditing Procedures for Segment Disclosures**

The Auditing Standards Board (ASB) has rescinded SAS No. 21, *Segment Information*, effective for audits of financial statements to which Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. 131, *Disclosures about Segments of an Enterprise and Related Information*, has been applied. FASB Statement No. 131 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 1997, with earlier application encouraged.

SAS No. 21 was issued in December 1977 to provide guidance to auditors on audit issues related to the implementation of FASB Statement No. 14, *Financial Reporting for Segments of a Business Enterprise*. In June 1997, the FASB issued Statement No. 131, which supersedes FASB Statement No. 14. The auditing guidance contained in SAS No. 21 is inappropriate for audits of financial statements of entities that have implemented FASB Statement No. 131.

The Audit Issues Task Force of the ASB has issued an interpretation of section 326, *Evidential Matter*, entitled "Applying Auditing Procedures to Segment Disclosures in Financial Statements," to provide guidance for audits of financial statements of entities that have implemented FASB Statement No. 131. See section 9326.28–.41 for the interpretation.

AU Section 500**THE FOURTH STANDARD OF REPORTING****TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
504	Association With Financial Statements	.01-.19
	Disclaimer of Opinion on Unaudited Financial Statements . . . . .	.05-.06
	Disclaimer of Opinion on Unaudited Financial Statements Prepared on a Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . .	.07
	Disclaimer of Opinion When Not Independent . . . . .	.08-.10
	Circumstances Requiring a Modified Disclaimer . . . . .	.11-.13
	Reporting on Audited and Unaudited Financial Statements in Comparative Form . . . . .	.14-.17
	Negative Assurance . . . . .	.18-.19
9504	Association With Financial Statements: Auditing Interpretations of Section 504	
	1. Annual Report Disclosure of Unaudited Fourth Quarter Interim Data (11/79) . . . . .	.01-.07
	[2.] Association of the Auditor of an Acquired Company With Unaudited Statements in a Listing Application (11/79) [Deleted May, 1980]	[.08-.12]
	[3.] Association of the Auditor of the Acquiring Company With Unaudited Statements in a Listing Application (11/79) [Deleted May, 1980]	[.13-.14]
	4. Auditor's Identification With Condensed Financial Data (11/79) . . . . .	.15-.18
	5. Applicability of Guidance on Reporting When Not Independent (11/79) . . . . .	.19-.22
	[6.] Reporting on Solvency (12/84) [Rescinded May, 1988]	[.23-.35]
508	Reports on Audited Financial Statements	.01-.76
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.06
	The Auditor's Standard Report . . . . .	.07-.10
	Explanatory Language Added to the Auditor's Standard Report . . . . .	.11-.19
	Opinion Based in Part on Report of Another Auditor . . . . .	.12-.13
	Departure From a Promulgated Accounting Principle . . . . .	.14-.15
	Lack of Consistency . . . . .	.16-.18
	Emphasis of a Matter . . . . .	.19

Section	Paragraph
508	Reports on Audited Financial Statements—continued
	Departures From Unqualified Opinions 20-.63
	Qualified Opinions 20-.57
	Scope Limitations 22-.34
	Departure From a Generally Accepted Accounting Principle 35-.57
	Adverse Opinions 58-.60
	Disclaimer of Opinion 61-.63
	Piecemeal Opinions 64
	Reports on Comparative Financial Statements 65-.74
	Different Reports on Comparative Financial Statements Presented 67
	Opinion on Prior-Period Financial Statements Different From the Opinion Previously Expressed 68-.69
	Report of Predecessor Auditor 70-.74
	Predecessor Auditor’s Report Reissued 71-.73
	Predecessor Auditor’s Report Not Presented 74
	Effective Date and Transition 75-.76
9508	Reports on Audited Financial Statements: Auditing Interpretations of Section 508
	1. Report of an Outside Inventory-Taking Firm as an Alternative Procedure for Observing Inventories (7/75) 01-.06
	[2.] Reporting on Comparative Financial Statements of Nonprofit Organizations [Superseded December, 1976] . . . [07-.10]
	[3.] Reporting on Loss Contingencies (1/76) [Superseded April, 1988] [11-.14]
	[4.] Reports on Consolidated Financial Statements That Include Supplementary Consolidating Information (3/79) [Superseded December, 1980] [15-.20]
	[5.] Disclosures of Subsequent Events (7/79) [Superseded April, 1988] [21-.24]
	[6.] The Materiality of Uncertainties (10/79) [Superseded April, 1988] [25-.28]
	[7.] Reporting on an Uncertainty (10/79) [Withdrawn August, 1982] [29-.32]
	8. Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared on a Liquidation Basis of Accounting (12/84) 33-.38
	[9.] Quantifying Departures From Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (4/86) [Superseded April, 1988] . . . [39-.43]
	[10.] Updated Reports Resulting From the Retroactive Suspension of Earnings per Share and Segment Information Disclosure Requirements (3/79) [Withdrawn March, 1989] [44-.48]

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
9508	Reports on Audited Financial Statements: Auditing Interpretations of Section 508—continued	
	[11.] Restating Financial Statements Reported on by a Predecessor Auditor (9/86) [Superseded March, 1998] . . .	[.49-.50]
	12. Reference in Auditor's Standard Report to Management's Report (1/89) . . . . .	.51-.52
	[13.] Reference to Country of Origin in the Auditor's Standard Report (5/00) [Withdrawn October, 2000]	[.53-.55]
	14. Reporting on Audits Conducted in Accordance With Auditing Standards Generally Accepted in the United States of America and in Accordance With International Standards on Auditing (3/02) . . . . .	.56-.59
	15. Reporting as Successor Auditor When Prior-Period Audited Financial Statements Were Audited by a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations (11/02) . . . . .	.60-.75
	16. Effect on Auditor's Report of Omission of Schedule of Investments by Investment Partnerships That Are Exempt From Securities and Exchange Commission Registration Under the Investment Company Act of 1940 (4/9/03) . . . . .	.76-.84
	17. Clarification in the Audit Report of the Extent of Testing of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards (6/04) . . . . .	.85-.88
	18. Reference to PCAOB Standards in an Audit Report on a Nonissuer (6/04) . . . . .	.89-.92
530	Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report . . . . .	.01-.08
	Events Occurring After Completion of Field Work but Before Issuance of Report . . . . .	.03-.05
	Reissuance of the Independent Auditor's Report . . . . .	.06-.08
532	Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report . . . . .	.01-.20
	Introduction and Applicability . . . . .	.01
	General-Use and Restricted-Use Reports . . . . .	.02-.04
	Reporting on Subject Matter or Presentations Based on Measurement or Disclosure Criteria Contained in Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Provisions . . . . .	.05
	Reporting as a By-Product of a Financial Statement Audit . . . . .	.07-.11
	Combined Reports Covering Both Restricted-Use and General-Use Subject Matter or Presentations . . . . .	.12
	Inclusion of a Separate Restricted-Use Report in the Same Document With a General-Use Report . . . . .	.13
	Adding Other Specified Parties . . . . .	.14-.16
	Limiting the Distribution of Reports . . . . .	.18
	Report Language—Restricted Use . . . . .	.19
	Effective Date . . . . .	.20

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
534	Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries	.01-.16
	Purpose and Use of Financial Statements . . . . .	.02
	General and Fieldwork Standards . . . . .	.03-.05
	Compliance With Auditing Standards of Another Country . . . . .	.06
	Reporting Standards . . . . .	.07-.15
	Use Only Outside the United States . . . . .	.09-.13
	Use in the United States . . . . .	.14-.15
	Effective Date . . . . .	.16
9534	Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries: Auditing Interpretations of Section 534	
	1. Financial Statements for General Use Only Outside of the United States in Accordance With International Accounting Standards and International Standards on Auditing (5/96) . . . . .	.01-.04
543	Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors	.01-.17
	Principal Auditor's Course of Action . . . . .	.02-.03
	Decision Not to Make Reference . . . . .	.04-.05
	Decision to Make Reference . . . . .	.06-.09
	Procedures Applicable to Both Methods of Reporting . . . . .	.10-.11
	Additional Procedures Under Decision Not to Make Reference . . . . .	.12-.13
	Long-Term Investments . . . . .	.14
	Other Auditor's Report Departs From Standard Report . . . . .	.15
	Restated Financial Statements of Prior Years Following a Pooling of Interests . . . . .	.16-.17
9543	Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors: Auditing Interpretations of Section 543	
	1. Specific Procedures Performed by the Other Auditor at the Principal Auditor's Request (4/79) . . . . .	.01-.03
	2. Inquiries of the Principal Auditor by the Other Auditor (4/79) . . . . .	.04-.07
	3. Form of Inquiries of the Principal Auditor Made by the Other Auditor (4/79) . . . . .	.08-.10
	4. Form of Principal Auditor's Response to Inquiries From Other Auditors (4/79) . . . . .	.11-.14
	5. Procedures of the Principal Auditor (4/79) . . . . .	.15-.17
	6. Application of Additional Procedures Concerning the Audit Performed by the Other Auditor (12/81) . . . . .	.18-.20
	[7.] Reporting on Financial Statements Presented on a Comprehensive Annual Financial Report of a Governmental Entity When One Fund Has Been Audited by Another Auditor (10/89) [Withdrawn December, 1992].	[.21-.24]

Table of Contents

511

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
544	Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles Regulated Companies
	.02-.04 .02-.04
9544	Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles: Auditing Interpretations of Section 544
	[1.] Auditors' Reports Solely for Purposes of Filing With Insurance Regulatory Agencies (7/75) [Superseded October, 1979]
	[.01-.09]
	[2.] Reports in Filings Other Than With the Regulatory Agency on Financial Statements Prepared Using FHLBB Accounting Practices—Savings and Loan Associations (4/82) [Withdrawn March, 1989]
	[.10-.14]
550	Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements
	.01-.07
9550	Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements: Auditing Interpretations of Section 550
	[1.] Reports by Management of Internal Accounting Control (1/81) [Superseded May, 1994]
	[.01-.06]
	2. Reports by Management on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting (5/94)
	.07-.11
	3. Other References by Management to Internal Control Over Financial Reporting, Including References to the Independent Auditor (5/94)
	.12-.15
	4. Other Information in Electronic Sites Containing Audited Financial Statements (3/97)
	.16-.18
551	Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents
	.01-.23
	Reporting Responsibility
	.04-.11
	Reporting Examples
	.12-.14
	Supplementary Information Required by GAAP
	.15-.16
	Consolidating Information
	.17-.20
	Additional Commentary Concerning the Audit
	.21
	Co-Existing Financial Statements
	.22
	Effective Date
	.23
552	Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data
	.01-.12
	Condensed Financial Statements
	.03-.08
	Selected Financial Data
	.09-.11
	Effective Date
	.12

Section		Paragraph
558	Required Supplementary Information	.01-.11
	Applicability . . . . .	.02-.03
	Involvement With Information Outside Financial Statements . . . .	.04-.05
	Involvement With Required Supplementary Information . . . . .	.06
	Procedures . . . . .	.07
	Reporting on Required Supplementary Information. . . . .	.08-.11
9558	Required Supplementary Information: Auditing Interpretations of Section 558	
	1. Supplementary Oil and Gas Reserve Information (2/89) . . . .	.01-.06
560	Subsequent Events	.01-.12
	Auditing Procedures in the Subsequent Period . . . . .	.10-.12
9560	Subsequent Events: Auditing Interpretations of Section 560	
	[1.-4.] Lawyers' Letters [Superseded January, 1976]	[.01-.26]
561	Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report	.01-.10
9561	Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report: Auditing Interpretations of Section 561	
	1. Auditor's Association With Subsequently Discovered Information When the Auditor Has Resigned or Been Discharged (2/89) . . . . .	.01-.02

AU Section 504

Association With Financial Statements

(Supersedes SAS No. 1, sections 516, 517, and 518 and SAS No. 15, paragraphs 13–15)^[1]

Source: SAS No. 26; SAS No. 35; SAS No. 72.

See section 9504 for interpretations of this section.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1979.

.01 The fourth standard of reporting is:

The report shall either contain an expression of opinion regarding the financial statements, taken as a whole, or an assertion to the effect that an opinion cannot be expressed. When an overall opinion cannot be expressed, the reasons therefor should be stated. In all cases where an auditor's name is associated with financial statements, the report should contain a clear-cut indication of the character of the auditor's work, if any, and the degree of responsibility the auditor is taking.

The objective of the fourth reporting standard is to prevent misinterpretation of the degree of responsibility the accountant assumes when his name is associated with financial statements.

.02 This section defines *association* as that term is used in the fourth reporting standard. It provides guidance to an accountant associated with the financial statements of a public entity or with a nonpublic entity's financial statements that he has been engaged to audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards.²

.03 An accountant is associated with financial statements when he has consented to the use of his name in a report, document, or written communication containing the statements.³ Also, when an accountant submits to his client or others financial statements that he has prepared or assisted in preparing, he is deemed to be associated even though the accountant does not append his name to the statements. Although the accountant may participate in the preparation of financial statements, the statements are representations of management, and the fairness of their presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles is management's responsibility.

[1] [Footnote deleted to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.]

² For purposes of this section, a public entity is any entity (a) whose securities trade in a public market either on a stock exchange (domestic or foreign) or in the over-the-counter market, including securities quoted only locally or regionally, (b) that makes a filing with a regulatory agency in preparation for the sale of any class of its securities in a public market, or (c) a subsidiary, corporate joint venture, or other entity controlled by an entity covered by (a) or (b). Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services provide guidance in connection with the unaudited financial statements or other unaudited financial information of a nonpublic entity.

³ However, this section does not apply to data, such as tax returns, prepared solely for submission to taxing authorities.

.04 An accountant may be associated with audited or unaudited financial statements. Financial statements are audited if the accountant has applied auditing procedures sufficient to permit him to report on them as described in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*. The unaudited interim financial statements (or financial information) of a public entity are reviewed when the accountant has applied procedures sufficient to permit him to report on them as described in section 722, *Interim Financial Information*.

Disclaimer of Opinion on Unaudited Financial Statements

.05 When an accountant is associated with the financial statements of a public entity, but has not audited or reviewed⁴ such statements, the form of report to be issued is as follows:

The accompanying balance sheet of X Company as of December 31, 19X1, and the related statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended were not audited by us and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion on them.

(Signature and date)

This disclaimer of opinion is the means by which the accountant complies with the fourth standard of reporting when associated with unaudited financial statements in these circumstances. The disclaimer may accompany the unaudited financial statements or it may be placed directly on them. In addition, each page of the financial statements should be clearly and conspicuously marked as unaudited. When an accountant issues this form of disclaimer of opinion, he has no responsibility to apply any procedures beyond reading the financial statements for obvious material misstatements. Any procedures that may have been applied should not be described, except in the limited circumstances set forth in paragraphs .18–.20. Describing procedures that may have been applied might cause the reader to believe the financial statements have been audited or reviewed.

.06 If the accountant is aware that his name is to be included in a client-prepared written communication of a public entity containing financial statements that have not been audited or reviewed, he should request (a) that his name not be included in the communication or (b) that the financial statements be marked as unaudited and that there be a notation that he does not express an opinion on them. If the client does not comply, the accountant should advise the client that he has not consented to the use of his name and should consider what other actions might be appropriate.⁵

Disclaimer of Opinion on Unaudited Financial Statements Prepared on a Comprehensive Basis of Accounting

.07 When an accountant is associated with unaudited financial statements of a public entity prepared in accordance with a comprehensive basis of

⁴ When a public entity does not have its annual financial statements audited, an accountant may be requested to review its annual or interim financial statements. In those circumstances, an accountant may make a review and look to the guidance in Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services for the standards and procedures and form of report applicable to such an engagement.

⁵ In considering what actions, if any, may be appropriate in the circumstances, the accountant may wish to consult his legal counsel.

accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles, he should follow the guidance provided by paragraph .05, except that he should modify the identification of financial statements in his disclaimer of opinion (see section 623.02–.10, *Special Reports*).⁶ For example, a disclaimer of opinion on cash-basis statements might be worded as follows:

The accompanying statement of assets and liabilities resulting from cash transactions of XYZ Corporation as of December 31, 19X1, and the related statement of revenues collected and expenses paid during the year then ended were not audited by us and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion on them.

(Signature and date)

A note to the financial statements should describe how the basis of presentation differs from generally accepted accounting principles, but the monetary effect of such differences need not be stated.

Disclaimer of Opinion When Not Independent

.08 The second general standard requires that “In all matters relating to the assignment, an independence in mental attitude is to be maintained by the auditor or auditors.” The independent public accountant must be without bias with respect to the client; otherwise, he would lack that impartiality necessary for the dependability of his findings. Whether the accountant is independent is something he must decide as a matter of professional judgment.

.09 When an accountant is not independent, any procedures he might perform would not be in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, and he would be precluded from expressing an opinion on such statements. Accordingly, he should disclaim an opinion with respect to the financial statements and should state specifically that he is not independent.

.10 If the financial statements are those of a nonpublic entity, the accountant should look to the guidance in Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services. In all other circumstances, regardless of the extent of procedures applied, the accountant should follow the guidance in paragraph .05, except that the disclaimer of opinion should be modified to state specifically that he is not independent. The reasons for lack of independence and any procedures he has performed should not be described; including such matters might confuse the reader concerning the importance of the impairment of independence. An example of such a report is as follows:

We are not independent with respect to XYZ Company, and the accompanying balance sheet as of December 31, 19X1, and the related statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended were not audited by us and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion on them.

(Signature and date)

Circumstances Requiring a Modified Disclaimer

.11 If the accountant concludes on the basis of facts known to him that the unaudited financial statements on which he is disclaiming an opinion are not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, which include adequate disclosure, he should suggest appropriate revision; failing that, he should describe the departure in his disclaimer of opinion. This description should refer specifically to the nature of the departure and, if practicable, state the effects on the financial statements or include the necessary information for adequate disclosure.

⁶ Reference to generally accepted accounting principles in this section includes, where applicable, another comprehensive basis of accounting.

.12 When the effects of the departure on the financial statements are not reasonably determinable, the disclaimer of opinion should so state. When a departure from generally accepted accounting principles involves inadequate disclosure, it may not be practicable for the accountant to include the omitted disclosures in his report. For example, when management has elected to omit substantially all of the disclosures, the accountant should clearly indicate that in his report, but the accountant would not be expected to include such disclosures in his report.

.13 If the client will not agree to revision of the financial statements or will not accept the accountant's disclaimer of opinion with the description of the departure from generally accepted accounting principles, the accountant should refuse to be associated with the statements and, if necessary, withdraw from the engagement.

Reporting on Audited and Unaudited Financial Statements in Comparative Form

.14 When unaudited financial statements are presented in comparative form with audited financial statements in documents filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, such statements should be clearly marked as "unaudited" but should not be referred to in the auditor's report.

.15 When unaudited financial statements are presented in comparative form with audited financial statements in any other document, the financial statements that have not been audited should be clearly marked to indicate their status and either (a) the report on the prior period should be reissued (see section 530.06-.08)⁷ or (b) the report on the current period should include as a separate paragraph an appropriate description of the responsibility assumed for the financial statements of the prior period (see paragraphs .16 and .17). Either reissuance or reference in a separate paragraph is acceptable; in both circumstances, the accountant should consider the current form and manner of presentation of the financial statements of the prior period in light of the information of which he has become aware during his current engagement.

.16 When the financial statements of the prior period have been audited and the report on the current period is to contain a separate paragraph, it should indicate (a) that the financial statements of the prior period were audited previously, (b) the date of the previous report, (c) the type of opinion expressed previously, (d) if the opinion was other than unqualified, the substantive reasons therefor, and (e) that no auditing procedures were performed after the date of the previous report. An example of such a separate paragraph is as follows:

The financial statements for the year ended December 31, 19X1, were audited by us (other accountants) and we (they) expressed an unqualified opinion on them in our (their) report dated March 1, 19X2, but we (they) have not performed any auditing procedures since that date.

.17 When the financial statements of the prior period have not been audited and the report on the current period is to contain a separate paragraph, it should include (a) a statement of the service performed in the prior period, (b) the date of the report on that service, (c) a description of any material modifications noted in that report, and (d) a statement that the service was less in scope than an audit and does not provide the basis for the

⁷ For reissuance of a compilation or review report, see Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services.

expression of an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole. When the financial statements are those of a public entity, the separate paragraph should include a disclaimer of opinion (see paragraph .05) or a description of a review. When the financial statements are those of a nonpublic entity and the financial statements were compiled or reviewed, the separate paragraph should contain an appropriate description of the compilation or review. For example, a separate paragraph describing a review might be worded as follows:

The 20X1 financial statements were reviewed by us (other accountants) and our (their) report thereon, dated March 1, 20X2, stated we (they) were not aware of any material modifications that should be made to those statements for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. However, a review is substantially less in scope than an audit and does not provide a basis for the expression of an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole.

A separate paragraph describing a compilation might be worded as follows:

The 19X1 financial statements were compiled by us (other accountants) and our (their) report thereon, dated March 1, 19X2, stated we (they) did not audit or review those financial statements and, accordingly, express no opinion or other form of assurance on them.

Negative Assurance

.18 When an accountant, for whatever reason, disclaims an opinion on financial statements his disclaimer should not be contradicted by the inclusion of expressions of assurance on the absence of knowledge of departures from generally accepted accounting principles except as specifically recognized as appropriate in applicable standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.

.19 Negative assurances, for example, are permissible in letters for underwriters in which the independent auditor reports on limited procedures followed with respect to unaudited financial statements or other financial data pertinent to a registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (see section 634, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties**).

[.20] [Superseded, February 1993, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 72.] (See section 634.)

* [Section 631, formerly 630, changed by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 38 (superseded). Section 634, formerly 631, changed by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 49 (superseded). Title of section 634 changed, February 1993, to reflect the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 72.] (See section 634.)



AU Section 9504

Association With Financial Statements: Auditing Interpretations of Section 504

1. Annual Report Disclosure of Unaudited Fourth Quarter Interim Data

.01 Question—APB Opinion No. 28, paragraph 31 [AC section I73.147], which applies to publicly traded companies, states: “If interim financial data and disclosures are not separately reported for the fourth quarter, security holders often make inferences about that quarter by subtracting data based on the third quarter interim report from the annual results. In the absence of a separate fourth quarter report or disclosure of the results . . . for that quarter in the annual report, disposals of segments of a business and extraordinary, unusual, or infrequently occurring items recognized in the fourth quarter, as well as the aggregate effect of year-end adjustments which are material to the results of that quarter . . . shall be disclosed in the annual report in a note to the annual financial statements.” Does the auditor have an obligation, arising from the disclosure requirements of paragraph 31 of Opinion No. 28 [AC section I73.147], to audit interim data?

.02 Interpretation—No. If the auditor has not been specifically engaged to audit interim information, he does not have an obligation to audit interim data as a result of his audit of the annual financial statements.

.03 Disclosure of fourth quarter adjustments and other disclosures required by paragraph 31 [AC section I73.147] would appear in a note to the annual financial statements of a publicly traded company only if fourth quarter data were not separately distributed or did not appear elsewhere in the annual report. Consequently, such disclosures are not essential for a fair presentation of the annual financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

.04 If interim financial data and disclosures are not separately reported (as outlined in paragraph 30 of Opinion No. 28 [AC section I73.146]) for the fourth quarter, the independent auditor, during his audit of the annual financial statements, should inquire as to whether there are fourth quarter items that need to be disclosed in a note to the annual financial statements.

.05 Information on fourth quarter adjustments and similar items that appear in notes to the annual financial statements to comply with paragraph 31 of Opinion No. 28 [AC section I73.147] would ordinarily not be audited separately and, therefore, the information would be labeled “unaudited” or “not covered by auditor’s report.”

.06 If a publicly traded company fails to comply with the provisions of paragraph 31 of Opinion No. 28 [AC section I73.147], the auditor should suggest appropriate revision; failing that, he should call attention in his report to the omission of the information. The auditor need not qualify his opinion on the annual financial statements since the disclosure is not essential for a fair presentation of those statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

.07 Reference should be made to section 722 for guidance with respect to reviews of interim financial information of SEC registrants or non-SEC registrants that make a filing with a regulatory agency in preparation for a public offering or listing.

[Issue Date: November, 1979; Revised: November, 2002.]

[2.] Association of the Auditor of an Acquired Company With Unaudited Statements in a Listing Application

[.08-.12] [Deleted May, 1980.]

[3.] Association of the Auditor of the Acquiring Company With Unaudited Statements in a Listing Application

[.13-.14] [Deleted May, 1980.]

4. Auditor's Identification With Condensed Financial Data

.15 *Question*—Section 150.02 states in part: "In all cases where an auditor's name is associated with financial statements, the report should contain a clear-cut indication of the character of the auditor's work, if any, and the degree of responsibility the auditor is taking." Section 504.03 states that "An accountant is associated with financial statements when he has consented to the use of his name in a report, document, or written communication containing the statements." Is the auditor "associated" with condensed financial data when he is identified by a financial reporting service as being a company's independent auditor or when his report is reproduced and presented with such data?

.16 *Interpretation*—No. The accountant has not consented to the use of his name when it is published by a financial reporting service. Financial data released to the public by a company and the name of its auditor are public information. Accordingly, neither the auditor nor his client has the ability to require a financial reporting service to withhold publishing such information.

.17 Financial reporting services, such as Dun & Bradstreet and Moody's Investors Service, furnish to subscribers information and ratings concerning commercial enterprises as a basis for credit, insurance, marketing and other business purposes. Those reports frequently include condensed financial data and other data such as payments to trade creditors, loan experience with banks, a brief history of the entity and a description of its operations. Also, as part of its report, the financial service often discloses the names of the officers and directors or principals or owners of the company and the name of the company's auditor.

.18 In the context in which the auditor's name appears, it is doubtful that readers will assume that he has audited the information presented. However, the AICPA has suggested to certain financial reporting services that they identify data as "unaudited" if the data has been extracted from unaudited financial statements. Also, the AICPA has suggested that when summarized financial data is presented together with an auditor's report on complete financial statements (including notes), the financial reporting services state that the auditor's report applies to the complete financial statements which are not presented.

[Issue Date: November, 1979.]

5. Applicability of Guidance on Reporting When Not Independent

.19 *Question*—Section 504 describes the reporting responsibilities of the certified public accountant who has determined that he is not independent

with respect to financial statements with which he is associated. That section, however, does not indicate how he should determine whether he is independent. What should the certified public accountant consider in determining whether he is independent? Also, should his consideration be any different for an engagement to prepare unaudited financial statements?

.20 Interpretation—Section 504 explains the certified public accountant's reporting responsibilities when he is not independent. However, it does not attempt to explain how the certified public accountant determines whether he is independent because that is a question of professional ethics. Section 220.04 states: "The profession has established, through the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct, precepts to guard against the . . . loss of independence." The AICPA, state CPA societies and state boards of accountancy have issued pronouncements to provide the certified public accountant with guidance to aid him in determining whether he is independent.

.21 The certified public accountant should consider the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct in determining whether he is independent and whether the reporting requirements of section 504 apply. He should also consider the ethical requirements of his state CPA society or state board of accountancy.

.22 Section 504.10 states that the reporting guidance applies, *regardless of the extent of procedures applied*, (emphasis added) in all circumstances other than when the financial statements are those of a non-public entity.¹ Thus, the accountant's consideration of whether he is independent should be the same whether the financial statements are audited or unaudited.

[Issue Date: November, 1979.]

[6.] Reporting on Solvency

[.23–.35] [Rescinded May, 1988 by the issuance of attestation interpretation, "Responding to Requests for Reports on Matters Relating to Solvency."] (See AT section 9101.23–.33.) [Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

¹ If the financial statements are those of a non-public entity, the accountant should look to the guidance in Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services.

AU Section 508****Reports on Audited Financial Statements***

(Supersedes sections 505, 509, 542, 545, and 546)

Source: SAS No. 58; SAS No. 64; SAS No. 79; SAS No. 85; SAS No. 93; SAS No. 98.

See section 9508 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for reports issued or reissued on or after January 1, 1989, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction

.01 This section applies to auditors' reports issued in connection with audits¹ of historical financial statements that are intended to present financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. It distinguishes the types of reports, describes the circumstances in which each is appropriate, and provides example reports.

.02 This section does not apply to unaudited financial statements as described in section 504, *Association With Financial Statements*, nor does it apply to reports on incomplete financial information or other special presentations as described in section 623, *Special Reports*.

.03 Justification for the expression of the auditor's opinion rests on the conformity of his or her audit with generally accepted auditing standards and on the findings. Generally accepted auditing standards include four standards of reporting.² This section is concerned primarily with the relationship of the fourth reporting standard to the language of the auditor's report.

.04 The fourth standard of reporting is as follows:

The report shall either contain an expression of opinion regarding the financial statements, taken as a whole, or an assertion to the effect that an opinion cannot

* This section has been revised to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.

¹ An audit, for purposes of this section, is defined as an examination of historical financial statements performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards in effect at the time the audit is performed. Generally accepted auditing standards include the ten standards as well as the Statements on Auditing Standards that interpret those standards. In some cases, regulatory authorities may have additional requirements applicable to entities under their jurisdiction and auditors of such entities should consider those requirements.

² This section revises the second standard of reporting as follows:
The report shall identify those circumstances in which such principles have not been consistently observed in the current period in relation to the preceding period.
Previously, the second standard required the auditor's report to state whether accounting principles had been consistently applied. As revised, the second standard requires the auditor to add an explanatory paragraph to his report only if accounting principles have not been applied consistently. (See section 420, *Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*.) Paragraphs .17-.19 of this section provide reporting guidance under these circumstances.

be expressed. When an overall opinion cannot be expressed, the reasons therefor should be stated. In all cases where an auditor's name is associated with financial statements, the report should contain a clear-cut indication of the character of the auditor's work, if any, and the degree of responsibility the auditor is taking.

.05 The objective of the fourth standard is to prevent misinterpretation of the degree of responsibility the auditor is assuming when his or her name is associated with financial statements. Reference in the fourth reporting standard to the financial statements "taken as a whole" applies equally to a complete set of financial statements and to an individual financial statement (for example, to a balance sheet) for one or more periods presented. (Paragraph .65 discusses the fourth standard of reporting as it applies to comparative financial statements.) The auditor may express an unqualified opinion on one of the financial statements and express a qualified or adverse opinion or disclaim an opinion on another if the circumstances warrant.

.06 The auditor's report is customarily issued in connection with an entity's basic financial statements—balance sheet, statement of income, statement of retained earnings and statement of cash flows. Each financial statement audited should be specifically identified in the introductory paragraph of the auditor's report. If the basic financial statements include a separate statement of changes in stockholders' equity accounts, it should be identified in the introductory paragraph of the report but need not be reported on separately in the opinion paragraph since such changes are part of the presentation of financial position, results of operations, and cash flows.

The Auditor's Standard Report

.07 The auditor's standard report states that the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, an entity's financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. This conclusion may be expressed only when the auditor has formed such an opinion on the basis of an audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards.

.08 The auditor's standard report identifies the financial statements audited in an opening (introductory) paragraph, describes the nature of an audit in a scope paragraph, and expresses the auditor's opinion in a separate opinion paragraph. The basic elements of the report are the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*³
- b. A statement that the financial statements identified in the report were audited
- c. A statement that the financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management⁴ and that the auditor's responsibility is to express an opinion on the financial statements based on his or her audit

³ This section does not require a title for an auditor's report if the auditor is not independent. See section 504, *Association With Financial Statements*, for guidance on reporting when the auditor is not independent.

⁴ In some instances, a document containing the auditor's report may include a statement by management regarding its responsibility for the presentation of the financial statements. Nevertheless, the auditor's report should state that the financial statements are management's responsibility.

- d. A statement that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards (for example, auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted auditing standards)
- e. A statement that those standards require that the auditor plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement
- f. A statement that an audit includes—
 - (1) Examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements
 - (2) Assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management
 - (3) Evaluating the overall financial statement presentation⁵
- g. A statement that the auditor believes that his or her audit provides a reasonable basis for his or her opinion
- h. An opinion as to whether the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of the balance sheet date and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the period then ended in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. The opinion should include an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those accounting principles (for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted accounting principles)⁶
- i. The manual or printed signature of the auditor's firm
- j. The date⁷ of the audit report

The form of the auditor's standard report on financial statements covering a single year is as follows:

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying balance sheet of X Company as of December 31, 20XX, and the related statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

⁵ Section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraphs .03 and .04, discuss the auditor's evaluation of the overall presentation of the financial statements. [As amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

⁶ A U.S. auditor also may be engaged to report on the financial statements of a U.S. entity that have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country. In those circumstances, the auditor should refer to the guidance in section 534, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries*. [Footnote added, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

⁷ For guidance on dating the auditor's report, see section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of X Company as of [at] December 31, 20XX, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[Signature]

[Date]

The form of the auditor's standard report on comparative financial statements is as follows:⁸

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying balance sheets of X Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the years then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of X Company as of [at] December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[Signature]

[Date]

[As amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

⁸ If statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows are presented on a comparative basis for one or more prior periods, but the balance sheet(s) as of the end of one (or more) of the prior period(s) is not presented, the phrase "for the years then ended" should be changed to indicate that the auditor's opinion applies to each period for which statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows are presented, such as "for each of the three years in the period ended [date of latest balance sheet]." [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

.09 The report may be addressed to the company whose financial statements are being audited or to its board of directors or stockholders. A report on the financial statements of an unincorporated entity should be addressed as circumstances dictate, for example, to the partners, to the general partner, or to the proprietor. Occasionally, an auditor is retained to audit the financial statements of a company that is not a client; in such a case, the report is customarily addressed to the client and not to the directors or stockholders of the company whose financial statements are being audited.

.10 This section also discusses the circumstances that may require the auditor to depart from the standard report and provides reporting guidance in such circumstances. This section is organized by type of opinion that the auditor may express in each of the various circumstances presented; this section describes what is meant by the various audit opinions:

- *Unqualified opinion.* An unqualified opinion states that the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows of the entity in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. This is the opinion expressed in the standard report discussed in paragraph .08.
- *Explanatory language added to the auditor's standard report.* Certain circumstances, while not affecting the auditor's unqualified opinion on the financial statements, may require that the auditor add an explanatory paragraph (or other explanatory language) to his or her report.
- *Qualified opinion.* A qualified opinion states that, except for the effects of the matter(s) to which the qualification relates, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows of the entity in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.
- *Adverse opinion.* An adverse opinion states that the financial statements do not present fairly the financial position, results of operations, or cash flows of the entity in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.
- *Disclaimer of opinion.* A disclaimer of opinion states that the auditor does not express an opinion on the financial statements.

These opinions are discussed in greater detail throughout the remainder of this section.

Explanatory Language Added to the Auditor's Standard Report

.11 Certain circumstances, while not affecting the auditor's unqualified opinion, may require that the auditor add an explanatory⁹ paragraph (or other explanatory language) to the standard report.¹⁰ These circumstances include:

- a. The auditor's opinion is based in part on the report of another auditor (paragraphs .12 and .13).

⁹ Unless otherwise required by the provisions of this section, an explanatory paragraph may precede or follow the opinion paragraph in the auditor's report. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

¹⁰ See footnote 3. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

- b. To prevent the financial statements from being misleading because of unusual circumstances, the financial statements contain a departure from an accounting principle promulgated by a body designated by the AICPA Council to establish such principles (paragraphs .14 and .15).
- c. There is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.¹¹
- d. There has been a material change between periods in accounting principles or in the method of their application (paragraphs .16 through .18).
- e. Certain circumstances relating to reports on comparative financial statements exist (paragraphs .68, .69, and .72 through .74).
- f. Selected quarterly financial data required by SEC Regulation S-K has been omitted or has not been reviewed. (See section 722, *Interim Financial Information*, paragraph .50.)
- g. Supplementary information required by the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB), or the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB) has been omitted, the presentation of such information departs materially from FASB, GASB, or FASAB guidelines, the auditor is unable to complete prescribed procedures with respect to such information, or the auditor is unable to remove substantial doubts about whether the supplementary information conforms to FASB, GASB, or FASAB guidelines. (See section 558, *Required Supplementary Information*, paragraph .02.)
- h. Other information in a document containing audited financial statements is materially inconsistent with information appearing in the financial statements. (See section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .04.)

In addition, the auditor may add an explanatory paragraph to emphasize a matter regarding the financial statements (paragraph .19). [As amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79. Revised, November 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 100.]

Opinion Based in Part on Report of Another Auditor

.12 When the auditor decides to make reference to the report of another auditor as a basis, in part, for his or her opinion, he or she should disclose this fact in the introductory paragraph of his or her report and should refer to the report of the other auditor in expressing his or her opinion. These references indicate division of responsibility for performance of the audit. (See section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*.)

.13 An example of a report indicating a division of responsibility follows:

¹¹ Section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, describes the auditor's responsibility to evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time and, when applicable, to consider the adequacy of financial statement disclosure and to include an explanatory paragraph in the report to reflect his or her conclusions. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the consolidated balance sheets of ABC Company and subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related consolidated statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the years then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We did not audit the financial statements of B Company, a wholly-owned subsidiary, which statements reflect total assets of \$ _____ and \$ _____ as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, respectively, and total revenues of \$ _____ and \$ _____ for the years then ended. Those statements were audited by other auditors whose report has been furnished to us, and our opinion, insofar as it relates to the amounts included for B Company, is based solely on the report of the other auditors.

We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits and the report of other auditors provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, based on our audits and the report of other auditors, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company and subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for the years then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Departure From a Promulgated Accounting Principle

.14 Rule 203 [ET section 203.01] of the Code of Professional Conduct of the AICPA states:

A member shall not (1) express an opinion or state affirmatively that the financial statements or other financial data of any entity are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or (2) state that he or she is not aware of any material modifications that should be made to such statements or data in order for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, if such statements or data contain any departure from an accounting principle promulgated by bodies designated by Council to establish such principles that has a material effect on the statements or data taken as a whole. If, however, the statements or data contain such a departure and the member can demonstrate that due to unusual circumstances the financial statements or data would otherwise have been misleading, the member can comply with the rule by describing the departure, its approximate effects, if practicable, and the reasons why compliance with the principle would result in a misleading statement.

.15 When the circumstances contemplated by Rule 203 [ET section 203.01] are present, the auditor's report should include, in a separate paragraph or paragraphs, the information required by the rule. In such a case, it is appropriate for the auditor to express an unqualified opinion with respect to

the conformity of the financial statements with generally accepted accounting principles unless there are other reasons, not associated with the departure from a promulgated principle, not to do so. (See section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*.) [Title of section 411 amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

Former paragraphs .16 through .33 and related footnotes have been deleted and all subsequent paragraphs and footnotes renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996.

Lack of Consistency

.16 The auditor's standard report implies that the auditor is satisfied that the comparability of financial statements between periods has not been materially affected by changes in accounting principles and that such principles have been consistently applied between or among periods because either (a) no change in accounting principles has occurred, or (b) there has been a change in accounting principles or in the method of their application, but the effect of the change on the comparability of the financial statements is not material. In these cases, the auditor should not refer to consistency in the report. If, however, there has been a change in accounting principles or in the method of their application that has a material effect on the comparability of the company's financial statements, the auditor should refer to the change in an explanatory paragraph of the report. Such explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) should identify the nature of the change and refer the reader to the note in the financial statements that discusses the change in detail. The auditor's concurrence with a change is implicit unless he or she takes exception to the change in expressing his or her opinion as to fair presentation of the financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.¹² When there is a change in accounting principles, there are also other matters that the auditor should consider (see paragraphs .50 through .57). [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.17 Following is an example of an appropriate explanatory paragraph:

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, the Company changed its method of computing depreciation in 20X2.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.18 The addition of this explanatory paragraph in the auditor's report is required in reports on financial statements of subsequent years as long as the

¹² With respect to the method of accounting for the effect of a change in accounting principle, see Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 20, *Accounting Changes*, including paragraph 4 [AC section A06.103], which states that methods of accounting for changes in principles resulting from the implementation of new pronouncements is provided in those pronouncements. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

year of the change is presented and reported on.¹³ However, if the accounting change is accounted for by retroactive restatement of the financial statements affected, the additional paragraph is required only in the year of the change since, in subsequent years, all periods presented will be comparable. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

Emphasis of a Matter

.19 In any report on financial statements, the auditor may emphasize a matter regarding the financial statements. Such explanatory information should be presented in a separate paragraph of the auditor's report. Phrases such as "with the foregoing [following] explanation" should not be used in the opinion paragraph if an emphasis paragraph is included in the auditor's report. Emphasis paragraphs are never required; they may be added solely at the auditor's discretion. Examples of matters the auditor may wish to emphasize are—

- That the entity is a component of a larger business enterprise.
- That the entity has had significant transactions with related parties.
- Unusually important subsequent events.
- Accounting matters, other than those involving a change or changes in accounting principles, affecting the comparability of the financial statements with those of the preceding period.

[Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

Departures From Unqualified Opinions

Qualified Opinions

.20 Certain circumstances may require a qualified opinion. A qualified opinion states that, *except for* the effects of the matter to which the qualification relates, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Such an opinion is expressed when—

- a. There is a lack of sufficient competent evidential matter or there are restrictions on the scope of the audit that have led the auditor to conclude that he or she cannot express an unqualified opinion and he or she has concluded not to disclaim an opinion (paragraphs .22–.34).
- b. The auditor believes, on the basis of his or her audit, that the financial statements contain a departure from generally accepted accounting principles, the effect of which is material, and he or she has concluded not to express an adverse opinion (paragraphs .35–.57).

¹³ An exception to this requirement occurs when a change in accounting principle that does not require a cumulative effect adjustment is made at the beginning of the earliest year presented and reported on. That exception is addressed in the auditing interpretation of section 420, *Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, titled "Impact on the Auditor's Report of FIFO to LIFO Change in Comparative Financial Statements," (section 9420.16–.23). [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.21 When the auditor expresses a qualified opinion, he or she should disclose all of the substantive reasons in one or more separate explanatory paragraph(s) preceding the opinion paragraph of the report. The auditor should also include, in the opinion paragraph, the appropriate qualifying language and a reference to the explanatory paragraph. A qualified opinion should include the word *except* or *exception* in a phrase such as *except for* or *with the exception of*. Phrases such as *subject to* and *with the foregoing explanation* are not clear or forceful enough and should not be used. Since accompanying notes are part of the financial statements, wording such as *fairly presented, in all material respects, when read in conjunction with Note 1* is likely to be misunderstood and should not be used. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

Scope Limitations

.22 The auditor can determine that he or she is able to express an unqualified opinion only if the audit has been conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and if he or she has therefore been able to apply all the procedures he considers necessary in the circumstances. Restrictions on the scope of the audit, whether imposed by the client or by circumstances, such as the timing of his or her work, the inability to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter, or an inadequacy in the accounting records, may require the auditor to qualify his or her opinion or to disclaim an opinion. In such instances, the reasons for the auditor's qualification of opinion or disclaimer of opinion should be described in the report. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.23 The auditor's decision to qualify his or her opinion or disclaim an opinion because of a scope limitation depends on his or her assessment of the importance of the omitted procedure(s) to his or her ability to form an opinion on the financial statements being audited. This assessment will be affected by the nature and magnitude of the potential effects of the matters in question and by their significance to the financial statements. If the potential effects relate to many financial statement items, this significance is likely to be greater than if only a limited number of items is involved. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.24 Common restrictions on the scope of the audit include those applying to the observation of physical inventories and the confirmation of accounts receivable by direct communication with debtors.¹⁴ Another common scope restriction involves accounting for long-term investments when the auditor has not been able to obtain audited financial statements of an investee. Restrictions on the application of these or other audit procedures to important elements of the financial statements require the auditor to decide whether he or she has examined sufficient competent evidential matter to permit him or

¹⁴ Circumstances such as the timing of the work may make it impossible for the auditor to accomplish these procedures. In this case, if the auditor is able to satisfy himself or herself as to inventories or accounts receivable by applying alternative procedures, there is no significant limitation on the scope of the work, and the report need not include a reference to the omission of the procedures or the use of alternative procedures. It is important to understand, however, that section 331, *Inventories*, states that "it will always be necessary for the auditor to make, or observe, some physical counts of the inventory and apply appropriate tests of intervening transactions." [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

her to express an unqualified or qualified opinion, or whether he or she should disclaim an opinion. When restrictions that significantly limit the scope of the audit are imposed by the client, ordinarily the auditor should disclaim an opinion on the financial statements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.25 When a qualified opinion results from a limitation on the scope of the audit or an insufficiency of evidential matter, the situation should be described in an explanatory paragraph preceding the opinion paragraph and referred to in both the scope and opinion paragraphs of the auditor's report. It is not appropriate for the scope of the audit to be explained in a note to the financial statements, since the description of the audit scope is the responsibility of the auditor and not that of the client. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.26 When an auditor qualifies his or her opinion because of a scope limitation, the wording in the opinion paragraph should indicate that the qualification pertains to the possible effects on the financial statements and not to the scope limitation itself. Wording such as "In our opinion, except for the above-mentioned limitation on the scope of our audit . . ." bases the exception on the restriction itself, rather than on the possible effects on the financial statements and, therefore, is unacceptable. An example of a qualified opinion related to a scope limitation concerning an investment in a foreign affiliate (assuming the effects of the limitation are such that the auditor has concluded that a disclaimer of opinion is not appropriate) follows:

Independent Auditor's Report

[Same first paragraph as the standard report]

Except as discussed in the following paragraph, we conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

We were unable to obtain audited financial statements supporting the Company's investment in a foreign affiliate stated at \$_____ and \$_____ at December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, respectively, or its equity in earnings of that affiliate of \$_____ and \$_____, which is included in net income for the years then ended as described in Note X to the financial statements; nor were we able to satisfy ourselves as to the carrying value of the investment in the foreign affiliate or the equity in its earnings by other auditing procedures.

In our opinion, except for the effects of such adjustments, if any, as might have been determined to be necessary had we been able to examine evidence regarding the foreign affiliate investment and earnings, the financial statements referred to in the first paragraph above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of X Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.27 Other scope limitations. Sometimes, notes to financial statements may contain unaudited information, such as pro forma calculations or other similar disclosures. If the unaudited information (for example, an investor's share, material in amount, of an investee's earnings recognized on the equity method) is such that it should be subjected to auditing procedures in order for the auditor to form an opinion with respect to the financial statements taken as a whole, the auditor should apply the procedures he or she deems necessary to the unaudited information. If the auditor has not been able to apply the procedures he or she considers necessary, the auditor should qualify his or her opinion or disclaim an opinion because of a limitation on the scope of the audit. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.28 If, however, these disclosures are not necessary to fairly present the financial position, operating results, or cash flows on which the auditor is reporting, such disclosures may be identified as *unaudited* or as *not covered by the auditor's report*. For example, the pro forma effects of a business combination or of a subsequent event may be labelled unaudited. Therefore, while the event or transaction giving rise to the disclosures in these circumstances should be audited, the pro forma disclosures of that event or transaction would not be. The auditor should be aware, however, that section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*, states that, if the auditor is aware of a material subsequent event that has occurred after the completion of fieldwork but before issuance of the report that should be disclosed, the auditor's only options are to dual date the report or date the report as of the date of the subsequent event and extend the procedures for review of subsequent events to that date. Labelling the note unaudited is not an acceptable alternative in these circumstances. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.29 Uncertainties and scope limitations. A matter involving an uncertainty is one that is expected to be resolved at a future date, at which time conclusive evidential matter concerning its outcome would be expected to become available. Uncertainties include, but are not limited to, contingencies covered by Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*, and matters related to estimates covered by Statement of Position 94-6, *Disclosure of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties*. [Paragraph added, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

.30 Conclusive evidential matter concerning the ultimate outcome of uncertainties cannot be expected to exist at the time of the audit because the outcome and related evidential matter are prospective. In these circumstances, management is responsible for estimating the effect of future events on the financial statements, or determining that a reasonable estimate cannot be made and making the required disclosures, all in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, based on management's analysis of existing conditions. An audit includes an assessment of whether the evidential matter is sufficient to support management's analysis. Absence of the existence of information related to the outcome of an uncertainty does not necessarily lead to a conclusion that the evidential matter supporting management's assertion is not sufficient. Rather, the auditor's judgment regarding the sufficiency of the evidential matter is based on the evidential matter that is, or should be, available. If, after considering the existing conditions and available evidence, the auditor concludes that sufficient evidential matter supports management's

assertions about the nature of a matter involving an uncertainty and its presentation or disclosure in the financial statements, an unqualified opinion ordinarily is appropriate. [Paragraph added, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

.31 If the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient evidential matter to support management's assertions about the nature of a matter involving an uncertainty and its presentation or disclosure in the financial statements, the auditor should consider the need to express a qualified opinion or to disclaim an opinion because of a scope limitation. A qualification or disclaimer of opinion because of a scope limitation is appropriate if sufficient evidential matter related to an uncertainty does or did exist but was not available to the auditor for reasons such as management's record retention policies or a restriction imposed by management. [Paragraph added, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

.32 Scope limitations related to uncertainties should be differentiated from situations in which the auditor concludes that the financial statements are materially misstated due to departures from generally accepted accounting principles related to uncertainties. Such departures may be caused by inadequate disclosure concerning the uncertainty, the use of inappropriate accounting principles, or the use of unreasonable accounting estimates. Paragraphs .45 to .49 provide guidance to the auditor when financial statements contain departures from generally accepted accounting principles related to uncertainties. [Paragraph added, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

.33 *Limited reporting engagements.* The auditor may be asked to report on one basic financial statement and not on the others. For example, he or she may be asked to report on the balance sheet and not on the statements of income, retained earnings or cash flows. These engagements do not involve scope limitations if the auditor's access to information underlying the basic financial statements is not limited and if the auditor applies all the procedures he or she considers necessary in the circumstances; rather, such engagements involve limited reporting objectives. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.34 An auditor may be asked to report on the balance sheet only. In this case, the auditor may express an opinion on the balance sheet only. An example of an unqualified opinion on a balance-sheet-only audit follows (the report assumes that the auditor has been able to satisfy himself or herself regarding the consistency of application of accounting principles):

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying balance sheet of X Company as of December 31, 20XX. This financial statement is the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on this financial statement based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the balance sheet is free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the balance sheet. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall

balance sheet presentation. We believe that our audit of the balance sheet provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the balance sheet referred to above presents fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of X Company as of December 31, 20XX, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

Departure From a Generally Accepted Accounting Principle

.35 When financial statements are materially affected by a departure from generally accepted accounting principles and the auditor has audited the statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, he or she should express a qualified (paragraphs .36 through .57) or an adverse (paragraphs .58 through .60) opinion. The basis for such opinion should be stated in the report. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.36 In deciding whether the effects of a departure from generally accepted accounting principles are sufficiently material to require either a qualified or adverse opinion, one factor to be considered is the dollar magnitude of such effects. However, the concept of materiality does not depend entirely on relative size; it involves qualitative as well as quantitative judgments. The significance of an item to a particular entity (for example, inventories to a manufacturing company), the pervasiveness of the misstatement (such as whether it affects the amounts and presentation of numerous financial statement items), and the effect of the misstatement on the financial statements taken as a whole are all factors to be considered in making a judgment regarding materiality. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.37 When the auditor expresses a qualified opinion, he or she should disclose, in a separate explanatory paragraph(s) preceding the opinion paragraph of the report, all of the substantive reasons that have led him or her to conclude that there has been a departure from generally accepted accounting principles. Furthermore, the opinion paragraph of the report should include the appropriate qualifying language and a reference to the explanatory paragraph(s). [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.38 The explanatory paragraph(s) should also disclose the principal effects of the subject matter of the qualification on financial position, results of operations, and cash flows, if practicable.¹⁵ If the effects are not reasonably determinable, the report should so state. If such disclosures are made in a note to the financial statements, the explanatory paragraph(s) may be shortened by referring to it. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

¹⁵ Section 431, *Adequacy of Disclosure in the Financial Statements*, defines *practicable* as "... the information is reasonably obtainable from management's accounts and records and that providing the information in the report does not require the auditor to assume the position of a preparer of financial information." For example, if the information can be obtained from the accounts and records without the auditor substantially increasing the effort that would normally be required to complete the audit, the information should be presented in the report. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

.39 An example of a report in which the opinion is qualified because of the use of an accounting principle at variance with generally accepted accounting principles follows (assuming the effects are such that the auditor has concluded that an adverse opinion is not appropriate):

Independent Auditor's Report

[Same first and second paragraphs as the standard report]

The Company has excluded, from property and debt in the accompanying balance sheets, certain lease obligations that, in our opinion, should be capitalized in order to conform with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. If these lease obligations were capitalized, property would be increased by \$_____ and \$_____, long-term debt by \$_____ and \$_____, and retained earnings by \$_____ and \$_____ as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, respectively. Additionally, net income would be increased (decreased) by \$_____ and \$_____ and earnings per share would be increased (decreased) by \$_____ and \$_____, respectively, for the years then ended.

In our opinion, except for the effects of not capitalizing certain lease obligations as discussed in the preceding paragraph, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of X Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.40 If the pertinent facts are disclosed in a note to the financial statements, a separate paragraph (preceding the opinion paragraph) of the auditor's report in the circumstances illustrated in paragraph .39 might read as follows:

As more fully described in Note X to the financial statements, the Company has excluded certain lease obligations from property and debt in the accompanying balance sheets. In our opinion, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that such obligations be included in the balance sheets.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.41 *Inadequate disclosure.* Information essential for a fair presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles should be set forth in the financial statements (which include the related notes). When such information is set forth elsewhere in a report to shareholders, or in a prospectus, proxy statement, or other similar report, it should be referred to in the financial statements. If the financial statements, including accompanying notes, fail to disclose information that is required by generally accepted accounting principles, the auditor should express a qualified or adverse opinion because of the departure from those principles and should provide the information in the report, if practicable,¹⁶ unless its omission from the auditor's report is recognized as appropriate by a specific Statement on Auditing Standards. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

¹⁶ See footnote 15. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

.42 Following is an example of a report qualified for inadequate disclosure (assuming that the auditor has concluded that it is not practicable to present the required information and the effects are such that the auditor has concluded an adverse opinion is not appropriate):

Independent Auditor's Report

[Same first and second paragraphs as the standard report]

The Company's financial statements do not disclose *[describe the nature of the omitted information that it is not practicable to present in the auditor's report]*. In our opinion, disclosure of this information is required by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

In our opinion, except for the omission of the information discussed in the preceding paragraph, . . .

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.43 If a company issues financial statements that purport to present financial position and results of operations but omits the related statement of cash flows, the auditor will normally conclude that the omission requires qualification of his opinion. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.44 The auditor is not required to prepare a basic financial statement (for example, a statement of cash flows for one or more periods) and include it in the report if the company's management declines to present the statement. Accordingly, in these cases, the auditor should ordinarily qualify the report in the following manner:

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying balance sheets of X Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related statements of income and retained earnings for the years then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

[Same second paragraph as the standard report]

The Company declined to present a statement of cash flows for the years ended December 31, 20X2 and 20X1. Presentation of such statement summarizing the Company's operating, investing, and financing activities is required by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

In our opinion, except that the omission of a statement of cash flows results in an incomplete presentation as explained in the preceding paragraph, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of X Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the results of its operations for the years then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.45 ***Departures from generally accepted accounting principles involving risks or uncertainties, and materiality considerations.*** Departures from generally accepted accounting principles involving risks or uncertainties generally fall into one of the following categories:

- Inadequate disclosure (paragraphs .46 and .47)
- Inappropriate accounting principles (paragraph .48)
- Unreasonable accounting estimates (paragraph .49)

[Paragraph added, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

.46 If the auditor concludes that a matter involving a risk or an uncertainty is not adequately disclosed in the financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, the auditor should express a qualified or an adverse opinion. [Paragraph added, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

.47 The auditor should consider materiality in evaluating the adequacy of disclosure of matters involving risks or uncertainties in the financial statements in the context of the financial statements taken as a whole. The auditor's consideration of materiality is a matter of professional judgment and is influenced by his or her perception of the needs of a reasonable person who will rely on the financial statements. Materiality judgments involving risks or uncertainties are made in light of the surrounding circumstances. The auditor evaluates the materiality of reasonably possible losses that may be incurred upon the resolution of uncertainties both individually and in the aggregate. The auditor performs the evaluation of reasonably possible losses without regard to his or her evaluation of the materiality of known and likely misstatements in the financial statements. [Paragraph added, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

.48 In preparing financial statements, management estimates the outcome of certain types of future events. For example, estimates ordinarily are made about the useful lives of depreciable assets, the collectibility of accounts receivable, the realizable value of inventory items, and the provision for product warranties. FASB Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*, paragraphs 23 and 25, describes situations in which the inability to make a reasonable estimate may raise questions about the appropriateness of the accounting principles used. If, in those or other situations, the auditor concludes that the accounting principles used cause the financial statements to be materially misstated, he or she should express a qualified or an adverse opinion. [Paragraph added, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

.49 Usually, the auditor is able to satisfy himself or herself regarding the reasonableness of management's estimate of the effects of future events by considering various types of evidential matter, including the historical experience of the entity. If the auditor concludes that management's estimate is unreasonable (see section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality*, and section 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*) and that its effect is to cause the financial statements to be materially misstated, he or she should express a qualified or an adverse opinion. [Paragraph added, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

.50 Accounting changes. The auditor should evaluate a change in accounting principle to satisfy himself that (a) the newly adopted accounting principle is a generally accepted accounting principle, (b) the method of accounting for the effect of the change is in conformity with generally accepted

accounting principles, and (c) management's justification for the change is reasonable. If a change in accounting principle does not meet these conditions, the auditor's report should so indicate, and his opinion should be appropriately qualified as discussed in paragraphs .51 and .52. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.51 If (a) a newly adopted accounting principle is not a generally accepted accounting principle, (b) the method of accounting for the effect of the change is not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, or (c) management has not provided reasonable justification for the change in accounting principle, the auditor should express a qualified opinion or, if the effect of the change is sufficiently material, the auditor should express an adverse opinion on the financial statements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.52 Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 20, *Accounting Changes*, paragraph 16 [AC section A06.112], states: "The presumption that an entity should not change an accounting principle may be overcome only if the enterprise justifies the use of an alternative acceptable accounting principle on the basis that it is preferable." If management has not provided reasonable justification for the change in accounting principles, the auditor should express an exception to the change having been made without reasonable justification. An example of a report qualified for this reason follows:

Independent Auditor's Report

[Same first and second paragraphs as the standard report]

As disclosed in Note X to the financial statements, the Company adopted, in 20X2, the first-in, first-out method of accounting for its inventories, whereas it previously used the last-in, first-out method. Although use of the first-in, first-out method is in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, in our opinion the Company has not provided reasonable justification for making this change as required by those principles.¹⁷

In our opinion, except for the change in accounting principle discussed in the preceding paragraph, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of X Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

¹⁷ Section 420, *Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, states that a change from an accounting principle that is not generally accepted to one that is generally accepted is a correction of an error and that such a change requires recognition in the auditor's report as to consistency. Therefore, the auditor should add an explanatory paragraph to the report discussing the accounting change.

However, because the middle paragraph included in the example presented contains all of the information required in an explanatory paragraph on consistency, a separate explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) as required by paragraphs .16 through .18 of this section is not necessary in this instance. A separate paragraph that identifies the change in accounting principle would be required if the substance of the disclosure did not fulfill the requirements outlined in these paragraphs. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

.53 Whenever an accounting change results in an auditor expressing a qualified or adverse opinion on the conformity of financial statements with generally accepted accounting principles for the year of change, the auditor should consider the possible effects of that change when reporting on the entity's financial statements for subsequent years, as discussed in paragraphs .54 through .57. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.54 If the financial statements for the year of such change are presented and reported on with a subsequent year's financial statements, the auditor's report should disclose his or her reservations with respect to the statements for the year of change. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.55 If an entity has adopted an accounting principle that is not a generally accepted accounting principle, its continued use might have a material effect on the statements of a subsequent year on which the auditor is reporting. In this situation, the independent auditor should express either a qualified opinion or an adverse opinion, depending on the materiality of the departure in relation to the statements of the subsequent year. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.56 If an entity accounts for the effect of a change prospectively when generally accepted accounting principles require restatement or the inclusion of the cumulative effect of the change in the year of change, a subsequent year's financial statements could improperly include a charge or credit that is material to those statements. This situation also requires that the auditor express a qualified or an adverse opinion. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.57 If management has not provided reasonable justification for a change in accounting principles, the auditor's opinion should express an exception to the change having been made without reasonable justification, as previously indicated. In addition, the auditor should continue to express his or her exception with respect to the financial statements for the year of change as long as they are presented and reported on. However, the auditor's exception relates to the accounting change and does not affect the status of a newly adopted principle as a generally accepted accounting principle. Accordingly, while expressing an exception for the year of change, the independent auditor's opinion regarding the subsequent years' statements need not express an exception to use of the newly adopted principle. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

Adverse Opinions

.58 An adverse opinion states that the financial statements do not present fairly the financial position or the results of operations or cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Such an opinion is expressed when, in the auditor's judgment, the financial statements taken as a whole are not presented fairly in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.59 When the auditor expresses an adverse opinion, he or she should disclose in a separate explanatory paragraph(s) preceding the opinion paragraph of the report (a) all the substantive reasons for his or her adverse opinion,

and (b) the principal effects of the subject matter of the adverse opinion on financial position, results of operations, and cash flows, if practicable.¹⁸ If the effects are not reasonably determinable, the report should so state.¹⁹ [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.60 When an adverse opinion is expressed, the opinion paragraph should include a direct reference to a separate paragraph that discloses the basis for the adverse opinion, as shown below:

Independent Auditor's Report

[Same first and second paragraphs as the standard report]

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, the Company carries its property, plant and equipment accounts at appraisal values, and provides depreciation on the basis of such values. Further, the Company does not provide for income taxes with respect to differences between financial income and taxable income arising because of the use, for income tax purposes, of the installment method of reporting gross profit from certain types of sales. Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that property, plant and equipment be stated at an amount not in excess of cost, reduced by depreciation based on such amount, and that deferred income taxes be provided.

Because of the departures from accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America identified above, as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, inventories have been increased \$_____ and \$_____ by inclusion in manufacturing overhead of depreciation in excess of that based on cost; property, plant and equipment, less accumulated depreciation, is carried at \$_____ and \$_____ in excess of an amount based on the cost to the Company; and deferred income taxes of \$_____ and \$_____ have not been recorded; resulting in an increase of \$_____ and \$_____ in retained earnings and in appraisal surplus of \$_____ and \$_____, respectively. For the years ended December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, cost of goods sold has been increased \$_____ and \$_____, respectively, because of the effects of the depreciation accounting referred to above and deferred income taxes of \$_____ and \$_____ have not been provided, resulting in an increase in net income of \$_____ and \$_____, respectively.

In our opinion, because of the effects of the matters discussed in the preceding paragraphs, the financial statements referred to above do not present fairly, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial position of X Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, or the results of its operations or its cash flows for the years then ended.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

¹⁸ See footnote 15. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

¹⁹ When the auditor expresses an adverse opinion, he or she should also consider the need for an explanatory paragraph under the circumstances identified in paragraph .11, subsections (c), (d), and (e) of this section. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

Disclaimer of Opinion

.61 A disclaimer of opinion states that the auditor does not express an opinion on the financial statements. An auditor may decline to express an opinion whenever he or she is unable to form or has not formed an opinion as to the fairness of presentation of the financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. If the auditor disclaims an opinion, the auditor's report should give all of the substantive reasons for the disclaimer. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

.62 A disclaimer is appropriate when the auditor has not performed an audit sufficient in scope to enable him or her to form an opinion on the financial statements.²⁰ A disclaimer of opinion should not be expressed because the auditor believes, on the basis of his or her audit, that there are material departures from generally accepted accounting principles (see paragraphs .35 through .57). When disclaiming an opinion because of a scope limitation, the auditor should state in a separate paragraph or paragraphs all of the substantive reasons for the disclaimer. He or she should state that the scope of the audit was not sufficient to warrant the expression of an opinion. The auditor should not identify the procedures that were performed nor include the paragraph describing the characteristics of an audit (that is, the scope paragraph of the auditor's standard report); to do so may tend to overshadow the disclaimer. In addition, the auditor should also disclose any other reservations he or she has regarding fair presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

.63 An example of a report disclaiming an opinion resulting from an inability to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter because of the scope limitation follows:

Independent Auditor's Report

We were engaged to audit the accompanying balance sheets of X Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the years then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management.²¹

²⁰ If an accountant is engaged to conduct an audit of the financial statements of a nonpublic entity in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, but is requested to change the engagement to a review or a compilation of the statements, he or she should look to the guidance in paragraphs 46 through 51 of Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services No. 1, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* [AR section 100.46–51]. Section 504, *Association With Financial Statements*, paragraph .05, provides guidance to an accountant who is associated with the financial statements of a public entity, but has not audited such statements. [Footnote renumbered and amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000. Footnote revised, November 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services No. 9.]

²¹ The wording in the first paragraph of the auditor's standard report is changed in a disclaimer of opinion because of a scope limitation. The first sentence now states that "we were engaged to audit" rather than "we have audited" since, because of the scope limitation, the auditor was not able to perform an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. In addition, the last sentence of the first paragraph is also deleted, because of the scope limitation, to eliminate the reference to the auditor's responsibility to express an opinion. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

[Second paragraph of standard report should be omitted]

The Company did not make a count of its physical inventory in 20X2 or 20X1, stated in the accompanying financial statements at \$_____ as of December 31, 20X2, and at \$_____ as of December 31, 20X1. Further, evidence supporting the cost of property and equipment acquired prior to December 31, 20X1, is no longer available. The Company's records do not permit the application of other auditing procedures to inventories or property and equipment.

Since the Company did not take physical inventories and we were not able to apply other auditing procedures to satisfy ourselves as to inventory quantities and the cost of property and equipment, the scope of our work was not sufficient to enable us to express, and we do not express, an opinion on these financial statements.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

Piecemeal Opinions

.64 Piecemeal opinions (expressions of opinion as to certain identified items in financial statements) should not be expressed when the auditor has disclaimed an opinion or has expressed an adverse opinion on the financial statements *taken as a whole* because piecemeal opinions tend to overshadow or contradict a disclaimer of opinion or an adverse opinion. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

Reports on Comparative Financial Statements

.65 The fourth standard of reporting requires that an auditor's report contain either an expression of opinion regarding the financial statements *taken as a whole* or an assertion to the effect that an opinion cannot be expressed. Reference in the fourth reporting standard to the financial statements *taken as a whole* applies not only to the financial statements of the current period but also to those of one or more prior periods that are presented on a comparative basis with those of the current period. Therefore, a continuing auditor²² should update²³ the report on the individual financial statements of the one or more prior periods presented on a comparative basis with those

²² A *continuing auditor* is one who has audited the financial statements of the current period and of one or more consecutive periods immediately prior to the current period.

If one firm of independent auditors merges with another firm and the new firm becomes the auditor of a former client of one of the former firms, the new firm may accept responsibility and express an opinion on the financial statements for the prior period(s), as well as for those of the current period. In such circumstances, the new firm should follow the guidance in paragraphs .65 through .69 and may indicate in its report or signature that a merger took place and may name the firm of independent auditors that was merged with it. If the new firm decides not to express an opinion on the prior-period financial statements, the guidance in paragraphs .70 through .74 should be followed. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

²³ An updated report on prior-period financial statements should be distinguished from a reissuance of a previous report (see section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraphs .06 through .08), since in issuing an updated report the continuing auditor considers information that he or she has become aware of during his or her audit of the current-period financial statements (see paragraph .68) and because an updated report is issued in conjunction with the auditor's report on the current-period financial statements. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

of the current period.²⁴ Ordinarily, the auditor's report on comparative financial statements should be dated as of the date of completion of fieldwork for the most recent audit. (See section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraph .01.) [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.66 During the audit of the current-period financial statements, the auditor should be alert for circumstances or events that affect the prior-period financial statements presented (see paragraph .68) or the adequacy of informative disclosures concerning those statements. (See section 431, *Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements*, and ARB No. 43, Chapter 2A [AC section F43].) In updating his or her report on the prior-period financial statements, the auditor should consider the effects of any such circumstances or events coming to his or her attention. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

Different Reports on Comparative Financial Statements Presented

.67 Since the auditor's report on comparative financial statements applies to the individual financial statements presented, an auditor may express a qualified or adverse opinion, disclaim an opinion, or include an explanatory paragraph with respect to one or more financial statements for one or more periods, while issuing a different report on the other financial statements presented. Following are examples of reports on comparative financial statements (excluding the standard introductory and scope paragraphs, where applicable) with different reports on one or more financial statements presented.

Standard Report on the Prior-Year Financial Statements and a Qualified Opinion on the Current-Year Financial Statements

Independent Auditor's Report

[Same first and second paragraphs as the standard report]

The Company has excluded, from property and debt in the accompanying 20X2 balance sheet, certain lease obligations that were entered into in 20X2 which, in our opinion, should be capitalized in order to conform with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. If these lease obligations were capitalized, property would be increased by \$_____, long-term debt by \$_____, and retained earnings by \$_____ as of December 31, 20X2, and net income and earnings per share would be increased (decreased) by \$_____ and \$_____, respectively, for the year then ended.

²⁴ A continuing auditor need not report on the prior-period financial statements if only summarized comparative information of the prior period(s) is presented. For example, entities such as state and local governmental units frequently present total-all-funds information for the prior period(s) rather than information by individual funds because of space limitations or to avoid cumbersome or confusing formats. Also, not-for-profit organizations frequently present certain information for the prior period(s) in total rather than by net asset class. In some circumstances, the client may request the auditor to express an opinion on the prior period(s) as well as the current period. In those circumstances, the auditor should consider whether the information included for the prior period(s) contains sufficient detail to constitute a fair presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. In most cases, this will necessitate including additional columns or separate detail by fund or net asset class, or the auditor would need to modify his or her report. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000. Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB Statement No. 117.]

In our opinion, except for the effects on the 20X2 financial statements of not capitalizing certain lease obligations as described in the preceding paragraph, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Standard Report on the Current-Year Financial Statements With a Disclaimer of Opinion on the Prior-Year Statements of Income, Retained Earnings, and Cash Flows

Independent Auditor's Report

[Same first paragraph as the standard report]

Except as explained in the following paragraph, we conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform our audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

We did not observe the taking of the physical inventory as of December 31, 20X0, since that date was prior to our appointment as auditors for the Company, and we were unable to satisfy ourselves regarding inventory quantities by means of other auditing procedures. Inventory amounts as of December 31, 20X0, enter into the determination of net income and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 20X1.²⁵

Because of the matter discussed in the preceding paragraph, the scope of our work was not sufficient to enable us to express, and we do not express, an opinion on the results of operations and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 20X1.

In our opinion, the balance sheets of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 20X2, present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year ended December 31, 20X2, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

²⁵ It is assumed that the independent auditor has been able to satisfy himself or herself as to the consistency of application of generally accepted accounting principles. See section 420, *Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, for a discussion of consistency. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995; the former footnote 29 has been deleted and subsequent footnotes renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

Opinion on Prior-Period Financial Statements Different From the Opinion Previously Expressed

.68 If, during the current audit, an auditor becomes aware of circumstances or events that affect the financial statements of a prior period, he or she should consider such matters when updating his or her report on the financial statements of the prior period. For example, if an auditor has previously qualified his or her opinion or expressed an adverse opinion on financial statements of a prior period because of a departure from generally accepted accounting principles, and the prior-period financial statements are restated in the current period to conform with generally accepted accounting principles, the auditor's updated report on the financial statements of the prior period should indicate that the statements have been restated and should express an unqualified opinion with respect to the restated financial statements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.69 If, in an updated report, the opinion is different from the opinion previously expressed on the financial statements of a prior period, the auditor should disclose all the substantive reasons for the different opinion in a separate explanatory paragraph(s) preceding the opinion paragraph of his or her report.^[29] The explanatory paragraph(s) should disclose (a) the date of the auditor's previous report, (b) the type of opinion previously expressed, (c) the circumstances or events that caused the auditor to express a different opinion, and (d) that the auditor's updated opinion on the financial statements of the prior period is different from his or her previous opinion on those statements. The following is an example of an explanatory paragraph that may be appropriate when an auditor issues an updated report on the financial statements of a prior period that contains an opinion different from the opinion previously expressed:

Independent Auditor's Report

[Same first and second paragraphs as the standard report]

In our report dated March 1, 20X2, we expressed an opinion that the 20X1 financial statements did not fairly present financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America because of two departures from such principles: (1) the Company carried its property, plant, and equipment at appraisal values, and provided for depreciation on the basis of such values, and (2) the Company did not provide for deferred income taxes with respect to differences between income for financial reporting purposes and taxable income. As described in Note X, the Company has changed its method of accounting for these items and restated its 20X1 financial statements to conform with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Accordingly, our present opinion on the 20X1 financial statements, as presented herein, is different from that expressed in our previous report.²⁶

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of X Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

²⁶ See footnote 17. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

Report of Predecessor Auditor

.70 A predecessor auditor ordinarily would be in a position to reissue his or her report on the financial statements of a prior period at the request of a former client if he or she is able to make satisfactory arrangements with the former client to perform this service and if he or she performs the procedures described in paragraph .71.²⁷ [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

Predecessor Auditor's Report Reissued

.71 Before reissuing (or consenting to the reuse of) a report previously issued on the financial statements of a prior period, when those financial statements are to be presented on a comparative basis with audited financial statements of a subsequent period, a predecessor auditor should consider whether his or her previous report on those statements is still appropriate. Either the current form or manner of presentation of the financial statements of the prior period or one or more subsequent events might make a predecessor auditor's previous report inappropriate. Consequently, a predecessor auditor should (a) read the financial statements of the current period, (b) compare the prior-period financial statements that he or she reported on with the financial statements to be presented for comparative purposes, and (c) obtain representation letters from management of the former client and from the successor auditor. The representation letter from management of the former client should state (a) whether any information has come to management's attention that would cause them to believe that any of the previous representations should be modified, and (b) whether any events have occurred subsequent to the balance-sheet date of the latest prior-period financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor that would require adjustment to or disclosure in those financial statements.²⁸ The representation letter from the successor auditor should state whether the successor's audit revealed any matters that, in the successor's opinion, might have a material effect on, or require disclosure in, the financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor. Also, the predecessor auditor may wish to consider the matters described in section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*, paragraphs .10 through .12. However, the predecessor auditor should not refer in his or her reissued report to the report or work of the successor auditor. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. As amended, effective for reports reissued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 85.]

.72 A predecessor auditor who has agreed to reissue his or her report may become aware of events or transactions occurring subsequent to the date of his or her previous report on the financial statements of a prior period that may

²⁷ It is recognized that there may be reasons why a predecessor auditor's report may not be reissued and this section does not address the various situations that could arise. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

²⁸ See section 333, *Management Representations*, appendix C [paragraph .18], "Illustrative Updating Management Representation Letter." [Footnote added, effective for reports reissued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 85. Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

affect his or her previous report (for example, the successor auditor might indicate in the response that certain matters have had a material effect on the prior-period financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor). In such circumstances, the predecessor auditor should make inquiries and perform other procedures that he or she considers necessary (for example, reviewing the working papers of the successor auditor as they relate to the matters affecting the prior-period financial statements). The auditor should then decide, on the basis of the evidential matter obtained, whether to revise the report. If a predecessor auditor concludes that the report should be revised, he or she should follow the guidance in paragraphs .68, .69, and .73 of this section. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

.73 A predecessor auditor's knowledge of the current affairs of his or her former client is obviously limited in the absence of a continuing relationship. Consequently, when reissuing the report on prior-period financial statements, a predecessor auditor should use the date of his or her previous report to avoid any implication that he or she has examined any records, transactions, or events after that date. If the predecessor auditor revises the report or if the financial statements are restated, he or she should dual-date the report. (See section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraph .05) [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995.]

Predecessor Auditor's Report Not Presented

.74 If the financial statements of a prior period have been audited by a predecessor auditor whose report is not presented, the successor auditor should indicate in the introductory paragraph of his or her report (a) that the financial statements of the prior period were audited by another auditor,²⁹ (b) the date of his or her report, (c) the type of report issued by the predecessor auditor, and (d) if the report was other than a standard report, the substantive reasons therefor.³⁰ An example of a successor auditor's report when the predecessor auditor's report is not presented is shown below:

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the balance sheet of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X2, and the related statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. The financial statements of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, were audited by other auditors whose report dated March 31, 20X2, expressed an unqualified opinion on those statements.

²⁹ The successor auditor should not name the predecessor auditor in his or her report; however, the successor auditor may name the predecessor auditor if the predecessor auditor's practice was acquired by, or merged with, that of the successor auditor. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December, 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 85, November 1997. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

³⁰ If the predecessor's report was issued before the effective date of this section and contained an uncertainties explanatory paragraph, a successor auditor's report issued or reissued after the effective date hereof should not make reference to the predecessor's previously required explanatory paragraph. [Footnote added, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79. Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 85, November 1997. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

[Same second paragraph as the standard report]

In our opinion, the 20X2 financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X2, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

If the predecessor auditor's report was other than a standard report, the successor auditor should describe the nature of and reasons for the explanatory paragraph added to the predecessor's report or the opinion qualification. Following is an illustration of the wording that may be included in the successor auditor's report:

... were audited by other auditors whose report dated March 1, 20X2, on those statements included an explanatory paragraph that described the change in the Company's method of computing depreciation discussed in Note X to the financial statements.

If the financial statements have been restated, the introductory paragraph should indicate that a predecessor auditor reported on the financial statements of the prior period before restatement. In addition, if the successor auditor is engaged to audit and applies sufficient procedures to satisfy himself or herself as to the appropriateness of the restatement adjustments, he or she may also include the following paragraph in his report:

We also audited the adjustments described in Note X that were applied to restate the 20X1 financial statements. In our opinion, such adjustments are appropriate and have been properly applied.

[Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

Effective Date and Transition

.75 This section is effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996. Earlier application of the provisions of this section is permissible. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

.76 An auditor who previously included an uncertainties explanatory paragraph in a report should not repeat that paragraph and is not required to include an emphasis paragraph related to the uncertainty in a reissuance of that report or in a report on subsequent periods' financial statements, even if the uncertainty has not been resolved. If the auditor decides to include an emphasis paragraph related to the uncertainty, the paragraph may include an explanation of the change in reporting standards.^[31] [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after February 29, 1996, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

^[31] [Footnote renumbered and deleted by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79, December 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 85, November 1997. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93, October 2000.]

AU Section 9508***Reports on Audited Financial Statements:
Auditing Interpretations of Section 508*****1. Report of an Outside Inventory-Taking Firm as an Alternative Procedure for Observing Inventories**

.01 Question—Section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .24 states that “Common restrictions on the scope of the audit include those applying to the observation of physical inventories and the confirmation of accounts receivable by direct communication with debtors. . . .” A footnote to that paragraph states: “Circumstances such as the timing of the work may make it impossible for the auditor to accomplish these procedures. In this case, if the auditor is able to satisfy himself or herself as to inventories or accounts receivable by applying alternative procedures, there is no significant limitation on the scope of the work, and the report need not include reference to the omission of the procedures or to the use of alternative procedures.” Outside firms of nonaccountants specializing in the taking of physical inventories are used at times by some companies, such as retail stores, hospitals, and automobile dealers, to count, list, price and subsequently compute the total dollar amount of inventory on hand at the date of the physical count. Would obtaining the report of an outside inventory-taking firm be an acceptable alternative procedure to the independent auditor’s own observation of physical inventories?

.02 Interpretation—Sufficient competent evidential matter for inventories is discussed in section 331, *Inventories*, paragraphs .09–.12. Section 331.09 states that “. . . it is ordinarily necessary for the independent auditor to be present at the time of count and, by suitable observation, tests, and inquiries, satisfy himself respecting the effectiveness of the methods of inventory-taking and the measure of reliance which may be placed upon the client’s representations about the quantities and physical condition of the inventories.”

.03 Section 331.10 and .11 discusses two variations of that procedure when the client has well-kept perpetual records that are checked periodically by comparisons with physical counts or when the client uses statistical sampling to determine inventories. In such instances, the auditor may vary the timing and extent of his observation of physical counts, but he “must be present to observe such counts as he deems necessary and must satisfy himself as to the effectiveness of the counting procedures used.”

.04 Section 331.12 deals with circumstances in which the auditor has not satisfied himself or herself as to inventories in the possession of the client through procedures described in section 331.09–.11. In those circumstances, the general requirement for satisfactory alternative procedures is that “. . . tests of the accounting records alone will not be sufficient for him to become satisfied as to quantities; it will always be necessary for the auditor to make, or observe, some physical counts of the inventory and apply appropriate tests of intervening transactions.”

.05 The fact that the inventory is counted by an outside inventory firm of nonaccountants is not, by itself, a satisfactory substitute for the auditor’s own

observation or taking of some physical counts. The auditor's concern, in this respect, is to satisfy himself as to the effectiveness of the counting procedures used. If the client engages an outside inventory firm to take the physical inventory, the auditor's primary concern would be to evaluate the effectiveness of the procedures used by the outside firm and his auditing procedures would be applied accordingly.

.06 Thus, the auditor would examine the outside firm's program, observe its procedures and controls, make or observe some physical counts of the inventory, recompute calculations of the submitted inventory on a test basis and apply appropriate tests to the intervening transactions. The independent auditor ordinarily may reduce the extent of the work on the physical count of inventory because of the work of an outside inventory firm, but any restriction on the auditor's judgment concerning the extent of his or her contact with the inventory would be a scope restriction.

[Issue Date: July, 1975; Revised: October, 2000.]

[2.] Reporting on Comparative Financial Statements of Nonprofit Organizations

[.07–.10] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 15, effective for periods ending after June 30, 1977.]

[3.] Reporting on Loss Contingencies

[.11–.14] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 58, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 508.)

[4.] Reports on Consolidated Financial Statements That Include Supplementary Consolidating Information

[.15–.20] [Superseded December 31, 1980, by SAS No. 29.] (See section 551.)

[5.] Disclosures of Subsequent Events

[.21–.24] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 58, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 508.)

[6.] The Materiality of Uncertainties

[.25–.28] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 58, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 508.)

[7.] Reporting on an Uncertainty

[.29–.32] [Withdrawn August, 1982 by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43.]

8. Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared on a Liquidation Basis of Accounting

.33 Question—Footnote 6 of Statement of Position 93-3, *Rescission of Accounting Principles Board Statements*, states that an enterprise is not viewed as a going concern if liquidation appears imminent. How should the auditor report on financial statements that are prepared on a liquidation basis of accounting for an entity in liquidation or for which liquidation appears imminent?

.34 Answer—A liquidation basis of accounting may be considered generally accepted accounting principles for entities in liquidation or for which liquidation appears imminent. Therefore, the auditor should issue an unqualified opinion on such financial statements, provided that the liquidation basis of accounting has been properly applied, and that adequate disclosures are made in the financial statements.

.35 Typically, the financial statements of entities that adopt a liquidation basis of accounting are presented along with financial statements of a period prior to adoption of a liquidation basis that were prepared on the basis of generally accepted accounting principles for going concerns. In such circumstances, the auditor's report ordinarily should include an explanatory paragraph that states that the entity has changed the basis of accounting used to determine the amounts at which assets and liabilities are carried from the going concern basis to a liquidation basis.

.36 Examples of auditor's reports with such an explanatory paragraph follow.

Report on Single Year Financial Statements in Year of Adoption of Liquidation Basis

"We have audited the statement of net assets in liquidation of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X2, and the related statement of changes in net assets in liquidation for the period from April 26, 20X2 to December 31, 20X2. In addition, we have audited the statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the period from January 1, 20X2 to April 25, 20X2. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

"We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

"As described in Note X to the financial statements, the stockholders of XYZ Company approved a plan of liquidation on April 25, 20X2, and the company commenced liquidation shortly thereafter. As a result, the company has changed its basis of accounting for periods subsequent to April 25, 20X2 from the going-concern basis to a liquidation basis.

"In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the net assets in liquidation of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X2, the changes in its net assets in liquidation for the period

from April 26, 20X2 to December 31, 20X2, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the period from January 1, 20X2 to April 25, 20X2, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America applied on the bases described in the preceding paragraph.”

Report on Comparative Financial Statements in Year of Adoption of Liquidation Basis

“We have audited the balance sheet of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X1, the related statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the period from January 1, 20X2 to April 25, 20X2. In addition, we have audited the statement of net assets in liquidation as of December 31, 20X2, and the related statement of changes in net assets in liquidation for the period from April 26, 20X2 to December 31, 20X2. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

“We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatements. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

“As described in Note X to the financial statements, the stockholders of XYZ Company approved a plan of liquidation on April 25, 20X2, and the company commenced liquidation shortly thereafter. As a result, the company has changed its basis of accounting for periods subsequent to April 25, 20X2 from the going-concern basis to a liquidation basis.

“In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X1, the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended and for the period from January 1, 20X2 to April 25, 20X2, its net assets in liquidation as of December 31, 20X2, and the changes in its net assets in liquidation for the period from April 26, 20X2 to December 31, 20X2, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America applied on the bases described in the preceding paragraph.”

.37 The auditor may, in subsequent years, continue to include an explanatory paragraph in his report to emphasize that the financial statements are presented on a liquidation basis of accounting.

[.38] [Paragraph deleted to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

[Issue Date: December, 1984; Revised: June, 1993;
Revised: February, 1997; Revised: October, 2000.]

[9.] Quantifying Departures From Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

[.39-.43] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 58, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 508.)

[10.] Updated Reports Resulting From the Retroactive Suspension of Earnings per Share and Segment Information Disclosure Requirements

[.44-.48] [Withdrawn March, 1989 by the Auditing Standards Board.]

[11.] Restating Financial Statements Reported on by a Predecessor Auditor

[.49-.50] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 84, effective with respect to acceptance of an engagement after March 31, 1998.] (See section 315.)

12. Reference in Auditor's Standard Report to Management's Report

.51 Question—One of the basic elements of the auditor's standard report is a statement that the financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. That statement is required in the auditor's report even when a document containing the auditor's report includes a statement by management regarding its responsibility for the presentation of the financial statements. When an annual shareholders' report (or other client-prepared document that includes audited financial statements) contains a management report that states the financial statements are the responsibility of management, is it permissible for the auditor's report to include a reference to the management report?

.52 Interpretation—No. The statement about management's responsibilities for the financial statements required by section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, should not be further elaborated upon in the auditor's standard report or referenced to management's report. Such modifications to the standard auditor's report may lead users to erroneously believe that the auditor is providing assurances about representations made by management about their responsibility for financial reporting, internal controls and other matters that might be discussed in the management report.

[Issue Date: January, 1989.]

[13.] Reference to Country of Origin in the Auditor's Standard Report

[.53-.55] [Withdrawn October, 2000 by SAS No. 93.]

14. Reporting on Audits Conducted in Accordance With Auditing Standards Generally Accepted in the United States of America and in Accordance With International Standards on Auditing

.56 Question—Section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, states that a basic element of the auditor's report is a statement that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards. If the auditor conducts the audit in accordance with standards generally accepted in the United States of America and in accordance with the International Standards on Auditing promulgated by the International Auditing Practices Committee of the International Federation of Accountants, may the auditor so indicate in the auditor's report?

.57 Interpretation—Yes. Section 508 requires that the auditor indicate in the auditor's report that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards; however, section 508 does not prohibit the auditor from indicating that the audit also was conducted in accordance with another set of auditing standards. If the audit also was conducted in accordance with the International Standards on Auditing, in their entirety, the auditor may so indicate in the auditor's report. To determine whether an audit was conducted in accordance with the International Standards on Auditing, it is necessary to consider the text of the International Standards on Auditing in their entirety, including the basic principles and essential procedures together with the related guidance included in the International Standards on Auditing.¹

.58 When reporting on an audit performed in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and International Standards on Auditing, the auditor should comply with reporting standards generally accepted in the United States of America.

.59 An example of reporting on an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States and in accordance with International Standards on Auditing follows:

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and in accordance with International Standards on Auditing. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Issue Date: March, 2002.]

15. Reporting as Successor Auditor When Prior-Period Audited Financial Statements Were Audited by a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations²

.60 Question—If the prior-period financial statements audited by a predecessor auditor who has ceased operations are presented for comparative purposes with current-period audited financial statements, how is the successor auditor's report affected?

.61 Interpretation—If the prior-period audited financial statements are *unchanged*, pursuant to section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .74, the successor auditor should indicate in the introductory paragraph of his or her report (a) that the financial statements of the prior period were audited by another auditor, (b) the date of the predecessor auditor's

¹ Appendix B, *Analysis of International Standards on Auditing*, identifies sections and paragraphs, if applicable, within the International Standards on Auditing that may require procedures and documentation in addition to those required by U.S. auditing standards.

² A firm is considered to have ceased operations when it no longer issues audit opinions either in its own name or in the name of a successor firm. A firm may cease operations with respect to public entities and still issue audit opinions with respect to non-public entities.

report, (c) the type of report issued by the predecessor auditor, and (d) if the report was other than a standard report, the substantive reasons therefor. The successor auditor ordinarily also should indicate that the other auditor has ceased operations. Footnote 29 of section 508 indicates that the successor auditor should not name the predecessor auditor in the report. An example of the reference that would be added to the introductory paragraph of the successor auditor's report is presented as follows:

The financial statements of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and for the year then ended were audited by other auditors who have ceased operations. Those auditors expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements in their report dated March 31, 20X2.

A reference to the predecessor auditor's report should be included even if the predecessor auditor's report on the prior-period financial statements is reprinted and accompanies the successor auditor's report, because reprinting does not constitute reissuance of the predecessor auditor's report.

.62 If the prior-period financial statements *have been restated*, and the entity does not file annual financial statements with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), the successor auditor should follow the guidance in paragraph .61 above, indicating that the predecessor auditor reported on such financial statements before restatement.

.63 When the prior-period financial statements have been restated, the successor auditor may be engaged either to reaudit the prior-period financial statements or to audit only the restatement adjustments. If the successor auditor is engaged to audit only the restatement adjustments and applies sufficient procedures to satisfy himself or herself as to the appropriateness of the restatement adjustments, the successor auditor may report on the restatement adjustments using the guidance in section 508.74. (The auditor also may use the guidance on alternative language contained in paragraph .71, below.) In determining the nature, timing and extent of procedures, the successor auditor should consider that a predecessor auditor who has ceased operations cannot perform the procedures to evaluate the appropriateness of the restatement adjustments as described in section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*.

.64 If the successor auditor neither performs a reaudit of the prior-period financial statements nor audits only the restatement adjustments, the note to the financial statements describing the restatement adjustments should be marked "Unaudited." Depending on the nature and extent of the restatement adjustments, it may be appropriate for the prior-period financial statements to be marked "Unaudited."

.65 If the entity files annual financial statements with the SEC, the SEC staff has indicated (specifically with respect to Arthur Andersen LLP) that, in annual reports (on Form 10-K and to shareholders), the predecessor auditor's latest signed and dated report on the prior-period financial statements should be reprinted with a legend indicating (a) that the report is a copy of the previously issued report and (b) that the predecessor auditor has not reissued the report.³

.66 The successor auditor should refer to the predecessor auditor's report in his or her report, as described in paragraph .61 above, and, if the prior-period

³ See Securities and Exchange Commission Release No. 33-8070, *Requirements for Arthur Andersen LLP Auditing Clients*.

financial statements *have been restated*, indicate that the predecessor auditor reported on such financial statements before restatement.

.67 SEC rules require that annual and, in some instances, other financial statements be audited. To satisfy the SEC audit requirement when the prior-period financial statements have been restated, the successor auditor may be engaged either to reaudit the prior-period financial statements or to audit only the restatement adjustments. A successor auditor who is engaged to audit only the restatement adjustments is not required to perform procedures to identify all adjustments to the financial statements that may be appropriate.⁴

.68 In some cases, prior-period financial statement disclosures may be revised in a manner that does not involve restating amounts in the prior-period financial statements, but rather involves the addition of disclosures. In such cases, the successor auditor may be engaged to perform audit procedures to satisfy himself or herself as to the appropriateness of the additional disclosures. Financial statements that have been revised are considered to be restated for the purposes of this Interpretation.

.69 Some revisions may be sufficiently inconsequential such that audit procedures by the successor auditor would be unnecessary and the reference to the predecessor auditor's report on the prior-period financial statements would not indicate that the predecessor auditor reported on such financial statements before restatement. For example, inconsequential revisions might include conforming editorial modifications to footnote disclosures or reclassifications made for comparative purposes in the financial statements.⁵

.70 When the successor auditor is engaged to audit only the restatement adjustments, the procedures performed will vary significantly depending on the nature of adjustment. In some instances, the successor auditor may determine that conducting a reaudit of the prior-period financial statements is necessary based on the nature of the restatement adjustments. Examples of restatement adjustments whose nature indicates that a reaudit ordinarily is necessary (particularly with respect to entities that file financial statements with the SEC) include, but are not limited to:

- Corrections of an error.
- Reflection of a change in reporting entity.
- Retroactive accounting changes (a) with significant impact on previously reported amounts or (b) that affect previously reported net income or net assets.
- Reporting discontinued operations.
- Changes affecting previously reported net income or net assets.

.71 If the successor auditor is engaged to audit only the restatement adjustments and applies sufficient procedures to satisfy himself or herself as to the appropriateness of the restatement adjustments, the successor auditor

⁴ However, a successor auditor who identifies other adjustments that may be appropriate to the prior-period financial statements, either in the course of auditing the restatement adjustments or in the audit of current-period financial statements, should consider their effect on the prior-period financial statements. See section 315. Section 561 provides further guidance that may be useful to a successor auditor who either reaudits the prior-period financial statements or audits only the restatement adjustments.

⁵ If reclassifications result in material changes to prior-period financial statements, they should be disclosed and the successor auditor would, at a minimum, need to perform audit procedures on the related restatement adjustments.

may report on the restatement adjustments using the guidance in section 508.74. Alternatively, the successor auditor may wish to make it clear that he or she did not audit, review, or apply other procedures to the prior-period financial statements beyond the procedures applied to the restatement adjustments. Accordingly, he or she may include the following paragraph in his or her report:

As discussed above, the financial statements of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and for the year then ended were audited by other auditors who have ceased operations. As described in Note X, these financial statements have been restated [revised]. We audited the adjustments described in Note X that were applied to restate [revise] the 20X1 financial statements. In our opinion, such adjustments are appropriate and have been properly applied. However, we were not engaged to audit, review, or apply any procedures to the 20X1 financial statements of the Company other than with respect to such adjustments and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on the 20X1 financial statements taken as a whole.

.72 If the auditor wishes to identify the procedures performed in his or her report, he or she may include in his or her report a paragraph similar to the following example:

Restatement Adjustments for Changes in Segment Composition

As discussed above, the financial statements of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and for the year then ended were audited by other auditors who have ceased operations. As described in Note X, the Company changed the composition of its reportable segments in 20X2, and the amounts in the 20X1 financial statements relating to reportable segments have been restated to conform to the 20X2 composition of reportable segments. We audited the adjustments that were applied to restate the disclosures for reportable segments reflected in the 20X1 financial statements. Our procedures included (a) agreeing the adjusted amounts of segment revenues, operating income and assets to the Company's underlying records obtained from management, and (b) testing the mathematical accuracy of the reconciliations of segment amounts to the consolidated financial statements. In our opinion, such adjustments are appropriate and have been properly applied. However, we were not engaged to audit, review, or apply any procedures to the 20X1 financial statements of the Company other than with respect to such adjustments and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on the 20X1 financial statements taken as a whole.

.73 When the revision of the prior-period financial statements is limited to expansion of footnote disclosure, the phrase "restatement adjustments" may not be applicable. In such circumstances, the auditor may include in his or her report a paragraph similar to the following example:

Addition of FAS 142, paragraph 61, Disclosure

As discussed above, the financial statements of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X1, and for the year then ended were audited by other auditors who have ceased operations. As described in Note X, these financial statements have been revised to include the transitional disclosures required by Statement of Financial Accounting Standards (Statement) No. 142, *Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets*, which was adopted by the Company as of January 1, 20X2. Our audit procedures with respect to the disclosures in Note X with respect to 20X1 included (a) agreeing the previously reported net income to the previously issued financial statements and the adjustments to reported net income representing amortization expense (including any related tax effects) recognized in those periods related to goodwill, intangible assets that are no longer being

amortized, deferred credits related to an excess over cost, equity method goodwill, and changes in amortization periods for intangible assets that will continue to be amortized as a result of initially applying Statement No. 142 (including any related tax effects) to the Company's underlying records obtained from management, and (b) testing the mathematical accuracy of the reconciliation of adjusted net income to reported net income, and the related earnings-per-share amounts. In our opinion, the disclosures for 20X1 in Note X are appropriate. However, we were not engaged to audit, review, or apply any procedures to the 20X1 financial statements of the Company other than with respect to such disclosures and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on the 20X1 financial statements taken as a whole.

.74 Question—If the prior-period financial statements audited by a predecessor auditor who has ceased operations have been subsequently restated, but the successor auditor has not yet completed an audit of current-period financial statements, can the successor auditor report on the restatement adjustments pursuant to section 508.74?

.75 Interpretation—No. Section 508.74 is only applicable when the prior-period financial statements are presented for comparative purposes with current-period audited financial statements. If the prior-period financial statements have been restated, and the successor auditor is requested to report on those financial statements without also reporting on current-period audited financial statements, the successor auditor would need to reaudit the prior-period financial statements in order to report on them.

[Issue Date: November, 2002.]

16. Effect on Auditor's Report of Omission of Schedule of Investments by Investment Partnerships That Are Exempt From Securities and Exchange Commission Registration Under the Investment Company Act of 1940

.76 Question—The Audit and Accounting Guide *Investment Companies* (the Guide) addresses financial statement presentation and disclosure requirements for investment partnerships that are exempt from Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) registration under the Investment Company Act of 1940 (the 1940 Act). Paragraphs 7.10 through 7.14 of the Guide specifically describe information that should be disclosed in a Schedule of Investments. Paragraph 7.12 of the Guide states that the financial statements of an investment partnership that is exempt from SEC registration under the Investment Company Act of 1940, when prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, should:

- a. Categorize investments by the following:
 - (i) Type (such as common stocks, preferred stocks, convertible securities, fixed-income securities, government securities, options purchased, options written, warrants, futures, loan participations, short sales, other investment companies, and so forth)
 - (ii) Country or geographic region
 - (iii) Industry

Report (1) the percent of net assets that each such category represents and (2) the total value and cost for each category in (a)(i) and (a)(ii).

- b. Disclose the name, shares or principal amount, value, and type of the following:
 - (i) Each investment (including short sales), constituting more than 5 percent of net assets
 - (ii) All investments in any one issuer aggregating more than 5 percent of net assets

In applying the 5 percent test, total long and total short positions in any one issuer should be considered separately.

- c. Aggregate other investments (each of which is 5 percent or less of net assets) without specifically identifying the issuers of such investments and categorize them as required by (a) above.

.77 Section 508.41 addresses the effect of inadequate disclosure of information essential for fair presentation of the financial statements on the auditor's report. It states:

If the financial statements, including accompanying notes, fail to disclose information that is required by generally accepted accounting principles, the auditor should express a qualified or adverse opinion because of the departure from those principles and should provide the information in the report, if practicable, unless its omission from the auditor's report is recognized as appropriate by a specific Statement on Auditing Standards.

.78 Section 508.42 provides an example of a report qualified for inadequate disclosure (assuming that the auditor has concluded that it is not practicable to present the required information and the effects are such that the auditor has concluded an adverse opinion is not appropriate) as follows:

Independent Auditor's Report

[Same first and second paragraphs as the standard report]

The Company's financial statements do not disclose *[describe the nature of the omitted information that it is not practicable to present in the auditor's report]*. In our opinion, disclosure of this information is required by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

In our opinion, except for the omission of the information discussed in the preceding paragraph, . . .

.79 The Guide does not make it clear how the guidance in section 508.41 and .42 should be applied to reports on financial statements of investment partnerships that are exempt from SEC registration and that do not include all the investment information required in the Schedule of Investments as required by the Guide. For example, if the financial statements did not disclose each of the required items for each investment, the guidance in section 508.41 indicates the auditor should, if practicable, include the missing information (for example, the Schedule of Investments or information about individual investments) in the auditor's report. However, the example in section 508.42 provides that the auditor would disclose the nature of the missing information, rather than the actual information, in the auditor's report.

.80 In applying section 508.41 and .42 to an auditor's report on financial statements of an investment partnership that is exempt from SEC registration and that does not include the required Schedule of Investments information required by paragraph 7.12 of the Guide, is it sufficient for the auditor to

describe “the nature of the omitted disclosures” in his or her report expressing a qualified (or adverse) opinion?

.81 Interpretation—No. The example in section 508.42 does not change the requirement in section 508.41 for the auditor to issue a qualified or adverse opinion and also to provide the missing information, if practicable. If the investment disclosures required by the Guide are not included in the financial statements and it is practicable for the auditor to determine them or any portion thereof, the auditor should include the information in his or her report expressing the qualified or adverse opinion.

.82 Footnote 15 of section 508 indicates that it is practicable to provide the missing information if “the information is reasonably obtainable from management’s accounts and records and . . . providing the information in the report does not require the auditor to assume the position of a preparer of financial information.” Ordinarily, it would be practicable for the auditor to obtain and present the information about investments constituting more than 5 percent of net assets called for by section (b) of the disclosure requirement described in paragraph .76 above. However, due to the need to categorize the investments for the purpose of preparing the schedule called for by section (a) of the disclosure requirement described in paragraph .76 above, the auditor might be in the position of preparer of financial information and, therefore, would not include the schedule in his or her report. In rare cases, the Schedule of Investments information may be so limited that the auditor may conclude that disclosure of the entire Schedule is practicable.

.83 Following is an illustration of a report that expresses a qualified opinion because the Schedule of Investments fails to disclose investments constituting more than 5 percent of net assets, but in all other respects conforms to the requirements of the Guide:

Independent Auditor’s Report

[Same first and second paragraphs as the standard report]

The Schedule of Investments included in the Partnership’s financial statements does not disclose required information about the following investments, each constituting more than 5 percent of the Partnership’s total net assets, at December 31, 20X2:

- Amalgamated Buggy Whips, Inc., 10,000 shares of common stock—fair value \$3,280,000 (Consumer nondurable goods)
- Paper Airplane Corp., 6.25% Cv. Deb. due 20XX, \$4.5 million par value—fair value \$4,875,000 (Aviation)

In our opinion, disclosure of this information is required by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

In our opinion, except for the omission of the information discussed in the preceding paragraph, the financial statements and financial highlights referred to above present fairly, . . .

.84 An illustration of an adverse opinion relating to failure to present the entire Schedule of Investments and all of the related required information follows.⁶ This illustration assumes that the auditor has concluded that it is not practicable to present all of the required information. In such circumstances, the auditor presents in his or her report the missing information, where it is practicable to do so, and describes the nature of the missing information where it is not practicable to present the information in the report:

⁶ Section 508.36 discusses the factors the auditor considers in deciding whether to issue a qualified opinion or an adverse opinion.

Independent Auditor's Report

[Same first and second paragraphs as the standard report]

The Partnership has declined to prepare and present a Schedule of Investments and the related information as of December 31, 20X2. Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require presentation of this Schedule and the related information. Presentation of this Schedule would have disclosed required information about the following investments, each constituting more than 5 percent of the Partnership's total net assets, at December 31, 20X2:

- Amalgamated Buggy Whips, Inc., 10,000 shares of common stock—fair value \$3,280,000 (Consumer nondurable goods)⁷
- Paper Airplane Corp., 6.25% Cv. Deb. due 20XX, \$4.5 million par value—fair value \$4,875,000 (Aviation)

In addition, presentation of the Schedule of Investments would have disclosed *[describe the nature of the information that it is not practicable to present in the auditor's report]*.

In our opinion, because the omission of a Schedule of Investments results in an incomplete presentation as explained in the preceding paragraph, the financial statements and financial highlights referred to above do not present fairly. . .

[Issue Date: April 9, 2003.]

17. Clarification in the Audit Report of the Extent of Testing of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards

.85 *Question*—Auditing standards established by the Auditing Standards Board (ASB) of the AICPA are in effect and are enforceable⁸ for audits of entities that are not “issuers,” as that term is defined by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (the Act) or whose audit is not prescribed by the rules of the SEC. For purposes of this interpretation, these entities are referred to as “nonissuers.”⁹

⁷ In the absence of a Schedule of Investments containing categorizations by type, country or geographic region, and industry, such categorizations should be provided only if readily ascertainable from management's accounts and records. The auditor should not assign such categorizations if management has not done so.

⁸ The AICPA governing Council designated the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) as the body, pursuant to Rules 201 and 202 [ET sections 201.01 and 202.01] of the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct, with the authority to promulgate auditing and related attestation standards, quality control, ethics, independence and other standards relating to the preparation and issuance of audit reports for issuers, as defined by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002. The Council also designated the Auditing Standards Board (ASB), pursuant to Rules 201 and 202 [ET sections 201.01 and 202.01], as the body with the authority to promulgate auditing, attestation, and quality control standards and procedures for all other entities.

⁹ In a report issued on the audit of the financial statements of a subsidiary, investee, or other type of affiliate of an issuer, that is not itself an issuer, the auditor should refer to the audit as having been performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards if the report will not be filed with the SEC. For example, a subsidiary of an issuer may be subject to certain regulations that require an audit be performed in accordance with Government Auditing Standards (the Yellow Book). In this example, the auditor's report of the nonissuer should refer to generally accepted auditing standards and generally accepted government auditing standards.

.86 Section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, provides guidance on the auditor's consideration of internal control in an audit of a nonissuer's financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. That consideration is intended to provide the auditor a sufficient understanding of internal control to plan the audit and to determine the nature, timing, and extent of tests to be performed. The scope of the auditor's procedures required under section 319 is considerably less than that required for an attestation of internal control pursuant to Section 404(b) of the Act.

.87 To clarify that an audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards does not require the same level of testing and reporting on internal control over financial reporting as an audit of an issuer when Section 404(b) of the Act is applicable, may the auditor expand his or her audit report to indicate that the purpose and extent of the auditor's testing of internal control over financial reporting was to determine the auditor's procedures and was not sufficient to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting?

.88 Interpretation—Yes. An auditor may add such language to the auditor's standard report. An example of additional language¹⁰ that may be included in the auditor's report to indicate this matter follows:

Independent Auditor's Report

[Same first paragraph as the standard report]

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. *An audit includes consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.* An audit also includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Same opinion paragraph as the standard report]

[Issue Date: June, 2004.]

18. Reference to PCAOB Standards in an Audit Report on a Nonissuer¹¹

.89 Question—PC section 130, *References in Auditors' Reports to the Standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board*, directs auditors

¹⁰ The additional language related to internal control should not be used when reporting on the audit of financial statements of a nonissuer that engages its auditor to examine (or audit) and report on the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting either voluntarily or to comply with regulatory requirements.

¹¹ In a report issued on the audit of the financial statements of a subsidiary, investee, or other type of affiliate of an issuer, that is not itself an issuer, the auditor should refer to the audit as having been performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards if the report will not be filed with the SEC. For example, a subsidiary of an issuer may be subject to certain regulations that require an audit be performed in accordance with Government Auditing Standards (the Yellow Book). In this example, the auditor's report of the nonissuer should refer to generally accepted auditing standards and generally accepted government auditing standards.

to state in the auditor's report that the engagement was conducted in accordance with "the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)" whenever the auditor has performed the engagement in accordance with PCAOB standards. Additionally, the release accompanying the standard states that "nothing in the Board's rules would preclude an accounting firm from conducting an audit of a company that is not an issuer in accordance with the Board's standards and so stating in its audit report. This is true regardless of whether or not the accounting firm performing the audit is registered with the Board."

.90 If an auditor is engaged to perform an audit of a nonissuer in accordance with PCAOB standards, which standards are applicable and how should the auditor report?

.91 Interpretation—Section 508 requires the auditor to indicate in the auditor's report that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards. However, an auditor may indicate that the audit was also conducted in accordance with another set of auditing standards. If the auditor conducted the audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards *and* the auditing standards of the PCAOB, the auditor may indicate in the auditor's report that the audit was conducted in accordance with both sets of standards.

.92 Following is an example of additional language that may be included¹² in the auditor's report to indicate that an audit was conducted in accordance with both generally accepted auditing standards and the PCAOB's auditing standards, and to clarify that the purpose and extent of the auditor's testing of internal control over financial reporting was to determine the auditor's procedures and was not sufficient to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control. To clarify the source of generally accepted auditing standards in a dual reference reporting situation, the auditor may indicate that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards as established by the ASB:

Independent Auditor's Report

[Same first paragraph as the standard report]

We conducted our audit in accordance with *generally accepted auditing standards as established by the Auditing Standards Board (United States) and in accordance with the auditing standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)*. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. *The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. Our audit included consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the*

¹² This example includes the illustrative language from paragraph .88. Because the PCAOB's Auditing Standard No. 2, *An Audit of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting Performed in Conjunction With an Audit of Financial Statements*, requires an audit of internal control for those entities that are subject to Section 404(a) of the Act, an audit of a nonissuer performed under PCAOB auditing standards does not require an audit of internal control unless otherwise required by a regulator with jurisdiction over the nonissuer. The additional language related to internal control should not be used when reporting on the audit of financial statements of a nonissuer that engages its auditor to examine (or audit) and report on the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting either voluntarily or to comply with regulatory requirements.

effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly we express no such opinion. An audit also includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Same opinion paragraph as the standard report]

[Issue Date: June, 2004.]

AU Section 530***Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report***

Source: SAS No. 1, section 530; SAS No. 29; SAS No. 98.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 Generally, the date of completion of the field work should be used as the date of the independent auditor's report. Paragraph .05 describes the procedure to be followed when a subsequent event occurring after the completion of the field work is disclosed in the financial statements.

.02 The auditor has no responsibility to make any inquiry or carry out any auditing procedures for the period after the date of his report.¹ However, with respect to filings under the Securities Act of 1933, reference should be made to section 711.10-.13.*

Events Occurring After Completion of Field Work But Before Issuance of Report

.03 In case a subsequent event of the type requiring adjustment of the financial statements (as discussed in section 560.03) occurs after the date of the independent auditor's report but before the issuance of the related financial statements, and the event comes to the attention of the auditor, the financial statements should be adjusted or the auditor should qualify his or her opinion.² When the adjustment is made without disclosure of the event, the report ordinarily should be dated in accordance with paragraph .01. However, if the financial statements are adjusted and disclosure of the event is made, or if no adjustment is made and the auditor qualifies his or her opinion,³ the procedures set forth in paragraph .05 should be followed. [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.04 In case a subsequent event of the type requiring disclosure (as discussed in section 560.05) occurs after the date of the auditor's report but before the issuance of the related financial statements, and the event comes to the attention of the auditor, it should be disclosed in a note to the financial statements or the auditor should qualify his or her opinion.⁴ If disclosure of the event is made, either in a note or in the auditor's report, the auditor would date the report as set forth in the following paragraph. [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.05 The independent auditor has two methods available for dating the report when a subsequent event disclosed in the financial statements occurs after completion of field work but before the issuance of the related financial

¹ See section 561 regarding procedures to be followed by the auditor who, subsequent to the date of his report upon audited financial statements, becomes aware that facts may have existed at that date which might have affected his report had he then been aware of such facts.

* Section number revised, April 1981, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 37.

² In some cases, a disclaimer of opinion or an adverse opinion may be appropriate.

³ Ibid.

⁴ Ibid.

statements. The auditor may use "dual dating," for example, "February 16, 20__, except for Note __, as to which the date is March 1, 20__," or may date the report as of the later date. In the former instance, the responsibility for events occurring subsequent to the completion of field work is limited to the specific event referred to in the note (or otherwise disclosed). In the latter instance, the independent auditor's responsibility for subsequent events extends to the date of the report and, accordingly, the procedures outlined in section 560.12 generally should be extended to that date. [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

Reissuance of the Independent Auditor's Report

.06 An independent auditor may reissue his report on financial statements contained in annual reports filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission or other regulatory agencies or in a document he submits to his client or to others that contains information in addition to the client's basic financial statements subsequent to the date of his original report on the basic financial statements. An independent auditor may also be requested by his client to furnish additional copies of a previously issued report. Use of the original report date in a reissued report removes any implication that records, transactions, or events after that date have been examined or reviewed. In such cases, the independent auditor has no responsibility to make further investigation or inquiry as to events which may have occurred during the period between the original report date and the date of the release of additional reports. However, see section 711* as to an auditor's responsibility when his report is included in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933 and see section 508.70–73, for the predecessor auditor's responsibility when reissuing or consenting to the reuse of a report previously issued on the financial statements of a prior period. [As modified, effective December 31, 1980, by SAS No. 29.] (See section 551.)

.07 In some cases, it may not be desirable for the independent auditor to reissue his report in the circumstances described in paragraph .06 because he has become aware of an event that occurred subsequent to the date of his original report that requires adjustment or disclosure in the financial statements. In such cases, adjustment with disclosure or disclosure alone should be made as described in section 560.08. The independent auditor should consider the effect of these matters on his opinion and he should date his report in accordance with the procedures described in paragraph .05.

.08 However, if an event of the type requiring disclosure only (as discussed in section 560.05 and 560.08) occurs between the date of the independent auditor's original report and the date of the reissuance of such report, and if the event comes to the attention of the independent auditor, the event may be disclosed in a separate note to the financial statements captioned somewhat as follows:

Event (Unaudited) Subsequent to the Date of the Independent Auditor's Report

Under these circumstances, the report of the independent auditor would carry the same date used in the original report.

* Section number revised, April 1981, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 37.

AU Section 532

Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report

Source: SAS No. 87.

Effective for reports issued after December 31, 1998, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction and Applicability

.01 This section provides guidance to auditors on restricting the use of reports issued pursuant to Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs).¹ This section—

- Defines the terms *general use* and *restricted use*.
- Describes the circumstances in which the use of auditors' reports should be restricted.
- Specifies the language to be used in auditors' reports that are restricted as to use.

The reporting guidance in paragraph .19 of this section is not applicable to reports issued under section 324, *Service Organizations*, or reports issued under section 634, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties*.

General-Use and Restricted-Use Reports

.02 The term *general use* applies to auditors' reports that are not restricted to specified parties. Auditors' reports on financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or certain comprehensive bases of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles² ordinarily are not restricted as to use.^{3,4}

.03 The term *restricted use* applies to auditors' reports intended only for specified parties. The need for restriction on the use of a report may result from a number of circumstances, including the purpose of the report, the nature of the procedures applied in its preparation, the basis of or assumptions used in its preparation, the extent to which the procedures performed generally are known or understood, and the potential for the report to be misunderstood when taken out of the context in which it was intended to be used.

¹ Throughout this section, the term *accountant* may be used interchangeably with the term *auditor*. The term *accountant* refers to a person possessing the professional qualifications required to practice as an independent auditor. See section 110, *Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor*, paragraphs .04 and .05.

² Section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraph .04, defines a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.

³ However, see section 623.05f for restrictions on the use of reports on financial statements prepared in conformity with the requirements of the financial reporting provisions of a governmental regulatory agency.

⁴ Nothing in this section precludes an auditor from restricting the use of any report.

.04 An auditor should restrict the use of a report in the following circumstances.

- a. The subject matter of the auditor's report or the presentation being reported on is based on measurement or disclosure criteria contained in contractual agreements or regulatory provisions that are not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or an other comprehensive basis of accounting (OCBOA). (See paragraph .05.)
- b. The auditor's report is issued as a by-product of a financial statement audit and is based on the results of procedures designed to enable the auditor to express an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole, not to provide assurance on the specific subject matter of the report. (See paragraphs .07 through 11.)

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

Reporting on Subject Matter or Presentations Based on Measurement or Disclosure Criteria Contained in Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Provisions

.05 Reports on subject matter or presentations based on measurement or disclosure criteria contained in contractual agreements or regulatory provisions that are not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or an OCBOA are restricted as to use because the basis, assumptions, or purpose of such presentations (contained in such agreements or regulatory provisions) are developed for and directed only to the parties to the agreement or regulatory agency responsible for the provisions.

Reporting When Specified Parties Accept Responsibility for the Sufficiency of the Procedures Performed

[.06] [Paragraph deleted to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

Reporting as a By-Product of a Financial Statement Audit

.07 An auditor may issue certain reports on matters coming to his or her attention during the course of an audit of financial statements. Such reports include but are not limited to reports issued pursuant to the following:

- Section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*
- Section 380, *Communication With Audit Committees*
- Paragraphs .19 through .21 of section 623, *Special Reports*, for reporting on compliance with aspects of contractual agreements or regulatory requirements related to audited financial statements

.08 Reports issued pursuant to the aforementioned auditing standards are based on the results of procedures designed to enable an auditor to express an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole, not to provide assurance on the specific subject matter of the report. These reports are by-products of an audit of financial statements and are referred to as by-product reports in this section.

.09 Because the issuance of the by-product report is not the primary objective of the engagement, an audit generally includes only limited procedures directed toward the subject matter of the by-product report. Accordingly, because of the potential for misinterpretation or misunderstanding of the limited degree of assurance associated with a by-product report, the use of such reports should be restricted. For example, a report issued under section 325 should be restricted because the purpose of the engagement is to report on an entity's financial statements, not to provide assurance on its internal control.

.10 An auditor may issue a by-product report in connection with other engagements conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, such as an engagement to express an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement.

.11 In consideration of the foregoing, the use of by-product reports should be restricted to an entity's audit committee, board of directors, management, others within the organization, specified regulatory agencies, and, in the case of reports on compliance with aspects of contractual agreements, to the parties to the contract or agreement.

Combined Reports Covering Both Restricted-Use and General-Use Subject Matter or Presentations

.12 If an auditor issues a single combined report covering both (a) subject matter or presentations that require a restriction on use to specified parties and (b) subject matter or presentations that ordinarily do not require such a restriction, the use of such a single combined report should be restricted to the specified parties.

Inclusion of a Separate Restricted-Use Report in the Same Document With a General-Use Report

.13 In some instances, a separate restricted-use report may be included in a document that also contains a general-use report.⁵ The inclusion of a separate restricted-use report in a document that contains a general-use report does not affect the intended use of either report. The restricted-use report remains restricted as to use, and the general-use report continues to be for general use.

Adding Other Specified Parties

.14 Subsequent to the completion of an engagement resulting in a restricted-use report, or in the course of such an engagement, an auditor may be asked to consider adding other parties as specified parties.

⁵ Such a requirement exists in audits performed in accordance with U.S. Office of Management and Budget Circular A-133, *Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations*, and U.S. General Accounting Office, *Government Auditing Standards*.

.15 As noted in paragraph .11 of this section, the use of by-product reports should be restricted to an entity's audit committee, board of directors, management, others within the organization, specified regulatory agencies, and, in the case of reports on compliance with aspects of contractual agreements, to the parties to the contract or agreement. An auditor should not agree to add other parties as specified parties of a by-product report.

.16 If an auditor is reporting on subject matter or a presentation based on measurement or disclosure criteria contained in contractual agreements or regulatory provisions, as described in paragraph .05 of this section, the auditor may agree to add other parties as specified parties based on the auditor's consideration of factors such as the identity of the other parties and the intended use of the report. If the auditor agrees to add other parties as specified parties, the auditor should obtain affirmative acknowledgment, ordinarily in writing, from the other parties of their understanding of the nature of the engagement, the measurement or disclosure criteria used in the engagement, and the related report. If the other parties are added after the auditor has issued his or her report, the report may be reissued or the auditor may provide other written acknowledgment that the other parties have been added as specified parties. If the report is reissued, the report date should not be changed. If the auditor provides written acknowledgment that the other parties have been added as specified parties, such written acknowledgment ordinarily should state that no procedures have been performed subsequent to the date of the report.

[.17] [Paragraph deleted to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

Limiting the Distribution of Reports

.18 Because of the reasons presented in paragraph .03 of this section, an auditor should consider informing his or her client that restricted-use reports are not intended for distribution to nonspecified parties, regardless of whether they are included in a document containing a separate general-use report.^{6, 7} However, an auditor is not responsible for controlling a client's distribution of restricted-use reports. Accordingly, a restricted-use report should alert readers to the restriction on the use of the report by indicating that the report is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than the specified parties.

Report Language—Restricted Use

.19 An auditor's report that is restricted as to use should contain a separate paragraph at the end of the report that includes the following elements:

- a. A statement indicating that the report is intended solely for the information and use of the specified parties

⁶ In some cases, restricted-use reports filed with regulatory agencies are required by law or regulation to be made available to the public as a matter of public record. Also, a regulatory agency as part of its oversight responsibility for an entity may require access to restricted-use reports in which they are not named as a specified party.

⁷ This section does not preclude an auditor, in connection with establishing the terms of the engagement, from reaching an understanding with the client that the intended use of the report will be restricted, and from obtaining the client's agreement that the client and the specified parties will not distribute the report to parties other than those identified in the report.

- b. An identification of the specified parties to whom use is restricted
- c. A statement that the report is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than the specified parties

An example of such a paragraph is the following:

This report is intended solely for the information and use of *[the specified parties]*⁸ and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

Effective Date

.20 This section is effective for reports issued after December 31, 1998. Early application of the provisions of this section is permitted.

⁸ The report may list the specified parties or refer the reader to the specified parties listed elsewhere in the report. For reports on engagements performed in accordance with U.S. Office of Management and Budget Circular A-133, *Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations*, the specified parties may be identified as "federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities."

AU Section 534

Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries

Source: SAS No. 51.

See section 9534 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning after July 31, 1986, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 This section provides guidance for an independent auditor practicing in the United States who is engaged to report on the financial statements of a U.S. entity that have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country for use outside the United States.¹ A "U.S. entity" is an entity that is either organized or domiciled in the United States.

Purpose and Use of Financial Statements

.02 A U.S. entity ordinarily prepares financial statements for use in the United States in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States, but it may also prepare financial statements that are intended for use outside the United States and are prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country. For example, the financial statements of a U.S. entity may be prepared for inclusion in the consolidated financial statements of a non-U.S. parent. A U.S. entity may also have non-U.S. investors or may decide to raise capital in another country. Before reporting on financial statements prepared in conformity with the accounting principles of another country, the auditor should have a clear understanding of, and obtain written representations from management regarding, the purpose and uses of such financial statements. If the auditor uses the standard report of another country, and the financial statements will have general distribution in that country, he should consider whether any additional legal responsibilities are involved.

General and Fieldwork Standards

.03 When auditing the financial statements of a U.S. entity prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country, the auditor should perform the procedures that are necessary to comply with the general and fieldwork standards of U.S. generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).

¹ See paragraph .07, however, for a discussion of financial statements prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country for limited distribution in the United States.

.04 The auditing procedures generally performed under U.S. GAAS may need to be modified, however. The assertions embodied in financial statements prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country may differ from those prepared in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles. For example, accounting principles generally accepted in another country may require that certain assets be revalued to adjust for the effects of inflation—in which case, the auditor should perform procedures to test the revaluation adjustments. On the other hand, another country's accounting principles may not require or permit recognition of deferred taxes; consequently, procedures for testing deferred tax balances would not be applicable. As another example, the accounting principles of some countries do not require or permit disclosure of related party transactions. Determining that such transactions are properly disclosed, therefore, would not be an audit objective in such cases. Other objectives, however, would remain relevant—such as identifying related parties in order to fully understand the business purpose, nature, and extent of the transactions and their effects on the financial statements.

.05 The auditor should understand the accounting principles generally accepted in the other country. Such knowledge may be obtained by reading the statutes or professional literature (or codifications thereof) that establish or describe the accounting principles generally accepted in the other country. Application of accounting principles to a particular situation often requires practical experience; the auditor should consider, therefore, consulting with persons having such expertise in the accounting principles of the other country. If the accounting principles of another country are not established with sufficient authority or by general acceptance, or a broad range of practices is acceptable, the auditor may nevertheless be able to report on financial statements for use in such countries if, in the auditor's judgment, the client's principles and practices are appropriate in the circumstances and are disclosed in a clear and comprehensive manner. In determining the appropriateness of the accounting principles used, the auditor may consider, for example, International Accounting Standards established by the International Accounting Standards Committee.

Compliance With Auditing Standards of Another Country

.06 In those circumstances in which the auditor is requested to apply the auditing standards of another country when reporting on financial statements prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in that country, the auditor should comply with the general and fieldwork standards of that country as well as with those standards in U.S. GAAS. This may require the auditor to perform certain procedures required by auditing standards of the other country in addition to those required by U.S. GAAS. The auditor will need to read the statutes or professional literature, or codifications thereof, that establish or describe the auditing standards generally accepted in the other country. He should understand, however, that such statutes or professional literature may not be a complete description of auditing practices and, therefore, should consider consulting with persons having expertise in the auditing standards of the other country.

Reporting Standards

.07 If financial statements prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country are prepared for use only outside

the United States, the auditor may report using either (a) a U.S.-style report modified to report on the accounting principles of another country (see paragraphs .09 and .10) or (b) if appropriate, the report form of the other country (see paragraphs .11 and .12). This is not intended to preclude limited distribution of the financial statements to parties (such as banks, institutional investors, and other knowledgeable parties that may choose to rely on the report) within the United States that deal directly with the entity, if the financial statements are to be used in a manner that permits such parties to discuss differences from U.S. accounting and reporting practices and their significance with the entity.

.08 Financial statements prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country ordinarily are not useful to U.S. users. Therefore, if financial statements are needed for use both in another country and within the United States, the auditor may report on two sets of financial statements for the entity—one prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country for use outside the United States, and the other prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States (see paragraph .13). If dual statements are not prepared, or for some other reason the financial statements prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country will have more than limited distribution in the United States, the auditor should report on them using the U.S. standard form of report, modified as appropriate for departures from accounting principles generally accepted in the United States (see paragraph .14).

Use Only Outside the United States

.09 A U.S.-style report modified to report on financial statements prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country that are intended for use only outside the United States should include—

- a. A title that includes the word “independent.”²
- b. A statement that the financial statements identified in the report were audited.
- c. A statement that refers to the note to the financial statements that describes the basis of presentation of the financial statements on which the auditor is reporting, including identification of the nationality of the accounting principles.
- d. A statement that the financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management³ and that the auditor’s responsibility is to express an opinion on the financial statements based on his audit.

² This statement does not require a title for an auditor’s report if the auditor is not independent. See section 504, *Association With Financial Statements*, for guidance on reporting when the auditor is not independent. [Footnote added to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.]

³ In some instances, a document containing the auditor’s report may include a statement by management regarding its responsibility for the presentation of the financial statements. Nevertheless, the auditor’s report should state that the financial statements are management’s responsibility. [Footnote added to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.]

The Fourth Standard of Reporting

- e. A statement that the audit was conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America (and, if appropriate, with the auditing standards of the other country).
- f. A statement that U.S. standards require that the auditor plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement.
- g. A statement that an audit includes:
 - (1) Examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements,
 - (2) Assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, and
 - (3) Evaluating the overall financial statement presentation.⁴
- h. A statement that the auditor believes that his audit provides a reasonable basis for his opinion.
- i. A paragraph that expresses the auditor's opinion on whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in conformity with the basis of accounting described. If the auditor concludes that the financial statements are not fairly presented on the basis of accounting described, all substantive reasons for that conclusion should be disclosed in an additional explanatory paragraph (preceding the opinion paragraph) of the report, and the opinion paragraph should include appropriate modifying language as well as a reference to the explanatory paragraph.
- j. If the auditor is auditing comparative financial statements and the described basis of accounting has not been applied in a manner consistent with that of the preceding period and the change has had a material effect on the comparability of the financial statements, the auditor should add an explanatory paragraph to his report (following the opinion paragraph) that describes the change in accounting principle and refers to the note to the financial statements that discusses the change and its effect on the financial statements.
- k. The manual or printed signature of the auditor's firm.
- l. Date.⁵

[As amended to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

⁴ Section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraphs .03 and .04, discuss the auditor's evaluation of the overall presentation of the financial statements. [Footnote added to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Title of section 411 amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

⁵ For guidance on dating the independent auditor's report, see section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*. [Footnote added to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.]

.10 The following is an illustration of such a report:

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying balance sheet of International Company as of December 31, 20XX and the related statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended which, as described in Note X, have been prepared on the basis of accounting principles generally accepted in [*name of country*]. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America (and in [*name of country*]). U.S. standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of International Company as of [at] December 31, 20XX, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in [*name of country*].

[As amended to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.11 The independent auditor may also use the auditor's standard report of another country, provided that—

- a. Such a report would be used by auditors in the other country in similar circumstances.
- b. The auditor understands, and is in a position to make, the attestations contained in such a report (see paragraph .12).

The auditor should consider whether the standard report of another country or the financial statements may be misunderstood because they resemble those prepared in conformity with U.S. standards. When the auditor believes there is a risk of misunderstanding, he should identify the other country in the report.

.12 When the auditor uses the standard report of the other country, the auditor should comply with the reporting standards of that country. The auditor should recognize that the standard report used in another country, even when it appears similar to that used in the United States, may convey a different meaning and entail a different responsibility on the part of the auditor due to custom or culture. Use of a standard report of another country may also require the auditor to provide explicit or implicit assurance of statutory compliance or otherwise require understanding of local law. When using the auditor's standard report of another country, the auditor needs to understand applicable legal responsibilities, in addition to the auditing standards and the accounting principles generally accepted in the other country. Accordingly, depending on the nature and extent of the auditor's knowledge

and experience, he should consider consulting with persons having expertise in the audit reporting practices of the other country to attain the understanding needed to issue that country's standard report.

.13 A U.S. entity that prepares financial statements in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles also may prepare financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country for use outside the United States. In such circumstances, the auditor may report on the financial statements that are in conformity with accounting principles of the other country by following the guidance in paragraphs .09 and .10. The auditor may wish to include, in one or both of the reports, a statement that another report has been issued on the financial statements for the entity that have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in another country. The auditor may also wish to reference any note describing significant differences between the accounting principles used and U.S. GAAP. An example of such a statement follows.

We also have reported separately on the financial statements of International Company for the same period presented in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in [name of country]. (The significant differences between the accounting principles accepted in [name of country] and those generally accepted in the United States are summarized in Note X.)

Use in the United States

.14 If the auditor is requested to report on the fair presentation of financial statements, prepared in conformity with the accounting principles generally accepted in another country, that will have more than limited distribution in the United States, he should use the U.S. standard form of report (see section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .08), modified as appropriate (see section 508.35–.57), because of departures from accounting principles generally accepted in the United States.⁶ The auditor may also, in a separate paragraph to the report, express an opinion on whether the financial statements are presented in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country.

.15 The auditor may also report on the same set of financial statements, prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country, that will have more than limited distribution in the United States by using both the standard report of the other country or a U.S.-style report (described in paragraph .09) for distribution outside the United States, and a U.S. form of report (described in paragraph .14) for distribution in the United States.

Effective Date

.16 This section is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning after July 31, 1986.

⁶ This section does not apply to reports on financial statements of U.S. subsidiaries of foreign registrants presented in SEC filings of foreign parent companies where the subsidiaries' financial statements have been prepared on the basis of accounting principles used by the parent company. [Footnote renumbered to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.]

AU Section 9534

Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries: Auditing Interpretations of Section 534

1. Financial Statements for General Use Only Outside of the United States in Accordance With International Accounting Standards and International Standards on Auditing

.01 Question—Section 534, *Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries*, provides guidance for the independent auditor practicing in the United States who is engaged to report on the financial statements of a U.S. entity¹ for general use only outside of the United States in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in another country. May an independent auditor practicing in the United States report on the financial statements of a U.S. entity presented in conformity with the International Accounting Standards for general use only outside of the United States?

.02 Interpretation—Yes. In these circumstances, the auditor should follow the guidance in section 534 in planning and performing the engagement.

.03 Question—If the financial statements are presented in conformity with the International Accounting Standards, may a U.S. auditor perform the audit in accordance with the International Standards on Auditing?

.04 Interpretation—Yes. In these circumstances, the auditor should follow the guidance in section 534 in planning and performing the engagement. Section 534 requires the U.S. auditor, in these circumstances, to comply with the general and fieldwork standards of U.S. generally accepted auditing standards as well as any additional requirements of the International Standards on Auditing. The auditor may use either a U.S.-style report (section 534.09) or the report form set forth in the International Standards on Auditing.

[Issue Date: May, 1996.]

¹ A U.S. entity is an entity that is either organized or domiciled in the United States.

AU Section 543

Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors

Source: SAS No. 1, section 543; SAS No. 64.

See section 9543 for interpretations of this section.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 This section provides guidance on the professional judgments the independent auditor makes in deciding (a) whether he may serve as principal auditor and use the work and reports of other independent auditors who have audited the financial statements of one or more subsidiaries, divisions, branches, components, or investments included in the financial statements presented and (b) the form and content of the principal auditor's report in these circumstances.¹ Nothing in this section should be construed to require or imply that an auditor, in deciding whether he may properly serve as principal auditor without himself auditing particular subsidiaries, divisions, branches, components, or investments of his client, should make that decision on any basis other than his judgment regarding the professional considerations as discussed in paragraphs .02 and .10; nor should an auditor state or imply that a report that makes reference to another auditor is inferior in professional standing to a report without such a reference. [As modified, September 1981, by the Auditing Standards Board.]

Principal Auditor's Course of Action

.02 The auditor considering whether he may serve as principal auditor may have performed all but a relatively minor portion of the work, or significant parts of the audit may have been performed by other auditors. In the latter case, he must decide whether his own participation is sufficient to enable him to serve as the principal auditor and to report as such on the financial statements. In deciding this question, the auditor should consider, among other things, the materiality of the portion of the financial statements he has audited in comparison with the portion audited by other auditors, the extent of his knowledge of the overall financial statements, and the importance of the components he audited in relation to the enterprise as a whole. [As modified, September 1981, by the Auditing Standards Board.]

.03 If the auditor decides that it is appropriate for him to serve as the principal auditor, he must then decide whether to make reference in his report² to the audit performed by another auditor. If the principal auditor decides to assume responsibility for the work of the other auditor insofar as

¹ Section 315 applies if an auditor uses the work of a predecessor auditor in expressing an opinion on financial statements.

² See paragraph .09 for example of appropriate reporting when reference is made to the audit of other auditors.

that work relates to the principal auditor's expression of an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole, no reference should be made to the other auditor's work or report. On the other hand, if the principal auditor decides not to assume that responsibility, his report should make reference to the audit of the other auditor and should indicate clearly the division of responsibility between himself and the other auditor in expressing his opinion on the financial statements. Regardless of the principal auditor's decision, the other auditor remains responsible for the performance of his own work and for his own report.

Decision Not to Make Reference

.04 If the principal auditor is able to satisfy himself as to the independence and professional reputation of the other auditor (see paragraph .10) and takes steps he considers appropriate to satisfy himself as to the audit performed by the other auditor (see paragraph .12), he may be able to express an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole without making reference in his report to the audit of the other auditor. If the principal auditor decides to take this position, he should not state in his report that part of the audit was made by another auditor because to do so may cause a reader to misinterpret the degree of responsibility being assumed.

.05 Ordinarily, the principal auditor would be able to adopt this position when:

- a. Part of the audit is performed by another independent auditor which is an associated or correspondent firm and whose work is acceptable to the principal auditor based on his knowledge of the professional standards and competence of that firm; or
- b. The other auditor was retained by the principal auditor and the work was performed under the principal auditor's guidance and control; or
- c. The principal auditor, whether or not he selected the other auditor, nevertheless takes steps he considers necessary to satisfy himself as to the audit performed by the other auditor and accordingly is satisfied as to the reasonableness of the accounts for the purpose of inclusion in the financial statements on which he is expressing his opinion; or
- d. The portion of the financial statements audited by the other auditor is not material to the financial statements covered by the principal auditor's opinion.

Decision to Make Reference

.06 On the other hand, the principal auditor may decide to make reference to the audit of the other auditor when he expresses his opinion on the financial statements. In some situations, it may be impracticable for the principal auditor to review the other auditor's work or to use other procedures which in the judgment of the principal auditor would be necessary for him to satisfy himself as to the audit performed by the other auditor. Also, if the financial statements of a component audited by another auditor are material in relation to the total, the principal auditor may decide, regardless of any other considerations, to make reference in his report to the audit of the other auditor.

.07 When the principal auditor decides that he will make reference to the audit of the other auditor, his report should indicate clearly, in both the introductory, scope and opinion paragraphs, the division of responsibility as between that portion of the financial statements covered by his own audit and that covered by the audit of the other auditor. The report should disclose the magnitude of the portion of the financial statements audited by the other auditor. This may be done by stating the dollar amounts or percentages of one or more of the following: total assets, total revenues, or other appropriate criteria, whichever most clearly reveals the portion of the financial statements audited by the other auditor. The other auditor may be named but only with his express permission and provided his report is presented together with that of the principal auditor.³

.08 Reference in the report of the principal auditor to the fact that part of the audit was made by another auditor is not to be construed as a qualification of the opinion but rather as an indication of the divided responsibility between the auditors who conducted the audits of various components of the overall financial statements. [As modified, September 1981, by the Auditing Standards Board.]

.09 An example of appropriate reporting by the principal auditor indicating the division of responsibility when he makes reference to the audit of the other auditor follows:

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the consolidated balance sheet of X Company and subsidiaries as of December 31, 20...., and the related consolidated statements of income and retained earnings and cash flows for the year then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We did not audit the financial statements of B Company, a wholly-owned subsidiary, which statements reflect total assets and revenues constituting 20 percent and 22 percent, respectively, of the related consolidated totals. Those statements were audited by other auditors whose report has been furnished to us, and our opinion, insofar as it relates to the amounts included for B Company, is based solely on the report of the other auditors.

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit and the report of the other auditors provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, based on our audit and the report of the other auditors, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of X Company as of [at] December 31, 20...., and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

³ As to filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission, see Rule 2-05 of Regulation S-X.

When two or more auditors in addition to the principal auditor participate in the audit, the percentages covered by the other auditors may be stated in the aggregate. [Revised, April 1989, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

Procedures Applicable to Both Methods of Reporting

.10 Whether or not the principal auditor decides to make reference to the audit of the other auditor, he should make inquiries concerning the professional reputation and independence of the other auditor. He also should adopt appropriate measures to assure the coordination of his activities with those of the other auditor in order to achieve a proper review of matters affecting the consolidating or combining of accounts in the financial statements. These inquiries and other measures may include procedures such as the following:

- a. Make inquiries as to the professional reputation and standing of the other auditor to one or more of the following:
 - (i) The American Institute of Certified Public Accountants,⁴ the applicable state society of certified public accountants and/or the local chapter, or in the case of a foreign auditor, his corresponding professional organization.
 - (ii) Other practitioners.
 - (iii) Bankers and other credit grantors.
 - (iv) Other appropriate sources.
- b. Obtain a representation from the other auditor that he is independent under the requirements of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, if appropriate, the requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC).^[4a]
- c. Ascertain through communication with the other auditor:
 - (i) That he is aware that the financial statements of the component which he is to audit are to be included in the financial statements on which the principal auditor will report and that the other auditor's report thereon will be relied upon (and, where applicable, referred to) by the principal auditor.

⁴ The AICPA Professional Ethics Division can respond to inquiries about whether individuals are members of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and whether complaints against members have been adjudicated by the Joint Trial Board. The division cannot respond to inquiries about public accounting firms or provide information about letters of required corrective action issued by the division or pending disciplinary proceedings or investigations. The AICPA Division for CPA Firms can respond to inquiries about whether specific public accounting firms are members of either the Private Companies Practice Section (PCPS) or the SEC Practice Section (SECPS), and can indicate whether a firm had a peer review in compliance with the Section's membership requirements and whether any sanctions against the firm have been publicly announced. In addition, the division will supply copies of peer-review reports that have been accepted by the applicable section of the division and information submitted by member firms on applications for membership and annual updates. The AICPA Practice Monitoring staff or the appropriate state CPA society can respond to inquiries as to whether specific public accounting firms are enrolled in the AICPA Peer Review Program and can indicate whether a firm had a peer review in compliance with the AICPA *Standards for Performing and Reporting on Peer Reviews* [PR section 100]. [As amended by the Auditing Standards Board, June 1990.]

^[4a] [Footnote deleted, December 2001, to acknowledge the dissolution of the Independence Standard Board.]

- (ii) That he or she is familiar with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America and with the generally accepted auditing standards promulgated by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and will conduct his or her audit and will report in accordance therewith.
- (iii) That he has knowledge of the relevant financial reporting requirements for statements and schedules to be filed with regulatory agencies such as the Securities and Exchange Commission, if appropriate.
- (iv) That a review will be made of matters affecting elimination of intercompany transactions and accounts and, if appropriate in the circumstances, the uniformity of accounting practices among the components included in the financial statements.

(Inquiries as to matters under *a*, and *c* (ii) and (iii) ordinarily would be unnecessary if the principal auditor already knows the professional reputation and standing of the other auditor and if the other auditor's primary place of practice is in the United States.) [As modified, September 1981, by the Auditing Standards Board. Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.11 If the results of inquiries and procedures by the principal auditor with respect to matters described in paragraph .10 lead him to the conclusion that he can neither assume responsibility for the work of the other auditor insofar as that work relates to the principal auditor's expression of an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole, nor report in the manner set forth in paragraph .09, he should appropriately qualify his opinion or disclaim an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole. His reasons therefor should be stated, and the magnitude of the portion of the financial statements to which his qualification extends should be disclosed.

Additional Procedures Under Decision Not to Make Reference

.12 When the principal auditor decides not to make reference to the audit of the other auditor, in addition to satisfying himself as to the matters described in paragraph .10, he should also consider whether to perform one or more of the following procedures:

- a.* Visit the other auditor and discuss the audit procedures followed and results thereof.
- b.* Review the audit programs of the other auditor. In some cases, it may be appropriate to issue instructions to the other auditor as to the scope of his audit work.
- c.* Review the working papers of the other auditor, including the understanding of internal control and the assessment of control risk.

.13 In some circumstances the principal auditor may consider it appropriate to participate in discussions regarding the accounts with management personnel of the component whose financial statements are being audited by

other auditors and/or to make supplemental tests of such accounts. The determination of the extent of additional procedures, if any, to be applied rests with the principal auditor alone in the exercise of his professional judgment and in no way constitutes a reflection on the adequacy of the other auditor's work. Because the principal auditor in this case assumes responsibility for his opinion on the financial statements on which he is reporting without making reference to the audit performed by the other auditor, his judgment must govern as to the extent of procedures to be undertaken.

Long-Term Investments

.14 With respect to investments accounted for under the equity method, the auditor who uses another auditor's report for the purpose of reporting on the investor's equity in underlying net assets and its share of earnings or losses and other transactions of the investee is in the position of a principal auditor using the work and reports of other auditors. Under these circumstances, the auditor may decide that it would be appropriate to refer to the work and report of the other auditor in his report on the financial statements of the investor. (See paragraphs .06–.11.) When the work and reports of other auditors constitute a major element of evidence with respect to investments accounted for under the cost method, the auditor may be in a position analogous to that of a principal auditor.

Other Auditor's Report Departs From Standard Report

.15 If the report of the other auditor is other than a standard report, the principal auditor should decide whether the reason for the departure from the standard report is of such nature and significance in relation to the financial statements on which the principal auditor is reporting that it would require recognition in his own report. If the reason for the departure is not material in relation to such financial statements and the other auditor's report is not presented, the principal auditor need not make reference in his report to such departure. If the other auditor's report is presented, the principal auditor may wish to make reference to such departure and its disposition.

Restated Financial Statements of Prior Years Following a Pooling of Interests

.16 Following a pooling-of-interests transaction, an auditor may be asked to report on restated financial statements for one or more prior years when other auditors have audited one or more of the entities included in such financial statements. In some of these situations the auditor may decide that he has not audited a sufficient portion of the financial statements for such prior year or years to enable him to serve as principal auditor (see paragraph .02). Also, in such cases, it often is not possible or it may not be appropriate or necessary for the auditor to satisfy himself with respect to the restated financial statements. In these circumstances it may be appropriate for him to express his opinion solely with respect to the combining of such statements; however, no opinion should be expressed unless the auditor has audited the statements of at least one of the entities included in the restatement for at least

the latest period presented. The following is an illustration of appropriate reporting on such combination that can be presented in an additional paragraph of the auditor's report following the standard introductory, scope and opinion paragraphs covering the consolidated financial statements for the current year:

We previously audited and reported on the consolidated statements of income and cash flows of XYZ Company and subsidiaries for the year ended December 31, 19X1, prior to their restatement for the 19X2 pooling of interests. The contribution of XYZ Company and subsidiaries to revenues and net income represented percent and percent of the respective restated totals. Separate financial statements of the other companies included in the 19X1 restated consolidated statements of income and cash flows were audited and reported on separately by other auditors. We also audited the combination of the accompanying consolidated statements of income and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 19X1, after restatement for the 19X2 pooling of interests; in our opinion, such consolidated statements have been properly combined on the basis described in Note A of notes to consolidated financial statements.

[As modified, October 1980, by the Auditing Standards Board. As amended, effective for reports issued after December 31, 1990, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 64.]

.17 In reporting on restated financial statements as described in the preceding paragraph, the auditor does not assume responsibility for the work of other auditors nor the responsibility for expressing an opinion on the restated financial statements taken as a whole. He should apply procedures which will enable him to express an opinion only as to proper combination of the financial statements. These procedures include testing the combination for clerical accuracy and the methods used to combine the restated financial statements for conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. For example, the auditor should make inquiries and apply procedures regarding such matters as the following:

- a. Elimination of intercompany transactions and accounts.
- b. Combining adjustments and reclassifications.
- c. Adjustments to treat like items in a comparable manner, if appropriate.
- d. The manner and extent of presentation of disclosure matters in the restated financial statements and notes thereto.

The auditor should also consider the application of procedures contained in paragraph .10.

[As modified, October 1980, by the Auditing Standards Board.]

Predecessor Auditor

[.18] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 7, effective November 30, 1975, as superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 84, effective with respect to acceptance of an engagement after March 31, 1998.] (See section 315.)

* If restated consolidated balance sheets are also presented, the auditor may also express his opinion with respect to the combination of the consolidated balance sheets.

AU Section 9543

Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors: Auditing Interpretations of Section 543

1. Specific Procedures Performed by the Other Auditor at the Principal Auditor's Request

.01 Question—An independent auditor is auditing the financial statements of a component¹ in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and is issuing a report to his client that will also be used by another independent auditor who is acting as a principal auditor.² The principal auditor requests the other auditor to perform specific procedures, for example, to furnish or test amounts to be eliminated in consolidation, such as intercompany profits, or to read other information in documents containing audited financial statements. In those circumstances, who is responsible to determine the extent of the procedures to be performed?

.02 Interpretation—Section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*, paragraph .10, states that the principal auditor “should adopt appropriate measures to assure the coordination of his activities with those of the other auditor in order to achieve a proper review of matters affecting the consolidating or combining of accounts in the financial statements.” Section 543.10c(iv) further states that those measures may include procedures such as ascertaining through communication with the other auditor “that a review will be made of matters affecting elimination of intercompany transactions and accounts.”

.03 Thus, when the principal auditor requests the other auditor to perform procedures, the principal auditor is responsible for determining the extent of the procedures to be performed. The principal auditor should provide specific instructions on procedures to be performed, materiality considerations for that purpose, and other information that may be necessary in the circumstances. The other auditor should perform the requested procedures in accordance with the principal auditor's instructions and report the findings solely for the use of the principal auditor.

[Issue Date: April, 1979; Revised: November, 1996.]

2. Inquiries of the Principal Auditor by the Other Auditor

.04 Question—Section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*, gives guidance to a principal auditor on making inquiries of the other auditor. Section 543.03 also states that “the other auditor remains responsible for the performance of his own work and for his own report.” Should the other auditor also make inquiries of the principal auditor to fulfill that responsibility?

¹ For the purposes of this interpretation, the entities whose separate financial statements collectively comprise the consolidated or other financial statements are referred to as components.

² See section 543 for the definition of a principal auditor. For the purposes of this interpretation, the auditor whose work is used by a principal auditor is referred to as the other auditor.

.05 Interpretation—Section 334, *Related Parties*, states that there may be inquiry of the principal auditor regarding related parties. In addition, before issuing his report, the other auditor should consider whether he should inquire of the principal auditor as to matters that may be significant to his own audit.

.06 The other auditor's consideration of whether to make the inquiry should be based on factors such as his awareness that there are transactions or relationships which are unusual or complex between the component he is auditing and the component the principal auditor is auditing, or his knowledge that in the past matters relating to his audit have arisen that were known to the principal auditor but not to him.

.07 If the other auditor believes inquiry is appropriate he may furnish the principal auditor with a draft of the financial statements expected to be issued and of his report solely for the purpose of aiding the principal auditor to respond to the inquiry. The inquiry would concern transactions, adjustments, or other matters that have come to the principal auditor's attention that he believes require adjustment to or disclosure in the financial statements of the component being audited by the other auditor. Also, the other auditor should inquire about any relevant limitation on the scope of the audit performed by the principal auditor.

[Issue Date: April, 1979.]

3. Form of Inquiries of the Principal Auditor Made by the Other Auditor

.08 Question—In those circumstances when the other auditor believes an inquiry of the principal auditor is appropriate, what form should the inquiry take and when should it be made?

.09 Interpretation—The other auditor's inquiry ordinarily should be in writing. It should indicate whether the response should be in writing, and should specify the date as of which the principal auditor should respond. Ordinarily, that date should be near the anticipated date of the other auditor's report. An example of a written inquiry from the other auditor is as follows:

"We are auditing the financial statements of (name of client) as of (date) and for the (period of audit) for the purpose of expressing an opinion as to whether the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows of (name of client) in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

A draft of the financial statements referred to above and a draft of our report are enclosed solely to aid you in responding to this inquiry. Please provide us (in writing) (orally) with the following information in connection with your current examination of the consolidated financial statements of (name of parent company):

1. Transactions or other matters (including adjustments made during consolidation or contemplated at the date of your reply) that have come to your attention that you believe require adjustment to or disclosure in the financial statements of (name of client) being audited by us.

2. Any limitation on the scope of your audit that is related to the financial statements of (name of client) being audited by us, or that limits your ability to provide us with the information requested in this inquiry.

Please make your response as of a date near (expected date of the other auditor's report)."

.10 The principal auditor's reply will often be made as of a date when his audit is still in progress; however, the other auditor should expect that ordinarily the response should satisfy his need for information. However, there may be instances when the principal auditor's response explains that it is limited because his audit has not progressed to a point that enables him to provide a response that satisfies the other auditor's need for information. If the principal auditor's response is limited in that manner, the other auditor should consider whether to apply acceptable alternative procedures, delay the issuance of his report until the principal auditor can respond, or qualify his opinion or disclaim an opinion for a limitation on the scope of his audit.

[Issue Date: April, 1979]

4. Form of Principal Auditor's Response to Inquiries from Other Auditors

.11 *Question*—An independent auditor acting in the capacity of a principal auditor may receive an inquiry from another independent auditor performing the audit of the financial statements of a component concerning transactions, adjustments, or limitations on his audit.³ What should be the form of the principal auditor's response?

.12 *Interpretation*—The principal auditor should respond promptly to the other auditor's inquiry, based on his audit, and if applicable, on his reading of the draft financial statements and report furnished by the other auditor. His response may be written or oral, as requested by the other auditor. However, the principal auditor's response ordinarily should be in writing if it contains information that may have a significant effect on the other auditor's audit.

.13 The principal auditor should identify the stage of completion of his audit as of the date of his reply. He should also indicate that no audit procedures were performed for the purpose of identifying matters that would not affect his audit and report, and therefore, not all the information requested would necessarily be revealed. If the principal auditor has been furnished with a draft of the financial statements being audited by the other auditor and a draft of his report, the principal auditor should state that he has read the draft only to aid him in making his reply.

.14 An example of a written response from the principal auditor is as follows:

"This letter is furnished to you in response to your request that we provide you with certain information in connection with your audit of the financial statements of (name of component), a (subsidiary, division, branch or investment) of Parent Company for the year ended (date).

We are in the process of performing an audit of the consolidated financial statements of Parent Company for the year ended (date) (but have not completed our work as of this date). The objective of our audit is to enable us to express an opinion on the consolidated financial statements of Parent Company and, accordingly, we have performed no procedures directed toward identifying matters that would not affect our audit or our report. However, solely for the purpose of responding to your inquiry, we have read the draft of the financial statements of (name of component) as of (date) and for the (period of audit) and the draft of your report on them, included with your inquiry dated (date of inquiry).

³ See section 9543.04--07, "Inquiries of the Principal Auditor by the Other Auditor," above.

Based solely on the work we have performed (to date) in connection with our audit of the consolidated financial statements, which would not necessarily reveal all or any of the matters covered in your inquiry, we advise you that:

1. No transactions or other matters (including adjustments made during consolidation or contemplated at this date) have come to our attention that we believe require adjustment to or disclosure in the financial statements of (name of component) being audited by you.

2. No limitation has been placed by Parent Company on the scope of our audit that, to our knowledge, is related to the financial statements of (name of component) being audited by you, that has limited our ability to provide you with the information requested in your inquiry."

[Issue Date: April, 1979.]

5. Procedures of the Principal Auditor

.15 Question—What steps, if any, should the principal auditor take in responding to an inquiry such as that described in section 9543.11?

.16 Interpretation—The principal auditor's response should ordinarily be made by the auditor with final responsibility for the engagement. He should take those steps that he considers reasonable under the circumstances to be informed of known matters pertinent to the other auditor's inquiry. For example, the auditor with final responsibility may inquire of principal assistants⁴ responsible for various aspects of the engagement or he may direct assistants to bring to his attention any significant matters of which they become aware during the audit. The principal auditor is not required to perform any procedures directed toward identifying matters that would not affect his audit or his report.

.17 If between the date of his response and the completion of his audit, the principal auditor becomes aware of information that he would have included in his response to the other auditor's inquiry had he been aware of it, the principal auditor should promptly communicate such information to the other auditor.⁵

[Issue Date: April, 1979.]

6. Application of Additional Procedures Concerning the Audit Performed by the Other Auditor

.18 Question—If a principal auditor decides not to make reference to the audit of another auditor, section 543 requires him to consider whether to apply procedures to obtain information about the adequacy of the audit performed by the other auditor. In making a decision about (a) whether to apply one or more of the procedures listed in section 543.12 and (b), if applicable, the extent of those procedures, may the principal auditor consider his knowledge of the other auditor's compliance with quality control policies and procedures?

.19 Interpretation—Yes. The principal auditor's judgment about the extent of additional procedures, if any, to be applied in the circumstances may be affected by various factors including his knowledge of the other auditor's qual-

⁴ See section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, for the definition of "assistants."

⁵ See section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*, concerning procedures to be followed by the other auditor if he receives the information after the issuance of his report.

ity control policies and procedures that provide the other auditor with reasonable assurance of conformity with generally accepted auditing standards in his audit engagements.

.20 Other factors that the principal auditor may wish to consider in making that decision include his previous experience with the other auditor, the materiality of the portion of the financial statements audited by the other auditor, the control exercised by the principal auditor over the conduct of the audit performed by the other auditor, and the results of the principal auditor's other procedures that may indicate whether additional evidential matter is necessary.

[Issue Date: December, 1981.]

[7.] Reporting on Financial Statements Presented on a Comprehensive Annual Financial Report of a Governmental Entity When One Fund Has Been Audited by Another Auditor

[.21-.24] [Withdrawn December, 1992 by the Audit Issues Task Force.]^{[6], [7]}

^[6] [Footnote deleted.]

^[7] [Footnote deleted.]

AU Section 544***Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles***

Source: SAS No. 1, section 544; SAS No. 2; SAS No. 62; SAS No. 77.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

[.01] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 2, effective December 31, 1974.]

Regulated Companies

.02 The basic postulates and broad principles of accounting comprehended in the term “generally accepted accounting principles” which pertain to business enterprises in general apply also to companies whose accounting practices are prescribed by governmental regulatory authorities or commissions. (For example, public utilities and insurance companies.) Accordingly, the first reporting standard is equally applicable to opinions on financial statements of such regulated companies presented for purposes other than filings with their respective supervisory agencies; and material variances from generally accepted accounting principles, and their effects, should be dealt with in the independent auditor’s report in the same manner followed for companies which are not regulated.¹ Ordinarily, this will require either a qualified or an adverse opinion on such statements. An adverse opinion may be accompanied by an opinion on supplementary data which are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. [As amended, effective periods ending on or after December 31, 1974, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 2. As amended by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 62, effective for reports issued on or after July 1, 1989.]

.03 It should be recognized, however, that appropriate differences exist with respect to the application of generally accepted accounting principles as between regulated and nonregulated businesses because of the effect in regulated businesses of the rate-making process, a phenomenon not present in nonregulated businesses (FASB Statement No. 71, *Accounting for the Effects of Certain Types of Regulations* [AC section Re6]). Such differences usually concern mainly the time at which various items enter into the determination of net income in accordance with the principle of matching costs and revenues.

¹ When reporting on financial statements of a regulated entity that are prepared in accordance with the requirements of financial reporting provisions of a government regulatory agency to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject, the auditor may report on the financial statements as being prepared in accordance with a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles (see section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraphs .02 and .10). Reports of this nature, however, should be issued only if the financial statements are intended solely for filing with one or more regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject. [As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ended on or after December 31, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77.]

It should also be recognized that accounting requirements not directly related to the rate-making process commonly are imposed on regulated businesses and that the imposition of such accounting requirements does not necessarily mean that they conform with generally accepted accounting principles.

.04 When financial statements of a regulated entity are prepared in accordance with a basis of accounting prescribed by one or more regulatory agencies or the financial reporting provisions of another agency, the independent auditor may also be requested to report on their fair presentation in conformity with such prescribed basis of accounting in presentations for distribution in other than filings with the entity's regulatory agency. In those circumstances, the auditor should use the standard form of report (see section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .08), modified as appropriate (see section 508.35–.60) because of the departures from generally accepted accounting principles, and then, in an additional paragraph to the report, express an opinion on whether the financial statements are presented in conformity with the prescribed basis of accounting. [As amended by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 62, effective for reports issued on or after July 1, 1989. As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ended on or after December 31, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77.]

AU Section 550***Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements***

Source: SAS No. 8; SAS No. 98.

See section 9550 for interpretations of this section.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: December, 1975.

.01 An entity may publish various documents that contain information (hereinafter, "other information") in addition to audited financial statements and the independent auditor's report thereon. This section provides guidance for the auditor's consideration of other information included in such documents.

.02 This section is applicable only to other information contained in (a) annual reports to holders of securities or beneficial interests, annual reports of organizations for charitable or philanthropic purposes distributed to the public, and annual reports filed with regulatory authorities under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 or (b) other documents to which the auditor, at the client's request, devotes attention.

.03 This section is not applicable when the financial statements and report appear in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933. The auditor's procedures with respect to 1933 Act filings are unaltered by this section (see sections 634[†] and 711^{††}). Also, this section is not applicable to other information on which the auditor is engaged to express an opinion.¹ The guidance applicable to auditing and reporting on certain information other than financial statements intended to be presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles is unaltered by this section (see sections 551* and 623**).

.04 Other information in a document may be relevant to an audit performed by an independent auditor or to the continuing propriety of his report. The auditor's responsibility with respect to information in a document does not extend beyond the financial information identified in his report, and the auditor has no obligation to perform any procedures to corroborate other information contained in a document. However, he should read the other information and consider whether such information, or the manner of its presentation, is materially inconsistent with information, or the manner of its

[†] [Section 631, formerly 630, changed by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 38 (superseded). Section 634, formerly 631, changed by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 49.] (See section 634.)

^{††} [Section number revised, April 1981, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 37.] (See section 711.)

¹ Mere reading of other information is an inadequate basis for expressing an opinion on that information.

* [Section number revised, July 1980, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 29.] (See section 551.)

** [Section number changed, April 1989, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 62.] (See section 623.)

presentation, appearing in the financial statements.² If the auditor concludes that there is a material inconsistency, he should determine whether the financial statements, his report, or both require revision. If he concludes that they do not require revision, he should request the client to revise the other information. If the other information is not revised to eliminate the material inconsistency, he should consider other actions such as revising his report to include an explanatory paragraph describing the material inconsistency, withholding the use of his report in the document, and withdrawing from the engagement. The action he takes will depend on the particular circumstances and the significance of the inconsistency in the other information.

.05 If, while reading the other information for the reasons set forth in paragraph .04, the auditor becomes aware of information that he believes is a material misstatement of fact that is not a material inconsistency as described in paragraph .04, he should discuss the matter with the client. In connection with this discussion, the auditor should consider that he may not have the expertise to assess the validity of the statement, that there may be no standards by which to assess its presentation, and that there may be valid differences of judgment or opinion. If the auditor concludes he has a valid basis for concern he should propose that the client consult with some other party whose advice might be useful to the client, such as the client's legal counsel.

.06 If, after discussing the matter as described in paragraph .05, the auditor concludes that a material misstatement of fact remains, the action he takes will depend on his judgment in the particular circumstances. He should consider steps such as notifying his client in writing of his views concerning the information and consulting his legal counsel as to further appropriate action in the circumstances.

.07 If certain other information³ has been subjected to auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements, the auditor may express an opinion on whether the information is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to those financial statements taken as a whole. In those circumstances, the auditor's report on the information should describe clearly the character of the auditor's work and the degree of responsibility the auditor is taking. The auditor may report on such information using the guidance in section 551, *Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents*, paragraphs .12 and .14. [Paragraph added, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

² In fulfilling his responsibility under this section, a principal auditor may also request the other auditor or auditors involved in the engagement to read the other information. If a predecessor auditor's report appears in a document to which this section applies, he should read the other information for the reasons described in this paragraph.

³ This information may include supplementary information required by generally accepted accounting principles. [Footnote added, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

AU Section 9550***Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements: Auditing Interpretations of Section 550*****[1.] Reports by Management on Internal Accounting Control^[1-4]**

[.01-.06] [Superseded May, 1994 by Interpretation Nos. 2 and 3, paragraphs .07-.15.]

2. Reports by Management on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

.07 Question—Communications to various parties specified in section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .02 may include a separate report by management containing an assertion about the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over financial reporting. What is the auditor's responsibility concerning such report?

.08 Interpretation—If the auditor has been engaged to examine and report on management's assertion, the guidance in AT section 501, *Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*, should be followed.

.09 If the auditor has not been engaged to examine and report on management's assertion, the auditor should follow the guidance in section 550, which states that "the auditor has no obligation to perform any procedures to corroborate other information contained in [such] a document." Under section 550, the auditor is required to read the report by management and consider whether it is materially inconsistent with information appearing in the financial statements and, as a result, he or she may become aware of a material misstatement of fact.⁵

.10 Although not required, the auditor may consider adding the following paragraph to the standard auditor's report: "We were not engaged to examine management's assertion about the effectiveness of [name of entity's] internal control over financial reporting as of [date] included in the accompanying [title of management's report] and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion thereon."

.11 Because an auditor is required to consider internal control in an audit of the financial statements, he or she would often be familiar with matters covered in a management report on internal control over financial reporting. As a result, the auditor may become aware of information that causes him or her to believe that management's assertion on the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting contains a material misstatement of fact as described in section 550.⁶ If the auditor becomes aware of information in the

[1-4] [Superseded May, 1994 by Interpretation Nos. 2 and 3, paragraphs .07-.15.]

⁵ Unless information on internal control over financial reporting appears in the financial statements, which is not common, a management assertion on the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting could not be inconsistent with information appearing in financial statements.

⁶ For example, the auditor has communicated to management a material weakness in internal control over financial reporting and management states or implies there are no material weaknesses.

report by management that conflicts with his or her knowledge or understanding of such matters, he or she should discuss the information with the client. If, after discussions with the client, the auditor concludes that a material misstatement of fact exists, the auditor should follow the guidance in section 550.06.

[Issue Date: May, 1994; Revised: January, 2001.]

3. Other References by Management to Internal Control Over Financial Reporting, Including References to the Independent Auditor

.12 Question—Communications to various parties specified in section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .02 may include a statement by management about the entity's internal control over financial reporting. Such documents may also refer to the independent auditor in circumstances other than when the auditor has been engaged to examine and report on management's assertion about the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting. What is the auditor's responsibility in such circumstances?

.13 Interpretation—The auditor should follow the guidance in section 550, which states that "the auditor has no obligation to perform any procedures to corroborate other information contained in [such] a document." Under section 550, the auditor is required to read other information in documents containing audited financial statements and consider whether it is materially inconsistent with information appearing in the financial statements and, as a result, he or she may become aware of a material misstatement of fact. If the auditor becomes aware of information in the report by management that conflicts with his or her knowledge or understanding of such matters, he or she should discuss the information with the client. If, after discussions with the client, the auditor concludes that a material misstatement of fact exists, the auditor should follow the guidance in section 550.06.

.14 Generally, management may discuss its responsibility for internal control over financial reporting and report on its effectiveness. In reading such information, the auditor should evaluate specific references by management that deal with the auditor's consideration of internal control in planning and performing the audit of the financial statements, particularly if such reference would lead the reader to assume the auditor had performed more work than required under generally accepted auditing standards or would lead the reader to believe that the auditor was giving assurances on internal control. The auditor should also consider whether management's comment or statement uses the auditor's name in such a way as to indicate or imply that the auditor's involvement is greater than is supported by the facts.⁷ If management misstates the auditor's responsibility for consideration of internal control over financial reporting, the auditor should discuss the matter with the client and consider whether any further action is needed in accordance with section 550.06.

.15 The auditing interpretation of section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*, titled "Reporting on the Existence

⁷ For instance, management may report that "X Company's external auditors have reviewed the company's internal control in connection with their audit of the financial statements." Because AT section 501, *Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*, prohibits an engagement to review and report on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over financial reporting or a written assertion thereon, a statement by management that the auditors had "reviewed" the company's internal control would be inappropriate.

of Material Weaknesses” (section 9325.01–.07), permits an auditor to report to management that he or she has not become aware of any material weaknesses⁸ during his or her audit of the financial statements, but requires such reports to be solely for the information and use of the entity’s audit committee, management and others within the organization. If, however, management decides to include or refer to this communication in a general use document, the auditor should communicate to management the restrictions on use of the communication and the potential for such a statement to be misunderstood. For example, the fact that an audit has not disclosed any material weaknesses does not necessarily mean none exist since an audit of the financial statements does not constitute an examination of a management assertion about the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting. If management refuses to make appropriate changes to the report, the auditor should advise management that he or she has not consented to the use of his or her name and should consider what other actions might be appropriate. In considering what actions, if any, may be appropriate in the circumstances, the auditor may wish to consult legal counsel.

[Issue Date: May, 1994; Revised: January, 2001.]

4. Other Information in Electronic Sites Containing Audited Financial Statements

.16 Question—An entity may make information available in public computer networks, such as the World Wide Web area of the Internet, an electronic bulletin board, the Securities and Exchange Commission’s EDGAR system, or similar electronic venues (hereinafter, “electronic sites”). Information in electronic sites may include annual reports to shareholders, financial statements and other financial information, as well as press releases, product information and promotional material. When audited financial statements and the independent auditor’s report thereon are included in an electronic site, what is the auditor’s responsibility with respect to other information included in the electronic site?

.17 Interpretation—Electronic sites are a means of distributing information and are not “documents,” as that term is used in section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*. Thus, auditors are not required by section 550 to read information contained in electronic sites, or to consider the consistency of other information (as that term is used in section 550) in electronic sites with the original documents.

.18 Auditors may be asked by their clients to render professional services with respect to information in electronic sites. Such services, which might take different forms, are not contemplated by section 550. Other auditing or attestation standards may apply, for example, agreed-upon procedures pursuant to AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*, depending on the nature of the service requested.

[Issue Date: March, 1997; Revised: January, 2001.]

⁸ Section 325.17 prohibits a written communication that no reportable conditions were noted during the audit. If management reports that an auditor made an oral communication that no reportable conditions were noted during the audit, the auditor should follow the guidance in this paragraph.

AU Section 551

Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents

(Supersedes section 610, "Long-Form Reports")¹

Source: SAS No. 29; SAS No. 52; SAS No. 98.

Effective for auditors' reports dated on or after December 31, 1980, unless otherwise indicated.

.01 This section provides guidance on the form and content of reporting when an auditor submits to his client or to others a document that contains information in addition to the client's basic financial statements and the auditor's report thereon.

.02 The auditor's standard report covers the basic financial statements: balance sheet, statement of income, statement of retained earnings or changes in stockholders' equity, and statement of cash flows. The following presentations are considered part of the basic financial statements: descriptions of accounting policies, notes to financial statements, and schedules and explanatory material that are identified as being part of the basic financial statements. For purposes of this section, basic financial statements also include an individual basic financial statement, such as a balance sheet or statement of income and financial statements prepared in accordance with a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.

.03 The information covered by this section is presented outside the basic financial statements and is not considered necessary for presentation of financial position, results of operations, or cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Such information includes additional details or explanations of items in or related to the basic financial statements, consolidating information, historical summaries of items extracted from the basic financial statements, statistical data, and other material, some of which may be from sources outside the accounting system or outside the entity.

Reporting Responsibility

.04 When an auditor submits a document containing audited financial statements to his client or to others, he has a responsibility to report on all the information included in the document. On the other hand, when the auditor's report is included in a client-prepared document² and the auditor is not engaged to report on information accompanying the basic financial statements, his responsibility with respect to such information is described in (a) section

¹ This section also supersedes the March 1979 auditing interpretation, "Reports on Consolidated Financial Statements That Include Supplementary Consolidating Information".

² Client-prepared documents include financial reports prepared by the client but merely reproduced by the auditor on the client's behalf.

550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, and (b) other sections covering particular types of information or circumstances, such as section 558, *Required Supplementary Information*.

.05 An auditor's report on information accompanying the basic financial statements in an auditor-submitted document has the same objective as an auditor's report on the basic financial statements: to describe clearly the character of the auditor's work and the degree of responsibility the auditor is taking. Although the auditor may participate in the preparation of the accompanying information as well as the basic financial statements, both the statements and the accompanying information are representations of management.

.06 The following guidelines apply to an auditor's report on information accompanying the basic financial statements in an auditor-submitted document:

- a. The report should state that the audit has been performed for the purpose of forming an opinion on the basic financial statements taken as a whole.
- b. The report should identify the accompanying information. (Identification may be by descriptive title or page number of the document.)
- c. The report should state that the accompanying information is presented for purposes of additional analysis and is not a required part of the basic financial statements.³
- d. The report should include either an opinion on whether the accompanying information is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements taken as a whole or a disclaimer of opinion, depending on whether the information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements. The auditor may express an opinion on a portion of the accompanying information and disclaim an opinion on the remainder.
- e. The report on the accompanying information may be added to the auditor's report on the basic financial statements or may appear separately in the auditor-submitted document.

.07 The purpose of an audit of basic financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards is to form an opinion on those statements taken as a whole. Nevertheless, an audit of basic financial statements often encompasses information accompanying those statements in an auditor-submitted document. Also, although an auditor has no obligation to apply auditing procedures to information presented outside the basic financial statements, he may choose to modify or redirect certain of the procedures to be applied in the audit of the basic financial statements so that he may express an opinion on the accompanying information in the manner described in paragraph .06.

.08 When reporting in this manner, the measurement of materiality is the same as that used in forming an opinion on the basic financial statements taken as a whole. Accordingly, the auditor need not apply procedures as extensive as would be necessary to express an opinion on the information taken by itself. Guidance applicable to the expression of an opinion on specified elements, accounts, or items of financial statements for the purpose of a separate presentation is provided in section 623.11–.18, *Special Reports*.

³ The auditor may refer to any regulatory agency requirements applicable to the information presented.

.09 If the auditor concludes, on the basis of facts known to him, that any accompanying information is materially misstated in relation to the basic financial statements taken as a whole, he should discuss the matter with the client and propose appropriate revision of the accompanying information.⁴ If the client will not agree to revision of the accompanying information, the auditor should either modify his report on the accompanying information and describe the misstatement or refuse to include the information in the document.

.10 The auditor should consider the effect of any modifications in his standard report when reporting on accompanying information. When the auditor expresses a qualified opinion on the basic financial statements, he should make clear the effects upon any accompanying information as well (see paragraph .14). When the auditor expresses an adverse opinion, or disclaims an opinion, on the basic financial statements, he should not express the opinion described in paragraph .06 on any accompanying information.⁵ An expression of such an opinion in these circumstances would be inappropriate because, like a piecemeal opinion, it may tend to overshadow or contradict the disclaimer of opinion or adverse opinion on the basic financial statements. (See section 508.64 and section 623.14.)

.11 A client may request that nonaccounting information and certain accounting information not directly related to the basic financial statements be included in an auditor-submitted document. Ordinarily, such information would not have been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements, and, accordingly, the auditor would disclaim an opinion on it. In some circumstances, however, such information may have been obtained or derived from accounting records that have been tested by the auditor (for example, number of units produced related to royalties under a license agreement or number of employees related to a given payroll period). Accordingly, the auditor may be in a position to express an opinion on such information in the manner described in paragraph .06.

Reporting Examples

.12 An example of reporting on information accompanying the basic financial statements in an auditor-submitted document follows:

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming an opinion on the basic financial statements taken as a whole. The (identify accompanying information) is presented for purposes of additional analysis and is not a required part of the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and, in our opinion, is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements taken as a whole.^[6]

.13 When the auditor disclaims an opinion on all or part of the accompanying information in a document that he submits to his client or to others, such

⁴ See paragraph .10 for guidance when there is a modification of the auditor's standard report on the basic financial statements.

⁵ The provisions of this paragraph do not change the guidance, concerning companies whose accounting practices are prescribed by governmental regulatory authorities or commissions, in the last sentence of section 544.02, "Regulated Companies," which reads: "An adverse opinion may be accompanied by an opinion on supplementary data which are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles."

^[6] [Footnote deleted by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

information should either be marked as unaudited or should include a reference to the auditor's disclaimer of opinion. The wording of the disclaimer will vary according to the circumstances. Two examples follow.

Disclaimer on All of the Information

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming an opinion on the basic financial statements taken as a whole. The (identify the accompanying information) is presented for purposes of additional analysis and is not a required part of the basic financial statements. Such information has not been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements, and, accordingly, we express no opinion on it.

Disclaimer on Part of the Information

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming an opinion on the basic financial statements taken as a whole. The information on pages XX—YY is presented for purposes of additional analysis and is not a required part of the basic financial statements. Such information, except for that portion marked “unaudited,” on which we express no opinion, has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements; and, in our opinion, the information is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements taken as a whole.

.14 An example follows of reporting on accompanying information to which a qualification in the auditor's report on the basic financial statements applies.

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming an opinion on the basic financial statements taken as a whole. The schedules of investments (page 7), property (page 8), and other assets (page 9) as of December 31, 19XX, are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements. The information in such schedules has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements; and, in our opinion, except for the effects on the schedule of investments of not accounting for the investments in certain companies by the equity method as explained in the second preceding paragraph [second paragraph of our report on page 1], such information is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements taken as a whole.

Supplementary Information Required by GAAP

.15 When supplementary information required by GAAP is presented outside the basic financial statements in an auditor-submitted document, the auditor should (a) express an opinion on the information if the auditor has been engaged to examine the information, (b) report on the information using the guidance in paragraphs .12 and .14, provided such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements, or (c) disclaim an opinion on the information.⁷ The following is an example of a disclaimer an auditor might use in these circumstances:

⁷ The guidance in subsection (b) of this paragraph applies to GASB required supplementary information, such as that required by GASB Statement No. 5, *Disclosure of Pension Information by Public Employee Retirement Systems and State and Local Governmental Employers*. The auditor should refer to section 552, *Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data*, paragraphs .09–.10, for an example of a report on GASB required supplementary information.

The [identify the supplementary information] on page XX is not a required part of the basic financial statements but is supplementary information required by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.⁸ We have applied certain limited procedures, which consisted principally of inquiries of management regarding the methods of measurement and presentation of the supplementary information. However, we did not audit the information and express no opinion on it.

[As amended, effective April 1988, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 52. As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.16 The auditor's report should be expanded in accordance with section 558, *Required Supplementary Information*, paragraph .08, if (a) supplementary information that GAAP requires to be presented in the circumstances is omitted, (b) the auditor has concluded that the measurement or presentation of the supplementary information departs materially from guidelines prescribed by GAAP, (c) the auditor is unable to complete the procedures prescribed by section 558, or (d) the auditor is unable to remove substantial doubts about whether the supplementary information conforms to prescribed guidelines. [Paragraph added, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

Consolidating Information

.17 Consolidated financial statements may include consolidating information or consolidating schedules presenting separate financial statements of one or more components of the consolidated group.⁹ In some cases, the auditor is engaged to express an opinion on the financial statements of the components as well as on the consolidated financial statements. In other cases, the auditor is engaged to express an opinion only on the consolidated financial statements but consolidating information or schedules accompany the basic consolidated financial statements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

.18 When the auditor is engaged to express an opinion only on the consolidated financial statements and consolidating information is also included, the auditor should be satisfied that the consolidating information is suitably identified. For example, when the consolidated financial statements include columns of information about the components of the consolidated group, the balance sheets might be titled, "Consolidated Balance Sheet—December 31, 19X1, with Consolidating Information," and the columns including the consolidating information might be marked, "Consolidating Information." When the consolidating information is presented in separate schedules, the schedules presenting balance sheet information of the components might be titled, "Consolidating Schedule, Balance Sheet Information, December 31, 19X1." [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

⁸ The auditor may identify the body requiring the information, such as the Financial Accounting Standards Board or the Governmental Accounting Standards Board. [Footnote added, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

⁹ This section [paragraphs .17–.20] is also applicable to combined and combining financial statements. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002. Footnote revised, September 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.19 When the consolidated financial statements include consolidating information that has not been separately audited, the auditor's report on the consolidating information might read

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming an opinion on the consolidated financial statements taken as a whole. The consolidating information is presented for purposes of additional analysis of the consolidated financial statements rather than to present the financial position, results of operations, and cash flows of the individual companies. The consolidating information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the consolidated financial statements and, in our opinion, is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the consolidated financial statements taken as a whole.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

.20 When the auditor is engaged to express an opinion on both the consolidated financial statements and the separate financial statements of the components presented in consolidating financial statements, the auditor's reporting responsibilities with respect to the separate financial statements are the same as his responsibilities with respect to the consolidated financial statements. In such cases, the consolidating financial statements and accompanying notes should include all the disclosures that would be necessary for presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles of separate financial statements of each component. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

Additional Commentary Concerning the Audit

.21 The auditor may be requested to describe the procedures applied to specific items in the financial statements. Additional comments of this nature should not contradict or detract from the description of the scope of his audit in the standard report. Also, they should be set forth separately rather than interspersed with the information accompanying the basic financial statements to maintain a clear distinction between management's representations and the auditor's representations. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

Co-Existing Financial Statements

.22 More than one type of document containing the audited financial statements may exist. For example, the auditor may submit to his client or others a document containing the basic financial statements, other information, and his report thereon, and the client may issue a separate document containing only the basic financial statements and the auditor's report. The basic financial statements should include all the information considered necessary for presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in all co-existing documents. The auditor should be satisfied that information accompanying the basic financial statements in an auditor-submitted document would not support a contention that the basic financial statements in the other document were not presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles because of inadequate disclosure of material information known to the auditor. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

Effective Date

.23 This section will be effective for auditors' reports dated on or after December 31, 1980. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

AU Section 552

Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data*

Source: SAS No. 42; SAS No. 71.

Effective for reports issued or reissued on or after January 1, 1989, on condensed financial statements or selected financial data unless otherwise indicated.

.01 This section provides guidance on reporting in a client-prepared document on—

- a. Condensed financial statements (either for an annual or an interim period) that are derived from audited financial statements of a public entity¹ that is required to file, at least annually, complete audited financial statements with a regulatory agency.
- b. Selected financial data that are derived from audited financial statements of either a public or a nonpublic entity and that are presented in a document that includes audited financial statements (or, with respect to a public entity, that incorporates audited financial statements by reference to information filed with a regulatory agency).

Guidance on reporting on condensed financial statements or selected financial data that accompany audited financial statements in an auditor-submitted document is provided in section 551, *Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents*.

.02 In reporting on condensed financial statements or selected financial data in circumstances other than those described in paragraph .01, the auditor should follow the guidance in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .41 through .44, section 623, *Special Reports*, or other applicable *Statements on Auditing Standards*.²

Condensed Financial Statements

.03 Condensed financial statements are presented in considerably less detail than complete financial statements that are intended to present financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. For this reason, they should be read in conjunction with the entity's most recent complete financial statements that include all the disclosures required by generally accepted accounting principles.

* This section has been revised to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.

¹ Public entity is defined in section 504, *Association With Financial Statements*, footnote 2.

² An auditor who has audited and reported on complete financial statements of a nonpublic entity may subsequently be requested to compile financial statements for the same period that omit substantially all disclosures required by generally accepted accounting principles. Reporting on comparative financial statements in those circumstances is described in SSARS No. 2, paragraphs 29 and 30 [AR section 200.29 and .30].

.04 An auditor may be engaged to report on condensed financial statements that are derived from audited financial statements. Because condensed financial statements do not constitute a fair presentation of financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, an auditor should not report on condensed financial statements in the same manner as he reported on the complete financial statements from which they are derived. To do so might lead users to assume, erroneously, that the condensed financial statements include all the disclosures necessary for complete financial statements. For the same reason, it is desirable that the condensed financial statements be so marked.

.05 In the circumstances described in paragraph .01(a),³ the auditor's report on condensed financial statements that are derived from financial statements that he has audited should indicate (a) that the auditor has audited and expressed an opinion on the complete financial statements, (b) the date of the auditor's report on the complete financial statements,⁴ (c) the type of opinion expressed, and (d) whether, in the auditor's opinion, the information set forth in the condensed financial statements is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the complete financial statements from which it has been derived.⁵

.06 The following is an example of wording that an auditor may use in the circumstances described in paragraph .01(a) to report on condensed financial statements that are derived from financial statements that he or she has audited and on which he or she has issued a standard report:

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the consolidated balance sheet of X Company and subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X0, and the related consolidated statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended (not presented herein); and in our report dated February 15, 20X1, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those consolidated financial statements.

In our opinion, the information set forth in the accompanying condensed consolidated financial statements is fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the consolidated financial statements from which it has been derived.

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

³ SEC regulations require certain registrants to include in filings, as a supplementary schedule to the consolidated financial statements, condensed financial information of the parent company. The auditor should report on such condensed financial information in the same manner as he reports on other supplementary schedules.

⁴ Reference to the date of the original report removes any implication that records, transactions, or events after that date have been examined. The auditor does not have a responsibility to investigate or inquire further into events that may have occurred during the period between the date of the report on the complete financial statements and the date of the report on the condensed financial statements. (However, see section 711, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*, regarding the auditor's responsibility when his report is included in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933.)

⁵ If the auditor's opinion on the complete financial statements was other than unqualified, the report should describe the nature of, and the reasons for, the qualification. The auditor should also consider the effect that any modification of the report on the complete financial statements might have on the report on the condensed financial statements or selected financial data. For example, if the auditor's report on the complete financial statements referred to another auditor or included an explanatory paragraph because of a material uncertainty, a going concern matter, or an inconsistency in the application of accounting principles, the report on the condensed financial statements should state that fact. However, no reference to the inconsistency is necessary if a change in accounting referred to in the auditor's report on the complete financial statements does not affect the comparability of the information being presented.

.07 A client might make a statement in a client-prepared document that names the auditor and also states that condensed financial statements have been derived from audited financial statements. Such a statement does not, in itself, require the auditor to report on the condensed financial statements, provided that they are included in a document that contains audited financial statements (or that incorporates such statements by reference to information filed with a regulatory agency). However, if such a statement is made in a client-prepared document of a public entity that is required to file, at least annually, complete audited financial statements with a regulatory agency and that document does not include audited financial statements (or does not incorporate such statements by reference to information filed with a regulatory agency),⁶ the auditor should request that the client either (a) not include the auditor's name in the document or (b), include the auditor's report on the condensed financial statements, as described in paragraph .05. If the client will neither delete the reference to the auditor nor allow the appropriate report to be included, the auditor should advise the client that he does not consent to either the use of his name or the reference to him, and he should consider what other actions might be appropriate.⁷

.08 Condensed financial statements derived from audited financial statements of a public entity may be presented on a comparative basis with interim financial information as of a subsequent date that is accompanied by the auditor's review report. In that case, the auditor should report on the condensed financial statements of each period in a manner appropriate for the

⁶ If such a statement is made in a client-prepared document that does not include audited financial statements and the client is not a public entity that is required to file complete audited financial statements with a regulatory agency (at least annually), the auditor would ordinarily express an adverse opinion on the condensed financial statements because of inadequate disclosure. (See section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .41 through .44.) The auditor would not be expected to provide the disclosure in his report. The following is an example of an auditor's report on condensed financial statements in such circumstances when the auditor had previously audited and reported on the complete financial statements:

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the consolidated balance sheet of X Company and subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X0, and the related earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended (not presented herein). These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

The condensed consolidated balance sheet as of December 31, 20X0, and the related condensed statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended, presented on pages xx-xx, are presented as a summary and therefore do not include all of the disclosures required by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

In our opinion, because of the significance of the omission of the information referred to in the preceding paragraph, the condensed consolidated financial statements referred to above do not present fairly, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial position of X Company and subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X0, or the results of its operations or its cash flows for the year then ended.

[Footnote revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

⁷ In considering what other actions, if any, may be appropriate in these circumstances, the auditor may wish to consult his legal counsel.

type of service provided for each period. The following is an example of a review report on a condensed balance sheet as of March 31, 19X1, and the related condensed statements of income and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X1 and 19X0, together with a report on a condensed balance sheet derived from audited financial statements as of December 31, 19X0, included in Form 10-Q:⁸

We have reviewed the condensed consolidated balance sheet of ABC Company and subsidiaries as of March 31, 19X1, and the related condensed consolidated statements of income and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X1 and 19X0. These financial statements are the responsibility of the company's management.

We conducted our review in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review of interim financial information consists principally of applying analytical procedures to financial data and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters. It is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion regarding the financial statements taken as a whole. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

Based on our review, we are not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the condensed consolidated financial statements referred to above for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

We have previously audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the consolidated balance sheet as of December 31, 20X0, and the related consolidated statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended (not presented herein); and in our report dated February 15, 20X1, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those consolidated financial statements. In our opinion, the information set forth in the accompanying condensed consolidated balance sheet as of December 31, 20X0, is fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the consolidated balance sheet from which it has been derived.

[Revised, May 1992, to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 71. Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

Selected Financial Data

.09 An auditor may be engaged to report on selected financial data that are included in a client-prepared document that contains audited financial

⁸ Regulation S-X specifies that the following financial information should be provided in filings on Form 10-Q:

- a. An interim balance sheet as of the end of the most recent fiscal quarter and a balance sheet (which may be condensed to the same extent as the interim balance sheet) as of the end of the preceding fiscal year.
- b. Interim condensed statements of income for the most recent fiscal quarter, for the period between the end of the preceding fiscal year and the end of the most recent fiscal quarter, and for the corresponding periods of the preceding fiscal year.
- c. Interim condensed cash flow statements for the period between the end of the preceding fiscal year and the end of the most recent fiscal quarter and for the corresponding period for the preceding fiscal year.

The Securities and Exchange Commission requires a registrant to engage an independent accountant to review the registrant's interim financial information before the registrant files its interim financial information on Form 10-Q or Form 10-QSB. If the auditor has made a review of interim financial information, he may agree to the reference to his name and the inclusion of his review report in a Form 10-Q. (See section 722, *Interim Financial Information*, paragraph .03.) [Footnote revised, November 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 100.]

statements (or, with respect to a public entity, that incorporates such statements by reference to information filed with a regulatory agency). Selected financial data are not a required part of the basic financial statements, and the entity's management is responsible for determining the specific selected financial data to be presented.⁹ If the auditor is engaged to report on the selected financial data, his report should be limited to data that are derived from audited financial statements (which may include data that are calculated from amounts presented in the financial statements, such as working capital). If the selected financial data that management presents include both data derived from audited financial statements and other information (such as number of employees or square footage of facilities), the auditor's report should specifically identify the data on which he is reporting. The report should indicate (a) that the auditor has audited and expressed an opinion on the complete financial statements, (b) the type of opinion expressed,¹⁰ and (c) whether, in the auditor's opinion, the information set forth in the selected financial data is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the complete financial statements from which it has been derived.¹¹ If the selected financial data for any of the years presented are derived from financial statements that were audited by another independent auditor, the report on the selected financial data should state that fact, and the auditor should not express an opinion on that data.

.10 The following is an example of an auditor's report that includes an additional paragraph because he is also engaged to report on selected financial data for a five-year period ended December 31, 19X5, in a client-prepared document that includes audited financial statements:

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the consolidated balance sheets of ABC Company and subsidiaries as of December 31, 19X5 and 19X4, and the related consolidated statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 19X5. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provided a reasonable basis for our opinion.

⁹ Under regulations of the SEC, certain reports must include, for each of the last five fiscal years, selected financial data in accordance with regulation S-K, including net sales or operating revenues, income or loss from continuing operations, income or loss from continuing operations per common share, total assets, long-term obligations and redeemable preferred stock and cash dividends declared per common share. Registrants may include additional items that they believe may be useful. There is no SEC requirement for the auditor to report on selected financial data.

¹⁰ See footnote 5.

¹¹ Nothing in this section is intended to preclude an auditor from expressing an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement, providing the provisions of section 623, *Special Reports*, are observed.

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the ABC Company and subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 20X5, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

We have also previously audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 20X3, 20X2, and 20X1, and the related statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the years ended December 31, 20X2, and 20X1 (none of which are presented herein); and we expressed unqualified opinions on those consolidated financial statements. In our opinion, the information set forth in the selected financial data for each of the five years in the period ended December 31, 20X5, appearing on page xx, is fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the consolidated financial statements from which it has been derived.

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.11 In introductory material regarding the selected financial data included in a client-prepared document, an entity might name the independent auditor and state that the data are derived from financial statements that he audited. Such a statement does not, in itself, require the auditor to report on the selected financial data, provided that the selected financial data are presented in a document that contains audited financial statements (or, with respect to a public entity, that incorporates such statements by reference to information filed with a regulatory agency). If such a statement is made in a document that does not include (or incorporate by reference) audited financial statements, the auditor should request that neither his name nor reference to him be associated with the information, or he should disclaim an opinion on the selected financial data and request that the disclaimer be included in the document. If the client does not comply, the auditor should advise the client that he does not consent to either the use of his name or the reference to him, and he should consider what other actions might be appropriate.¹²

Effective Date

.12 This section is effective for reports issued or reissued on or after January 1, 1989. Earlier application of the provision of this section is permissible.

¹² See footnote 7.

AU Section 558**Required Supplementary Information**

(Supersedes section 553)

Source: SAS No. 52; SAS No. 98.

See section 9558 for interpretations of this section.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: April, 1988.

.01 The Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB), and the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB) develop standards for financial reporting, including standards for financial statements and for certain other information supplementary to financial statements.¹ This section provides the independent

* This section also withdraws the following Statements on Auditing Standards:

- Statement on Auditing Standards No. 28, *Supplementary Information on the Effects of Changing Prices* [Formerly section 554].
- Statement on Auditing Standards No. 40, *Supplementary Mineral Reserve Information* [Formerly section 556].
- Statement on Auditing Standards No. 45, *Supplementary Oil and Gas Reserve Information* [Formerly section 557].

SAS No. 45 was reissued as an auditing interpretation, see section 9558.01-.06.

¹ The FASB, GASB, and FASAB's roles in setting standards for financial reporting have been recognized by the AICPA Council. The FASB's authority to establish standards for disclosure of financial information outside of the basic financial statements is described in the following resolution:

That as of (September 19, 1987), the FASB, in respect of statements of financial accounting standards finally adopted by such board in accordance with its rules of procedure and the bylaws of the Financial Accounting Foundation, be, and hereby is, designated by this Council as the body to establish accounting principles pursuant to rule 203 and standards on disclosure of financial information for such entities outside financial statements in published financial reports containing financial statements under rule 202 of the *Rules of the Code of Professional Conduct* of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants provided, however, any accounting research bulletins, or opinions of the accounting principles board issued or approved for exposure by the accounting principles board prior to April 1, 1973, and finally adopted by such board on or before June 30, 1973, shall constitute statements of accounting principles promulgated by a body designated by Council as contemplated in rule 203 of the *Rules of the Code of Professional Conduct* unless and until such time as they are expressly superseded by action of the FASB.

The GASB's authority to establish standards for financial reporting is described in the following resolution:

That as of (September 19, 1987), the GASB, with respect to statements of governmental accounting standards adopted and issued in July 1984 and subsequently in accordance with its rules of procedure and the bylaws of the FASB, be, and hereby is, designated by the Council of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants as the body to establish financial accounting principles for state and local governmental entities pursuant to rule 203, and standards on disclosure of financial information for such entities outside financial statements in published financial reports containing financial statements under rule 202.

The FASAB's authority to establish standards for financial reporting for federal government entities is described in the following resolution:

That as of (October 19, 1999), the FASAB is designated under rule 203 of the AICPA's *Code of Professional Conduct* as the body to establish accounting principles for federal government entities, and be it further resolved to recognize the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board with respect to statements of federal accounting standards adopted and issued in March of 1993 and subsequently in accordance with the FASAB's rules of procedure, and be it further resolved that no later than five years from the date the FASAB is granted rule 203 authority, the AICPA's Board of Directors will review the mission and operations of the FASAB and will evaluate whether the FASAB con-

(footnote continued)

auditor with guidance on the nature of procedures to be applied to supplementary information required by the FASB, GASB, or FASAB and describes the circumstances that would require the auditor to report such information. [Revised, April 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91.]

Applicability

.02 This section is applicable in an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards of financial statements included in a document that should contain supplementary information required by generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). However, this section is not applicable if the auditor has been engaged to audit such supplementary information.² [Revised, April 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91. As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.03 Some entities may voluntarily include, in documents containing audited financial statements, certain supplementary information that is required of other entities. When an entity voluntarily includes such information as a supplement to the financial statements or in an unaudited note to the financial statements, the provisions of this section are applicable unless either the entity indicates that the auditor has not applied the procedures described in this section or the auditor includes in an explanatory paragraph in his report on the audited financial statements a disclaimer on the information.³ The following is an example of a disclaimer an auditor might use in these circumstances:

The [identify the supplementary information] on page XX (or in Note XX) is not a required part of the basic financial statements, and we did not audit or apply limited procedures to such information and do not express any assurances on such information.

When the auditor does not apply the procedures described in this section to a voluntary presentation of required supplementary information required for other entities, the provisions of section 550, apply.

Involvement With Information Outside Financial Statements

.04 The objective of an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards is the expression of an opinion on such statements. The auditor has no responsibility to audit information outside the

tinues to meet council-approved criteria used to assess standards setting bodies designated under rule 203. Upon such review and evaluation, the AICPA's board shall recommend to council whether council shall continue to designate the FASAB under rule 203.

[Footnote revised, April 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91.]

² This section is not applicable to entities that voluntarily present supplementary information not required by GAAP. For example, entities that voluntarily present supplementary information on the effects of inflation and changes in specific prices, formerly required by FASB Statement No. 33, *Financial Reporting and Changing Prices*, are guided by section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*. [Footnote revised, April 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91. As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

³ When supplementary information is presented in an auditor-submitted document outside the basic financial statements, the guidance in section 551, *Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents*, as amended by SAS No. 52, *Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—1987*, should be followed.

basic financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. However, the auditor does have certain responsibilities with respect to information outside the financial statements. The nature of the auditor's responsibility varies with the nature of both the information and the document containing the financial statements.

.05 The auditor's responsibility for other information not required by the FASB, GASB, or FASAB but included in certain annual reports—which are client-prepared documents⁴—is specified in section 550. The auditor's responsibility for information outside the basic financial statements in documents that the auditor submits to the client or to others is specified in section 551. The auditor's responsibility for supplementary information required by the FASB, GASB, or FASAB (called *required supplementary information*) is discussed in the paragraphs that follow. [Revised, April 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91.]

Involvement With Required Supplementary Information

.06 Required supplementary information differs from other types of information outside the basic financial statements because the FASB, GASB, or FASAB considers the information an essential part of the financial reporting of certain entities and because authoritative guidelines for the measurement and presentation of the information have been established. Accordingly, the auditor should apply certain limited procedures to required supplementary information and should report deficiencies in, or the omission of, such information. [Revised, April 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91.]

Procedures

.07 The auditor should consider whether supplementary information is required by the FASB or GASB in the circumstances. If supplementary information is required, the auditor ordinarily should apply the following procedures to the information.⁵

- a. Inquire of management about the methods of preparing the information, including (1) whether it is measured and presented within prescribed guidelines, (2) whether methods of measurement or presentation have been changed from those used in the prior period and the reasons for any such changes, and (3) any significant assumptions or interpretations underlying the measurement or presentation.
- b. Compare the information for consistency with (1) management's responses to the foregoing inquiries, (2) audited financial statements,⁶ and (3) other knowledge obtained during the examination of the financial statements.

⁴ Client-prepared documents include financial reports prepared by the client but merely reproduced by the auditor on the client's behalf.

⁵ These procedures are also appropriate when the auditor is involved with voluntary presentations of such information required for other entities (see paragraph .03).

⁶ GASB Statement No. 25, *Financial Reporting for Defined Benefit Pension Plans and Note Disclosures for Defined Contribution Plans*, requires presentation of certain 6-year historical trend information relating to pension activities as supplementary information outside the basic financial statements. Such information is generally derived from financial statements. If such required supplementary information has been derived from audited financial statements and is presented outside the basic financial statements in an auditor-submitted document, the auditor may report on this information as indicated in section 552, *Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data*, paragraph .10. [Footnote revised, April 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91.]

- c. Consider whether representations on required supplementary information should be included in specific written representations obtained from management (section 333, *Management Representations*).
- d. Apply additional procedures, if any, that other statements, interpretations, guides, or statements of position prescribe for specific types of required supplementary information.
- e. Make additional inquiries if application of the foregoing procedures causes the auditor to believe that the information may not be measured or presented within applicable guidelines.

Reporting on Required Supplementary Information

.08 Since the supplementary information is not audited and is not a required part of the basic financial statements, the auditor need not add an explanatory paragraph to the report on the audited financial statements to refer to the supplementary information or to his or her limited procedures, except in any of the following circumstances:⁷ (a) the supplementary information that GAAP requires to be presented in the circumstances is omitted; (b) the auditor has concluded that the measurement or presentation of the supplementary information departs materially from prescribed guidelines; (c) the auditor is unable to complete the prescribed procedures; (d) the auditor is unable to remove substantial doubts about whether the supplementary information conforms to prescribed guidelines. Since the required supplementary information does not change the standards of financial accounting and reporting used for the preparation of the entity's basic financial statements, the circumstances described above do not affect the auditor's opinion on the fairness of presentation of such financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Furthermore, the auditor need not present the supplementary information if it is omitted by the entity. The following are examples of additional explanatory paragraphs an auditor might use in these circumstances.

Omission of Required Supplementary Information

The (Company or Governmental Unit) has not presented [*describe the supplementary information required by GAAP*[†]] that accounting principles generally accepted in the United States has determined is necessary to supplement, although not required to be part of, the basic financial statements.

Material Departures From Guidelines

The [*specifically identify the supplementary information*] on page XX is not a required part of the basic financial statements, and we did not audit and do not express an opinion on such information. However, we have applied certain limited procedures, which consisted principally of inquiries of management regarding the methods of measurement and presentation of the supplementary information. As a result of such limited procedures, we believe that the [*specifically identify the supplementary information*] is not in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States because [*describe the material departure(s) from the GAAP*[†]].

⁷ When required supplementary information is presented outside the basic financial statements in an auditor-submitted document, the auditor should (a) express an opinion on the information if engaged to examine the information; (b) report on such information using the guidance in section 551.12 and .14, provided such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements; or (c) disclaim an opinion on the information (see section 551.15 and .16). [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

[†] The auditor may identify the body requiring the information, such as the Financial Accounting Standards Board or the Governmental Accounting Standards Board. [Footnote added, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

Prescribed Procedures Not Completed

The [*specifically identify the supplementary information*] on page XX is not a required part of the basic financial statements, and we did not audit and do not express an opinion on such information. Further, we were unable to apply to the information certain procedures prescribed by professional standards because [*state the reasons*].

Unresolved Doubts About Adherence to Guidelines

The [*specifically identify the supplementary information*] on page XX is not a required part of the basic financial statements, and we did not audit and do not express an opinion on such information. However, we have applied certain limited procedures prescribed by professional standards that raised doubts that we were unable to resolve regarding whether material modifications should be made to the information for it to conform with guidelines established by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States. [*The auditor should consider including in the report the reason(s) he or she was unable to resolve his or her substantial doubts.*]

Even though the auditor is unable to complete the prescribed procedures, if, on the basis of facts known to him or her, the auditor concludes that the supplementary information has not been measured or presented within prescribed guidelines, he or she should suggest appropriate revision; failing that, he or she should describe the nature of any material departure(s) in the report. [Revised, April 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91. As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.09 In conjunction with the audit of the financial statements, the auditor may subject the supplementary information to certain auditing procedures. If the procedures are sufficient to enable the auditor to express an opinion on whether the information is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the financial statements taken as a whole, the auditor may expand the audit report in accordance with section 550.07. [Paragraph added, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.10 If the entity includes with the supplementary information an indication that the auditor performed any procedures regarding the information without also indicating that the auditor does not express an opinion on the information presented, the auditor's report on the audited financial statements should be expanded to include a disclaimer on the information or, if appropriate, an opinion on whether the information is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the financial statements taken as a whole. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.11 Ordinarily, the required supplementary information should be distinct from the audited financial statements and distinguished from other information outside the financial statements that is not required by GAAP. However, management may choose not to place the required supplementary information outside the basic financial statements. In such circumstances, unless it is audited as part of the basic financial statements, the information should be clearly marked as unaudited. If the information is not clearly marked as unaudited, the auditor's report on the audited financial statements should be expanded to include a disclaimer on the supplementary information. [Revised, April 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91. Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

AU Section 9558

Required Supplementary Information: Auditing Interpretations of Section 558

1. Supplementary Oil and Gas Reserve Information

.01 Question—FASB Statement No. 69, *Disclosures About Oil and Gas Producing Activities* [AC section Oi5], which amended FASB Statement No. 19, *Financial Accounting and Reporting by Oil and Gas Producing Companies* [AC section Oi5], and FASB Statement No. 25, *Suspension of Certain Accounting Requirements for Oil and Gas Producing Companies* [AC section Oi5], requires publicly traded entities that have significant oil and gas producing activities to include, with complete sets of annual financial statements, disclosures of proved oil and gas reserve quantities, changes in reserve quantities, a standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows relating to reserve quantities, and changes in the standardized measure. In documents filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), Regulation S-K requires that the disclosures related to annual periods be presented for each annual period for which an income statement is required and the disclosures as of the end of an annual period be presented as of the date of each audited balance sheet required. These disclosures are considered to be supplementary information and may be presented outside the basic financial statements. In these circumstances, should the auditor consider the provisions of section 558, *Required Supplementary Information*?

.02 Interpretation—Yes. Also, in addition to the provisions of section 558, the auditor should also consider the provisions of this Interpretation.

.03 Estimating oil and gas reserves is a complex process requiring the knowledge and experience of a reservoir engineer. In general, the quality of the estimate of proved reserves for an individual reservoir depends on the availability, completeness, and accuracy of data needed to develop the estimate and on the experience and judgment of the reservoir engineer. Estimates of proved reserves inevitably change over time as additional data become available and are taken into account. The magnitude of changes in these estimates is often substantial. Because oil and gas reserve estimates are more imprecise than most estimates that are made in preparing financial statements, entities are encouraged to explain the imprecise nature of such reserve estimates.

.04 In applying the procedures specified in section 558, the auditor's inquiries should be directed to management's understanding of the specific requirements for disclosure of the supplementary oil and gas reserve information, including—

- a. The factors considered in determining the reserve quantity information to be reported, such as including in the information (1) quantities of all domestic and foreign proved oil and gas reserves owned by the entity net of interests of others, (2) reserves attributable to consolidated subsidiaries, (3) a proportionate share of reserves of investees that are proportionately consolidated, and (4) reserves relating to royalty interests owned.
- b. The separate disclosure of items such as (1) the entity's share of oil and gas produced from royalty interests for which reserve quantity information is unavailable, (2) reserves subject to long-term agree-

ments with governments or authorities in which the entity participates in the operation or otherwise serves as producer, (3) the entity's proportional interest in reserves of investees accounted for by the equity method, (4) subsequent events, important economic factors, or significant uncertainties affecting particular components of the reserve quantity information, (5) whether the entity's reserves are located entirely within its home country, and (6) whether certain named governments restrict the disclosure of reserves or require that the reserve estimates include reserves other than proved.

- c. The factors considered in determining the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows to be reported.

.05 In addition, the auditor should also—

- a. Inquire about whether the person who estimated the entity's reserve quantity information has appropriate qualifications.¹
- b. Compare the entity's recent production with its reserve estimates for properties that have significant production or significant reserve quantities and inquire about disproportionate ratios.
- c. Compare the entity's reserve quantity information with the corresponding information used for depletion and amortization, and make inquiries when differences exist.
- d. Inquire about the calculation of the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows. These inquiries might include matters such as whether—
 - i. The prices used to develop future cash inflows from estimated production of the proved reserves are based on prices received at the end of the entity's fiscal year, and whether the calculation of future cash inflows appropriately reflects the terms of sales contracts and applicable governmental laws and regulations.
 - ii. The entity's estimate of the nature and timing of future development of the proved reserves and the future rates of production are consistent with available development plans.
 - iii. The entity's estimates of future development and production costs are based on year-end costs and assumed continuation of existing economic conditions.
 - iv. Future income tax expenses have been computed using the appropriate year-end statutory tax rates, with consideration of future tax rates already legislated, after giving effect to the tax basis of the properties involved, permanent differences, and tax credits and allowances.
 - v. The future net cash flows have been appropriately discounted.
 - vi. With respect to full cost companies, the estimated future development costs are consistent with the corresponding amounts used for depletion and amortization purposes.

¹ For example, the Society of Petroleum Engineers has prepared "Standards Pertaining to the Estimating and Auditing of Oil and Gas Reserve Information," which indicate that a reserve estimator would normally be considered to be qualified if he or she (1) has a minimum of three years' practical experience in petroleum engineering or petroleum production geology, with at least one year of such experience being in the estimation and evaluation of reserve information; and (2) either (a) has obtained, from a college or university of recognized stature, a bachelor's or advanced degree in petroleum engineering, geology, or other discipline of engineering or physical science or (b) has received, and is maintaining in good standing, a registered or certified professional engineer's license or a registered or certified professional geologist's license, or the equivalent thereof, from an appropriate governmental authority or professional organization.

- vii. With respect to the disclosure of changes in the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows, the entity has computed and presented the sources of the changes in conformity with the requirements of FASB Statement No. 69 [AC section Oi5].
- e. Inquire about whether the methods and bases for estimating the entity's reserve information are documented and whether the information is current.

.06 If the auditor believes that the information may not be presented within the applicable guidelines, section 558 indicates that he ordinarily should make additional inquiries. However, because of the nature of estimates of oil and gas reserve information, the auditor may not be in a position to evaluate the responses to such additional inquiries and, thus, will need to report this limitation on the procedures prescribed by professional standards. The following is an example that illustrates reporting on oil and gas reserve information in that event.

The oil and gas reserve information is not a required part of the basic financial statements, and we did not audit and do not express an opinion on such information. However, we have applied certain limited procedures prescribed by professional standards that raised doubts that we were unable to resolve regarding whether material modifications should be made to the information for it to conform with guidelines established by the Financial Accounting Standards Board. [The auditor should consider including in his report the reason(s) why he was unable to resolve his doubts. For example, the auditor may wish to state that the information was estimated by a person lacking appropriate qualifications.]

[Issue Date: February, 1989.]

AU Section 560***Subsequent Events***

Source: SAS No. 1, section 560; SAS No. 12; SAS No. 98.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 An independent auditor's report ordinarily is issued in connection with historical financial statements that purport to present financial position at a stated date and results of operations and cash flows for a period ended on that date. However, events or transactions sometimes occur subsequent to the balance-sheet date, but prior to the issuance of the financial statements, that have a material effect on the financial statements and therefore require adjustment or disclosure in the statements. These occurrences hereinafter are referred to as "subsequent events." [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.02 Two types of subsequent events require consideration by management and evaluation by the independent auditor.

.03 The first type consists of those events that provide additional evidence with respect to conditions that existed at the date of the balance sheet and affect the estimates inherent in the process of preparing financial statements. All information that becomes available prior to the issuance of the financial statements should be used by management in its evaluation of the conditions on which the estimates were based. The financial statements should be adjusted for any changes in estimates resulting from the use of such evidence.

.04 Identifying events that require adjustment of the financial statements under the criteria stated above calls for the exercise of judgment and knowledge of the facts and circumstances. For example, a loss on an uncollectible trade account receivable as a result of a customer's deteriorating financial condition leading to bankruptcy subsequent to the balance-sheet date would be indicative of conditions existing at the balance-sheet date, thereby calling for adjustment of the financial statements before their issuance. On the other hand, a similar loss resulting from a customer's major casualty such as a fire or flood subsequent to the balance-sheet date would not be indicative of conditions existing at the balance-sheet date and adjustment of the financial statements would not be appropriate. The settlement of litigation for an amount different from the liability recorded in the accounts would require adjustment of the financial statements if the events, such as personal injury or patent infringement, that gave rise to the litigation had taken place prior to the balance-sheet date.

.05 The second type consists of those events that provide evidence with respect to conditions that did not exist at the date of the balance sheet being reported on but arose subsequent to that date. These events should not result in adjustment of the financial statements.¹ Some of these events, however, may be of such a nature that disclosure of them is required to keep the financial statements from being misleading. Occasionally such an event may be so significant that disclosure can best be made by supplementing the historical

¹ This paragraph is not intended to preclude giving effect in the balance sheet, with appropriate disclosure, to stock dividends or stock splits or reverse splits consummated after the balance-sheet date but before issuance of the financial statements.

financial statements with pro forma financial data giving effect to the event as if it had occurred on the date of the balance sheet. It may be desirable to present pro forma statements, usually a balance sheet only, in columnar form on the face of the historical statements.

.06 Examples of events of the second type that require disclosure to the financial statements (but should not result in adjustment) are:

- a. Sale of a bond or capital stock issue.
- b. Purchase of a business.
- c. Settlement of litigation when the event giving rise to the claim took place subsequent to the balance-sheet date.
- d. Loss of plant or inventories as a result of fire or flood.
- e. Losses on receivables resulting from conditions (such as a customer's major casualty) arising subsequent to the balance-sheet date.

.07 Subsequent events affecting the realization of assets such as receivables and inventories or the settlement of estimated liabilities ordinarily will require adjustment of the financial statements (see paragraph .03) because such events typically represent the culmination of conditions that existed over a relatively long period of time. Subsequent events such as changes in the quoted market prices of securities ordinarily should not result in adjustment of the financial statements (see paragraph .05) because such changes typically reflect a concurrent evaluation of new conditions.

.08 When financial statements are reissued, for example, in reports filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission or other regulatory agencies, events that require disclosure in the reissued financial statements to keep them from being misleading may have occurred subsequent to the original issuance of the financial statements. Events occurring between the time of original issuance and reissuance of financial statements should not result in adjustment of the financial statements² unless the adjustment meets the criteria for the correction of an error or the criteria for prior period adjustments set forth in Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board.* Similarly, financial statements reissued in comparative form with financial statements of subsequent periods should not be adjusted for events occurring subsequent to the original issuance unless the adjustment meets the criteria stated above.

.09 Occasionally, a subsequent event of the second type has such a material impact on the entity that the auditor may wish to include in his report an explanatory paragraph directing the reader's attention to the event and its effects. (See section 508.19.)

Auditing Procedures in the Subsequent Period

.10 There is a period after the balance-sheet date with which the auditor must be concerned in completing various phases of his audit. This period is known as the "subsequent period" and is considered to extend to the date of the auditor's report. Its duration will depend upon the practical requirements of each audit and may vary from a relatively short period to one of several months. Also, all auditing procedures are not carried out at the same time and some phases of an audit will be performed during the subsequent period, whereas other phases will be substantially completed on or before the balance-

² However, see paragraph .05 as to the desirability of presenting pro forma financial statements to supplement the historical financial statements in certain circumstances.

* See also Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 16, *Prior Period Adjustments* (AC section A35).

sheet date. As an audit approaches completion, the auditor will be concentrating on the unresolved auditing and reporting matters and he is not expected to be conducting a continuing review of those matters to which he has previously applied auditing procedures and reached satisfaction.

.11 Certain specific procedures are applied to transactions occurring after the balance-sheet date such as (a) the examination of data to assure that proper cutoffs have been made and (b) the examination of data which provide information to aid the auditor in his evaluation of the assets and liabilities as of the balance-sheet date.

.12 In addition, the independent auditor should perform other auditing procedures with respect to the period after the balance-sheet date for the purpose of ascertaining the occurrence of subsequent events that may require adjustment or disclosure essential to a fair presentation of the financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. These procedures should be performed at or near the completion of the field work. The auditor generally should:

- a. Read the latest available interim financial statements; compare them with the financial statements being reported upon; and make any other comparisons considered appropriate in the circumstances. In order to make these procedures as meaningful as possible for the purpose expressed above, the auditor should inquire of officers and other executives having responsibility for financial and accounting matters as to whether the interim statements have been prepared on the same basis as that used for the statements under audit.
- b. Inquire of and discuss with officers and other executives having responsibility for financial and accounting matters (limited where appropriate to major locations) as to:
 - (i) Whether any substantial contingent liabilities or commitments existed at the date of the balance sheet being reported on or at the date of inquiry.
 - (ii) Whether there was any significant change in the capital stock, long-term debt, or working capital to the date of inquiry.
 - (iii) The current status of items, in the financial statements being reported on, that were accounted for on the basis of tentative, preliminary, or inconclusive data.
 - (iv) Whether any unusual adjustments had been made during the period from the balance-sheet date to the date of inquiry.
- c. Read the available minutes of meetings of stockholders, directors, and appropriate committees; as to meetings for which minutes are not available, inquire about matters dealt with at such meetings.
- d. Inquire of client's legal counsel concerning litigation, claims, and assessments. [As amended, January 1976, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 12.] (See section 337.)
- e. Obtain a letter of representations, dated as of a date no earlier than the date of the auditor's report, from appropriate officials, generally the chief executive officer, chief financial officer, or others with equivalent positions in the entity, as to whether any events occurred subsequent to the date of the financial statements being reported on by the independent auditor that in the officer's opinion would require

The Fourth Standard of Reporting

adjustment or disclosure in these statements. The auditor may elect to have the client include representations as to significant matters disclosed to the auditor in his performance of the procedures in subparagraphs (a) to (d) above and (f) below. (See section 333, *Management Representations*.)

- f. Make such additional inquiries or perform such procedures as he considers necessary and appropriate to dispose of questions that arise in carrying out the foregoing procedures, inquiries, and discussions.
-

AU Section 561***Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report***

Source: SAS No. 1, section 561; SAS No. 98.

See section 9561 for interpretations of this section.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

.01 The procedures described in this section should be followed by the auditor who, subsequent to the date of the report upon audited financial statements, becomes aware that facts may have existed at that date which might have affected the report had he or she then been aware of such facts.¹ [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.02 Because of the variety of conditions which might be encountered, some of these procedures are necessarily set out only in general terms; the specific actions to be taken in a particular case may vary somewhat in the light of the circumstances. The auditor would be well advised to consult with an attorney when he or she encounters the circumstances to which this section may apply because of legal implications that may be involved in actions contemplated herein, including, for example, the possible effect of state statutes regarding confidentiality of auditor-client communications. [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.03 After the date of the report, the auditor has no obligation² to make any further or continuing inquiry or perform any other auditing procedures with respect to the audited financial statements covered by that report, unless new information which may affect the report comes to his or her attention. [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

.04 When the auditor becomes aware of information which relates to financial statements previously reported on by him, but which was not known to him at the date of his report, and which is of such a nature and from such a source that he would have investigated it had it come to his attention during the course of his audit, he should, as soon as practicable, undertake to determine whether the information is reliable and whether the facts existed at the date of his report. In this connection, the auditor should discuss the matter with his client at whatever management levels he deems appropriate, including the board of directors, and request cooperation in whatever investigation may be necessary.

¹ If the financial statements have not yet been issued, see the guidance found in section 560, *Subsequent Events*. [Footnote added, effective September 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.]

² However, see section 711.10–13 as to an auditor's obligation with respect to audited financial statements included in registration statements filed under the Securities Act of 1933 between the date of the auditor's report and the effective date of the registration statement. [Footnote revised by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 37, April 1981. Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

.05 When the subsequently discovered information is found both to be reliable and to have existed at the date of the auditor's report, the auditor should take action in accordance with the procedures set out in subsequent paragraphs if the nature and effect of the matter are such that (a) his report would have been affected if the information had been known to him at the date of his report and had not been reflected in the financial statements and (b) he believes there are persons currently relying or likely to rely on the financial statements who would attach importance to the information. With respect to (b), consideration should be given, among other things, to the time elapsed since the financial statements were issued.

.06 When the auditor has concluded, after considering (a) and (b) in paragraph .05, that action should be taken to prevent future reliance on his report, he should advise his client to make appropriate disclosure of the newly discovered facts and their impact on the financial statements to persons who are known to be currently relying or who are likely to rely on the financial statements and the related auditor's report. When the client undertakes to make appropriate disclosure, the method used and the disclosure made will depend on the circumstances.

- a. If the effect on the financial statements or auditor's report of the subsequently discovered information can promptly be determined, disclosure should consist of issuing, as soon as practicable, revised financial statements and auditor's report. The reasons for the revision usually should be described in a note to the financial statements and referred to in the auditor's report. Generally, only the most recently issued audited financial statements would need to be revised, even though the revision resulted from events that had occurred in prior years.³
- b. When issuance of financial statements accompanied by the auditor's report for a subsequent period is imminent, so that disclosure is not delayed, appropriate disclosure of the revision can be made in such statements instead of reissuing the earlier statements pursuant to subparagraph (a).⁴
- c. When the effect on the financial statements of the subsequently discovered information cannot be determined without a prolonged investigation, the issuance of revised financial statements and auditor's report would necessarily be delayed. In this circumstance, when it appears that the information will require a revision of the statements, appropriate disclosure would consist of notification by the client to persons who are known to be relying or who are likely to rely on the financial statements and the related report that they should not be relied upon, and that revised financial statements and auditor's report will be issued upon completion of an investigation. If applicable, the client should be advised to discuss with the Securities and Exchange Commission, stock exchanges, and appropriate regulatory agencies the disclosure to be made or other measures to be taken in the circumstances.

³ See paragraphs 26 and 27 of Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 9 [AC section A35.107-.108] and paragraphs 36 and 37 of Opinion No. 20 [AC section A35.105] regarding disclosure of adjustments applicable to prior periods. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

⁴ Ibid. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98, September 2002.]

.07 The auditor should take whatever steps he deems necessary to satisfy himself that the client has made the disclosures specified in paragraph .06.

.08 If the client refuses to make the disclosures specified in paragraph .06, the auditor should notify each member of the board of directors of such refusal and of the fact that, in the absence of disclosure by the client, the auditor will take steps as outlined below to prevent future reliance upon his report. The steps that can appropriately be taken will depend upon the degree of certainty of the auditor's knowledge that there are persons who are currently relying or who will rely on the financial statements and the auditor's report, and who would attach importance to the information, and the auditor's ability as a practical matter to communicate with them. Unless the auditor's attorney recommends a different course of action, the auditor should take the following steps to the extent applicable:

- a. Notification to the client that the auditor's report must no longer be associated with the financial statements.
- b. Notification to regulatory agencies having jurisdiction over the client that the auditor's report should no longer be relied upon.
- c. Notification to each person known to the auditor to be relying on the financial statements that his report should no longer be relied upon. In many instances, it will not be practicable for the auditor to give appropriate individual notification to stockholders or investors at large, whose identities ordinarily are unknown to him; notification to a regulatory agency having jurisdiction over the client will usually be the only practicable way for the auditor to provide appropriate disclosure. Such notification should be accompanied by a request that the agency take whatever steps it may deem appropriate to accomplish the necessary disclosure. The Securities and Exchange Commission and the stock exchanges are appropriate agencies for this purpose as to corporations within their jurisdictions.

.09 The following guidelines should govern the content of any disclosure made by the auditor in accordance with paragraph .08 to persons other than his client:

- a. If the auditor has been able to make a satisfactory investigation of the information and has determined that the information is reliable:
 - (i) The disclosure should describe the effect the subsequently acquired information would have had on the auditor's report if it had been known to him at the date of his report and had not been reflected in the financial statements. The disclosure should include a description of the nature of the subsequently acquired information and of its effect on the financial statements.
 - (ii) The information disclosed should be as precise and factual as possible and should not go beyond that which is reasonably necessary to accomplish the purpose mentioned in the preceding subparagraph (i). Comments concerning the conduct or motives of any person should be avoided.
- b. If the client has not cooperated and as a result the auditor is unable to conduct a satisfactory investigation of the information, his disclosure need not detail the specific information but can merely indicate that information has come to his attention which his client has not

The Fourth Standard of Reporting

cooperated in attempting to substantiate and that, if the information is true, the auditor believes that his report must no longer be relied upon or be associated with the financial statements. No such disclosure should be made unless the auditor believes that the financial statements are likely to be misleading and that his report should not be relied on.

.10 The concepts embodied in this section are not limited solely to corporations but apply in all cases where financial statements have been audited and reported on by independent auditors.

AU Section 9561***Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report: Auditing Interpretations of Section 561*****1. Auditor Association With Subsequently Discovered Information When the Auditor Has Resigned or Been Discharged**

.01 Question—New information may come to an auditor's attention subsequent to the date of his report on audited financial statements that might affect the previously issued audit report. Is the auditor's responsibility with respect to that information different if the auditor has resigned or been discharged prior to undertaking or completing his investigation than if he were the continuing auditor?

.02 Interpretation—No. Section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*, requires the auditor to undertake to determine whether the information is reliable and whether the facts existed at the date of his report. This undertaking must be performed even when the auditor has resigned or been discharged.

[Issue Date: February, 1989.]

AU Section 600**OTHER TYPES OF REPORTS****TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
622	Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement	
9622	Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement: Auditing Interpretations of Section 622	
	[1.] Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures to All, or Substantially All, of the Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement (11/97) [Withdrawn October, 2000]	[.01-.02]
623	Special Reports	.01-.34
	Introduction . . . . .	.01
	Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With a Comprehensive Basis of Accounting Other Than Generally Accepted Accounting Principles . . . . .	.02-.10
	Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA) . . . . .	.05-.08
	Evaluating the Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . .	.09-.10
	Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement . . . . .	.11-.18
	Reports on One or More Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement . . . . .	.15-.18
	Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements Related to Audited Financial Statements . . . . .	.19-.21
	Special-Purpose Financial Presentations to Comply With Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Provisions . . . . .	.22-.30
	Financial Statements Prepared on a Basis of Accounting Prescribed in a Contractual Agreement or Regulatory Provision That Results in an Incomplete Presentation But One That is Otherwise in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles or an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . .	.23-.26

623	Special Reports—continued	
	Financial Statements Prepared on a Basis of Accounting Prescribed in an Agreement That Results in a Presentation That is Not in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles or an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . .	.27-.30
	Circumstances Requiring Explanatory Language in an Auditor's Special Report . . . . .	.31
	Financial Information Presented in Prescribed Forms or Schedules . . . . .	.32-.33
	Effective Date . . . . .	.34
9623	Special Reports: Auditing Interpretations of Section 623	
	[1.] Auditor's Report Under Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (1/77) [Withdrawn February, 1983] . .	[.01-.08]
	[2.] Reports on Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement That Are Presented in Conformity With GAAP (7/78) [Withdrawn March, 1989]	[.09-.10]
	[3.] Compliance With the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977 (10/78) [Transferred to AU section 9642; Deleted October, 1993]	[.11-.14]
	[4.] Reports on Engagements Solely to Meet State Regulatory Examination Requirements (10/79) [Deleted April, 1981] . .	[.15-.16]
	[5.] Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Accounting Practices Specified in an Agreement (2/80) [Withdrawn March, 1989]	[.17-.25]
	[6.] Reporting on Special-Purpose Financial Presentations (2/80) [Withdrawn March, 1989]	[.26-.31]
	[7.] Understanding of Agreed-Upon Procedures (2/80) [Deleted April, 1981]	[.32-.33]
	[8.] Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements Prepared on a Comprehensive Basis of Accounting Other Than Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (2/80) [Withdrawn March, 1989]	[.34-.39]
	9. Auditors' Special Reports on Property and Liability Insurance Companies' Loss Reserves (5/81) . . . . .	.40-.46
	10. Reports on the Financial Statements Included in Internal Revenue Form 990, "Return of Organizations Exempt from Income Tax" (7/82) . . . . .	.47-.54
	11. Reporting on Current-Value Financial Statements That Supplement Historical-Cost Financial Statements in Presentations of Real Estate Entities (6/90) . . . . .	.55-.59
	12. Evaluation of the Appropriateness of Informative Disclosures in Insurance Enterprises' Financial Statements Prepared on a Statutory Basis (12/91) . . . . .	.60-.81

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
9623	Special Reports: Auditing Interpretations of Section 623—continued
	13. Reporting on a Special-Purpose Financial Statement That Results in an Incomplete Presentation But Is Otherwise in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (5/95)
	.82-89
	14. Evaluating the Adequacy of Disclosure and Presentation in Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA) (1/98)
	.90-95
	15. Auditor Reports on Regulatory Accounting or Presentation When the Regulated Entity Distributes the Financial Statements to Parties Other Than the Regulatory Agency Either Voluntarily or Upon Specific Request (1/05)
	.96-98
625	Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles .01-11
	Introduction
	.01-06
	Performance Standards.
	.07-09
	Reporting Standards.
	.10-11
9625	Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles: Auditing Interpretations of Section 625
	1. Requirement to Consult With the Continuing Accountant (1/05)
	.01-09
634	Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties .01-64
	Introduction
	.01-02
	Applicability.
	.03-10
	General
	.11-21
	Guidance on the Format and Contents of Comfort Letters
	.22-62
	Dating
	.23-24
	Addressee
	.25
	Introductory Paragraph
	.26-30
	Independence
	.31-32
	Compliance With SEC Requirements
	.33-34
	Commenting in a Comfort Letter on Information Other Than Audited Financial Statements
	.35-53
	General
	.35
	Knowledge of Internal Control
	.36
	Unaudited Condensed Interim Financial Information
	.37-38
	Capsule Financial Information
	.39-41
	Pro Forma Financial Information
	.42-43
	Financial Forecasts
	.44
	Subsequent Changes
	.45-53
	Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information
	.54-60
	Concluding Paragraph
	.61
	Disclosure of Subsequently Discovered Matters
	.62
	Effective Date
	.63
	Appendix—Examples
	.64

634 Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties—continued

Example A: Typical Comfort Letter

Example B: Letter When a Short-Form Registration Statement Is Filed Incorporating Previously Filed Forms 10-K and 10-Q by Reference

Example C: Letter Reaffirming Comments in Example A as of a Later Date

Example D: Comments on Pro Forma Financial Information

Example E: Comments on a Financial Forecast

Example F: Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Complete Description of Procedures and Findings

Example G: Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Summarized Description of Procedures and Findings Regarding Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information

Example H: Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information: Descriptions of Procedures and Findings Regarding Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Attached Registration Statement (or Selected Pages) Identifies With Designated Symbols Items to Which Procedures Were Applied

Example I: Alternate Wording When Accountants' Report on Audited Financial Statements Contains an Explanatory Paragraph

Example J: Alternate Wording When More Than One Accountant Is Involved

Example K: Alternate Wording When the SEC Has Agreed to a Departure From Its Accounting Requirements

Example L: Alternate Wording When Recent Earnings Data Are Presented in Capsule Form

Example M: Alternate Wording When Accountants Are Aware of a Decrease in a Specified Financial Statement Item

Example N: Alternate Wording of the Letter for Companies That Are Permitted to Present Interim Earnings Data for a Twelve-Month Period

Example O: Alternate Wording When the Procedures That the Underwriter Has Requested the Accountant to Perform on Interim Financial Information Are Less Than an SAS No. 71 Review

Example P: A Typical Comfort Letter in a Non-1933 Act Offering, Including the Required Underwriter Representations

Example Q: Letter to a Requesting Party That Has Not Provided the Representation Letter Described in Paragraphs .06 and .07

Section

Paragraph

634	Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties—continued Example R: Comfort Letter That Includes Reference to Examination of Annual MD&A and Review of Interim MD&A	
9634	Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties: Auditing Interpretations of Section 634	
	1. Letters to Directors Relating to Annual Reports on Form 10-K (5/81) .....	.01-.09
	[2.] Negative Assurance on Unaudited Condensed Interim Financial Statements Attached to Comfort Letters (7/86) [Deleted April, 1993].	[.10-.12]
	3. Commenting in a Comfort Letter on Quantitative Disclosures About Market Risk Made in Accordance With Item 305 of Regulation S-K (8/98). .....	.13-.29
9642	Reporting on Internal Accounting Control: Auditing Interpretations of SAS No. 30	
	[1.] Pre-Award Surveys (8/80) [Deleted October, 1993].	[.01-.03]
	[2.] Award Survey Made in Conjunction With an Audit (8/80) [Deleted October, 1993]	[.04-.05]
	[3.] Reporting on Matters Not Covered by Government-Established Criteria (8/80) [Deleted October, 1993]	[.06-.07]
	[4.] Limited Scope (8/80) [Deleted October, 1993].	[.08-.09]
	[5.] Compliance With the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977 (8/80) [Deleted October, 1993].	[.10-.13]
	[6.] Reports on Internal Accounting Control of Trust Departments of Banks (1/81) [Deleted October, 1993]	[.14-.17]
	[7.] Report Required by U.S. General Accounting Office (4/82) [Withdrawn April, 1988]	[.18-.25]
	[8.] Form of Report on Internal Accounting Control Based Solely on a Study and Evaluation Made as Part of an Audit (12/83) [Withdrawn April, 1988]	[.26-.32]
	[9.] Reporting on Internal Accounting Control Based Solely on an Audit When a Minimum Study and Evaluation Is Made (12/83) [Withdrawn April, 1988]	[.33-.34]
	[10.] Report Required by U.S. General Accounting Office Based on a Financial and Compliance Audit When a Study and Evaluation Does Not Extend Beyond the Preliminary Review Phase (12/83) [Withdrawn April, 1988]	[.35-.36]
	[11.] Restricted Purpose Report Required by Law to Be Made Available to the Public (12/83) [Withdrawn April, 1988] ..	[.37-.38]
	[12.] Reporting on Internal Accounting Control "Compliance With the Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act" (1/87) [Deleted October, 1993]	[.39-.41]

AU Section 622***Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement***

(Supersedes SAS No. 35)

Source: SAS No. 75; SAS No. 87; SAS No. 93.

Notice of Withdrawal of Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 75, *Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement* and Auditing Interpretation No. 1, "Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures to All, or Substantially All, of the Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement"

The Auditing Standards Board (ASB) has withdrawn SAS No. 75, *Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement*, and its Interpretation in order to consolidate the guidance applicable to agreed-upon procedures engagements in professional standards. For guidance relating to performing and reporting on agreed-upon procedures engagements, practitioners should refer to AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*.

AU Section 9622***Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement: Auditing Interpretations of Section 622*****[1.] Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures to All, or Substantially All, of the Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement**

[.01-.02]

Notice of Withdrawal of Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 75, *Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement* and Auditing Interpretation No. 1, “Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures to All, or Substantially All, of the Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement”

The Auditing Standards Board (ASB) has withdrawn SAS No. 75, *Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement*, and its Interpretation in order to consolidate the guidance applicable to agreed-upon procedures engagements in professional standards. For guidance relating to performing and reporting on agreed-upon procedures engagements, practitioners should refer to AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*.

AU Section 623

Special Reports

(Supersedes section 621)

Source: SAS No. 62; SAS No. 77.

See section 9623 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for reports issued on or after July 1, 1989, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction

.01 This section applies to auditors' reports issued in connection with the following:

- a. Financial statements that are prepared in conformity with a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles (paragraphs .02 through .10)
- b. Specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement (paragraphs .11 through .18)
- c. Compliance with aspects of contractual agreements or regulatory requirements related to audited financial statements (paragraphs .19 through .21)
- d. Financial presentations to comply with contractual agreements or regulatory provisions (paragraphs .22 through .30)
- e. Financial information presented in prescribed forms or schedules that require a prescribed form of auditor's reports (paragraphs .32 and .33)

Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With a Comprehensive Basis of Accounting Other Than Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

.02 Generally accepted auditing standards are applicable when an auditor conducts an audit of and reports on any financial statement. A financial statement may be, for example, that of a corporation, a consolidated group of corporations, a combined group of affiliated entities, a not-for-profit organization, a governmental unit, an estate or trust, a partnership, a proprietorship, a segment of any of these, or an individual. The term *financial statement* refers to a presentation of financial data, including accompanying notes, derived from accounting records and intended to communicate an entity's economic resources or obligations at a point in time or the changes therein for a period of time in conformity with a comprehensive basis of accounting. For reporting

purposes, the independent auditor should consider each of the following types of financial presentations to be a financial statement:

- a. Balance sheet
- b. Statement of income or statement of operations
- c. Statement of retained earnings
- d. Statement of cash flows
- e. Statement of changes in owners' equity
- f. Statement of assets and liabilities that does not include owners' equity accounts
- g. Statement of revenue and expenses
- h. Summary of operations
- i. Statement of operations by product lines
- j. Statement of cash receipts and disbursements

.03 An independent auditor's judgment concerning the overall presentation of financial statements should be applied within an identifiable framework (see section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*). Normally, the framework is provided by generally accepted accounting principles, and the auditor's judgment in forming an opinion is applied accordingly (see section 411.05). In some circumstances, however, a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles may be used. [Title of section 411 amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.04 For purposes of this section, a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles is one of the following—

- a. A basis of accounting that the reporting entity uses to comply with the requirements or financial reporting provisions of a governmental regulatory agency to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject. An example is a basis of accounting insurance companies use pursuant to the rules of a state insurance commission.
- b. A basis of accounting that the reporting entity uses or expects to use to file its income tax return for the period covered by the financial statements.
- c. The cash receipts and disbursements basis of accounting, and modifications of the cash basis having substantial support, such as recording depreciation on fixed assets or accruing income taxes.
- d. A definite set of criteria having substantial support that is applied to all material items appearing in financial statements, such as the price-level basis of accounting.

Unless one of the foregoing descriptions applies, reporting under the provisions of paragraph .05 is not permitted.

Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA)

.05 When reporting on financial statements prepared in conformity with a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting

principles, as defined in paragraph .04, an independent auditor should include in the report—

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*.¹
- b. A paragraph that—
 - (1) States that the financial statements identified in the report were audited.
 - (2) States that the financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management² and that the auditor is responsible for expressing an opinion on the financial statements based on the audit.
- c. A paragraph that—
 - (1) States that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and includes an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards (for example, auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted auditing standards).
 - (2) States that those standards require that the auditor plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement.
 - (3) States that an audit includes—
 - (a) Examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements,
 - (b) Assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, and
 - (c) Evaluating the overall financial statement presentation (see paragraph .09).
 - (4) States that the auditor believes that his or her audit provides a reasonable basis for the opinion.
- d. A paragraph that—
 - (1) States the basis of presentation and refers to the note to the financial statements that describes the basis (see paragraphs .09 and .10).
 - (2) States that the basis of presentation is a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.
- e. A paragraph that expresses the auditor's opinion (or disclaims an opinion) on whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in

¹ This section does not require a title for an auditor's report if the auditor is not independent. See section 504, *Association With Financial Statements*, for guidance on reporting when the auditor is not independent.

² In some instances, a document containing the auditor's report may include a statement by management regarding its responsibility for the presentation of the financial statements. Nevertheless, the auditor's report should state that the financial statements are management's responsibility. However, the statement about management's responsibility should not be further elaborated upon in the auditor's standard report or referenced to management's report.

all material respects, in conformity with the basis of accounting described. If the auditor concludes that the financial statements are not presented fairly on the basis of accounting described or if there has been a limitation on the scope of the audit, he or she should disclose all the substantive reasons for the conclusion in an explanatory paragraph(s) (preceding the opinion paragraph) of the report and should include in the opinion paragraph the appropriate modifying language and a reference to such explanatory paragraph(s).³

- f. If the financial statements are prepared in conformity with the requirements or financial reporting provisions of a governmental regulatory agency (see paragraph .04a), a separate paragraph at the end of the report stating that the report is intended solely for the information and use of those within the entity and the regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject, and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties. Such a paragraph is appropriate even though by law or regulation the auditor's report may be made a matter of public record.⁴ The auditor may use this form of report only if the financial statements and report are intended solely for use by those within the entity and one or more regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject.⁵
- g. The manual or printed signature of the auditor's firm.
- h. The date.⁶

[As amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ended on or after December 31, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77. Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.06 Unless the financial statements meet the conditions for presentation in conformity with a "comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles" as defined in paragraph .04, the auditor should use the standard form of report (see section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .08) modified as appropriate because of the departures from generally accepted accounting principles.

.07 Terms such as *balance sheet*, *statement of financial position*, *statement of income*, *statement of operations*, and *statement of cash flows*, or similar

³ Paragraph .31 discusses other circumstances that may require that the auditor add additional explanatory language to the special report.

⁴ Public record, for purposes of auditor's reports on financial statements of a regulated entity that are prepared in accordance with the financial reporting provisions of a government regulatory agency, includes circumstances in which specific requests must be made by the public to obtain access to or copies of the report. In contrast, the auditor would be precluded from using this form of report in circumstances in which the entity distributes the financial statements to parties other than the regulatory agency either voluntarily or upon specific request. [Footnote added, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ended on or after December 31, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77.]

⁵ If the financial statements and report are intended for use by parties other than those within the entity and one or more regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject, the auditor should follow the guidance in section 544, *Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*. [Footnote renumbered and amended, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ended on or after December 31, 1996, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77.]

⁶ For guidance on dating the auditor's report, see section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

unmodified titles are generally understood to be applicable only to financial statements that are intended to present financial position, results of operations, or cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Consequently, the auditor should consider whether the financial statements that he or she is reporting on are suitably titled. For example, cash basis financial statements might be titled *statement of assets and liabilities arising from cash transactions*, or *statement of revenue collected and expenses paid*, and a financial statement prepared on a statutory or regulatory basis might be titled *statement of income—statutory basis*. If the auditor believes that the financial statements are not suitably titled, the auditor should disclose his or her reservations in an explanatory paragraph of the report and qualify the opinion.

.08 Following are illustrations of reports on financial statements prepared in conformity with a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.^[7]

Financial Statements Prepared on a Basis Prescribed by a Regulatory Agency Solely for Filing With That Agency

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying statements of admitted assets, liabilities, and surplus—statutory basis of XYZ Insurance Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related statements of income and cash flows—statutory basis and changes in surplus—statutory basis for the years then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

As described in Note X, these financial statements were prepared in conformity with the accounting practices prescribed or permitted by the Insurance Department of [State], which is a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the admitted assets, liabilities, and surplus of XYZ Insurance Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended, on the basis of accounting described in Note X.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the board of directors and management of XYZ Insurance Company and [name of regulatory agency] and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[7] [Footnote deleted to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 87.]

Financial Statements Prepared on the Entity's Income Tax Basis

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying statements of assets, liabilities, and capital—income tax basis of ABC Partnership as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related statements of revenue and expenses—income tax basis and of changes in partners' capital accounts—income tax basis for the years then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Partnership's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements.

An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

As described in Note X, these financial statements were prepared on the basis of accounting the Partnership uses for income tax purposes, which is a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the assets, liabilities, and capital of ABC Partnership as of [at] December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and its revenue and expenses and changes in partners' capital accounts for the years then ended, on the basis of accounting described in Note X.

Financial Statements Prepared on the Cash Basis

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying statements of assets and liabilities arising from cash transactions of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related statements of revenue collected and expenses paid for the years then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

As described in Note X, these financial statements were prepared on the basis of cash receipts and disbursements, which is a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the assets and liabilities arising from cash transactions of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and its revenue collected and expenses paid during the years then ended, on the basis of accounting described in Note X.

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary to reflect the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

Evaluating the Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting

.09 When reporting on financial statements prepared on a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles, the auditor should consider whether the financial statements (including the accompanying notes) include all informative disclosures that are appropriate for the basis of accounting used. The auditor should apply essentially the same criteria to financial statements prepared on an other comprehensive basis of accounting as he or she does to financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Therefore, the auditor's opinion should be based on his or her judgment regarding whether the financial statements, including the related notes, are informative of matters that may affect their use, understanding, and interpretation as discussed in section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraph .04. [Title of section 411 amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.10 Financial statements prepared on an other comprehensive basis of accounting should include, in the accompanying notes, a summary of significant accounting policies that discusses the basis of presentation and describes how that basis differs from generally accepted accounting principles. However, the effects of the differences between generally accepted accounting principles and the basis of presentation of the financial statements that the auditor is reporting on need not be quantified. In addition, when the financial statements contain items that are the same as, or similar to, those in financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, similar informative disclosures are appropriate. For example, financial statements prepared on an income tax basis or a modified cash basis of accounting usually reflect depreciation, long-term debt and owners' equity. Thus, the informative disclosures for depreciation, long-term debt and owners' equity in such financial statements should be comparable to those in financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. When evaluating the adequacy of disclosures, the auditor should also consider disclosures related to matters that are not specifically identified on the face of the financial statements, such as (a) related party transactions, (b) restrictions on assets and owners' equity, (c) subsequent events, and (d) uncertainties.

Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement

.11 An independent auditor may be requested to express an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement. In such an engagement, the specified element(s), account(s), or item(s) may be presented in the report or in a document accompanying the report. Examples

of one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement that an auditor may report on based on an audit made in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards include rentals, royalties, a profit participation, or a provision for income taxes.⁸

.12 When expressing an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement, the auditor should plan and perform the audit and prepare his or her report with a view to the purpose of the engagement. With the exception of the first standard of reporting, the ten generally accepted auditing standards are applicable to any engagement to express an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement. The first standard of reporting, which requires that the auditor's report state whether the financial statements are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, is applicable only when the specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement are intended to be presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

.13 An engagement to express an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement may be undertaken as a separate engagement or in conjunction with an audit of financial statements. In either case, an auditor expresses an opinion on each of the specified elements, accounts, or items encompassed by the auditor's report; therefore, the measurement of materiality must be related to each individual element, account, or item reported on rather than to the aggregate thereof or to the financial statements taken as a whole. Consequently, an audit of a specified element, account, or item for purposes of reporting thereon is usually more extensive than if the same information were being considered in conjunction with an audit of financial statements taken as a whole. Also, many financial statement elements are interrelated, for example, sales and receivables; inventory and payables; and buildings and equipment and depreciation. The auditor should be satisfied that elements, accounts, or items that are interrelated with those on which he or she has been engaged to express an opinion have been considered in expressing an opinion.

.14 The auditor should not express an opinion on specified elements, accounts, or items included in financial statements on which he or she has expressed an adverse opinion or disclaimed an opinion based on an audit, if such reporting would be tantamount to expressing a piecemeal opinion on the financial statements (see section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .64). However, an auditor would be able to express an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement provided that the matters to be reported on and the related scope of the audit were not intended to and did not encompass so many elements, accounts, or items as to constitute a major portion of the financial statements. For example, it may be appropriate for an auditor to express an opinion on an entity's accounts receivable balance even if the auditor has disclaimed an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole. However, the report on the specified element, account, or item should be presented separately from the report on the financial statements of the entity.

⁸ See AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*, for guidance when reporting on the results of applying agreed-upon procedures to one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement. See AT section 101, *Attest Engagements*, for guidance when reporting on a review of one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995. Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

Reports on One or More Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement

.15 When an independent auditor is engaged to express an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement, the report should include—

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*.⁹
- b. A paragraph that—
 - (1) States that the specified elements, accounts, or items identified in the report were audited. If the audit was made in conjunction with an audit of the company's financial statements, the paragraph should so state and indicate the date of the auditor's report on those financial statements. Furthermore, any departure from the standard report on those statements should also be disclosed if considered relevant to the presentation of the specified element, account or item.
 - (2) States that the specified elements, accounts, or items are the responsibility of the Company's management and that the auditor is responsible for expressing an opinion on the specified elements, accounts or items based on the audit.
- c. A paragraph that—
 - (1) States that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and includes an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards (for example, auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted auditing standards).
 - (2) States that those standards require that the auditor plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the specified elements, accounts, or items are free of material misstatement.
 - (3) States that an audit includes—
 - (a) Examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the presentation of the specified elements, accounts, or items,
 - (b) Assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, and
 - (c) Evaluating the overall presentation of the specified elements, accounts, or items.
 - (4) States that the auditor believes that his or her audit provides a reasonable basis for the auditor's opinion.
- d. A paragraph¹⁰ that—
 - (1) Describes the basis on which the specified elements, accounts, or items are presented (see paragraphs .09 and .10) and, when

⁹ See footnote 1. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

¹⁰ Alternatively, this requirement can be met by incorporating the description in the introductory paragraph discussed in paragraph .15b above. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

applicable, any agreements specifying such basis if the presentation is not prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.¹¹ If the presentation is prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, the paragraph should include an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those accounting principles (for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted accounting principles).

- (2) If considered necessary, includes a description and the source of significant interpretations, if any, made by the Company's management, relating to the provisions of a relevant agreement.
- e. A paragraph that expresses the auditor's opinion (or disclaims an opinion) on whether the specified elements, accounts, or items are fairly presented, in all material respects, in conformity with the basis of accounting described. If the auditor concludes that the specified elements, accounts, or items are not presented fairly on the basis of accounting described or if there has been a limitation on the scope of the audit, the auditor should disclose all the substantive reasons for that conclusion in an explanatory paragraph(s) (preceding the opinion paragraph) of the report and should include in the opinion paragraph appropriate modifying language and a reference to such explanatory paragraph(s).¹²
- f. If the specified element, account, or item is prepared to comply with the requirements or financial reporting provisions of a contract or agreement that results in a presentation that is not in conformity with either generally accepted accounting principles or an other comprehensive basis of accounting, a separate paragraph at the end of the report stating that the report is intended solely for the information and use of those within the entity and the parties to the contract or agreement,¹³ and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties. Such a restriction on the use of the report is necessary because the basis, assumptions, or purpose of the presentation (contained in the contract or agreement) is developed for and directed only to the parties to the contract or agreement.
- g. The manual or printed signature of the auditor's firm.
- h. The date.¹⁴

When expressing an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement, the auditor, to provide more information as to

¹¹ When the specified element, account, or item is presented in conformity with an other comprehensive basis of accounting, see paragraph .05d(2). [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

¹² Paragraph .31 discusses other circumstances that may require that the auditor add additional explanatory language to the special report. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

¹³ If the presentation is prepared on a basis prescribed by a governmental regulatory agency (which is also OCBOA), the auditor should restrict the distribution of the report on such presentation. See paragraph .05f for further reporting guidance in this situation. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

¹⁴ See footnote 6. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

the scope of the audit, may wish to describe in a separate paragraph certain other auditing procedures applied. However, no modification in the content of paragraph .15c above should be made. [Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.16 If a specified element, account, or item is, or is based upon, an entity's net income or stockholders' equity or the equivalent thereof, the auditor should have audited the complete financial statements to express an opinion on the specified element, account, or item.

.17 The auditor should consider the effect that any departure, including additional explanatory language because of the circumstances discussed in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .11, from the standard report on the audited financial statements might have on the report on a specified element, account, or item thereof.

.18 Following are illustrations of reports expressing an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement.

Report Relating to Accounts Receivable

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying schedule of accounts receivable of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X2. This schedule is the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on this schedule based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the schedule of accounts receivable is free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the schedule of accounts receivable. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall schedule presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the schedule of accounts receivable referred to above presents fairly, in all material respects, the accounts receivable of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X2, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.¹⁵

Report Relating to Amount of Sales for the Purpose of Computing Rental

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying schedule of gross sales (as defined in the lease agreement dated March 4, 20XX, between ABC Company, as lessor, and XYZ Stores Corporation, as lessee) of XYZ Stores Corporation at its Main Street store, [City], [State], for the year ended December 31, 20X2. This schedule is the responsibility of XYZ Stores Corporation's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on this schedule based on our audit.

¹⁵ Since this presentation was prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, the report need not be restricted. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

Other Types of Reports

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the schedule of gross sales is free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the schedule of gross sales. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall schedule presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the schedule of gross sales referred to above presents fairly, in all material respects, the gross sales of XYZ Stores Corporation at its Main Street store, [City], [State], for the year ended December 31, 20X2, as defined in the lease agreement referred to in the first paragraph.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the boards of directors and managements of XYZ Stores Corporation and ABC Company and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

Report Relating to Royalties

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying schedule of royalties applicable to engine production of the Q Division of XYZ Corporation for the year ended December 31, 20X2, under the terms of a license agreement dated May 14, 20XX, between ABC Company and XYZ Corporation. This schedule is the responsibility of XYZ Corporation's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on this schedule based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the schedule of royalties is free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the schedule of royalties. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall schedule presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

We have been informed that, under XYZ Corporation's interpretation of the agreement referred to in the first paragraph, royalties were based on the number of engines produced after giving effect to a reduction for production retirements that were scrapped, but without a reduction for field returns that were scrapped, even though the field returns were replaced with new engines without charge to customers.

In our opinion, the schedule of royalties referred to above presents fairly, in all material respects, the number of engines produced by the Q Division of XYZ Corporation during the year ended December 31, 20X2, and the amount of royalties applicable thereto, under the license agreement referred to above.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the boards of directors and managements of XYZ Corporation and ABC Company and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

Report on a Profit Participation¹⁶Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20X1, and have issued our report thereon dated March 10, 20X2. We have also audited XYZ Company's schedule of John Smith's profit participation for the year ended December 31, 20X1. This schedule is the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on this schedule based on our audit.

We conducted our audit of the schedule in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the schedule of profit participation is free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the schedule. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall schedule presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

We have been informed that the documents that govern the determination of John Smith's profit participation are (a) the employment agreement between John Smith and XYZ Company dated February 1, 20X0, (b) the production and distribution agreement between XYZ Company and Television Network Incorporated dated March 1, 20X0, and (c) the studio facilities agreement between XYZ Company and QRX Studios dated April 1, 20X0, as amended November 1, 20X0.

In our opinion, the schedule of profit participation referred to above presents fairly, in all material respects, John Smith's participation in the profits of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20X1, in accordance with the provisions of the agreements referred to above.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the boards of directors and managements of XYZ Company and John Smith and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

Report on Federal and State Income Taxes Included in Financial Statements¹⁷Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company, Inc., for the year ended June 30, 20XX, and have issued our report thereon dated August 15, 20XX. We have also audited the current and deferred provision for the Company's federal and state income taxes for the year ended June 30, 20XX, included in those financial statements, and the related asset and liability tax accounts as of June 30, 20XX. This income tax information is the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on it based on our audit.

¹⁶ See paragraph .16. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

¹⁷ See paragraph .16. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

We conducted our audit of the income tax information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the federal and state income tax accounts are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures related to the federal and state income tax accounts. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the federal and state income tax accounts. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the Company has paid or, in all material respects, made adequate provision in the financial statements referred to above for the payment of all federal and state income taxes and for related deferred income taxes that could be reasonably estimated at the time of our audit of the financial statements of XYZ Company, Inc., for the year ended June 30, 20XX.

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements Related to Audited Financial Statements

.19 Entities may be required by contractual agreements, such as certain bond indentures and loan agreements, or by regulatory agencies to furnish compliance reports by independent auditors.¹⁸ For example, loan agreements often impose on borrowers a variety of obligations involving matters such as payments into sinking funds, payments of interest, maintenance of current ratios, and restrictions of dividend payments. They usually also require the borrower to furnish annual financial statements that have been audited by an independent auditor. In some instances, the lenders or their trustees may request assurance from the independent auditor that the borrower has complied with certain covenants of the agreement relating to accounting matters. The independent auditor may satisfy this request by giving negative assurance relative to the applicable covenants based on the audit of the financial statements. This assurance may be given in a separate report or in one or more paragraphs of the auditor's report accompanying the financial statements. Such assurance, however, should not be given unless the auditor has audited the financial statements to which the contractual agreements or regulatory requirements relate and should not extend to covenants that relate to matters that have not been subjected to the audit procedures applied in the audit of the financial statements.¹⁹ In addition, such assurance should not be given if the auditor has expressed an adverse opinion or disclaimed an opinion on the financial statements to which these covenants relate.

¹⁸ When the auditor is engaged to test compliance with laws and regulations in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States (Yellow Book), he or she should follow guidance contained in section 801, *Compliance Auditing Applicable to Governmental Entities and Other Specified Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance*. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

¹⁹ When the auditor is engaged to provide assurance on compliance with contractual agreements or regulatory provisions that relate to matters that have not been subjected to the audit procedures applied in the audit of the financial statements, the auditor should refer to the guidance in AT section 601, *Compliance Attestation*. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995. Footnote revised, February 1997, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 3. Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

.20 When an auditor's report on compliance with contractual agreements or regulatory provisions is being given in a separate report, the report should include—

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*.²⁰
- b. A paragraph that states the financial statements were audited in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and includes an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards (for example, auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted auditing standards) and the date of the auditor's report on those financial statements. Furthermore, any departure from the standard report on those statements should also be disclosed.
- c. A paragraph that includes a reference to the specific covenants or paragraphs of the agreement, provides negative assurance relative to compliance with the applicable covenants of the agreement insofar as they relate to accounting matters, and specifies that the negative assurance is being given in connection with the audit of the financial statements. The auditor should ordinarily state that the audit was not directed primarily toward obtaining knowledge regarding compliance.
- d. A paragraph that includes a description and the source of significant interpretations, if any, made by the Company's management relating to the provisions of a relevant agreement.
- e. A separate paragraph at the end of the report stating that the report is intended solely for the information and use of those within the entity and the parties to the contract or agreement or the regulatory agency with which the report is being filed, and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties. Such a restriction on the use of the report is necessary because the basis, assumptions, or purpose of such presentations (contained in such contracts, agreements, or regulatory provisions) are developed for and directed only to the parties to the contract or agreement, or regulatory agency responsible for the provisions.
- f. The manual or printed signature of the auditor's firm.
- g. The date.²¹

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.21 When an auditor's report on compliance with contractual agreements or regulatory provisions is included in the report that expresses the auditor's opinion on the financial statements, the auditor should include a paragraph, after the opinion paragraph, that provides negative assurance relative to compliance with the applicable covenants of the agreement, insofar as they relate to accounting matters, and that specifies the negative assurance is being

²⁰ See footnote 1. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

²¹ See footnote 6. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

given in connection with the audit of the financial statements. The auditor should also ordinarily state that the audit was not directed primarily toward obtaining knowledge regarding compliance. In addition, the report should include a paragraph that includes a description and source of any significant interpretations made by the entity's management as discussed in paragraph .20d as well as a paragraph that restricts the use of the report to the specified parties as discussed in paragraph .20e. Following are examples of reports that might be issued:

Report on Compliance With Contractual Provisions Given in a Separate Report²²

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the balance sheet of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X2, and the related statement of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended, and have issued our report thereon dated February 16, 20X3.

In connection with our audit, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that the Company failed to comply with the terms, covenants, provisions, or conditions of sections XX to XX, inclusive, of the Indenture dated July 21, 20X0, with ABC Bank insofar as they relate to accounting matters. However, our audit was not directed primarily toward obtaining knowledge of such noncompliance.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the boards of directors and management of XYZ Company and ABC Bank and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

Report on Compliance With Regulatory Requirements Given in a Separate Report When the Auditor's Report on the Financial Statements Included an Explanatory Paragraph Because of an Uncertainty

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the balance sheet of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X2, and the related statement of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended, and have issued our report thereon dated March 5, 20X3, which included an explanatory paragraph that described the litigation discussed in Note X of those statements.

In connection with our audit, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that the Company failed to comply with the accounting provisions in sections (1), (2) and (3) of the [name of state regulatory agency]. However, our audit was not directed primarily toward obtaining knowledge of such noncompliance.

²² When the auditor's report on compliance with contractual agreements or regulatory provisions is included in the report that expresses the auditor's opinion on the financial statements, the last two paragraphs of this report are examples of the paragraphs that should follow the opinion paragraph of the auditor's report on the financial statements. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the board of directors and managements of XYZ Company and the [name of state regulatory agency] and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

Special-Purpose Financial Presentations to Comply With Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Provisions

.22 An auditor is sometimes asked to report on special-purpose financial statements prepared to comply with a contractual agreement²³ or regulatory provisions. In most circumstances, these types of presentations are intended solely for the use of the parties to the agreement, regulatory bodies, or other specified parties. This section discusses reporting on these types of presentations, which include the following:

- a. A special-purpose financial presentation prepared in compliance with a contractual agreement or regulatory provision that does not constitute a complete presentation of the entity's assets, liabilities, revenues and expenses, but is otherwise prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or an other comprehensive basis of accounting (paragraphs .23 through .26).
- b. A special-purpose financial presentation (may be a complete set of financial statements or a single financial statement) prepared on a basis of accounting prescribed in an agreement that does not result in a presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or an other comprehensive basis of accounting (paragraphs .27 through .30).

Financial Statements Prepared on a Basis of Accounting Prescribed in a Contractual Agreement or Regulatory Provision That Results in an Incomplete Presentation But One That is Otherwise in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles or an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting

.23 A governmental agency may require a schedule of gross income and certain expenses of an entity's real estate operation in which income and expenses are measured in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, but expenses are defined to exclude certain items such as interest, depreciation, and income taxes. Such a schedule may also present the excess of gross income over defined expenses. Also, a buy-sell agreement may specify a schedule of gross assets and liabilities of the entity measured in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, but limited to the assets to be sold and liabilities to be transferred pursuant to the agreement.

.24 Paragraph .02 of this section defines the term *financial statement* and includes a list of financial presentations that an auditor should consider to be financial statements for reporting purposes. The concept of specified elements,

²³ A contractual agreement as discussed in this section is an agreement between the client and one or more third parties other than the auditor. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

accounts, or items of a financial statement discussed in paragraphs .11 through .18, on the other hand, refers to accounting information that is part of, but significantly less than, a financial statement. The financial presentations described above and similar presentations should generally be regarded as financial statements, even though, as indicated above, certain items may be excluded. Thus, when the auditor is asked to report on these types of presentations, the measurement of materiality for purposes of expressing an opinion should be related to the presentations taken as a whole (see section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*). Further, the presentations should differ from complete financial statements only to the extent necessary to meet special purposes for which they were prepared. In addition, when these financial presentations contain items that are the same as, or similar to, those contained in a full set of financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, similar informative disclosures are appropriate (see paragraphs .09 and .10). The auditor should also be satisfied that the financial statements presented are suitably titled to avoid any implication that the special-purpose financial statements on which he or she is reporting are intended to present financial position, results of operations, or cash flows.

.25 When the auditor is asked to report on financial statements prepared on a basis of accounting prescribed in a contractual agreement or regulatory provision that results in an incomplete presentation but one that is otherwise in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or an other comprehensive basis of accounting, the auditor's report should include—

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*.²⁴
- b. A paragraph that—
 - (1) States that the financial statements identified in the report were audited.
 - (2) States that the financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management²⁵ and that the auditor is responsible for expressing an opinion on the financial statements based on the audit.²⁶
- c. A paragraph that—
 - (1) States that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and includes an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards (for example, auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted auditing standards).
 - (2) States that those standards require that the auditor plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement.

²⁴ See footnote 1. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

²⁵ Sometimes the auditor's client may not be the person responsible for the financial statements on which the auditor is reporting. For example, when the auditor is engaged by the buyer to report on the seller's financial statements prepared in conformity with a buy-sell agreement, the person responsible for the financial statements may be the seller's management. In this case, the wording of this statement should be changed to clearly identify the party that is responsible for the financial statements reported on. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

²⁶ See footnote 2. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

- (3) States that an audit includes—
 - (a) Examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements,
 - (b) Assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, and
 - (c) Evaluating the overall financial statement presentation.
- (4) States that the auditor believes that the audit provides a reasonable basis for his or her opinion.
- d. A paragraph that—
 - (1) Explains what the presentation is intended to present and refers to the note to the special-purpose financial statements that describes the basis of presentation (see paragraphs .09 and .10).
 - (2) If the basis of presentation is in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, states that the presentation is not intended to be a complete presentation of the entity's assets, liabilities, revenues and expenses.²⁷
- e. A paragraph that expresses the auditor's opinion (or disclaims an opinion) related to the fair presentation, in all material respects, of the information the presentation is intended to present in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or an other comprehensive basis of accounting. If the presentation is prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, the paragraph should include an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those accounting principles (for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted accounting principles). If the auditor concludes that the information the presentation is intended to present is not presented fairly on the basis of accounting described or if there has been a limitation on the scope of the audit, the auditor should disclose all the substantive reasons for that conclusion in an explanatory paragraph(s) (preceding the opinion paragraph) of the report and should include in the opinion paragraph appropriate modifying language and a reference to such explanatory paragraph(s).²⁸
- f. A separate paragraph at the end of the report stating that the report is intended solely for the information and use of those within the entity, the parties to the contract or agreement, the regulatory agency with which the report is being filed, or those with whom the entity is negotiating directly, and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties. However, such a paragraph is not appropriate if the report and related financial presentation are to be filed with a regulatory agency, such as the Securities and Exchange Commission, and are to be included in a document (such as a prospectus) that is distributed to the general public.

²⁷ If the basis of presentation is an other comprehensive basis of accounting, the paragraph should state that the basis of presentation is a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles and that it is not intended to be a complete presentation of the entity's assets, liabilities, revenues and expenses on the basis described. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

²⁸ Paragraph .31 discusses other circumstances that may require that the auditor add additional explanatory language to the special report. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

- g. The manual or printed signature of the auditor’s firm.
- h. The date.²⁹

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.26 The following examples illustrate reports expressing an opinion on such special-purpose financial statements:

Report on a Schedule of Gross Income and Certain Expenses to Meet a Regulatory Requirement and to Be Included in a Document Distributed to the General Public

Independent Auditor’s Report

We have audited the accompanying Historical Summaries of Gross Income and Direct Operating Expenses of ABC Apartments, City, State (Historical Summaries), for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 20XX. These Historical Summaries are the responsibility of the Apartments’ management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Historical Summaries based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the Historical Summaries are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the Historical Summaries. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the Historical Summaries. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

The accompanying Historical Summaries were prepared for the purpose of complying with the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission (for inclusion in the registration statement on Form S-11 of DEF Corporation) as described in Note X and are not intended to be a complete presentation of the Apartments’ revenues and expenses.

In our opinion, the Historical Summaries referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the gross income and direct operating expenses described in Note X of ABC Apartments for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 20XX, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Report on a Statement of Assets Sold and Liabilities Transferred to Comply With a Contractual Agreement

Independent Auditor’s Report

We have audited the accompanying statement of net assets sold of ABC Company as of June 8, 20XX. This statement of net assets sold is the responsibility of ABC Company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the statement of net assets sold based on our audit.

²⁹ See footnote 6. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the statement of net assets sold is free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the statement. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the statement of net assets sold. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

The accompanying statement was prepared to present the net assets of ABC Company sold to XYZ Corporation pursuant to the purchase agreement described in Note X, and is not intended to be a complete presentation of ABC Company's assets and liabilities.

In our opinion, the accompanying statement of net assets sold presents fairly, in all material respects, the net assets of ABC Company as of June 8, 20XX sold pursuant to the purchase agreement referred to in Note X, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the boards of directors and managements of ABC Company and XYZ Corporation and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

Financial Statements Prepared on a Basis of Accounting Prescribed in an Agreement That Results in a Presentation That is not in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles or an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting

.27 The auditor may be asked to report on special-purpose financial statements prepared in conformity with a basis of accounting that departs from generally accepted accounting principles or an other comprehensive basis of accounting. A loan agreement, for example, may require the borrower to prepare consolidated financial statements in which assets, such as inventory, are presented on a basis that is not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or an other comprehensive basis of accounting. An acquisition agreement may require the financial statements of the entity being acquired (or a segment of it) to be prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles except for certain assets, such as receivables, inventories, and properties for which a valuation basis is specified in the agreement.

.28 Financial statements prepared under a basis of accounting as discussed above are not considered to be prepared in conformity with a "comprehensive basis of accounting" as contemplated by paragraph .04 of this section because the criteria used to prepare such financial statements do not meet the requirement of being "criteria having substantial support," even though the criteria are definite.

.29 When an auditor is asked to report on these types of financial presentations, the report should include—

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*.³⁰

³⁰ See footnote 1. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

- b. A paragraph that—
 - (1) States that the special-purpose financial statements identified in the report were audited.
 - (2) States that the financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management³¹ and that the auditor is responsible for expressing an opinion on the financial statements based on the audit.³²
- c. A paragraph that—
 - (1) States that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and includes an identification of the United States of America as the country of origin of those standards (for example, auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted auditing standards).
 - (2) States that those standards require that the auditor plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement.
 - (3) States that an audit includes—
 - (a) Examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements,
 - (b) Assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, and
 - (c) Evaluating the overall financial statement presentation.
 - (4) States that the auditor believes that the audit provides a reasonable basis for the auditor's opinion.
- d. A paragraph that—
 - (1) Explains what the presentation is intended to present and refers to the note to the special-purpose financial statements that describes the basis of presentation (see paragraphs .09 and .10).
 - (2) States that the presentation is not intended to be a presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.
- e. A paragraph that includes a description and the source of significant interpretations, if any, made by the Company's management relating to the provisions of a relevant agreement.
- f. A paragraph that expresses the auditor's opinion (or disclaims an opinion) related to the fair presentation, in all material respects, of the information the presentation is intended to present on the basis of accounting specified. If the auditor concludes that the information the presentation is intended to present is not presented fairly on the basis of accounting described or if there has been a limitation on the scope of the audit, the auditor should disclose all the substantive reasons for that conclusion in an explanatory paragraph(s) (preceding

³¹ See footnote 25. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

³² See footnote 2. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

the opinion paragraph) of the report and should include in the opinion paragraph appropriate modifying language and a reference to such explanatory paragraph(s).³³

- g. A separate paragraph at the end of the report stating that the report is intended solely for the information and use of those within the entity, the parties to the contract or agreement, the regulatory agency with which the report is being filed, or those with whom the entity is negotiating directly, and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties. For example, if the financial statements have been prepared for the specified purpose of obtaining bank financing, the report's use should be restricted to the various banks with whom the entity is negotiating the proposed financing.
- h. The manual or printed signature of the auditor's firm.
- i. The date.³⁴

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

.30 The following example illustrates reporting on special-purpose financial statements that have been prepared pursuant to a loan agreement:

Report on Financial Statements Prepared Pursuant to a Loan Agreement That Results in a Presentation not in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles or an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the special-purpose statement of assets and liabilities of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related special-purpose statements of revenues and expenses and of cash flows for the years then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

The accompanying special-purpose financial statements were prepared for the purpose of complying with Section 4 of a loan agreement between DEF Bank and the Company as discussed in Note X, and are not intended to be a presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

³³ Paragraph .31 discusses other circumstances that may require that the auditor add additional explanatory language to the special report. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

³⁴ See footnote 6. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

In our opinion, the special-purpose financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the assets and liabilities of ABC Company at December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the revenues, expenses and cash flows for the years then ended, on the basis of accounting described in Note X.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the boards of directors and management of ABC Company and DEF Bank and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

Circumstances Requiring Explanatory Language in an Auditor's Special Report

.31 Certain circumstances, while not affecting the auditor's unqualified opinion, may require that the auditor add additional explanatory language to the special report. These circumstances include the following:

- a. *Lack of Consistency in Accounting Principles.* If there has been a change in accounting principles or in the method of their application,³⁵ the auditor should add an explanatory paragraph to the report (following the opinion paragraph) that describes the change and refers to the note to the financial presentation (or specified elements, accounts, or items thereof) that discusses the change and its effect thereon³⁶ if the accounting change is considered relevant to the presentation. Guidance on reporting in this situation is contained in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .16 through .18.^[37-38]
- b. *Going Concern Uncertainties.* If the auditor has substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time not to exceed one year beyond the date of the financial statement, the auditor should add an explanatory paragraph after the opinion paragraph of the report only if the auditor's substantial doubt is relevant to the presentation.³⁹
- c. *Other Auditors.* When the auditor decides to make reference to the report of another auditor as a basis, in part, for his or her opinion, the auditor should disclose that fact in the introductory paragraph

³⁵ When financial statements (or specified elements, accounts, or items thereof) have been prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in prior years, and the entity changes its method of presentation in the current year by preparing its financial statements in conformity with an other comprehensive basis of accounting, the auditor need not follow the reporting guidance in this subparagraph. However, the auditor may wish to add an explanatory paragraph to the report to highlight (1) a difference in the basis of presentation from that used in prior years or (2) that another report has been issued on the entity's financial statements prepared in conformity with another basis of presentation (for example, when cash basis financial statements are issued in addition to GAAP financial statements). [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

³⁶ A change in the tax law is not considered to be a change in accounting principle for which the auditor would need to add an explanatory paragraph, although disclosure may be necessary. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

^[37-38] [Footnote deleted to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

³⁹ See section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, for a report example when the auditor has substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 77, November 1995.]

of the report and should refer to the report of the other auditors in expressing his or her opinion. Guidance on reporting in this situation is contained in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .12 and .13.

- d. *Comparative Financial Statements (or Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items Thereof)*. If the auditor expresses an opinion on prior-period financial statements (or specified elements, accounts, or items thereof) that is different from the opinion he or she previously expressed on that same information, the auditor should disclose all of the substantive reasons for the different opinion in a separate explanatory paragraph preceding the opinion paragraph of the report. Guidance on reporting in this situation is contained in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .68 and .69.

As in reports on financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, the auditor may add an explanatory paragraph to emphasize a matter regarding the financial statements (or specified elements, accounts, or items thereof). [Revised, February 1997, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.]

Financial Information Presented in Prescribed Forms or Schedules

.32 Printed forms or schedules designed or adopted by the bodies with which they are to be filed often prescribe the wording of an auditor's report. Many of these forms are not acceptable to independent auditors because the prescribed form of auditor's report does not conform to the applicable professional reporting standards. For example, the prescribed language of the report may call for statements by the auditor that are not consistent with the auditor's function or responsibility.

.33 Some report forms can be made acceptable by inserting additional wording; others can be made acceptable only by complete revision. When a printed report form calls upon an independent auditor to make a statement that he or she is not justified in making, the auditor should reword the form or attach a separate report. In those situations, the reporting provisions of paragraph .05 may be appropriate.

Effective Date

.34 This section is effective for reports issued on or after July 1, 1989. Early application of the provisions of this section is permissible.

AU Section 9623

Special Reports: Auditing Interpretations of Section 623

[1.] Auditor's Report Under Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974

[.01-.08] [Withdrawn February 1983.*]

[2.] Reports on Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement That Are Presented in Conformity with GAAP

[.09-.10] [Withdrawn March 1989, by SAS No. 62. (See section 623.)]

[3.] Compliance With the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977

[.11-.14] [Transferred to section 9642; Deleted October 1993.] (See the guidance provided in SSAE No. 10, chapter 5, paragraph 5.82 (AT section 501.82).) [Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

[4.] Reports on Engagements Solely to Meet State Regulatory Examination Requirements

[.15-.16] [Deleted April 1981 by SAS No. 35, as superseded by SAS No. 75, as superseded by SAS No. 93.] (See section 622.) [Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

[5.] Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance with Accounting Practices Specified in an Agreement

[.17-.25] [Withdrawn March 1989, by SAS No. 62. (See section 623.)]

[6.] Reporting on Special-Purpose Financial Presentations^[3-4]

[.26-.31] [Withdrawn March 1989, by SAS No. 62. (See section 623.)]

[7.] Understanding of Agreed-Upon Procedures

[.32-.33] [Deleted April 1981 by SAS No. 35, as superseded by SAS No. 75, as superseded by SAS No. 93.] (See section 622.) [Revised, October 2000, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 93.]

[8.] Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements Prepared on a Comprehensive Basis of Accounting Other Than Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

[.34-.39] [Withdrawn March 1989, by SAS No. 62. (See section 623.)]

* See Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*.

[3-4] [Footnote deleted.]

9. Auditors' Special Reports on Property and Liability Insurance Companies' Loss Reserves

.40 Question—The instructions to the statutory annual statement to be filed by property and liability insurance companies with state regulatory agencies include the following:

If a company is required by its domiciliary commissioner, there is to be submitted to the commissioner as an addendum to the Annual Statement by April 1 of the subsequent year a statement of a qualified loss reserve specialist setting forth his or her opinion relating to loss and loss adjustment expense reserves.

The term "qualified loss reserve specialist" includes an independent auditor who has competency in loss reserve evaluation.

.41 If an independent auditor who has made an audit of the insurance company's financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards is engaged to express a separate opinion on the company's loss and loss adjustment expense reserves for the purpose of compliance with the above instruction, what form of report should be used by the independent auditor?

.42 Interpretation—Section 623.11 through .18 provides guidance on auditors' reports expressing an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement. Following are illustrations of the auditor's report expressing an opinion on a company's loss and loss adjustment expense reserves and the schedule of liabilities for losses and loss adjustment expenses that would accompany the report.⁵

Illustrative report

Board of Directors

X Insurance Company

We are members of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) and are the independent public accountants of X Insurance Company. We acknowledge our responsibility under the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct to undertake only those engagements which we can complete with professional competence.

We have audited the financial statements prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America [*or prepared in conformity with accounting practices prescribed or permitted by the Insurance Department of the State of*] of X Insurance Company as of December 31, 20X0, and have issued our report thereon dated March 1, 20X1. In the course of our audit, we have audited the estimated liabilities for unpaid losses and unpaid loss adjustment expenses of X Insurance Company as of December 31, 20X0, as set forth in the accompanying schedule including consideration of the assumptions and methods relating to the estimation of such liabilities.

In our opinion, the accompanying schedule presents fairly, in all material respects, the estimated unpaid losses and unpaid loss adjustment expenses of X Insurance Company that could be reasonably estimated at December 31, 20X0, in conformity with accounting practices prescribed or permitted by the Insurance Department of the State of on a basis consistent with that of the preceding year.

⁵ If a significant period of time has elapsed between the date of the report on the financial statements and the date he is reporting on the loss and loss adjustment expense reserves, the auditor may wish to include the following paragraph after the opinion paragraph: Because we have not audited any financial statements of X Insurance Company as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 20X0, we have no knowledge of the effects, if any, on the liability for unpaid losses and unpaid loss adjustment expenses of events that may have occurred subsequent to the date of our audit.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the board of directors and management of X Insurance Company and *[the state regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject]* and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

Signature

Date

X Insurance Company
Schedule of Liabilities for Losses
and Loss Adjustment Expenses
December 31, 19X0

Liability for losses	\$xx,xxx,xxx
Liability for loss adjustment expenses	x,xxx,xxx
Total	<u>\$xx,xxx,xxx</u>

Note 1—Basis of presentation

The above schedule has been prepared in conformity with accounting practices prescribed or permitted by the Insurance Department of the State of (Significant differences between statutory practices and generally accepted accounting principles for the calculation of the above amounts should be described but the monetary effect of any such differences need not be stated.)

Losses and loss adjustment expenses are provided for when incurred in accordance with the applicable requirements of the insurance laws [and/or regulations] of the State of Such provisions include (1) individual case estimates for reported losses, (2) estimates received from other insurers with respect to reinsurance assumed, (3) estimates for unreported losses based on past experience modified for current trends, and (4) estimates of expenses for investigating and settling claims.

Note 2—Reinsurance

The Company reinsures certain portions of its liability insurance coverages to limit the amount of loss on individual claims and purchases catastrophe insurance to protect against aggregate single occurrence losses. Certain portions of property insurance are reinsured on a quota share basis.

The liability for losses and the liability for loss adjustment expenses were reduced by \$xxx,xxx and \$xxx,xxx, respectively, for reinsurance ceded to other companies.

Contingent liability exists with respect to reinsurance which would become an actual liability in the event the reinsuring companies, or any of them, might be unable to meet their obligations to the Company under existing reinsurance agreements.

.43 Question—The instructions to the statutory annual statement also include the following:

If there has been any material change in the assumptions and/or methods from those previously employed, that change should be described in the statement of opinion by inserting a phrase such as:

A material change in assumptions (and/or methods) was made during the past year, but such change accords with accepted loss reserving standards.

A brief description of the change should follow.

.44 In what circumstances is it appropriate for the independent auditor to modify his special report on loss and loss adjustment expense reserves for material changes in assumptions and/or methods?

.45 Interpretation—Section 420.06 states that changes in accounting principles and methods of applying them affect consistency and require the addition of an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) in the auditor's report on the audited financial statements. Section 623.16 states that, if applicable, any departures from the auditor's standard report on the related financial statements should be indicated in the special report on an element, account, or item of a financial statement.

.46 Section 420.16 states that a change in accounting estimate is not a change affecting consistency requiring recognition in the auditor's report. However, such changes in estimates that are disclosed in the financial statements on which the auditor has reported should also be disclosed in the notes to the schedule of liabilities for unpaid losses and unpaid loss adjustment expenses accompanying the auditor's special report. (See APB Opinion No. 20, *Accounting Changes*, paragraph 33 [AC section A06.132].)

[Issue Date: May, 1981; Revised: February, 1999; Revised: October, 2000.]

10. Reports on the Financial Statements Included in Internal Revenue Form 990, "Return of Organizations Exempt from Income Tax"

.47 Question—Internal Revenue Form 990, "Return of Organizations Exempt from Income Tax," may be used as a uniform annual report by charitable organizations in some states for reporting to both state and federal governments. Many states require an auditor's opinion on whether the financial statements included in the report⁶ are presented fairly in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Ordinarily, financial statements included in a Form 990 used by a charitable organization as a uniform annual report may be expected to contain certain material departures from the accounting principles in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides *Health Care Organizations* and *Not-for-Profit Organizations*.

.48 In most states the report is used primarily to satisfy statutory requirements, but regulatory authorities make the financial statements and the accompanying auditor's report a matter of public record. In some situations, however, there may be public distribution of the report. What should be the form of the auditor's report in each of the above situations?

.49 Interpretation—In both situations, the auditor should first consider whether the financial statements (including appropriate notes to financial statements) are in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. If they are, the auditor can express an unqualified opinion.

.50 If the financial statements are not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, the auditor should consider the distribution of the report to determine whether it is appropriate to issue a special report (as illustrated in section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraph .08, for reporting on financial statements prepared in accordance with the requirements or financial reporting provisions of a government regulatory agency).

.51 Section 623 permits this type of special report only if the financial statements and report are intended solely for use by those within the entity and one or more regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject.

⁶ As used in this interpretation, the report refers to a Form 990 report by a charitable organization in a filing with a government agency.

However, section 623 makes this form of reporting appropriate, even though by law or regulation the accountant's report may be made a matter of public record.⁷

.52 The following example illustrates a report expressing an opinion on such special purpose financial statements:

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the balance sheet (Part IV) of XYZ Charity as of December 31, 20XX, and the related statement of revenue, expenses and changes in net assets (Part I) and statement of functional expenses (Part II) for the year then ended included in the accompanying Internal Revenue Service Form 990. These financial statements are the responsibility of Charity's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

As described in Note X, these financial statements were prepared in conformity with the accounting practices prescribed by the Internal Revenue Service and the Office of the State of, which is a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the assets, liabilities and fund balances of XYZ Charity as of December 31, 19XX and its revenue and expenses and changes in fund balances for the year then ended on the basis of accounting described in Note X.^[8]

Our audit was made for the purpose of forming an opinion on the above financial statements taken as a whole. The accompanying information on pages to is presented for purposes of additional analysis and is not a required part of the above financial statements. Such information, except for that portion marked "unaudited," on which we express no opinion, has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the above financial statements; and, in our opinion, the information is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the financial statements taken as a whole.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the board of directors and management of XYZ Charity, the Internal Revenue Service, and the Office of the State of and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

⁷ *Public record*, for purposes of auditors' reports in states with filing requirements for exempt organizations, includes circumstances in which specific requests must be made by the public to obtain access to or copies of the report, notwithstanding the fact that some states may advertise or require the exempt organization to advertise the availability of Form 990. In contrast, *public distribution*, for purposes of auditors' reports in state filings on various Forms 990 dealing with exempt organizations, includes circumstances in which the regulatory agency or the exempt organization, either because of regulatory requirements or voluntarily, distributes copies of Form 990 to contributors or others without receiving a specific request for such distribution.

^[8] [Footnote deleted.]

.53 If there is public distribution⁹ of the report, because the law requires it or otherwise (copies of Form 990 are distributed to contributors or others without receiving a specific request for such distribution) and the financial statements included in it are not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, a special report (as illustrated in section 623.08) is not appropriate. In such cases, the auditor should express a qualified or adverse opinion and disclose the effects on the financial statements of the departures from generally accepted accounting principles if the effects are reasonably determinable. If the effects are not reasonably determinable, the report should so state.

[.54] [Paragraph deleted to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 87.]

[Issue Date: December, 1991; Revised: February, 1997;
Revised: February, 1999; Revised: October, 2000.]

11. Reporting on Current-Value Financial Statements That Supplement Historical-Cost Financial Statements in Presentations of Real Estate Entities

.55 *Question*—A real estate entity presents current-value financial statements¹⁰ to supplement historical-cost financial statements. May an auditor accept an engagement to report on current-value financial statements that supplement historical-cost financial statements, and if so, how should the auditor report?

.56 *Interpretation*—An auditor may accept an engagement to report on current-value financial statements that supplement historical-cost financial statements of a real estate entity only if the auditor believes the following two conditions exist—

- the measurement and disclosure criteria used to prepare the current-value financial statements are reasonable, and
- competent persons using the measurement and disclosure criteria would ordinarily obtain materially similar measurements or disclosures.

.57 If these conditions are satisfied, an auditor may report on such current-value financial statements in a manner similar to that discussed in section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraph .29. However, because the current-value financial statements only supplement the historical-cost financial statements and are not presented as a stand-alone presentation, it is not necessary to restrict the use of the auditor's report on the presentation as required by that paragraph.

⁹ Auditors should consider whether there is a public distribution requirement by reference to the relevant state law. However, at this time (April 1982), most state laws do not contain a public distribution requirement and a special report is ordinarily appropriate. For example, the laws of New York, New Jersey and Connecticut do not presently require public distribution as defined by this interpretation.

¹⁰ Generally accepted accounting principles require the use of current-value accounting for financial statements of certain types of entities (for example, investment companies, employee benefit plans, personal financial statements, and mutual and common trust funds). This interpretation does not apply to reports on current-value financial statements of such entities. The auditor engaged to report on current-value financial statements of such entities should follow the guidance in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, and the applicable industry audit guide.

.58 The following is an example of a report an auditor might issue when reporting on current-value financial statements that supplement historical-cost financial statements of a real estate entity:

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying historical-cost balance sheets of X Company as of December 31, 20X3 and 20X2, and the related historical-cost statements of income, shareholders' equity and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 20X3. We also have audited the supplemental current-value balance sheets of X Company as of December 31, 20X3 and 20X2, and the related supplemental current-value statements of income and shareholders' equity for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 20X3. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the historical-cost financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of X Company as of December 31, 20X3 and 20X2, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 20X3, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

As described in Note 1, the supplemental current-value financial statements have been prepared by management to present relevant financial information that is not provided by the historical-cost financial statements and are not intended to be a presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. In addition, the supplemental current-value financial statements do not purport to present the net realizable, liquidation, or market value of the Company as a whole. Furthermore, amounts ultimately realized by the Company from the disposal of properties may vary significantly from the current values presented.

In our opinion, the supplemental current-value financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the information set forth in them on the basis of accounting described in Note 1.

[Signature]

[Date]

.59 The auditor should also consider the adequacy of disclosures relating to the current value financial statements. Such disclosures should describe the accounting policies applied and such matters as the basis of presentation, nature of the reporting entity's properties, status of construction-in-process, valuation bases used for each classification of assets and liabilities, and sources of valuation. These matters should be disclosed in the notes in a sufficiently clear and comprehensive manner that enables a knowledgeable reader to understand the current-value financial statements.

[Issue Date: July, 1990; Revised: February, 1999; Revised: October, 2000.]

12. Evaluation of the Appropriateness of Informative Disclosures in Insurance Enterprises' Financial Statements Prepared on a Statutory Basis¹¹

.60 Question—Insurance enterprises issue financial statements prepared in accordance with accounting practices prescribed or permitted by insurance regulators (a “statutory basis”) in addition to, or instead of, financial statements prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). Effective January 1, 2001, most states are expected to adopt a comprehensively updated *Accounting Practices and Procedures Manual*, as revised by the National Association of Insurance Commissioners’ (NAIC’s) Codification project. The updated *Accounting Practices and Procedures Manual*, along with any subsequent revisions, is referred to as the revised Manual. The revised Manual contains extensive disclosure requirements. As a result, after a state adopts the revised Manual, its statutory basis of accounting will include informative disclosures appropriate for that basis of accounting. The NAIC Annual Statement Instructions prescribe the financial statements to be included in the annual audited financial report. Some states may not adopt the revised Manual or may adopt it with significant departures. How should auditors evaluate whether informative disclosures in financial statements prepared on a statutory basis are appropriate?¹² [As amended, effective for annual financial statements for fiscal years ending on or after December 15, 2001, and complete sets of interim financial statements for periods beginning on or after that date and audits of those financial statements, by Statement of Position 01-5.]

.61 Interpretation—Financial statements prepared on a statutory basis are financial statements prepared on a comprehensive basis of accounting other than GAAP according to section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraph .04. Section 623.09 states that “When reporting on financial statements prepared on a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles, the auditor should consider whether the financial statements (including the accompanying notes) include all informative disclosures that are appropriate for the basis of accounting used. The auditor should apply essentially the same criteria to financial statements prepared on an other comprehensive basis of accounting as he or she does to financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. Therefore, the auditor’s opinion should be based on his or her judgment regarding whether the financial statements, including the related notes, are informative of matters that may affect their use, understanding, and interpretation as discussed in section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraph .04.” [Title of section 411 amended, effective for reports issued or reissued on or after June 30, 2001, by Statement

¹¹ Interpretation No. 14, “Evaluating the Adequacy of Disclosure and Presentation in Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA)” (paragraphs .90–.95), provides interpretive guidance applicable to all OCBOA presentations. This interpretation provides additional guidance regarding the appropriateness of informative disclosures in insurance enterprises’ financial statements prepared on a statutory basis. [Footnote added by the revision of Interpretations No. 12 and No. 14, January 2005.]

¹² It is possible for one of three different situations to occur: The state adopted the revised Manual without significant departures, adopted the revised Manual with significant departures, or has not yet adopted the revised Manual. [Footnote added, effective for annual financial statements for fiscal years ending on or after December 15, 2001, and complete sets of interim financial statements for periods beginning on or after that date and audits of those financial statements, by Statement of Position 01-5. Footnote renumbered by the revision of Interpretations No. 12 and No. 14, January 2005.]

on Auditing Standards No. 93. As amended, effective for annual financial statements for fiscal years ending on or after December 15, 2001, and complete sets of interim financial statements for periods beginning on or after that date and audits of those financial statements, by Statement of Position 01-5.]

.62 Section 623.02 states that generally accepted auditing standards apply when an auditor conducts an audit of and reports on financial statements prepared on an other comprehensive basis of accounting. Thus, in accordance with the third standard of reporting, “informative disclosures in the financial statements are to be regarded as reasonably adequate unless otherwise stated in the report.”

.63 Question—What types of items or matters should auditors consider in evaluating whether informative disclosures are reasonably adequate?

.64 Interpretation—Section 623.09 and .10 indicates that financial statements prepared on a comprehensive basis of accounting other than GAAP should include “all informative disclosures that are appropriate for the basis of accounting used.” That includes a summary of significant accounting policies that discusses the basis of presentation and describes how that basis differs from GAAP. The provisions of the preamble of the revised Manual that states, “GAAP pronouncements do not become part of Statutory Accounting Principles until and unless adopted by the NAIC,” do not negate the requirements of section 623.10, which also states that when “the financial statements [prepared on an other comprehensive basis of accounting] contain items that are the same as, or similar to, those in financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, similar informative disclosures are appropriate.” [As amended, effective for annual financial statements for fiscal years ending on or after December 15, 2001, and complete sets of interim financial statements for periods beginning on or after that date and audits of those financial statements, by Statement of Position 01-5.]

[.65–.66] [Paragraphs deleted by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

.67 Question—How does the auditor evaluate whether “similar informative disclosures” are appropriate for—

- a. Items and transactions that are accounted for essentially the same or in a similar manner under a statutory basis as under GAAP?
- b. Items and transactions that are accounted for differently under a statutory basis than under GAAP?
- c. Items and transactions that are accounted for differently under requirements of the state of domicile than under the revised Manual?

[As amended, effective for annual financial statements for fiscal years ending on or after December 15, 2001, and complete sets of interim financial statements for periods beginning on or after that date and audits of those financial statements, by Statement of Position 01-5.]

.68 Interpretation—Disclosures in statutory basis financial statements for items and transactions that are accounted for essentially the same or in a similar manner under the statutory basis as under GAAP should be the same as, or similar to, the disclosures required by GAAP unless the revised Manual specifically states the NAIC Codification rejected the GAAP disclosures.¹³ Disclosures should also include those required by the revised Manual. [As amended,

¹³ The provisions of the preamble of the revised Manual that states, “GAAP pronouncements do not become part of Statutory Accounting Principles until and unless adopted by the NAIC” or any other explicit rejection of a GAAP disclosure does not negate the requirements of section 623.10. [Footnote added by the revision of Interpretations No. 12 and No. 14, January 2005.]

effective for annual financial statements for fiscal years ending on or after December 15, 2001, and complete sets of interim financial statements for periods beginning on or after that date and audits of those financial statements, by Statement of Position 01-5.]

[.69] [Paragraph deleted by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

.70 Disclosures in statutory basis financial statements for items or transactions that are accounted for differently under the statutory basis than under GAAP, but in accordance with the revised Manual, should be the disclosures required by the revised Manual. [As amended, effective for annual financial statements for fiscal years ending on or after December 15, 2001, and complete sets of interim financial statements for periods beginning on or after that date and audits of those financial statements, by Statement of Position 01-5.]

.71 If the accounting required by the state of domicile for an item or transaction differs from the accounting set forth in the revised Manual for that item or transaction, but it is in accordance with GAAP or superseded GAAP, the disclosures in statutory basis financial statements for that item or transaction should be the applicable GAAP disclosures for the GAAP or superseded GAAP. If the accounting required by the state of domicile for an item or transaction differs from the accounting set forth in the revised Manual, GAAP or superseded GAAP, sufficient relevant disclosures should be made. [As amended, effective for annual financial statements for fiscal years ending on or after December 15, 2001, and complete sets of interim financial statements for periods beginning on or after that date and audits of those financial statements, by Statement of Position 01-5.]

[.72-.76] [Paragraphs deleted by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

.77 When evaluating the adequacy of disclosures, the auditor should also consider disclosures related to matters that are not specifically identified on the face of the financial statements, such as (a) related party transactions, (b) restrictions on assets and owners' equity, (c) subsequent events, and (d) uncertainties. Other matters should be disclosed if such disclosures are necessary to keep the financial statements from being misleading.

[.78-.79] [Paragraphs deleted to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB Statement No. 120, *Accounting and Reporting by Mutual Life Insurance Enterprises and by Insurance Enterprises for Certain Long-Duration Participating Contracts*, and FASB Interpretation No. 40, *Applicability of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles to Mutual Life Insurance and Other Enterprises*.]

[.80-.81] [Paragraphs deleted by the revision of Interpretations No. 12 and No. 14, January 2005.]

[Issue Date: December, 1991; Revised: February, 1997;
Amended: December, 2001; Revised: January, 2005.]

13. Reporting on a Special-Purpose Financial Statement That Results in an Incomplete Presentation But Is Otherwise in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

.82 Question—An auditor may be requested to report on a special-purpose financial statement that results in an incomplete presentation but otherwise

is in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. For example, an entity wishing to sell a division or product line may prepare an offering memorandum that includes a special-purpose financial statement that presents certain assets and liabilities, revenues and expenses relating to the division or product line being sold. Section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraph .22 states that the auditor may report on a special-purpose financial statement prepared to comply with a contractual agreement. Does an offering memorandum (not including a filing with a regulatory agency) constitute a contractual agreement for purposes of issuing an auditor's report under this section? [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

.83 Interpretation—No. An offering memorandum generally is a document providing information as the basis for negotiating an offer to sell certain assets or businesses or to raise funds. Normally, parties to an agreement or other specified parties for whom the special-purpose financial presentation is intended have not been identified. Accordingly, the auditor should follow the reporting guidance in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .35–.44 and .58–.60. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

.84 Question—Does an agreement between a client and one or more third parties other than the auditor to prepare financial statements using a special-purpose presentation constitute a contractual agreement for purposes of issuing an auditor's report under this section? [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

.85 Interpretation—Yes. In such cases, the auditor should follow the guidance in section 623.22–.26, and use of the auditor's report should be restricted to those within the entity, to the parties to the contract or agreement or to those with whom the entity is negotiating directly.

.86 If there is no such agreement, the auditor should follow the guidance in section 508.35–.44 and .58–.60. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

[.87–.89] [Paragraphs deleted to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 87. Paragraphs renumbered by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

[Issue Date: May, 1995; Revised: February, 1999.]

14. Evaluating the Adequacy of Disclosure and Presentation in Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA)¹⁴

.90 Question—Section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraph .10, requires that financial statements prepared on a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) include a summary of significant accounting policies that discusses the basis of presentation and describes how that basis differs from GAAP. It also states that when such financial statements contain items that are the same as, or similar to, those in statements prepared in conformity with GAAP, "similar informative disclosures are appropriate." To illustrate how to apply that statement, section 623.10 says that the disclosures for depreciation, long-term debt, and owners'

¹⁴ While this interpretation provides guidance applicable to all OCBOA presentations, Interpretation No. 12 (paragraphs .60–.81) provides additional interpretive guidance regarding the appropriateness of informative disclosures in insurance enterprises' financial statements prepared on a statutory basis. [Footnote added by the revision of Interpretations No. 12 and No. 14, January 2005.]

equity should be “comparable to” those in financial statements prepared in conformity with GAAP. That paragraph then states that the auditor “should also consider” the need for disclosure of matters that are not specifically identified on the face of the statements, such as (a) related party transactions, (b) restrictions on assets and owners’ equity, (c) subsequent events, and (d) uncertainties. How should the guidance in section 623.10 be applied in evaluating the adequacy of disclosure in financial statements prepared in conformity with an other comprehensive basis of accounting (OCBOA)? [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

.91 Interpretation—The discussion of the basis of presentation may be brief; for example: “The accompanying financial statements present financial results on the accrual basis of accounting used for federal income tax reporting.” Only the primary differences from GAAP need to be described. To illustrate, assume that several items are accounted for differently than they would be under GAAP, but that only the differences in depreciation calculations are significant. In that situation, a brief description of the depreciation differences is all that would be necessary, and the remaining differences need not be described. Quantifying differences is not required. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

.92 If OCBOA financial statements contain elements, accounts, or items for which GAAP would require disclosure, the statements should either provide the relevant disclosure that would be required for those items in a GAAP presentation or provide information that communicates the substance of that disclosure. That may result in substituting qualitative information for some of the quantitative information required for GAAP presentations. For example, disclosing the repayment terms of significant long-term borrowings may sufficiently communicate information about future principal reduction without providing the summary of principal reduction during each of the next five years that would be required for a GAAP presentation. Similarly, disclosing estimated percentages of revenues, rather than amounts that GAAP presentations would require, may sufficiently convey the significance of sales or leasing to related parties. GAAP disclosure requirements that are not relevant to the measurement of the element, account, or item need not be considered. To illustrate:

- a. The fair value information that FASB Statement No. 115, *Accounting for Certain Investments in Debt and Equity Securities* [AC section I80], would require disclosing for debt and equity securities reported in GAAP presentations would not be relevant when the basis of presentation does not adjust the cost of such securities to their fair value.
- b. The information based on actuarial calculations that FASB Statement No. 87, *Employers’ Accounting for Pensions* [AC section P16], would require disclosing for contributions to defined benefit plans reported in GAAP presentations would not be relevant in income tax or cash basis financial statements.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

.93 If GAAP sets forth requirements that apply to the presentation of financial statements, the OCBOA financial statements should either comply with those requirements or provide information that communicates the substance of those requirements. The substance of GAAP presentation requirements may be communicated using qualitative information and without modifying the financial statement format. For example:

- a. Information about the effects of accounting changes, discontinued operations, and extraordinary items could be disclosed in a note to the financial statements without following the GAAP presentation requirements in the statement of results of operations, using those terms, or disclosing net-of-tax effects.
- b. Instead of showing expenses by their functional classifications, the income tax basis statement of activities of a trade organization could present expenses according to their natural classifications, and a note to the statement could use estimated percentages to communicate information about expenses incurred by the major program and supporting services. A voluntary health and welfare organization could take such an approach instead of presenting the matrix of natural and functional expense classifications that would be required for a GAAP presentation, or, if information has been gathered for the Form 990 matrix required for such organizations, it could be presented either in the form of a separate statement or in a note to the financial statements.
- c. Instead of showing the amounts of, and changes in, the unrestricted and temporarily and permanently restricted classes of net assets, which would be required for a GAAP presentation, the income tax basis statement of financial position of a voluntary health and welfare organization could report total net assets or fund balances, the related statement of activities could report changes in those totals, and a note to the financial statements could provide information, using estimated or actual amounts or percentages, about the restrictions on those amounts and on any deferred restricted amounts, describe the major restrictions, and provide information about significant changes in restricted amounts.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

.94 Presentations using OCBOA often include a presentation consisting entirely or mainly of cash receipts and disbursements. Such presentations need not conform with the requirements for a statement of cash flows that would be included in a GAAP presentation. While a statement of cash flows is not required, if a presentation of cash receipts and disbursements is presented in a format similar to a statement of cash flows or if the entity chooses to present such a statement, for example in a presentation on the accrual basis of accounting used for federal income tax reporting, the statement should either conform to the requirements for a GAAP presentation or communicate their substance. As an example, the statement of cash flows might disclose noncash acquisitions through captions on its face. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

.95 If GAAP would require disclosure of other matters, the auditor should consider the need for that same disclosure or disclosure that communicates the substance of those requirements. Some examples are contingent liabilities, going concern considerations, and significant risks and uncertainties. However, the disclosures need not include information that is not relevant to the basis of accounting. To illustrate, the general information about the use of estimates that is required to be disclosed in GAAP presentations by Statement of Position 94-6, *Disclosure of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties*, would not be relevant in a presentation that has no estimates, such as one based on cash receipts and disbursements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement of Position 01-5, December 2001.]

[Issue Date: January, 1998; Revised: January, 2005.]

15. Auditor Reports on Regulatory Accounting or Presentation When the Regulated Entity Distributes the Financial Statements to Parties Other Than the Regulatory Agency Either Voluntarily or Upon Specific Request

.96 Question—Occasionally, certain state and local governmental entities, as well as other regulated entities, prepare their financial statements in conformity with the requirements or financial reporting provisions of a governmental regulatory agency. If the financial statements and report are intended for use by parties other than those within the entity and one or more regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject or the financial statements and report are distributed by the entity to parties other than the regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject, either voluntarily or upon specific request, what report should the auditor issue?

.97 Interpretation—Section 623.05f, footnote 4, states in part that the auditor is precluded from using the form of report set forth in section 623 “in circumstances in which the entity distributes the financial statements to parties other than the regulatory agency either voluntarily or upon specific request.” Footnote 5 states further that the auditor should follow the guidance in section 544, *Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, if the financial statements and report are intended for use by parties other than those within the entity and one or more regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject. Section 544.04, in turn, states in those circumstances [referring to circumstances in which the financial statements and reports will be used by parties or distributed by the entity to parties other than the regulatory agencies to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject] the auditor should use the standard form of report modified as appropriate because of the departures from generally accepted accounting principles and then in an additional paragraph express an opinion on whether the financial statements are presented in conformity with the regulatory basis of accounting.

The following is an illustration of a report prepared on a regulatory basis of accounting prescribed by a regulatory agency, to whose jurisdiction an entity is subject, that requires a presentation of cash and unencumbered cash, cash receipts and disbursements, and budgetary comparisons and the financial statements are not prepared solely for filing with that agency:

Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying statement of cash and unencumbered cash; cash receipts and disbursements; and disbursements—budget and actual for each fund of City of Example, Any State, as of and for the year ended June 30, 20XX. These financial statements are the responsibility of City's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

As described more fully in Note X, City has prepared these financial statements using accounting practices prescribed or permitted by [*name of regulatory agency*], which practices differ from accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. The effects on the financial statements of the variances between these regulatory accounting practices and accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, although not reasonably determinable, are presumed to be material.

In our opinion, because of the effects of the matter discussed in the preceding paragraph, the financial statements referred to above do not present fairly, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial position of each fund of City as of June 30, 20XX, or changes in financial position or cash flows¹⁵ thereof for the year then ended.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the cash and unencumbered cash balances of each fund of City as of June 30, 20XX, and their respective cash receipts and disbursements, and budgetary results for the year then ended, on the basis of accounting described in Note X.

[*Signature*]

[*Date*]

.98 If the auditor issues a report in accordance with section 623.05f, nothing precludes the auditor, in connection with establishing the terms of the engagement, from reaching an understanding with the client that the intended use of the report will be restricted, and from obtaining the client's agreement that the client and the specified parties will not distribute the report to parties other than those identified in the report.

[Issue Date: January, 2005.]

¹⁵ Reference to cash flows would not be needed if the entity, under generally accepted accounting principles, is not required to present a statement of cash flows.

AU Section 625

Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles

Source: SAS No. 50; SAS No. 97.

See section 9625 for interpretations of this section.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: July, 1986.

Introduction

.01 There may be differing interpretations as to whether and, if so, how existing accounting principles apply to new transactions and financial products.¹ Management and others often consult with accountants on the application of accounting principles to those transactions and products, or to increase their knowledge of specific financial reporting issues.^[2] Such consultations often provide relevant information and insights not otherwise available. [As amended, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

.02 For purposes of this section, reporting accountant refers to an accountant in public practice³ who prepares a written report⁴ or provides oral advice on the application of accounting principles to specified transactions involving facts and circumstances of a specific entity, or the type of opinion that may be rendered on a specific entity's financial statements. Continuing accountant refers to an accountant who has been engaged to report on the financial statements of a specific entity.⁵ [Paragraph added, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

.03 This section provides guidance that a reporting accountant, either in connection with a proposal to obtain a new client or otherwise, should apply when preparing a written report on—

- a. The application of accounting principles to specified transactions, either completed or proposed, involving facts and circumstances of a specific entity ("specific transactions").
- b. The type of opinion that may be rendered on a specific entity's financial statements.

¹ Accounting principles include generally accepted accounting principles and other comprehensive bases of accounting. See section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraph .04 for a description of other comprehensive bases of accounting.

^[2] [Footnote deleted by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97, June 2002.]

³ See ET section 92.25 of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct for a definition of "practice of public accounting."

⁴ Written report, for purposes of this section, includes any written communication that expresses a conclusion on the appropriate accounting principle(s) to be applied or the type of opinion that may be rendered on an entity's financial statements. [Footnote added, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

⁵ An accountant engaged by the entity to perform services other than reporting on the entity's financial statements is not considered to be a continuing accountant. [Footnote added, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

This section also applies to oral advice that the reporting accountant concludes is intended to be used by a principal to the transaction as an important factor considered in reaching a decision on the application of accounting principles to a specific transaction, or the type of opinion that may be rendered on a specific entity's financial statements. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

.04 Because of the nature of a transaction not involving facts or circumstances of a specific entity ("hypothetical transaction"), a reporting accountant cannot know, for example, whether the continuing accountant has reached a different conclusion on the application of accounting principles for the same or a similar transaction, or how the specific entity has accounted for similar transactions in the past. Therefore an accountant should not undertake an engagement to provide a written report on the application of accounting principles to a hypothetical transaction. [Paragraph added, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

.05 This section does not apply to a continuing accountant with respect to the specific entity whose financial statements he or she has been engaged to report on, to engagements either to assist in litigation involving accounting matters or to provide expert testimony in connection with such litigation, or to professional advice provided to another accountant in public practice. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

.06 This section also does not apply to communications such as position papers prepared by an accountant for the purpose of presenting views on an issue involving the application of accounting principles or the type of opinion that may be rendered. Position papers include newsletters, articles, speeches and texts thereof, lectures and other forms of public presentations, and letters for the public record to professional and governmental standard-setting bodies. However, if communications of the type discussed in this paragraph are intended to provide guidance on the application of accounting principles to a specific transaction, or on the type of opinion that may be rendered on a specific entity's financial statements, the provisions of this section should be followed. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

Performance Standards

.07 The reporting accountant should exercise due professional care in performing the engagement and should have adequate technical training and proficiency. The reporting accountant should also plan the engagement adequately, supervise the work of assistants, if any, and accumulate sufficient information to provide a reasonable basis for the professional judgment described in the report. The reporting accountant should consider the circumstances under which the written report or oral advice is requested, the purpose of the request, and the intended use of the written report or oral advice. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

.08 To aid in forming a judgment, the reporting accountant should perform the following procedures: (a) obtain an understanding of the form and

substance of the transaction(s); (b) review applicable generally accepted accounting principles (see section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*); (c) if appropriate, consult with other professionals or experts; and (d) if appropriate, perform research or other procedures to ascertain and consider the existence of creditable precedents or analogies. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97, June 2002.]

.09 When evaluating accounting principles that relate to a specific transaction or determining the type of opinion that may be rendered on a specific entity's financial statements, the reporting accountant should consult with the continuing accountant of the entity to ascertain all the available facts relevant to forming a professional judgment. The continuing accountant may provide information not otherwise available to the reporting accountant regarding, for example, the following: the form and substance of the transaction; how management has applied accounting principles to similar transactions; whether the method of accounting recommended by the continuing accountant is disputed by management; or whether the continuing accountant has reached a different conclusion on the application of accounting principles or the type of opinion that may be rendered on the entity's financial statements. The reporting accountant should explain to the entity's management the need to consult with the continuing accountant, request permission to do so, and request the entity's management to authorize the continuing accountant to respond fully to the reporting accountant's inquiries. The responsibilities of an entity's continuing accountant to respond to inquiries by the reporting accountant are the same as the responsibilities of a predecessor auditor to respond to inquiries by a successor auditor. See section 315, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*, paragraph .10. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

Reporting Standards

.10 The accountant's written report should be addressed to the requesting entity (for example, management or the board of directors of the entity), and should ordinarily include the following:⁶

- a. A brief description of the nature of the engagement and a statement that the engagement was performed in accordance with applicable AICPA standards.
- b. Identification of the specific entity, a description of the transaction(s), a statement of the relevant facts, circumstances, and assumptions, and a statement about the source of the information.
- c. A statement describing the appropriate accounting principle(s) (including the country of origin) to be applied or type of opinion that may be rendered on the entity's financial statements, and, if appropriate, a description of the reasons for the reporting accountant's conclusion.
- d. A statement that the responsibility for the proper accounting treatment rests with the preparers of the financial statements, who should consult with their continuing accountant.

⁶ Although the reporting standards in this section apply only to written reports, accountants may find this guidance useful in providing oral advice. [Footnote renumbered and amended, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

- e. A statement that any difference in the facts, circumstances, or assumptions presented may change the report.
- f. A separate paragraph at the end of the report that includes the following elements:⁷
 - A statement indicating that the report is intended solely for the information and use of the specified parties;
 - An identification of the specified parties to whom use is restricted; and
 - A statement that the report is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than the specified parties.

[Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

.11 The following is an illustration of sections of the report described in paragraph .10.

Introduction

We have been engaged to report on the appropriate application of accounting principles generally accepted in [*country of origin of such principles*] to the specific transaction described below. This report is being issued to ABC Company for assistance in evaluating accounting principles for the described specific transaction. Our engagement has been conducted in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.

Description of Transaction

The facts, circumstances, and assumptions relevant to the specific transaction as provided to us by the management of ABC Company are as follows:

Appropriate Accounting Principles

[*Text discussing generally accepted accounting principles*]

Concluding Comments

The ultimate responsibility for the decision on the appropriate application of accounting principles generally accepted in [*country of origin of such principles*] for an actual transaction rests with the preparers of financial statements, who should consult with their continuing accountant. Our judgment on the appropriate application of accounting principles generally accepted in [*country of origin of such principles*] for the described specific transaction is based solely on the facts provided to us as described above; should these facts and circumstances differ, our conclusion may change.

Restricted Use

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the board of directors and management of ABC Company and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

⁷ See section 532, *Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report*. Although restricted, this is not intended to preclude distribution of the report to the continuing accountant. [Footnote added, effective for written reports issued or oral advice provided on or after June 30, 2002, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.]

AU Section 9625**Reports on the Application of
Accounting Principles: Auditing
Interpretations of Section 625****1. Requirement to Consult With the Continuing Accountant**

.01 Question—Section 625, *Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles*, provides guidance to a reporting accountant when asked to provide a written report or oral advice on (a) the application of accounting principles to specified transactions, either completed or proposed, involving facts and circumstances of a specific entity or (b) the type of opinion that may be rendered on a specific entity's financial statements.

.02 Section 625.02 refers to a reporting accountant as an accountant in public practice. Footnote 3 to that paragraph states: "See ET section 92.25 of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct for a definition of 'practice of public accounting.'"

.03 Section 625.09 states in part:

When evaluating accounting principles that relate to a specific transaction or determining the type of opinion that may be rendered on a specific entity's financial statements, the reporting accountant should consult with the continuing accountant of the entity to ascertain all the available facts relevant to forming a professional judgment. The continuing accountant may provide information not otherwise available to the reporting accountant regarding, for example, the following: the form and substance of the transaction; how management has applied accounting principles to similar transactions; whether the method of accounting recommended by the continuing accountant is disputed by management; or whether the continuing accountant has reached a different conclusion on the application of accounting principles or the type of opinion that may be rendered on the entity's financial statements.

.04 In today's environment, primarily driven by independence concerns, a nonissuer may engage an accountant in public practice (or his or her firm), other than the entity's independent auditor, as an advisory accountant¹ to assist management in certain recurring accounting or reporting functions (for example, bookkeeping or assistance in preparing financial statements or notes, performing fair value impairment tests, or assistance in preparing regulatory filings). In this capacity, an advisory accountant may be frequently asked to provide advice on the application of accounting principles or to assist management to formulate its accounting positions prior to discussing such positions with its auditor. In these situations, an advisory accountant is not engaged to provide a second opinion and would generally be in a position to have full access to management and have full knowledge of the form and substance of the transaction, how management has applied similar transactions in the past, and whether this method of accounting has been discussed with the continuing auditor.

¹ The term *advisory accountant* is used in this interpretation rather than the term "reporting accountant" to distinguish the fact that an accountant in this capacity is not engaged to provide a second opinion and is typically engaged to provide accounting and reporting advice on a recurring basis.

.05 When an accountant in public practice, acting in the capacity of an advisory accountant, has been engaged by a nonissuer to assist management with recurring accounting matters and is asked to provide advice (not a second opinion) on the application of accounting principles to specified transactions, either completed or proposed, based on the specific facts and circumstances of the client, and the advisory accountant has full access to management and full knowledge of the form and substance of the transaction, is he or she still required to consult with the continuing accountant?

.06 Answer—Section 625 was issued to provide guidance to a reporting accountant when engaged to provide a “second opinion” on the application of accounting principles to a specific transaction or transactions. In those cases, the reporting accountant may not have been provided all the relevant facts by management or he or she may not have full knowledge of the form and substance of the transaction in order to form a “second opinion.” To help eliminate this issue, section 625 states that the reporting accountant should consult with the continuing accountant so the continuing accountant has an opportunity to convey relevant facts and circumstances that the reporting accountant may not have.

.07 An advisory accountant may be able to overcome the presumptive requirement² of section 625.09 to consult with the continuing accountant when he or she believes, due to the facts and circumstances of the engagement, that he or she is not being asked to provide a second opinion and that he or she has obtained all relevant information from management to provide written or oral guidance regarding the application of accounting principles to that client’s specified transactions.

.08 An important distinction to consider in overcoming the presumptive requirement to consult with the continuing accountant is the nature of the engagement and whether the services are recurring as contrasted to periodic. A recurring engagement may constitute the effective outsourcing of certain controllership or other financial reporting functions that would typically not be indicative of opinion shopping and would typically allow the advisory accountant to have complete access to management. A member in public practice engaged in the capacity of an advisory accountant nonetheless should be alert to any instances in which the nonissuer attempts to use the advisory accountant to “opinion shop.” The advisory accountant should establish an understanding with the client that includes the substance of section 625.10(d)³ and that the client, along with the advisory accountant will notify the continuing accountant and members of any governance body (such as audit committee) of the arrangement.

.09 The advisory accountant should document his or her conclusion that consultation with the continuing accountant was not considered necessary under the circumstances. Additionally, the advisory accountant should comply with the other requirements of section 625, including section 625.08, which requires the accountant to (a) obtain an understanding of the form and substance of the transaction(s); (b) review applicable generally accepted accounting

² The ability to overcome this presumption would apply only to the application of accounting principles. If the advisory accountant was asked to provide oral advice or a written report on the type of opinion that may be rendered by the continuing accountant, the advisory accountant would not have the ability to obtain all relevant information and, therefore, the requirements of section 625.09 to consult with the continuing accountant would apply.

³ The advisory accountant’s understanding would include a statement that the responsibility for the proper accounting treatment rests with management, who should consult with their continuing accountant.

principles; (c) if appropriate, consult with other professionals or experts; and (d) if appropriate, perform research or other procedures to ascertain and consider the existence of creditable precedents or analogies.

[Issue Date: January, 2005.]

AU Section 634

Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties

(Supersedes SAS No. 49)

Source: SAS No. 72; SAS No. 76; SAS No. 86.

See section 9634 for interpretations of this section.

Effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1993, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction

.01 This section^[1] provides guidance to accountants for performing and reporting on the results of engagements to issue letters for underwriters and certain other requesting parties described in and meeting the requirements of paragraph .03, .04, or .05 (commonly referred to as “comfort letters”) in connection with financial statements and financial statement schedules contained in registration statements filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) under the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act) and other securities offerings. In paragraph .09, this section also provides guidance to accountants for performing and reporting on the results of engagements to issue letters for certain requesting parties, other than underwriters or other parties with a due diligence defense under section 11 of the Act, that are described in, but do not meet the requirements of, paragraph .03, .04, or .05. [As amended, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76.]

.02 The service of accountants providing letters for underwriters developed following enactment of the Act. Section 11 of the Act provides that underwriters, among others, could be liable if any part of a registration statement contains material omissions or misstatements. The Act also provides for an affirmative defense for underwriters if it can be demonstrated that, after a reasonable investigation, the underwriter has reasonable grounds to believe that there were no material omissions or misstatements. Consequently, underwriters request accountants to assist them in developing a record of reasonable investigation. An accountant issuing a comfort letter is one of a number of procedures that may be used to establish that an underwriter has conducted a reasonable investigation.

Applicability

.03 Accountants may provide a comfort letter to underwriters,² or to other parties with a statutory due diligence defense under section 11 of the Act, in connection with financial statements and financial statement schedules

^[1] [Footnote deleted by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

² The term *underwriter* is defined in section 2 of the Act as “any person who has purchased from an issuer with a view to, or offers or sells for an issuer in connection with, the distribution of any security, or participates or has a participation in the direct or indirect participation in any such un-
(footnote continued)

included (incorporated by reference) in registration statements filed with the SEC under the Act. A comfort letter may be addressed to parties with a statutory due diligence defense under section 11 of the Act, other than a named underwriter, only when a law firm or attorney for the requesting party issues a written opinion to the accountants that states that such party has a due diligence defense under section 11 of the Act.³ An attorney's letter indicating that a party "may" be deemed to be an underwriter or has liability substantially equivalent to that of an underwriter under the securities laws would not meet this requirement. If the requesting party, in a securities offering registered pursuant to the Act, other than a named underwriter (such as a selling shareholder or sales agent) cannot provide such a letter, he or she must provide the representation letter described in paragraphs .06 and .07 for the accountants to provide them with a comfort letter.

.04 Accountants may also issue a comfort letter to a broker-dealer or other financial intermediary, acting as principal or agent in an offering or a placement of securities, in connection with the following types of securities offerings:

- Foreign offerings, including Regulation S, Eurodollar, and other off-shore offerings
- Transactions that are exempt from the registration requirements of section 5 of the Act, including those pursuant to Regulation A, Regulation D, and Rule 144A
- Offerings of securities issued or backed by governmental, municipal, banking, tax-exempt, or other entities that are exempt from registration under the Act

In these situations the accountants may provide a comfort letter to a broker-dealer or other financial intermediary in connection with a securities offering only if the broker-dealer or other financial intermediary provides in writing the representations described in paragraphs .06 and .07.

.05 Accountants may also issue a comfort letter in connection with acquisition transactions (for example, cross-comfort letters in a typical Form S-4 or merger proxy situation) in which there is an exchange of stock and such comfort letters are requested by the buyer or seller, or both, as long as the representation letter described in paragraphs .06 and .07 is provided. An accountants' report on a preliminary investigation in connection with a proposed transaction (for example, a merger, an acquisition, or a financing) is not covered by this section; accountants should refer to the guidance in AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*. [Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

.06 The required elements of the representation letter from a broker-dealer or other financial intermediary, or of other requesting parties described in paragraphs .03 and .05, are as follows:

dertaking or participates or has a participation in the direct or indirect underwriting of any such undertaking; but such term shall not include a person whose interest is limited to a commission from an underwriter or dealer not in excess of the usual and customary distributors' or sellers' commission. As used in this paragraph, the term *issuer* shall include, in addition to an issuer, any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by the issuer, of any person under direct or indirect common control with the issuer."

³ This section is not intended to preclude accountants from providing to the client's board of directors, when appropriate, a letter addressed to the board of directors similar in content to a comfort letter. See the auditing interpretation "Letters to Directors Relating to Annual Reports on Form 10-K" (section 9634.01-.09).

- The letter should be addressed to the accountants.
- The letter should contain the following:

“This review process, applied to the information relating to the issuer, is (will be) substantially consistent⁴ with the due diligence review process that we would perform if this placement of securities (or issuance of securities in an acquisition transaction) were being registered pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act). We are knowledgeable with respect to the due diligence review process that would be performed if this placement of securities were being registered pursuant to the Act.”⁵

- The letter should be signed by the requesting party.

.07 An example of a letter, setting forth the required elements specified in paragraph .06, from a party requesting a comfort letter follows:

[Date]

Dear ABC Accountants:

[Name of financial intermediary], as principal or agent, in the placement of [identify securities] to be issued by [name of issuer], will be reviewing certain information relating to [issuer] that will be included (incorporated by reference) in the document [if appropriate, the document should be identified], which may be delivered to investors and utilized by them as a basis for their investment decision. This review process, applied to the information relating to the issuer, is (will be) substantially consistent with the due diligence review process that we would perform if this placement of securities⁶ were being registered pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act). We are knowledgeable with respect to the due diligence review process that would be performed if this placement of securities were being registered pursuant to the Act. We hereby request that you deliver to us a “comfort” letter concerning the financial statements of the issuer and certain statistical and other data included in the offering document. We will contact you to identify the procedures we wish you to follow and the form we wish the comfort letter to take.

Very truly yours,

[Name of Financial Intermediary]

.08 When one of the parties identified in paragraphs .03, .04, and .05 requests a comfort letter and has provided the accountants with the representation letter described above, the accountants should refer in the comfort letter to the requesting party's representations (see example P [paragraph .64]).

⁴ It is recognized that what is “substantially consistent” may vary from situation to situation and may not be the same as that done in a registered offering of the same securities for the same issuer; whether the procedures being, or to be, followed will be “substantially consistent” will be determined by the requesting party on a case-by-case basis.

⁵ If a nonunderwriter requests a comfort letter in connection with a securities offering pursuant to the Act, the wording of the representation letter should be revised as follows:

“This review process . . . is substantially consistent with the due diligence review process that an underwriter would perform in connection with this placement of securities. We are knowledgeable with respect to the due diligence review process that an underwriter would perform in connection with a placement of securities registered pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933.”

⁶ In an acquisition of securities, this sentence could be reworded to refer to “issuance of securities.” See paragraph .05.

.09 When one of the parties identified in paragraphs .03, .04, or .05, other than an underwriter or other party with a due diligence defense under section 11 of the Act, requests a comfort letter but does not provide the representation letter described in paragraphs .06 and .07, accountants should not provide a comfort letter but may provide another form of letter. In such a letter, the accountants should not provide negative assurance on the financial statements as a whole, or on any of the specified elements, accounts, or items thereof. The other guidance in this section is applicable to performing procedures in connection with a letter and on the form of the letter (see paragraphs .36 through .43 and .54 through .60). Example Q in the Appendix [paragraph .64] provides an example of a letter issued in such a situation. Any such letter should include the following statements:

- a. It should be understood that we have no responsibility for establishing (and did not establish) the scope and nature of the procedures enumerated in the paragraphs above; rather, the procedures enumerated therein are those the requesting party asked us to perform. Accordingly, we make no representations regarding questions of legal interpretation⁷ or regarding the sufficiency for your purposes of the procedures enumerated in the preceding paragraphs; also, such procedures would not necessarily reveal any material misstatement of the amounts or percentages listed above as set forth in the offering circular. Further, we have addressed ourselves solely to the foregoing data and make no representations regarding the adequacy of disclosures or whether any material facts have been omitted. This letter relates only to the financial statement items specified above and does not extend to any financial statement of the company taken as a whole.
- b. The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Had we performed additional procedures or had we conducted an audit or a review of the company's [*give dates of any interim financial statements*] consolidated financial statements in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.
- c. These procedures should not be taken to supplant any additional inquiries or procedures that you would undertake in your consideration of the proposed offering.
- d. This letter is solely for your information and to assist you in your inquiries in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the offering circular, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to for any other purpose, including but not limited to the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to in whole or in part in the offering document or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the offering document.

⁷ If this letter is requested in connection with a secured debt offering, the accountants should also refer to the attest interpretation "Responding to Requests for Reports on Matters Relating to Solvency" (AT section 9101.23-.33) for inclusion of additional statements. [Footnote added, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76. Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

- e. We have no responsibility to update this letter for events and circumstances occurring after [cutoff date].

[As amended, effective for letters issued pursuant to this paragraph after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76.]

.10 When a party other than those described in paragraphs .03, .04, or .05 requests a comfort letter, the accountants should not provide that party with a comfort letter or the letter described in paragraph .09 or example Q [paragraph .64]. The accountants may instead provide that party with a report on agreed-upon procedures and should refer to AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*, for guidance. [Paragraph added, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76. Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

General

.11 The services of independent accountants include audits of financial statements and financial statement schedules included (incorporated by reference) in registration statements filed with the SEC under the Act. In connection with this type of service, accountants are often called upon to confer with clients, underwriters, and their respective counsel concerning the accounting and auditing requirements of the Act and the SEC and to perform other services. One of these other services is the issuance of letters for underwriters, which generally address the subjects described in paragraph .22. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.12 Much of the uncertainty, and consequent risk of misunderstanding, with regard to the nature and scope of comfort letters has arisen from a lack of recognition of the necessarily limited nature of the comments that accountants can properly make with respect to financial information, in a registration statement or other offering document (hereafter referred to as a registration statement), that has not been audited in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and, accordingly, is not covered by their opinion. In requesting comfort letters, underwriters are generally seeking assistance on matters of importance to them. They wish to perform a "reasonable investigation" of financial and accounting data not "expertized"⁸ (that is, covered by a report of independent accountants, who consent to be named as experts, based on an audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards) as a defense against possible claims under section 11 of the Act.⁹ What constitutes a reasonable investigation of unaudited financial information sufficient to satisfy an underwriter's purposes has never been authoritatively established. Consequently, only the underwriter can determine what is sufficient for his or her purposes. Accountants will normally be willing to assist the

⁸ See the auditing interpretation "Consenting to Be Named as an Expert in an Offering Document in Connection With Securities Offerings Other Than Those Registered Under the Securities Act of 1933" (section 9711.12-.15). [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

⁹ See section 711, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*, for a discussion of certain responsibilities of accountants that result from the inclusion of their reports in registration statements. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

underwriter, but the assistance accountants can provide by way of comfort letters is subject to limitations. One limitation is that independent accountants can properly comment in their professional capacity only on matters to which their professional expertise is substantially relevant. Another limitation is that procedures short of an audit, such as those contemplated in a comfort letter, provide the accountants with a basis for expressing, at the most, negative assurance.¹⁰ Such limited procedures may bring to the accountants' attention significant matters affecting the financial information, but they do not provide assurance that the accountants will become aware of any or all significant matters that would be disclosed in an audit. Accordingly, there is necessarily a risk that the accountants may have provided negative assurance of the absence of conditions or matters that may prove to have existed. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.13 This section deals with several different kinds of matters. First, it addresses whether, in a number of areas involving professional standards, it is proper for independent accountants, acting in their professional capacity, to comment in a comfort letter on specified matters, and, if so, the form such a comment should take. Second, practical suggestions are offered on which form of comfort letter is suitable in a given circumstance, procedural matters, the dating of letters, and what steps may be taken when information that may require special mention in a letter comes to the accountants' attention.¹¹ Third, it suggests ways of reducing or avoiding the uncertainties, described in the preceding paragraph, regarding the nature and extent of accountants' responsibilities in connection with a comfort letter. Accountants who have been requested to follow a course other than what has been recommended, with regard to points not involving professional standards, would do well to consult their legal counsel. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.14 Comfort letters are not required under the Act, and copies are not filed with the SEC. It is nonetheless a common condition of an underwriting agreement in connection with the offering for sale of securities registered with the SEC under the Act that the accountants are to furnish a comfort letter. Some underwriters do not make the receipt of a comfort letter a condition of the underwriting agreement or purchase agreement (hereafter referred to as the underwriting agreement) but nevertheless ask for such a letter.¹² [Paragraph

¹⁰ Negative assurance consists of a statement by accountants that, as a result of performing specified procedures, nothing came to their attention that caused them to believe that specified matters do not meet a specified standard (for example, that nothing came to their attention that caused them to believe that any material modifications should be made to the unaudited financial statements or unaudited condensed financial statements for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles). [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

¹¹ It is important to note that although the illustrations in this section describe procedures that may be followed by accountants as a basis for their comments in comfort letters, this section does not necessarily prescribe such procedures. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

¹² Except when the context otherwise requires, the word underwriter (or certain other requesting parties, as described in paragraphs .03, .04, and .05), as used in this section refers to the managing, or lead, underwriter, who typically negotiates the underwriting agreement for a group of underwriters whose exact composition is not determined until shortly before a registration statement becomes effective. In competitive bidding situations in which legal counsel for the underwriters acts as the underwriters' representative prior to opening and acceptance of the bid, the accountants should carry out the discussions and other communications contemplated by this section with the legal counsel until the underwriter is selected. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.15 The accountants should suggest to the underwriter that they meet together with the client to discuss the procedures to be followed in connection with a comfort letter; during this meeting, the accountants may describe procedures that are frequently followed (see the examples in the appendix [paragraph .64]). Because of the accountants' knowledge of the client, such a meeting may substantially assist the underwriter in reaching a decision about procedures to be followed by the accountants. However, any discussion of procedures should be accompanied by a clear statement that the accountants cannot furnish any assurance regarding the sufficiency of the procedures for the underwriter's purposes, and the appropriate way of expressing this is shown in paragraph 4 of example A [paragraph .64]. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.16 Because the underwriter will expect the accountants to furnish a comfort letter of a scope to be specified in the underwriting agreement, a draft of that agreement should be furnished to the accountants so that they can indicate whether they will be able to furnish a letter in acceptable form. It is desirable practice for the accountants, promptly after they have received the draft of the agreement (or have been informed that a letter covering specified matters, although not a condition of the agreement, will nonetheless be requested), to prepare a draft of the form of the letter they expect to furnish. To the extent possible, the draft should deal with all matters to be covered in the final letter and should use exactly the same terms as those to be used in the final letter (subject, of course, to the understanding that the comments in the final letter cannot be determined until the procedures underlying it have been performed). The draft letter should be identified as a draft to avoid giving the impression that the procedures described therein have been performed. This practice of furnishing a draft letter at an early point permits the accountants to make clear to the client and the underwriter what they may expect the accountants to furnish. Thus furnished with a draft letter, the underwriter is afforded the opportunity to discuss further with the accountants the procedures that the accountants have indicated they expect to follow and to request any additional procedures that the underwriter may desire. If the additional procedures pertain to matters relevant to the accountants' professional competence, the accountants would ordinarily be willing to perform them, and it is desirable for them to furnish the underwriter with an appropriately revised draft letter. The accountants may reasonably assume that the underwriter, by indicating his or her acceptance of the draft comfort letter, and subsequently, by accepting the letter in final form, considers the procedures described sufficient for his or her purposes. It is important, therefore, that the procedures¹³ to be followed by the accountants be clearly set out in the comfort letter, in both draft and final form, so that there will be no misunderstanding about the basis on which the accountants' comments have been made and so that the underwriter can decide whether the procedures performed are sufficient for his or her purposes. For reasons explained in paragraph .12, statements or implications that the accountants are carrying out such procedures as they consider necessary should be avoided, since this may lead to misunderstanding about

¹³ When the accountants have been requested to provide negative assurance on interim financial information or capsule financial information and the procedures required for an SAS No. 71 [section 722] review have been performed, those procedures need not be specified. See paragraphs .37 through .41. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

the responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures for the underwriter's purposes. The following is a suggested form of legend that may be placed on the draft letter for identification and explanation of its purposes and limitations.

This draft is furnished solely for the purpose of indicating the form of letter that we would expect to be able to furnish [*name of underwriter*] in response to their request, the matters expected to be covered in the letter, and the nature of the procedures that we would expect to carry out with respect to such matters. Based on our discussions with [*name of underwriter*], it is our understanding that the procedures outlined in this draft letter are those they wish us to follow.¹⁴ Unless [*name of underwriter*] informs us otherwise, we shall assume that there are no additional procedures they wish us to follow. The text of the letter itself will depend, of course, on the results of the procedures, which we would not expect to complete until shortly before the letter is given and in no event before the cutoff date indicated therein.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.17 Comfort letters are occasionally requested from more than one accountant (for example, in connection with registration statements to be used in the subsequent sale of shares issued in recently effected mergers and from predecessor auditors). At the earliest practicable date, the client should advise any other accountants who may be involved about any letter that may be required from them and should arrange for them to receive a draft of the underwriting agreement so that they may make arrangements at an early date for the preparation of a draft of their letter (a copy of which should be furnished to the principal accountants) and for the performance of their procedures. In addition, the underwriter may wish to meet with the other accountants for the purposes discussed in paragraph .15. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.18 There may be situations in which more than one accountant is involved in the audit of the financial statements of a business and in which the reports of more than one accountant appear in the registration statement. For example, certain significant divisions, branches, or subsidiaries may be audited by other accountants. The principal accountants (that is, those who report on the consolidated financial statements and, consequently, are asked to give a comfort letter with regard to information expressed on a consolidated basis) should read the letters of the other accountants reporting on significant units. Such letters should contain statements similar to those contained in the comfort letter prepared by the principal accountants, including statements about their independence. The principal accountants should state in their comfort letters that (a) reading letters of the other accountants was one of the procedures followed, and (b) the procedures performed by the principal accountants (other than reading the letters of the other accountants) relate solely to companies audited by the principal accountants and to the consolidated financial statements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.19 Regulations under the Act permit companies, in certain circumstances, to register a designated amount of securities for continuous or delayed

¹⁴ In the absence of any discussions with the underwriter, the accountants should outline in the draft letter those procedures specified in the underwriting agreement that they are willing to perform. In that event, the sentence to which this footnote refers should be revised as follows: "In the absence of any discussions with [*name of underwriter*], we have set out in this draft letter those procedures referred to in the draft underwriting agreement (of which we have been furnished a copy) that we are willing to follow." [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

offerings during an extended period by filing one “shelf” registration statement. At the effective date of a shelf registration statement, the registrant may not have selected an underwriter (see footnote 12). A client or the legal counsel designated to represent the underwriting group might, however, ask the accountants to issue a comfort letter at the effective date of a shelf registration statement to expedite the due diligence activities of the underwriter when he or she is subsequently designated and to avoid later corrections of financial information included in an effective prospectus. However, as stated in paragraph .12, only the underwriter can determine the procedures that will be sufficient for his or her purposes. Under these circumstances, therefore, the accountants should not agree to furnish a comfort letter addressed to the client, legal counsel or a nonspecific addressee such as “any or all underwriters to be selected.” The accountants may agree to furnish the client or legal counsel for the underwriting group with a draft comfort letter describing the procedures that the accountants have performed and the comments the accountants are willing to express as a result of those procedures. The draft comfort letter should include a legend, such as the following, describing the letter’s purpose and limitations:

This draft describes the procedures that we have performed and represents a letter we would be prepared to sign as of the effective date of the registration statement if the managing underwriter had been chosen at that date and requested such a letter. Based on our discussions with [*name of client or legal counsel*], the procedures set forth are similar to those that experience indicates underwriters often request in such circumstances. The text of the final letter will depend, of course, on whether the managing underwriter who is selected requests that other procedures be performed to meet his or her needs and whether the managing underwriter requests that any of the procedures be updated to the date of issuance of the signed letter.

A signed comfort letter may be issued to the underwriter selected for the portion of the issue then being offered when the underwriting agreement for an offering is signed and on each closing date. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.20 Accountants, when issuing a letter under the guidance provided in this section, may not issue any additional letters or reports, under any other section, to the underwriter or the other requesting parties identified in paragraphs .03, .04, and .05 (hereinafter referred to as the underwriter) in connection with the offering or placement of securities, in which the accountants comment on items for which commenting is otherwise precluded by this section. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. As amended, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

.21 While the guidance in this section generally addresses comfort letters issued in connection with securities offerings registered pursuant to the Act, it also provides guidance on comfort letters issued in other securities transactions. However, the guidance that specifically refers to compliance of the information commented on with SEC rules and regulations, such as compliance with Regulation S-X¹⁵ or S-K,¹⁶ generally applies only to comfort letters

¹⁵ Regulation S-X, “Form and Content of and Requirements for Financial Statements, Securities Act of 1933, Securities Exchange Act of 1934, Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935, Investment Company Act of 1940, and Energy Policy and Conservation Act of 1975.” [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

¹⁶ Regulation S-K, “Standard Instructions for Filing Forms Under Securities Act of 1933, Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and Energy Policy and Conservation Act of 1975.” [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

issued in connection with securities offerings registered pursuant to the Act. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Guidance on the Format and Contents of Comfort Letters

.22 This section (paragraphs .22 through .62) provides guidance on the format and possible contents of a typical comfort letter. It addresses how the comfort letter should be dated, to whom it may be addressed, and the contents of the introductory paragraph of the comfort letter. Further, it addresses the subjects that may be covered in a comfort letter:

- a. The independence of the accountants (paragraphs .31 and .32)
- b. Whether the audited financial statements and financial statement schedules included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC (paragraphs .33 and .34)
- c. Unaudited financial statements, condensed interim financial information, capsule financial information, pro forma financial information, financial forecasts, management's discussion and analysis (MD&A), and changes in selected financial statement items during a period subsequent to the date and period of the latest financial statements included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement (paragraphs .29 and .35 through .53)
- d. Tables, statistics, and other financial information included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement (paragraphs .54 through .62)
- e. Negative assurance as to whether certain non-financial statement information, included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement complies as to form in all material respects with Regulation S-K (paragraph .57)

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. As amended, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

Dating

.23 The letter ordinarily is dated on or shortly before the effective date (that is, the date on which the registration statement becomes effective). On rare occasions, letters have been requested to be dated at or shortly before the filing date (that is, the date on which the registration statement is first filed with the SEC). The underwriting agreement ordinarily specifies the date, often referred to as the "cutoff date," to which certain procedures described in the letter are to relate (for example, a date five days before the date of the letter). The letter should state that the inquiries and other procedures described in the letter did not cover the period from the cutoff date to the date of the letter. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.24 An additional letter may also be dated at or shortly before the closing date (that is, the date on which the issuer or selling security holder delivers the securities to the underwriter in exchange for the proceeds of the offering). If more than one letter is requested, it will be necessary to carry out the specified procedures and inquiries as of the cutoff date for each letter. Although comments

contained in an earlier letter may, on occasion, be incorporated by reference in a subsequent letter (see example C [paragraph .64]), any subsequent letter should relate only to information in the registration statement as most recently amended. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Addressee

.25 The letter should not be addressed or given to any parties other than the client and the named underwriters,¹⁷ broker-dealer, financial intermediary or buyer or seller. The appropriate addressee is the intermediary who has negotiated the agreement with the client, and with whom the accountants will deal in discussions regarding the scope and sufficiency of the letter. When a comfort letter is furnished to other accountants, it should be addressed in accordance with the guidance in this paragraph and copies should be furnished to the principal accountants and their client. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Introductory Paragraph

.26 It is desirable to include an introductory paragraph similar to the following:

We have audited the [*identify the financial statements and financial statement schedules*] included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement (no. 33-00000) on Form _____ filed by the company under the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act); our reports with respect thereto are also included (incorporated by reference) in that registration statement. The registration statement, as amended as of _____, is herein referred to as the registration statement.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.27 When the report on the audited financial statements and financial statement schedules included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement departs from the standard report, for instance, where one or more explanatory paragraphs or a paragraph to emphasize a matter regarding the financial statements have been added to the report, the accountants should refer¹⁸ to that fact in the comfort letter and discuss the subject matter of the paragraph.¹⁹ In those rare instances in which the SEC accepts a qualified opinion on historical financial statements, the accountants should refer to the qualification in the opening paragraph of the comfort letter and discuss the subject matter of the qualification. (See also paragraph .35f.) [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

¹⁷ An example of an appropriate form of address for this purpose is "The Blank Company and XYZ & Company, as Representative of the Several Underwriters." [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

¹⁸ The accountants may also refer in the opening paragraph to expansions of their report that do not affect their opinion on the basic financial statements, for example, expansions of their report regarding (a) interim financial information accompanying or included in the notes to audited financial statements (see section 722.50) or (b) required supplementary information described in section 558, *Required Supplementary Information*, paragraphs .08 through .11. See paragraph .30 of this section. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Footnote revised, September 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98. Footnote revised, November 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 100.]

¹⁹ The accountants need not refer to or discuss explanatory paragraphs covering consistency of application of accounting principles. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.28 The underwriter occasionally requests the accountants to repeat in the comfort letter their report on the audited financial statements included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement. Because of the special significance of the date of the accountants' report, the accountants should not repeat their opinion.²⁰ The underwriter sometimes requests negative assurance regarding the accountants' report. Because accountants have a statutory responsibility with respect to their opinion as of the effective date of a registration statement, and because the additional significance, if any, of negative assurance is unclear and such assurance may therefore give rise to misunderstanding, accountants should not give such negative assurance. Furthermore, the accountants should not give negative assurance with respect to financial statements and financial statement schedules that have been audited and are reported on in the registration statement by other accountants. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.29 The accountants may refer in the introductory paragraphs of the comfort letter to the fact that they have issued reports on—²¹

- a. Condensed financial statements that are derived from audited financial statements (see section 552, *Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data*).
- b. Selected financial data (see section 552).
- c. Interim financial information (see section 722).
- d. Pro forma financial information (see AT section 401, *Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information*).
- e. A financial forecast (see AT section 301, *Financial Forecasts and Projections*).
- f. Management's discussion and analysis (see AT section 701, *Management's Discussion and Analysis*).

Such a reference should be to the accountants' reports that were previously issued, and if the reports are not included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement, they may be attached to the comfort letter.²² In referring to previously issued reports, the accountants should not repeat their reports in the comfort letter or otherwise imply that they are reporting as of the date of the comfort letter or that they assume responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures for the underwriter's purposes. However, for certain information on which they have reported, the accountants may agree to comment regarding compliance with rules and regulations adopted by the SEC (see paragraphs .33 and .34). Accountants should not mention in a comfort letter reports issued in accordance with section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*, or any restricted use reports issued to a client in connection with procedures performed on the client's internal

²⁰ See section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraphs .03 through .08. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

²¹ Except for a review report on management's discussion and analysis (MD&A), the accountants should not refer to or attach to the comfort letter any restricted use report, such as a report on agreed-upon procedures. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. As amended, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

²² When the accountant does not perform a review or an examination of MD&A or does not attach or refer to a report on MD&A, the accountant may perform agreed-upon procedures with respect to items in MD&A, the accountant may perform agreed-upon procedures with respect to items in MD&A subject to controls over financial reporting (see paragraph .55). [Footnote added, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

control in accordance with AT section 501, *Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. As amended, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86. Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

.30 An underwriter may also request that the accountants comment in their comfort letter on (a) unaudited interim financial information required by item 302(a) of Regulation S-K, to which section 722 pertains or (b) required supplementary information, to which section 558, *Required Supplementary Information*, pertains. Section 722 and section 558 provide that the accountants should expand the standard report on the audited financial statements to refer to such information when the scope of their procedures with regard to the information was restricted or when the information appears not to be presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or, for required supplementary information, applicable guidelines. Such expansions of the accountants' standard report in the registration statement would ordinarily be referred to in the opening paragraph of the comfort letter (see also paragraph .35f). Additional comments on such unaudited information are therefore unnecessary. However, if the underwriter requests that the accountants perform procedures with regard to such information in addition to those performed in connection with their review or audit as prescribed by sections 722 and 558, the accountants may do so and report their findings. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Independence

.31 It is customary in conjunction with SEC filings for the underwriting agreement to provide for the accountants to make a statement in the letter concerning their independence. This may be done substantially as follows:

We are independent certified public accountants with respect to The Blank Company, Inc., within the meaning of the Act and the applicable rules and regulations thereunder adopted by the SEC.

Regulation S-K requires disclosure in the prospectus and registration statement of interests of named experts (including independent accountants) in the registrant. Regulation S-X precludes accountants who report on financial statements included (incorporated by reference) in a registration statement from having interests of the type requiring disclosure in the prospectus or registration statement. Therefore, if the accountants make a statement in a comfort letter that they are independent within the meaning of the Act and the applicable rules and regulations thereunder adopted by the SEC, any additional comments on independence would be unnecessary.^{22a} In a non-SEC filing, the accountants may refer to the AICPA's *Code of Professional Conduct* [ET section 101]. This may be done substantially as follows:

We are independent certified public accountants with respect to The Blank Company, Inc., under rule 101 of the AICPA's *Code of Professional Conduct* and its interpretations and rulings.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

^{22a} The SEC, in Financial Reporting Release No. 50 dated February 18, 1998, recognized the establishment of the Independence Standards Board (ISB) and indicated that the SEC intends to look to the ISB as the private sector body responsible for establishing independence standards and interpretations for auditors of public entities. [Footnote added, June 1999, to acknowledge the SEC's recognition of the ISB.]

.32 When comfort letters are requested from more than one accountant (see paragraphs .17 and .18), each accountant must, of course, be sure he or she is independent within the meaning of the Act and the applicable rules and regulations thereunder adopted by the SEC. The accountants for previously nonaffiliated companies recently acquired by the registrant would not be required to have been independent with respect to the company whose shares are being registered. In such a case, the accountants should modify the wording suggested in paragraph .31 and make a statement regarding their independence along the following lines.

As of *[insert date of the accountants' most recent report on the financial statements of their client]* and during the period covered by the financial statements on which we reported, we were independent certified public accountants with respect to *[insert the name of their client]* within the meaning of the Act and the applicable rules and regulations thereunder adopted by the SEC.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Compliance With SEC Requirements

.33 The accountants may be requested to express an opinion on whether the financial statements covered by their report comply as to form with the pertinent accounting requirements adopted by the SEC.²³ This may be done substantially as follows:

In our opinion *[include phrase "except as disclosed in the registration statement," if applicable]*, the *[identify the financial statements and financial statement schedules]* audited by us and included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.²⁴

If there is a material departure from the pertinent rules and regulations adopted by the SEC, the departure should be disclosed in the letter.²⁵ An appropriate manner of doing this is shown in example K [paragraph .64]. [Paragraph

²³ The phrase rules and regulations adopted by the SEC is used because accountants should not be expected to be familiar with, or express assurances on compliance with, informal positions of the SEC staff. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered and amended, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

²⁴ Certain financial statements may be incorporated in a registration statement under the Act by reference to filings under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the 1934 Act). In those circumstances, the accountants may refer to whether the audited financial statements and financial statement schedules included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the 1934 Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC (see example B [paragraph .64]). However, the accountants should not refer to compliance with the provisions of the 1934 Act regarding internal accounting control. See AT section 501, *Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*, paragraph .82. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered and amended, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86. Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

²⁵ Departures from rules and regulations adopted by the SEC that require mention in a comfort letter ordinarily do not affect fair presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles; however, if they do, the accountants will, of course, mention these departures in expressing their opinion and in consenting to the use of their report in the registration statement. If departures from rules and regulations adopted by the SEC that require mention in a comfort letter either are not disclosed in the registration statement or have not been agreed to by representatives of the SEC, the accountants should carefully consider whether a consent to the use of their report in the registration statement should be issued. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered and amended, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.34 Accountants may provide positive assurance on compliance as to form with requirements under the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC only with respect to those rules and regulations applicable to the form and content of financial statements and financial statement schedules that they have audited. Accountants are limited to providing negative assurance on compliance as to form when the financial statements or financial statement schedules have not been audited. (For guidance in commenting on compliance as to form, see paragraph .37 regarding unaudited condensed interim financial information, paragraph .42 regarding pro forma financial information, paragraph .44 regarding a forecast, and paragraph .57 regarding Regulation S-K items.²⁶) [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Commenting in a Comfort Letter on Information Other Than Audited Financial Statements

General

.35 Comments included in the letter will often concern (a) unaudited condensed interim financial information (see paragraphs .36 through .38),²⁷ (b) capsule financial information (see paragraphs .36 and .39 through .41), (c) pro forma financial information (see paragraphs .42 and .43), (d) financial forecasts (see paragraphs .36 and .44), and (e) changes in capital stock, increases in long-term debt, and decreases in other specified financial statement items (see paragraphs .36 and .45 through .53). For commenting on these matters, the following guidance is important:

- a. As explained in paragraph .16, the agreed-upon procedures performed by the accountants should be set forth in the letter, except that when the accountants have been requested to provide negative assurance on interim financial information or capsule financial information, the procedures involved in an SAS No. 71 [section 722] review need not be specified (see paragraphs .37 through .41 of this section and paragraph 4 of example A [paragraph .64]).
- b. To avoid any misunderstanding about the responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for the underwriter's purposes, the accountants should not make any statements, or imply that they have applied procedures that they have determined to be necessary or sufficient for the underwriter's purposes. If the accountants state that they have performed an SAS No. 71 [section 722] review, this does not imply that those procedures are sufficient for the underwriter's purposes. The underwriter may ask the accountants to perform additional procedures. For example, if the underwriter requests the accountants to apply additional procedures and

²⁶ Accountants should not comment in a comfort letter on compliance as to form of MD&A with rules and regulations adopted by the SEC; accountants may agree to examine or review MD&A in accordance with AT section 701. [Footnote added, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86. Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

²⁷ The SEC requirements specify condensed financial statements. However, the guidance in paragraphs .37 and .38 also applies to complete financial statements. For purposes of this section, interim financial statements may be for a twelve-month period ending on a date other than the entity's normal year end. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86, March 1998.]

specifies items of financial information to be reviewed and the materiality level for changes in those items that would necessitate further inquiry by the accountants, the accountants may perform those procedures and should describe them in their letter. Descriptions of procedures in the comfort letter should include descriptions of the criteria specified by the underwriter.

- c. Terms of uncertain meaning (such as *general review*, *limited review*, *reconcile*, *check*, or *test*) should not be used in describing the work, unless the procedures comprehended by these terms are described in the comfort letter.
- d. The procedures performed with respect to interim periods may not disclose changes in capital stock, increases in long-term debt or decreases in the specified financial statement items, inconsistencies in the application of generally accepted accounting principles, instances of noncompliance as to form with accounting requirements of the SEC, or other matters about which negative assurance is requested. An appropriate manner of making this clear is shown in the last three sentences in paragraph 4 of example A [paragraph .64].
- e. Matters to be covered by the letter should be made clear in the meetings with the underwriter and should be identified in the underwriting agreement and in the draft comfort letter. Since there is no way of anticipating other matters that would be of interest to an underwriter, accountants should not make a general statement in a comfort letter that, as a result of carrying out the specified procedures, nothing else has come to their attention that would be of interest to the underwriter.
- f. When the report on the audited financial statements and financial statement schedules in the registration statement departs from the auditor's standard report, and the comfort letter includes negative assurance with respect to subsequent unaudited condensed interim financial information included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement or with respect to an absence of specified subsequent changes, increases, or decreases, the accountant should consider the effect thereon of the subject matter of the qualification, explanatory paragraph(s), or paragraph(s) emphasizing a matter regarding the financial statements. The accountant should also follow the guidance in paragraph .27. An illustration of how this type of situation may be dealt with is shown in example I [paragraph .64].

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Knowledge of Internal Control

.36 The accountants should not comment in a comfort letter on (a) unaudited condensed interim financial information, (b) capsule financial information, (c) a financial forecast when historical financial statements provide a basis for one or more significant assumptions for the forecast, or (d) changes in capital stock, increases in long-term debt and decreases in selected financial statement items, unless they have obtained knowledge of a client's internal control as it relates to the preparation of both annual and interim financial information. Knowledge of the client's internal control over financial reporting includes knowledge of the control environment, risk assessment, control activities, information and communication, and monitoring. Sufficient knowledge of a client's internal control as it relates to the preparation of annual financial information ordinarily would have been acquired, and may have been acquired

with respect to interim financial information, by the accountants who have audited a client's financial statements for one or more periods. When the accountants have not audited the most recent annual financial statements, and thus have not acquired sufficient knowledge of the entity's internal control, the accountants should perform procedures to obtain that knowledge. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Revised, February 1997, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78.]

Unaudited Condensed Interim Financial Information

.37 Comments concerning the unaudited condensed interim financial information²⁸ included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement provide negative assurance as to whether (a) any material modifications should be made to the unaudited condensed interim financial information for it to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles and (b) the unaudited condensed interim financial information complies as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. Accountants may comment in the form of negative assurance only when they have conducted a review of the interim financial information in accordance with section 722. The accountants may (a) state in the comfort letter that they have performed the procedures identified in section 722 for a review of interim financial information (see paragraphs 4a and 5a of example A [paragraph .64] or (b) if the accountants have issued a report on the review, they may mention that fact in the comfort letter. If it is mentioned in the comfort letter, the accountants should attach the review report to the letter unless the review report is already included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement. When the accountants have not conducted a review in accordance with section 722, the accountants may not comment in the form of negative assurance and are, therefore, limited to reporting procedures performed and findings obtained (see example O [paragraph .64]). [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.38 The letter should specifically identify any unaudited condensed interim financial information and should state that the accountants have not audited the condensed interim financial information in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and do not express an opinion concerning such information. An appropriate manner of making this clear is shown in paragraph 3 of example A [paragraph .64]. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Capsule Financial Information

.39 In some registration statements, the information shown in the audited financial statements or unaudited condensed interim financial information is supplemented by unaudited summarized interim information for subsequent periods (commonly called "capsule financial information"). This capsule financial information (either in narrative or tabular form) often is provided for the most recent interim period and for the corresponding period of the prior year. With regard to selected capsule financial information, the accountants—

²⁸ When accountants are engaged to perform procedures on interim financial information, they may have additional responsibilities under certain circumstances. The accountants should refer to section 722 for guidance. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86, March 1998.]

- a. May give negative assurance with regard to conformity with generally accepted accounting principles and may refer to whether the dollar amounts were determined on a basis substantially consistent with that of the corresponding amounts in the audited financial statements if (1) the selected capsule financial information is presented in accordance with the minimum disclosure requirements of Accounting Principles Board (APB) Opinion No. 28, paragraph 30 [AC section I73.146], and (2) the accountants have performed an SAS No. 71 [section 722] review of the financial statements underlying the capsule financial information. If those conditions have not been met, the accountants are limited to reporting procedures performed and findings obtained.
- b. May give negative assurance as to whether the dollar amounts were determined on a basis substantially consistent with that of the corresponding amounts in the audited financial statements if the selected capsule financial information is more limited than the minimum disclosures described in APB Opinion 28, paragraph 30 (see example L [paragraph .64]), as long as the accountants have performed an SAS No. 71 [section 722] review of the financial statements underlying the capsule financial information. If an SAS No. 71 [section 722] review has not been performed, the accountants are limited to reporting procedures performed and findings obtained.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.40 The underwriter occasionally asks the accountants to give negative assurance with respect to the unaudited interim financial statements or unaudited condensed interim financial information (see paragraph .37 and the interim financial information requirements of Regulation S-X) that underlie the capsule financial information and asks the accountants to state that the capsule financial information agrees with amounts set forth in such statements. Paragraphs 4b and 5b in example L [paragraph .64] provide an example of the accountants' comments in these circumstances. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.41 The underwriter might ask the accountants to give negative assurance on the unaudited condensed interim financial information, or information extracted therefrom, for a monthly period ending after the latest financial statements included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement. In those cases, the guidance in paragraph .37 is applicable. The unaudited condensed interim financial information should be attached to the comfort letter so that it is clear what financial information is being referred to; if the client requests, the unaudited condensed interim financial information may be attached only to the copy of the letter intended for the managing underwriter. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Pro Forma Financial Information

.42 Accountants should not comment in a comfort letter on pro forma financial information unless they have an appropriate level of knowledge of the accounting and financial reporting practices of the entity (or, in the case of a business combination, of a significant constituent part of the combined entity). This would ordinarily have been obtained by the accountants auditing or

reviewing historical financial statements of the entity for the most recent annual or interim period for which the pro forma financial information is presented. Accountants should not give negative assurance in a comfort letter on the application of pro forma adjustments to historical amounts, the compilation of pro forma financial information, whether the pro forma financial information complies as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of rule 11-02 of Regulation S-X or otherwise provide negative assurance with respect to pro forma financial information unless they have obtained the required knowledge described above and they have performed an audit of the annual financial statements, or an SAS No. 71 [section 722] review of the interim financial statements, of the entity (or, in the case of a business combination, of a significant constituent part of the combined entity) to which the pro forma adjustments were applied. In the case of a business combination, the historical financial statements of each constituent part of the combined entity on which the pro forma financial information is based should be audited or reviewed. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.43 If the accountants have obtained the required knowledge as described in paragraph .36, but have not met the requirements for giving negative assurance, the accountants are limited to reporting procedures performed and findings obtained. (See example O [paragraph .64].) The accountants should comply with the relevant guidance on reporting the results of agreed-upon procedures in AT section 201. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

Financial Forecasts

.44 For accountants to perform agreed-upon procedures on a financial forecast and comment thereon in a comfort letter, they should obtain the knowledge described in paragraph .36 and then perform procedures prescribed in AT section 301.69, for reporting on compilation of a forecast. Having performed these procedures, they should follow the guidance in AT section 301.18 and .19 regarding reports on compilations of prospective financial information and should attach their report²⁹ thereon to the comfort letter.³⁰ Then they can perform additional procedures and report their findings in the comfort letter (see examples E and O [paragraph .64]). Accountants may not provide negative assurance on the results of procedures performed. Further, accountants may not provide negative assurance with respect to compliance of the forecast with rule 11-03 of Regulation S-X unless they have performed an examination of the forecast in accordance with AT section 301. [Paragraph renumbered by the

²⁹ For purposes of issuing a comfort letter, if the forecast is included in the registration statement, the forecast must be accompanied by an indication that the accountants have not examined the forecast and therefore do not express an opinion on it. If a compilation report on the forecast has been issued in connection with the comfort letter, the report need not be included in the registration statement. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86, March 1998.]

³⁰ When a client's securities are subject to regulation by the SEC, the accountants should be aware of the SEC's views regarding independence when agreeing to perform a compilation of a forecast. Independence may be deemed to be impaired when services include preparation or assembly of financial forecasts. The SEC generally will not question the accountants' independence, however when services are limited to issuing a report on a forecast as a result of performing the procedures stated in paragraph 5 of AT section 301.69. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86, March 1998. Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

Subsequent Changes

.45 Comments regarding subsequent changes typically relate to whether there has been any change in capital stock, increase in long-term debt or decreases in other specified financial statement items during a period, known as the “change period,” subsequent to the date and period of the latest financial statements included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement (see paragraph .50). These comments would also address such matters as subsequent changes in the amounts of (a) net current assets or stockholders’ equity and (b) net sales and the total and per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items and of net income. The accountants ordinarily will be requested to read minutes and make inquiries of company officials relating to the whole of the change period.³¹ For the period between the date of the latest financial statements made available and the cutoff date, the accountants must base their comments solely on the limited procedures actually performed with respect to that period (which, in most cases, will be limited to the reading of minutes and the inquiries of company officials referred to in the preceding sentence), and their comfort letter should make this clear (see paragraph 6 of example A [paragraph .64]). [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.46 If the underwriter requests negative assurance as to subsequent changes in specified financial statement items as of a date less than 135 days from the end of the most recent period for which the accountants have performed an audit or a review, the accountants may provide such negative assurance in the comfort letter. For instance—

- When the accountants have audited the December 31, 19X6, financial statements, the accountants may provide negative assurance on increases and decreases of specified financial statement items as of any date up to May 14 (135 days subsequent to December 31).
- When the accountants have audited the December 31, 19X6, financial statements and have also conducted an SAS No. 71 [section 722] review of the interim financial information as of and for the quarter ended March 31, 19X7, the accountants may provide negative assurance as to increases and decreases of specified financial statement items as of any date up to August 14, 19X7 (135 days subsequent to March 31).

An appropriate manner of expressing negative assurance regarding subsequent changes is shown in paragraphs 5b and 6 of example A [paragraph .64], if there has been no decrease and in example M [paragraph .64], if there has been a decrease. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.47 However, if the underwriter requests negative assurance as to subsequent changes in specified financial statement items as of a date 135 days or more subsequent to the end of the most recent period for which the accountants have performed an audit or a review, the accountants may not provide negative assurance but are limited to reporting procedures performed and findings obtained (see example O [paragraph .64]). [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

³¹ The answers to these inquiries generally should be supported by appropriate written representations of the company officials. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86, March 1998.]

.48 In order that comments on subsequent changes be unambiguous and their determination be within accountants' professional expertise, the comments should not relate to "adverse changes," since that term has not acquired any clearly understood meaning. If there has been a change in an accounting principle during the change period, the accountants should note that fact in the letter. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.49 Comments on the occurrence of changes in capital stock, increases in long-term debt, and decreases in other specified financial statement items are limited to changes, increases, or decreases not disclosed in the registration statement. Accordingly, the phrase "except for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur" should be included in the letter when it has come to the accountants' attention that a change, increase, or decrease has occurred during the change period, and the amount of such change, increase, or decrease is disclosed in the registration statement. This phrase need not be included in the letter when no changes, increases, or decreases in the specified financial statement items are disclosed in the registration statement. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.50 *Change period.* In the context of a comfort letter, a decrease occurs when the amount of a financial statement item at the cutoff date or for the change period (as if financial statements had been prepared at that date and for that period) is less than the amount of the same item at a specified earlier date or for a specified earlier period. With respect to the items mentioned in paragraph .45, the term *decrease* means (a) any combination of changes in amounts of current assets and current liabilities that results in decreased net current assets, (b) any combination of changes in amounts of assets and liabilities that results in decreased stockholders' equity, (c) decreased net sales, and (d) any combination of changes in amounts of sales, expenses and outstanding shares that results in decreased total and per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items and of net income (including, in each instance, a greater loss or other negative amount). The change period for which the accountants give negative assurance in the comfort letter ends on the cutoff date (see paragraph .23) and ordinarily begins, for balance sheet items, immediately after the date of the latest balance sheet in the registration statement and, for income statement items, immediately after the latest period for which such items are presented in the registration statement. The comparison relates to the entire period and not to portions of that period. A decrease during one part of the period may be offset by an equal or larger increase in another part of the period; however, because there was no decrease for the period as a whole, the comfort letter would not report the decrease occurring during one part of the period (see, however, paragraph .62). [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.51 The underwriting agreement usually specifies the dates as of which, and periods for which, data at the cutoff date and data for the change period are to be compared. For balance sheet items, the comparison date is normally that of the latest balance sheet included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement (that is, immediately prior to the beginning of the change period). For income statement items, the comparison period or periods might be one or more of the following: (a) the corresponding period of the preceding year, (b) a period of corresponding length immediately preceding the change period, (c) a proportionate part of the preceding fiscal year, or (d) any other period of corresponding length chosen by the underwriter. Whether or

not specified in the underwriting agreement, the date and period used in comparison should be identified in the comfort letter in both draft and final form so that there is no misunderstanding about the matters being compared and so that the underwriter can determine whether the comparison period is suitable for his or her purposes. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.52 The underwriter occasionally requests that the change period begin immediately after the date of the latest audited balance sheet (which is, ordinarily, also the closing date of the latest audited statement of income) in the registration statement, even though the registration statement includes a more recent unaudited condensed balance sheet and condensed statement of income. The use of the earlier date may defeat the underwriter's purpose, since it is possible that an increase in one of the items referred to in paragraph .45 occurring between the dates of the latest audited and unaudited balance sheets included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement might more than offset a decrease occurring after the latter date. A similar situation might arise in the comparison of income statement items. In these circumstances, the decrease occurring after the date of the latest unaudited condensed interim financial statements included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement would not be reported in the comfort letter. It is desirable for the accountants to explain the foregoing considerations to the underwriter; however, if the underwriter nonetheless requests the use of a change period or periods other than those described in paragraph .50, the accountants may use the period or periods requested. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.53 When other accountants are involved and their letters do not disclose matters that affect the negative assurance given, an appropriate manner of expressing these comments is shown in example J [paragraph .64]. When appropriate, the principal accountants may comment that there were no decreases in the consolidated financial statement items despite the possibility that decreases have been mentioned by the other accountants. In such a case, the principal accountants could make a statement that "nothing came to our attention regarding the consolidated financial statements as a result of the specified procedures (which, so far as the related company was concerned, consisted solely of reading the other accountants' letter) that caused us to believe that. . . ." [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information

.54 The underwriting agreement sometimes calls for a comfort letter that includes comments on tables, statistics, and other financial information appearing in the registration statement. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.55 The accountants should refrain from commenting on certain matters in a comfort letter. Except as indicated in the next sentence, they should comment only with respect to information (a) that is expressed in dollars (or percentages derived from such dollar amounts) and that has been obtained from accounting records that are subject to the entity's controls over financial reporting or (b) that has been derived directly from such accounting records by analysis or computation. The accountants may also comment on quantitative information that has been obtained from an accounting record if the information is subject to the same controls over financial reporting as the dollar

amounts. The accountants should not comment on matters merely because they happen to be present and are capable of reading, counting, measuring, or performing other functions that might be applicable. Examples of matters that, unless subjected to the entity's controls over financial reporting (which is not ordinarily the case), should not be commented on by the accountants include the square footage of facilities, number of employees (except as related to a given payroll period), and backlog information.³² The accountants should not comment on tables, statistics, and other financial information relating to an unaudited period unless (a) they have performed an audit of the client's financial statements for a period including or immediately prior to the unaudited period or have completed an audit for a later period or (b) they have otherwise obtained knowledge of the client's internal control as provided for in paragraph .36 herein. In addition, the accountants should not comment on information subject to legal interpretation, such as beneficial share ownership. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. As amended, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

.56 As with comments relating to financial statement information, it is important that the procedures followed by the accountants with respect to other information be clearly set out in the comfort letter, in both draft and final form, so that there will be no misunderstanding about the basis of the comments on the information. Further, so that there will be no implication that the accountants are furnishing any assurance with respect to the sufficiency of the procedures for the underwriter's intended purpose, the comfort letter should contain a statement to this effect. An appropriate way of expressing this is shown in paragraph 10 of example F [paragraph .64] (see also paragraph .16 of this section). [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.57 Certain financial information in registration statements is included because of specific requirements of Regulation S-K. Accountants may comment as to whether this information is in conformity with the disclosure requirements of Regulation S-K if the following conditions are met:

- a. The information is derived from the accounting records subject to the entity's controls over financial reporting, or has been derived directly from such accounting records by analysis or computation.
- b. This information is capable of evaluation against reasonable criteria that have been established by the SEC.

The following are the disclosure requirements of Regulation S-K³³ that generally meet these conditions:

- Item 301, "Selected Financial Data"

³² Accountants generally will be unable to comment on nonfinancial data presented in MD&A. However, when the accountants have conducted an examination or a review of MD&A in accordance with AT section 701, they may agree to trace nonfinancial data presented outside MD&A to similar data included in the MD&A presentation. When the accountant does not perform a review or an examination of MD&A or does not attach or refer to a report on MD&A, the accountant may perform agreed-upon procedures with respect to items in MD&A subject to controls over financial reporting. [Footnote added, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86. Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

³³ Accountants should not comment in a comfort letter on compliance as to form of MD&A with rules and regulations adopted by the SEC; accountants may agree to examine or review MD&A in accordance with AT section 701. [Footnote added, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86. Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

- Item 302, “Supplementary Financial Information”
- Item 402, “Executive Compensation”
- Item 503(d), “Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges”

Accountants may not give positive assurance on conformity with the disclosure requirements of Regulation S-K; they are limited to giving negative assurance, since this information is not given in the form of financial statements and generally has not been audited by the accountants. Even with respect to the above-mentioned items, there may be situations in which it would be inappropriate to provide negative assurance with respect to conformity of this information with Regulation S-K because conditions (a) and (b) above have not been met. Since information relevant to Regulation S-K disclosure requirements other than those noted previously is generally not derived from the accounting records subject to the entity's controls over financial reporting, it is not appropriate for the accountants to comment on conformity of this information with Regulation S-K. The accountants' inability to comment on conformity with Regulation S-K does not preclude accountants from performing procedures and reporting findings with respect to this information. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.58 To avoid ambiguity, the specific information commented on in the letter should be identified by reference to specific captions, tables, page numbers, paragraphs, or sentences. Descriptions of the procedures followed and the findings obtained may be stated individually for each item of specific information commented on. Alternatively, if the procedures and findings are adequately described, some or all of the descriptions may be grouped or summarized, as long as the applicability of the descriptions to items in the registration statement is clear and the descriptions do not imply that the accountants assume responsibility for the adequacy of the procedures. It would also be appropriate to present a matrix listing the financial information and common procedures employed and indicating the procedures applied to the specific items. Another presentation that could be used identifies procedures performed with specified symbols and identifies items to which those procedures have been applied directly on a copy of the prospectus which is attached to the comfort letter. (See examples F, G, and H [paragraph .64]). [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.59 Comments in the comfort letter concerning tables, statistics, and other financial information included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement should be made in the form of a description of the procedures followed; the findings (ordinarily expressed in terms of agreement between items compared); and in some cases, as described below, statements with respect to the acceptability of methods of allocation used in deriving the figures commented on. Whether comments on the allocation of income or expense items between categories of sales (such as military and commercial sales) may appropriately be made will depend on the extent to which such allocation is made in, or can be derived directly by analysis or computation from, the client's accounting records. In any event, such comments, if made, should make clear that such allocations are to a substantial extent arbitrary, that the method of allocation used is not the only acceptable one, and that other acceptable methods of allocation might produce significantly different results. Furthermore, no comments should be made regarding segment information (or the appropriateness of allocations made to derive segment information) included

in financial statements, since the accountants' report encompasses that information (see section 435, *Segment Information*).³⁴ Appropriate ways of expressing comments on tables, statistics, and other financial information are shown in examples F, G, and H [paragraph .64]. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

.60 In comments concerning tables, statistics, and other financial information, the expression "presents fairly" (or a variation of it) should not be used. That expression, when used by independent accountants, ordinarily relates to presentations of financial statements and should not be used in commenting on other types of information. Except with respect to requirements for financial statements and certain Regulation S-K items discussed in paragraph .57, the question of what constitutes appropriate information for compliance with the requirements of a particular item of the registration statement form is a matter of legal interpretation outside the competence of accountants. Consequently, the letter should state that the accountants make no representations regarding any matter of legal interpretation. Since the accountants will not be in a position to make any representations about the completeness or adequacy of disclosure or about the adequacy of the procedures followed, the letter should so state. It should point out, as well, that such procedures would not necessarily disclose material misstatements or omissions in the information to which the comments relate. An appropriate manner of expressing the comments is shown in examples F, G, and H [paragraph .64]. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Concluding Paragraph

.61 In order to avoid misunderstanding of the purpose and intended use of the comfort letter, it is desirable that the letter conclude with a paragraph along the following lines:

This letter is solely for the information of the addressees and to assist the underwriters³⁵ in conducting and documenting their investigation of the affairs of the company in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to within or without the underwriting group for any other purpose, including, but not limited to, the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to in whole or in part in the registration statement or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in the underwriting agreement or in any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

³⁴ See paragraph .30 regarding requests by an underwriter for comments on interim financial information required by item 302(a) of Regulation S-K and required supplementary information described in section 558. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86, March 1998.]

³⁵ When the letter is furnished by the accountants for a subsidiary and they are not also accountants for the parent company, the letter should include the following phrase at this point: "and for the use of the accountants for [name of issuer] in furnishing their letter to the underwriters." [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995. Footnote subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86, March 1998.]

Disclosure of Subsequently Discovered Matters

.62 Accountants who discover matters that may require mention in the final comfort letter but that are not mentioned in the draft letter that has been furnished to the underwriter, such as changes, increases, or decreases in specified items not disclosed in the registration statement (see paragraphs .45 and .49), will naturally want to discuss them with their client so that consideration can be given to whether disclosure should be made in the registration statement. If disclosure is not to be made, the accountants should inform the client that the matters will be mentioned in the comfort letter and should suggest that the underwriter be informed promptly. It is recommended that the accountants be present when the client and the underwriter discuss such matters. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Effective Date

.63 This section is effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1993. Early application of this section is encouraged. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76, September 1995.]

Appendix

Examples

1. The contents of comfort letters vary, depending on the extent of the information in the registration statement and the wishes of the underwriter or other requesting party. Shelf registration statements may have several closing dates and different underwriters. Descriptions of procedures and findings regarding interim financial statements, tables, statistics, or other financial information that is incorporated by reference from previous 1934 Act filings may have to be repeated in several comfort letters. To avoid restating these descriptions in each comfort letter, accountants may initially issue the comments in a format (such as an appendix) that can be referred to in, and attached to, subsequently issued comfort letters.

Example A: Typical Comfort Letter

2. A typical comfort letter includes—
 - a. A statement regarding the independence of the accountants (paragraphs .31 and .32).
 - b. An opinion regarding whether the audited financial statements and financial statement schedules included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC (paragraphs .33 and .34).
 - c. Negative assurance on whether—
 1. The unaudited condensed interim financial information included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement (paragraph .37) complies as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
 2. Any material modifications should be made to the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.
 - d. Negative assurance on whether, during a specified period following the date of the latest financial statements in the registration statement and prospectus, there has been any change in capital stock, increase in long-term debt or any decrease in other specified financial statement items (paragraphs .45 through .53).

Example A is a letter covering all these items. Letters that cover some of the items may be developed by omitting inapplicable portions of example A.

Example A assumes the following circumstances.¹ The prospectus (part I of the registration statement) includes audited consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 19X5 and 19X4, and audited consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for each of the three

¹ The example includes financial statements required by SEC regulations to be included in the filing. If additional financial information is covered by the comfort letter, appropriate modifications should be made.

years in the period ended December 31, 19X5. Part I also includes an unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, reviewed in accordance with section 722 but not previously reported on by the accountants. Part II of the registration statement includes audited consolidated financial statement schedules for the three years ended December 31, 19X5. The cutoff date is June 23, 19X6, and the letter is dated June 28, 19X6. The effective date is June 28, 19X6.

Each of the comments in the letter is in response to a requirement of the underwriting agreement. For purposes of example A, the income statement items of the current interim period are to be compared with those of the corresponding period of the preceding year.

June 28, 19X6

[Addressee]

Dear Sirs:

We have audited the consolidated balance sheets of The Blank Company, Inc. (the company) and subsidiaries as of December 31, 19X5 and 19X4, and the consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 19X5, and the related financial statement schedules all included in the registration statement (no. 33-00000) on Form S-1 filed by the company under the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act); our reports with respect thereto are also included in that registration statement. The registration statement, as amended on June 28, 19X6, is herein referred to as the registration statement.²

In connection with the registration statement—

1. We are independent certified public accountants with respect to the company within the meaning of the Act and the applicable rules and regulations thereunder adopted by the SEC.

2. In our opinion [*include the phrase "except as disclosed in the registration statement," if applicable*], the consolidated financial statements and financial statement schedules audited by us and included in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

3. We have not audited any financial statements of the company as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 19X5; although we have conducted an audit for the year ended December 31, 19X5, the purpose (and therefore the scope) of the audit was to enable us to express our opinion on the consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 19X5, and for the year then ended, but not on the financial statements for any interim period within that year. Therefore, we are unable to and do not express any opinion on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings

² The example assumes that the accountants have not previously reported on the interim financial information. If the accountants have previously reported on the interim financial information, they may refer to that fact in the introductory paragraph of the comfort letter as follows:

Also, we have reviewed the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements as of March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, and for the three-month periods then ended, as indicated in our report dated May 15, 19X6, which is included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement.

The report may be attached to the comfort letter (see paragraph .29). The accountants may agree to comment in the comment letter on whether the interim financial information complies as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

(stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, included in the registration statement, or on the financial position, results of operations, or cash flows as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 19X5.

4. For purposes of this letter we have read the 19X6 minutes of meetings of the stockholders, the board of directors, and [*include other appropriate committees, if any*] of the company and its subsidiaries as set forth in the minute books at June 23, 19X6, officials of the company having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings³ through that date were set forth therein; we have carried out other procedures to June 23, 19X6, as follows (our work did not extend to the period from June 24, 19X6, to June 28, 19X6, inclusive):

a. With respect to the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, we have—

(i) Performed the procedures specified by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants for a review of interim financial information as described in SAS No. 71, *Interim Financial Information*, on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, included in the registration statement.

(ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in a(i) comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

b. With respect to the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, we have—

(i) Read the unaudited consolidated financial statements⁴ of the company and subsidiaries for April and May of both 19X5 and 19X6 furnished us by the company, officials of the company having advised us that no such financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 19X6, were available.

(ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited consolidated financial statements referred to in b(i) are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the registration statement.

The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Also, they would not necessarily reveal matters of significance with respect to the comments in the following paragraph. Accordingly, we make no representations regarding the sufficiency of the foregoing procedures for your purposes.

³ The accountants should discuss with the secretary those meetings for which minutes have not been approved. The letter should be modified to identify specifically the unapproved minutes of meetings that the accountants have discussed with the secretary.

⁴ If the interim financial information is incomplete, a sentence similar to the following should be added: "The financial information for April and May is incomplete in that it omits the statements of cash flows and other disclosures."

5. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures, however, that caused us⁵ to believe that—

- a. (i) Any material modifications should be made to the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in 4a(i), included in the registration statement, for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.⁶
- (ii) The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in 4a(i) do not comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. (i) At May 31, 19X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or decrease in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement, or (ii) for the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, there were any decreases, as compared to the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

6. As mentioned in 4b, company officials have advised us that no consolidated financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 19X6, are available; accordingly, the procedures carried out by us with respect to changes in financial statement items after May 31, 19X6, have, of necessity, been even more limited than those with respect to the periods referred to in 4. We have inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether (a) at June 23, 19X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement or (b) for the period from April 1, 19X6, to June 23, 19X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income. On the basis of these inquiries and our reading of the minutes as described in 4, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that there was any such change, increase, or decrease, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

7. This letter is solely for the information of the addressees and to assist the underwriters in conducting and documenting their investigation of the affairs of the company in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to within or without the underwriting group for any purpose, including but not limited to the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to in whole or in part in the registration statement or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in

⁵ If there has been a change in accounting principle during the interim period, a reference to that change should be included herein.

⁶ Section 722 does not require the accountants to modify the report on a review of interim financial information for a lack of consistency in the application of accounting principles provided that the interim financial information appropriately discloses such matters.

the underwriting agreement or in any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement.

Example B: Letter When a Short-Form Registration Statement Is Filed Incorporating Previously Filed Forms 10-K and 10-Q by Reference

3. Example B is applicable when a registrant uses a short-form registration statement (Form S-2 or S-3) which, by reference, incorporates previously filed Forms 10-K and 10-Q. It assumes that the short-form registration statement and prospectus include the Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 19X5, and Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 19X6, which have been incorporated by reference. In addition to the information presented below, the letter would also contain paragraphs 6 and 7 of the typical letter in example A. A Form S-2 registration statement will often both incorporate and include the registrant's financial statements. In such situations, the language in the following example should be appropriately modified to refer to such information as being both incorporated and included.

June 28, 19X6

[Addressee]

Dear Sirs:

We have audited the consolidated balance sheets of The Blank Company, Inc. (the company) and subsidiaries as of December 31, 19X5 and 19X4, and the consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 19X5, and the related financial statement schedules, all included (incorporated by reference) in the company's annual report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 19X5, and incorporated by reference in the registration statement (no. 33-00000) on Form S-3 filed by the company under the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act); our report with respect thereto is also incorporated by reference in that registration statement. The registration statement, as amended on June 28, 19X6, is herein referred to as the registration statement.

In connection with the registration statement—

1. We are independent certified public accountants with respect to the company within the meaning of the Act and the applicable rules and regulations thereunder adopted by the SEC.

2. In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements and financial statement schedules audited by us and incorporated by reference in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

3. We have not audited any financial statements of the company as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 19X5; although we have conducted an audit for the year ended December 31, 19X5, the purpose (and therefore the scope) of the audit was to enable us to express our opinion on the consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 19X5, and for the year then ended, but not on the consolidated financial statements for any interim period within that year. Therefore, we are unable to and do not express any opinion on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, included in the company's quarterly report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 19X6, incorporated by

reference in the registration statement, or on the financial position, results of operations, or cash flows as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 19X5.

4. For purposes of this letter, we have read the 19X6 minutes of the meetings of the stockholders, the board of directors, and [*include other appropriate committees, if any*] of the company and its subsidiaries as set forth in the minute books at June 23, 19X6, officials of the company having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings⁷ through that date were set forth therein; we have carried out other procedures to June 23, 19X6, as follows (our work did not extend to the period from June 24, 19X6, to June 28, 19X6, inclusive):

- a. With respect to the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, we have—
 - (i) Performed the procedures specified by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants for a review of interim financial information as described in SAS No. 71, *Interim Financial Information*, on the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements for these periods, described in 3, included in the company's quarterly report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 19X6, incorporated by reference in the registration statement.
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in a(i) comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 as it applies to Form 10-Q and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. With respect to the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, we have—
 - (i) Read the unaudited consolidated financial statements⁸ of the company and subsidiaries for April and May of both 19X5 and 19X6 furnished us by the company, officials of the company having advised us that no such financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 19X6, were available.
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited consolidated financial statements referred to in b(i) are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements incorporated by reference in the registration statement.

The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Also, they would not necessarily reveal matters of significance with respect to the comments in the following paragraph. Accordingly, we make no representations about the sufficiency of the foregoing procedures for your purposes.

5. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures, however, that caused us to believe that—

- a. (i) Any material modifications should be made to the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in 3, incorporated by reference in the registration statement, for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

⁷ See footnote 3 of the Appendix.

⁸ See footnote 4 of the Appendix.

- (ii) The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in 3 do not comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 as it applies to Form 10-Q and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. (i) At May 31, 19X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 19X6 unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet incorporated by reference in the registration statement or (ii) for the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

Example C: Letter Reaffirming Comments in Example A as of a Later Date

4. If more than one comfort letter is requested, the later letter may, in appropriate situations, refer to information appearing in the earlier letter without repeating such information (see paragraph .24 and paragraph 1 of the Appendix). Example C reaffirms and updates the information in example A.

July 25, 19X6

[Addressee]

Dear Sirs:

We refer to our letter of June 28, 19X6, relating to the registration statement (no. 33-00000) of The Blank Company, Inc. (the company). We reaffirm as of the date hereof (and as though made on the date hereof) all statements made in that letter except that, for the purposes of this letter—

- a. The registration statement to which this letter relates is as amended on July 13, 19X6 [effective date].
- b. The reading of minutes described in paragraph 4 of that letter has been carried out through July 20, 19X6 [the new cutoff date].
- c. The procedures and inquiries covered in paragraph 4 of that letter were carried out to July 20, 19X6 [the new cutoff date] (our work did not extend to the period from July 21, 19X6, to July 25, 19X6 [date of letter], inclusive).
- d. The period covered in paragraph 4b of that letter is changed to the period from April 1, 19X6, to June 30, 19X6, officials of the company having advised us that no such financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to June 30, 19X6, were available.
- e. The references to May 31, 19X6, in paragraph 5b of that letter are changed to June 30, 19X6.
- f. The references to May 31, 19X6, and June 23, 19X6, in paragraph 6 of that letter are changed to June 30, 19X6, and July 20, 19X6, respectively.

This letter is solely for the information of the addressees and to assist the underwriters in conducting and documenting their investigation of the affairs of the company in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to within the underwriting group for any other purpose, including but

not limited to the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to in whole or in part in the registration statement or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in the underwriting agreement or any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement.

Example D: Comments on Pro Forma Financial Information

5. Example D is applicable when the accountants are asked to comment on (a) whether the pro forma financial information included in a registration statement complies as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of rule 11-02 of Regulation S-X, and (b) the application of pro forma adjustments to historical amounts in the compilation of the pro forma financial information (see paragraphs .42 and .43). The material in this example is intended to be inserted between paragraphs 6 and 7 in example A. The accountants have audited the December 31, 19X5, financial statements and have conducted an SAS No. 71 [section 722] review of the March 31, 19X6, interim financial information of the acquiring company. Other accountants conducted a review of the March 31, 19X6, interim financial information of XYZ Company, the company being acquired. The example assumes that the accountants have not previously reported on the pro forma financial information. If the accountants did previously report on the pro forma financial information, they may refer in the introductory paragraph of the comfort letter to the fact that they have issued a report, and the report may be attached to the comfort letter (see paragraph .29). In that circumstance, therefore, the procedures in 7b(i) and 7c ordinarily would not be performed, and the accountants should not separately comment on the application of pro forma adjustments to historical financial information, since that assurance is encompassed in the accountants' report on pro forma financial information. The accountants may, however, agree to comment on compliance as to form with the applicable accounting requirements of rule 11-02 of Regulation S-X.

7. At your request, we have—

- a. Read the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated statements of income for the year ended December 31, 19X5, and the three-month period ended March 31, 19X6, included in the registration statement.
- b. Inquired of certain officials of the company and of XYZ Company (the company being acquired) who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters about—
 - (i) The basis for their determination of the pro forma adjustments, and
 - (ii) Whether the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in 7a comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of rule 11-02 of Regulation S-X.
- c. Proved the arithmetic accuracy of the application of the pro forma adjustments to the historical amounts in the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements.

The foregoing procedures are substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on management's assumptions, the pro forma adjustments, and the application of those adjustments to

historical financial information. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. The foregoing procedures would not necessarily reveal matters of significance with respect to the comments in the following paragraph. Accordingly, we make no representation about the sufficiency of such procedures for your purposes.

8. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the procedures specified in paragraph 7, however, that caused us to believe that the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in 7a included in the registration statement do not comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of rule 11-02 of Regulation S-X and that the pro forma adjustments have not been properly applied to the historical amounts in the compilation of those statements. Had we performed additional procedures or had we made an examination of the pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

Example E: Comments on a Financial Forecast

6. Example E is applicable when accountants are asked to comment on a financial forecast (see paragraph .44). The material in this example is intended to be inserted between paragraphs 6 and 7 in example A. The example assumes that the accountants have previously reported on the compilation of the financial forecast and that the report is attached to the letter (see paragraph .29 and example O).

7. At your request, we performed the following procedure with respect to the forecasted consolidated balance sheet and consolidated statements of income and cash flows as of December 31, 19X6, and for the year then ending. With respect to forecasted rental income, we compared the occupancy statistics about expected demand for rental of the housing units to statistics for existing comparable properties and found them to be the same.

8. Because the procedure described above does not constitute an examination of prospective financial statements in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, we do not express an opinion on whether the prospective financial statements are presented in conformity with AICPA presentation guidelines or on whether the underlying assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the presentation.

Had we performed additional procedures or had we made an examination of the forecast in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you. Furthermore, there will usually be differences between the forecasted and actual results, because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected, and those differences may be material.

Example F: Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Complete Description of Procedures and Findings

7. Example F is applicable when the accountants are asked to comment on tables, statistics, or other compilations of information appearing in a registration statement (paragraphs .54 through .60). Each of the comments is in response to a specific request. The paragraphs in example F are intended to follow paragraph 6 in example A.

7. For purposes of this letter, we have also read the following, set forth in the registration statement on the indicated pages.⁹

<u>Item</u>	<u>Page</u>	<u>Description</u>
a	4	"Capitalization." The amounts under the captions "Amount Outstanding as of June 15, 19X6" and "As Adjusted." The related notes, except the following in Note 2: "See 'Transactions With Interested Persons.' From the proceeds of this offering the company intends to prepay \$900,000 on these notes, pro rata. See 'Use of Proceeds.'"
b	13	"History and Business—Sales and Marketing." The table following the first paragraph.
c	22	"Executive Compensation—19X5 Compensation."
d	33	"Selected Financial Data." ¹⁰

8. Our audit of the consolidated financial statements for the periods referred to in the introductory paragraph of this letter comprised audit tests and procedures deemed necessary for the purpose of expressing an opinion on such financial statements taken as a whole. For none of the periods referred to therein, or any other period, did we perform audit tests for the purpose of expressing an opinion on individual balances of accounts or summaries of selected transactions such as those enumerated above, and, accordingly, we express no opinion thereon.

9. However, for purposes of this letter we have performed the following additional procedures, which were applied as indicated with respect to the items enumerated above.

<u>Item in 7</u>	<u>Procedures and Findings</u>
a	We compared the amounts and numbers of shares listed under the caption "Amount Outstanding as of June 15, 19X6" with the balances in the appropriate accounts in the company's general ledger at May 31, 19X6 (the latest date for which posting had been made), and found them to be in agreement. We were informed by company officials who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters that there have been no changes in such amounts and numbers of shares between May 31, 19X6, and June 15, 19X6. We compared the amounts and numbers of shares listed under the caption "Amount Outstanding as of June 15, 19X6," adjusted for the issuance of the debentures to be offered by means of the registration statement and for the proposed use of a portion of the proceeds thereof to prepay portions of certain notes, as described under "Use of Proceeds," with the amounts and numbers of shares shown under the caption "As Adjusted" and found such amounts and numbers of shares to be in agreement. (However, we make no comments regarding the reasonableness of the "Use of Proceeds" or whether such use will actually take place.) We compared the description of the securities and the information (except certain information in Note 2, referred to in 7) included in the notes to the table with the corresponding descriptions and information in the company's consolidated financial statements,

⁹ In some cases it may be considered desirable to combine in one paragraph the substance of paragraphs 7 and 9. This may be done by expanding the identification of items in paragraph 9 to provide the identification information contained in paragraph 7. In such cases, the introductory sentences in paragraphs 7 and 9 and the text of paragraph 8 might be combined as follows: "For purposes of this letter, we have also read the following information and have performed the additional procedures stated below with respect to such information. Our audit of the consolidated financial statements. . ."

¹⁰ In some cases the company or the underwriter may request that the independent accountants report on "selected financial data" as described in section 552, *Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data*. When the accountants report on this data and the report is included in the registration statement, separate comments should not be included in the comfort letter (see paragraph .30).

Item in 7Procedures and Findings

including the notes thereto included in the registration statement, and found such description and information to be in agreement.

b We compared the amounts of military sales, commercial sales, and total sales shown in the registration statement with the balances in the appropriate accounts in the company's accounting records for the respective fiscal years and for the unaudited interim periods and found them to be in agreement. We proved the arithmetic accuracy of the percentages of such amounts of military sales and commercial sales to total sales for the respective fiscal years and for the unaudited interim periods. We compared such computed percentages with the corresponding percentages appearing in the registration statement and found them to be in agreement.

c We compared the dollar amounts of compensation (salary, bonus, and other compensation) for each individual listed in the table "Annual Compensation" with the corresponding amounts shown by the individual employee earnings records for the year 19X5 and found them to be in agreement. We compared the dollar amount of aggregate executive officers' cash compensation on page 22 with the corresponding amount shown in an analysis prepared by the company and found the amounts to be in agreement. We traced every item over \$10,000 on the analysis to the individual employee records for 19X5. We compared the dollar amounts shown under the heading of "Long-Term Compensation" on page 24 for each listed individual and the aggregate amounts for executive officers with corresponding amounts shown in an analysis prepared by the company and found such amounts to be in agreement.

We compared the executive compensation information with the requirements of item 402 of Regulation S-K. We also inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the executive compensation information conforms in all material respects with the disclosure requirements of item 402 of Regulation S-K. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures that caused us to believe that this information does not conform in all material respects with the disclosure requirements of item 402 of Regulation S-K.

d We compared the amounts of net sales, income from continuing operations, income from continuing operations per common share, and cash dividends declared per common share for the years ended December 31, 19X5, 19X4, and 19X3, with the respective amounts in the consolidated financial statements on pages 27 and 28 and the amounts for the years ended December 31, 19X2, and 19X1, with the respective amounts in the consolidated financial statements included in the company's annual reports to stockholders for 19X2 and 19X1 and found them to be in agreement.

We compared the amounts of total assets, long-term obligations, and redeemable preferred stock at December 31, 19X5 and 19X4, with the respective amounts in the consolidated financial statements on pages 27 and 28 and the amounts at December 31, 19X3, and 19X2, and 19X1 with the corresponding amounts in the consolidated financial statements included in the company's annual reports to stockholders for 19X3, 19X2, and 19X1 and found them to be in agreement.

We compared the information included under the heading "Selected Financial Data" with the requirements of item 301 of Regulation S-K. We also inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether this information conforms in all material respects with the disclosure requirements of item 301 of Regulation S-K. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures that caused us to believe that this information does not conform in all material respects with the disclosure requirements of item 301 of Regulation S-K.

10. It should be understood that we make no representations regarding questions of legal interpretation or regarding the sufficiency for your purposes of the procedures enumerated in the preceding paragraph; also, such procedures would not necessarily reveal any material misstatement of the amounts or percentages listed above. Further, we have addressed ourselves solely to the foregoing data as set forth in the registration statement and make no representations regarding the adequacy of disclosure or regarding whether any material facts have been omitted.

11. This letter is solely for the information of the addressees and to assist the underwriters in conducting and documenting their investigation of the affairs of the company in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to within or without the underwriting group for any other purpose, including but not limited to the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to in whole or in part in the registration statement or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in the underwriting agreement or in any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement.

Example G: Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Summarized Description of Procedures and Findings Regarding Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information

8. Example G illustrates, in paragraph 9a, a method of summarizing the descriptions of procedures and findings regarding tables, statistics, and other financial information in order to avoid repetition in the comfort letter. The summarization of the descriptions is permitted by paragraph .58. Each of the comments is in response to a specific request. The paragraphs in example G are intended to follow paragraph 6 in example A.¹¹

7. For purposes of this letter, we have also read the following, set forth in the registration statement on the indicated pages.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Page</u>	<u>Description</u>
a	4	“Capitalization.” The amounts under the captions “Amount Outstanding as of June 15, 19X6” and “As Adjusted.” The related notes, except the following in Note 2: “See ‘Transactions With Interested Persons.’ From the proceeds of this offering the company intends to prepay \$900,000 on these notes, pro rata. See ‘Use of Proceeds.’”
b	13	“History and Business—Sales and Marketing.” The table following the first paragraph.
c	22	“Executive Compensation—19X5 Compensation.”
d	33	“Selected Financial Data.” ¹²

8. Our audit of the consolidated financial statements for the periods referred to in the introductory paragraph of this letter comprised audit tests and procedures deemed necessary for the purpose of expressing an opinion on such financial statements taken as a whole. For none of the periods referred to there-

¹¹ Other methods of summarizing the descriptions may also be appropriately used. For example, the letter may present a matrix listing the financial information and common procedures employed and indicating the procedures applied to specific items.

¹² See footnote 10 of the Appendix.

in, or any other period, did we perform audit tests for the purpose of expressing an opinion on individual balances of accounts or summaries of selected transactions such as those enumerated above, and, accordingly, we express no opinion thereon.

9. However, for purposes of this letter and with respect to the items enumerated in 7 above—

- a. Except for item 7a, we have (i) compared the dollar amounts either with the amounts in the audited consolidated financial statements described in the introductory paragraph of this letter or, for prior years, included in the company's annual report to stockholders for the years 19X1, 19X2, and 19X3, or with amounts in the unaudited consolidated financial statements described in paragraph 3 to the extent such amounts are included in or can be derived from such statements and found them to be in agreement; (ii) compared the amounts of military sales, commercial sales, and total sales and the dollar amounts of compensation for each listed individual with amounts in the company's accounting records and found them to be in agreement; (iii) compared other dollar amounts with amounts shown in analyses prepared by the company and found them to be in agreement; and (iv) proved the arithmetic accuracy of the percentages based on the data in the above-mentioned financial statements, accounting records, and analyses.

We compared the information in items 7c and 7d with the disclosure requirements of Regulation S-K. We also inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether this information conforms in all material respects with the disclosure requirements of Regulation S-K. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures that caused us to believe that this information does not conform in all material respects with the disclosure requirements of items 402 and 301, respectively, of Regulation S-K.

- b. With respect to item 7a, we compared the amounts and numbers of shares listed under the caption "Amount Outstanding as of June 15, 19X6" with the balances in the appropriate accounts in the company's general ledger at May 31, 19X6 (the latest date for which postings had been made), and found them to be in agreement. We were informed by officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters that there had been no changes in such amounts and numbers of shares between May 31, 19X6, and June 15, 19X6. We compared the amounts and numbers of shares listed under the caption "Amount Outstanding as of June 15, 19X6" adjusted for the issuance of the debentures to be offered by means of the registration statement and for the proposed use of a portion of the proceeds thereof to prepay portions of certain notes, as described under "Use of Proceeds," with the amounts and numbers of shares shown under the caption "As Adjusted" and found such amounts and numbers of shares to be in agreement. (However, we make no comments regarding the reasonableness of "Use of Proceeds" or whether such use will actually take place.) We compared the description of the securities and the information (except certain information in Note 2, referred to in 7) included in the notes to the table with the corresponding descriptions and information in the company's consolidated financial statements, including the notes thereto, included in the registration statement and found such descriptions and information to be in agreement.

10. It should be understood that we make no representations regarding questions of legal interpretation or regarding the sufficiency for your purposes of the procedures enumerated in the preceding paragraph; also, such procedures would not necessarily reveal any material misstatement of the amounts

or percentages listed above. Further, we have addressed ourselves solely to the foregoing data as set forth in the registration statement and make no representations regarding the adequacy of disclosure or regarding whether any material facts have been omitted.

11. This letter is solely for the information of the addressees and to assist the underwriters in conducting and documenting their investigation of the affairs of the company in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to within or without the underwriting group for any other purpose, including but not limited to the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to in whole or in part in the registration statement or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in the underwriting agreement or in any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement.

Example H: Comments on Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information: Descriptions of Procedures and Findings Regarding Tables, Statistics, and Other Financial Information—Attached Registration Statement (or Selected Pages) Identifies With Designated Symbols Items to Which Procedures Were Applied

9. This example illustrates an alternate format which could facilitate reporting when the accountant is requested to perform procedures on numerous statistics included in a registration statement. This format is permitted by paragraph .58. Each of the comments is in response to a specific request. The paragraph in example H is intended to follow paragraph 6 in example A.

7. For purposes of this letter, we have also read the items identified by you on the attached copy of the registration statement (prospectus), and have performed the following procedures, which were applied as indicated with respect to the symbols explained below:

- ✓ Compared the amount with the XYZ (Predecessor Company) financial statements for the period indicated and found them to be in agreement.
- ✓ Compared the amount with the XYZ (Predecessor Company) financial statements for the period indicated contained in the registration statement and found them to be in agreement.
- ✓ Compared the amount with ABC Company's financial statements for the period indicated contained in the registration statement and found them to be in agreement.
- ⊗ Compared with a schedule or report prepared by the Company and found them to be in agreement.

The letter would also contain paragraphs 8, 10, and 11 of the letter in example F.

[The following is an extract from a registration statement that illustrates how an accountant can document procedures performed on numerous statistics included in the registration statement.]

The following summary is qualified in its entirety by the financial statements and detailed information appearing elsewhere in this Prospectus.

The Company

ABC Company (the "Company") designs, constructs, sells, and finances single-family homes for the entry-level and move-up homebuyer. The Company and its predecessor have built and delivered more single-family homes in the metropolitan area than any other homebuilder for each of the last five years. The Company delivered 1,000 ☉ homes in the year ending December 31, 19X5, and at December 31, 19X5, had 500 homes¹³ under contract with an aggregate sales price of approximately \$45,000,000. The Company's wholly owned mortgage banking subsidiary, which commenced operations in March 19X5, currently originates a substantial portion of the mortgages for homes sold by the Company.

The Company typically does not engage in land development without related home-building operations and limits speculative building. The Company purchases only that land which it is prepared to begin developing immediately for home production. A substantial portion of the Company's homes are under contract for sale before construction commences.

The DEF area has been among the top five markets in the country in housing starts for each of the last five years, with more than 90,000 single-family starts during that period. During the same period, the DEF metropolitan area has experienced increases in population, personal income, and employment at rates above the national average. The Company is a major competitive factor in three of the seven market areas, and is expanding significantly in a fourth area.

The Offering

Common Stock Offered by the Company	750,000 ☉ shares of Common Stock—\$.01 par value (the "Common Stock")*
Common Stock to Be Outstanding	3,250,000 ☉ shares*
Use of Proceeds	To repay indebtedness incurred for the acquisition of the Company.
Proposed NASDAQ Symbol	ABC

* Assumes no exercise of the Underwriters' overallotment option. See "Underwriting."

Summary Financial Information
(In thousands, except per-share data)

	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <i>XYZ (Predecessor Company)</i> <i>Year Ended December 31,</i> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <i>ABC Company</i> <i>Year Ended</i> <i>December 31</i> </div> </div>				
<u>Income Statement Data</u>	<u>19X1</u>	<u>19X2</u>	<u>19X3</u>	<u>19X4</u>	<u>19X5</u>
Revenue from home sales	\$106,603 ✓	\$88,977 ✓	\$104,110 ✓	\$115,837 ✓	\$131,032 ✓
Gross profit from sales	15,980 ✓	21,138 ✓	23,774 ✓	17,099 ✓	22,407 ✓
Income from home building net of tax	490 ✓	3,473 ✓	7,029 ✓	1,000 ✓	3,425 ✓
Earnings per share	—	—	—	—	\$ 1.37 ✓

¹³ See paragraph .55.

Example I: Alternate Wording When Accountants' Report on Audited Financial Statements Contains an Explanatory Paragraph

10. Example I is applicable when the accountants' report on the audited financial statements included in the registration statement contains an explanatory paragraph regarding a matter that would also affect the unaudited condensed consolidated interim financial statements included in the registration statement. The introductory paragraph of example A would be revised as follows:

Our reports with respect thereto (which contain an explanatory paragraph that describes a lawsuit to which the Company is a defendant, discussed in note 8 to the consolidated financial statements) are also included in the registration statement.

The matter described in the explanatory paragraph should also be evaluated to determine whether it also requires mention in the comments on the unaudited condensed consolidated interim financial information (paragraph 5b of example A). If it is concluded that mention of such a matter in the comments on unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements is appropriate, a sentence should be added at the end of paragraph 5b in example A:

Reference should be made to the introductory paragraph of this letter which states that our audit report covering the consolidated financial statements as of and for the year ended December 31, 19X5, includes an explanatory paragraph that describes a lawsuit to which the company is a defendant, discussed in note 8 to the consolidated financial statements.

Example J: Alternate Wording When More Than One Accountant Is Involved

11. Example J applies when more than one accountant is involved in the audit of the financial statements of a business and the principal accountants have obtained a copy of the comfort letter of the other accountants (see paragraph .18). Example J consists of an addition to paragraph 4c, a substitution for the applicable part of paragraph 5, and an addition to paragraph 6 of example A.

[4]c. We have read the letter dated _____ of [*the other accountants*] with regard to [*the related company*].

5. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures (which, so far as [*the related company*] is concerned, consisted solely of reading the letter referred to in 4c), however, that caused us to believe that....

6. . . .On the basis of these inquiries and our reading of the minutes and the letter dated _____ of [*the other accountants*] with regard to [*the related company*], as described in 4, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that there was any such change, increase, or decrease, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

Example K: Alternate Wording When the SEC Has Agreed to a Departure From Its Accounting Requirements

12. Example K is applicable when (a) there is a departure from the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC and (b) representatives of the SEC have agreed to the departure. Paragraph 2 of example A would be revised to read as follows:

2. In our opinion [*include the phrase “except as disclosed in the registration statement,” if applicable*], the consolidated financial statements and financial statement schedules audited by us and included (incorporated by reference) in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC; however, as agreed to by representatives of the SEC, separate financial statements and financial statement schedules of ABC Company (an equity investee) as required by rule 3-09 of Regulation S-X have been omitted.

Example L: Alternate Wording When Recent Earnings Data Are Presented in Capsule Form

13. Example L is applicable when (a) the statement of income in the registration statement is supplemented by later information regarding sales and earnings (capsule financial information), (b) the accountants are asked to comment on that information (paragraphs .39 through .41), and (c) the accountants have conducted a review in accordance with section 722 of the financial statements from which the capsule financial information is derived. The same facts exist as in example A, except for the following:

- a. Sales, net income (no extraordinary items), and earnings per share for the six-month periods ended June 30, 19X6 and 19X5 (both unaudited), are included in capsule form more limited than that specified by APB Opinion 28 [AC section I73.146].
- b. No financial statements later than those for June 19X6 are available.
- c. The letter is dated July 25, 19X6, and the cutoff date is July 20, 19X6.

Paragraphs 4, 5, and 6 of example A should be revised to read as follows:

4. For purposes of this letter we have read the 19X6 minutes of the meetings of the stockholders, the board of directors, and [*include other appropriate committees, if any*] of the company and its subsidiaries as set forth in the minute books at July 20, 19X6, officials of the company having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings¹⁴ through that date were set forth therein; we have carried out other procedures to July 20, 19X6, as follows (our work did not extend to the period from July 21, 19X6, to July 25, 19X6, inclusive):

- a. With respect to the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, we have—
 - (i) Performed the procedures specified by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants for a review of interim financial information as described in SAS No. 71, *Interim Financial Information*, on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, included in the registration statement.
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in (i) comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. With respect to the six-month periods ended June 30, 19X6 and 19X5, we have—

¹⁴ See footnote 3 of the Appendix.

Other Types of Reports

- (i) Read the unaudited amounts for sales, net income, and earnings per share for the six-month periods ended June 30, 19X6 and 19X5, as set forth in paragraph [identify location].
- (ii) Performed the procedures specified by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants for a review of financial information as described in SAS No. 71, *Interim Financial Information*, on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of June 30, 19X6 and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the six-month periods ended June 30, 19X6 and 19X5 from which the unaudited amounts referred to in b(i) are derived.
- (iii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited amounts referred to in (i) are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the corresponding amounts in the audited consolidated statements of income.

The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Also, they would not necessarily reveal matters of significance with respect to the comments in the following paragraph. Accordingly, we make no representations regarding the sufficiency of the foregoing procedures for your purposes.

5. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures, however, that caused us to believe that—

- a. (i) Any material modifications should be made to the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in 4a(i), included in the registration statement, for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.
- (ii) The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in 4a(i) do not comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. (i) The unaudited amounts for sales, net income and earnings per share for the six-month periods ended June 30, 19X6 and 19X5, referred to in 4b(i) do not agree with the amounts set forth in the unaudited consolidated financial statements for those same periods.
- (ii) The unaudited amounts referred to in b(i) were not determined on a basis substantially consistent with that of the corresponding amounts in the audited consolidated statements of income.
- c. At June 30, 19X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

6. Company officials have advised us that no consolidated financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to June 30, 19X6, are available; accordingly, the procedures carried out by us with respect to changes in financial statement items after June 30, 19X6, have been, of necessity, even more limited than those with respect to the periods referred to in 4. We have inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters regarding whether (a) at July 20, 19X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 19X6 unaudited

condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement; or (b) for the period from July 1, 19X6, to July 20, 19X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income. On the basis of these inquiries and our reading of the minutes as described in 4, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that there was any such change, increase, or decrease, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

Example M: Alternate Wording When Accountants Are Aware of a Decrease in a Specified Financial Statement Item

14. Example M covers a situation in which accountants are aware of a decrease in a financial statement item on which they are requested to comment (see paragraphs .45 through .53). The same facts exist as in example A, except for the decrease covered in the following change in paragraph 5b.

- b. (i) At May 31, 19X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt or any decrease in consolidated stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement, or (ii) for the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur and except that the unaudited consolidated balance sheet as of May 31, 19X6, which we were furnished by the company, showed a decrease from March 31, 19X6, in consolidated net current assets as follows (in thousands of dollars):

	<u>Current Assets</u>	<u>Current Liabilities</u>	<u>Net Current Assets</u>
March 31, 19X6	\$4,251	\$1,356	\$2,895
May 31, 19X6	3,986	1,732	2,254

6. As mentioned in 4b, company officials have advised us that no consolidated financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 19X6, are available; accordingly, the procedures carried out by us with respect to changes in financial statement items after May 31, 19X6, have been, of necessity, even more limited than those with respect to the periods referred to in 4. We have inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters regarding whether (a) there was any change at June 23, 19X6, in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement; or (b) for the period from April 1, 19X6, to June 23, 19X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income. On the basis of these inquiries and our reading of the minutes as described in 4, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that there was any such change, increase, or decrease, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the

registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur and except as described in the following sentence. We have been informed by officials of the company that there continues to be a decrease in net current assets that is estimated to be approximately the same amount as set forth in 5b [or whatever other disclosure fits the circumstances].

Example N: Alternate Wording of the Letter for Companies That Are Permitted to Present Interim Earnings Data for a Twelve-Month Period

15. Certain types of companies are permitted to include earnings data for a twelve-month period to the date of the latest balance sheet furnished in lieu of earnings data for both the interim period between the end of the latest fiscal year and the date of the latest balance sheet and the corresponding period of the preceding fiscal year. The following would be substituted for the applicable part of paragraph 3 of example A.

3. . . . was to enable us to express our opinion on the financial statements as of December 31, 19X5, and for the year then ended, but not on the financial statements for any period included in part within that year. Therefore, we are unable to and do not express any opinion on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and the related unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the twelve months then ended included in the registration statement. . . .

Example O: Alternate Wording When the Procedures That the Underwriter Has Requested the Accountant to Perform on Interim Financial Information Are Less Than an SAS No. 71 Review

16. The example assumes that the underwriter has asked the accountants to perform specified procedures on the interim financial information and report thereon in the comfort letter. The letter is dated June 28, 19X6; procedures were performed through June 23, 19X6, the cutoff date. Since an SAS No. 71 [section 722] review was not performed on the interim financial information as of March 31, 19X6 and for the quarter then ended, the accountants are limited to reporting procedures performed and findings obtained on the interim financial information. In addition to the information presented below, the letter would also contain paragraph 7 of the typical comfort letter in example A.

June 28, 19X6

[Addressee]

Dear Sirs:

We have audited the consolidated balance sheets of The Blank Company, Inc. (the company) and the subsidiaries as of December 31, 19X5 and 19X4, and the consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 19X5 and the related financial statement schedules all included in the registration statement (no. 33-00000) on Form S-1 filed by the company under the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act); our reports with respect thereto are included in that registration statement. The registration statement, as amended on June 28, 19X6, is herein referred to as the registration statement.

Also, we have compiled the forecasted balance sheet and consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows as of December 31, 19X6 and for the year then ending, attached to the registration statement, as indicated in our report dated May 15, 19X6, which is attached.

In connection with the registration statement—

1. We are independent certified public accountants with respect to the company within the meaning of the Act and the applicable rules and regulations thereunder adopted by the SEC.

2. In our opinion [*include the phrase "except as disclosed in the registration statement," if applicable*], the consolidated financial statements and financial statement schedules audited by us and included in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

3. We have not audited any financial statements of the company as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 19X5; although we have conducted an audit for the year ended December 31, 19X5, the purpose (and therefore the scope) of the audit was to enable us to express our opinion on the consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 19X5, and for the year then ended, but not on the financial statements for any interim period within that year. Therefore, we are unable to and do not express any opinion on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, included in the registration statement, or on the financial position, results of operations, or cash flows as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 19X5.

4. For purposes of this letter, we have read the 19X6 minutes of meetings of the stockholders, the board of directors, and [*include other appropriate committees, if any*] of the company as set forth in the minute books at June 23, 19X6, officials of the company having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings¹⁵ through that date were set forth therein; we have carried out other procedures to June 23, 19X6, as follows (our work did not extend to the period from June 24, 19X6, to June 28, 19X6, inclusive):

a. With respect to the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, we have—

(i) Read the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, included in the registration statement, and agreed the amounts contained therein with the company's accounting records as of March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, and for the three-month periods then ended.

(ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in a(i): (1) are in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles¹⁶ applied on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the registration statement, and (2) comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. Those officials stated that the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements (1) are in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applied on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited financial statements, and (2) comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

¹⁵ See footnote 3 of the Appendix.

¹⁶ See footnote 5 of the Appendix.

Other Types of Reports

- b. With respect to the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, we have—
- (i) Read the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements of the company¹⁷ for April and May of both 19X5 and 19X6 furnished us by the company, and agreed the amounts contained therein to the company's accounting records. Officials of the company have advised us that no such financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 19X6, were available.
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether (1) the unaudited financial statements referred to in *b(i)* are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the registration statement, (2) at May 31, 19X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt or any decrease in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 19X6 unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement, and (3) for the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income.

Those officials stated that (1) the unaudited consolidated financial statements referred to in *4b(i)* are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the registration statement, (2) at May 31, 19X6, there was no change in the capital stock, no increase in long-term debt, and no decrease in net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement, and (3) there were no decreases for the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income.

- c. As mentioned in *4b(i)*, company officials have advised us that no financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 19X6, are available; accordingly, the procedures carried out by us with respect to changes in financial statement items after May 31, 19X6, have, of necessity, been even more limited than those with respect to the periods referred to in *4a* and *4b*. We have inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether (a) at June 23, 19X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement, or (b) for the period from April 1, 19X6, to June 23, 19X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income. Those officials stated that (1) at June 23, 19X6, there was no change in the capital stock, no increase in long-term debt and no decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet,

¹⁷ See footnote 4 of the Appendix.

and (2) for the period from April 1, 19X6, to June 23, 19X6, there were no decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income.

The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. We make no representations regarding the sufficiency of the foregoing procedures for your purposes. Had we performed additional procedures or had we conducted an audit or a review, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

5. At your request, we also performed the following procedures:

- a. Read the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated statements of income for the year ended December 31, 19X5, and the three-month period ended March 31, 19X6, included in the registration statement.
- b. Inquired of certain officials of the company and of XYZ Company (the company being acquired) who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters as to whether all significant assumptions regarding the business combination had been reflected in the pro forma adjustments and whether the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in (a) comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of rule 11-02 of Regulation S-X.

Those officials referred to above stated, in response to our inquiries, that all significant assumptions regarding the business combination had been reflected in the pro forma adjustments and that the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in (a) comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of rule 11-02 of Regulation S-X.

- c. Compared the historical financial information for the company included on page 20 in the registration statement with historical financial information for the company on page 12 and found them to be in agreement.

We also compared the financial information included on page 20 of the registration statement with the historical information for XYZ Company on page 13 and found them to be in agreement.

- d. Proved the arithmetic accuracy of the application of the pro forma adjustments to the historical amounts in the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements.

The foregoing procedures are less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on management's assumptions, the pro forma adjustments, and the application of those adjustments to historical financial information. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. We make no representation about the sufficiency of the foregoing procedures for your purposes. Had we performed additional procedures or had we made an examination of the pro forma financial information, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

6. At your request, we performed the following procedures with respect to the forecasted consolidated balance sheet and consolidated statements of income and cash flows as of December 31, 19X6, and for the year then ending. With respect to forecasted rental income, we compared the occupancy statistics about expected demand for rental of the housing units to statistics for existing comparable properties and found them to be the same.

Because the procedures described above do not constitute an examination of prospective financial statements in accordance with standards established by

the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, we do not express an opinion on whether the prospective financial statements are presented in conformity with AICPA presentation guidelines or on whether the underlying assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the presentation. Furthermore, there will usually be differences between the forecasted and actual results, because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected, and those differences may be material. We make no representations about the sufficiency of such procedures for your purposes. Had we performed additional procedures or had we made an examination of the forecast in accordance with standards established by the AICPA, matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

Example P: A Typical Comfort Letter in a Non-1933 Act Offering, Including the Required Underwriter Representations

17. Example P is applicable when a comfort letter is issued in a non-1933 Act offering. The underwriter has given the accountants a letter including the representations regarding their due diligence review process, as described in paragraphs .06 and .07, and the comfort letter refers to those representations. In addition, the example assumes that the accountants were unable, or were not requested, to perform an SAS No. 71 [section 722] review of a subsequent interim period and therefore no negative assurance has been given. See paragraph .47.

November 30, 19X5

[Addressee]

Dear Sirs:

We have audited the balance sheets of Example City, Any State Utility System as of June 30, 19X5 and 19X4, and the statements of revenues, expenses, and changes in retained earnings and cash flows for the years then ended, included in the Official Statement for \$30,000,000 of Example City, Any State Utility System Revenue Bonds due November 30, 19Z5. Our report with respect thereto is included in the Official Statement. This Official Statement, dated November 30, 19X5, is herein referred to as the Official Statement.

This letter is being furnished in reliance upon your representation to us that—

- a. You are knowledgeable with respect to the due diligence review process that would be performed if this placement of securities were being registered pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act).
- b. In connection with the offering of revenue bonds, the review process you have performed is substantially consistent with the due diligence review process that you would have performed if this placement of securities were being registered pursuant to the Act.

In connection with the Official Statement—

1. We are independent certified public accountants with respect to Example City, Any State and its Utility System under rule 101 of the AICPA's *Code of Professional Conduct*, and its interpretations and rulings.

2. We have not audited any financial statements of Example City, Any State Utility System as of any date or for any period subsequent to June 30, 19X5; although we have conducted an audit for the year ended June 30, 19X5, the purpose (and therefore the scope) of the audit was to enable us to express our opinion on the financial statements as of June 30, 19X5, and for the year then ended, but not on the financial statements for any interim period within that year. Therefore, we are unable to and do not express any opinion on the financial position, results of operations, or cash flows as of any date or for any period subsequent to June 30, 19X5, for the Example City, Any State Utility System.

3. For purposes of this letter we have read the 19X5 minutes of the meetings of the City Council of Example City, Any State as set forth in the minutes books as of November 25, 19X5, the City Clerk of Example City having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings¹⁸ through that date were set forth therein.

4. With respect to the period subsequent to June 30, 19X5, we have carried out other procedures to November 25, 19X5, as follows (our work did not extend to the period from November 26, 19X5, to November 30, 19X5, inclusive):

- We have inquired of, and received assurance from, city officials who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters, that no financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to June 30, 19X5, are available.
- We have inquired of those officials regarding whether (a) at November 25, 19X5, there was any increase in long-term debt or any decrease in net current assets of Example City, Any State Utility System as compared with amounts shown on the June 30, 19X5, balance sheet, included in the Official Statement, or (b) for the period from July 1, 19X5, to November 25, 19X5, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in total operating revenues, income from operations or net income. Those officials stated that (1) at November 25, 19X5, there was no increase in long-term debt and no decrease in net current assets of the Example City, Any State Utility System as compared with amounts shown in the June 30, 19X5, balance sheet; and (2) there were no decreases for the period from July 1, 19X5, to November 25, 19X5, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in total operating revenues, income from operations, or net income, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the Official Statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

5. For accounting data pertaining to the years 19X3 through 19X5, inclusive, shown on page 11 of the Official Statement, we have (i) for data shown in the audited financial statements, compared such data with the audited financial statements of the Example City, Any State Utility System for 19X3 through 19X5 and found them to be in agreement; and (ii) for data not directly shown in the audited financial statements, compared such data with the general ledger and accounting records of the Utility System from which such information was derived, and found them to be in agreement.

6. The procedures enumerated in the preceding paragraphs do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Accordingly, we make no representations regarding the sufficiency of the foregoing procedures for your purposes.

7. This letter is solely for the information of the addressees and to assist the underwriters in conducting and documenting their investigation of the affairs of the Example City, Any State Utility System in connection with the offering of securities covered by the Official Statement, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to for any other purpose, including but not limited to the purchase or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to in whole or in part in the Official Statement or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in the Purchase Contract or in any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of securities covered by the Official Statement.

¹⁸ See footnote 3 of paragraph .03.

Example Q: Letter to a Requesting Party That Has Not Provided the Representation Letter Described in Paragraphs .06 and .07

18. This example assumes that these procedures are being performed at the request of the placement agent on information included in an offering circular in connection with a private placement of unsecured notes with two insurance companies.¹⁹ The letter is dated June 30, 19X6; procedures were performed through June 25, 19X6, the cutoff date. The statements in paragraphs 5 through 9 of the example should be included in any letter issued pursuant to paragraph .09.²⁰

June 30, 19X6

[Addressee]

Dear Sirs:

We have audited the consolidated balance sheets of The Blank Company, Inc. (the company) and subsidiaries as of December 31, 19X5 and 19X4, and the consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 19X5, included in the offering circular for \$30,000,000 of notes due June 30, 20X6. Our report with respect thereto is included in the offering circular. The offering circular dated June 30, 19X6, is herein referred to as the offering circular.

We are independent certified public accountants with respect to the company under rule 101 of the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct, and its interpretations and rulings.²¹

We have not audited any financial statements of the company as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 19X5; although we have conducted an audit for the year ended December 31, 19X5, the purpose (and, therefore, the scope) of the audit was to enable us to express our opinion on the consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 19X5, and for the year then ended, but not on the financial statements for any interim period within that year. Therefore, we are unable to and do not express any opinion on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, included in the offering circular, or on the financial position, results of operations, or cash flows as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 19X5.

¹⁹ This same example could be used in conjunction with a municipal bond offering in which the accountant has not received the representation letter described in paragraphs .06 and .07. [Footnote added, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76.]

²⁰ This example may also be used in connection with a filing under the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act) when a party other than a named underwriter (for example, a selling shareholder) has not provided the accountant with the representation letter described in paragraphs .06 and .07. In such a situation, this example may be modified to include the accountant's comments on independence and compliance as to form of the audited financial statements and financial statement schedules with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. Example paragraph 1a(ii) may include an inquiry, and the response of company officials, on compliance as to form of the unaudited condensed interim financial statements. [Footnote added, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76.]

²¹ See paragraphs .31 and .32 for guidance in commenting on independence. [Footnote added, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76.]

1. At your request, we have read the 19X6 minutes of meetings of the stockholders, the board of directors, and *[include other appropriate committees, if any]* of the company as set forth in the minute books at June 25, 19X6, officials of the company having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings²² through that date were set forth therein; we have carried out other procedures to June 25, 19X6 (our work did not extend to the period from June 26, 19X6, to June 30, 19X6, inclusive), as follows:

- a. With respect to the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, we have—
 - (i) Read the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows,^{23, 24} of the company for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, included in the offering circular, and agreed the amounts contained therein with the company's accounting records as of March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, and for the three-month periods then ended.
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in a(i) are in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applied on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the offering circular. Those officials stated that the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements are in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applied on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements.
- b. With respect to the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, we have—
 - (i) Read the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements of the company for April and May of both 19X5 and 19X6, furnished us by the company, and agreed the amounts contained therein with the company's accounting records. Officials of the company have advised us that no financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 19X6, were available.
 - (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether (1) the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in b(i) are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the offering circular, (2) at May 31, 19X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt or any decrease in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet in-

²² See footnote 3 of the Appendix. [Footnote added, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76.]

²³ See footnotes 4 and 5 of the Appendix. [Footnote added, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76.]

²⁴ Generally, accountants should recognize that the criteria for summarized financial information have not been established for entities other than SEC registrants. [Footnote added, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76.]

cluded in the offering circular, and (3) for the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income.

Those officials stated that (1) the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements referred to in *b(ii)* are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the offering circular, (2) at May 31, 19X6, there was no change in the capital stock, no increase in long-term debt, and no decrease in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the offering circular, and (3) there were no decreases for the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income.

- c. As mentioned in *1b*, company officials have advised us that no financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 19X6, are available; accordingly, the procedures carried out by us with respect to changes in financial statement items after May 31, 19X6, have, of necessity, been even more limited than those with respect to the periods referred to in *1a* and *1b*. We have inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether (i) at June 25, 19X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the offering circular or (ii) for the period from April 1, 19X6, to June 25, 19X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income.

Those officials referred to above stated that (i) at June 25, 19X6, there was no change in the capital stock, no increase in long-term debt, and no decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet, and (ii) there were no decreases for the period from April 1, 19X6, to June 25, 19X6, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income.

2. At your request, we have read the following items in the offering circular on the indicated pages.²⁵

²⁵ In some cases it may be considered desirable to combine in one paragraph the substance of paragraphs 2 and 4. This may be done by expanding the identification of terms in paragraph 4 to provide the identification information contained in paragraph 2. In such cases the introductory sentences in paragraphs 2 and 4 and the text of paragraph 3 might be combined as follows: "At your request, we have also read the following information and have performed the additional procedures stated below with respect to such information. Our audit of the consolidated financial statements...." [Footnote added, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76.]

<u>Item</u>	<u>Page</u>	<u>Description</u>
<i>a</i>	13	"History and Business—Sales and Marketing." The table following the first paragraph.
<i>b</i>	22	"Executive Compensation—19X5 Compensation."
<i>c</i>	33	"Selected Financial Data." ²⁶

3. Our audits of the consolidated financial statements for the periods referred to in the introductory paragraph of this letter comprised audit tests and procedures deemed necessary for the purpose of expressing an opinion on such financial statements taken as a whole. For none of the periods referred to therein, nor for any other period, did we perform audit tests for the purpose of expressing an opinion on individual balances of accounts or summaries of selected transactions such as those enumerated above, and, accordingly, we express no opinion thereon.

4. However, at your request, we have performed the following additional procedures, which were applied as indicated with respect to the items enumerated above.

<u>Item in 2</u>	<u>Procedures and Findings</u>
<i>a</i>	We compare the amounts of military sales, commercial sales, and total sales shown in the registration statement with the balances in the appropriate accounts in the company's accounting records for the respective fiscal years and for the unaudited interim periods and found them to be in agreement. We proved the arithmetic accuracy of the percentages of such amounts of military sales and commercial sales to total sales for the respective fiscal years and for the unaudited interim periods. We compared such computed percentages with the corresponding percentages appearing in the registration statement and found them to be in agreement.
<i>b</i>	We compared the dollar amounts of compensation (salary, bonus, and other compensation) for each individual listed in the table "Annual Compensation" with the corresponding amounts shown by the individual employee earnings records for the year 19X5 and found them to be in agreement. We compared the dollar amounts shown under the heading of "Long-Term Compensation" on page 24 for each listed individual and the aggregate amounts for executive officers with corresponding amounts shown in an analysis prepared by the company and found such amounts to be in agreement.
<i>c</i>	We compared the amounts of net sales, income from continuing operations, income from continuing operations per common share, and cash dividends declared per common share for the years ended December 31, 19X5, 19X4, and 19X3, with the respective amounts in the consolidated financial statements on pages 27 and 28 and the amounts for the years ended December 31, 19X2, and 19X1, with the respective amounts in the consolidated financial statements included in the company's annual reports to stockholders for 19X2 and 19X1 and found them to be in agreement. We compared the amounts of total assets, long-term obligations, and redeemable preferred stock at December 31, 19X5 and 19X4, with the respective amounts in the consolidated financial statements on pages 27 and 28 and the amounts at December 31, 19X3, and 19X2, and 19X1 with the corresponding amounts in the consolidated financial statements included in the company's annual reports to stockholders for 19X3, 19X2, and 19X1 and found them to be in agreement.

²⁶ See footnote 10 of the Appendix. [Footnote added, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76.]

5. It should be understood that we have no responsibility for establishing (and did not establish) the scope and nature of the procedures enumerated in paragraphs 1 through 4 above; rather, the procedures enumerated therein are those the requesting party asked us to perform. Accordingly, we make no representations regarding questions of legal interpretation²⁷ or regarding the sufficiency for your purposes of the procedures enumerated in the preceding paragraphs; also, such procedures would not necessarily reveal any material misstatement of the amounts or percentages listed above as set forth in the offering circular. Further, we have addressed ourselves solely to the foregoing data and make no representations regarding the adequacy of disclosures or whether any material facts have been omitted. This letter relates only to the financial statement items specified above and does not extend to any financial statement of the company taken as a whole.

6. The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Had we performed additional procedures or had we conducted an audit or a review of the company's March 31, April 30, or May 31, 19X6 and 19X5, condensed consolidated financial statements in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

7. These procedures should not be taken to supplant any additional inquiries or procedures that you would undertake in your consideration of the proposed offering.

8. This letter is solely for your information and to assist you in your inquiries in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the offering circular, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to for any other purpose, including but not limited to the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to in whole or in part in the offering document or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the offering document.

9. We have no responsibility to update this letter for events and circumstances occurring after June 25, 19X6.

Example R: Comfort Letter That Includes Reference to Examination of Annual MD&A and Review of Interim MD&A

19. This example assumes the following circumstances.²⁸ The prospectus (part I of the registration statement) includes audited consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 19X5 and 19X4, and audited consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 19X5. Part I also includes an unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5. Part II of the registration statement includes audited consolidated financial statement schedules for the three years ended December 31, 19X5. The accountants have examined the company's management's

²⁷ See footnote 7 to paragraph .09. [Footnote added, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76.]

²⁸ The example includes financial statements required by SEC regulations to be included in the filing. If additional financial information is covered by the comfort letter, appropriate modifications should be made. [Footnote added, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

discussion and analysis (MD&A) for the year ended December 31, 19X5, in accordance with AT section 701; the accountants have also performed reviews of the company's unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements, referred to above, in accordance with section 722, and the company's MD&A for the three-month period ended March 31, 19X6, in accordance with AT section 701. The accountant's reports on the examination and review of MD&A have been previously issued, but not distributed publicly; none of these reports is included in the registration statement. The cutoff date is June 23, 19X6, and the letter is dated June 28, 19X6. The effective date is June 28, 19X6.

Each of the comments in the letter is in response to a requirement of the underwriting agreement. For purposes of example R, the income statement items of the current interim period are to be compared with those of the corresponding period of the preceding year.

June 28, 19X6

[Addressee]

Dear Sirs:

We have audited the consolidated balance sheets of The Blank Company, Inc. (the company) and subsidiaries as of December 31, 19X5 and 19X4, and the consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 19X5, and the related financial statement schedules, all included in the registration statement (no. 33-00000) on Form S-1 filed by the company under the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act); our reports with respect thereto are also included in that registration statement. The registration statement, as amended on June 28, 19X6, is herein referred to as the registration statement. Also, we have examined²⁹ the company's Management's Discussion and Analysis for the year ended December 31, 19X5, included in the registration statement, as indicated in our report dated March 28, 19X6; our report with respect thereto is attached.³⁰ We have also reviewed the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements as of March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, and for the three-month periods then ended, included in the registration statement, as indicated in our report dated May 15, 19X6, and have also reviewed the company's Management's Discussion and Analysis for the three-month period ended March 31, 19X6, included in the registration statement, as indicated in our report dated May 15, 19X6; our reports with respect thereto are attached.³¹

In connection with the registration statement—

1. We are independent certified public accountants with respect to the company within the meaning of the Act and the applicable rules and regulations thereunder adopted by the SEC.

2. In our opinion [*include the phrase "except as disclosed in the registration statement," if applicable*], the consolidated financial statements and financial statement schedules audited by us and included in the registration statement comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.

²⁹ If the accountant has performed a review of the company's annual MD&A, the opening paragraph of the comfort letter should be revised accordingly. [Footnote added, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

³⁰ The accountant has elected to attach the previously issued reports to the comfort letter (see paragraph .29). [Footnote added, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

³¹ See footnote 30 of the Appendix. [Footnote added, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

3. We have not audited any financial statements of the company as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 19X5; although we have conducted an audit for the year ended December 31, 19X5, the purpose (and therefore the scope) of the audit was to enable us to express our opinion on the consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 19X5, and for the year then ended, but not on the financial statements for any interim period within that year. Therefore, we are unable to and do not express any opinion on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 1, 19X6 and 19X5, included in the registration statement, or on the financial position, results of operations, or cash flows as of any date or for any period subsequent to December 31, 19X5.

4. We have not examined any management's discussion and analysis of the company as of or for any period subsequent to December 31, 19X5; although we have made an examination of the company's Management's Discussion and Analysis for the year ended December 31, 19X5, included in the company's registration statement, the purpose (and therefore the scope) of the examination was to enable us to express our opinion on such Management's Discussion and Analysis, but not on the management's discussion and analysis for any interim period within that year. Therefore, we are unable to and do not express any opinion on the Management's Discussion and Analysis for the three-month period ended March 31, 19X6, included in the registration statement, or for any period subsequent to March 31, 19X6.

5. For purposes of this letter we have read the 19X6 minutes of meetings of the stockholders, the board of directors, and [*include other appropriate committees, if any*] of the company and its subsidiaries as set forth in the minute books at June 23, 19X6, officials of the company having advised us that the minutes of all such meetings³² through that date were set forth therein; we have carried out other procedures to June 23, 19X6, as follows (our work did not extend to the period from June 24, 19X6, to June 28, 19X6, inclusive):

- a. With respect to the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, we have inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 19X6, and the unaudited condensed consolidated statements of income, retained earnings (stockholders' equity), and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 19X6 and 19X5, included in the registration statement, comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. With respect to the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, we have—
 - (i) Read the unaudited consolidated financial statements³³ of the company and subsidiaries for April and May of both 19X5 and 19X6 furnished to us by the company, officials of the company having advised us that no such financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 19X6, were available.

³² See footnote 3 of the Appendix. [Footnote added, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

³³ See footnote 4 of the Appendix. [Footnote added, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

- (ii) Inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether the unaudited consolidated financial statements referred to in item b(i) are stated on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited consolidated financial statements included in the registration statement.

The foregoing procedures do not constitute an audit of financial statements conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Also, they would not necessarily reveal matters of significance with respect to the comments in the following paragraph. Accordingly, we make no representations regarding the sufficiency of the foregoing procedures for your purposes.

6. Nothing came to our attention as a result of the foregoing procedures, however, that caused us³⁴ to believe that—

- a. The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements described in item 5a do not comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. (i) At May 31, 19X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt, or decrease in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown in the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement, or
- (ii) For the period from April 1, 19X6, to May 31, 19X6, there were any decreases, as compared to the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

7. As mentioned in item 5b, company officials have advised us that no consolidated financial statements as of any date or for any period subsequent to May 31, 19X6, are available; accordingly, the procedures carried out by us with respect to changes in financial statement items after May 31, 19X6, have, of necessity, been even more limited than those with respect to the periods referred to in item 5. We have inquired of certain officials of the company who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters whether (a) at June 23, 19X6, there was any change in the capital stock, increase in long-term debt or any decreases in consolidated net current assets or stockholders' equity of the consolidated companies as compared with amounts shown on the March 31, 19X6, unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheet included in the registration statement or (b) for the period from April 1, 19X6, to June 23, 19X6, there were any decreases, as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year, in consolidated net sales or in the total or per-share amounts of income before extraordinary items or of net income. On the basis of these inquiries and our reading of the minutes as described in item 5, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that there was any such change, increase, or decrease, except in all instances for changes, increases, or decreases that the registration statement discloses have occurred or may occur.

³⁴ See footnote 5 of the Appendix. [Footnote added, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86.]

8. This letter is solely for the information of the addressees and to assist the underwriters in conducting and documenting their investigation of the affairs of the company in connection with the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement, and it is not to be used, circulated, quoted, or otherwise referred to within or without the underwriting group for any purpose, including but not limited to the registration, purchase, or sale of securities, nor is it to be filed with or referred to in whole or in part in the registration statement or any other document, except that reference may be made to it in the underwriting agreement or in any list of closing documents pertaining to the offering of the securities covered by the registration statement.

[Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for letters issued pursuant to paragraph .09 of this section after April 30, 1996, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76. As amended, effective for comfort letters issued on or after June 30, 1998, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 86. Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

AU Section 9634***Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties: Auditing Interpretations of Section 634*****1. Letters to Directors Relating to Annual Reports on Form 10-K^[*]**

.01 Question—Annual reports to the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) on Form 10-K must be signed by at least a majority of the registrant's board of directors. In reviewing the Form 10-K, directors may seek the involvement of the registrant's independent auditors and other professionals.

.02 What types of services could the auditor perform at the request of the board of directors in connection with the Form 10-K? For example, is it permissible for the auditor to comment on compliance of the registrant's Form 10-K with the requirements of the various SEC rules and regulations?^[1]

.03 Interpretation—The auditor can express an opinion to the board of directors on whether the financial statements and financial statement schedules audited comply as to form with the applicable accounting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and the related rules and regulations thereunder adopted by the SEC (see section 634.33).²

.04 The auditor may affirm to the board of directors that under generally accepted auditing standards the auditor is required to read the information in addition to audited financial statements contained in the Form 10-K, for the purpose of considering whether such information may be materially inconsistent with information appearing in the financial statements (see section 550). However, the report to the board of directors should state that the auditor has no obligation to perform any procedures to corroborate such information.

.05 In addition, the auditor could perform, at the request of the board of directors, specified procedures and report the results of those procedures concerning various information contained in the Form 10-K such as tables, statistics and other financial information. There should be a clear understanding with the board as to the nature, extent and limitations of the procedures to be performed and as to the kind of report to be issued. Although the guidance provided in section 634 is intended primarily for auditors issuing a letter to underwriters and certain other requesting parties in connection with an offering of securities, the guidance in section 634.54–60 would also be applicable when the auditor is asked to furnish a letter to the board of directors in connection with the filing of Form 10-K under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.³ The types of information on which auditors may comment are described in section 634.55. The auditor should comment only on that information

[*] Footnote deleted June 1993, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 72.

[1] Footnote deleted June 1993, by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 72.

² The auditor should not provide any assurance on compliance with the provisions of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 regarding controls. See the guidance provided in AT section 501, *Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*, paragraph .82.

³ Section 634.12 states in part: "Accountants will normally be willing to assist the underwriter but the assistance accountants can provide by way of comfort letters is subject to limitations. One limitation is that independent accountants can properly comment in their professional capacity only on matters to which his professional expertise is substantially relevant."

if the criteria in section 634.55 and .57 have been met. The comments should be made in the form of description of procedures performed and findings obtained, ordinarily expressed in terms of agreement between items compared.

.06 Certain financial information in Form 10-K is included because of specific requirements of Regulation S-K. The auditor may comment as to whether this information is in conformity with the disclosure requirements of Regulation S-K if the conditions in section 634.57 are met. Section 634.57 identifies the disclosure requirements of Regulation S-K that generally meet those conditions. The auditor is limited to giving negative assurance, since this information is not given in the form of financial statements and generally has not been audited by the accountants. (See section 634.57.)

.07 The auditor should not comment on matters that are primarily subjective or judgmental in nature such as those included in Item 7 of Form 10-K, "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations." For example, changes between periods in gross profit ratios may be caused by factors that are not necessarily within the expertise of auditors. However, the auditor can comment on specific changes in comparative amounts that are included in management's discussion if the amounts used to compute such changes are obtained from the financial statements or accounting records as discussed in section 634.55, but cannot comment with respect to the appropriateness of the explanations.

.08 There are no criteria by which to measure the sufficiency of the procedures performed by the accountants for the directors' purposes. Ordinarily the auditor should discuss with the directors or the audit committee the procedures to be performed and may suggest procedures that might be meaningful in the circumstances. However, the auditor should clearly indicate to the board of directors that the auditor cannot make any representations as to whether the agreed-upon procedures are sufficient for the directors' purposes.

.09 It should not ordinarily be necessary for the auditor to reaffirm the auditor's independence to the board of directors. If such a representation is requested, however, the auditor may include in the letter a statement similar to that described in section 634.31.

[Issue Date: April, 1981; Modified: May, 1981;
Revised: June, 1993; Revised: January, 2001.]

[2.] Negative Assurance on Unaudited Condensed Interim Financial Statements Attached to Comfort Letters

[.10-.12] [Deleted April, 1993 by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 72.]

3. Commenting in a Comfort Letter on Quantitative Disclosures About Market Risk Made in Accordance With Item 305 of Regulation S-K

.13 *Introduction*—Regulation S-K, Item 305, *Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk*, requires certain quantitative and qualitative disclosures with respect to—

- a. Derivative financial instruments, generally as defined in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. 119, *Disclosure about Derivative Financial Instruments and Fair Value of Financial Instruments* [AC section F25],
- b. Other financial instruments, generally as defined in FASB Statement No. 107, *Disclosures about Fair Value of Financial Instruments* [AC section F25], and

- c. Derivative commodity instruments, such as commodity futures, forwards, and swaps that are permitted by contract or custom to be settled in cash.

Collectively these instruments are referred to as “market-risk-sensitive instruments.”

.14 In addition to qualitative (i.e., descriptive) disclosures, Item 305 requires quantitative disclosures that may be presented in the form of a tabular presentation, sensitivity analysis, or value-at-risk disclosures. Disclosures generally include a combination of historical and fair value data and the hypothetical effects on such data of assumed changes in interest rates, foreign currency exchange rates, commodity prices and other relevant market rates. The quantitative and qualitative information required by Item 305 should be disclosed outside the financial statements and related notes thereto.

.15 Question—May an accountant provide positive or negative assurance on conformity with Item 305 of Regulation S-K?

.16 Interpretation—Section 634, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties*, paragraph .57, states that accountants may not give positive assurance on conformity of information with the disclosure requirements of Regulation S-K since this information is not in the form of financial statements and generally has not been audited by the accountants. Accountants may provide negative assurance on conformity with Regulation S-K only if the following conditions are met:

- a. The information is derived from the accounting records subject to the entity’s controls over financial reporting, or has been derived directly from such accounting records by analysis or computation.
- b. This information is capable of evaluation against reasonable criteria that have been established by the SEC.

Although some information needed to comply with Item 305 is derived from the accounting records, registrants must also provide a substantial amount of information that is not derived from accounting records subject to the entity’s controls over financial reporting. As a result, accountants should not provide negative assurance on conformity with Item 305 of Regulation S-K.

.17 Question—May an accountant otherwise provide comments in a comfort letter on items disclosed by registrants in accordance with Item 305 of Regulation S-K?

.18 Interpretation—Section 634.55 states that accountants should comment only with respect to information—

- a. That is expressed in dollars (or percentages derived from such dollar amounts) and that has been obtained from accounting records that are subject to the entity’s controls over financial reporting or
- b. That has been derived directly from such accounting records by analysis or computation.

As a result, accountants should not comment on the Item 305 qualitative disclosures.

.19 The three alternative forms of quantitative disclosures under Item 305 reflect hypothetical effects on market-risk-sensitive instruments and result in differing presentations. The forward-looking information used to prepare these presentations may be substantially removed from the accounting records that are subject to the entity’s controls over financial reporting. Further, section 634.55 also states that “the accountants should not comment on matters merely because they happen to be present and are capable of reading, counting, measur-

ing, or performing other functions that might be applicable.” Accordingly, an accountant’s ability to comment on these disclosures is largely dependent upon the degree to which the forward-looking information used to prepare these disclosures is linked to such accounting records.

.20 The tabular presentation includes the fair values of market-risk-sensitive instruments and contract terms to determine the future cash flows from those instruments that are categorized by expected maturity dates. This approach may require the use of yield curves and implied forward rates to determine expected maturity dates, as well as assumptions regarding prepayments and weighted average interest rates.

.21 The term *sensitivity analysis* describes a general class of models that are designed to assess the risk of loss in market-risk-sensitive instruments, based upon hypothetical changes in market rates or prices. Sensitivity analysis does not refer to any one, specific model and may include duration analysis or other “sensitivity” measures. The disclosures are dependent upon assumptions about theoretical future market conditions and, therefore, are not derived from the accounting records.

.22 The term *value at risk* describes a general class of models that provide a probabilistic assessment of the risk of loss in market-risk-sensitive instruments over a selected period of time, with a selected likelihood of occurrences based upon selected confidence intervals. Value-at-risk disclosures are extremely aggregated and, in addition to the assumptions made for sensitivity analyses, may include additional assumptions regarding correlation between asset classes and future market volatilities. As a result, these disclosures are not derived from the accounting records.

.23 Of the three disclosure alternatives, the tabular presentation contains the most limited number of assumptions and least complex mathematical calculations. Furthermore, certain information, such as contractual terms, included in a tabular presentation is derived from the accounting records. Accordingly, accountants may perform limited procedures related to tabular presentations to the extent that such information is derived from the accounting records.

.24 The modeling techniques and underlying assumptions utilized for sensitivity analysis and value-at-risk disclosures generally will be highly complex. The resultant disclosures may be substantially different from the basic historical financial input derived directly from the accounting records. Due to the hypothetical and forward-looking nature of these disclosures and the potentially limited usefulness of any procedures that may be performed, accountants should not agree to make any comments or perform any procedures related to sensitivity analysis or value-at-risk disclosures.

.25 When performing procedures related to tabular presentation disclosures, the accountant will need to consider whether the entity’s documentation of its contractual positions in derivatives, commodities and other financial instruments is subject to the entity’s controls over financial reporting and whether it provides a complete record of the entity’s market-risk-sensitive instruments. In addition, the accountant should disclaim as to the reasonableness of the assumptions underlying the disclosures.

.26 Item 305 requires registrants to stratify financial instruments according to market risk category, i.e., interest rate risk, foreign exchange risk, and equity price risk. Item 305 stipulates that, if an instrument is at risk in more than one category, the instrument should be included in the disclosures for each applicable category. In reporting findings from agreed-upon procedures re-

lating to market risk categories, the accountant should not provide any findings that the company's stratifications are complete or comply as to form with Item 305 requirements and should disclaim with respect to the company's determination of market risk categories.

.27 Item 305 encourages registrants to provide quantitative and qualitative information about market risk in terms of, among other things, the magnitude of actual past market movements and estimates of possible near-term market movements. Accountants should not agree to perform any procedures related to such market data.

.28 The accountant should establish a clear understanding with the underwriter as to the limitations of the procedures to be performed with respect to the market risk disclosures. Further, accountants should consider the need to utilize a specialist in performing procedures related to those disclosures.

.29 The following examples, based upon Example H of section 634.64, provide very simplified procedures, findings and limitations related to Item 305 tabular presentation disclosures. In practice, the procedures generally will be substantially more complex.

Symbol

Procedures and Findings

✓ Compared with a schedule prepared by the Company from its accounting records. We (a) compared the amounts on the schedule to corresponding amounts appearing in the accounting records and found such amounts to be in agreement and (b) determined that the schedule was mathematically correct. However, we make no comment as to the appropriateness or completeness of the Company's classification of its market-risk-sensitive instruments into market risk categories, nor as to its determination of the expected maturity dates or amounts. (Note: This is an example of procedures related to tabular presentations of face amounts, carrying amounts, fair values and notional amounts which stratify such amounts as to interest rate risk.)

⊗ Compared with a schedule prepared by the Company from its accounting records to calculate weighted average fixed interest rates and weighted average fixed pay and receive rates, and found such percentages to be in agreement. We (a) compared the amounts on the schedule to corresponding amounts appearing in the accounting records and found such amounts to be in agreement and (b) determined that the schedule was mathematically correct. However, we make no comment as to the appropriateness of the Company's methodology in calculating weighted average fixed rates.

(Note: It may be necessary to provide a more complete description of the procedures performed in other circumstances.)

We make no comment as to the appropriateness or completeness of the Company's determination of the Regulation S-K requirements for quantitative and qualitative disclosures about market risks or with respect to the reasonableness of the assumptions underlying the disclosures.

[The following is an extract from a registration statement that illustrates how an accountant can document procedures performed on a tabular presentation of market risk disclosures made in accordance with Item 305 of Regulation S-K.]

INTEREST RATE SENSITIVITY

The table below provides information about the Company's derivative financial instruments and other financial instruments that are sensitive to changes in interest rates, including interest rate swaps and debt obligations. For debt obligations, the table presents principal cash flows and related weighted average interest rates by expected maturity dates. For interest rate swaps, the table presents notional amounts and weighted average interest rates by expected maturity dates. Notional amounts are used to calculate the contractual payments to be exchanged under the contract. Weighted average variable rates are based on implied forward rates in the yield curve at the reporting date. The information is presented in U.S. dollar equivalents, which is the Company's reporting currency. The instrument's actual cash flows are denominated in both U.S. dollars (\$US) and German deutschmarks (DM), as indicated in parentheses.

Expected maturity dates							Fair Value
	19X2 ⁴	19X3 ⁴	19X4 ⁴	19X5 ⁴	Thereafter ⁴	Total	
Liabilities	(\$US equivalent in millions)						
Long-Term Debt:							
Fixed Rate (\$US)	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX✓	\$XXX✓
Average interest rate	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%⊗	
Fixed Rate (DM)	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX✓	XXX✓
Average interest rate	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%⊗	
Variable Rate (\$US)	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX✓	XXX✓
Average interest rate	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX% ⁴	
Interest Rate Derivatives	(\$US equivalent in millions)						
Interest Rate Swaps:							
Variable to Fixed (\$US)	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX	\$XXX✓	\$XXX✓
Average pay rate-fixed	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%⊗	
Average receive rate-variable	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX% ⁴	
Fixed to Variable (\$US)	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX✓	XXX✓
Average pay rate-variable	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX% ⁴	
Average receive rate-fixed	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%	XX%⊗	

[Issue Date: August, 1998.]

⁴ No findings should be expressed on amounts in these columns because these disclosures include either management's expectations of future cash flows or the use of implied forward rates applied to such expected cash flows. Accordingly, such information does not meet the criteria of section 634.55.

AU Section 9642**Reporting on Internal Accounting Control:
Auditing Interpretations of SAS No. 30**

Many of the interpretations in this section were based on the concepts in Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 30, *Reporting on Internal Accounting Control*. SAS No. 30 was superseded in May 1993 by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAE) No. 2, *Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*. Subsequently, SSAE No. 2 was superseded by SSAE No. 10, *Attestation Standards: Revision and Recodification*, which was issued in January 2001. The AICPA's Auditing Standards Board decided at its October 1993 meeting to delete these interpretations. Notes have been included below to indicate where current guidance may be found in AICPA literature.

[1.] Pre-Award Surveys^[*]

[.01-.03] [Deleted October 1993.] (See the guidance provided in paragraphs .01-.08 of attest interpretation No. 1 of SSAE No. 10, chapter 5 (AT section 9501.01-.08). [Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

[2.] Award Survey Made in Conjunction With an Audit

[.04-.05] [Deleted October 1993.] (See the guidance provided in paragraphs .01-.08 of attest interpretation No. 1 of SSAE No. 10, chapter 5 (AT section 9501.01-.08). [Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

[3.] Reporting on Matters Not Covered by Government-Established Criteria

[.06-.07] [Deleted October 1993. Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

[4.] Limited Scope

[.08-.09] [Deleted October 1993.] (See the guidance provided in SSAE No. 10, chapter 5, paragraph 5.69 (AT section 501.69).) [Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

[5.] Compliance With the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977

[.10-.13] [Deleted October 1993.] (See the guidance provided in SSAE No. 10, chapter 5, paragraph 5.82 (AT section 501.82).) [Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

[*] [Footnote deleted, October 1993.]

[6.] Reports on Internal Accounting Control of Trust Departments of Banks

[.14–.17] [Deleted October 1993.] (See the guidance provided in SSAE No. 10, chapter 5, paragraph 5.69 (AT section 501.69).) [Revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

[7.] Report Required by U.S. General Accounting Office^[1-7]

[.18–.25] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 60, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 325.)

[8.] Form of Report on Internal Accounting Control Based Solely on a Study and Evaluation Made as Part of an Audit^[8-10]

[.26–.32] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 60, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 325.)

[9.] Reporting on Internal Accounting Control Based Solely on an Audit When a Minimum Study and Evaluation Is Made

[.33–.34] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 60, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 325.)

[10.] Report Required by U.S. General Accounting Office Based on a Financial and Compliance Audit When a Study and Evaluation Does Not Extend Beyond the Preliminary Review Phase^[11-15]

[.35–.36] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 60, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 325.)

[11.] Restricted Purpose Report Required by Law to Be Made Available to the Public^[16]

[.37–.38] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 60, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 325.)

[12.] Reporting on Internal Accounting Control “Compliance With the Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act”^[*]

[.39–.41] [Deleted October 1993.]

[1-7] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 60, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 325.)

[8-10] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 60, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 325.)

[11-15] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 60, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 325.)

[16] [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 60, effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after January 1, 1989.] (See section 325.)

[*] [Footnote deleted, October 1993.]

AU Section 700

SPECIAL TOPICS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
711	Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes	.01-.13
	Subsequent Events Procedures in 1933 Act Filings. . . . .	.10-.11
	Response to Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts . . . . .	.12-.13
9711	Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes: Auditing Interpretations of Section 711	
	1. Subsequent Events Procedures for Shelf Registration Statements Updated After the Original Effective Date (5/83). . . . .	.01-.11
	2. Consenting to Be Named as an Expert in an Offering Document in Connection With Securities Offerings Other Than Those Registered Under the Securities Act of 1933 (6/92). . . . .	.12-.15
	3. Consenting to the Use of an Audit Report in an Offering Document in Securities Offerings Other Than One Registered Under the Securities Act of 1933 (6/92). . . . .	.16-.17
722	Interim Financial Information	.01-.56
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.04
	Applicability. . . . .	.05-.06
	Objective of a Review of Interim Financial Information . . . . .	.07
	Establishing an Understanding With the Client . . . . .	.08-.09
	The Accountant's Knowledge of the Entity's Business and Its Internal Control . . . . .	.10-.14
	Analytical Procedures, Inquiries, and Other Review Procedures . . . .	.15-.23
	Written Representations From Management . . . . .	.24
	Evaluating the Results of Interim Review Procedures. . . . .	.25-.28
	Communications to Management, Audit Committees, and Others. . . . .	.29-.36
	The Accountant's Report on a Review of Interim Financial Information . . . . .	.37-.46
	Form of Accountant's Review Report. . . . .	.37-.40
	Modification of the Accountant's Review Report . . . . .	.41-.45
	Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Accountant's Report . . . . .	.46
	Client's Representation Concerning a Review of Interim Financial Information. . . . .	.47-.48

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
722	Interim Financial Information—continued
Interim Financial Information Accompanying Audited Financial Statements . . . . .	.49-.50
Documentation . . . . .	.51-.52
Effective Date . . . . .	.53
Appendix A—Analytical Procedures the Accountant May Consider Performing When Conducting a Review of Interim Financial Information . . . . .	.54
Appendix B—Unusual or Complex Situations to Be Considered by the Accountant When Conducting A Review of Interim Financial Information. . . . .	.55
Appendix C—Illustrative Management Representation Letters for a Review of Interim Financial Information . . . . .	.56

AU Section 711^{*}***Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes***

Source: SAS No. 37.

See section 9711 for interpretations of this section.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: April, 1981.

.01 As in the case of financial statements used for other purposes, management has the responsibility for the financial representations contained in documents filed under the federal securities statutes. In this connection the Securities and Exchange Commission has said:

The fundamental and primary responsibility for the accuracy of information filed with the Commission and disseminated among the investors rests upon management. Management does not discharge its obligations in this respect by the employment of independent public accountants, however reputable. Accountants' certificates are required not as a substitute for management's accounting of its stewardship, but as a check upon the accounting.¹

.02 When an independent accountant's report is included in registration statements, proxy statements, or periodic reports filed under the federal securities statutes, the accountant's responsibility, generally, is in substance no different from that involved in other types of reporting. However, the nature and extent of this responsibility are specified in some detail in these statutes and in the related rules and regulations. For example, section 11(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, imposes responsibility for false or misleading statements in an effective registration statement, or for omissions that render statements made in such a document misleading, on

every accountant, engineer, or appraiser, or any person whose profession gives authority to a statement made by him, who has with his consent been named as having prepared or certified any part of the registration statement, or as having prepared or certified any report or valuation which is used in connection with the registration statement, report, or valuation, which purports to have been prepared or certified by him.

.03 Section 11 also makes specific mention of the independent accountant's responsibility as an expert when his report is included in a registration statement filed under that act.² Section 11(b) states, in part, that no person shall be liable as provided therein if that person sustains the burden of proof that

as regards any part of the registration statement purporting to be made upon his authority as an expert or purporting to be a copy of or extract from a report or valuation of himself as an expert, (i) he had, after reasonable investigation,

^{*} **Note:** This section supersedes Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1, section 710, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*. The changes provide guidance for the accountant whose report based on a review of interim financial information is presented, or incorporated by reference, in a filing under the Securities Act of 1933.

¹ 4 S. E. C. 721 (1939).

² Under rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission, a report based on a review of interim financial information is not a report by the accountant under section 11 (see paragraph .06).

reasonable ground to believe and did believe, at the time such part of the registration statement became effective, that the statements therein were true and that there was no omission to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, or (ii) such part of the registration statement did not fairly represent his statement as an expert or was not a fair copy of or extract from his report or valuation as an expert....

Section 11 further provides that, in determining what constitutes reasonable investigation and reasonable ground to believe, "the standard of reasonableness shall be that required of a prudent man in the management of his own property."

.04 This discussion of the independent accountant's responsibilities in connection with filings under the federal securities statutes is not intended to offer legal interpretations and is based on an understanding of the meaning of the statutes as they relate to accounting principles and auditing standards and procedures. The discussion is subject to any judicial interpretations that may be issued.

.05 Because a registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933 speaks as of its effective date, the independent accountant whose report is included in such a registration statement has a statutory responsibility that is determined in the light of the circumstances on that date. This aspect of responsibility is peculiar to reports used for this purpose (see paragraphs .10 through .12).

.06 Under rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission, an independent accountant's report based on a review of interim financial information is not a report by the accountant within the meaning of section 11. Thus, the accountant does not have a similar statutory responsibility for such reports as of the effective date of the registration statement (see paragraph .13).

.07 The other federal securities statutes, while not containing so detailed an exposition, do impose responsibility, under certain conditions, on persons making false or misleading statements with respect to any material fact in applications, reports, or other documents filed under the statute.

.08 In filings under the Securities Act of 1933, a statement frequently is made in the prospectus (sometimes included in a section of the prospectus called the *experts section*) that certain information is included in the registration statement in reliance upon the report of certain named experts. The independent accountant should read the relevant section of the prospectus to make sure that his name is not being used in a way that indicates that his responsibility is greater than he intends. The experts section should be so worded that there is no implication that the financial statements have been prepared by the independent accountant or that they are not the direct representations of management.

.09 The Securities and Exchange Commission requires that, when an independent accountant's report based on a review of interim financial information is presented or incorporated by reference in a registration statement, a prospectus that includes a statement about the independent accountant's involvement should clarify that his review report is not a "report" or "part" of the registration statement within the meaning of sections 7 and 11 of the Securities Act of 1933. In this respect, wording such as the following in a prospectus would ordinarily be considered a satisfactory description for the accountant's purposes of the status of his review report that was included in a Form 10-Q filing that was later incorporated by reference in a registration statement.³

³ A similar description of the status of the accountant's report would also ordinarily be satisfactory for the accountant's purposes when the accountant's review report is presented in the registration statement rather than incorporated by reference. In that case, the description in the prospectus would specifically refer to that report in the registration statement.

Independent Public Accountants

The consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 19X2 and 19X1, and the consolidated statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 19X2, incorporated by reference in this prospectus, have been included herein in reliance on the report of _____ independent public accountants, given on the authority of that firm as experts in auditing and accounting.

With respect to the unaudited interim financial information for the periods ended March 31, 19X3 and 19X2, incorporated by reference in this prospectus, the independent public accountants have reported that they have applied limited procedures in accordance with professional standards for a review of such information. However, their separate report included in the company's quarterly report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 19X3, and incorporated by reference herein, states that they did not audit and they do not express an opinion on that interim financial information. Accordingly, the degree of reliance on their report on such information should be restricted in light of the limited nature of the review procedures applied. The accountants are not subject to the liability provisions of section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933 for their report on the unaudited interim financial information because that report is not a "report" or a "part" of the registration statement prepared or certified by the accountants within the meaning of sections 7 and 11 of the act.

The independent accountant should also read other sections of the prospectus to make sure that his name is not being used in a way that indicates that his responsibility is greater than he intends.

Subsequent Events Procedures in 1933 Act Filings

.10 To sustain the burden of proof that he has made a "reasonable investigation" (see paragraph .03), as required under the Securities Act of 1933, an auditor should extend his procedures with respect to subsequent events from the date of his audit report up to the effective date or as close thereto as is reasonable and practicable in the circumstances. In this connection, he should arrange with his client to be kept advised of the progress of the registration proceedings so that his review of subsequent events can be completed by the effective date. The likelihood that the auditor will discover subsequent events necessarily decreases following the completion of field work, and, as a practical matter, after that time the independent auditor may rely, for the most part, on inquiries of responsible officials and employees. In addition to performing the procedures outlined in section 560.12, at or near the effective date, the auditor generally should

- a. Read the entire prospectus and other pertinent portions of the registration statement.
- b. Inquire of and obtain written representations from officers and other executives responsible for financial and accounting matters (limited where appropriate to major locations) about whether any events have occurred, other than those reflected or disclosed in the registration statement, that, in the officers' or other executives' opinion, have a material effect on the audited financial statements included therein or that should be disclosed in order to keep those statements from being misleading.

.11 A registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission may contain the reports of two or more independent auditors on their audits of the financial statements for different periods. An auditor who has audited the financial statements for prior periods but has not audited the financial statements for the most recent audited period included in the registration statement has a responsibility relating to events subsequent to the date of the prior-period financial statements, and extending to the effective date, that bear materially on the prior-period financial statements on which he reported. Generally, he should

- a. Read pertinent portions of the prospectus and of the registration statement.
- b. Obtain a letter of representation from the successor independent auditor regarding whether his audit (including his procedures with respect to subsequent events) revealed any matters that, in his opinion, might have a material effect on the financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor or would require disclosure in the notes thereto.

The auditor should make inquiries and perform other procedures that he considers necessary to satisfy himself regarding the appropriateness of any adjustment or disclosure affecting the prior-period financial statements covered by his report (see section 508).

Response to Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts

.12 If, subsequent to the date of his report on audited financial statements, the auditor (including a predecessor auditor) (a) discovers, in performing the procedures described in paragraphs .10 and .11 above, subsequent events that require adjustment or disclosure in the financial statements or (b) becomes aware that facts may have existed at the date of his report that might have affected his report had he then been aware of those facts, he should follow the guidance in sections 560 and 561. If the financial statements are appropriately adjusted or the required additional disclosure is made, the auditor should follow the guidance in sections 530.05 and 530.07 and .08, with respect to dating his report. If the client refuses to make appropriate adjustment or disclosure in the financial statements for a subsequent event or subsequently discovered facts, the auditor should follow the procedures in section 561.08 and .09. In such circumstances, the auditor should also consider, probably with the advice of his legal counsel, withholding his consent to the use of his report on the audited financial statements in the registration statement.

.13 If an accountant concludes on the basis of facts known to him that unaudited financial statements or unaudited interim financial information presented or incorporated by reference in a registration statement are not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, he should insist on appropriate revision. Failing that,

- a. If the accountant has reported on a review of such interim financial information and the subsequently discovered facts are such that they would have affected his report had they been known to him at the date of his report, he should refer to section 561, because certain provisions of that section may be relevant to his consideration of those matters (see section 722.46).

- b. If the accountant has not reported on a review of the unaudited financial statements or interim financial information, he should modify his report on the audited financial statements to describe the departure from generally accepted accounting principles contained in the unaudited financial statements or interim financial information.

In either case, the accountant should also consider, probably with the advice of his legal counsel, withholding his consent to the use of his report on the audited financial statements in the registration statement. [Revised, November 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 100.]

AU Section 9711

Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes: Auditing Interpretations of Section 711

1. Subsequent Events Procedures for Shelf Registration Statements Updated after the Original Effective Date

.01 Question—Rule 415 of Regulation C under the Securities Act of 1933 (1933 Act) permits companies to register a designated amount of securities for continuous or delayed offerings by filing one “shelf” registration statement with the SEC. Under this rule, a registrant can register an amount of securities it reasonably expects to offer and sell within the next two years, generally without the later need to prepare and file a new prospectus and registration statement for each sale.

.02 A Rule 415 shelf registration statement can be updated after its original effective date by—

- a. The filing of a post-effective amendment,
- b. The incorporation by reference of subsequently filed material, or
- c. The addition of a supplemental prospectus (sometimes referred to as a “sticker”).

.03 Section 711, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*, paragraph .05, states, “Because a registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933 speaks as of its effective date, the independent accountant whose report is included in such a registration statement has a statutory responsibility that is determined in the light of the circumstances on that date.” The independent accountant’s statutory responsibility regarding information covered by his report and included in a registration statement is specified in Section 11 of the 1933 Act. Section 11(b)(3)(B) states that the accountant will not be held liable if he can sustain a burden of proof that “he had, after reasonable investigation, reasonable ground to believe and did believe, at the time such part of the registration statement became effective, that the statements therein were true and that there was no omission to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading.” To sustain the burden of proof that he has made a “reasonable investigation” as of the effective date, the accountant performs subsequent events procedures (as described in section 711.10 and .11) to a date as close to the effective date of the registration statement as is reasonable and practicable in the circumstances.

.04 In connection with Rule 415 shelf registrations, under what circumstances does the independent accountant have a responsibility to perform subsequent events procedures after the original effective date of the registration statement?

.05 Interpretation—As discussed in more detail below, in general, the accountant should perform the subsequent events procedures described in section 711.10 and .11, when either:

- a. A post-effective amendment to the shelf registration statement, as defined by SEC rules, is filed pursuant to Item 512(a) of Regulation S-K,¹ or
- b. A 1934 Act filing that includes or amends audited financial statements is incorporated by reference into the shelf registration statement.

.06 When a post-effective amendment is filed pursuant to the registrant's undertaking required by Item 512 of Regulation S-K, a shelf registration statement is considered to have a new effective date because Item 512(a)(2) of Regulation S-K states, "... for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement. ..." Accordingly, in such cases, the accountant should perform subsequent events procedures to a date as close to the new effective date of the registration statement as is reasonable and practicable in the circumstances.

.07 Item 512(b) of Regulation S-K states that for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933 each filing of a registrant's annual report (Form 10-K) and each filing of an employee benefit plan annual report (Form 11-K) that is incorporated by reference into a shelf registration statement is deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offering. Accordingly, when a Form 10-K or Form 11-K is incorporated by reference into a shelf registration statement, the accountant should perform subsequent events procedures to a date as close to the date of the filing of the Form 10-K or Form 11-K as is reasonable and practicable in the circumstances and date his consent as of that date.

.08 In many circumstances, a Form 10-Q, Form 8-K, or other 1934 Act filing can be incorporated by reference into a shelf registration statement (sometimes this occurs automatically—for example, in a Form S-3 or Form S-8) without the need for a post-effective amendment. In those circumstances, the accountant has no responsibility to perform subsequent events procedures unless the filing includes or amends audited financial statements—for example, a Form 8-K that includes audited financial statements of an acquired company. In these latter circumstances, when the filing is incorporated into a registration statement, SEC rules require a currently dated consent of the accountant who audited those statements, and that accountant should perform subsequent events procedures to a date as close to the date of the incorporation by reference of the related material as is reasonable and practicable in the circumstances.²

.09 In addition, an accountant's report on a review of interim financial information contained in a Form 10-Q may also include his report on the information presented in the condensed year-end balance sheet that has also been included in the form and has been derived from the latest audited annual balance sheet. (See section 552, *Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data*, paragraph .08.) When the Form 10-Q is incorpor-

¹ Item 512(a) of Regulation S-K provides that the registrant is required to undertake to file a post-effective amendment to a shelf registration statement to (a) file updated financial statements pursuant to section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933, (b) reflect a "fundamental change" in the information in the registration statement arising from facts or events occurring after the effective date of the registration statement or previous post-effective amendments, or (c) include new material information regarding the plan of distribution.

² Typically in such cases, the affected audited financial statements are not those of the registrant, and accordingly, there would be no requirement for the registrant's auditor to update his subsequent events procedures with respect to the registrant's financial statements.

ated by reference into the shelf registration (which may occur automatically), the report on the year-end condensed balance sheet may be considered a report of an "expert." Because it is not clear what the accountant's responsibility is in those circumstances, the accountant should perform subsequent events procedures (as described in section 711.10 and .11) to a date as close to the date of the incorporation by reference of the Form 10-Q as is reasonable and practicable in the circumstances.

.10 One of the subsequent events procedures described in section 711 is to "read the entire prospectus and other pertinent portions of the registration statement." The reading of the entire prospectus (including any supplemental prospectuses and documents incorporated by reference—such as Form 10-Ks, 10-Qs, and 8-Ks) and the other procedures described in section 711.10 and .11, help assure that the accountant has fulfilled his statutory responsibilities under the 1933 Act to perform a "reasonable investigation."

.11 When a shelf registration statement is updated by a supplemental prospectus (or "sticker"), the effective date of the registration statement is considered to be unchanged since the supplemental prospectus does not constitute an amendment to the registration statement, and, consequently, no posteffective amendment has been filed. Accordingly, an accountant has no responsibility to update his performance of subsequent events procedures through the date of the supplemental prospectus or sticker. The accountant, however, may nevertheless become aware that facts may have existed at the date of his report that might have affected his report had he then been aware of those facts. Section 711.12 and .13, provide guidance on the accountant's response to subsequent events and subsequently discovered facts.

[Issue Date: May, 1983.]

2. Consenting to be Named as an Expert in an Offering Document in Connection With Securities Offerings Other Than Those Registered Under the Securities Act of 1933

.12 Question—Should the auditor consent to be named, or referred to, as an expert in an offering document in connection with securities offerings other than those registered under the Securities Act of 1933 (the Act)?

.13 Interpretation—No. The term "expert" has a specific statutory meaning under the Act.³ The act states that anyone who purchases a security registered under the Act may sue specified persons if the registration statement contains an untrue statement or omits to state a material fact. Those persons who may be sued include "every accountant, engineer, or appraiser, or any person whose profession gives authority to a statement made by him, who has with his consent been named as having prepared or certified any part of the registration statement." These persons are typically referred to as "experts." Auditors sign a statement, known as a consent, in which they agree to be identified as experts in a section of the registration statement.

.14 Outside the 1933 Act arena, however, the term "expert" is typically undefined and the auditor's responsibility, as a result of the use of that term, is also undefined.

³ If the term "expert" is defined under applicable state law, for instance, the accountant may agree to be named as an expert in an offering document in an intra-state securities offering. The accountant may also agree to be named as an expert, as that term is used by the Office of Thrift Supervision (OTS), in securities offering documents which are subject to the jurisdiction of the OTS.

.15 When a client wishes to make reference to the auditor's role in an offering document in connection with a securities offering that is not registered under the Act, the caption "Independent Auditors" should be used to title that section of the document; the caption "Experts" should not be used, nor should the auditors be referred to as experts anywhere in the document. The following paragraph should be used to describe the auditors role.

Independent Auditors

The financial statements as of December 31, 19XX and for the year then ended, included in this offering circular, have been audited by ABC, independent auditors, as stated in their report(s) appearing herein.

If the client refuses to delete from the offering document the reference to the auditors as experts, the auditor should not permit inclusion of the auditor's report in the offering document.

[Issue Date: June, 1992; Amended: March, 1995.]

3. Consenting to the Use of an Audit Report in an Offering Document in Securities Offerings Other Than One Registered Under the Securities Act of 1933

.16 *Question*—May the auditor consent to the use of his or her audit report in an offering document other than one registered under the Securities Act of 1933?

.17 *Interpretation*—When an auditor's report is included in an offering document other than one registered under the Securities Act of 1933, it is not usually necessary for the accountant to provide a consent. If the accountant is requested to provide a consent, he or she may do so. The following is example language the accountant might use:

We agree to the inclusion in this offering circular of our report, dated February 5, 19XX, on our audit of the financial statements of [name of entity].

[Issue Date: June, 1992.]

AU Section 722

Interim Financial Information

(Supersedes SAS No. 71)

Source: SAS No. 100.

Effective for interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2002.

Introduction

.01 The purpose of this section is to establish standards and provide guidance on the nature, timing, and extent of the procedures to be performed by an independent accountant when conducting a review of *interim financial information* (as that term is defined in paragraph .02 of this section). The three general standards discussed in section 150, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, paragraph .02), are applicable to a review of interim financial information conducted in accordance with this section. This section provides guidance on the application of the field work and reporting standards to a review of interim financial information, to the extent those standards are relevant.

.02 For purposes of this section, the term *interim financial information* means financial information or statements covering a period less than a full year or for a 12-month period ending on a date other than the entity's fiscal year end.

.03 The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) requires¹ a registrant to engage an independent accountant to review the registrant's interim financial information, in accordance with this section, before the registrant files its quarterly report on Form 10-Q or Form 10-QSB. Although this section does not require an accountant to issue a written report on a review of interim financial information, the SEC requires that an accountant's review report be filed with the interim financial information if, in any filing, the entity states that the interim financial information has been reviewed by an independent public accountant. Paragraphs .37 through .46 of this section provide reporting guidance for a review of interim financial information.

.04 Section 315, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*, requires a successor auditor to contact the entity's predecessor auditor and make inquiries of the predecessor auditor in deciding whether to accept appointment as an entity's independent auditor. Such inquiries should be completed before accepting an engagement to perform an initial review of an entity's interim financial information.

Applicability²

.05 An accountant may conduct, in accordance with this section, a review of the interim financial information of an SEC registrant³ or of a non-SEC

¹ The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) requirement is set forth in Rule 10-01(d) of Regulation S-X for Form 10-Q and item 310(b) of Regulation S-B for Form 10-QSB.

² Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services provide guidance for review engagements for which this section is not applicable.

³ This section also is applicable to a review of the interim financial information of a subsidiary, corporate joint venture, or investee of an SEC registrant, when that review is performed in the context of the review of the interim financial information of the SEC registrant itself.

registrant that makes a filing with a regulatory agency⁴ in preparation for a public offering or listing, if the entity's latest annual financial statements have been or are being audited. The interim financial information may be presented in the form of financial statements or in a summarized form that purports to conform with generally accepted accounting principles⁵ and applicable regulatory requirements, for example, Article 10 of Regulation S-X for Form 10-Q.

.06 Many SEC registrants are required by item 302(a) of Regulation S-K to include selected quarterly financial data (that is, interim financial information for each full quarter within the two most recent fiscal years and any subsequent interim period for which financial statements are included or are required to be included) in their annual reports and in certain other SEC filings. Consequently, a review of the entity's fourth quarter interim financial information must be conducted even though a quarterly report for the fourth quarter is not filed on Form 10-Q. Furthermore, an accountant performing an initial audit of an entity's annual financial statements that includes selected quarterly data who has not previously reviewed one or more of the quarters in that year should perform a review of those quarters, in accordance with this section, in order to report on the audited financial statements containing such interim financial information.

Objective of a Review of Interim Financial Information

.07 The objective of a review of interim financial information pursuant to this section is to provide the accountant with a basis for communicating whether he or she is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information for it to conform with generally accepted accounting principles. The objective of a review of interim financial information differs significantly from that of an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. A review of interim financial information does not provide a basis for expressing an opinion about whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. A review consists principally of performing analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters, and does not contemplate (a) tests of accounting records through inspection, observation, or confirmation; (b) tests of controls to evaluate their effectiveness; (c) obtaining corroborating evidence in response to inquiries; or (d) performing certain other procedures ordinarily performed in an audit. A review may bring to the accountant's attention significant matters affecting the interim financial information, but it does not provide assurance that the accountant will become aware of all significant matters that would be identified in an audit. Paragraph .22 of this section provides guidance to the accountant if he or she becomes aware of information that leads him or her to believe that the interim financial information may not be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

⁴ For purposes of this section, a *regulatory agency* is the SEC and the following agencies with which an entity files periodic reports pursuant to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934: Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, Federal Reserve System, and Office of Thrift Supervision.

⁵ Accounting Principles Board (APB) Opinion No. 28, *Interim Financial Reporting*, outlines the application of U.S. generally accepted accounting principles to the determination of income when interim financial information is presented, provides for the use of estimated effective income tax rates, and specifies certain disclosure requirements for summarized interim financial information issued by public companies. Footnote 3 of section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraph .10, indicates that, for SEC registrants, rules and interpretive releases of the SEC have an authority similar to that of category "a" accounting principles.

Establishing an Understanding With the Client

.08 The accountant should establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed in an engagement to review interim financial information.⁶ Such an understanding reduces the risk that either the accountant or the client may misinterpret the needs or expectations of the other party. This understanding should include the objectives of the engagement, management's responsibilities, the accountant's responsibilities, and the limitations of the engagement. The accountant should document this understanding, preferably through a written communication with the client. If the accountant believes an understanding with the client has not been established, he or she should decline to accept or perform the engagement.

.09 An understanding with the client regarding a review of interim financial information generally includes the following matters:

- The objective of a review of interim financial information is to provide the accountant with a basis for communicating whether he or she is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information for it to conform with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.
- Management is responsible for the entity's interim financial information.
- Management is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting.
- Management is responsible for identifying and ensuring that the entity complies with the laws and regulations applicable to its activities.
- Management is responsible for making all financial records and related information available to the accountant.
- At the conclusion of the engagement, management will provide the accountant with a letter confirming certain representations made during the review.
- Management is responsible for adjusting the interim financial information to correct material misstatements. Although a review of interim financial information is not designed to obtain reasonable assurance that the interim financial information is free from material misstatement, management also is responsible for affirming in its representation letter to the accountant that the effects of any uncorrected misstatements aggregated by the accountant during the current engagement and pertaining to the current-year period(s) under review are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the interim financial information taken as a whole.
- The accountant is responsible for conducting the review in accordance with standards established by the AICPA. A review of interim financial information consists principally of performing analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters. It is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion regarding the financial statements taken as a whole. Accordingly, the accountant will not express an opinion on the interim financial information.

⁶ See Statement on Quality Control Standards (SQCS) No. 2, *System of Quality Control for a CPA Firm's Accounting and Auditing Practice*, as amended, paragraph 16 [QC section 20.16].

- A review includes obtaining sufficient knowledge of the entity's business and its internal control as it relates to the preparation of both annual and interim financial information to:
 - Identify the types of potential material misstatements in the interim financial information and consider the likelihood of their occurrence.
 - Select the inquiries and analytical procedures that will provide the accountant with a basis for communicating whether he or she is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information for it to conform with generally accepted accounting principles.
- A review is not designed to provide assurance on internal control or to identify reportable conditions. However, the accountant is responsible for communicating with the audit committee or others with equivalent authority or responsibility, regarding any reportable conditions that come to his or her attention.

The Accountant's Knowledge of the Entity's Business and Its Internal Control

.10 To perform a review of interim financial information, the accountant should have sufficient knowledge of the entity's business and its internal control as they relate to the preparation of both annual and interim financial information to:

- Identify the types of potential material misstatements in the interim financial information and consider the likelihood of their occurrence.
- Select the inquiries and analytical procedures that will provide the accountant with a basis for communicating whether he or she is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information for it to conform with generally accepted accounting principles.

.11 In planning a review of interim financial information, the accountant should perform procedures to update his or her knowledge of the entity's business and its internal control to (a) aid in the determination of the inquiries to be made and the analytical procedures to be performed and (b) identify particular events, transactions, or assertions to which the inquiries may be directed or analytical procedures applied. Such procedures should include:

- Reading documentation of the preceding year's audit and of reviews of prior interim period(s) of the current year and corresponding quarterly and year-to-date interim period(s) of the prior year to the extent necessary, based on the accountant's judgment, to enable the accountant to identify matters that may affect the current-period interim financial information. In reading such documents, the accountant should specifically consider the nature of any (a) corrected material misstatements; (b) matters identified in any summary of uncorrected misstatements;⁷ (c) identified risks of material misstatement due to

⁷ Section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, paragraph .40, requires the auditor to document the nature and effect of misstatements that the auditor aggregates as well as the auditor's conclusion as to whether such misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, cause the audited financial statements to be materially misstated. Paragraphs .25 and .26 of this section describe the accountant's consideration of such misstatements in a review of interim financial information.

fraud, including the risk of management override of controls; and (d) significant financial accounting and reporting matters that may be of continuing significance, such as weaknesses in internal control.

- Reading the most recent annual and comparable prior interim period financial information.
- Considering the results of any audit procedures performed with respect to the current year's financial statements.
- Inquiring of management about changes in the entity's business activities.
- Inquiring of management about whether significant changes in internal control, as it relates to the preparation of interim financial information, have occurred subsequent to the preceding annual audit or prior review of interim financial information, including changes in the entity's policies, procedures, and personnel, as well as the nature and extent of such changes.

.12 In an initial review of interim financial information, the accountant should perform procedures that will enable him or her to obtain sufficient knowledge of the entity's business and its internal control to address the objectives discussed in paragraph .07 of this section. As part of the procedures to obtain this knowledge, the accountant performing an initial review of interim financial information makes inquiries of the predecessor accountant and reviews the predecessor accountant's documentation for the preceding annual audit and for any prior interim periods in the current year that have been reviewed by the predecessor accountant if the predecessor accountant permits access to such documentation.⁸ In doing so, the accountant should specifically consider the nature of any (a) corrected material misstatements; (b) matters identified in any summary of uncorrected misstatements; (c) identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud, including the risk of management override of controls; and (d) significant financial accounting and reporting matters that may be of continuing significance, such as weaknesses in internal control. However, the inquiries made and analytical procedures performed or other procedures performed in the initial review and the conclusions reached are solely the responsibility of the successor accountant. If the successor accountant is reporting on the review, the successor accountant should not make reference to the report or work of the predecessor accountant as the basis, in part, for the successor accountant's own report. If the predecessor accountant does not respond to the successor accountant's inquiries, or does not allow the successor accountant to review the predecessor accountant's documentation, the successor accountant should use alternative procedures to obtain knowledge of the matters discussed in this paragraph.

.13 The accountant who has audited the entity's financial statements for one or more annual periods would have acquired sufficient knowledge of an entity's internal control as it relates to the preparation of annual financial information and may have acquired such knowledge with respect to interim financial information. If the accountant has not audited the most recent annual financial statements, the accountant should perform procedures to obtain such knowledge. Knowledge of an entity's internal control, as it relates to the preparation of both annual and interim financial information, includes knowledge of the relevant aspects of the control environment, the entity's risk

⁸ The accountant also may consider reviewing the predecessor accountant's documentation related to reviews of interim period(s) in the prior year.

assessment process, control activities, information and communication, and monitoring, as those terms are defined in section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*. Internal control over the preparation of interim financial information may differ from internal control over the preparation of annual financial statements because certain accounting principles and practices used for interim financial information may differ from those used for the preparation of annual financial statements, for example, the use of estimated effective income tax rates for the preparation of interim financial information, which is prescribed by Accounting Principles Board (APB) Opinion No. 28, *Interim Financial Reporting*.

.14 A restriction on the scope of the review may be imposed if the entity's internal control appears to contain deficiencies so significant that it would be impracticable for the accountant, based on his or her judgment, to effectively perform review procedures that would provide a basis for communicating whether he or she is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information for it to conform with generally accepted accounting principles.⁹

Analytical Procedures, Inquiries, and Other Review Procedures

.15 Procedures for conducting a review of interim financial information generally are limited to analytical procedures, inquiries, and other procedures that address significant accounting and disclosure matters relating to the interim financial information to be reported. The accountant performs these procedures to obtain a basis for communicating whether he or she is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information for it to conform with generally accepted accounting principles. The specific inquiries made and the analytical and other procedures performed should be tailored to the engagement based on the accountant's knowledge of the entity's business and its internal control. The accountant's knowledge of an entity's business and its internal control influences the inquiries made and analytical procedures performed. For example, if the accountant becomes aware of a significant change in the entity's control activities at a particular location, the accountant may consider (a) making additional inquiries, such as whether management monitored the changes and considered whether they were operating as intended, (b) employing analytical procedures with a more precise expectation, or (c) both.

.16 *Analytical procedures and related inquiries.* The accountant should apply analytical procedures to the interim financial information to identify and provide a basis for inquiry about the relationships and individual items that appear to be unusual and that may indicate a material misstatement. Analytical procedures, for the purposes of this section, should include:

- Comparing the quarterly interim financial information with comparable information for the immediately preceding interim period and the quarterly and year-to-date interim financial information with the corresponding period(s) in the previous year, giving consideration to knowledge about changes in the entity's business and specific transactions.
- Considering plausible relationships among both financial and, where relevant, nonfinancial information. The accountant also may wish to

⁹ See paragraph .28 of this section.

consider information developed and used by the entity, for example, information in a director's information package or in a senior committee's briefing materials.

- Comparing recorded amounts, or ratios developed from recorded amounts, to expectations developed by the accountant. The accountant develops such expectations by identifying and using plausible relationships that are reasonably expected to exist based on the accountant's understanding of the entity and the industry in which the entity operates (see paragraph .17 of this section).
- Comparing disaggregated revenue data, for example, comparing revenue reported by month and by product line or operating segment during the current interim period with that of comparable prior periods.

See Appendix A [paragraph .54] of this section for examples of analytical procedures an accountant may consider performing when conducting a review of interim financial information. The accountant may find the guidance in section 329, *Analytical Procedures*, useful in conducting a review of interim financial information.

.17 Expectations developed by the accountant in performing analytical procedures in connection with a review of interim financial information ordinarily are less precise than those developed in an audit. Also, in a review the accountant ordinarily is not required to corroborate management's responses with other evidence. However, the accountant should consider the reasonableness and consistency of management's responses in light of the results of other review procedures and the accountant's knowledge of the entity's business and its internal control.¹⁰

.18 *Inquiries and other review procedures.* The following are inquiries the accountant should make and other review procedures the accountant should perform when conducting a review of interim financial information:

- a. Reading the available minutes of meetings of stockholders, directors, and appropriate committees, and inquiring about matters dealt with at meetings for which minutes are not available, to identify matters that may affect the interim financial information.
- b. Obtaining reports from other accountants, if any, who have been engaged to perform a review of the interim financial information of significant components of the reporting entity, its subsidiaries, or its other investees, or inquiring of those accountants if reports have not been issued.¹¹
- c. Inquiring of members of management who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters concerning:
 - Whether the interim financial information has been prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles consistently applied.
 - Unusual or complex situations that may have an effect on the interim financial information. (See Appendix B [paragraph .55] of

¹⁰ See paragraph .22 of this section.

¹¹ In these circumstances, the accountant ordinarily is in a position similar to that of an auditor who acts as principal auditor (see section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*) and makes use of the work or reports of other auditors in the course of an audit of financial statements.

this section for examples of unusual or complex situations about which the accountant ordinarily would inquire of management.)

- Significant transactions occurring or recognized in the last several days of the interim period.
 - The status of uncorrected misstatements identified during the previous audit and interim review (that is, whether adjustments had been recorded subsequent to the prior audit or interim period and, if so, the amounts recorded and period in which such adjustments were recorded).
 - Matters about which questions have arisen in the course of applying the review procedures.
 - Events subsequent to the date of the interim financial information that could have a material effect on the presentation of such information.
 - Their knowledge of any fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity involving (1) management, (2) employees who have significant roles in internal control, or (3) others where the fraud could have a material effect on the financial statements.
 - Whether they are aware of allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity, for example, received in communications from employees, former employees, analysts, regulators, short sellers, or others.
 - Significant journal entries and other adjustments.
 - Communications from regulatory agencies.
 - Significant deficiencies, including material weaknesses, in the design or operation of internal controls which could adversely affect the issuer's ability to record, process, summarize, and report financial data.
- d. Obtaining evidence that the interim financial information agrees or reconciles with the accounting records. For example, the accountant may compare the interim financial information to (1) the accounting records, such as the general ledger; (2) a consolidating schedule derived from the accounting records; or (3) other supporting data in the entity's records. In addition, the accountant should consider inquiring of management as to the reliability of the records to which the interim financial information was compared or reconciled.
- e. Reading the interim financial information to consider whether, based on the results of the review procedures performed and other information that has come to the accountant's attention, the information to be reported conforms with generally accepted accounting principles.
- f. Reading other information that accompanies the interim financial information and is contained in reports (1) to holders of securities or beneficial interests or (2) filed with regulatory authorities under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (such as Form 10-Q or 10-QSB), to consider whether such information or the manner of its presentation is materially inconsistent with the interim financial information.¹² If

¹² The principal accountant also may request other accountants involved in the engagement, if any, to read the other information.

the accountant concludes that there is a material inconsistency, or becomes aware of information that he or she believes is a material misstatement of fact, the action taken will depend on his or her judgment in the particular circumstances. In determining the appropriate course of action, the accountant should consider the guidance in section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs .04 through .06).

.19 Many of the aforementioned review procedures can be performed before or simultaneously with the entity's preparation of the interim financial information. For example, it may be practicable to update the understanding of the entity's internal control and begin reading applicable minutes before the end of an interim period. Performing some of the review procedures earlier in the interim period also permits early identification and consideration of significant accounting matters affecting the interim financial information.

.20 *Inquiry concerning litigation, claims, and assessments.* A review of interim financial information does not contemplate obtaining corroborating evidence for responses to inquiries concerning litigation, claims, and assessments (see paragraph .07 of this section). Consequently, it ordinarily is not necessary to send an inquiry letter to an entity's lawyer concerning litigation, claims, and assessments. However, if information comes to the accountant's attention that leads him or her to question whether the interim financial information departs from generally accepted accounting principles¹³ with respect to litigation, claims, or assessments, and the accountant believes the entity's lawyer may have information concerning that question, an inquiry of the lawyer concerning the specific question is appropriate.

.21 *Inquiry concerning an entity's ability to continue as a going concern.* A review of interim financial information is not designed to identify conditions or events that may indicate substantial doubt about an entity's ability to continue as a going concern. However, such conditions or events may have existed at the date of prior-period financial statements.¹⁴ In addition, in the course of performing review procedures on the current-period interim financial information, the accountant may become aware of conditions or events that might be indicative of the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern. In either case, the accountant should (a) inquire of management as to its plans for dealing with the adverse effects of the conditions and events and (b) consider the adequacy of the disclosure about such matters in the interim financial information.¹⁵ It ordinarily is not necessary for the accountant to obtain evidence in support of the information that mitigates the effects of the conditions and events.

¹³ In accordance with APB Opinion No. 28 and Article 10 of Regulation S-X, contingencies and other uncertainties that could be expected to affect the fairness of the presentation of financial data at an interim date should be disclosed in interim reports in the same manner required for annual reports. Such disclosures should be repeated in interim and annual reports until the contingencies have been removed, resolved, or become immaterial. The significance of a contingency or uncertainty should be judged in relation to annual financial statements.

¹⁴ For purposes of this section, "conditions or events that existed at the date of prior-period financial statements" include (a) substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern that existed at the preceding year end, regardless of whether the substantial doubt was alleviated by the auditor's consideration of management's plans, or (b) conditions and events disclosed in the immediately preceding interim period.

¹⁵ Information that might be disclosed is set forth in section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, paragraph .10. If the accountant determines that the disclosure about the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern is inadequate, a departure from generally accepted accounting principles exists.

.22 *Extension of interim review procedures.* If, in performing a review of interim financial information, the accountant becomes aware of information that leads him or her to believe that the interim financial information may not be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in all material respects, the accountant should make additional inquiries or perform other procedures that the accountant considers appropriate to provide a basis for communicating whether he or she is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information. For example, if the accountant's interim review procedures lead him or her to question whether a significant sales transaction is recorded in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, the accountant should perform additional procedures, such as discussing the terms of the transaction with senior marketing and accounting personnel, reading the sales contract, or both, to resolve his or her questions.

.23 *Coordination with the audit.* The accountant performing the review of interim financial information ordinarily will also be engaged to perform an audit of the annual financial statements of the entity. Certain auditing procedures may be performed concurrently with the review of interim financial information. For example, information gained from reading the minutes of meetings of the board of directors in connection with the review also may be used for the annual audit. Also, there may be significant or unusual transactions occurring during the interim period under review for which the auditing procedures that would need to be performed for purposes of the audit of the annual financial statements could be performed, to the extent practicable, at the time of the interim review, for example, business combinations, restructurings, or significant revenue transactions.

Written Representations From Management

.24 Written representations from management should be obtained for all interim financial information presented and for all periods covered by the review. Specific representations should relate to the following matters:¹⁶

Financial Statements

- a. Management's acknowledgement of its responsibility for the fair presentation of the interim financial information in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.
- b. Management's belief that the interim financial information has been prepared and presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applicable to interim financial information.

Internal Control

- c. Disclosure of all significant deficiencies, including material weaknesses, in the design or operation of internal controls which could adversely affect the issuer's ability to record, process, summarize, and report financial data.
- d. Acknowledgment of management's responsibility for the design and implementation of programs and controls to prevent and detect fraud.

¹⁶ For additional guidance regarding written management representations, see section 333, *Management Representations*, paragraphs .08 through .12.

- e. Knowledge of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity involving (1) management, (2) employees who have significant roles in internal control, or (3) others where the fraud could have a material effect on the financial statements.
- f. Knowledge of any allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity received in communications from employees, former employees, analysts, regulators, short sellers, or others.

Completeness of Information

- g. Availability of all financial records and related data.
- h. Completeness and availability of all minutes of meetings of stockholders, directors, and committees of directors.
- i. Communications with regulatory agencies concerning noncompliance with or deficiencies in financial reporting practices.
- j. Absence of unrecorded transactions.

Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure

- k. Management's belief that the effects of any uncorrected financial statement misstatements aggregated by the accountant during the current review engagement and pertaining to the interim period(s) in the current year are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the interim financial information taken as a whole. (A summary of such items should be included in or attached to the letter.)¹⁷
- l. Plans or intentions that may materially affect the carrying value or classification of assets or liabilities.
- m. Information concerning related-party transactions and amounts receivable from or payable to related parties.
- n. Guarantees, whether written or oral, under which the entity is contingently liable.
- o. Significant estimates and material concentrations known to management that are required to be disclosed in accordance with the AICPA's Statement of Position 94-6, *Disclosure of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties*.
- p. Violations or possible violations of laws or regulations whose effects should be considered for disclosure in the interim financial information or as a basis for recording a loss contingency.
- q. Unasserted claims or assessments that are probable of assertion and must be disclosed in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*.
- r. Other liabilities or gain or loss contingencies that are required to be accrued or disclosed by FASB Statement No. 5.
- s. Satisfactory title to all owned assets, liens or encumbrances on such assets, and assets pledged as collateral.
- t. Compliance with aspects of contractual agreements that may affect the interim financial information.

¹⁷ If a summary of uncorrected misstatements is unnecessary because there were no uncorrected misstatements identified, this representation should be eliminated.

*Subsequent Events**u. Information concerning subsequent events.*

The representation letter ordinarily should be tailored to include additional representations from management related to matters specific to the entity's business or industry. Appendix C [paragraph .56] of this section presents illustrative representation letters.

Evaluating the Results of Interim Review Procedures

.25 A review of interim financial information is not designed to obtain reasonable assurance that the interim financial information is free of material misstatement. However, based on the review procedures performed, the accountant may become aware of *likely misstatements*. In the context of an interim review, a likely misstatement is the accountant's best estimate of the total misstatement in the account balances or classes of transactions on which he or she has performed review procedures. The accountant should accumulate for further evaluation likely misstatements identified in performing the review procedures. The accountant may designate an amount below which misstatements need not be accumulated, based on his or her professional judgment. However, the accountant should recognize that aggregated misstatements of relatively small amounts could have a material effect on the interim financial information.

.26 Misstatements identified by the accountant or brought to the accountant's attention, including inadequate disclosure,¹⁸ should be evaluated individually and in the aggregate to determine whether material modification should be made to the interim financial information for it to conform with generally accepted accounting principles.¹⁹ The accountant should use his or her professional judgment in evaluating the materiality of any likely misstatements that the entity has not corrected. The accountant should consider

¹⁸ Rule 10-01 of Regulation S-X states—

The interim financial information shall include disclosures either on the face of the financial statements or in accompanying footnotes sufficient so as to make the interim information presented not misleading. Registrants may presume that users of the interim financial information have read or have access to the audited financial statements for the preceding fiscal year and that the adequacy of additional disclosure needed for a fair presentation, except in regard to material contingencies, may be determined in that context. Accordingly, footnote disclosure which would substantially duplicate the disclosure contained in the most recent annual report to security holders or latest audited financial statements, such as a statement of significant accounting policies and practices, details of accounts which have not changed significantly in amount or composition since the end of the most recently completed fiscal year, and detailed disclosures prescribed by Rule 4-08 of this Regulation, may be omitted. However, disclosure shall be provided where events subsequent to the end of the most recent fiscal year have occurred which have a material impact on the registrant. Disclosures should encompass for example, significant changes since the end of the most recently completed fiscal year in such items as: accounting principles and practices; estimates inherent in the preparation of the financial statements; status of long-term contracts; capitalization including significant new borrowings or modification of existing financing arrangements; and the reporting entity resulting from business combinations or dispositions. Notwithstanding the above, where material contingencies exist, disclosure of such matters shall be provided even though a significant change since year end may not have occurred.

¹⁹ APB Opinion No. 28 describes the applicability of generally accepted accounting principles to interim financial information and indicates the types of disclosures necessary to report on a meaningful basis for a period of less than a full year. Paragraph 29 of Opinion No. 28 provides guidance on assessing materiality in interim periods. For example, the Opinion states, "In determining materiality for the purpose of reporting the cumulative effect of an accounting change or correction of an error, amounts should be related to the estimated income for the full fiscal year and also to the effect on the trend of earnings."

matters such as (a) the nature, cause (if known), and amount of the misstatements; (b) whether the misstatements originated in the preceding year or interim periods of the current year; (c) materiality judgments made in conjunction with the current or prior year's annual audit; and (d) the potential effect of the misstatements on future interim or annual periods.²⁰

.27 When evaluating whether uncorrected likely misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, are material, the accountant also should (a) consider the appropriateness of offsetting a misstatement of an estimated amount with a misstatement of an item capable of precise measurement and (b) recognize that an accumulation of immaterial misstatements in the balance sheet could contribute to material misstatements in future periods.

.28 When an accountant is unable to perform the procedures he or she considers necessary to achieve the objective of a review of interim financial information, or the client does not provide the accountant with the written representations the accountant believes are necessary, the review will be incomplete. An incomplete review is not an adequate basis for issuing a review report. If the accountant cannot complete the review, the accountant should communicate that information in accordance with the guidance in paragraphs .29 through .31 of this section. Nevertheless, if the accountant has become aware of material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information for it to conform with generally accepted accounting principles, such matters should be communicated pursuant to paragraphs .29 through .31 of this section.

Communications to Management, Audit Committees, and Others

.29 As a result of conducting a review of interim financial information, the accountant may become aware of matters that cause him or her to believe that (a) material modification should be made to the interim financial information for it to conform with generally accepted accounting principles or (b) that the entity filed the Form 10-Q or Form 10-QSB before the completion of the review. In such circumstances, the accountant should communicate the matter(s) to the appropriate level of management as soon as practicable.

.30 If, in the accountant's judgment, management does not respond appropriately to the accountant's communication within a reasonable period of time, the accountant should inform the audit committee or others with equivalent authority and responsibility (hereafter referred to as the audit committee) of the matters as soon as practicable. This communication may be oral or written. If information is communicated orally, the accountant should document the communication.

.31 If, in the accountant's judgment, the audit committee does not respond appropriately to the accountant's communication within a reasonable period of time, the accountant should evaluate whether to resign from the engagement to review the interim financial information and as the entity's auditor. The accountant may wish to consult with his or her attorney when making these evaluations.

²⁰ Interpretation No. 4, "Considering the Qualitative Characteristics of Misstatements," of section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, provides additional guidance on evaluating whether misstatements are material.

.32 When conducting a review of interim financial information, the accountant may become aware of fraud or possible illegal acts. If the matter involves fraud, it should be brought to the attention of the appropriate level of management. If the fraud involves senior management or results in a material misstatement of the financial statements, the accountant should communicate the matter directly to the audit committee as described in section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, paragraphs .79 through .82. If the matter involves possible illegal acts, the accountant should assure himself or herself that the audit committee is adequately informed, unless the matter is clearly inconsequential.²¹ (See section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*, paragraph .17.)

.33 When conducting a review of interim financial information, the accountant may become aware of matters relating to internal control that may be of interest to the audit committee. Matters that should be reported to the audit committee are referred to as reportable conditions. Reportable conditions are matters coming to the accountant's attention that, in his or her judgment, should be communicated to the audit committee because they represent significant deficiencies in the design or operation of internal control that could adversely affect the organization's ability to initiate, record, summarize, and report financial data consistent with management's assertions in the interim financial information. The accountant also may wish to submit recommendations related to other matters that come to the accountant's attention.²²

.34 When conducting a review of interim financial information, the accountant also should determine whether any of the matters described in section 380, *Communication With Audit Committees*, as they relate to the interim financial information, have been identified. If such matters have been identified, the accountant should communicate them to the audit committee or be satisfied, through discussion with the audit committee, that such matters have been communicated to the audit committee by management. For example, the accountant should determine that the audit committee is informed about the process used by management to formulate particularly sensitive accounting estimates; about a change in a significant accounting policy affecting the interim financial information; about adjustments that, either individually or in the aggregate, could have a significant effect on the entity's financial reporting process; and about uncorrected misstatements aggregated by the accountant that were determined by management to be immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the interim financial statements taken as a whole.²³

.35 The objective of a review of interim financial information differs significantly from that of an audit. Therefore, any communication the accountant may make about the quality, not just the acceptability, of the entity's accounting principles as applied to its interim financial reporting generally would be limited to the effect of significant events, transactions, and changes in accounting estimates that the accountant considered when conducting the review of interim financial information. Further, interim review procedures

²¹ The accountant may have additional communication responsibilities pursuant to section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*; Section 10A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

²² Section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*, provides guidance on communicating reportable conditions related to internal control.

²³ The presentation to the audit committee should be similar to the summary of uncorrected misstatements included in or attached to the management representation letter that is described in paragraph .24(h) of this section.

do not provide assurance that the accountant will become aware of all matters that might affect the accountant's judgments about the quality of the entity's accounting principles that would be identified as a result of an audit.

.36 If the accountant has identified matters to be communicated to the audit committee, the accountant should attempt to make such communications with the audit committee, or at least its chair, and a representative of management before the entity files its interim financial information with a regulatory agency (such as the SEC). If such communications cannot be made before the filing, they should be made as soon as practicable in the circumstances. The communications may be oral or written. If information is communicated orally, the accountant should document the communications.

The Accountant's Report on a Review of Interim Financial Information²⁴

Form of Accountant's Review Report

.37 The accountant's review report accompanying interim financial information should consist of:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*.
- b. A statement that the interim financial information identified in the report was reviewed.
- c. A statement that the interim financial information is the responsibility of the entity's management.
- d. A statement that the review of interim financial information was conducted in accordance with standards established by the AICPA.
- e. A description of the procedures for a review of interim financial information.
- f. A statement that a review of interim financial information is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, the objective of which is an expression of an opinion regarding the financial statements taken as a whole, and accordingly, no such opinion is expressed.
- g. A statement about whether the accountant is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the accompanying interim financial information for it to conform with generally accepted accounting principles. The statement should include an identification of the country of origin of those accounting principles (for example, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America or U.S. generally accepted accounting principles).
- h. The manual or printed signature of the accountant's firm.
- i. The date of the review report. (Generally, the report should be dated as of the date of completion of the review procedures.²⁵)

In addition, each page of the interim financial information should be clearly marked as unaudited.

²⁴ Paragraphs .37 through .46 of this section provide reporting guidance for a review of interim financial information; however, an accountant is not required to issue a report on such engagements.

²⁵ Other reporting issues related to the dating of reports or subsequent events are similar to those encountered in an audit of financial statements. See sections 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*, and 560, *Subsequent Events*.

.38 The following is an example of a review report:²⁶

Independent Accountant's Report

We have reviewed the accompanying [*describe the interim financial information or statements reviewed*] of ABC Company and consolidated subsidiaries as of September 30, 20X1, and for the three-month and nine-month periods then ended. This (These) interim financial information (statements) is (are) the responsibility of the company's management.

We conducted our review in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review of interim financial information consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters. It is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion regarding the financial statements taken as a whole. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

Based on our review, we are not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the accompanying interim financial information (statements) for it (them) to be in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[Signature]

[Date]

.39 An accountant may be engaged to report on a review of comparative interim financial information. The following is an example of a review report on a condensed balance sheet as of March 31, 20X1, the related condensed statements of income and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and a condensed balance sheet derived from audited financial statements as of December 31, 20X0, that were included in Form 10-Q.²⁷

Independent Accountant's Report

We have reviewed the condensed consolidated balance sheet of ABC Company and subsidiaries as of March 31, 20X1, and the related condensed consolidated statements of income and cash flows for the three-month periods ended March 31, 20X1 and 20X0. These financial statements are the responsibility of the company's management.

²⁶ If interim financial information of a prior period is presented with that of the current period and the accountant has conducted a review of that information, the accountant should report on his or her review of the prior period. An example of the first sentence of such a report follows: "We have reviewed . . . of ABC Company and consolidated subsidiaries as of September 30, 20X1 and 20X2, and for the three-month and nine-month periods then ended. . . ."

²⁷ Regulation S-X specifies that the following financial information should be provided in filings on Form 10-Q:

- a. An interim balance sheet as of the end of the most recent fiscal quarter and a balance sheet as of the end of the preceding fiscal year that may be condensed to the same extent as the interim balance sheet.
- b. Interim condensed statements of income for the most recent fiscal quarter, for the period between the end of the preceding fiscal year and the end of the most recent fiscal quarter, and for the corresponding periods of the preceding fiscal year.
- c. Interim condensed cash flow statements for the period between the end of the preceding fiscal year and the end of the most recent fiscal quarter and for the corresponding period for the preceding fiscal year.

We conducted our review in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review of interim financial information consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters. It is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion regarding the financial statements taken as a whole. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

Based on our reviews, we are not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the condensed financial statements referred to above for them to be in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

We have previously audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the consolidated balance sheet of ABC Company and subsidiaries as of December 31, 20X0, and the related consolidated statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the year then ended (not presented herein); and in our report dated February 15, 20X1, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those consolidated financial statements. In our opinion, the information set forth in the accompanying condensed consolidated balance sheet as of December 31, 20X0, is fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the consolidated balance sheet from which it has been derived.²⁸

[Signature]

[Date]

.40 The accountant may use and make reference to another accountant's review report on the interim financial information of a significant component of a reporting entity. This reference indicates a division of responsibility for performing the review.²⁹ The following is an example of report including such a reference:

Independent Accountant's Report

We have reviewed the accompanying [*describe the interim financial information or statements reviewed*] of ABC Company and consolidated subsidiaries as of September 30, 20X1, and for the three-month and nine-month periods then ended. This (These) interim financial information (statements) is (are) the responsibility of the company's management.

We were furnished with the report of other accountants on their review of the interim financial information of DEF subsidiary, whose total assets as of September 30, 20X1, and whose revenues for the three-month and nine-month periods then ended, constituted 15 percent, 20 percent, and 22 percent, respectively, of the related consolidated totals.

We conducted our reviews in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review of interim financial information (statements) consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting

²⁸ If the auditor's report on the preceding year-end financial statements was other than unqualified, referred to other auditors, or included an explanatory paragraph because of a going-concern matter or an inconsistency in the application of accounting principles, the last paragraph of the illustrative report in paragraph .39 should be appropriately modified.

²⁹ See section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*.

matters. It is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion regarding the financial statements taken as a whole. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

Based on our review and the report of other accountants, we are not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the accompanying interim financial information (statements) for it (them) to be in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[Signature]

[Date]

Modification of the Accountant's Review Report

.41 The accountant's report on a review of interim financial information should be modified for departures from generally accepted accounting principles,³⁰ which include inadequate disclosure and changes in accounting principle that are not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. The existence of substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern or a lack of consistency in the application of accounting principles affecting the interim financial information would not require the accountant to add an additional paragraph to the report, provided that the interim financial information appropriately discloses such matters. Although not required, the accountant may wish to emphasize such matters in a separate explanatory paragraph of the report. See paragraphs .44 and .45 of this section for examples of paragraphs that address matters related to an entity's ability to continue as a going concern.

.42 *Departure from generally accepted accounting principles.* If the accountant becomes aware that the interim financial information is materially affected by a departure from generally accepted accounting principles, he or she should modify the report. The modification should describe the nature of the departure and, if practicable, should state the effects on the interim financial information. Following is an example of such a modification of the accountant's report.

[Explanatory third paragraph]

Based on information furnished to us by management, we believe that the company has excluded from property and debt in the accompanying balance sheet certain lease obligations that we believe should be capitalized to conform with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. This information indicates that if these lease obligations were capitalized at September 30, 20X1, property would be increased by \$_____, long-term debt by \$_____, and net income and earnings per share would be increased (decreased) by \$_____, \$_____, \$_____, and \$_____, respectively, for the three-month and nine-month periods then ended.

[Concluding paragraph]

Based on our review, with the exception of the matter(s) described in the preceding paragraph(s), we are not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the accompanying interim financial information (statements) for it (them) to be in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

³⁰ If the circumstances contemplated by Rule 203, *Accounting Principles*, are present, the accountant should refer to the guidance in section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .15).

.43 Inadequate disclosure. The information necessary for adequate disclosure is influenced by the form and context in which the interim financial information is presented. For example, the disclosures considered necessary for interim financial information presented in accordance with the minimum disclosure requirements of APB Opinion No. 28, paragraph 30, which is applicable to summarized financial statements of public companies, are considerably less extensive than those necessary for annual financial statements that present financial position, results of operations, and cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.³¹ If information that the accountant believes is necessary for adequate disclosure in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles³² is not included in the interim financial information, the accountant should modify the report and, if practicable, include the necessary information in the report. The following is an example of such a modification of the accountant's report:

[Explanatory third paragraph]

Management has informed us that the company is presently contesting deficiencies in federal income taxes proposed by the Internal Revenue Service for the years 20X1 through 20X3 in the aggregate amount of approximately \$____, and that the extent of the company's liability, if any, and the effect on the accompanying information (statements) is not determinable at this time. The information (statements) fail(s) to disclose these matters, which we believe are required to be disclosed in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

[Concluding paragraph]

Based on our review, with the exception of the matter(s) described in the preceding paragraph(s), we are not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the accompanying interim financial information (statements) for it (them) to be in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

.44 Going-concern paragraph was included in the prior year's audit report; conditions giving rise to the paragraph continue to exist. If (a) the auditor's report for the prior year end contained an explanatory paragraph indicating the existence of substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, (b) the conditions that raised such doubt continued to exist as of the interim reporting date covered by the review, and (c) there is adequate and appropriate disclosure about these conditions in the interim financial information, the accountant is not required to modify his or her report. However, the accountant may add an explanatory paragraph to the review report, after the concluding paragraph, emphasizing the matter disclosed in the audited financial statements and the interim financial information. The following is an example of such a paragraph.

Note 4 of the Company's audited financial statements as of December 31, 20X1, and for the year then ended discloses that the Company was unable to renew its line of credit or obtain alternative financing at December 31, 20X1. Our

³¹ APB Opinion No. 28, paragraph 32, states that "there is a presumption that users of summarized interim financial data will have read the latest published annual report, including the financial disclosures required by generally accepted accounting principles and management's commentary concerning the annual financial results, and that the summarized interim data will be viewed in that context." See footnote 18 of this section for additional disclosure requirements.

³² Such disclosures include those set forth in section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, paragraph .10. If the accountant determines that disclosure about the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern is inadequate, a departure from generally accepted accounting principles exists.

auditor's report on those financial statements includes an explanatory paragraph referring to the matters in Note 4 of those financial statements and indicating that these matters raised substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. As indicated in Note 3 of the Company's unaudited interim financial statements as of March 31, 20X2, and for the three months then ended, the Company was still unable to renew its line of credit or obtain alternative financing as of March 31, 20X2. The accompanying interim financial information does not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

.45 *Going-concern paragraph was not included in the prior year's audit report; conditions or events exist as of the interim reporting date covered by the review that might be indicative of the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern.* If (a) conditions or events exist as of the interim reporting date covered by the review that might be indicative of the entity's possible inability to continue as a going concern, and (b) there is adequate and appropriate disclosure about these conditions or events in the interim financial information, the accountant is not required to modify his or her report. However, the accountant may add an explanatory paragraph to the review report, after the concluding paragraph, emphasizing the matter disclosed in the interim financial information. The following is an example of such a paragraph.

As indicated in Note 3, certain conditions indicate that the Company may be unable to continue as a going concern. The accompanying interim financial information does not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Accountant's Report

.46 Subsequent to the date of the accountant's review report or the completion of the interim review procedures, if a report is not issued, the accountant may become aware that facts existed at the date of the review report (or the completion of the review procedures) that might have affected the accountant's report (or conclusion, if a report is not issued) had he or she then been aware of those matters. Because of the variety of conditions that might be encountered, the specific actions to be taken by the accountant in a particular case may vary with the circumstances. In any event, the accountant should consider the guidance in section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*.

Client's Representation Concerning a Review of Interim Financial Information

.47 If a client represents in a document filed with a regulatory agency (see paragraph .03 of this section for the SEC requirement) or issued to stockholders or third parties, that the accountant has reviewed the interim financial information included in the document, the accountant should advise the entity that his or her review report must be included in the document. If the client will not agree to include the accountant's review report, the accountant should perform the following procedures.

- Request that the accountant's name be neither associated with the interim financial information nor referred to in the document.
- If the client does not comply with the request, advise the client that the accountant will not consent either to the use of his or her name or to reference to him or her.

- When appropriate, recommend that the client consult with its legal counsel about the application of relevant laws and regulations to the circumstances.
- Consider what other actions might be appropriate.³³

.48 If a client represents in a document filed with a regulatory agency (see paragraph .03 of this section for the SEC requirement) or issued to stockholders or third parties that the accountant has reviewed the interim financial information included in the document, and the accountant has been unable to complete the review of the interim financial information, the accountant should refer to paragraph .28 of this section for guidance.

Interim Financial Information Accompanying Audited Financial Statements

.49 Interim financial information may be presented as supplementary information outside audited financial statements. In such circumstances, each page of the interim financial information should be clearly marked as unaudited. If management chooses or is required to present interim financial information in a note to the audited financial statements, the information also should be clearly marked as unaudited.

.50 The auditor ordinarily need not modify his or her report on the audited financial statements to refer to his or her having performed a review in accordance with this section or to refer to the interim financial information accompanying the audited financial statements because the interim financial information has not been audited and is not required for the audited financial statements to be fairly stated in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. The auditor's report on the audited financial statements should, however, be modified in the following circumstances:

- a. The interim financial information included in a note to the financial statements, including information that has been reviewed in accordance with this section, is not appropriately marked as unaudited. (In these circumstances the auditor should disclaim an opinion on the interim financial information.)
- b. The interim financial information accompanying audited financial statements does not appear to be presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (see paragraphs .42 and .43 of this section). However, the auditor need not modify his or her report on the audited financial statements if his or her separate review report, which refers to those circumstances, is presented with the information.
- c. The selected quarterly financial data required by item 302(a) of Regulation S-K is omitted. The following is an example of a paragraph that should be added to the auditor's report if the selected quarterly financial data required by item 302(a) is omitted.

The company has not presented the selected quarterly financial data specified in item 302(a) of Regulation S-K that the Securities and Exchange Commission requires as supplementary information to the basic financial statements.

³³ In considering what actions, if any, may be appropriate in these circumstances, the accountant should consider consulting his or her legal counsel.

- d. The selected quarterly financial data required by item 302(a) of Regulation S-K has not been reviewed. The following is an example of a paragraph that should be added to the auditor's report if the selected quarterly financial data required by item 302(a) has not been reviewed.

The selected quarterly financial data on page xx contains information that we did not audit, and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion on that data. We attempted but were unable to review the quarterly data in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants because we believe that the company's internal control for the preparation of interim financial information does not provide an adequate basis to enable us to complete such a review.

Documentation

.51 The accountant should prepare documentation in connection with a review of interim financial information, the form and content of which should be designed to meet the circumstances of the particular engagement. Documentation is the principal record of the review procedures performed and the conclusions reached by the accountant in performing the review.³⁴ Examples of documentation are review programs, analyses, memoranda, and letters of representation. Documentation may be in paper or electronic form, or other media. The quantity, type, and content of the documentation are matters of the accountant's professional judgment.

.52 Because of the different circumstances in individual engagements, it is not possible to specify the form or content of the documentation the accountant should prepare. However, the documentation should include any findings or issues that in the accountant's judgment are significant, for example, the results of review procedures that indicate that the interim financial information could be materially misstated, including actions taken to address such findings, and the basis for the final conclusions reached. In addition, the documentation should (a) enable members of the engagement team with supervision and review responsibilities to understand the nature, timing, extent, and results of the review procedures performed; (b) identify the engagement team member(s) who performed and reviewed the work; and (c) identify the evidence the accountant obtained in support of the conclusion that the interim financial information being reviewed agreed or reconciled with the accounting records (see paragraph .18(d) of this section).

Effective Date

.53 This section is effective for interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2002. Earlier application of the provisions of this section is permitted.

³⁴ However, an accountant would not be precluded from supporting his or her conclusions by other means in addition to the documentation.

Appendix A

Analytical Procedures the Accountant May Consider Performing When Conducting a Review of Interim Financial Information

A1. Analytical procedures are designed to identify relationships and individual items that appear to be unusual and that may reflect a material misstatement of the interim financial information. These procedures may consist of comparing interim financial information with prior period information, actual interim results with anticipated results (such as budgets or forecasts), and recorded amounts or ratios with expectations developed by the accountant. Examples of analytical procedures an accountant may consider performing in a review of interim financial information include:

- Comparing current interim financial information with anticipated results, such as budgets or forecasts (for example, comparing tax balances and the relationship between the provision for income taxes and pretax income in the current interim financial information with corresponding information in (a) budgets, using expected rates, and (b) financial information for prior periods).¹
- Comparing current interim financial information with relevant nonfinancial information.
- Comparing ratios and indicators for the current interim period with expectations based on prior periods, for example, performing gross profit analysis by product line and operating segment using elements of the current interim financial information and comparing the results with corresponding information for prior periods. Examples of key ratios and indicators are the current ratio, receivable turnover or days' sales outstanding, inventory turnover, depreciation to average fixed assets, debt to equity, gross profit percentage, net income percentage, and plant operating rates.
- Comparing ratios and indicators for the current interim period with those of entities in the same industry.
- Comparing relationships among elements in the current interim financial information with corresponding relationships in the interim financial information of prior periods, for example, expense by type as a percentage of sales, assets by type as a percentage of total assets, and percentage of change in sales to percentage of change in receivables.
- Comparing disaggregated data. The following are examples of how data may be disaggregated.
 - By period, for example, financial statement items disaggregated into quarterly, monthly, or weekly amounts.

¹ The accountant should exercise caution when comparing and evaluating current interim financial information with budgets, forecasts, or other anticipated results because of the inherent lack of precision in estimating the future and susceptibility of such information to manipulation and misstatement by management to reflect desired interim results.

- By product line or operating segment.
- By location, for example, subsidiary, division, or branch.

A2. Analytical procedures may include such statistical techniques as trend analysis or regression analysis and may be performed manually or with the use of computer-assisted techniques.

Appendix B

Unusual or Complex Situations to Be Considered by the Accountant When Conducting a Review of Interim Financial Information

B1. The following are examples of situations about which the accountant would ordinarily inquire of management:

- Business combinations
- New or complex revenue recognition methods
- Impairment of assets
- Disposal of a segment of a business
- Use of derivative instruments and hedging activities
- Sales and transfers that may call into question the classification of investments in securities, including management's intent and ability with respect to the remaining securities classified as held to maturity
- Computation of earnings per share in a complex capital structure
- Adoption of new stock compensation plans or changes to existing plans
- Restructuring charges taken in the current and prior quarters
- Significant, unusual, or infrequently occurring transactions
- Changes in litigation or contingencies
- Changes in major contracts with customers or suppliers
- Application of new accounting principles
- Changes in accounting principles or the methods of applying them
- Trends and developments affecting accounting estimates,¹ such as allowances for bad debts and excess or obsolete inventories, provisions for warranties and employee benefits, and realization of unearned income and deferred charges
- Compliance with debt covenants
- Changes in related parties or significant new related-party transactions
- Material off-balance-sheet transactions, special-purpose entities, and other equity investments
- Unique terms for debt or capital stock that could affect classification

¹ The accountant may wish to refer to the guidance in section 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*, paragraphs .05 and .06.

Appendix C

Illustrative Management Representation Letters for a Review of Interim Financial Information

C1. The following illustrative management representation letters, which relate to a review of interim financial information prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, are presented for illustrative purposes only. The first letter is designed to be used in conjunction with the representation letter provided by management in connection with the audit of the financial statements of the prior year. The second illustrative representation letter may be used independently of any other representation letter.

C2. The introductory paragraph of the letters should specify the financial statements and periods covered by the accountant's report, for example, "condensed balance sheets of XYZ Company as of June 30, 20X1 and 20X2, and the related condensed statements of income and retained earnings and cash flows for the three-month and nine-month periods then ended." The written representations to be obtained should be based on the circumstances of the engagement and the nature and basis of presentation of the financial statements being reviewed. Appendix B, "Additional Illustrative Representations," of section 333, *Management Representations*, presents examples of such representations. Illustrative representations for specialized industries are presented in AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides.

C3. If matters exist that should be disclosed to the accountant, they should be indicated by modifying the related representation. For example, if an event subsequent to the date of the balance sheet has been disclosed in the interim financial statements, the final paragraph could be modified as follows: "To the best of our knowledge and belief, except as discussed in Note X to the financial statements, no events have occurred. . . ." In appropriate circumstances, item 10 of the second illustrative representation letter could be modified as follows: "The company has no plans or intentions that may materially affect the carrying value or classification of assets and liabilities, except for our plans to dispose of segment A, as disclosed in Note X to the interim financial information, which are discussed in the minutes of the June 7, 20X2, meeting of the board of directors (or disclosed to you at our meeting on June 15, 20X2)." Similarly, if management has received a communication regarding an allegation of fraud or suspected fraud, item 7 of the first illustrative representation letter and item 9 of the second illustrative representation letter could be modified as follows: "Except for the allegation discussed in the minutes of the December 7, 20X1, meeting of the board of directors (or disclosed to you at our meeting on October 15, 20X1), we have no knowledge of any allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the company received in communications from employees, former employees, analysts, regulators, short sellers, or others."

C4. The qualitative discussion of materiality used in the illustrative letters is adapted from the Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 2, *Qualitative Characteristics of Accounting Information*.

C5. Certain terms are used in the illustrative letters that are described elsewhere in authoritative literature. Examples are *fraud*, in section 319, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, and *related parties*, in

section 334, *Related Parties*, footnote 1). To avoid misunderstanding concerning the meaning of such terms, the accountant may wish to furnish those definitions to management or request that the definitions be included in the written representations.

C6. The illustrative letters assume that management and the accountant have reached an understanding on the limits of materiality for purposes of the written representations. However, it should be noted that a materiality limit would not apply for certain representations, as explained in section 333.08.

1. Illustrative Short-Form Representation Letter for a Review of Interim Financial Information (Statements)

[This representation letter is to be used in conjunction with the representation letter for the audit of the financial statements of the prior year. Management confirms the representations made in the representation letter for the audit of the financial statements of the prior year end as they apply to the interim financial information, and makes additional representations that may be needed for the interim financial information.]

[Date]

To *[Independent Accountant]*:

We are providing this letter in connection with your review of the *[identification of interim financial information (statements)]* of *[name of entity]* as of *[dates]* and for the *[periods]* for the purpose of determining whether any material modifications should be made to the *[consolidated]* interim financial information (statements) for it (them) to conform with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. We confirm that we are responsible for the fair presentation of the *[consolidated]* interim financial information (statements) in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

Certain representations in this letter are described as being limited to matters that are material. Items are considered material, regardless of size, if they involve an omission or misstatement of accounting information that, in the light of surrounding circumstances, makes it probable that the judgment of a reasonable person relying on the information would be changed or influenced by the omission or misstatement.

We confirm, to the best of our knowledge and belief, *[as of (date of accountant's report or completion of review),]* the following representations made to you during your review.

1. The interim financial information (statements) referred to above has (have) been prepared and presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applicable to interim financial information.
2. We have made available to you:
 - a. All financial records and related data.
 - b. All minutes of the meetings of stockholders, directors, and committees of directors, or summaries of actions of recent meetings for which minutes have not yet been prepared. All significant board and committee actions are included in the summaries.
3. We believe that the effects of any uncorrected financial statement misstatements aggregated by you during the current review engagement and pertaining to the interim period(s) in the current year, as summarized in the accompanying schedule, are immaterial, both indi-

vidually and in the aggregate, to the interim financial information (statements) taken as a whole.¹

- 4. There are no significant deficiencies, including material weaknesses, in the design or operation of internal controls which could adversely affect the company's ability to record, process, summarize, and report interim financial data.
- 5. We acknowledge our responsibility for the design and implementation of programs and controls to prevent and detect fraud.
- 6. We have no knowledge of any fraud or suspected fraud affecting the company involving:
 - a. Management;
 - b. Employees who have significant roles in internal control; or
 - c. Others where the fraud could have a material effect on the interim financial information.
- 7. We have no knowledge of any allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the company in communications from employees, former employees, analysts, regulators, short sellers, or others.
- 8. We have reviewed our representation letter to you dated [*date of representation letter relating to most recent audit*] with respect to the audited financial statements for the year ended [*prior year-end date*]. We believe that representations A, B, and C within that representation letter do not apply to the interim financial information (statements) referred to above. We now confirm those representations 1 through X, as they apply to the interim financial information (statements) referred to above, and incorporate them herein, with the following changes:

[*Indicate any changes.*]

- 9. [*Add any representations related to new accounting or auditing standards that are being implemented for the first time.*]

To the best of our knowledge and belief, no events have occurred subsequent to the balance-sheet date and through the date of this letter that would require adjustment to or disclosure in the aforementioned interim financial information (statements).

[*Name of chief executive officer and title*]

[*Name of chief financial officer and title*]

[*Name of chief accounting officer and title*]

¹ If a summary of uncorrected misstatements is unnecessary because no uncorrected misstatements were identified, this representation should be eliminated.

2. Illustrative Representation Letter for a Review of Interim Financial Information (Statements)

[This representation letter is similar in detail to the management-representation letter used for the audit of the financial statements of the prior year and thus need not refer to the written management representations received in the most recent audit.]

[Date]

To *[Independent Accountant]*:

We are providing this letter in connection with your review of the *[identification of interim financial information (statements)]* of *[name of entity]* as of *[dates]* and for the *[periods]* for the purpose of determining whether any material modifications should be made to the *[consolidated]* interim financial information (statements) for it (them) to conform with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. We confirm that we are responsible for the fair presentation of the *[consolidated]* interim financial information (statements) in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

Certain representations in this letter are described as being limited to matters that are material. Items are considered material, regardless of size, if they involve an omission or misstatement of accounting information that, in the light of surrounding circumstances, makes it probable that the judgment of a reasonable person relying on the information would be changed or influenced by the omission or misstatement.

We confirm, to the best of our knowledge and belief, *[as of (date of accountant's report or the completion of the review)]*, the following representations made to you during your review.

1. The interim financial information (statements) referred to above has (have) been prepared and presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles applicable to interim financial information (statements).
2. We have made available to you—
 - a. All financial records and related data.
 - b. All minutes of the meetings of stockholders, directors, and committees of directors, or summaries of actions of recent meetings for which minutes have not yet been prepared. All significant board and committee actions are included in the summaries.
3. There have been no communications from regulatory agencies concerning noncompliance with or deficiencies in financial reporting practices.
4. There are no material transactions that have not been properly recorded in the accounting records underlying the interim financial information.
5. We believe that the effects of any uncorrected financial statement misstatements aggregated by you during the current review engagement and pertaining to the interim period(s) in the current year, as summarized in the accompanying schedule, are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the interim financial information (statements) taken as a whole.¹

¹ If a summary of uncorrected misstatements is unnecessary because no uncorrected misstatements were identified, this representation should be eliminated.

6. There are no significant deficiencies, including material weaknesses, in the design or operation of internal controls which could adversely affect the company's ability to record, process, summarize, and report interim financial data.
7. We acknowledge our responsibility for the design and implementation of programs and controls to prevent and detect fraud.
8. We have no knowledge of any fraud or suspected fraud affecting the company involving:
 - a. Management;
 - b. Employees who have significant roles in internal control; or
 - c. Others where the fraud could have a material effect on the interim financial information.
9. We have no knowledge of any allegations of fraud or suspected fraud affecting the company received in communications from employees, former employees, analysts, regulators, short sellers, or others.
10. The company has no plans or intentions that may materially affect the carrying value or classification of assets and liabilities.
11. The following have been properly recorded or disclosed in the interim financial information (statements):
 - a. Related-party transactions, including sales, purchases, loans, transfers, leasing arrangements, and guarantees, and amounts receivable from or payable to related parties.
 - b. Guarantees, whether written or oral, under which the company is contingently liable.
 - c. Significant estimates and material concentrations known to management that are required to be disclosed in accordance with the AICPA's Statement of Position 94-6, *Disclosure of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties*. [*Significant estimates are estimates at the balance sheet date that could change materially within the next year. Concentrations refer to volumes of business, revenues, available sources of supply, or markets or geographic areas for which events could occur that would significantly disrupt normal finances within the next year.*]
12. There are no:
 - a. Violations or possible violations of laws or regulations whose effects should be considered for disclosure in the interim financial information (statements) or as a basis for recording a loss contingency.
 - b. Unasserted claims or assessments that are probable of assertion and must be disclosed in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*.
 - c. Other liabilities or gain or loss contingencies that are required to be accrued or disclosed by FASB Statement No. 5.
13. The company has satisfactory title to all owned assets, and there are no liens or encumbrances on such assets; nor has any asset been pledged as collateral.
14. The company has complied with all aspects of contractual agreements that would have a material effect on the financial statements in the event of noncompliance.
15. [*Add additional representations that are unique to the entity's business or industry. See paragraph .21 of this section and section 333, Management Representations, paragraph .17).*]

16. [Add any representations related to new accounting or auditing standards that are being implemented for the first time.]

To the best of our knowledge and belief, no events have occurred subsequent to the balance-sheet date and through the date of this letter that would require adjustment to or disclosure in the aforementioned interim financial information (statements).

[Name of chief executive officer and title]

[Name of chief financial officer and title]

[Name of chief accounting officer and title]

AU Section 800

COMPLIANCE AUDITING

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
801	Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance	.01-.24
	Introduction and Applicability . . . . .	.01-.02
	Effects of Laws on Financial Statements . . . . .	.03-.07
	Government Auditing Standards . . . . .	.08-.09
	Federal Audit Requirements . . . . .	.10-.20
	Compliance Requirements Applicable to Federal Financial Assistance Programs . . . . .	.12-.16
	Evaluating Results of Compliance Audit Procedures on Major Federal Financial Assistance Programs . . . . .	.17-.20
	Communications Regarding Applicable Audit Requirements . . .	.21-.23
	Effective Date . . . . .	.24

AU Section 801

Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance

(Supersedes SAS No. 68)

Source: SAS No. 74; SAS No. 75.

Effective for audits of financial statements and of compliance with laws and regulations for fiscal periods ending after December 31, 1994, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction and Applicability

.01 This section^[1] is applicable when the auditor is engaged to audit a governmental entity under generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS), and engaged to test and report on compliance with laws and regulations under *Government Auditing Standards* (the Yellow Book) or in certain other circumstances involving governmental financial assistance,^{2, 3} such as single or organization-wide audits or program-specific audits under certain federal or state audit regulations.⁴

[1] [Footnote deleted to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

² Guidance for engagements related to management's written assertion about either (a) an entity's compliance with the requirements of specified laws, regulations, rules, or contracts not involving governmental financial assistance, or (b) the effectiveness of an entity's internal control structure over compliance with specified requirements is provided in AT section 601, *Compliance Attestation*. [Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

³ When engaged to perform an agreed-upon procedures engagement for which the objective is to report in accordance with this section, the auditor may consider the guidance in AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*. [Footnote added, effective for reports on agreed-upon procedures engagements dated after April 30, 1996, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75. Footnote revised, January 2001, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

⁴ A single or organization-wide audit is an audit of an entity's financial statements and of compliance with regulations relating to governmental financial assistance. Examples are audits required by the Single Audit Act of 1984 and Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular A-128, *Audits of State and Local Governments*, OMB Circular A-133, *Audits of Institutions of Higher Education and Other Nonprofit Institutions*, or the *Connecticut Single Audit Act*. A program-specific audit is an audit of one governmental financial assistance program in accordance with federal or state laws, regulations or audit guides, such as the U.S. Department of Education's *Student Financial Assistance Audit Guide*, or the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development's (HUD's) *Consolidated Audit Guide for Audits of HUD Programs*, relative to that program. An auditor may also be engaged to test and report on compliance with other federal, state, and local laws and regulations that are beyond the scope of this section. (For additional guidance, see footnote 2.) [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995.]

.02 Specifically, this section provides general⁵ guidance to the auditor to—

- a. Apply the provisions of section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*, relative to detecting misstatements resulting from illegal acts related to laws and regulations that have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts in audits of the financial statements of governmental entities and other recipients of governmental financial assistance (paragraphs .03 through .07).
- b. Perform a financial audit in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States (paragraphs .08 and .09).⁶
- c. Perform a single or organization-wide audit or a program-specific audit in accordance with federal audit requirements (paragraphs .10 through .20).
- d. Communicate with management if the auditor becomes aware that the entity is subject to an audit requirement that may not be encompassed in the terms of his or her engagement (paragraphs .21 through .23).

Effects of Laws on Financial Statements

.03 The Governmental Accounting Standards Board's (GASB's) *Codification of Governmental Accounting and Financial Reporting Standards*, section 1200.103, recognizes that governmental entities generally are subject to a variety of laws and regulations that affect their financial statements.

An important aspect of GAAP [generally accepted accounting principles] as applied to governments is the recognition of the variety of legal and contractual considerations typical of the government environment. These considerations underlie and are reflected in the fund structure, bases of accounting, and other principles and methods set forth here, and are a major factor distinguishing governmental accounting from commercial accounting.

For example, such laws and regulations may address the fund structure required by law, regulation, or bond covenant; procurement; debt limitations; and legal authority for transactions.

.04 Federal, state, and local governmental entities provide financial assistance to other entities, including not-for-profit organizations and business enterprises that are either primary recipients, subrecipients,⁷ or beneficiaries.

⁵ Specific guidance is provided in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Audits of State and Local Governmental Units*, and in Statement of Position (SOP) 98-3, *Audits of States, Local Governments, and Not-for-Profit Organizations Receiving Federal Awards*. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995.]

⁶ In practice, *Government Auditing Standards*, or the Yellow Book, is sometimes referred to as *generally accepted government auditing standards* (GAGAS). *Government Auditing Standards* includes standards for financial and performance audits. The references to *Government Auditing Standards* in this section encompass only the standards that apply to financial audits, not the performance audit standards. The auditor should be aware that *Government Auditing Standards* is revised periodically and should ensure that the currently effective version is being followed. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995.]

⁷ A subrecipient is an entity that receives governmental financial assistance when the assistance is initially received by another entity (the primary recipient) that distributes the assistance for the government program that created and provided the assistance. As used in this section, *recipient* means either a primary recipient or a subrecipient. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995.]

Among the forms of governmental financial assistance are grants of cash and other assets, loans, loan guarantees, and interest-rate subsidies.⁸ By accepting such assistance, both governmental and nongovernmental entities may be subject to laws and regulations that may have a direct and material effect on the determination of amounts in their financial statements.

.05 Management is responsible for ensuring that the entity complies with the laws and regulations applicable to its activities. That responsibility encompasses the identification of applicable laws and regulations and the establishment of controls designed to provide reasonable assurance that the entity complies with those laws and regulations. The auditor's responsibility for testing and reporting on compliance with laws and regulations varies according to the terms of the engagement.

.06 Section 317 describes the auditor's responsibility, in an audit performed in accordance with GAAS, for considering laws and regulations and how they affect the audit. Thus, the auditor should design the audit to provide reasonable assurance that the financial statements are free of material misstatements resulting from violations of laws and regulations that have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts.

.07 The auditor should obtain an understanding of the possible effects on financial statements of laws and regulations that are generally recognized by auditors to have a direct and material effect on the determination of amounts in an entity's financial statements. The auditor should also assess whether management has identified laws and regulations that have a direct and material effect on the determination of amounts in the entity's financial statements and obtain an understanding of the possible effects on the financial statements of such laws and regulations. The auditor may consider performing the following procedures in assessing such laws and regulations and in obtaining an understanding of their possible effects on the financial statements.

- a. Consider knowledge about such laws and regulations obtained from prior years' audits.
- b. Discuss such laws and regulations with the entity's chief financial officer, legal counsel, or grant administrators.
- c. Obtain written representation from management regarding the completeness of management's identification.
- d. Review the relevant portions of any directly related agreements, such as those related to grants and loans.
- e. Review the minutes of meetings of the legislative body and governing board of the governmental entity being audited for the enactment of

⁸ For purposes of this section, financial assistance, as defined by the Single Audit Act of 1984 and OMB Circular A-128, does not include contracts to provide goods or services to a governmental entity or arrangements in which a nongovernmental entity purchases insurance from the government. Federal awards, as defined by OMB Circular A-133, means financial assistance and federal cost-type contracts used to buy services or goods for the use of the federal government. Federal awards do not include procurement contracts to vendors under grants or contracts used to buy goods or services. For example, financial assistance does not include a contract to design and manufacture aircraft for the U.S. Air Force or the purchase of deposit insurance by a financial institution. In addition, although Medicaid funds paid by the federal government to states constitute financial assistance, most Medicaid arrangements between the states and health-care providers are contracts for services that are not considered to be financial assistance. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995.]

laws and regulations that have a direct and material effect on the determination of amounts in the governmental entity's financial statements.

- f. Inquire of the office of the federal, state, or local auditor, or other appropriate audit oversight organization about the laws and regulations applicable to entities within their jurisdiction, including statutes and uniform reporting requirements.
- g. Review information about compliance requirements, such as the information included in the Compliance Supplements issued by OMB: *Compliance Supplement for Single Audits of State and Local Governments* and *Compliance Supplement for Audits of Institutions of Higher Learning and Other Non-Profit Institutions, Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance*, issued by the Government Printing Office, and state and local policies and procedures.

Government Auditing Standards

.08 *Government Auditing Standards* contains standards for audits of government organizations, programs, activities, and functions and of government assistance received by contractors, not-for-profit organizations, and other nongovernment organizations. These standards, which include designing the audit to provide reasonable assurance of detecting material misstatements resulting from noncompliance with provisions of contracts or grant agreements that have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts, are to be followed when required by law, regulation, agreement, contract, or policy.⁹

.09 For financial audits, *Government Auditing Standards* prescribes fieldwork and reporting standards beyond those required by GAAS. The general standards of *Government Auditing Standards* relate to qualifications of the staff, independence, due professional care, and quality control.

Federal Audit Requirements

.10 Although the scope and reporting requirements of an audit of a recipient of federal financial assistance in accordance with federal audit regulations vary, the audits generally have the following elements in common.

- a. The audit is to be conducted in accordance with GAAS and *Government Auditing Standards*.
- b. The auditor's consideration of internal control is to include obtaining and documenting an understanding of internal control established to ensure compliance with the laws and regulations applicable to the federal financial assistance. In some instances, federal audit regulations mandate a "test of controls" to evaluate the effectiveness of the design and operation of the policies and procedures in preventing or detecting material noncompliance.

⁹ Some states have adopted regulations that require local governments within the states to have their audits conducted in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*. In addition, some states require that recipients of state financial assistance be audited in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995.]

- c. The auditor is to issue a report on the consideration of internal control described above.
- d. The auditor is to determine and report on whether the federal financial assistance has been administered in accordance with applicable laws and regulations (that is, compliance requirements).^[10]

.11 A recipient of federal financial assistance may be subject to a single or organization-wide audit or to a program-specific audit. A number of federal audit regulations permit the recipient to “elect” to have a program-specific audit, whereas other federal audit regulations require a program-specific audit in certain circumstances. In planning the audit, the auditor should determine and consider the specific federal audit requirements¹¹ applicable to the engagement, including the issuance of additional reports. As noted in paragraph .10 of this section, federal audit regulations for both single or organization-wide audits and program-specific audits generally require consideration of internal control beyond what is normally required by GAAS and *Government Auditing Standards* and a determination of whether applicable compliance requirements have been met.

Compliance Requirements Applicable to Federal Financial Assistance Programs

.12 Compliance requirements applicable to federal financial assistance programs are usually one of two types: general and specific. General requirements involve national policy and apply to all or most federal financial assistance programs.¹²

.13 Specific requirements apply to a particular federal program and generally arise from statutory requirements and regulations. The OMB’s Compliance Supplements set forth general and specific requirements for many of the federal programs awarded to state and local governments and to not-for-profit organizations, as well as suggested audit procedures to test for compliance with the requirements.

.14 For program-specific audits, the auditor should consult federal grantor agency audit guides to identify general requirements that are statutory and regulatory requirements pertaining to certain federal programs, specific requirements for a particular program, and suggested audit procedures to test for compliance with the requirements.

.15 In addition to those identified in the OMB’s Compliance Supplements or federal grantor agency audit guides, specific requirements may also be enumerated in grant agreements or contracts.

.16 Generally, the auditor is required to determine whether the recipient has complied with the general and specific requirements. The form of the

^[10] [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995. Footnote deleted to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 85.]

¹¹ Such requirements may be set out in an engagement letter or audit contract. In some instances, a written engagement letter is required by the federal grantor agency. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995.]

¹² General requirements also may be referred to as *common* requirements. Detailed guidance on evaluating the results of testing general requirements can be found in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Audits of State and Local Governmental Units*, and in SOP 92-9, [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995.]

report and the required level of assurance to be provided in the report may vary, depending on the requirements of a particular agency or program. For example, if reporting on compliance requirements, the auditor may be required to report findings relating to compliance with those requirements or the auditor may be required to express an opinion on whether the recipient has complied with the requirements applicable to its major¹³ federal financial assistance programs.¹⁴

Evaluating Results of Compliance Audit Procedures on Major Federal Financial Assistance Programs

.17 In evaluating whether an entity has complied with laws and regulations that, if not complied with, could have a material effect on each major federal financial assistance program, the auditor should consider the effect of identified instances of noncompliance on each such program. In doing so, the auditor should consider—

- a. The frequency of noncompliance identified in the audit.
- b. The adequacy of a primary recipient's system for monitoring subrecipients and the possible effect on the program of any noncompliance identified by the primary recipient or the auditors of the subrecipients.
- c. Whether any instances of noncompliance identified in the audit resulted in questioned costs, as discussed below, and, if they did, whether questioned costs are material to the program.¹⁵

.18 The criteria for classifying a cost as a questioned cost vary from one federal agency to another. In evaluating the effect of questioned costs on the opinion on compliance, the auditor considers the best estimate of total costs questioned for each major federal financial assistance program (hereafter referred to as *likely questioned costs*), not just the questioned costs specifically identified (hereafter referred to as *known questioned costs*). When using audit sampling, as defined in section 350, *Audit Sampling*, in testing compliance, the auditor should project the amount of known questioned costs identified in the sample to the items in the major federal financial assistance program from which the sample was selected.

.19 Regardless of the auditor's opinion on compliance, federal audit regulations may require him or her to report any instances of noncompliance found and any resulting questioned costs. In reporting instances of noncompliance, the auditor should follow the provisions of *Government Auditing Standards*. For purposes of reporting questioned costs, the auditor is not required to report likely questioned costs; rather, the auditor should report only known questioned costs.

¹³ A major federal financial assistance program is defined by a federal regulation or law or by the federal grantor agency's audit guide. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995.]

¹⁴ Detailed testing and reporting guidance on single or organization-wide audits and program-specific audits is provided in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Audits of State and Local Governmental Units* and in SOP 92-9. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995.]

¹⁵ In auditing compliance with requirements governing major federal financial assistance programs, the auditor's consideration of materiality differs from that in an audit of the financial statements in accordance with GAAS. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995.]

.20 When evaluating the results of compliance audit procedures on federal financial assistance programs, the auditor also should consider whether identified instances of noncompliance affect his or her opinion on the entity's financial statements (see paragraph .06).

Communications Regarding Applicable Audit Requirements

.21 Management is responsible for obtaining audits that satisfy relevant legal, regulatory, or contractual requirements. Auditors should exercise due professional care in ensuring that they and management understand the type of engagement to be performed. If a proposal, contract, or engagement letter is used, an auditor should consider including in it a statement about the type of engagement and whether the engagement is intended to meet specific audit requirements.

.22 GAAS do not require the auditor to perform procedures beyond those he or she considers necessary to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to form a basis for the opinion on the financial statements. However, if during a GAAS audit of the financial statements the auditor becomes aware that the entity is subject to an audit requirement that may not be encompassed in the terms of the engagement, the auditor should communicate to management and the audit committee, or to others with equivalent authority and responsibility, that an audit in accordance with GAAS may not satisfy the relevant legal, regulatory, or contractual requirements.¹⁶ For example, the auditor will be required to make this communication if an entity engages an auditor to perform an audit of its financial statements in accordance with GAAS and the auditor becomes aware that by law, regulation, or contractual agreement the entity also is required to have an audit performed in accordance with one or more of the following:

- a. *Government Auditing Standards*
- b. *The Single Audit Act of 1984 and OMB Circular A-128, Audits of State and Local Governments*
- c. *OMB Circular A-133, Audits of Institutions of Higher Education and Other Nonprofit Institutions*
- d. Other compliance audit requirements, such as state or local laws or program-specific audits under federal audit guides

.23 The communication required by paragraph .22 of this section may be oral or written. If the communication is oral, the auditor should document the communication in the audit documentation. The auditor should consider how the client's actions in response to such communication relate to other aspects of the audit, including the potential effect on the financial statements and on the auditor's report on those financial statements. Specifically, the auditor should consider management's actions (such as not arranging for an audit that meets the applicable requirements) in relation to the guidance in section 317. [Revised, June 2003, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96.]

¹⁶ For entities that do not have an audit committee, "others with equivalent authority or responsibility" may include the board of directors, the board of trustees, the owner in owner-managed entities, the city council, or the legislative standing committee. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, September 1995.]

Effective Date

.24 The provisions of this section are effective for audits of financial statements and of compliance with laws and regulations for fiscal periods ending after December 31, 1994. Early application of this section is encouraged.

AU Section 900

SPECIAL REPORTS OF THE COMMITTEE ON

AUDITING PROCEDURE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
901	Public Warehouses—Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held .....	.01-.28
	Introduction .....	.01
	General Considerations .....	.02
	Summary of Recommendations .....	.03-.05
	Public Warehouse Operations .....	.06-.12
	The Warehousemen .....	.13-.23
	Controls and Auditing Procedures for Owner's Goods Stored in Public Warehouses .....	.24-.28

AU Section 901

*Public Warehouses—Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held**

Source: SAS No. 1, section 901; SAS No. 43.

Issue date, unless otherwise indicated: November, 1972.

Introduction

.01 This section discusses controls of a public warehouse, the procedures of its independent auditor with respect to goods in the warehouse's custody, and auditing procedures performed by the independent auditor of the owner of goods in the warehouse.¹ [As amended, effective after August 31, 1982, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43.]

General Considerations

.02 The management of a business has the responsibility for the proper recording of transactions in its books of account, for the safeguarding of its assets, and for the substantial accuracy and adequacy of its financial statements. The independent auditor is not an insurer or guarantor; his responsibility is to express a professional opinion on the financial statements he has audited.² [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

Summary of Recommendations

.03 The Committee recommends that the independent auditor of the warehouseman:

- a. Obtain an understanding of controls, relating to the accountability for and the custody of all goods placed in the warehouse and perform tests of controls to evaluate their effectiveness.
- b. Test the warehouseman's records relating to accountability for all goods placed in his custody.
- c. Test the warehouseman's accountability under recorded outstanding warehouse receipts.
- d. Observe physical counts of the goods in custody, wherever practicable and reasonable, and reconcile his tests of such counts with records of goods stored.

* Title revised, February 1997, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 78.

¹ This section reports the conclusions of a 1966 study of the AICPA Committee on Auditing Procedure on the accountability of warehousemen for goods stored in public warehouses. [Footnote renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

² See section 110.

- e. Confirm accountability (to the extent considered necessary) by direct communication with the holders of warehouse receipts.

The independent auditor should apply such other procedures as he considers necessary in the circumstances. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982. Paragraph subsequently renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48, July 1984.]

.04 Warehousing activities are diverse because the warehoused goods are diverse, the purposes of placing goods in custody are varied, and the scope of operations of warehouses is not uniform. The independent auditor has the responsibility to exercise his judgment in determining what procedures, including those recommended in this report, are necessary in the circumstances to afford a reasonable basis for his opinion on the financial statements.³ [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.05 The following sections of this report describe those aspects of warehousing operations of primary concern to independent auditors, suggest elements of internal control for warehousemen, and offer the Committee's recommendations as to procedures of the independent auditor. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

Public Warehouse Operations

Types of Warehouses

.06 A warehouse may be described as a facility operated by a warehouseman whose business is the maintaining of effective custody of goods for others. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.07 Warehouses may be classified functionally as terminal warehouses or field warehouses:

Terminal Warehouse. The principal economic function of a terminal warehouse is to furnish storage. It may, however, perform other functions, including packaging and billing. It may be used to store a wide variety of goods or only a particular type of commodity.

Field Warehouse. A field warehouse is established in space leased by the warehouseman on the premises of the owner of the goods or the premises of a customer of the owner. In most circumstances all or most of the personnel at the warehouse location are employed by the warehouseman from among the employees of the owner (or customer), usually from among those who previously have been responsible for custody and handling of the goods. Field warehousing is essentially a financing arrangement, rather than a storage operation. The warehouse is established to permit the warehouseman to take and maintain custody of goods and issue warehouse receipts to be used as collateral for a loan or other form of credit.

Warehouses may be classified also by types of goods stored. Foods and other perishable products may be stored in refrigerated warehouses, constructed and equipped to meet controlled temperature and special handling requirements. Certain bulk commodities, such as various agricultural products and chemicals,

³ See section 326.

are stored in commodity warehouses; these warehouses often are designed and equipped to store only one commodity, and fungible goods frequently are commingled without regard to ownership. A wide variety of goods, usually not requiring special storage facilities, is stored in general merchandise warehouses. Some warehouses confine their activities to storing furniture, other household goods, and personal effects. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

Warehouse Receipts

.08 A basic document in warehousing is the warehouse receipt. Article 7 of the Uniform Commercial Code regulates the issuance of warehouse receipts, prescribes certain terms that must be contained in such receipts, provides for their negotiation and transfer, and establishes the rights of receipt holders. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.09 Warehouse receipts may be in negotiable form or non-negotiable form and may be used as evidence of collateral for loans or other forms of credit. Goods represented by a negotiable warehouse receipt may be released only upon surrender of the receipt to the warehouseman for cancellation or endorsement, whereas goods represented by a non-negotiable receipt may be released upon valid instructions without the need for surrender of the receipt. Other important ways in which the two kinds of receipts differ concern the manner in which the right of possession to the goods they represent may be transferred from one party to another and the rights acquired by bona fide purchasers of the receipts. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.10 Since goods covered by non-negotiable receipts may be released without surrender of the receipts, such outstanding receipts are not necessarily an indication of accountability on the part of the warehouseman or of evidence of ownership by the depositor. Since goods are frequently withdrawn piecemeal, the warehouseman's accountability at any given time is for the quantity of goods for which receipts have been issued minus the quantities released against properly authorized withdrawals. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.11 Article 7 of the Uniform Commercial Code, in addition to provisions with respect to the issuance and contents of warehouse receipts, contains provisions with respect to, among other things, the storage and release of warehoused goods, the standard of care to be exercised by the warehouseman, warehouseman's liability, and liens for the warehouseman's charges and expenses and the manner in which they may be enforced. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

Government Regulation

.12 There are various other statutes and regulations, applicable in special situations, relating to the rights and duties of warehousemen and the operation of warehouses. Among the more important are (a) the United States Warehouse Act and the regulations adopted thereunder by the Department of Agriculture, providing for licensing and regulation of warehouses storing certain agricultural commodities, (b) the regulations adopted by commodity exchanges licensed under the United States Commodity Exchange Act, providing for issuance and registration of receipts and licensing and regulation of

warehouses, and (c) the Internal Revenue Code and the Tariff Act of 1930, and regulations adopted thereunder, relating respectively to United States Revenue Bonded Warehouses and United States Customs Bonded Warehouses, providing for licensing, bonding, and regulation of such warehouses. In addition, there are statutes and regulations in various states relating to licensing, bonding, insurance, and other matters. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

The Warehouseman

Controls

.13 Goods held in custody for others are not owned by the warehouseman and, therefore, do not appear as assets in his financial statements. Similarly, the related custodial responsibility does not appear as a liability. However, as in other businesses, the warehouseman is exposed to the risk of loss or claims for damage stemming from faulty performance of his operating functions. Faulty performance may take the form of loss or improper release of goods, improper issuance of warehouse receipts, failure to maintain effective custody of goods so that lenders' preferential liens are lost, and other forms. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.14 The recommendation herein that the independent auditor of the warehouseman obtain an understanding of relevant controls and perform tests of controls to evaluate their effectiveness is based upon the important relationship of such controls to the custodial responsibilities of the warehouseman, which are not reflected in his financial statements. Significant unrecorded liabilities may arise if these custodial responsibilities are not discharged properly. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982. Revised, April 1989, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.]

.15 Whether and to what extent the suggested controls that follow may be applicable to a particular warehouse operation will depend on the nature of the operation, of the goods stored, and of the warehouseman's organization. Appropriate segregation of duties in the performance of the respective operating functions should be emphasized.

Receiving, Storing, and Delivering Goods

Receipts should be issued for all goods admitted into storage.

Receiving clerks should prepare reports as to all goods received. The receiving report should be compared with quantities shown on bills of lading or other documents received from the owner or other outside sources by an employee independent of receiving, storing, and shipping.

Goods received should be inspected, counted, weighed, measured, or graded in accordance with applicable requirements. There should be a periodic check of the accuracy of any mechanical facilities used for these purposes.

Unless commingling is unavoidable, such as with fungible goods, goods should be stored so that each lot is segregated and identified with the pertinent warehouse receipt. The warehouse office records should show the location of the goods represented by each outstanding receipt.

Instructions should be issued that goods may be released only on proper authorization which, in the case of negotiable receipts, includes surrender of the receipt.

Access to the storage area should be limited to those employees whose duties require it, and the custody of keys should be controlled.

Periodic statements to customers should identify the goods held and request that discrepancies be reported to a specified employee who is not connected with receiving, storing, and delivery of goods.

The stored goods should be physically counted or tested periodically, and quantities agreed to the records by an employee independent of the storage function; the extent to which this is done may depend on the nature of the goods, the rate of turnover, and the effectiveness of other internal control structure policies and procedures.

Where the goods held are perishable, a regular schedule for inspection of condition should be established.

Protective devices such as burglar alarms, fire alarms, sprinkler systems, and temperature and humidity controls should be inspected regularly.

Goods should be released from the warehouse only on the basis of written instructions received from an authorized employee who does not have access to the goods.

Counts of goods released as made by stock clerks should be independently checked by shipping clerks or others and the two counts should be compared before the goods are released.

Warehouse Receipts

Prenumbered receipt forms should be used, and procedures established for accounting for all forms used and for cancellation of negotiable receipts when goods have been delivered.

Unused forms should be safeguarded against theft or misuse and their custody assigned to a responsible employee who is not authorized to prepare or sign receipts.

Receipt forms should be furnished only to authorized persons, and in a quantity limited to the number required for current use.

The signer of receipts should ascertain that the receipts are supported by receiving records or other underlying documents.

Receipts should be prepared and completed in a manner designed to prevent alteration.

Authorized signers should be a limited number of responsible employees.

Insurance

The adequacy, as to both type and amount, of insurance coverage carried by the warehouseman should be reviewed at appropriate intervals.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

Additional Controls for Field Warehouses

.16 As indicated earlier, the purpose of field warehousing differs from terminal warehousing. Operating requirements also may differ because a field

warehouseman may operate at a large number of locations. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.17 In field warehousing, controls are applied at two points: the field location and the warehouseman's central office. At the field location, the controls as to receipt, storage, and delivery of goods and issuance of warehouse receipts generally will comprise the controls suggested above, with such variations as may be appropriate in light of the requirements, and available personnel, at the respective locations. Only non-negotiable warehouse receipts should be issued from field locations, and the receipt forms should be furnished to the field locations by the central office in quantities limited to current requirements. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.18 The central office should investigate and approve the field warehousing arrangements, and exercise control as to custody and release of goods and issuance of receipts at the field locations. Controls suggested for the central office are the following:

Consideration of the business reputation and financial standing of the depositor.

Preparation of a field warehouse contract in accordance with the particular requirements of the depositor and the lender.

Determination that the leased warehouse premises meet the physical requirements for segregation and effective custody of goods.

Satisfaction as to legal matters relative to the lease of the warehouse premises.

Investigation and bonding of the employees at the field locations.

Providing employees at field locations with written instructions covering their duties and responsibilities.

Maintenance of inventory records at the central office showing the quantity (and stated value, where applicable) of goods represented by each outstanding warehouse receipt.

Examination of the field warehouse by representatives of the central office. These examinations would include inspection of the facilities, observation as to adherence to prescribed procedures, physical counts or tests of goods in custody and reconciliation of quantities to records at the central office and at field locations, accounting for all receipt forms furnished to the field locations, and confirmation (on a test basis, where appropriate) of outstanding warehouse receipts with the registered holders.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

Procedures of the Independent Auditor

.19 The Committee recommends that the independent auditor of the warehouseman:

- a. Obtain an understanding of controls, relating to the accountability for and the custody of all goods placed in the warehouse and perform tests of controls to evaluate their effectiveness.

- b. Test the warehouseman's records relating to accountability for all goods placed in his custody.
- c. Test the warehouseman's accountability under recorded outstanding warehouse receipts.
- d. Observe physical counts of the goods in custody, wherever practicable and reasonable, and reconcile his tests of such counts with records of goods stored.
- e. Confirm accountability (to the extent considered necessary) by direct communication with the holders of warehouse receipts.

The independent auditor should apply such other procedures as he considers necessary in the circumstances. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.20 The auditor's procedures relating to accountability might include, on a test basis, comparison of documentary evidence of goods received and delivered with warehouse receipts records, accounting for issued and unissued warehouse receipts by number, and comparison of the records of goods stored with billings for storage. In some circumstances, the auditor may consider it necessary to obtain confirmation from the printer as to the serial numbers of receipt forms supplied. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.21 In the case of a field warehouseman where goods are stored at many scattered locations, the independent auditor may satisfy himself that the warehouseman's physical count procedures are adequate by observing the procedures at certain selected locations. The amount of testing required will be dependent upon the effectiveness of both design and operation of controls. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.22 The confirmation of negotiable receipts with holders may be impracticable, since the identity of the holders usually is not known to the warehouseman. Confirmation with the depositor to whom the outstanding receipt was originally issued, however, would be evidential matter of the accountability for certain designated goods. It should be recognized, too, that as to both negotiable and non-negotiable receipts, confirmation may not be conclusive in the light of the possibility of issued but unrecorded receipts. In some circumstances, it may be desirable to request confirmations from former depositors who are not currently holders of record. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.23 The independent auditor should review the nature and extent of the warehouseman's insurance coverage and the adequacy of any reserves for losses under damage claims. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

Controls and Auditing Procedures for Owner's Goods Stored in Public Warehouses

.24 The following paragraphs provide guidance on the controls for the owner of the goods and on the auditing procedures to be employed by his independent

auditor. [As amended, effective after August 31, 1982, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43.]

Controls

.25 The controls of the owner should be designed to provide reasonable safeguards over his goods in a warehouseman's custody. Ordinarily, the controls should include an investigation of the warehouseman before the goods are placed in custody, and a continuing evaluation of the warehouseman's performance in maintaining custody of the goods. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.26 Among the suggested controls that may be comprehended in an investigation of the warehouseman before the goods are placed in his custody are the following:

Consideration of the business reputation and financial standing of the warehouseman.

Inspection of the physical facilities.

Inquiries as to the warehouseman's controls and whether the warehouseman holds goods for his own account.

Inquiries as to type and adequacy of the warehouseman's insurance.

Inquiries as to government or other licensing and bonding requirements and the nature, extent, and results of any inspection by government or other agencies.

Review of the warehouseman's financial statements and related reports of independent auditors.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

.27 After the goods are placed in the warehouse, suggested controls that may be applied periodically by the owner in evaluating the warehouseman's performance in maintaining custody of goods include the following:

Review and update the information developed from the investigation described above.

Physical counts (or test counts) of the goods, wherever practicable and reasonable (may not be practicable in the case of fungible goods).

Reconciliation of quantities shown on statements received from the warehouseman with the owner's records.

In addition, he should review his own insurance, if any, on goods in the custody of the warehouseman.

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43, August 1982.]

Procedures of the Independent Auditor

.28 Section 331.14 describes the procedures that the auditor should apply if inventories are held in public warehouses. [As amended, effective after August 31, 1982, by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43.]

AU
APPENDIXES

TABLE OF CONTENTS	
	<i>Page</i>
APPENDIX A—Historical Background	833
APPENDIX B—Analysis of International Standards on Auditing	839
APPENDIX C—Cross-Reference Table for Auditing Interpretations	849
APPENDIX D—AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides and Statements of Position . .	851
APPENDIX E—Schedule of Changes in Statements on Auditing Standards	855
APPENDIX F—Other Auditing Publications	865

AU Appendix A

Historical Background

In 1917, the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, then known as the American Institute of Accountants, at the request of the Federal Trade Commission, prepared “a memorandum on balance-sheet audits,” which the Commission approved and transmitted to the Federal Reserve Board.

The Federal Reserve Board, after giving the memorandum its provisional endorsement, published it in the *Federal Reserve Bulletin* of April 1917; reprints were widely disseminated for the consideration of “banks, bankers, banking associations; merchants, manufacturers, and associations of manufacturers; auditors, accountants, and associations of accountants” in pamphlet form with the title of “Uniform Accounting: a Tentative Proposal Submitted by the Federal Reserve Board.”

In 1918, it was reissued under the same sponsorship, with a new title—“Approved Methods for the Preparation of Balance-Sheet Statements.” There was practically no change from 1917 except that, as indicated by the respective titles and corresponding change in the preface, instead of the objective of “a uniform system of accounting to be adopted by manufacturing and merchandising concerns,” the new objective was “the preparation of balance-sheet statements” for the same businesses.

In 1929, a special committee of the American Institute undertook revision of the earlier pamphlet in the light of the experience of the past decade; again under the auspices of the Federal Reserve Board, the revised pamphlet was issued in 1929 as “Verification of Financial Statements.”

The preface of the 1929 pamphlet spoke of its predecessors as having been criticized, on the one hand, by some accountants for being “more comprehensive than their conception of the so-called balance-sheet audit,” and, on the other hand, by other accountants because “the procedure would not bring out all the desired information.” This recognition of opposing views evidenced the growing realization of the impracticability of uniform procedures to fit the variety of situations encountered in practice. Of significance is the appearance in the opening paragraph of “General Instructions” in the 1929 publication of the statement:

The extent of the verification will be determined by the conditions in each concern. In some cases, the auditor may find it necessary to verify a substantial portion or all of the transactions recorded upon the books. In others, where the system of internal check is good, tests only may suffice. The responsibility for the extent of the work required must be assumed by the auditor.

Between 1932 and 1934, there was correspondence, dealing with both accounting and auditing matters, between the Institute’s special committee on cooperation with stock exchanges and the committee on stock list of the New York Stock Exchange. The views expressed were an important development in the recognition of the position of accountancy in finance and business. The series of letters was published in 1934 under the title *Audits of Corporate Accounts*.

In 1936, a committee of the Institute prepared and published a further revision of the earlier pamphlets under the title of “Examination of Financial Statements by Independent Public Accountants.” The Institute availed itself of

the views of persons outside the ranks of the profession whose opinions would be helpful, but the authority behind and responsibility for the publication of the pamphlet rested wholly with the Institute as the authoritative representative of a profession that had by that time become well established in the business community.

In the 1936 revision, aside from the very briefly noted "Modifications of Program for Larger or Smaller Companies," the detailed procedures were restrictively stated to be an "outline of examination of financial statements of a small or moderate size company." Moreover, the nature and extent of such examinations were based on the purpose of the examination, the required detail to be reported on, the type of business, and, most important of all, the system of internal control; variations in the extent of the examination were specifically related to "the size of the organization and the personnel employed" and were said to be "essentially a matter of judgment which must be exercised by the accountant."

It is possible from the foregoing narrative to trace the development of the profession's view of an audit based on the experience of three decades. The succession of titles is illustrative. The earliest ambition for "uniform accounting" was quickly realized to be unattainable, and the same listed procedures were related instead to "balance-sheet statements." Then, with the gradually greater emphasis on periodic earnings, the earlier restrictive consideration of the balance sheet was superseded in the 1929 title, "Verification of Financial Statements," by according the income statement at least equal status. When in turn the 1936 revision was undertaken, there was a growing realization that, with the complexity of modern business and the need of the independent auditor to rely on testing, such a word as "verification" was not an accurate portrayal of the independent auditor's function. Accordingly, the bulletin of that year was stated to cover an "examination" of financial statements.

Statements on Auditing Procedure

The Committee on Auditing Procedure had its beginning on January 30, 1939, when the executive committee of the Institute authorized the appointment of a small committee "to examine into auditing procedure and other related questions in the light of recent public discussion."

On May 9 of that year, the report "Extensions of Auditing Procedure" of this special committee was adopted by the Council of the Institute and authority given for its publication and distribution, and in the same year the bylaws were amended to create a standing Committee on Auditing Procedure.

In 1941, the executive committee authorized the issuance to Institute members, in pamphlet form, of the "Statements on Auditing Procedure," prepared by the Committee on Auditing Procedure, previously published only in *The Journal of Accountancy*.

The "Statements on Auditing Procedure" were designed to guide the independent auditor in the exercise of his judgment in the application of auditing procedures. In no sense were they intended to take the place of auditing textbooks; by their very nature textbooks must deal in a general way with the description of procedures and refinement of detail rather than the variety of circumstances encountered in practice that require the independent auditor to exercise his judgment.

Largely to meet this need, the Institute began the series of Statements on Auditing Procedure. The first of these presented the report of the original special

committee, as modified and approved, at the Institute's annual meeting on September 19, 1939, and issued under the title of "Extensions of Auditing Procedure."

Statement No. 1 presented conclusions drawn from the experience and tradition of the profession which largely furnished the foundation for the Committee's present structural outline of auditing standards; the other Statements on Auditing Procedure appropriately fit into that structural outline.

The "Codification of Statements on Auditing Procedure" was issued by the Committee on Auditing Procedure in 1951 to consolidate the features of the first 24 pronouncements which were of continuing usefulness.

When the Securities and Exchange Commission adopted the requirement that a representation on compliance with generally accepted auditing standards be included in the independent auditor's report on financial statements filed with the Commission, it became apparent that a pronouncement was needed to define these standards. Accordingly, the Committee undertook a special study of auditing standards (as distinguished from auditing procedures) and submitted a report that was published in October 1947 under the title "Tentative Statement of Auditing Standards—Their Generally Accepted Significance and Scope." The recommendations of this brochure ceased to be tentative when, at the September 1948 meeting, the membership of the Institute approved the summarized statement of auditing standards.

In 1954 the "tentative" brochure was replaced by the booklet *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards—Their Significance and Scope*, which was issued as a special report of the Committee on Auditing Procedure. This pronouncement also gave recognition to the approval of Statement on Auditing Procedure No. 23 (Revised), "Clarification of Accountant's Report When Opinion Is Omitted" (1949) and the issuance of the "Codification" (1951).

Statement on Auditing Procedure No. 33 was issued in 1963 as a consolidation of, and a replacement for, the following pronouncements of the Committee on Auditing Procedure: Internal Control (1949), Generally Accepted Auditing Standards (1954), Codification of Statements on Auditing Procedure (1951), and Statements on Auditing Procedure Nos. 25–32, which were issued between 1951 and 1963. Statement No. 33 was a codification of earlier Committee pronouncements which the Committee believed to be of continuing interest to the independent auditor.

Statements on Auditing Standards

After issuance of Statement on Auditing Procedure No. 33, 21 additional Statements on Auditing Procedure, Nos. 34 to 54, were issued by the Committee on Auditing Procedure. In November 1972, these pronouncements were codified in Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1, *Codification of Auditing Standards and Procedures*. Also, in 1972, the name of the Committee was changed to the Auditing Standards Executive Committee to recognize its role as the AICPA's senior technical committee charged with interpreting generally accepted auditing standards.

The Auditing Standards Executive Committee issued 22 additional statements through No. 23. These statements were incorporated in the AICPA's looseleaf service, *Professional Standards*, as issued. The looseleaf service began in 1974 and is administered by the AICPA staff. It provides a continuous codification of Statements on Auditing Standards.

Creation of the Auditing Standards Board

As a result of the recommendations of the Commission on Auditors' Responsibilities, an independent study group appointed by the AICPA, a special committee was formed to study the structure of the AICPA's auditing standard-setting activity. In May 1978, the AICPA Council adopted the recommendations of that committee to restructure the Committee. Accordingly, in October 1978 the Auditing Standards Board was formed as the successor to prior senior technical committees on auditing matters. The Board was given the following charge:

The AICPA Auditing Standards Board shall be responsible for the promulgation of auditing standards and procedures to be observed by members of the AICPA in accordance with the Institute's rules of conduct.

The board shall be alert to new opportunities for auditors to serve the public, both by the assumption of new responsibilities and by improved ways of meeting old ones, and shall as expeditiously as possible develop standards and procedures that will enable the auditor to assume those responsibilities.

Auditing standards and procedures promulgated by the board shall—

- a. Define the nature and extent of the auditor's responsibilities.
- b. Provide guidance to the auditor in carrying out his duties, enabling him to express an opinion on the reliability of the representations on which he is reporting.
- c. Make special provision, where appropriate, to meet the needs of small enterprises.
- d. Have regard to the costs which they impose on society in relation to the benefits reasonably expected to be derived from the audit function.

The auditing standards board shall provide auditors with all possible guidance in the implementation of its pronouncements, by means of interpretations of its statements, by the issuance of guidelines, and by any other means available to it.

Changes Created by Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002

AICPA members who perform auditing and other related professional services have been required to comply with Statements on Auditing Standards promulgated by the AICPA Auditing Standards Board. These standards constitute what is known as "generally accepted auditing standards" ("GAAS"). Prior to Sarbanes-Oxley, the ASB's auditing standards have applied to audits of all entities. However, as a result of the passage of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 ("Act"), auditing rules and related professional practice standards to be used in the performance of and reporting on audits of the financial statements of public companies (or issuers) are to be established by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board. Accordingly, public accounting firms auditing issuers are now required to be registered with the PCAOB and to adhere to all PCAOB rules and standards in those audits. In 2003, the PCAOB adopted the then-existing Audit and Attest Standards as its interim auditing standards.

The preparation and issuance of audit reports for those entities not subject to the Act or the rules of the SEC (hereinafter referred to as "nonissuers") continue to be governed by generally accepted auditing standards promulgated by the ASB.

The Reconstituted ASB

In February 2004, the AICPA's Board of Directors unanimously recommended that the AICPA's Governing Council take the following action at its meeting in May 2004:

- Designate the PCAOB as a body with the authority to promulgate auditing and related attestation standards, quality control, ethics, independence and other standards relating to the preparation and issuance of audit reports for issuers.
- Amend the ASB's current designation to recognize the ASB as a body with the authority to promulgate auditing, attestation and quality control standards relating to the preparation and issuance of audit reports for non-issuers only.

As a result of this action, the ASB was reconstituted and its jurisdiction amended by AICPA Council to recognize the ASB as a body with the authority to promulgate auditing, attestation and quality control standards relating to the preparation and issuance of audit and attestation reports for nonissuers.

AU Appendix B

Analysis of International Standards on Auditing

This analysis was prepared by Dr. Kay Tatum, University of Miami, and the Audit and Attest Standards staff. This analysis is not authoritative and is prepared for informational purposes only. It has not been acted on or reviewed by the Auditing Standards Board.

Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs) are issued by the Auditing Standards Board (ASB), the senior technical body of the AICPA designated to issue pronouncements on auditing matter for nonissuers.¹ Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* [ET section 202.01], of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct, requires an AICPA member who performs an audit of a nonissuer to comply with standards promulgated by the ASB.

An AICPA member practicing in the United States of America may be engaged to audit the financial statements of a nonissuer in accordance with the International Standards on Auditing (ISAs) developed by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB) of the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC). In those circumstances where the auditor's report states that the audit was conducted in accordance with International Auditing Standards, the U.S. auditor should comply with both the ISAs and, as required by the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct, auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. An engagement of this nature is normally conducted by performing an audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America plus performing the additional procedures required by the ISAs.

The purpose of this Appendix is to assist the U.S. auditor in planning and performing an engagement in accordance with the ISAs. This document identifies the sections and paragraphs, if applicable, within the ISAs that may require procedures and documentation in addition to those required by auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. A brief description of how the international standard differs from the U.S. standard is provided. However, to fully understand how the ISA might affect the nature, timing, and extent of the procedures performed in an engagement in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the auditor should consider the ISAs in their entirety, by considering the basic principles and essential procedures together with the related guidance included in the ISAs. In performing an audit in accordance with the ISAs, the auditor also needs to consider, where relevant, the guidance provided in the International Auditing Practice Statements issued by the IAASB and comply with IFAC's Code of Ethics.

¹ The term *issuer* means an issuer (as defined in section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c)), the securities of which are registered under section 12 of that Act (15 U.S.C. 78l), or that is required to file reports under section 15(d) (15 U.S.C. 78o(d)), or that files or has filed a registration statement that has not yet become effective under the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), and that it has not withdrawn. The term *nonissuer* refers to any entity not subject to the Sarbanes-Oxley Act or the rules of the SEC.

This analysis compares the ISAs included in the 2004 edition of the *Handbook of International Auditing, Assurance, and Ethics Pronouncements*, except as noted below, to the AICPA's *Codification of Auditing Standards*. References to auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America are made to the relevant AU sections. The ISAs are included in the AICPA's *Professional Standards*. References to these section numbers are included in the analysis. This analysis segregates the guidance into general, fieldwork, and reporting sections.

Summary of Significant Changes to the ISAs

The comparison of the 2004 edition of the *Handbook of International Auditing, Assurance, and Ethics Pronouncements* to the AICPA's *Codification of Auditing Standards* excludes certain standards issued by the IAASB.

In 2003, the IAASB issued a set of standards referred to as the audit risk standards. This set of standards was the culmination of a joint project between the IAASB and the ASB. The ASB exposed these standards in December 2002. Since that time, there have been a number of changes in the U.S. environment, most notably the creation of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, that have slowed the issuance of these standards in the United States. The risk assessment project is again moving forward and the ASB expects to finalize and issue a revised set of standards based on the risk model by the end of 2005. For this reason, the updated analysis does not include differences arising from the audit risk standards or the revisions to other ISAs that are based on the audit risk model.

The audit risk standards comprise:

- ISA 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement*,
- ISA 330, *The Auditor's Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks*, and
- ISA 500 (Revised), *Audit Evidence*.

The audit risk standards deal with the core of the audit—the auditor's assessment of the risk that the financial statements could be wrong, and the way in which the auditor designs the rest of the audit to provide an effective audit response to the identified risks. Significant changes in the ISAs and the way they are expected to affect the auditor's work are:

- *The auditor is required to obtain an enhanced understanding of the entity's business.* The auditor is required to perform audit procedures to obtain a broader and deeper understanding of specified aspects for the entity and its environment, including its internal control.
- *The auditor is required to make risk assessments in all cases.* The required understanding of the entity provides a better basis for identifying risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level and in classes of transactions, account balances and disclosures. The auditor is required to perform a more rigorous assessment in relating the identified risks to what can go wrong at the assertion level. By requiring the auditor to make risk assessments in all audits, the auditor can no longer default to a high risk assessment.
- *The auditor is required to link the identified risks to audit procedures.* In designing and performing further audit procedures, the nature, timing, and extent to the procedures are linked to the assessed risks.

- *The auditor is required to document specific matters.* The proposed documentation requirements are more specific.

The risk assessment standards are effective for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2004. ISA 310, *Knowledge of the Business*, will be withdrawn when ISA 315 and ISA 330 become effective.

In 2004, the IAASB issued a number of standards that build on the risk assessment base. These standards became effective during 2004 and must be considered by the auditor when performing an audit under International Statements on Auditing:

- ISA 220, *Quality Control for Audits of Historical Financial Information*, including related conforming amendments (effective for audits of historical financial information for periods beginning on or after June 15, 2004);
- ISA 240, *The Auditor's Responsibility to Consider Fraud in an Audit of Financial Statements*, including related conforming amendments (effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2004); and
- ISA 300 (Revised), *Planning an Audit of Financial Statements*.

Introduction

ISA 220, *Quality Control for Audit Work*, Compared to Section 161, *The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards*

ISA 220.04 states that the audit firm should implement quality control policies and procedures designed to ensure that all audits are conducted in accordance with ISAs or relevant national standards or procedures. Section 161.02 requires that the firm establish quality control policies and procedures to provide it with reasonable assurance that its personnel comply with generally accepted auditing standards in its audit engagements. An audit firm that is engaged to perform audits in accordance with ISAs and in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America should establish quality control policies and procedures to provide it with reasonable assurance that its personnel comply with generally accepted auditing standards and International Standards on Auditing in its audit engagements, where applicable.

General

ISA 210, *Terms of Audit Engagements*, Compared to Section 310, *Appointment of the Independent Auditor*

ISA 210.02 states that the auditor and the client should agree on the terms of the engagement. The agreed terms would need to be recorded in an audit engagement letter or other suitable form of contract. Section 310.05 states that the auditor should establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed for each engagement. The auditor should document the understanding in the working papers, preferably through a written communication with the client. Thus, both standards require the auditor to document the understanding. However, ISA 210 requires that the understanding be recorded in an engagement letter or other suitable form of contract; section 310 does not require such a contract.

ISA 210.17 states that where the terms of the engagement are changed the auditor and the client should agree on the new terms. ISA 210.19 states that if the auditor is unable to agree to a change of the engagement [from an audit to a lower level of service] and is not permitted to continue the original engagement, the auditor should withdraw and consider whether there is any obligation, either contractual or otherwise, to report to other parties, such as the board of directors or shareholders, the circumstances necessitating the withdrawal. Auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America do not include this requirement.

Field Work

ISA 240, The Auditor's Responsibility to Consider Fraud and Error in an Audit of Financial Statements, Compared to Section 333, Management Representations

ISA 240.51 states that the auditor should obtain a written representation from management that it has disclosed to the auditor the results of its assessment of the risk that the financial statements may be materially misstated as a result of fraud. Section 333 does not require such a representation.

ISA 250, Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements, Compared to Section 317, Illegal Acts by Clients

ISA 250.02 states that when planning and performing audit procedures and in evaluating and reporting the results thereof, the auditor should recognize that noncompliance by the entity with laws and regulations may materially affect the financial statements. ISA 250.05 explains that laws and regulations vary considerably in their relation to the financial statements. Generally, the further removed noncompliance is from the events and transactions ordinarily reflected in financial statements, the less likely the auditor is to become aware of it or to recognize its possible noncompliance. However, ISA 250 does not distinguish between laws and regulations that have a direct versus an indirect effect on the financial statements. This approach to the auditor's responsibilities regarding noncompliance with laws and regulations is different from the approach set forth in section 317.

ISA 260, Communications of Audit Matters With Those Charged With Governance, Compared to Section 380, Communication With Audit Committees

ISA 260 establishes standards and provides guidance on communication between the auditor and those charged with governance of an entity. It requires the auditor to communicate audit matters of governance interest with those charged with governance. Audit matters of governance interest are defined as those matters that arise from the audit of financial statements and, in the opinion of the auditor, are both important and relevant to those charged with governance in overseeing the financial reporting and disclosure process. *Governance* is the term used to describe the role of persons entrusted with the supervision, control and direction of an entity.

Auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America require the auditor to communicate specified matters to the audit committee or others. Section 380 is the principal section requiring such communication,

although other sections also have specified communication requirements. Communications made to the audit committee or board of directors pursuant to sections 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*, 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters in an Audit*, and 380 satisfy the ISA 260 requirement to report such matters to those charged with governance. However, ISA 260 requires that the communications be made in all audits of financial statements, regardless of whether there is an audit committee or another group formally designated oversight for the financial reporting process. ISA 260 identifies matters that ordinarily would be communicated and also requires the auditor to communicate other matters that are, in the auditor's judgment, audit matters of governance interest. The following are matters that ordinarily are considered matters of governance interest that are not explicitly required to be communicated by auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America:

- The general approach and overall scope of the audit, including any expected limitation thereon, or any additional requirements
- The potential effect on the financial statements of any significant risks and exposures, such as pending litigation, that are required to be disclosed in the financial statements
- Material uncertainties related to events and conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern
- Expected modifications to the auditor's report
- Questions regarding management integrity.

As part of the auditor's communications, those charged with governance are informed that (1) the auditor's communications of matters include only those audit matters of governance interest that have come to the attention of the auditor as a result of the performance of the audit and (2) an audit of financial statements is not designed to identify all matters that may be relevant to those charged with governance. Accordingly, the audit does not ordinarily identify all such matters.

In addition to requiring the auditor to document the communications, ISA 260 requires the auditor to document any responses to the matters communicated.

ISA 300, *Planning*, Compared to Section 311, *Planning and Supervision*

ISA 300.08 states that the auditor should develop and document an overall audit plan describing the expected scope and conduct of the audit. Similarly, section 150, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, paragraph .02, requires the work to be adequately planned.

According to section 311.03, audit planning involves developing an overall strategy for the expected conduct and scope of the audit. Section 311.04 states that the auditor may wish to prepare a memorandum setting forth the preliminary audit plan, particularly for large and complex entities; however, the auditor is not required to do so.

ISA 510, *Initial Engagements—Opening Balances*, Compared to Section 315, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*

ISA 510.06 states that when the prior period's financial statements were audited by another auditor, the current auditor may be able to obtain sufficient

appropriate audit evidence regarding opening balances by reviewing the predecessor auditor's working papers. In these circumstances, ISA 510.06 states that the current auditor also would consider the professional competence and independence of the predecessor auditor. Footnote 8 to section 315.12 states that the successor auditor may wish to make inquiries about the professional reputation and standing of the predecessor auditor; however, this guidance is not specifically directed to the circumstances described in ISA 510.06.

ISA 520, *Analytical Procedures*, Compared to Section 329, *Analytical Procedures*

ISA 520.15 states that the extent of reliance that the auditor places on the results of analytical procedures depends on the . . . materiality of the items involved. For example, when inventory balances are material, the auditor does not rely only on analytical procedures as substantive tests. However, the auditor may rely solely on analytical procedures for certain income and expense items when they are not individually material. In contrast, section 329.09 states that the auditor's reliance on substantive tests to achieve an audit objective related to a particular assertion may be derived from tests of details, from analytical procedures, or from a combination of both. The decision about which procedure or procedures to use to achieve a particular audit objective is based on the auditor's judgment on the expected effectiveness and efficiency of the available procedures. According to section 329.11, the expected effectiveness and efficiency of an analytical procedure in identifying potential misstatements depend on, among other things, . . . the precision of the expectation. The importance of the precision of the expectation is discussed in section 329.17.

ISA 570, *Going Concern*, Compared to Section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*

ISA 570.02 states that when planning and performing audit procedures and in evaluating the results thereof, the auditor should consider the appropriateness of management's use of the going concern assumption in the preparation of the financial statements. Section 341.03 states that the auditor should evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time. However, ISA 570 requires consideration of the going concern assumption throughout the engagement. In planning the audit, the auditor is required to consider whether there are events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern and to remain alert throughout the audit for evidence of such events or conditions. Section 341 does not require the auditor to design audit procedures solely to identify such events and conditions. It requires the auditor to consider whether the results of other procedures performed during the course of the engagement identify conditions and events that, when considered in the aggregate, indicate there could be substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.

ISA 570.05 states that management has a responsibility to assess the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, regardless of whether the financial reporting framework being applied requires management to do so. In addition, ISA 570.17 requires the auditor to evaluate management's assessment. Section 341 does not contain these explicit requirements, except that in circumstances when the auditor believes there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, the auditor is required to consider

management's plans for dealing with the adverse effects of the conditions and events that led to the auditor's belief.

The period of assessment also may be different. ISA 570 requires the auditor to consider the same period as that used by management in making its assessment, a period at least, but not limited to twelve months from the balance sheet date. ISA 570 also requires the auditor to inquire of management as to its knowledge of events or conditions beyond the period of assessment used by management that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern. Section 341 requires the auditor to evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, not to exceed one year beyond the date of the financial statements being audited.

When events or conditions have been identified which may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, ISA 570 requires the auditor to seek written representations from management regarding its plans for future action. Section 341 contains no such requirement; however, an illustrative going concern representation is included in Appendix B of section 333, *Management Representations* [section 333.17].

When there is significant delay in the signature or approval of the financial statements by management after the balance sheet date, ISA 570 says that the auditor considers the reasons for the delay. When the delay could be related to events or conditions relating to the going concern assessment, the auditor considers the need to perform additional audit procedures and the effect on the auditor's conclusion regarding the existence of a material uncertainty. Section 341 does not contain similar guidance.

ISA 600, *Using the Work of Another Auditor, Compared to Section 543, Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*

ISA 600.09 states that the principal auditor would obtain written representations regarding the other auditor's compliance with the independence requirements and the accounting, auditing, and reporting requirements. Section 543.10 states that the principal auditor should obtain a representation from the other auditor that he or she is independent. In addition, the principal auditor should ascertain through communication with the other auditor that he or she is familiar with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America and with the generally accepted auditing standards promulgated by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, and will conduct his or her audit and will report in accordance therewith. However, section 543 does not require written representations regarding these matters.

ISA 600.14 states that the principal auditor would document in the audit working papers the components whose financial information was audited by other auditors, their significance to the financial statements of the entity as a whole, the names of the other auditors, and any conclusion reached that individual components are immaterial. The principal auditor would also document the procedures performed and the conclusions reached. Section 543 does not set forth specific documentation requirements regarding using the work of another auditor.

ISA 610, *Considering the Work of Internal Auditing, Compared to Section 322, The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*

ISA 610.16 states that when the external auditor intends to use specific work of internal auditing, the external auditor should evaluate and test that work. In

contrast, section 322.26 states that the auditor should test some of the internal auditors' work related to the significant financial statement assertions. These tests may be accomplished by either (a) examining some of the controls, transactions, or balances that the internal auditors examined or (b) examining similar controls, transactions, or balances not actually examined by the internal auditors.

ISA 620, *Using the Work of an Expert*, Compared to Section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*

ISA 620.05 states that when the auditor uses the work of an expert employed by the auditor, that work is used in the employee's capacity as an expert rather than as an assistant on the audit as contemplated in ISA 220, *Quality Control for Audit Work*. Accordingly, in such circumstances the auditor will need to apply relevant procedures (as discussed in ISA 620, paragraphs .11 through .15) to the employee's work and findings but will not ordinarily need to assess the employee's skills and competence for each engagement. In contrast, section 336 does not apply to situations in which a specialist employed by the auditor's firm participates in the audit. In that situation, section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, applies.

ISA 800, *The Auditor's Report on Special Purpose Audit Engagements*, Compared to Section 623, *Special Reports*

ISA 800.18–.20 discusses a special-report engagement in which the auditor expresses an opinion on an entity's compliance with certain aspects of contractual agreements, such as bond indentures or local agreements. Section 623.19–.21 discusses a special report that an auditor may issue as a by-product of performing an audit of financial statements. The section 623 by-product report is in the form of negative assurance that is not enabled under the ISAs. Instead, Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10, chapter 6, "Compliance Attestation" [AT section 601], provides guidance for such an engagement.

Reporting

ISA 560, *Subsequent Events*, Compared to Section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*

ISA 560.10 states that when management amends the financial statements for facts discovered after the date of the auditor's report but before the financial statements are issued, the auditor would provide management with a new report. The new auditor's report would be dated not earlier than the date the amended financial statements are signed or approved and, accordingly, the procedures referred to in ISA 560.04 and ISA 560.05 would be extended to the date of the new auditor's report. In contrast, section 530.03 states that the date of the report ordinarily is not changed when the subsequent event requiring an adjustment to the financial statements is made without disclosure. In situations when the subsequent event requires disclosure, section 530.05 permits the auditor to dual-date the report or date the report as of the later date. In the former instance, the auditor's responsibility for events occurring subsequent to the completion of field work is limited to the specific event referred to in the note. In the latter instance, the independent auditor's responsibility for subsequent events extends to the date of the report and, accordingly, the procedures outlined in section 560, *Subsequent Events*, paragraph .12, should be extended to that date.

ISA 570, *Going Concern*, Compared to Section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*

ISA 570.32 states that if the use of the going concern assumption is appropriate but a material uncertainty exists, the auditor considers whether the financial statements—

- a. Adequately describe the principal events or conditions that give rise to the significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue in operation and management's plans to deal with these events or conditions
- b. State clearly that there is a material uncertainty related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern and therefore, that it may be unable to realize its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business

Section 341.10 states that when, after considering management's plans, the auditor concludes there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, the auditor should consider the possible effects on the financial statements and the adequacy of the related disclosure. Examples of information that might be disclosed in the financial statements are provided; however, section 341.10 does not suggest the specific statements found in ISA 570.32(b). In addition, the emphasis paragraph in the auditor's report required by ISA 570.33 requires similar wording, which is different than the wording used in section 341.12.

ISA 620, *Using the Work of an Expert*, Compared to Section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*

ISA 620.17 states that if, as a result of the work of an expert, the auditor decides to issue a modified auditor's report, in some circumstances it may be appropriate, in explaining the nature of the modification, to refer to or describe the work of the expert. In these circumstances, the auditor would obtain the permission of the expert before making such a reference. Section 336.16 discusses situations in which it is appropriate for the auditor to reference the specialist in the auditor's report; however, the auditor is not required to obtain the specialist's permission.

ISA 700, *The Auditor's Report on Financial Statements*, Compared to Section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*

ISA 700.25 states that the report should name a specific location, which is ordinarily the city where the auditor maintains the office that has responsibility for the audit. Section 508 does not contain this requirement.

When the auditor's report contains an emphasis of matter paragraph, ISA 700.30 states that the paragraph would preferably be included after the opinion paragraph and would ordinarily refer to the fact that the auditor's opinion is not qualified in this respect. Section 508 does not contain comparable guidance on either of these matters regarding the emphasis paragraph.

ISA 700.32 states the auditor should consider modifying the auditor's report by adding a paragraph if there is a significant uncertainty (other than a going concern), the resolution of which is dependent upon future events and which may affect the financial statements. Section 508.30 states that if . . . the auditor concludes that sufficient evidential matter supports management's assertions

about the nature of a matter involving an uncertainty and its presentation or disclosure in the financial statements, an unqualified opinion ordinarily is appropriate. Although section 508.19 permits the auditor to add a separate paragraph to the auditor's report emphasizing a matter such as an uncertainty, the auditor is not required to do so.

ISA 700.41 states that when a limitation on the scope of the auditor's work in the terms of a proposed engagement is such that the auditor believes the need to express a disclaimer of opinion exists, the auditor would ordinarily not accept such a limited engagement, unless required by statute. Section 508 does not include this guidance.

ISA 800, The Auditor's Report on Special Purpose Audit Engagements, Compared to Section 623, Special Reports

ISA 800.05(g) states that the auditor's report on a special-purpose audit engagement should include the auditor's address. Section 623 does not contain this requirement.

ISA 800, The Auditor's Report on Special Purpose Audit Engagements, Compared to Section 623, Special Reports

ISA 800.15 states that the auditor would advise the client that the auditor's report on a component of financial statements is not to accompany the financial statements of the entity. Section 623 does not contain guidance regarding this matter.

ISA 800, The Auditor's Report on Special Purpose Audit Engagements, Compared to Section 552, Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data

ISA 800.22 and .23 state that: (1) summarized financial statements need to clearly indicate the summarized nature of the information, and (2) summarized financial statements need to be appropriately titled to identify the audited financial statements from which they have been derived. Section 552 does not contain this guidance.

ISA 800.25 states that the auditor's report on summarized financial statements should include the following basic elements that are not included in section 552:

- a. Addressee
 - b. A statement, or reference to the note within the summarized financial statements, which indicates that for a better understanding of an entity's financial performance and position and of the scope of the audit performed, the summarized financial statements should be read in conjunction with the unabridged financial statements and the audit report thereon
 - c. Auditor's address
-

AU Appendix C

[Reserved.]

AU Appendix D

AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides and Statements of Position

Audit and Accounting Guides

Agricultural Producers and Agricultural Cooperatives

Airlines

Analytical Procedures

Audit Sampling

Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities

Auditing Revenue in Certain Industries

Brokers and Dealers in Securities

Casinos

Common Interest Realty Associations

Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit

Construction Contractors

Depository and Lending Institutions: Banks and Savings Institutions, Credit Unions, Finance Companies and Mortgage Companies

Employee Benefit Plans

Entities With Oil and Gas Producing Activities

Federal Government Contractors

Government Auditing Standards and Circular A-133 Audits

Guide for Prospective Financial Information

Guide for the Use of Real Estate Appraisal Information

Health Care Organizations

Investment Companies

Life and Health Insurance Entities

Not-for-Profit Organizations

Personal Financial Statements Guide

Property and Liability Insurance Companies

Service Organizations: Applying SAS No. 70, as Amended

State and Local Governments

Statements of Position—Auditing and Attestation

<i>Confirmation of Insurance Policies in Force</i>	8/78
<i>Auditing Property and Liability Reinsurance</i>	10/82
<i>Auditing Life Reinsurance</i>	11/84
<i>Reports on Audited Financial Statements of Investment Companies</i>	1/89

Statements of Position—Auditing and Attestation—continued

<i>Questions Concerning Accountants' Services on Prospective Financial Statements.</i>	4/89
<i>Report on the Internal Control Structure in Audits of Investment Companies.</i>	12/89
<i>Accountants' Services on Prospective Financial Statements for Internal Use Only and Partial Presentations.</i>	1/90
<i>Report on the Internal Control Structure in Audits of Futures Commission Merchants</i>	2/90
<i>Questions and Answers on the Term Reasonably Objective Basis and Other Issues Affecting Prospective Financial Statements . . .</i>	2/92
<i>Auditing Insurance Entities' Loss Reserves</i>	5/92
<i>Auditing Property / Casualty Insurance Entities' Statutory Financial Statements—Applying Certain Requirements of the NAIC Annual Statement Instructions</i>	10/92
<i>Reporting on Required Supplementary Information Accompanying Compiled or Reviewed Financial Statements of Common Interest Realty Associations.</i>	4/93
<i>The Auditor's Consideration of Regulatory Risk-Based Capital for Life Insurance Enterprises.</i>	12/93
<i>Inquiries of State Insurance Regulators.</i>	4/94
<i>Letters for State Insurance Regulators to Comply With the NAIC Model Audit Rule.</i>	11/95
<i>Auditor's Reporting on Statutory Financial Statements of Insurance Enterprises</i>	12/95
<i>Reporting on Management's Assessment Pursuant to the Life Insurance Ethical Market Conduct Program of the Insurance Marketplace Standards Association</i>	4/98
<i>Guidance to Practitioners in Conducting and Reporting on an Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement to Assist Management in Evaluating the Effectiveness of Its Corporate Compliance Program.</i>	5/99
<i>Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables</i>	3/00
<i>Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Internal Control Over Derivative Transactions as Required by the New York State Insurance Law</i>	6/01
<i>Reporting Pursuant to the Association for Investment Management and Research Performance Presentation Standards</i>	11/01
<i>Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports as Required by the New Jersey Administrative Code</i>	5/02
<i>Attest Engagements on Greenhouse Gas Emissions Information . . .</i>	9/03
<i>Auditing the Statement of Social Insurance.</i>	11/04

Statements of Position—Accounting

<i>Accounting Practices of Real Estate Investment Trusts</i>	6/75
<i>Accounting Practices for Certain Employee Stock Ownership Plans . .</i>	12/76
<i>Accounting for Investments in Real Estate Ventures.</i>	12/78
<i>Accounting for Performance of Construction-Type and Certain Production-Type Contracts</i>	7/81
<i>Accounting and Financial Reporting for Personal Financial Statements</i>	10/82
<i>Accounting by Agricultural Producers and Agricultural Cooperatives.</i>	4/85
<i>Accounting for Developmental and Preoperating Costs, Purchases and Exchanges of Take-off and Landing Slots, and Airframe Modifications</i>	9/88
<i>Definition of the Term Substantially the Same for Holders of Debt Instruments, as Used in Certain Audit Guides and a Statement of Position</i>	2/90
<i>Financial Reporting by Entities in Reorganization Under the Bankruptcy Code.</i>	11/90
<i>Accounting for Real Estate Syndication Income</i>	2/92
<i>Accounting for Foreign Property and Liability Reinsurance</i>	6/92
<i>Accounting and Reporting by Health and Welfare Benefit Plans. . .</i>	8/92
<i>Financial Accounting and Reporting for High-Yield Debt Securities by Investment Companies</i>	1/93
<i>Rescission of Accounting Principles Board Statements</i>	3/93
<i>Foreign Currency Accounting and Financial Statement Presentation for Investment Companies.</i>	4/93
<i>Employers' Accounting for Employee Stock Ownership Plans</i>	11/93
<i>Reporting on Advertising Costs</i>	12/93
<i>Reporting of Related Entities by Not-for-Profit Organizations. . . .</i>	9/94
<i>Reporting of Investment Contracts Held by Health and Welfare Benefit Plans and Defined-Contribution Pension Plans.</i>	9/94
<i>Disclosures of Certain Matters in the Financial Statements of Insurance Enterprises</i>	12/94
<i>Disclosure of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties</i>	12/94
<i>Accounting for Certain Insurance Activities of Mutual Life Insurance Enterprises</i>	1/95
<i>Financial Reporting by Nonpublic Investment Partnerships.</i>	5/95
<i>Accounting for Certain Distribution Costs of Investment Companies</i>	7/95
<i>Environmental Remediation Liabilities.</i>	10/96
<i>Accounting by Participating Mortgage Loan Borrowers.</i>	5/97
<i>Software Revenue Recognition</i>	10/97
<i>Accounting by Insurance and Other Enterprises for Insurance-Related Assessments</i>	12/97
<i>Accounting for the Costs of Computer Software Developed or Obtained for Internal Use.</i>	3/98

Statements of Position—Accounting—continued

Accounting for Costs of Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations and State and Local Governmental Entities That Include Fund Raising 3/98

Deferral of the Effective Date of a Provision of SOP 97-2, Software Revenue Recognition 3/98

Reporting on the Costs of Start-Up Activities 4/98

Deposit Accounting: Accounting for Insurance and Reinsurance Contracts That Do Not Transfer Insurance Risk 10/98

Modification of SOP 97-2, Software Revenue Recognition, With Respect to Certain Transactions 12/98

Accounting for and Reporting of Postretirement Medical Benefit (401(h)) Features of Defined Benefit Pension Plans 7/99

Accounting for and Reporting of Certain Defined Contribution Plan Investments and Other Disclosure Matters 9/99

Accounting by Producers or Distributors of Films 6/00

Accounting by Insurance Enterprises for Demutualizations and Formations of Mutual Insurance Holding Companies and for Certain Long-Duration Participating Contracts 12/00

Amendment to Scope of Statement of Position 95-2, Financial Reporting by Nonpublic Investment Partnerships, to Include Commodity Pools 3/01

Accounting and Reporting by Health and Welfare Benefit Plans 4/01

Amendments to Specific AICPA Pronouncements for Changes Related to the NAIC Codification 12/01

Accounting by Certain Entities (Including Entities With Trade Receivables) That Lend to or Finance the Activities of Others 12/01

Accounting for Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities by Not-for-Profit Health Care Organizations, and Clarification of the Performance Indicator 12/02

Accounting and Reporting by Insurance Enterprises for Certain Nontraditional Long-Duration Contracts and for Separate Accounts 7/03

Accounting for Certain Loans or Debt Securities Acquired in a Transfer 12/03

Reporting Financial Highlights and Schedule of Investments by Nonregistered Investment Partnerships: An Amendment to the Audit and Accounting Guide Audits of Investment Companies and Statement of Position 95-2, Financial Reporting by Nonpublic Investment Partnerships 12/03

Financial Highlights of Separate Accounts: An Amendment to the Audit and Accounting Guide Audits of Investment Companies 12/03

Accounting for Real Estate Time-Sharing Transactions 12/04

AU Appendix E***Schedule of Changes in Statements on Auditing Standards***

<u>Section</u>	<u>Par.</u>	<u>Changes</u>	<u>Date of Change</u>
110 ¹	.02	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 82	January, 1998
110 ¹	.03	Amended ²	April, 1989
110 ¹	.03	Amended by SAS 78	February, 1997
110 ¹	.06-.09	Superseded by SAS 16	January, 1977
150		Superseded by SAS 95	December, 2001
150	.05	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
160	.25	Superseded by SAS 25	November, 1979
161		Headnote amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
161	.02	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
161	.03	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
210	.05	Amended by SAS 5	July, 1975
230		Title amended by SAS 82	February, 1997
230	.01-.03	Amended by SAS 82	January, 1998
230	.04	Amended by SAS 41	April, 1982
230	.04	Amended by SAS 82	January, 1998
230	.05-.12	New paragraphs added by issuance of SAS 82	January, 1998
230	.12	Amended by SAS 99	October, 2002
230	.13	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 82	January, 1998
310		Title amended by SAS 83	October, 1997
310	.02	Amended by SAS 45	August, 1983
310	.03	Amended by SAS 45	August, 1983
310	.05-.09	Superseded by SAS 45	August, 1983
310	.05-.07	New paragraphs added by issuance of SAS 83	October, 1997
310	.06	Amended by SAS 89	December, 1999
311	.03	Amended by SAS 47	December, 1983
311	.03	Amended by SAS 48	July, 1984
311	.05	Amended by SAS 77	November, 1995
311 ³	.09-.10	New paragraphs added by issuance of SAS 48	July, 1984
312		Amended ²	April, 1989
312	.02-.04	Amended by SAS 82	January, 1998
312 ⁴	.05-.08	New paragraphs added by issuance of SAS 82	January, 1998
312 ⁴	.11	Amended by SAS 82	January, 1998

<u>Section</u>	<u>Par.</u>	<u>Changes</u>	<u>Date of Change</u>
312 ⁴	.13	Amended by SAS 82	January, 1998
312 ⁴	.16-.18	New paragraphs added by issuance of SAS 82	January, 1998
312 ⁴	.24	Amended by SAS 82	January, 1998
312 ⁴	.27	Amended by SAS 82	January, 1998
312 ⁴	.33	Amended by SAS 82	January, 1998
312 ⁴	.34	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
312 ⁴	.35	Amended by SAS 82	January, 1998
312 ⁴	.35-.36	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
312 ⁴	.38-.39	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
312 ⁵	.40	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 96	January, 2002
312 ⁵	.41	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 82	January, 1998
312 ⁵	.41	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
315		Superseded by SAS 84	October, 1997
315	.02	Amended by SAS 93	October, 2000
315	.12	Amended by SAS 93	October, 2000
316		Superseded by SAS 99	October, 2002
318	.07	Amended by SAS 48	July, 1984
318		Superseded by SAS 56	April, 1988
319		Amended by SAS 78	December, 1995
319		Amended by SAS 94	May, 2001
320	.03	Superseded by SAS 48	July, 1984
320	.32	Amended by SAS 3	December, 1974
320	.33-.34	New paragraphs added by issuance of SAS 48	July, 1984
320	.37	Amended by SAS 48	July, 1984
320	.50-.56	Amended by SAS 43	August, 1982
320	.57-.58	New paragraphs added by issuance of SAS 48	July, 1984
320	.59-.62	New paragraphs added by issuance of SAS 43	August, 1982
320	.65	Amended by SAS 48	July, 1984
320	.66	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 48	July, 1984
320	.67	Amended by SAS 48	July, 1984
320	.68	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 48	July, 1984
320	.73	Amended by SAS 20	August, 1977
320	.73	Amended by SAS 30	July, 1980
320	.75	Amended by SAS 23	October, 1978
320	.77	Amended by SAS 39	June, 1981
320	.79	Superseded by SAS 9	December, 1975
320		Superseded by SAS 55	April, 1988

<u>Section</u>	<u>Par.</u>	<u>Changes</u>	<u>Date of Change</u>
320A		Superseded by SAS 39	June, 1981
320B		Superseded by SAS 39	June, 1981
321		Superseded by SAS 48	July, 1984
322	.05	Superseded by SAS 55	April, 1989
322		Superseded by SAS 65	April, 1991
323	.01	Amended by SAS 24	March, 1979
323	.01	Amended by SAS 30	July, 1980
323	.08	Amended by SAS 30	July, 1980
323	.09	Amended by SAS 30	July, 1980
323		Superseded by SAS 60	April, 1988
324		Superseded by SAS 70	May, 1992
324		Title amended by SAS 88	December, 1999
324	.03	Amended by SAS 88	December, 1999
324	.06	Amended by SAS 88	December, 1999
324	.07	Amended by SAS 78	February, 1997
324	.07	Amended by SAS 88	December, 1999
324	.08	Deleted by SAS 88	December, 1999
324	.09-.10	Amended by SAS 88	December, 1999
324	.26	Amended by SAS 78	February, 1997
324	.42	Amended by SAS 78	February, 1997
324 ⁶	.57-.60	New paragraphs added by issuance of SAS 98	September, 2002
324 ⁶	.61	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
325	.02	Amended by SAS 78	February, 1997
325	.04	Amended by SAS 78	February, 1997
325	.12	Amended by SAS 87	February, 1999
326	.07	Amended by SAS 80	December, 1996
326 ⁷	.12	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 48	August, 1984
326 ⁷	.12-.13	Amended by SAS 80	December, 1996
326 ⁸	.14	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 80	December, 1996
326 ⁸	.16-.17	Amended by SAS 80	December, 1996
326 ⁸	.18	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 80	December, 1996
326 ⁸	.19-.22	Amended by SAS 80	December, 1996
326 ⁸	.25	Amended by SAS 80	December, 1996
327	.08	Amended by SAS 30	July, 1980
327		Superseded by SAS 53	April, 1988
328		Superseded by SAS 54	April, 1988
329 ⁹	.22	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 96	January, 2002
330		Superseded by SAS 31	August, 1980
330		SAS 67 added	November, 1991

<u>Section</u>	<u>Par.</u>	<u>Changes</u>	<u>Date of Change</u>
331		Title amended by SAS 67	November, 1991
331	.01	Amended by SAS 67	November, 1991
331	.03-.08	Superseded by SAS 67	November, 1991
331	.14	Amended by SAS 43	August, 1982
331 ¹⁰	.15	Deleted by SAS 43	August, 1982
331 ¹⁰	.15	Amended by SAS 2	December, 1974
332		Superseded by SAS 92	September, 2000
333		Superseded by SAS 85	November, 1997
333	.06	Amended by SAS 89	December, 1999
333	.06	Amended by SAS 99	October, 2002
333	.16	Amended by SAS 89	December, 1999
333	.16	Amended by SAS 99	October, 2002
334	.02	Revised by SOP 93-3	June, 1993
335		Superseded by SAS 45	August, 1983
336		Superseded by SAS 73	July, 1994
338		Superseded by SAS 41	April, 1982
339		Superseded by SAS 96	January, 2002
340		Superseded by SAS 59	April, 1988
341	.12	Amended by SAS 64	February, 1991
341	.13	Amended by SAS 77	November, 1995
341 ¹¹	.17	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 96	January, 2002
350		Amended ²	April, 1989
350	.08-.09	Amended by SAS 45	August, 1983
350	.11	Amended by SAS 45	August, 1983
350 ¹²	.46	Amended by SAS 43	June, 1982
350 ¹²	.47	Amended by SAS 45	August, 1983
380	.03	Amended by SAS 90	December, 1999
380	.09	Amended by SAS 89	December, 1999
380 ¹³	.10	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 89	December, 1999
380 ¹⁴	.11	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 90	December, 1999
410	.02	Amended by SAS 14	December, 1976
410	.03-.04	Superseded by SAS 5	July, 1975
411		Superseded by SAS 69	January, 1992
411		Title amended by SAS 93	October, 2000
411	.01	Amended by SAS 93	October, 2000
411 ¹⁵	.14-.15	New paragraphs added by issuance of SAS 91	April, 2000
411 ¹⁵	.18	Amended by SAS 91	April, 2000
420	.07	Amended by SAS 88	December, 1999
420 ¹⁶	.08	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 88	December, 1999
420 ¹⁶	.09	Amended ²	April, 1989

<u>Section</u>	<u>Par.</u>	<u>Changes</u>	<u>Date of Change</u>
420 ¹⁶	.09	Amended by SAS 88	December, 1999
420 ¹⁷	.10	Added ²	April, 1989
420 ¹⁷	.10-.11	Deleted by SAS 88	December, 1999
420 ¹⁷	.14	Added ²	April, 1989
420 ¹⁷	.16	Amended by SAS 43	August, 1982
420 ¹⁷	.16	Deleted ²	April, 1989
420 ¹⁷	.17	Deleted by SAS 43	August, 1982
420 ¹⁷	.21	Deleted ²	April, 1989
420 ¹⁷	.24-.25	Added ²	April, 1989
430	.04	Amended by SAS 21	December, 1977
430		Superseded by SAS 32	October, 1980
435 ¹⁸		Rescinded by the Auditing Standards Board	April, 1998
504	.20	Amended by SAS 35	April, 1981
504	.20	Superseded by SAS 72	March, 1993
505	.05	Amended by SAS 43	August, 1982
505	.06	Amended by SAS 34	March, 1981
505	.13-.15	Superseded by SAS 26	November, 1979
505		Superseded by SAS 58	April, 1988
508	.08	Amended by SAS 93	October, 2000
508	.11	Amended by SAS 79	December, 1995
508 ¹⁹	.16-.33	Deleted by SAS 79	December, 1995
508 ¹⁹	.29-.32	New paragraphs added by issuance of SAS 79	December, 1995
508 ¹⁹	.37	Amended by SAS 79	December, 1995
508 ¹⁹	.45-.49	New paragraphs added by issuance of SAS 79	December, 1995
508 ¹⁹	.65	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
508 ¹⁹	.70-.71	Amended by SAS 79	December, 1995
508	.71	Amended by SAS 85	June, 1998
508 ¹⁹	.83	Amended by SAS 64	February, 1991
508 ¹⁹	.83-.85	Amended by SAS 79	December, 1995
509	.17	Amended by SAS 21	December, 1977
509	.18	Amended by SAS 5	July, 1975
509	.39	Amended by SAS 43	August, 1982
509	.45	Amended by SAS 26	November, 1979
509	.49	Superseded by SAS 15	December, 1976
509		Superseded by SAS 58	April, 1988
510		Superseded by SAS 2	December, 1974
511		Superseded by SAS 2	December, 1974
512		Superseded by SAS 2	December, 1974
513		Superseded by SAS 2	December, 1974
514		Superseded by SAS 2	December, 1974
515		Superseded by SAS 2	December, 1974

<u>Section</u>	<u>Par.</u>	<u>Changes</u>	<u>Date of Change</u>
516	.02	Amended by SAS 2	December, 1974
516	.09	Amended by SAS 13	May, 1976
516	.09	Amended by SAS 24	March, 1979
516	.11	Amended by SAS 2	December, 1974
516	.11-.12	Superseded by SAS 15	December, 1976
516	.14	Amended by SAS 21	December, 1977
516		Superseded by SAS 26	November, 1979
517		Superseded by SAS 26	November, 1979
518	.03	Amended by SAS 14	December, 1976
518		Superseded by SAS 26	November, 1979
519		Superseded by SAS 24	March, 1979
530	.03-.05	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
532	.06	Deleted by SAS 93	October, 2000
532	.17	Deleted by SAS 93	October, 2000
534	.09-.10	Amended ²	April, 1989
535		Superseded by SAS 2	December, 1974
540		Superseded by SAS 2	December, 1974
541		Superseded by SAS 2	December, 1974
542	.01-.04	Superseded by SAS 2	December, 1974
542		Superseded by SAS 58	April, 1988
543	.10	New footnote added	June, 1999
543	.16	Amended by SAS 64	February, 1991
543	.18	Superseded by SAS 7	November, 1975
544	.01	Superseded by SAS 2	December, 1974
544	.02	Amended by SAS 2	December, 1974
544	.02	Amended by SAS 14	December, 1976
544	.02	Amended by SAS 77	November, 1995
544	.04	Amended by SAS 14	December, 1976
544	.04	Amended by SAS 77	November, 1995
545	.01	Amended by SAS 21	December, 1977
545	.05	Amended by SAS 21	December, 1977
545		Superseded by SAS 58	April, 1988
546	.17	Amended by SAS 2	December, 1974
546		Superseded by SAS 58	April, 1988
547		Superseded by SAS 2	December, 1974
550	.07	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 98	September, 2002
551	.15	Amended by SAS 52	April, 1988
551	.15	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
551 ²⁰	.16	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 98	September, 2002
552		Amended ²	April, 1989
553	.02	Amended by SAS 33	October, 1980
553	.08	Amended by SAS 29	December, 1980
553	.11	Amended by SAS 29	December, 1980

<u>Section</u>	<u>Par.</u>	<u>Changes</u>	<u>Date of Change</u>
553		Superseded by SAS 52	April, 1988
554		Superseded by SAS 52	April, 1988
555	.01-.06	Superseded by SAS 45	August, 1983
556		Superseded by SAS 52	April, 1988
557		Superseded by SAS 52	April, 1988
558	.02	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
558	.08	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
558 ²¹	.09	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 98	September, 2002
558 ²¹	.10-.11	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
560	.01	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
560	.12	Amended by SAS 12	January, 1976
561	.01-.03	Amended by SAS 98	September, 2002
610		Superseded by SAS 29	December, 1980
620		Superseded by SAS 14	December, 1976
621	.05	Amended by SAS 35	April, 1981
621	.15-.17	Superseded by SAS 35	April, 1981
621		Superseded by SAS 63	April, 1989
622 ²²		Withdrawn by SAS 93	October, 2000
623	.05	Amended by SAS 77	November, 1995
623	.08	Amended by SAS 77	November, 1995
625	.01	Amended by SAS 97	June, 2002
625 ²³	.02	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 97	June, 2002
625 ²³	.03	Amended by SAS 97	June, 2002
625 ²³	.04	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 97	June, 2002
625 ²³	.05-.07	Amended by SAS 97	June, 2002
625 ²³	.09-.11	Amended by SAS 97	June, 2002
630		Superseded by SAS 38	April, 1981
631	.47	Amended by SAS 43	August, 1982
631	.51	Amended by SAS 43	August, 1982
631	.56	Amended by SAS 43	August, 1982
631		Superseded by SAS 49	September, 1984
634		Superseded by SAS 72	March, 1993
634	.01	Amended by SAS 76	September, 1995
634	.09	Amended by SAS 76	September, 1995
634 ²⁴	.10	New paragraph added by issuance of SAS 76	September, 1995
634 ²⁴	.20	Amended by SAS 86	June, 1998
634 ²⁴	.22	Amended by SAS 86	June, 1998
634 ²⁴	.29	Amended by SAS 86	June, 1998
634 ²⁴	.33-.34	Amended by SAS 86	June, 1998
634 ²⁴	.55	Amended by SAS 86	June, 1998
634 ²⁴	.57	Amended by SAS 86	June, 1998

<u>Section</u>	<u>Par.</u>	<u>Changes</u>	<u>Date of Change</u>
634 ²⁴	.64	Amended by SAS 76	September, 1995
634 ²⁴	.64	Amended by SAS 86	June, 1998
640	.01	Amended by SAS 20	August, 1977
640	.12-.13	Amended by SAS 20	August, 1977
640		Superseded by SAS 30	July, 1980
641		Superseded by SAS 30	July, 1980
642	.02	Amended by SAS 44	December, 1982
642	.47-.53	Superseded by SAS 60	April, 1988
642	.60	Amended by SAS 44	December, 1982
642		Superseded by SSAE 2	June, 1993
710	.11	Amended by SAS 15	December, 1976
710		Superseded by SAS 37	April, 1981
720	.22	Amended by SAS 13	May, 1976
720		Superseded by SAS 24	March, 1979
721	.02	Amended by SAS 26	November, 1979
721		Superseded by SAS 36	April, 1981
722		Superseded by SAS 100	November, 2002
730		Withdrawn by Auditing Standards Board	April, 1981
801		Superseded by SAS 74	February, 1995
801	.01	Amended by SAS 75	September, 1995
901	.01	Amended by SAS 43	August, 1982
901 ²⁵	.02-.05	Deleted by SAS 43	August, 1982
901	.14	Amended ²	April, 1989
901	.24	Amended by SAS 43	August, 1982
901	.28	Amended by SAS 43	August, 1982

¹ Section 110 paragraphs .02 through .09 renumbered .03 through .10 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.

² Paragraphs reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62.

³ Section 311 paragraphs .09 through .13 renumbered .11 through .15 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48.

⁴ Section 312 paragraphs .05 through .11 renumbered .09 through .15, .12 through .32 renumbered .19 through .39, and .33 renumbered .41 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 82.

⁵ Section 312 paragraphs .40 and .41 renumbered .41 and .42 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96.

⁶ Section 324 paragraphs .57 through .59 renumbered .61 through .63 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.

⁷ Section 326 paragraphs .12 through .23 renumbered .13 through .24 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 48.

⁸ Section 326 paragraphs .14 through .16 renumbered .15 through .17, and .17 through .24 renumbered .19 through .26 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 80.

⁹ Section 329 paragraphs .22 and .23 renumbered .23 and .24 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96.

¹⁰ Section 331 paragraph .16 (as amended by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 2) renumbered .15 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43.

¹¹ Section 341 paragraph .17 renumbered .18 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 96.

¹² Section 350 paragraph .32 added to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 53. Section 350 paragraphs .32 through .47 renumbered .33 through .48.

¹³ Section 380 paragraphs .10 through .15 renumbered .11 through .16 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 89.

¹⁴ Section 380 paragraphs .11 through .16 renumbered .12 through .17 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 90.

¹⁵ Section 411 paragraphs .14 through .16 renumbered .16 through .18 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 91.

¹⁶ Section 420 paragraphs .08 through .24 renumbered .09 through .25 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.

¹⁷ Section 420 paragraphs .18 through .22 renumbered .17 through .21 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43. Section 420 paragraphs .10 through .12 renumbered .11 through .13, and paragraphs .13 through .21 renumbered .15 through .23 to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards Nos. 53 through 62. Section 420 paragraphs .08 through .24 renumbered .09 through .25 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 88.

¹⁸ The Auditing Standards Board (ASB) has rescinded Statement on Auditing Standards No. 21, effective for audits of financial statements to which Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement No. 131, *Disclosures about Segments of an Enterprise and Related Information*, has been applied. FASB Statement No. 131 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 1997, with earlier application encouraged. The Audit Issues Task Force of the ASB has issued an interpretation of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 31, *Evidential Matter*, entitled "Applying Auditing Procedures to Segment Disclosures in Financial Statements" to provide guidance for audits of financial statements of entities that have implemented FASB Statement No. 131. The auditing interpretation appears in section 9326, *Evidential Matter: Auditing Interpretations of Section 326*, paragraphs .28 through .41.

¹⁹ Section 508 paragraphs .34 through .46 renumbered .16 through .28, .47 through .58 renumbered .33 through .44, and .59 through .85 renumbered .50 through .76 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 79.

²⁰ Section 551 paragraphs .16 through .22 renumbered .17 through .23 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.

²¹ Section 558 paragraphs .09 and .10 renumbered .10 and .11 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 98.

²² The ASB has withdrawn Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75 and its auditing interpretation, effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after June 30, 2001, in order to consolidate the guidance applicable to agreed-upon procedures engagements in professional standards. For guidance relating to performing and reporting on agreed-upon procedures engagements, practitioners should refer to AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*.

²³ Section 625 paragraph .02 renumbered .03 and .03 through .09 renumbered .05 through .11 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 97.

²⁴ Section 634 paragraphs .10 through .63 renumbered .11 through .64 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 76.

²⁵ Section 901 paragraphs .06 through .32 renumbered .02 through .28 by issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 43.

AU Appendix F

Other Auditing Publications

This listing identifies “Other Auditing Publications” published by the AICPA as of January 1, 2005 that have been reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and are therefore presumed to be appropriate as defined in section 150, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, paragraphs .07 and .08. Product numbers are included where applicable to help practitioners obtain these products. Products may be obtained through www.cpa2biz.com.

Auditing Practice Releases

(available in hard copy)

- The Information Technology Age: Evidential Matter in the Electronic Environment (1997) (product no. 021068)
- Confirmation of Accounts Receivable (1995) (product no. 021064)

AICPA Technical Practice Aids, Accounting and Auditing Publications Technical Questions and Answers

- TIS section 8000, *Audit Field Work*
- TIS section 9000, *Auditors' Reports*

(available in hard copy) (product no. 005144)

Current AICPA Audit Risk Alerts

General Audit Risk Alert—2004/05 (product no. 022335)

Auto Dealership Industry Developments—2003/04 (product no. 022444)

Bank, Credit Union, and Other Depository and Lending Institution Industry Developments—2004/05 (product no. 022295)

Common Interest Realty Associations Industry Developments—2003/04 (product no. 022464)

Construction Contractors Industry Developments—2004/05 (product no. 022315)

Employee Benefit Plans Industry Developments—2004 (product no. 022414)

Health Care Industry Developments—2004/05 (product no. 022345)

High-Technology Industry Developments—2004/05 (product no. 022405)

Insurance Industry Developments—2004/05 (product no. 022355)

Investment Companies Industry Developments—2004/05 (product no. 022365)

Manufacturing Industry Developments—2004/05 (product no. 022375)

Not-for-Profit Organizations Industry Developments—2004 (product no. 022424)

Real Estate Industry Developments—2004/05 (product no. 022395)

Securities Industry Developments—2004/05 (product no. 022385)

State and Local Governmental Developments—2004 (product no. 022434)

Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) Practice Alerts

(Copies of these practice alerts can be downloaded from the AICPA's Web site. They can also be found in the AICPA publication *Technical Practice Aids*.)

Note: This is not an all-inclusive list of Practice Alerts available on the AICPA Web site as certain Practice Alerts pertain to topics other than auditing.

- Practice Alert 04-1, *Illegal Acts* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,270)
- Practice Alert 03-2, *Journal Entries and Other Adjustments* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,250)
- Practice Alert 03-1, *Audit Confirmations* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,240)
- Practice Alert 02-3, *Reauditing Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,230)
- Practice Alert 02-2, *Use of Specialists* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,220)
- Practice Alert 01-2, *Audit Considerations in Times of Economic Uncertainty* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,200)
- Practice Alert 00-3, *Auditing Construction Contracts* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,170)
- Practice Alert 00-2, *Guidance for Communication With Audit Committees Regarding Alternative Treatments of Financial Information Within Generally Accepted Accounting Principles* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,160)
- Practice Alert 99-2, *How the Use of a Service Organization Affects Internal Control Considerations* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,140)
- Practice Alert 99-1, *Guidance for Independence Discussions with Audit Committees* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,130)
- Practice Alert 98-3, *Responding to the Risk of Improper Revenue Recognition* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,120)
- Practice Alert 98-2, *Professional Skepticism and Related Topics* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,110)
- Practice Alert 98-1, *The Auditor's Use of Analytical Procedures* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,100)
- Practice Alert 97-3, *Changes in Auditors and Related Topics* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,090)
- Practice Alert 97-2, *Audits of Employee Benefit Plans* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,080)
- Practice Alert 96-1, *The Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,060)

- Practice Alert 94-2, *Consideration of Fraud in Audit Procedures Related to Inventory Observation* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,020)
- Practice Alert 94-1, *Dealing With Audit Differences* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*, vol. 2, sec. 16,010)

Other Publications

Accounting and Auditing for Related Parties and Related Party Transactions Toolkit (available for download at www.aicpa.org/download/members/div/auditstd/Related_Party_Toolkit_Introductory_Language.pdf)

Auditing Estimates and Other Soft Accounting Information (product no. 010010)

Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures: A Toolkit for Auditors (available for download at www.aicpa.org/members/div/auditstd/fasb123002.asp)

Audits of Futures Commission Merchants, Introducing Brokers, and Commodity Pools (product no. 006600)

Fraud Detection in a GAAS Audit (product no. 006615)

Applying OCOA in State and Local Governmental Financial Statements (product no. 006614)

Auditing Governmental Financial Statements: Programs and Other Practice Aids (product no. 006602)

Auditing Multiemployer Plans (product no. 006603)

AU TOPICAL INDEX

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.
Section numbers in the 9000 series refer to Auditing Interpretations.

A

ACCOUNTABILITY

- Management..... 711.01

ACCOUNTING

- Alternative Principles—See Alternative Accounting Principles
- Basis Other Than GAAP 410.02; 623.02–10
- Changes—See Changes, Accounting
- Control—See Internal Control
- Guides—See Accounting Guides, Industry
- Management Responsibility 110.03
- Policies—See Policies, Accounting
- Principles—See Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
- Records—See Records
- Related Parties 334.02–03
- Transfer of Assets 9336.01–21

ACCOUNTING ESTIMATES—See Estimation

ACCOUNTING GUIDES, INDUSTRY

- Source of Business Information 311.08
- Use of Reports 544.02-.04; 9623.51

ACCOUNTS PAYABLE—See Payables

ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE—See Receivables

ACCRUAL BASIS OF ACCOUNTING

- Income Tax Accruals 9326.06-.23

ACQUISITION OF A BUSINESS—See Business Combinations

ACTUARIES

- Use of Work by Auditors . . . 336.02; 336.07

ADDRESSEE OF AUDITOR'S REPORT

- Audited Financial Statements 508.09
- Letters for Underwriters . . . 634.03; 634.19;
 634.25

ADMINISTRATIVE CONTROL—See Internal Control

ADVERSE OPINIONS

- Accounting Changes 508.51; 508.53;
 508.55–56; 9410.15
- Accounting Estimates
 Unreasonable.. 508.48–49; 9312.04–09
- Accounting Principles Inappropriate.. 508.48
- Basis for Opinion. 508.60
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.07

ADVERSE OPINIONS—continued

- Departure From GAAP 334.12; 336.14;
 508.35–36; 508.41;
 508.45–46; 508.48–49;
 508.68–69; 9336.21;
 9508.76–84; 9623.53
- Derecognition of Transferred Assets 9336.21
- Description 508.58
- Disclosure 508.59; 552.07
- Elements of Financial Statements. 623.14
- Fair Presentation 508.58–59
- Illegal Acts by Clients. 317.18
- Illustration 508.60; 552.07;
 9508.76–84
- Inadequate Disclosure 431.03; 508.41;
 508.46; 9410.15
- Individual Financial Statement. 508.05
- Lack of Conformity With GAAP 508.58; 544.02–04
- Material Misstatements 312.38;
 9312.01–04
- Matters Requiring Specialists 336.14; 9336.04
- Nonprofit Organizations 9623.53
- Piecemeal Opinion 508.64
- Prescribed Accounting Practices 544.02
- Reasons for Opinion. 508.59
- Regulated Companies 544.02–04
- Related Parties 334.12
- Reports With Differing Opinions 508.67–69
- Service Organizations 9324.13
- Subsequent Events 530.03–04
- Supplementary Data 544.02; 551.10

ADVISORY ACCOUNTANT

- As Distinguished From Reporting Accountant 9625.04
- Documentation of Conclusions 9625.01–09
- Engaged by Nonissuer to Assist Management and Provide Advice (Not Second Opinion) 9625.01–09
- Requirement to Consult With Continuing Accountant 9625.01–09
- Understanding With Client 9625.01–09

AFFILIATED COMPANIES

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| • Related Parties | 334.01 |
| • Work of Other Auditors | 543.01–.02;
543.06 |

AGGREGATION—See Summarization

AGREED-UPON PROCEDURES

- Agreement on and Sufficiency of Procedures 532.04
- Internal Control Reporting 325.07–.08

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

AGREED-UPON PROCEDURES—continued

- Letters for Underwriters . . . 634.35; 634.44;
 634.55
- Restricted Use of Report 532.04
- Service Organization 324.19

AGREEMENTS—See Contracts

ALLOCATION OF COST

- Assertions by Management 326.03–.07
- Evidential Matter 326.16–.20
- Letters for Underwriters. 634.59

ALTERNATIVE ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES

- Criteria for Application 9410.14–.15

AMERICAN BAR ASSOCIATION

- Policy on Audit Inquiries 337.12; 337C;
 9337.19–22; 9337.31–32
- Professional Responsibilities
 of Inside v. Outside Council 9337.25

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CPAs

- Approval of Standards by Membership 150.02
- Auditing Publications 150.05–08
- Competence of Other Auditors 543.10
- Compliance With Standards 150.03–04
- Conduct—See Conduct, Code of Professional
- Division for CPA Firms 543.10
- Interpretive Publications 150.05–06
- Professional Standards 504.18
- Quality Control Standards Committee 161.01

ANALYTICAL PROCEDURES

- Accounting Estimates 342.08–14; 9312.04–09
- Audit Procedures 312.35; 329.01–24; 9312.04–09
- Audit Sampling 9350.02
- Availability of Data 329.15
- Definition 329.02
- Effectiveness 329.04; 329.09–12
- Efficiency 329.09–12
- Evidential Matter 326.19–20; 329.02–23
- Examples 329.04–05; 329.07; 329.12
- Expectations 329.03; 329.05; 329.11; 329.14–18
- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.07–11
- Investigating Significant Differences 329.20–21
- Materiality 329.20
- Misstatements, Evaluating Effects of 312.34–41
- Nature of Assertion 329.12
- Nonfinancial Data 329.02; 329.08
- Objective 329.06; 329.23
- Overall Review 329.23
- Planning 329.01–24
- Precision of Expectations 329.17–19
- Purpose 329.06
- Reliability of Data 329.16

ANALYTICAL PROCEDURES—continued

- Review of Interim Information 722.07; 722.09–12; 722.15–23; 722.38–40; 722.54
- Risk of Misstatement 312.35; 350.08
- Substantive Tests. 329.04–05; 329.09–11; 329.22
- Substantive Tests at Interim Dates. 313.02; 313.08

ANNUAL REPORTS—See Reports to Stockholders

APPRAISERS

- SEC Filings 711.02
- Use of Work by Auditors . . . 336.02; 336.07

ASB—See Auditing Standards Board

ASSESSMENT

- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| · Adequacy of Legal Opinion | 9336.09–17 |
| · Analytical Procedures | 316.02; 316.28–30 |
| · Audit Procedures | 333.06; |
| | 337.05–07; 9337.15–17; |
| | 9337.24–27 |
| · Client Has Not Consulted a
Lawyer | 9337.15–17 |
| · Consideration of Results of Analytical
Procedures Performed in Planning
the Audit | 316.28–30 |
| · Differences in Accounting
Estimates | 9312.04–09 |
| · Fraud Procedures | 316.51–56 |
| · Identified Risks | 316.51–56 |
| · Inquiries of Client's
Lawyers | 337.08–11; 722.20; |
| | 9337.01–32 |
| · Internal v. Outside Lawyers | 9337.24–27 |
| · Legal Isolation Criterion | 9336.06; 9336.14 |
| · Limitations on Lawyer's
Responses | 337.12–14 |
| · Management Override of
Controls | 316.57–67 |
| · Management
Representations | 333.06 |
| · Misappropriations of Assets | 316.55–56 |
| · Misstatements | 313.09; 316.50–56 |
| · Qualitative Characteristics | 9312.15–17 |
| · Quantitative Measures | 9312.10–14 |
| · Override of Controls | 316.57–67 |
| · Response to Results | 316.02; 316.45–67; |
| | 316.76 |
| · Responses to Fraud Risks | 316.50–67 |
| · Risk | 312.28–33; 313.04–07; |
| | 330.05; 330.07–10 |
| · Risk of Material Misstatement
Due to Fraud | 312.16; 316.02; |
| | 316.13; 316.45; |
| | 316.50; 316.61; |
| | 316.76 |

ASSETS

- Assertions by Management. . . . 326.04–07
- Estimation 342.02
- Examination at Interim Dates . . . 313.03–07

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

ASSETS—continued

- Fixed—See Property
- Fraud 316.06; 316.14;
..... 316.33; 316.39;
..... 316.44; 316.55–56;
..... 316.85
- Going Concern Assumption 341.07
- Management Plans 333.06
- Title 333.06
- Transfers Meeting Isolation Criteria
in FASB Statement No. 140 .. 9336.01–21

ASSOCIATED COMPANIES—See Affiliated Companies

ASSOCIATION WITH FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Comparative Financial
Statements 504.14–17
- Disclaimer of Opinion 504.05–13
- Fourth Standard of Reporting ... 504.01–02
- Negative Assurance 504.18–19
- Unaudited Financial Statements.. 504.05–19

ATTTEST ENGAGEMENTS

- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.24

ATTORNEYS—See Lawyers

AUDIT COMMITTEE

- Audit Adjustments 380.09–10
- Auditor Disagreements With
Management 380.13
- Auditor's Responsibility
Under GAAS 380.06; 801.22
- Communication Regarding
Interim Financial Information... 722.29–36
- Communication When No Audit
Committee Exists... 801.22; 9380.02–03
- Communication With
Auditor 328.50; 380.01–17;
..... 722.09; 722.30–36;
..... 9411.15
- Deficiencies in Internal
Control 722.33
- Definition 380.01
- Difficulties in Performing Audit. 380.16
- Discussions With Management
Prior to Retention 380.15
- Interim Financial
Information 722.29–36
- Internal Control 319.24; 319.34;
..... 319.110
- Management Consultation With Other
Accountants 380.14
- Management's Formulation of
Accounting Estimates 380.08
- Notification of Fraud 316.79–82;
..... 722.32
- Notification of Illegal Acts 317.17
- Other Information in Documents 380.12
- Planning of Field Work 311.04
- Reportable Conditions 316.80; 316.85;
..... 325.02–03; 325.06;
..... 325.10; 722.09; 722.33

AUDIT COMMITTEE—continued

- Restricted-Use Reports 532.07–11;
..... 532.15
- Review of Form 10-K 9634.08
- Significant Accounting Policies..... 380.07;
..... 9411.15
- Weaknesses in Internal
Control 9325.01–06

AUDIT DOCUMENTATION—Also see

Working Papers

- Assessed Risk of Material Misstatement
Due to Fraud, and Response.. 316.46–49
- Authentication of Documentation 230.12
- Confidential Client
Information 339.10–13;
..... 9339.03; 9339.05–06;
..... 9339.10; 9339.13
- Consultation With Continuing
Accountant 9625.01–09
- Content 339.04–09
- Control 9339.03
- Definition 339.01
- Evidential Matter 9326.06–23
- Fair Value—Evaluation of
Management's Intent 328.17
- Fair Value—Support of
Management's Assumptions 328.12
- Falsified 230.12
- Going Concern 341.17
- Guidelines 9326.06–23
- Income Tax Accruals 9326.06–23
- Incomplete 9339.07–08
- Letter to Regulator .. 9339.05–06; 9339.08
- Misrepresented 230.12
- Misstatements 312.40
- Modification of Documentation 230.12
- Ownership 339.10–13; 9339.04
- Providing Access to, or Copies of,
to a Regulator 9339.01–15
- Providing to Independent Party Access to
or Copies of 9339.09–10
- Requirements 339.15
- Review by Client Prior to Access by
Regulator 9339.14
- Substantive Analytical Procedures ... 329.22
- Supervision 9339.03; 9339.14
- Withheld 230.12

AUDIT ENGAGEMENT

- Acceptance at Year End 310.04
- Acceptance by Successor
Auditor 315.03; 315.07–10
- Accounting Principles and
Policies 316.50
- Analytical Procedures 316.28–30;
..... 329.01–24
- Assignment of Personnel 312.17;
..... 316.50
- Audit Risk and Materiality 312.01–42
- Auditor's Consideration of
Fraud 316.01–86
- Change of Auditors 315.01–25
- Change to Compilation
Engagement 508.62

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

AUDIT ENGAGEMENT—continued

- Change to Review Engagement 508.62
- Communication of Internal Control Matters 325.01–21; 9325.01–06
- Communication When No Audit Committee Exists 9380.02–03
- Communication With Audit Committee 316.79–82; 380.04; 380.09–10
- Communication With Management 316.79–82
- Communication With Third Parties About Fraud 316.79–82
- Compliance Auditing Applicable to Governmental Entities—See Compliance Auditing
- Conduct 310.07
- Consideration of Fraud 316.01–86
- Current-Value Financial Statements Supplementing Historical-Cost Financial Statements 9623.55–59
- Difficulties in Performing Audit 380.16
- Documenting Consideration of Fraud 316.83
- EDP Applications 311.09–10
- Effect of Internal Auditor's Work . . 322.12–27
- Elements of Financial Statements 623.11–18
- Entity With Operations in Multiple Locations or Components 312.18
- Evaluating Evidence of Fraud 316.68–78
- Evidential Matter—See Evidential Matter
- Fair Value—Evaluating Results of Audit Procedures 328.47
- Financial Statements Prepared for Use Outside U.S. 534.03–15; 9534.01–04
- First Year Audits 420.24–25
- Fraud Considerations in a Financial Statement Audit 316.01–86
- GAAS and PCAOB Standards 9508.89–92
- Going Concern Evaluation 341.01–18; 9341.01–02
- Illegal Acts by Client 317.01–25; 9317.01–06; 9333.01–04
- Independence of Auditor 9504.19–22
- Internal Audit Function 322.01–29
- Internal Control Considerations 316.03–04; 316.20; 316.34; 319.01–110; 9317.01–02; 9550.08–11; 9550.13–15
- Judgments About Risk of Material Misstatements Due to Fraud 316.17; 316.24; 316.27; 316.32; 316.40; 316.45; 316.61; 316.68; 316.71; 316.74
- Letters—See Engagement Letters
- Limited Reporting Objectives 508.33–34
- Limited Response 315.10

AUDIT ENGAGEMENT—continued

- Misstatements Due to Fraud 316.21; 316.31; 316.35–40; 316.42; 316.50; 316.53; 316.81; 316.85
- Misstatements, Evaluating Effects of 312.34–41
- Objective—See Objectives of Audit
- Omitted Auditing Procedures 390.01–08
- Other Information in Documents 380.12; 550.03–04; 551.04; 558.02
- Planning the Audit 310.04; 311.03–10; 312.01; 312.12–33; 316.12; 316.14–19; 316.28–30; 316.69; 316.83; 9311.01–03
- Professional Skepticism 316.02; 316.13; 316.16; 316.46
- Quality Control 161.01–03
- Relation to Nonaudit Services . . . 9311.01–03
- Reports—See Reports
- Representation Letters 310.06; 333.05
- Responding to Assessment of Fraud 316.46–67
- Responsibilities of Assistant for Audit Disagreements 9311.35–37
- Responsibilities of Auditor 110.01–05; 110.10; 310.06; 324.57–61; 9324.35–40; 9504.19–22
- Review of Form 10-K 9634.01–09
- Scope—See Scope of Audit
- Service Organizations 324.01–63; 9324.01–40
- Supervision 311.11–14; 312.17; 316.50
- Supplementary Information 551.01–23; 558.02
- Supplementary Information Required by GAAP 558.02
- System of Quality Control—See System of Quality Control
- Timing of Audit Work 310.04; 312.33
- Use of Legal Interpretations to Support That Transfer of Assets Has Met Isolation Criteria in FASB Statement No. 140 9336.01–21
- Use of Work of Specialists 336.01; 9326.06–23; 9336.01–21
- Weaknesses in Internal Control 9317.03–06
- Withdrawal by Auditor 316.49; 316.78; 317.20; 317.22; 504.13
- Work of Other Auditors 543.01–17; 9543.18–24
- Working Papers—See Working Papers

AUDIT FUNCTION

- Internal Audit 322.04–08
- Objectives of Audit 110.01; 722.07; 722.09; 722.35; 722.37–40
- Planning—See Planning

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

AUDIT GUIDES, INDUSTRY

- Nonprofit Organizations 9623.47
- Representation Letters 333.07
- Source of Business Information 311.08
- Source of Established Principles . . . 9623.47
- Use of Reports 544.02–.04; 9623.51

AUDIT PROGRAM—See Program, Audit

AUDIT RISK—See Risk

AUDIT SAMPLING

- Analytical Procedures 9350.02
- Applications 9350.01–.02
- Background Information 350.01–.06
- Cost 350.07; 350.46
- Cutoff Tests 9350.02
- Definition 350.01; 9350.02
- Design of Sample 350.05–.06; 350.44; 350.46
- Dual-Purpose Samples 350.44
- Effectiveness 350.46
- Efficiency 350.05; 350.13; 350.46
- Errors or Irregularities—See Fraud
- Evidential Matter 350.03–.06; 350.16; 350.19; 9350.02
- Fraud—See Fraud
- Illustrations 350.17; 350.26; 350.41; 350.48
- Interim Information 350.39
- Internal Control 350.31–.43; 9350.02
- Inventories 9350.02
- Material Misstatements 350.02; 350.06–.14; 350.18; 350.30
- Model 350.48
- Nonstatistical—See Nonstatistical Sampling
- Objectives of Audit 350.02; 350.05; 350.16–.22; 350.25
- Planning 350.02–.03; 350.15–.23; 350.28; 350.31–.37
- Population 9350.02
- Questioned Costs 801.18
- Risk—See Risk
- Sample Evaluation 350.25–.30; 350.40–.43; 9350.02
- Sample Selection 350.24; 350.39
- Size of Sample 350.19–.23; 350.38; 350.44
- Standards of Field Work . . . 350.04; 350.19
- Statistical—See Statistical Sampling
- Substantive Tests 350.12–.30; 350.43; 350.48; 9350.02
- Tests of Controls 350.08–.10; 350.12–.14; 350.31–.43; 9350.02
- Tolerable Misstatement 350.18; 350.21–.23; 350.26
- Tolerable Rate 350.34–.35; 350.38; 350.41; 350.44
- Uncertainties 350.07–.11

AUDIT TESTS

- Compliance—See Compliance Tests
- Evidential Matter 326.01–.26
- Examination at Interim Dates . . . 313.01–.10; 9326.01–.05
- Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures 328.23–.42
- Fraud 311.03; 316.51–.56
- Illegal Act Detection 9317.01–.02; 9333.01–.04
- Information Provided to Specialist 9336.09–.17
- Management Override of Controls 316.57–.67
- Material Misstatements 312.35; 316.50–.56
- Misappropriations of Assets 316.55–.56
- Override of Controls 316.57–.67
- Planning of Audit Work 311.03
- Prior to Balance Sheet Date 313.01–.10
- Related Party Disclosures 334.11–.12; 9334.22–.23
- Related Party Transactions 311.03; 334.01–.12; 9334.16–.21
- Relation to Internal Control 9317.01–.02
- Representation Letters 333.01–.18
- Responses to Fraud Risk 316.50–.67
- Risk of Material Misstatement 316.50
- Sampling—See Audit Sampling
- Service Organizations—See Service Organizations
- Substantive—See Substantive Tests
- Use of Findings of Specialists 336.12; 9336.11–.12
- Work of Other Auditors 543.13

AUDITING INTERPRETATIONS

- Use of Reports 544.02–.04; 9623.51

AUDITING PROCEDURES

- Audit Documentation 9326.06–.23
- Federal Financial Assistance Programs 801.13–.14; 801.17–.20
- Financial Statement Effects of Laws on Governmental Entities 801.07
- Representations From Management 333.03
- Segment Disclosures in Financial Statements 9326.28–.41

AUDITING STANDARDS—See Generally Accepted Auditing Standards

AUDITING STANDARDS BOARD

- Authority Designated by Council 9508.85–.88

AUDITOR, INDEPENDENT

- Accounting Estimates 342.01–.16; 9312.04–.09
- Adequate and Appropriate Disclosure 431.02; 9623.60–.81; 9623.90–.95

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

AUDITOR, INDEPENDENT—continued

- Advisory Versus Reporting Accountant 9625.01–09
- Analytical Procedures 316.02; 316.28–30; 329.01–24
- Appointment at Year End 310.04
- Association With Financial Statements 504.01–20
- Audit Conducted in Accordance With GAAS and PCAOB Standards 9508.89–92
- Audit Risk and Materiality 312.01–42
- Audit Sampling 350.01–48; 9350.01–02
- Basis of Accounting
 - Other Than GAAP 534.01–16; 623.02–10; 9534.01–04; 9623.47–53; 9623.90–95
- Change of Auditors 315.01–25
- Comments on Audit 551.21
- Communication Regarding Applicable Audit Requirements 801.21–23
- Communication When No Audit Committee Exists 9380.02–03
- Communication With Audit Committees 380.01–17; 722.29–36; 801.22; 9411.15
- Comparative Financial Statements 504.14–17
- Completeness Assertion 9326.24–27
- Compliance Auditing 801.01–24
- Compliance Reports 623.19–21; 9634.01–09
- Condensed Financial Information 9504.15–18
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.01–08
- Confirmation Process 330.01–36
- Consideration of Management's Adoption of Accounting Principles for New Transactions or Events 9411.11–15
- Consideration of the Results of Analytical Procedures Performed in Planning the Audit 316.28–30
- Continuing Auditor 508.65
- Current-Value Financial Statements 9623.55–59
- Date of Engagement Acceptance 310.04
- Definition 311.02
- Design of Audit 801.06; 801.08
- Design of Substantive Tests 313.08
- Determination of Intent 316.05; 316.11
- Direct v. Indirect Knowledge 326.21
- Distribution by Client of Restricted-Use Report 532.18
- Due Professional Care 230.01–13
- Estimation of Future Events 312.36
- Evaluating Audit Test Results 316.68–78
- Evaluating Results of Compliance Audit Procedures on Major Federal Financial Assistance Programs 801.17–20
- Evidential Matter 312.12; 312.19–20; 312.36–38; 322.02; 326.01–26; 9326.01–41

AUDITOR, INDEPENDENT—continued

- Expertise in EDP 311.10
- Firm—See Firm
- First Year Audits 420.24–25
- Fraud 316.01–86
- Functions 110.01–05; 110.10
- GAAP—Sources 411.05–15
- Going Concern Assumption 341.01–18; 9341.01–02
- Illegal Acts by Client 312.05; 316.01; 316.82; 316.86; 317.01–25
- Incomplete Special-Purpose Financial Presentation 9623.82–86
- Independence 220.01–07; 504.08–10; 634.31–32; 9504.19–22
- Internal Audit Function Considerations 322.01–29
- Internal Auditor Competence and Objectivity Assessment 322.09–11
- Internal Auditor, Relationship 311.04
- Internal Control Considerations 319.01–110; 801.10
- Internal Control Reports—See Reports on Internal Control
- Judgment—See Judgment
- Knowledge of GAAP 722.07; 722.09
- Legal Advice Regarding Access to Audit Documentation by Regulator 9339.12
- Legal Liability 230.03
- Letters for Underwriters 634.01–64; 9634.01–09; 9634.13–29
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 337.01–14; 9337.01–32
- Loss Reserves (Insurance) 9623.40–46
- Management Representations—See Representation Letters
- Merger of Accounting Firms 508.65
- Objective of Audit 110.01; 326.09–14; 326.22; 326.25
- Observation of Inventories 310.04; 331.01–02; 331.09–12; 331.14; 9508.01–06
- Oil and Gas Reserve Information 9558.01–05
- Omitted Auditing Procedures 390.01–08
- Opinions—See Opinions, Auditors'
- Other Information in Electronic Sites Containing Audited Financial Statements 9550.16–18
- Planning of Audit Work 311.01; 312.01; 312.12–33; 801.11; 9311.01–34
- Predecessor—See Predecessor Auditor
- Preparation of Statements 110.03; 431.03
- Principal Auditor 543.01–17; 9543.18–24
- Professional Skepticism 342.04; 342.07–14

AUDITOR, INDEPENDENT—continued

- AUDITOR, INDEPENDENT—continued**

- AUDITOR. INTERNAL**

- Auditor's Understanding of Function 322.04–.08
- Competence 322.09; 322.11
- Directly Assisting Auditor 322.27
- Effect on the Audit 322.12–.27
- Functions 322.03
- Internal Control 322.13
- Objectivity 322.03; 322.10–.11
- Planning of Audit Work 311.04
- Relation to Independent Auditors 311.04; 322.01–.29
- Relevance of Function to Audit of Entity's Financial Statements.. 322.06–.08
- Risk Assessment 322.14–.17
- Substantive Procedures 322.17

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

**AUDITORS' OPINIONS—See Opinions,
Auditors'****AUDITORS' REPORTS**

- Accounting Changes 9410.13–18;
..... 9420.52–54; 9420.69–72
- Addressee of Report 508.09
- Adverse Opinion..... 508.10; 508.58–60
- Applicability of Guidance 508.01–03
- Audit Risk and Materiality 312.01–02
- Audited Financial Statements ... 508.01–76;
..... 9508.56–74
- Auditor-Submitted Documents .. 551.01–23
- Auditor's Consideration of
 Fraud..... 316.01–86
- Availability to Public 9623.47–53
- Basis of Accounting Other
 Than GAAP 410.02;
..... 623.02–10; 9508.33–37;
..... 9623.47–53; 9623.90–95
- Change in Pension Plan
 Presentation 9420.64–65
- Clarification of Extent of Testing
 of Internal Control Over
 Financial Reporting 9508.85–88
- Classification and Reclassification ... 420.15
- Client Distribution of Restricted-Use .. 532.18
- Communication With Audit
 Committee 316.79–82;
..... 380.03–04
- Communication With
 Management..... 316.79–82
- Communication With Third Parties
 About Fraud 316.79–82
- Comparability of Financial
 Statements..... 420.02; 420.05
- Comparative Financial
 Statements..... 504.14–17; 508.08;
..... 508.65–74; 711.11–12
- Compilation—See Compilation of
 Financial Statements
- Compliance Reports..... 9623.40–46;
..... 9634.03–09
- Compliance With U.S. and International
 Standards..... 9508.56–59
- Condensed Financial
 Statements..... 552.01–08
- Consideration of Fraud..... 316.01–86
- Consistency..... 420.01–24; 508.03;
..... 508.16–18; 623.31;
..... 9420.20; 9420.69–72
- Consolidating Information..... 551.17–20
- Controls—Service Organizations ... 332.14;
..... 332.16
- Current-Value Financial Statements
 Supplementing Historical-Cost
 Financial Statements..... 9623.55–59
- Date of Issuance of Related
 Financial Statements..... 530.03–05
- Date of Report..... 508.65; 530.01–08;
..... 711.05–06; 711.12
- Degree of Responsibility Stated 550.07
- Departure—See Departure From
 Standard Report

AUDITORS' REPORTS—continued

- Departure From GAAP 431.03;
..... 508.14–15; 508.35–60;
..... 711.13; 722.21; 722.41–43;
..... 9508.76–84
- Differing Opinions..... 508.67–69
- Disclaimer of Opinion 508.10
- Documenting Consideration of
 Fraud 316.83
- Documentation Regarding Interim
 Financial Information 722.51–52
- Effect of Internal Audit
 Function 322.19–22
- Effect of Specialists' Work 336.13–14
- Emphasis of a Matter 508.19
- Evaluating Evidence of Fraud ... 316.68–78
- Expanding the Report Based Upon
 Supplementary Information 558.09
- Explanatory Language Added ... 508.10–19;
..... 532.19; 623.31;
..... 9508.88; 9508.92; 9550.10
- Explanatory Paragraph 341.12–13;
..... 9341.01–02
- Expression of Opinion..... 110.01; 504.01
- Fair Presentation 110.01; 411.01–18
- FIFO to LIFO Change..... 9420.16–20
- Financial Statements for Use
 Outside U.S. ... 534.01–16; 9534.01–04
- Foreign Country's Auditing
 Standards 9508.56–59
- Form for Qualified Opinion 508.21
- Form of Accountant's Review
 Report..... 722.37–41
- Form of Standard Report 508.07
- Fraud Risk Factors 316.31–42; 316.85
- General Use 532.02
- Going Concern Assumption. 341.03–04;
..... 341.12–16;
..... 9341.01–02
- Guarantee Not Provided 230.13
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Incomplete Special-Purpose Financial
 Presentation 9623.82–86
- Interim Financial Information. 711.01;
..... 711.03; 711.06; 711.09;
..... 711.13; 722.37–46
- Internal Control—See Reports on
 Internal Control
- Introductory Paragraph..... 508.06; 508.12
- Lack of Independence..... 504.08–10;
..... 9504.19–22
- Letters for Underwriters 634.27–30;
..... 634.59
- Litigation, Claims, and
 Assessments..... 337.01–14;
..... 9337.01–32
- Management Representations
 Regarding Fraud 333.06; 333.16
- Management Responsibility for
 Financial Statements 9508.51–52
- Modification of Accountant's
 Review Report..... 722.42–45
- Negative Assurance 504.18–19
- Omission of Schedule of
 Investments..... 9508.76–84

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

AUDITORS' REPORTS—continued

- Omitted Auditing Procedures . . . 390.01–.08
- One Financial Statement Only . . . 508.33–.34
- Opinion Paragraph 508.12
- Other Auditors'—See Reports, Other Auditors'
- Other Information, Auditor Expressing an Opinion on . . 550.07
- Other Information in Documents 550.01–.07; 551.04; 722.18
- Other Information in Electronic Sites Containing Audited Financial Statements 9550.16–.18
- Other Information Provided by Service Auditor 9324.35–.40; 324.57–.61
- Planning of Audit Work . . 311.03–.04; 311.13
- Prescribed Forms 623.32–.33
- Prior Year's Statements 504.15–.17; 711.11–.13
- Qualified Opinion 508.10; 508.20–.57
- Reference to PCAOB Standards in a Report of Nonissuer 9508.89–.92
- Reference to Specialists 336.15–.16
- Regulated Companies 544.02–.04
- Regulatory Accounting or Presentation 9623.96–.98
- Reissued—See Reissued Reports
- Report Form of a Foreign Country 534.07–.08; 534.11–.12; 534.15
- Reputation and Standing 543.01
- Responding to Assessment of Fraud 316.46–.67
- Restricted Use 532.01–.22; 9623.85; 9623.96–.98
- Addition of Other Parties 532.14–.17
- By-Product of Financial Statement Audit 532.04; 532.07–.11; 532.15
- Circumstances Resulting in . . . 532.03–.11
- Combined Reports 532.12
- Inclusion in Same Document With General-Use Report 532.13
- Specified Parties Accept Responsibility for Sufficiency of Procedures Performed 532.04
- Subject Matter or Presentations Based on Measurement or Disclosure Criteria in Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Provisions 532.04–.05; 532.16
- Review of Form 10-K 9634.01–.09
- Review Reports—See Review Reports
- Revision for Subsequent Discovery 561.06–.09
- Scope Limitation 333.13–.14; 508.22–.34; 9326.06–.23; 9337.17; 9508.01
- SEC Filings 311.03; 504.14; 530.02; 530.06; 711.01–.13; 722.03; 722.05–.06; 722.49–.50; 9711.03; 9711.09; 9711.12–.17

AUDITORS' REPORTS—continued

- Segment Information 9326.28–.41
- Selected Financial Data 552.01–.02; 552.05; 552.09–.12
- Service Organizations—See Service Organizations
- Special Reports—See Special Reports
- Special-Purpose Financial Presentations 623.22–.30; 9623.82–.86
- Standards of Reporting 150.02; 431.01–.04; 508.03–.05
- Statutory Reporting—See Statutory Reporting Requirements
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 561.01–.10; 722.46; 9561.01–.02
- Subsequent Discovery of Material Misstatement 230.13
- Successor Auditor When Prior-Period Audited Financial Statements Were Audited by Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations 9508.60–.74
- Summarized Comparative Information 508.65
- Supplementary Information . . . 551.01–.23; 552.05; 558.01–.11; 9558.01–.05
- Third-Party Additions 532.14–.17
- U.S. Report Form on Foreign Country's Accounting Principles 534.07–.10
- U.S. Report Form on Foreign Country's Financial Statements 534.14–.15
- Unaudited Financial Statements 504.05–.19; 508.02
- Uncertainties 337.14; 341.12–.13; 508.29–.32; 508.67; 9337.17
- Unqualified Opinion 508.10
- Updated Reports . . 508.65–.66; 508.68–.69

AUTHORITIES, REGULATORY—See Regulatory Agencies

AUTHORIZATION

- Client's Permission to Predecessor Auditor 315.08; 315.11; 315.24–.25

B

BALANCE SHEETS—See Statements of Financial Position

BANKERS

- Inquiries Concerning Other Auditors . . 543.10

BASIS OF ACCOUNTING

- Accrual—See Accrual Basis of Accounting
- Audit Risk and Materiality 312.03
- Cash Basis 623.08
- Description of Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting 623.04
- Income Tax Basis . . . 623.08; 9623.47–.53
- Liquidation Basis 9508.33–.37

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

BASIS OF ACCOUNTING—continued

- Management's Adoption of Accounting Principles for New Transactions or Events 9411.12
- Other Than GAAP 312.03; 410.02; 504.07; 623.02–10; 9508.33–37; 9623.47–53; 9623.60–81; 9623.90–95
- Prescribed by Regulatory Agency 623.08; 9623.47–53; 9623.60–81
- Representation Letters 333.05–06; 333.10; 333.16

BOARD OF DIRECTORS

- Control Environment 319.24; 319.29; 319.34–36
- Interim Financial Information 722.23; 722.56
- Internal Control 319.06; 319.24; 319.56; 319.110
- Minutes of Meetings 333.06; 333.11; 333.16; 334.08; 337.07
- Planning of Audit Work 311.04
- Restricted-Use Reports 532.11; 532.15
- Review of Form 10-K 9634.01–09
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 722.46

BOOK VALUE—See Carrying Amount

BOOKS—See Records

BORROWING CONTRACT

- Compliance Reports 623.19–21
- Going Concern Assumption 341.07
- Illustrative Special Report 623.30
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 337.07
- Management Representations 333.07
- Related Party Transactions 334.03; 334.08; 334.10
- Violation of Debt Covenant 9410.17

BUSINESS COMBINATIONS

- Auditing Firms 508.65; 508.74
- Letters for Underwriters 634.42
- Unaudited Information 508.28

BUSINESS ENTERPRISE

- Assertions by Management 326.03–08; 9326.06–23
- Change in Reporting Entity 420.07–09
- Closely Held Companies 334.07
- Components—See Components of a Business
- Going Concern—See Going Concern
- Nonbusiness—See Nonbusiness Organizations
- Nonpublic—See Nonpublic Enterprises
- Planning of Audit Work 311.01; 311.03–10
- Publicly Traded—See Publicly Traded Companies
- Regulated—See Regulated Industries
- Types of Financial Statements 623.02

C

CAPITAL STRUCTURE

- Letters for Underwriters ... 634.35; 634.45; 634.49

CAPITAL, WORKING—See Working Capital

CAPITALIZATION

- Leases 326.06

CAPSULE INFORMATION

- Letters for Underwriters 634.35; 634.39–41

CARRYING AMOUNT

- Management Representations 333.06; 333.16–17

CASH

- Compensating Balances 333.17

CASH BASIS STATEMENTS—See Special Reports

CHANGE OF AUDITORS

- Communication Between Auditors 315.01–25

CHANGES, ACCOUNTING

- Adverse Opinion 508.51; 508.53; 508.55–56; 9410.15
- Alternatives 9410.13–18
- Auditor's Evaluation 508.50–51
- Change in Estimate 420.13; 420.15; 9623.46
- Change to GAAP From Other Basis 420.12; 508.50–51
- Comparability 508.54–55
- Comparability Between Years 420.02; 420.04; 9420.53; 9420.69–72
- Comparative Financial Statements .. 9420.16
- Concurrence by Auditor 508.16; 508.50–52
- Consistency Affected 420.06–12; 508.16–18; 623.31; 9420.52–54; 9420.69–72
- Consistency Not Affected . . 420.20; 552.05; 9420.20; 9420.69–72
- Correction of Error 420.12
- Cumulative Effect Adjustment 508.56
- Definition 420.04
- Departure From GAAP 508.55
- Disclosure 9420.19–20; 9420.69–72
- Effects on Subsequent Years 508.18
- Elements of Financial Statements 9623.45–46
- Estimates 420.15
- Future Change in Principle ... 9410.15–18
- Illustrations of Reporting... 508.17; 508.52; 9420.19
- Inventory Pricing Methods.... 9420.16–20
- Investees 9420.52–54
- Lacking Conformity With GAAP 508.50–51
- Management Justification 508.50–52; 508.57

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

CHANGES, ACCOUNTING—continued

- Materiality 420.05; 420.20
- Pension Plans 9420.64–65
- Presentation of Cash Flows 420.14
- Qualified Opinion 508.50; 508.52–57;
9410.16–17
- Reporting Entity 420.07–10
- Reporting in Subsequent Years 508.18
- Restatement 508.56
- Subsequent Years Reporting 508.53–57
- Year of Adoption 9420.69–72

CHANGES, PRICE LEVEL—See Price Level Changes

CLAIMS

- Audit Procedures. 333.06
 - 337.05-.07; 9337.15-.17;
 - 9337.24-.27
- Client Has Not Consulted a Lawyer. 9337.15-.17
- Inquiries of Client's Lawyers . . . 337.08-.11;
 - 722.20; 9337.01-.32
- Internal v. Outside Lawyers . . . 9337.24-.27
- Limitations on Lawyer's Responses. 337.12-.14
- Management Representations . . . 333.06;
 - 333.16-.17

CLASSIFICATION

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| • Adequate Disclosure | 431.02 |
| • Comparability and Consistency | 420.17 |
| • Investments | 332.49; 332.57 |
| • Management Representations | 326.03-08; |
| ..... | 333.06; 333.16-17 |
| • Pension Plans | 9420.64-65 |

CLIENTS

- Auditor-Submitted Documents 551.04; 552.01
- Authorization to Predecessor Auditor 315.08; 315.11; 315.24–25
- Authorization to Provide Audit Documentation to Regulator 9339.04–06; 9339.12–13
- Change in Lawyers 337.11
- Client-Prepared Documents 551.04; 552.01–12
- Condensed Financial Information 9504.15–18
- Confidential Information—See Confidential Client Information
- Disagreement With Auditor 315.07; 315.09; 504.06; 504.13; 551.09; 722.47
- Disclosure of Discovery of Facts 561.06–09; 711.12–13
- Distribution of Restricted-Use Reports 532.18; 9623.96–98
- Failure to Disclose 504.11–13; 508.41–44; 561.08; 711.12
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act . . 9317.01–06
- Illegal Acts—See Illegal Acts
- Income Tax Accruals 9326.06–23

CLIENTS—continued

- Investigation Requested by Auditor . . . 561.01
- Lawyer-Client Communications 337.13;
 9337.10-.27
- Letters for Underwriters—See Letters for Underwriters
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 337.01-.14;
 9337.01-.32
- Omitted Auditing Procedures 390.07
- Other Information in Documents 550.01-.07; 551.04;
 558.04-.05; 9550.07-.15
- Other Information in Electronic Sites Containing Audited Financial Statements 9550.16-.18
- Personnel—See Employees
- Records—See Records
- Refusal to Accept Auditor's Report . . . 504.13
- Registration Statements 711.10-.11
- Reissuance of Predecessor Auditor's Report 508.70-.73
- Relationship With Predecessor Auditor 508.73
- Relationship With Specialists . . . 336.10-.11
- Relationships—See Relationship With Clients
- Representation Concerning Review of Interim Financial Information . . 722.47-.48
- Representations—See Representation Letters
- Review Audit Documentation Prior to Access by Regulator 9339.14
- Scope Limitations 333.13-.14;
 508.22; 508.29-.32;
 722.14; 9326.06-.23;
 9508.01-.06
- Special Reports—See Special Reports
- Supplementary Information—See Supplementary Financial Information
- Understanding With Accountant 310.05-.07; 532.18;
 722.08-.09; 9339.04;
 9339.12-.13; 9623.96-.98;
 9625.01-.09
- Use of Accountant's Name 504.06; 9504.15-.18;
 9550.14-.15
- Use of Explanatory Language About Attorney-Client Privilege 9337.28-.30
- Working Papers 310.07

CLOSELY HELD COMPANIES

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------|
| • Related Parties | 334.07 |
|-----------------------------|--------|

CODE OF CONDUCT—See **Conduct, Code of Professional**

COLLATERAL

- Management Representations 333.06; 333.09;
 333.17

COLLUSION—See Fraud

COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Supplementary Information 551.17–.20

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

COMFORT LETTERS—See Letters for Underwriters**COMMITTEE**

- Audit—See Audit Committee
- Directors—See Board of Directors
- Quality Control Standards 161.01

COMMON CARRIERS—See Regulated Industries**COMMUNICATION**

- Access to Audit Documentation by Regulator 9339.04-.06; 9339.12-.13
- Accounting Policies to Audit Committee 380.07
- Applicable Audit Requirements .. 801.21-.23
- Audit Adjustments 380.09-.10
- Audit Plan 311.04
- Auditor and Audit Committees 328.50; 380.01-.17; 801.22; 9411.15
- Auditor—When No Audit Committee Exists 9380.02-.03
- Auditor's Responsibility Under GAAS.. 380.06
- Change of Auditors 315.01-.25
- Continuing Accountant and Reporting Accountant 625.09
- Deficiencies in Design of Controls 9324.35-.37
- Deficiencies in Internal Control 722.32-.33
- Describing Effectiveness of Controls for Future Periods 9324.38-.40
- Difficulties in Performing Audit 380.16
- Disagreements With Management ... 380.13
- Discussions With Management Prior to Retention 380.15
- Engagement Letters—See Engagement Letters
- Fraud 316.18; 316.20; 316.74; 316.79-.82; 333.06; 333.16; 722.32; 722.56
- GAAS Audit Insufficient 801.22
- Illegal Acts 317.17; 722.32
- Interim Financial Information 722.08; 722.29-.36
- Lawyer-Client 337.13; 9337.10-.27
- Management Consultation With Other Accountants 380.14
- Management Judgments Regarding Accounting Estimates 380.08
- Material Weaknesses in Internal Control 325.15; 9325.01-.06
- Nonaudit Personnel 9311.01-.03
- Objectives to EDP Specialists 311.10
- Other Information in Documents 380.12
- Position Papers 625.06
- Principal and Other Auditor 543.10; 543.17; 9334.12-.15; 9543.01-.17
- Principal and Reporting Accountant .. 625.09
- Privileged—See Confidential Client Information

COMMUNICATION—continued

- Related Party Disclosure —Terminology 9334.22-.23
- Reportable Conditions 316.80; 325.02-.03; 325.06; 325.09-.12; 722.09; 722.33
- Reporting on Internal Control ... 325.01-.21; 9325.01-.06
- Reports on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 9550.07-.15
- Representations—See Representation Letters
- Responsibilities of Assistant for Audit Disagreements 9311.35-.37
- Service Organizations 324.23
- Timing Considerations 315.04
- To Audit Committee About Fraud 316.79-.82
- To Management About Fraud ... 316.79-.82
- To Third Parties About Fraud ... 316.79-.82
- Use of Accountant's Name 504.03; 504.06; 9504.15-.18
- Weakness in Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 9550.11; 9550.15

COMPARABILITY

- Analytical Procedures .. 722.15-.16; 722.54
- Changes, Accounting 420.02; 420.04; 508.16-.18; 508.54-.55; 9420.16; 9420.52-.54; 9420.69-.72
- Classification and Reclassifications 420.04; 420.17
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.05; 552.08
- Emphasis in Auditor's Report 508.19
- Explanatory Language Added to Auditor's Standard Report 508.16-.18
- Factors Affecting 420.04-.05
- Interim v. Annual Data 313.08; 9420.14
- Pooling of Interests 420.07-.09
- Reissuance of Financial Statements .. 560.08
- Relation to Consistency ... 420.03; 552.05; 9420.20; 9420.52-.54

COMPARATIVE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Auditors' Reports 508.65-.74
- Changes, Accounting 508.54; 508.57; 9420.16
- Condensed Financial Statements ... 552.08
- Consistency 420.08-.09; 9420.20
- Consistency Standard 9420.69-.72
- Going Concern Assumption 341.15-.16
- Illustration of Auditor's Report 508.08
- Interim Financial Information ... 722.15-.16
- Liquidation Basis of Accounting ... 9508.35
- Predecessor Auditor's Report ... 508.70-.74; 711.11-.12
- Report Requirements 9420.20; 9420.69-.72
- Reports With Differing Opinions 504.16-.17; 508.67-.69; 623.31
- SEC Filings 504.14; 711.11-.12

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

COMPARATIVE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS—continued

- Successor Auditor's Reports . . . 9508.60–74
- Unaudited Financial Statements . . . 504.14–17

COMPENSATING BALANCES

- Management Representations 333.17
- Related Party Transactions 334.08

COMPETENCE

- Assistants to Auditor 311.10–11
- Auditor, Independent . . . 110.04–.05; 150.02;
 210.01–.05; 634.55;
 634.60; 9623.40
- Evidential Matter 312.12; 326.01–.02;
 326.12; 326.21;
 330.11; 350.06;
 9326.01–.05
- Internal Auditors 322.09; 322.11
- Legal Matters 337.06
- Other Auditors 543.05; 543.10–11
- Specialists 336.08; 9326.06–23

COMPILATION OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Change From Audit Engagement 508.61
- Departures From Established
 Principles 552.02
- Omission of Disclosures 552.02
- Subsequent Period Audited 504.17

COMPLETENESS

- Assertions by Management 319.62;
 326.03–.05;
 326.09–11; 9326.24–27
- Consideration by Auditor 330.13–14;
 332.01;
 332.22–24; 9326.24–27
- Evidential Matter 330.13–14; 332.01;
 9326.24–27
- Management's Disclosures 9326.28–41
- Substantive Tests 313.05; 9326.24–27

COMPLIANCE AUDITING

- Agreed-Upon Procedures
 Engagement 801.01
- Applicability 801.01–.02
- Auditor's Responsibilities 801.01–24
- Common Elements in Audit of Recipient of
 Federal Financial Assistance 801.10
- Communications Regarding Applicable
 Audit Requirements 801.21–23
- Compliance Requirements Applicable to
 Federal Financial Assistance
 Programs 801.12–16
- Compliance Supplements
 Requirements 801.13
- Design 801.06; 801.08
- Effects of Laws on Financial Statements
 of Governmental Entities 801.03–.07
- Evaluating Results of Compliance Audit
 Procedures on Major Federal Financial
 Assistance Programs 801.17–20
- Federal Audit Requirements 801.10–20
- Forms of Federal Financial
 Assistance 801.04
- Government Auditing Standards
 Requirements 801.08–09

COMPLIANCE AUDITING—continued

- Internal Control Considerations . . . 801.10–11
- Management Representations 801.07;
 801.10
- Management Responsibilities 801.05;
 801.21
- Noncompliance 801.17; 801.19–20
- Office of Management and Budget
 Standards and Requirements 801.07;
 801.13–15; 801.22
- Organization-Wide v.
 Program-Specific 801.11; 801.14
- Planning 801.11
- Procedures for Assessing Management
 Identification of Laws 801.07
- Questioned Costs 801.17–19
- Terminology 801.01; 801.04;
 801.08–09; 801.12–13
- Tests of Compliance 801.13–14; 801.18
- Types of Compliance
 Requirements 801.12–15
- Use of Audit Sampling 801.18
- Workpaper Documentation 801.23

COMPLIANCE REPORTS—See Special Reports

COMPLIANCE TESTS

- Compliance Auditing Applicable to
 Governmental Entities—See
 Compliance Auditing
- Reports—See Reports on Internal Control

COMPONENTS OF A BUSINESS

- Communication Between
 Auditors 543.10; 9543.01–17
- Consolidating Information 551.17–20
- Emphasis in Auditor's Report 508.19
- Management 543.13
- Related Party Transactions 334.07–08;
 9334.14–15
- Uniformity 543.10
- Work of Other Auditors 543.01–02;
 543.06; 543.10

COMPREHENSIVE BASIS OF ACCOUNTING

- Adequacy and Appropriateness of
 Disclosure 623.09–10; 9623.60–81;
 9623.90–95
- Audit Risk and Materiality 312.03
- Basic Financial Statements 551.02
- Definition 623.04
- Financial Statements Not Meeting
 Criteria 623.06
- Form of Auditor's Report 623.05
- Illustrative Reports 623.08
- Omitted Auditing Procedures 390.01
- Regulatory Agencies 411.08
- Relation to Evidential Matter 326.25
- Reports on Application of
 Principles 625.01–11
- Restricted-Use Reports 532.02;
 532.04–05;
 623.05
- Special Reports 410.02; 623.02–10;
 9623.60–81; 9623.90–95

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

CONDENSED FINANCIAL INFORMATION

- Identification of Auditor 9504.15–18
- Letters for Underwriters—See Letters for Underwriters
- Parent Company 552.05

CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Adverse Opinion 552.07
- Auditor's Report 552.01–.08
- Comparability—See Comparability
- Comparative—See Comparative Financial Statements
- Consolidated—See Consolidated Financial Statements
- Date of Auditor's Report 552.05
- Disclosure 552.03–.04
- Filing With a Regulatory Agency 552.07–.08; 9711.07
- Financial Position 552.03–.04
- Generally Accepted Accounting Principles 552.03–.04
- Illustrations 552.06–.08
- Interim Periods 552.01; 552.08
- Letters for Underwriters—See Letters for Underwriters
- Qualified Opinion 552.05
- Reference to Another Auditor 552.05
- Results of Operations 552.03–.04
- Review Report 552.08; 9711.09
- SEC—See Securities and Exchange Commission
- Segments of a Business—See Segment Information
- Shelf Registration Statements 9711.09
- Unqualified Opinion 552.06
- Use of Auditor's Name 552.07

CONDUCT, CODE OF PROFESSIONAL

- Departures From GAAP 508.14–.15
- Independence 220.04; 9504.19–.22
- Rules of Conduct—See Rules of Conduct

CONFIDENTIAL CLIENT INFORMATION

- Audit Documentation 339.10–.13; 9339.03; 9339.05–.06; 9339.10; 9339.13
- Disclosure of Information 315.06; 315.08; 315.25; 431.04
- Explanatory Language in Audit Inquiry Letter 9337.28–.30
- Fraud 316.82
- Illegal Acts by Client 317.23
- Lawyer-Client Communications 337.13; 9337.08–.09
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 561.02

CONFIRMATIONS

- Alternative Procedures 330.31–.32
- Assertions 330.11–.14
- Compensating Balance Arrangements 334.08
- Completeness 330.13–.14
- Definition 330.04
- Design 330.16–.27
- Evaluation of Results 330.33

CONFIRMATIONS—continued

- Evidential Matter 150.02; 326.17; 330.06–.14; 330.29; 330.33; 332.16
- Guarantees Shown on Bank Confirmations 337.07
- Inventories 331.09–.13
- Investments 332.16; 332.21; 332.27
- Maintaining Control Requests and Responses 330.28–.30
- Nature of Information 330.24–.25
- Negative 330.20–.21
- Positive 330.17–.19
- Prior Experience 330.23
- Procedures 330.04
- Process 330.01–.36
- Professional Skepticism 330.15; 330.27
- Public Warehouses 331.14; 901.03; 901.19–.20; 901.22
- Receivables 330.34–.35; 9508.01
- Related Party Transactions 334.08–.10
- Relation to Risk Assessment 330.05; 330.07–.10; 330.20–.22
- Reliability 330.16–.27
- Respondent 330.26–.27
- Scope Limitation 508.24

CONFLICT OF INTERESTS

- Management Statements 334.08

CONSISTENCY

- Accounting Changes—See Changes, Accounting
- Accounting Records 326.19
- Application of GAAP 508.67; 508.69
- Auditor's Report With Differing Opinion 508.67; 508.69
- Change of Auditors 315.12–.13
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.05
- Departure From Standard Report 9623.52
- Disclosure 420.14–.19; 508.17–.18; 9420.69–.72
- Elements of Financial Statements 9623.45–.46
- Error Corrections 420.16
- Explanatory Paragraph 508.52
- FIFO to LIFO Change 9420.20
- First Year Audits 420.24–.25
- Form 990 (Internal Revenue) 9623.52
- Illustrative Auditor's Report 508.17
- Inconsistency 508.16–.48
- Interim Financial Information 722.17; 722.41
- Interim v. Annual Data 9420.11–.15
- Objective 420.02; 9420.53; 9420.69–.72
- Other Information in Documents 550.04–.07
- Other Information in Electronic Sites Containing Audited Financial Statements 9550.16–.18

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

CONSISTENCY—continued

- Periods to Which Standard Relates 420.22; 9420.20
- Pooling of Interests 420.08–.09
- Qualified Opinion 508.52
- Relation to Comparability... 420.03; 552.05
- Responsibilities of Auditor 110.01
- Review of Form 10-K 9634.04
- Standard of Reporting 150.02;
..... 420.01–.24;
..... 508.03; 9420.69–.72
- Supplementary Information 558.07

CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Auditor's Opinion 551.20
- Basis of Accounting 534.02
- Communication Between Auditors 9543.01–.17
- Consolidating Information 551.17–.20
- Financial Statements Prepared for Use Outside U.S. 534.02
- Illustrations 552.07; 552.10
- Letters for Underwriters ... 634.18; 634.53
- Management Representations 333.16;
..... 333.18
- Planning of Audit Work 311.03
- Relation to Condensed Financial Statements 552.05–.07
- Selected Financial Data 552.10
- Supplementary Schedules 552.05

CONSOLIDATING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Auditor's Opinion 551.20

CONSOLIDATING INFORMATION

- Auditor's Opinion 551.17–.20

CONSULTATION

- Planning of Audit Work 311.04
- With Continuing Accountant... 9625.01–.09

CONTINGENCIES

- Definition 337B
- Fines for Illegal Acts 9317.06
- Gain—See Gain Contingencies
- Income Taxes 9326.06–.23
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 337.03; 337B;
..... 9337.07; 9337.11;
..... 9337.19
- Loss—See Loss Contingencies
- Management Representations ... 333.06–.08;
..... 333.16–.17;
..... 9333.01–.04;
..... 9337.16
- Review by Successor Auditor 315.11
- Standards of Financial Accounting... 337.03;
..... 337B;
..... 9337.07

CONTINGENT LIABILITIES

- Disclosure 317.06–.07; 317.14–.15
- Lawyers' Letters 337.08–.11; 560.12;
..... 9337.01–.09
- Subsequent Events 561.03

CONTINUING AUDITOR

- Application of Accounting Principles . 625.05
- Definitions 508.65

CONTINUING PROFESSIONAL

EDUCATION—See Training and Education

CONTRACTS

- Compliance Reports 623.19–.21
- Estimates 311.06
- Evidential Matter 326.17
- Illustrative Auditor's Report 623.26
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 337.07
- Matters Requiring Specialists 336.02
..... 336.07
- Representation Letters 333.06–.07;
..... 333.10
- Special Purpose Financial Presentations 623.22–.30;
..... 9623.82–.86
- Underwriting Agreement 634.14–.17;
..... 634.19;
..... 634.23; 634.35;
..... 634.51

CONTROL

- Audit Risk 312.27–.33; 313.03–.07
- Internal—See Internal Control
- Management 110.03
- Quality—See Quality Control
- Related Parties 334.01; 334.04;
..... 334.11

CONTROL RISK

- Assessed Level 312.27–.33; 319.64;
..... 319.70; 319.80–.83;
..... 319.85; 319.90–.104
- Assessment by Auditor 312.30–.31;
..... 319.02–.05;
..... 319.27; 319.40;
..... 319.62–.89; 319.104;
..... 322.14–.16; 324.11–.16;
..... 326.14; 350.12–.14;
..... 350.33; 350.43
- Below the Maximum Level ... 319.70–.74
- Conclusion 319.80–.82
- Documentation 319.83
- Further Reduction in the Assessed Level 319.87–.89
- Specific Controls Relevant to Specific Assertions 319.71–.74
- Tests of Controls ... 319.70; 319.75–.79;
..... 326.14; 350.33
- Completeness Assertion 9326.24–.27
- Considerations in Assessing ... 319.45–.57
- Correlation With Detection Risk 319.79–.82;
..... 326.14
- Definition 319.63
- Detection Risk—Correlation With Control Risk 319.105–.108
- Documentation of Assessed Level ... 319.83
- Dual-Purpose Samples 350.44
- Entity's Process for Determining Fair Value 328.09–.14

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

CONTROL RISK—continued

- Evidential Matter 312.30; 319.80;
319.86–104; 324.12;
326.11–14
- Interrelationship 319.101–104
- Source 319.94–95
- Timeliness 319.96–99
- Type 319.92–93
- Factor in Planning Audit 311.03
- Financial Statement Assertions 319.64;
319.81;
319.83
- Internal Audit Considerations 322.14–16
- Internal Control and Control Risk,
Relationship of 319.84–89
- Maximum Level 319.64; 319.70;
319.83; 319.86
- Reducing Control Risk 319.73; 319.87
- Reduction in Assessed Level 319.87–89
- Service Organizations 324.11–16
- Tests of Controls 319.70; 319.75–79;
326.14; 350.33

CORRECTION OF ERROR

- Application of Principle 420.12
- Change to GAAP From Other Basis 420.12
- Management Responsibilities 324.45
- Mathematical Mistakes 420.16

COST

- Allocation—See Allocation of Cost
- Assertions About an Investment 332.08
- Audit Sampling 350.07; 350.46
- Entity's Experience With an
Investment 332.08
- Historical—See Historical Cost
- Interim Financial Information 722.08
- Research and Development—See Research
and Development Costs
- Valuation of Investments 332.26–27;
332.35; 332.47

COST-BENEFIT RELATIONSHIPS

- Audit Sampling 350.07; 350.46
- Evidential Matter 326.23–24
- Internal Control 319.23
- Quality Control Policies and
Procedures 161.02
- Substantive Tests at Interim Dates 313.04
- Weaknesses in Accounting
Control 9317.03–06
- Weaknesses in Internal
Control 9317.03–06

COST METHOD

- Reports, Other Auditors 543.14

CREDITORS

- Inquiries Concerning Other Auditors 543.10

CURRENT LIABILITIES

- Refinancing Short-Term
Obligations 333.17

CURRENT-VALUE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Disclosure 9623.59
- Supplement to Historical-Cost Financial
Statements 9623.55–59

CUTOFF DATES

- Audit Sampling 9350.02
- Examination of Data 313.07; 560.11
- Letters for Underwriters 634.23–24
- Substantive Tests at
Interim Dates 313.07; 313.09–10

D**DATA**

- Audit Risk and Materiality 312.36
- Audit Sampling 350.07
- Auditor's Opinion on
Supplementary Data 544.02; 551.10
- Availability 311.09
- Cutoffs 313.07; 560.11
- Fair Value—Underlying Data 328.26–39
- Interim Financial
Information 313.01–10; 722.36–41
- Letters for Underwriters 504.18
- Pro Forma Financial Data 560.05
- Relation to Basic Financial
Statements 551.03
- Reliability of Financial Records 326.16
- Selected Financial Data—See
Selected Financial Data
- Subsequent Events 560.05; 560.11–12
- Unaudited Financial Information 508.27–28

DATA PROCESSING

- Effects of EDP on Internal Control 311.09
- Effects of Information Technology on
Evidential Matter 326.12
- Internal Control 311.09
- Method of Controlling 319.29
- Planning of Audit Work 311.09
- Review by Auditor 311.06

DATE OF REPORT

- Comparative Financial Statements 508.65
- Completion of Fieldwork 508.65
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.05
- Date of Issuance of
Related Financial Statements 530.03–05
- Dual Dating 508.73; 530.05
- Establishment of Date 530.01
- Existence of Facts 561.04–05;
9543.15–17
- Letters for Underwriters 634.28
- Omitted Auditing Procedures 390.01
- Registration Statements 711.05–06
- Reissuance of Auditor's Report 508.65;
508.73;
530.06–08
- Relation to Date of Lawyer's
Response 9337.04–05; 9337.10–14
- Review of Interim Information 722.37
- Subsequent Discovery
of Facts 561.01–10; 711.12;
9561.01–02
- Subsequent Events 324.57–61;
530.03–05; 552.05
- Versus Date of
Representation Letter 333.09

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

DEBT

- Letters for Underwriters . . . 634.35; 634.45;
 634.49
- Securities—See Investments

DEFALCATIONS—See Fraud

DEFINED BENEFIT PENSION PLANS

- Change in Presentation 9420.64–.65

DEFINITIONS—See Terminology

DEPARTURE FROM STANDARD REPORT

- Adverse Opinion 508.58–.60
- Departure From GAAP 504.11–.13;
 508.35–.60;
 9420.17–.25; 9508.76–.84
- Emphasis of a Matter 9410.18
- Letters for Underwriters . . . 634.27; 634.35
- Qualified Opinion 508.20–.57
- Reports, Other Auditors' 543.15
- Special Reports—See Special Reports
- Supplementary Information 558.08

DEPARTURES FROM ESTABLISHED PRINCIPLES

- Accounting Changes 420.08–.09;
 508.50–.51;
 508.55
- Accounting Estimates
 Unreasonable 508.48; 9312.04–.09
- Accounting Principles Inappropriate . . 508.48
- Auditors' Reports, Restricted
 Use 532.04–.05
- Compilation of Financial
 Statements 552.02
- Effect of Specialist's Work 336.13–.14;
 9336.21
- Effect on Auditor's Opinion 341.14;
 508.35–.60;
 9336.21; 9508.76–.84
- Fair Value Disclosures 9342.03
- Form 990 (Internal Revenue) . . . 9623.47–.53
- Illustrative Auditor's Report 508.39–.40
- Inadequate Disclosure 508.46
- Interim Financial Information 711.13;
 722.21;
 722.42–.43
- Justification for Departure 411.07
- Letters for Underwriters 634.33
- Nonprofit Organizations 9623.47–.53
- Prior Year's Statements 508.55
- Regulated Industries 544.02–.04
- Related Parties 334.12
- Segment Information, Omission or
 Misstatement 9326.28–.41
- Special Reports 9623.47–.53
- Unaudited Financial
 Statements 504.11–.13; 711.13

DEPOSITORY INSTITUTIONS

- Appointment of FDIC as Conservator
 for Bank 9336.14
- Transfer of Assets Under
 Receivership 9336.14

DEPRECIATION

- Evaluation of Estimates 311.06

DERIVATIVES—See Investments

DESIGN

- Audit in Compliance With Laws and
 Regulations 801.06; 801.08
- Audit Sample 350.05–.06; 350.44;
 350.46
- Effects of EDP on System 311.09

DIRECTORS—See Board of Directors

DISCIPLINARY ACTIONS

- Inquiries Concerning Firms 543.10

DISCLAIMER OF OPINION

- Basis of Accounting Other
 Than GAAP 410.02
- Departure From GAAP . . 504.11–.13; 508.61
- Derecognition of Transferred
 Assets 9336.21
- Elements of Financial Statements . . . 623.14
- Evidential Matter 326.25; 508.63;
 9326.06–.23
- Examples
 - Insufficient Evidential Matter 508.63
 - Lack of Independence 504.10
 - Lack of Inventory Observation 508.67
 - Scope Limitation 508.63
 - Unaudited Financial
 Statements 504.05–.17
- Expression of Opinion 110.01
- Fraud 316.68
- Illegal Acts by Client 317.19
- Individual Financial Statement 508.05
- Lack of Independence 504.08–.10
- Negative Assurance 504.18
- Permission to Use Legal Opinion Not
 Granted 9336.21
- Piecemeal Opinion 508.64
- Principal Auditor's Report 543.11
- Reasons for Opinion 508.62
- Reports With Differing Opinions 508.67
- Scope Limitations 316.68
 - 333.13–.14;
 336.13; 508.22;
 508.24; 508.27;
 508.31; 508.61–.63;
 9326.06–.23; 9336.21
- Selected Financial Data 552.11
- Service Organizations 324.10;
 9324.35–.40
- Subsequent Events 530.03–.04
- Supplementary Information 551.06;
 551.10–.11;
 551.13; 551.15–.16;
 558.03; 558.10
- Unaudited Fair Value Disclosures . . . 9342.08
- Unaudited Financial
 Statements 504.05–.07
- Uncertainties 341.12

DISCLOSURE

- Accounting Changes 420.20–.21;
 9410.15–.18;
 9420.19–.20; 9420.69–.72
- Accounting Estimates 342.07

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

DISCLOSURE—continued

- Adequacy and Appropriateness of Informative Disclosure 311.06; 431.01–.04; 504.11–.12; 623.09–.10; 9623.60–.81; 9623.90–.95
- Adverse Opinions 508.59; 552.07
- Agreements to Repurchase Assets Previously Sold 333.17
- Assertions by Management 326.03–.08
- Basis of Accounting Other Than GAAP 410.02; 623.05; 623.09–.10; 9508.33–.37; 9623.53; 9623.60–.81; 9623.90–.95
- Capital Stock Repurchase Options, Agreements, Reservations 333.17
- Change in Auditor 317.23
- Change in Estimates 420.15
- Classification and Reclassifications 420.17
- Comparability 420.05
- Compensating Balances 333.17
- Compliance Reports 623.20
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.03–.04
- Consistency Standard 9420.69–.72
- Consolidating Financial Statements 551.20
- Contingencies, Gain or Loss 333.06; 333.16–.17
- Current-Value Financial Statements 9623.59
- Degree of Auditor's Responsibility Stated 550.07
- Elements of Financial Statements 623.15
- Environmental Remediation Liabilities 333.17
- Essential Information 508.41–.44; 9410.15–.18
- Evidential Matter 332.01
- Fair Value Audit Considerations 328.01–.51
- Fair Value—Performance and Reporting Guidance 9342.01–.10
- Fair Value—Testing Entity's Measurements and Disclosures 328.23–.42
- Financial Instruments With Off-Balance-Sheet Risk, Concentrations of Credit Risk 333.17
- Fourth Quarter Interim Data 9504.01–.07
- Fraud 316.79–.82
- Going Concern Assumption 341.10–.11; 341.14
- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.14–.15; 317.18; 317.23; 9333.01–.04
- Interim Financial Information 722.05; 722.15; 722.21; 722.24; 722.26; 722.41; 722.43–.45; 722.56
- Inventory Pricing Method Changed 9420.19–.20
- Investments 332.01; 332.05; 332.08; 332.11; 332.21–.22; 332.26; 332.34; 332.45; 332.49–.51; 332.57

DISCLOSURE—continued

- Letters for Underwriters 634.33; 634.49; 634.54–.62; 9634.13–.29
- Liabilities, Other 333.06; 333.16
- Liquidation Basis of Accounting 9337.31–.32; 9508.33–.37
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 333.06; 333.16; 337.05; 337.09; 337.13; 9337.04–.07; 9337.10–.18; 9337.24–.27; 9337.31–.32
- Loss Contingencies 9333.01–.04
- Loss Reserves (Insurance) 9623.40–.46
- Management Representations—See Representation Letters
- Market Risk 9634.13–.29
- Material Concentrations 333.06
- Notes to Financial Statements 508.21; 508.27–.28; 9623.61; 9623.65–.66; 9623.90–.95
- Oil and Gas Reserves 9558.01–.05
- Omission of Schedule of Investments 9508.76–.84
- Omission of Statements 508.43–.44
- Omitted Auditing Procedures 390.02
- Other Auditors—See Reports, Other Auditors'
- Other Information in Documents 550.01–.07
- Other Information in Electronic Sites Containing Audited Financial Statements 9550.16–.18
- Other Information Provided by Service Organizations 9324.57–.61; 9324.35–.40
- Pension Plans 9420.64–.65
- Pooling of Interests 420.08–.09
- Privileged Communication 315.06; 315.08; 315.25; 431.04
- Pro Forma Financial Data 560.05
- Qualified Opinion Illustration 508.39–.40; 508.42
- Qualified Opinions 552.05
- Reasonableness of Amounts 334.09
- Reissuance of Auditors' Reports 530.06–.08
- Related Parties 334.01; 334.04; 334.11–.12; 9334.17; 9334.22–.23
- Revision of Auditors' Reports 561.06–.09
- Risk of Projecting Effectiveness of Controls to Future Periods 9324.38–.40
- Segment Information 9326.28–.41
- Service Organizations 9324.57–.61; 9324.35–.40
- Service Organizations That Use the Services of Subservice Organizations 9324.10–.13
- Side Agreements 230.12
- Significant Estimates 333.06
- Standard of Reporting 150.02; 431.01

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

DISCLOSURE—continued

- Statutory Basis—Insurance Enterprises 9623.60–81
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 561.06–09; 711.12–13; 722.46
- Subsequent Discovery Prior to Issuance of Financial Statements .. 561.01
- Subsequent Events—See Subsequent Events
- Successor Auditor When Prior-Period Audited Financial Statements Were Audited by Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations 9508.60–74
- Supplementary Information 551.22; 9558.01–05
- Titles of Financial Statements 623.07
- Uncertainties 341.12; 508.45–46
- Updated Auditor's Report 508.69
- Use of Findings of Specialists ... 336.15–16
- Violations of Laws and Regulations 333.06; 333.16
- Written Representations From Management 722.24

DISCOVERY

- Communication Between Auditors 9543.15–17
- Comparison With Subsequent Events 561.03
- Date of Existence of Facts 561.04–05
- Disclosure of Subsequent Discovery 561.06–09; 711.12–13
- Financial Statements of Predecessor 315.21
- Illegal Acts—See Illegal Acts
- Lawyer's Advice 315.22; 561.02; 561.08; 711.12–13
- Reliability of Information 561.04–05
- Review of Interim Information 711.13
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 530.02; 561.01–10; 634.62; 722.46; 9508.60–74; 9561.01–02
- Subsequent Discovery of Material Misstatement 230.13

DIVISION FOR CPA FIRMS (AICPA)

- Inquiries Concerning Firms 543.10
- Peer Review Reports 543.10

DOCUMENTATION—See Audit Documentation

DUE PROFESSIONAL CARE

- Definition 230.05
- Fraud 230.10; 230.12–13; 316.13
- General Standard 150.02; 230.01–13
- Judgment 230.11
- Knowledge 230.06–07
- Professional Skepticism 230.07–09
- Reasonable Assurance 230.10–13
- Responsibilities of Assistant for Audit Disagreements 9311.35–37
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 230.13

E

EARNED SURPLUS—See Retained Earnings

EARNINGS

- Forecast 334.06

ECONOMIC ACTIVITY

- Relation to Audit Objectives 326.09

ECONOMIC CONDITIONS

- Inventory Valuation Methods 9420.16
- Planning of Audit Work 311.07
- Timing of Substantive Tests 313.06

EDP—See Data Processing

EDP SERVICE CENTER—See Service Organizations

EDUCATION AND TRAINING—See Training and Education

EFFECTIVENESS

- Audit Sampling 350.46
- Auditing Procedures 350.13–14
- Control Environment 319.71
- Financial Statements, Unaudited 504.05–17
- Internal Control 312.27; 312.30; 319.03–04; 319.06; 319.12; 319.24; 319.27; 319.44; 319.64–66; 319.68; 319.70; 319.73; 319.75–77; 319.79; 319.83; 319.85–86
- Evidential Matter ... 319.92–96; 319.98; 319.100; 319.103
- Information Technology ... 319.18; 319.79
- Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 9550.07–15
- Inventory Counting Procedures 9508.05–06
- Substantive Tests ... 313.05–06; 326.11; 350.13; 9326.01–05

EFFICIENCY

- Audit Sample 350.05; 350.13; 350.46
- EDP Applications 311.09
- Substantive Tests ... 326.11; 9326.01–05

ELECTRONIC SITE—See Information Technology (IT)

ELEMENTS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Adequacy of Disclosure and Presentation in Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting 9623.90–95
- Applicability of Auditing Standards ... 552.09
- Based Upon Net Income or Stockholders' Equity 623.16
- Departure From Standard Report ... 623.17
- Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures—See Agreed-Upon Procedures
- Examples 623.11
- Form of Auditor's Report 623.15
- Illustrations 623.18
- Loss Reserves (Insurance) ... 9623.40–46

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

ELEMENTS OF FINANCIAL

STATEMENTS—continued

- Materiality 623.13
- Piecemeal Opinions 623.14
- Restricted-Use Reports 532.04;
 532.07–.11; 532.15; 623.15
- Special Reports 623.11–.18

EMPHASIS OF A MATTER

- Accounting Change 9410.18
- Explanatory Language 508.19; 623.31
- Financial Statements 508.19
- Unqualified Opinion 508.19; 9342.03

EMPLOYEES

- Communication of Audit
 Disagreements 9311.35–.37
- Definition 311.02
- Fraud 316.07–.11; 316.20;
 316.35; 316.72; 316.76; 316.79;
 316.86; 333.06; 333.08; 333.16
- Illegal Acts 317.02
- Internal Auditors 322.01–.29
- Legal Counsel 337.08
- Nonaudit Services 9311.01–.03
- Pensions—See Pension Plans
- Planning of Audit
 Work 311.04; 9311.01–.03
- Source of Audit Information 311.04;
 311.08; 324.36
- Supervision of Audit
 Information 311.01–.02; 311.11–.14;
 9311.35–.37
- Supplementary Information 551.11

ENGAGEMENT

- Attestation—See Attest Engagements
- Audit—See Audit Engagement
- Reports on Application of Accounting
 Principles 625.01–.11
- Reports on Condensed Financial
 Statements 552.04
- Reports on Selected Financial
 Data 552.09–.10
- Service Organizations—See Service
 Organizations

ENGAGEMENT LETTERS

- Elements of Financial Statements 310.05
- Matters Communicated in 310.05–.07
- Recipients of Governmental Financial
 Assistance 310.05
- Review of Interim
 Information 310.05; 722.08–.09

ENGINEERS

- SEC Filings 711.02
- Use of Work by Auditors 336.02; 336.07

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

- Use of Work by Auditors 336.02; 336.07

EQUITY METHOD

- Investments, Auditing 332.04; 332.28–.29;
 332.34; 332.56–.57
- Related Parties 334.01
- Reports, Other Auditors 543.14
- Unaudited Information 508.27

ERROR CORRECTION—See Correction of Error

ERRORS—See Fraud

ESTIMATION

- Analytical Procedures 342.08–.14
- Audit Risk 312.27
- Auditor's Professional Skepticism 342.04
- Best Estimate of Misstatement 722.25
- Changes 420.15
- Communication to Audit Committee 380.08
- Developments of Estimates 342.05–.06
- Disclosure 342.07; 9342.01–.10
- Evaluation by Auditor 311.06; 312.36;
 342.01–.16; 9312.04–.09
- Evidential Matter 312.36; 342.07–.14
- Examples 342.02; 342.16
- Fair Value 328.08; 328.19;
 328.24; 328.27;
 328.40; 328.44
- Fair Value Disclosures 9342.01–.10
- Historical Financial Statements 342.01–.02
- Income Tax Accruals 9326.06–.23
- Independent Fair Value Estimates 328.40
- Interim Information 313.09;
 9326.01–.05
- Interim v. Annual Data 9326.01–.05
- Internal Controls 342.06
- Knowledge 342.08–.10
- Loss Reserve (Insurance) 9623.46
- Management Judgments 380.08
- Materiality 342.14
- Misstatements 312.25; 312.34–.36;
 9312.04–.09
- Oil and Gas Reserves 9558.02–.04
- Potential Losses 337.04; 337.09;
 337.14; 9337.12
- Prepared in Accordance With
 GAAP 342.07
- Professional Skepticism 342.07–.14
- Qualitative Considerations in Evaluating
 Misstatements 312.34
- Quantitative Considerations in Evaluating
 Misstatements 312.34
- Reasonableness 312.36
- Representation Letter 342.09
- Risk 342.14
- Sampling—See Audit Sampling
- Specialists 342.11
- Subsequent Events 342.13
- Uncertainties 312.36; 337.14;
 508.48–.49

ETHICS DIVISION—See Professional Ethics Division

EVENTS

- Auditor's Consideration of Management's
 Adoption of Accounting Principles for
 New Types 9411.11–.15
- Illegal Acts by Clients 9317.01–.06;
 9333.01–.04
- Subsequent—See Subsequent Events

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

EVIDENTIAL MATTER

· Accounting Estimates	342.07–14
· Analytical Procedures	326.19–20; 329.02–23
· Assertions	319.03–04; 319.27–28; 319.62–64; 319.70–73; 319.75–76; 319.80–83; 330.11–14
· Audit Documentation	9326.06–23
· Audit Objectives	326.09–14; 326.22; 326.25–26; 9326.01–05
· Audit Sampling	350.03–06; 350.16; 350.19; 350.45–46; 9350.02
· Basis for Auditor's Opinion	319.28; 322.02; 322.18; 326.01–26; 9326.01–23
· Change of Auditors	315.12; 315.17–18
· Competence	312.12; 326.01–02; 326.11–12; 326.21; 350.06; 9326.01–05
· Completeness	319.62; 326.03–05; 326.09–11; 330.13–14; 9326.24–27
· Confirmations	150.02; 326.17; 330.06–14; 330.29; 330.33; 350.04
· Control Risk	312.30; 319.62; 319.66–68; 319.80; 319.84–86; 319.90–104
· Support of Assessed Level	319.90–104
· Cost-Benefit Relationships	326.23–24
· Definition	326.15
· Disclaimer of Opinion	326.25; 508.63; 9326.06–23
· Effects of Information Technology	326.12
· Electronic Form	326.18
· Estimation	312.36
· Evaluation	312.19; 326.25
· Events Affecting Prior Periods	508.72
· First Year Audits	420.24–25
· Going Concern Assumption	341.02–03; 341.08
· Illegal Acts by Clients	317.08–11; 317.19
· Income Tax Accruals	9326.06–23
· Inquiries	150.02; 326.17–20; 350.04; 9326.06–23
· Inside Counsel of Client	9337.24–27
· Insufficient	508.24; 9336.15
· Interim Financial Information	313.07
· Interim Financial Statements	9326.01–05
· Internal Audit Function	322.07; 322.17
· Internal Control	326.11–14
· Interrelationship	319.100–104
· Inventories	310.04; 326.04; 326.09; 326.26; 331.01–02; 331.09–14; 901.03; 9508.02
· Investments	
· Categories	332.01
· Completeness Assertions	332.24
· Control Risk, Assessment of	332.16–18
· Evaluating Management's Intent and Ability	332.57

EVIDENTIAL MATTER—continued

· Hedging Activities	332.53–54
· Valuation	332.28–29; 332.41–43; 332.46
· Judgment	350.06
· Legal v. Audit Evidence	326.02
· Litigation, Claims, and Assessments	337.04; 337.08; 337.13; 9337.08–09; 9337.11–27
· Material Misstatements	312.19–20; 312.33; 312.36–38; 326.11; 9312.01–17
· Materiality	312.12; 312.19–20; 326.11; 9312.01–17; 9326.01–23
· Nature	326.15–20
· Omitted Auditing Procedures	390.03–07
· Planning	312.12–20; 312.33
· Professional Skepticism	230.07–09
· Qualified Opinion	326.25; 508.20; 9326.06–23
· Reasonable Assurance	230.10–13
· Receivables	331.01–08
· Records	326.16–20
· Related Party Transactions	334.09–11
· Relation to Comprehensive Basis of Accounting Other Than GAAP	326.25
· Relation to GAAP	326.25
· Relation to Risk	312.12; 312.19; 312.30; 312.33; 313.07
· Relevance	326.11; 326.21
· Reliability	326.15–22
· Reports, Other Auditors	543.14; 9543.18–20
· Representations From Management	326.03–08; 326.17; 326.22; 333.02–04; 9326.06–27
· Restricted Use	9336.16–21
· Scope Limitation	508.22–25; 508.29–32; 9326.06–23
· Segment Information	9326.28–41
· Service Organizations	324.10; 342.12; 324.16–17; 324.27
· Source	319.94–95
· Standards of Field Work	150.02; 326.01; 9326.01–23
· Substantive Tests	313.07; 326.09–13; 326.26; 350.16–30
· Sufficiency	312.25; 319.28; 326.13–14; 326.22–24; 350.46; 9336.09–17
· Tests of Controls	319.04; 319.75–76; 319.84–85
· Timeliness	319.96–99; 326.02; 326.23
· Transfer of Financial Assets	9336.01–21
· Type	319.92–93
· Uncertainties	337.14
· Use of Legal Interpretations to Support That Transfer of Assets Has Met Isolation Criteria in FASB Statement No. 140	9336.01–21

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

FAIR VALUE—continued

- Significant Assumptions 328.04–.05;
 328.12; 328.23–.24;
 328.26–.40; 328.44;
 328.48; 328.50
- Specialist, Engagement of 328.05;
 328.20–.22;
 328.39
- Subsequent Events and
 Transactions 328.23; 328.41–.42;
 328.49
- Testing Data Used to Develop
 Fair Value Measurements 328.39–.40
- Testing Entity's Measurements and
 Disclosures 328.23–.25
- Underlying Data 328.26–.40
- Valuation Model 328.08; 328.23;
 328.26–.39

FAMILY RELATIONSHIPS

- Related Parties 334.01

FEDERAL DEPOSIT INSURANCE ACT

- Regulation Governing Receivership
 Issued by FDIC 9336.14
- Transfer of Assets Under
 Receivership 9336.14

FEDERAL DEPOSIT INSURANCE

**CORPORATION (FDIC)—See Federal
 Deposit Insurance Act**

**FEDERAL FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE—See
 Compliance Auditing**

**FEDERAL INCOME TAXES—See Income
 Taxes**

**FIELD WORK—See Standards of Field Work,
 Audit**

**FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING STANDARDS
 BOARD**

- Accounting for Contingencies 337.03;
 337.05; 337.09; 337B;
 9317.06; 9333.01–.04;
 9337.07; 9337.11;
 9337.13; 9337.16–.17;
 9337.19; 9337.32
- Effective Date of Statements 9410.13–.18
- Management Representations 333.06;
 333.16–.17
- Related Party Disclosure 334.01–.12
- Research and Development
 Costs 9410.14; 9410.16
- Supplementary
 Information 551.15; 558.01–.11

**FINANCIAL INFORMATION—See Financial
 Statements**

FINANCIAL POSITION

- Condensed Financial
 Statements 552.03–.04

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Accounting
 Estimates 342.01–.16; 9312.04–.09
- Adequate Disclosure 431.01–.04;
 623.09–.10; 9623.90–.95
- Audit Risk and Materiality 312.01–.42
- Audited 504.04; 504.14–.17;
 508.01–.76; 9508.56–.74;
 9550.16–.18
- Auditor's Consideration of Internal Audit
 Function 322.01–.29
- Auditor's Responsibilities 110.02–.03;
 504.01–.04; 508.04–.05; 550.04;
 551.04–.11; 558.04–.05; 9550.16–.18
- Audits at Interim Dates 313.01–.02
- Balance Sheets—See Statements of
 Financial Position
- Basic 508.06; 551.02;
 9508.56–.59
- Basis of Accounting
 Other Than GAAP 623.02–.10;
 9623.47–.53; 9623.90–.95
- Cash Basis Statements—See Special
 Reports
- Change of Auditors 315.01–.25
- Changes, Accounting—See Changes,
 Accounting
- Co-Existing Statements 551.22
- Combined—See Combined Financial
 Statements
- Comparability—See Comparability
- Comparative—See Comparative Financial
 Statements
- Compliance Reports 623.19–.21
- Compliance With U.S. and International
 Standards 9508.56–.59
- Components 543.01–.02; 551.17–.20;
 9543.04–.07
- Condensed—See Condensed Financial
 Statements
- Conformity With GAAP 326.25;
 411.01–.18; 9623.49
- Conformity With SEC
 Requirements 9634.03
- Consistency—See Consistency
- Consolidated—See Consolidated Financial
 Statements
- Consolidating—See Consolidating Financial
 Statements
- Current Value—See Current-Value Financial
 Statements
- Date of Auditor's Report 530.01–.08
- Date of Issuance of Related
 Financial Statements 530.03–.05
- Definition 623.02
- Departure From GAAP 508.14–.15;
 508.20; 508.68–.69;
 544.02–.04; 9623.47–.53
- Disclosures—See Disclosure
- Effect of Laws on Governmental
 Entity 801.03–.07
- Effect of Misstatements 312.04
- Effects of EDP on Audit 311.09

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS—continued

- Effects of Substantial Doubt in Going Concern Assumption 341.10–.11
- Estimated Amounts 9312.04–.09
- Elements—See Elements of Financial Statements
- Fair Presentation 110.01; 312.03–.04; 312.12; 312.34; 326.19; 411.01–.18; 504.03; 634.60
- Fair Statement of Certain Other Information, Opinion on 550.07
- FIFO to LIFO Change 9420.19
- Going Concern Assumption 341.01–.18; 9341.01–.02
- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.01–.25; 9317.03–.06; 9333.01–.04
- Inadequate Disclosure 508.41–.42
- Income Statements—See Statements of Income
- Income Taxes 9326.06–.23
- Incomplete Presentation 9623.82–.86
- Interim—See Interim Financial Statements
- Internal Audit Function, Relevance 322.06–.08
- Internal Control—See Internal Control
- Investors 9420.52–.54
- Investments, Assertions 332.21–.51
- Investments, Auditing 332.01–.59
- Items Requiring Adjustments 311.03
- Lack of Independence 9504.19–.22
- Letters for Underwriters 634.01–.64
- Liquidation Basis of Accounting 9508.33–.37
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 337.01–.14; 9337.01–.32
- Management’s Responsibilities 110.03; 504.03; 9508.51–.52
- Material Misstatements 312.02–.11; 312.19; 312.24–.25; 312.27; 312.34; 319.55; 350.18; 350.30; 350.48; 551.09; 9312.01–.17; 9550.09; 9550.13–.15
- Misleading—See Misleading Financial Statements
- Nonprofit Organizations 508.65; 550.02; 9623.47–.53
- Notes—See Notes to Financial Statements
- Objective of Audit 110.01; 558.04–.05; 722.07; 722.09; 722.12; 722.35; 722.37–.40
- Omitted Auditing Procedures 390.01–.08
- Opinions—See Opinions, Auditors’
- Other Information in Documents 380.12; 550.01–.07; 551.04; 9550.13–.15
- Other Information in Electronic Sites Containing Audited Financial Statements 9550.16–.18
- Pension Plans 9420.64–.65
- Preparation 110.03
- Prepared for Use in Another Country 534.01–.16; 9534.01–.04

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS—continued

- Prescribed Forms 623.32–.33
- Prior Period Audited by Predecessor Auditor 9508.60–.74
- Prior Period Compiled 504.17
- Prior Period Reviewed 504.17
- Prior Year’s
- Departure From GAAP 508.68–.69
- Planning of Audit Work 312.23
- Predecessor Auditor 508.70–.74
- Responsibility Assumed 504.16
- Pro Forma—See Pro Forma Financial Statements
- Prospective—See Prospective Financial Statements
- Publicly-Traded Companies 9504.01–.07
- Reclassifications 420.16
- Reissuance of Report 504.15; 508.65; 508.70–.74; 530.06–.08; 560.08; 561.06
- Related Party Transactions 334.01; 334.04; 334.09–.12; 9334.16–.23
- Reliance on Statements 312.10; 561.05–.09
- Representations of Management 326.03–.08; 326.20; 333.02; 333.04–.06; 333.08–.12; 333.14; 333.16–.18; 9326.01–.05; 9508.51–.52
- Restatement—See Restatements
- Revisions Required 561.06–.09
- SEC Filings 311.03; 504.14; 550.02–.03; 561.03; 711.01–.13; 9634.01–.09; 9711.01–.11
- Segments of a Business—See Segment Information
- Special Reports—See Special Reports
- Special-Purpose 623.22–.30; 9623.82–.86
- Statements of Retained Earnings—See Statements of Retained Earnings
- Stockholders’ Equity Changes 508.06
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 561.01–.10; 9561.01–.02
- Subsequent Discovery Prior to Issuance of Financial Statements 561.01
- Subsequent Events Prior to Issuance of Financial Statements 561.01
- Subsequent Events—See Subsequent Events
- Subsequent Period Unaudited 504.16
- Subsidiaries 333.11
- Supplementary Information—See Supplementary Financial Information
- Titles of Statements 623.07; 623.24
- Types 623.02
- Unaudited—See Unaudited Financial Statements
- Unaudited Information—See Unaudited Information
- Uncertainty—See Uncertainties

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS—continued

- Updating Reports 508.65–.66;
..... 508.68–.69
- Use of Accountant's Name 504.03–.04
- Use of Findings of Specialists ... 336.12–.16
- Weaknesses in Internal
Control..... 9317.03–.06
- Written Representations
From Management..... 722.24

FINES—See Penalties

FIRM

- Income Tax Accruals 9326.06–.23
- Inquiries Concerning Firms 543.10
- Merger With Another Firm .. 508.65; 508.74
- Personnel—See Employees
- Quality Control 161.01–.03
- Work of Other Auditors 543.05

FIRST-IN, FIRST-OUT

- Effect of Change in Method 9420.16–.20

FISCAL PERIOD

- Interim—See Interim Financial Statements

FIXED ASSETS—See Property

FOOTNOTES—See Notes to Financial Statements

FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES ACT OF 1977

- Compliance Reports 9634.03
- Scope of Audit 9317.01–.02
- Weaknesses in Internal Control .. 9317.03–.06

FOREIGN COUNTRY

- Accounting Principles 534.01–.16;
..... 9534.01–.04
- Auditing Standards 534.01–.16;
..... 9508.56–.59; 9534.01–.04
- Compliance With U.S. and International
Standards 9508.56–.59
- Reporting on Financial
Statements ... 534.01–.16; 9534.01–.04
- Use of Specialist..... 534.05–.06; 534.12

FORGERY—See Fraud

FORM 10-K (SEC)

- Auditor's Report 9508.60–.74;
..... 9634.01–.09
- Negative Assurance 9634.06
- Regulation S-K..... 9634.06
- Shelf Registration Statements 9711.07;
..... 9711.10

FORM 10-Q (SEC)

- Condensed Financial Statements 552.08
- Review of Interim Information 552.08;
..... 711.09; 722.05
- Shelf Registration Statements ... 9711.08–.11

FORM 990 (INTERNAL REVENUE)

- Nonprofit Organizations..... 9623.47–.53

FORM V. SUBSTANCE—See Substance V. Form

FORWARD-LOOKING INFORMATION

- Service Organizations 9324.35–.40

FRAUD

- Analytical Procedures 316.28–.30
- Antifraud Guidance and Programs ... 316.86
- Assessing Identified Risks 316.43–.45
- Assessment of the Risk of Material
Misstatement 312.16; 316.02;
..... 316.13; 316.45;
..... 316.50; 316.61;
..... 316.76
- Assets, Susceptibility to
Misappropriation..... 316.85–.86
- Audit Planning 316.02; 316.28;
..... 316.69; 316.83
- Audit Procedures Modification 316.52
- Audit Tests 316.51–.53
- Auditor's Consideration of 316.83
- Auditor's Interest 312.07; 316.05
- Auditor's Opinion 316.86
- Auditor's Responsibilities 316.01–.86
- Changes in Assessment, Conditions
Resulting in..... 316.68
- Characteristics of 230.12; 316.05–.12
- Collusion 230.12; 316.10;
..... 316.43; 316.86
- Communication With
Audit Committee..... 316.79–.82
- Communication With
Management..... 316.79–.82
- Communication With Third
Parties 316.79–.82
- Concealment 316.86
- Confidential Client
Information..... 316.82
- Consideration in
Financial Statement Audit 316.01–.86
- Considerations at the Account Balance or
Class of Transaction Level 316.34
- CPA's Handbook of Fraud and
Commercial Crime Prevention..... 316.86
- Definitions..... 316.05–.12
- Description and Characteristics ... 312.07;
..... 316.05–.12
- Deterrence 316.86
- Disclosures 316.79–.82
- Distinguishing Factor 312.07; 316.05
- Documenting 316.83
- Due Professional Care..... 316.13
- Employees..... 316.07–.11; 316.20;
..... 316.35; 316.72; 316.76;
..... 316.79; 316.86
- Evaluation of 316.43–.45; 316.68–.78
- Evaluation of the Entity's
Controls..... 316.43–.45
- Examples of Risk Factors..... 316.85
- Fraudulent Financial Reporting 316.54;
..... 316.85
- Guidance to Prevent and Deter..... 316.86
- Identified Risks ... 316.34–.42; 316.51–.56
- Improper Revenue Recognition..... 316.41
- Industry Conditions 316.85
- Inquiries to Management 316.20–.27
- Inquiries to Related Parties ... 316.24–.26
- Intent..... 316.05; 316.11

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

GOING CONCERN

- Audit Documentation 341.17
- Audit Procedures 341.05;
. 9341.01–.02
- Auditors' Report Explanatory
Language 341.13; 623.31;
. 9341.01–.02
- Auditors' Reports 341.03; 9341.01–.02
- Auditors' Responsibility 341.02–.04;
. 9341.01–.02
- Comparative Financial
Statements 341.15–.16
- Conditions and Events 341.06
- Contrary Information 341.01
- Disclaimer of Opinion 341.12
- Disclosure 341.10–.11; 341.14
- Effect on Auditors' Reports 341.12–.16
- Financial Statement Effects 341.10–.11
- Indications of Financial Difficulties . . 341.06
- Management Plans 341.03; 341.07–.09
- Negative Trends 341.06
- Prospective Financial
Information 341.09–.10
- Uncertainties 623.31

GOVERNMENTAL ACCOUNTING STANDARDS BOARD

- Supplementary
Information 551.15; 558.01–.11

GOVERNMENTAL AGENCIES

- Disclosure of Illegal Acts 317.23
- Litigation, Claims, and
Assessments 337.07
- SEC—See Securities and Exchange
Commission
- Summarized Prior Period
Information 508.65

GOVERNMENTAL AUDITING STANDARDS

- Definition 801.08–.09
- Description 801.02

GOVERNMENTAL ENTITIES

- Compliance Auditing Considerations—See
Compliance Auditing
- Sources of Established
Principles 411.12–.15; 411.18

GRANTS

- Compliance Auditing Applicable to
Federal Financial
Assistance 801.04; 801.07–.08;
. 801.15

GUARANTEES AND WARRANTIES

- Future Events 312.36
- Litigation, Claims, and
Assessments 337.07
- Related Party Transactions 334.08;
. 334.10

GUIDELINES

- Audit Documentation 9326.06–.23
- Supplementary Information 551.06;
. 551.15–.16;
. 558.06

H

HEDGING—See Investments

HIERARCHY OF GAAP

- Sources of Established Accounting
Principles 411.05–.15
- Sources of Established Principles 411.18

HISTORICAL COST

- Basis for Property 326.07
- Supplemental Current Cost Financial
Statements 9623.55–.59

HISTORICAL SUMMARIES

- Relation to Basic Financial
Statements 551.03

I

ILLEGAL ACTS

- Analytical Procedures . . . 317.07–.11; 317.24
- Attest Engagement 317.24
- Audit Opinion 317.18–.21
- Audit Procedures 317.09–.11
- Auditor's Responsibilities . . . 316.01; 316.82;
. 316.86; 317.01–.25
- Communication With Audit
Committee 317.17; 722.32
- Confidentiality 317.23
- Definition 317.02
- Direct Effect on Financial
Statements 317.05; 317.07
- Disclosures 317.14–.15; 317.18;
. 317.23
- Effects on Auditor's Report 317.18–.21
- Evaluation of Materiality 9333.01–.04
- Evidential Matter 317.08–.11; 317.19
- Examples 317.09
- Fraud, Characteristics of 230.12
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act . . 9317.01–.06
- Generally Accepted Audited
Standards 317.07–.08
- Implications for Audit 317.16
- Indirect Effect on Financial
Statements 317.06–.07
- Inquiries 317.08; 317.10
- Knowledge 317.03
- Laws and Regulations 317.05–.06
- Lawyers 317.03
- Management
Representations 333.06;
. 9333.01–.04
- Materiality 317.04–.06; 317.13–.15;
. 317.18
- Other Responsibilities 317.24
- Service Organizations 324.23
- Specialists 317.03; 317.10–.12;
. 317.22–.23
- Successor Auditor 317.23

ILLUSTRATIONS

- Accounting Estimates 342.16
- Accounts Receivable Report 623.18
- Adverse Opinions 508.60; 552.07

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

ILLUSTRATIONS—continued

- Analytical Procedures . . . 329.04–.05; 329.07; 329.12; 329.14–.15
- Audit Sampling 350.17; 350.26; 350.41; 350.48
- Balance-Sheet-Only Auditor's Report 508.34
- Cash Basis Statements 504.07; 623.08
- Change in Accounting Principle 508.17; 9420.19
- Change in Inventory Pricing Method 9420.19
- Compliance Reports 623.21; 9623.42
- Compliance With U.S. and International Standards 9508.56–.59
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.06–.08
- Consolidated Financial Statements 552.07; 552.10
- Consolidating Information 551.19
- Date of Auditor's Report 530.05; 530.08
- Description of Controls . . . 9324.38; 9324.40
- Disclaimer of Opinion
- Evidential Matter 508.63
- Lack of Independence 504.10
- Opening Inventory Not Observed . . . 508.67
- Scope Limitations 508.63
- Service Auditor 9324.35–.40
- Supplementary Information 558.03; 558.08–.11
- Unaudited Financial Statements 504.05
- Unaided Matter for Inventories 326.26
- Examples of Fraud Risk Factors 316.85
- Explanatory Language Added to Auditor's Standard Report 508.13; 508.17; 532.18; 9508.59; 9508.88; 9508.92; 9550.10
- Explanatory Paragraph for Uncertainty 341.13
- Explanatory Paragraphs 558.08
- FIFO to LIFO Change 9420.19
- Going Concern Explanatory Paragraph 341.13
- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.09; 317.14
- Income Tax Basis Statements 623.08
- Independent Accountant's Report 722.38–.40
- Inquiry Letter to Legal Counsel 337.05; 337A.01; 9337.04–.07; 9337.10–.16
- Inquiry Letter to Other Auditor . . . 9543.08–.10
- Lawyer's Evaluation of Pending Litigation 9337.20–.23
- Letter to Regulator 9339.06
- Letters for Underwriters 634.16; 634.19; 634.26; 634.31–.33; 634.61; 634.64; 9634.29
- Liquidation Basis Reports 9508.36–.37
- Loss Reserves (Insurance). 9623.42
- Management Plans Relating to Going Concern Assumption 341.07
- Management Representations Regarding Fraud 333.06; 333.16

ILLUSTRATIONS—continued

- Modification of the Accountant's Review Report 722.42–.45
- Oil and Gas Reserve Information 9558.05
- Predecessor's Report Not Presented 508.74
- Principal Auditor 543.09; 543.16
- Profit Participation Report 623.18
- Qualified Opinions
- Accounting Change 508.52
- Departure From GAAP 508.39–.40
- Inadequate Disclosure 508.42
- Omission of Statement of Cash Flows 508.44
- Scope Limitation 508.26
- Regulatory Agency Report . . . 623.08; 623.26; 9623.42; 9623.97
- Related Parties 334.01; 334.03
- Rental Computation Report 623.18
- Report Based on Compliance With Contractual Agreement 623.26
- Reporting on Internal Control 325.12; 325.16; 9325.04
- Reporting on Supplementary Information 551.12–.16; 558.08
- Reports Following Pooling of Interests 543.16
- Reports on Application of Accounting Principles 625.11
- Reports on Comparative Financial Statements 508.08
- Reports on Current-Value Financial Statements Supplementing Historical-Cost Financial Statements 9623.58
- Reports on Financial Statements for Use Outside United States 534.10
- Reports Prepared Pursuant to Loan Agreements 623.30
- Reports With Differing Opinions 508.67; 508.69
- Representation Letters 333.16–.18
- Response to Inquiry by Principal Auditor 9543.11–.14
- Review of Interim Information 552.08; 711.09; 722.38–.40; 722.42; 722.45; 722.56
- Royalties Report 623.18
- Selected Financial Data 552.10
- Service Organization Reports 324.38–.40; 324.54–.56; 9324.16; 9324.18
- Special Purpose Financial Statements 623.26; 9623.52
- Special Reports 623.08; 623.18; 623.21; 623.26; 623.30
- Standard Report 508.08; 9508.59
- Substance v. Form 334.02
- Successor Auditor When Prior-Period Audited Financial Statements Were Audited by Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations 9508.60–.74

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

ILLUSTRATIONS—continued

- Transfer of Assets Under Receivership Under FDIC 9336.14
- Transfer of Assets Under U.S. Bankruptcy Code 9336.13
- Unqualified Opinion 508.08; 508.34; 508.69; 552.06

IMPAIRMENT

- Losses, Investments .. 332.26–27; 332.31; 332.33; 332.46–48
- Objectivity of Specialist 336.10–11
- Substantive Tests 313.05

INCOME STATEMENTS—See Statements of Income**INCOME TAX RETURNS—See Tax Returns****INCOME TAXES**

- Basis of Accounting 9623.47–53
- Evidential Matter 9326.06–23
- Form 990—See Form 990 (Internal Revenue)
- Interim Financial Information. . . 9326.01–05
- Rates—See Rates (Income Taxes)
- Special Reports 9623.47–53
- Technical Training 9326.06–23
- Uncertainties 9326.06–23

INDEPENDENCE

- Client's Legal Counsel 337.08
- General Standard 150.02; 220.01–07; 504.08
- Lack of Independence 504.08–10
- Other Auditors 543.04; 543.10
- Qualifications of Auditor 634.18; 634.31–32
- Reporting Requirements 9504.19–22
- SEC Requirements 220.05; 9634.09
- Specialist Employed by Auditor's Firm 336.03

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR—See Auditor, Independent**INDUSTRY ACCOUNTING GUIDES—See Accounting Guides, Industry****INDUSTRY AUDIT GUIDES—See Audit Guides, Industry****INDUSTRY PRACTICES**

- Relation to Evidential Matter. 326.09

INFORMATION

- Availability 326.12
- Communication Between Auditors 543.10; 550.04; 9334.12–15; 9543.01–17
- Communication When No Audit Committee Exists 9380.02–03
- Communication With Audit Committee 380.01–17
- Confidential—See Confidential Client Information

INFORMATION—continued

- Consistency of Other Information 550.04–07; 9550.13; 9634.04
- Consolidating—See Consolidating Information
- Description of Tests of Operating Effectiveness and the Results of Such Tests 9324.01–03
- Discovery 561.04–05
- Discovery by Successor Auditor 315.21
- Electronic Form 326.14
- Essential for Fair Presentation ... 508.41–42; 9410.15–16
- Evidential Matter 326.15–22
- Fair Statement of Certain Other Information, Opinion on 550.07
- Illegal Acts by Clients 9333.01–04
- Income Tax Accruals 9326.06–23
- Interim—See Interim Financial Information
- Legal Advice 550.05–07
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 337.05–06; 337.08; 9337.01–32
- Material Misstatements—See Materiality
- Oil and Gas Reserves 9558.01–05
- Omission by Management 431.03
- Other Information in Electronic Sites Containing Audited Financial Statements 9550.16–18
- Planning of Audit Work 311.03–10; 312.33
- Prescribed Report Forms .. 623.05; 623.15; 623.20; 623.25; 623.29; 623.32–33
- Related Parties 334.11
- Relationship to Audited Financial Statements 508.11; 550.01–04
- Reliability 550.04–07; 561.04–05; 561.09
- Reports to Stockholders 550.02
- Segment—See Segment Information
- Sources—See Sources of Information
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 561.01–10
- Subservice Organization 9324.08–13
- Supplementary—See Supplementary Financial Information
- Supplementary Information Required by GAAP 558.02
- Systems—See Data Processing
- Unaudited—See Unaudited Information
- Voluntary Disclosure 558.02

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY (IT)

- Auditor's Responsibilities 9550.16–18
- Information and Communication 319.47–52
- Information System 319.110

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY (IT)—continued

- Internal Control 319.02; 319.16–20;
 319.21; 319.26;
 319.30–32; 319.36;
 319.39; 319.43–44;
 319.46; 319.50; 319.51; 319.57;
 319.61; 319.67; 319.69; 319.78–79;
 319.85; 319.110
- Effect on Auditor's
 Consideration 319.02; 319.16–20
- Other Information in Electronic Sites
 Containing Audited Financial
 Statements 9550.16–18

INQUIRIES

- Analytical Procedures 329.21
- Audit Procedure 333.02–.03; 333.06
- Change of Client's Lawyers 337.11
- Competence of Other Auditors 543.10–11
- Current Business
 Developments 311.04; 311.08
- Evidential Matter 150.02; 326.17–20;
 350.04; 9326.06–23
- Illegal Act Detection 9317.03–.06;
 9333.01–.04
- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.08; 317.10
- Illustrative Inquiry
 Letter to Legal Counsel 337A.01;
 9337.04–.07
- Internal Audit Function 322.05
- Letter to Other Auditor 9543.08–10
- Letters for Underwriters 634.23–.24;
 634.45
- Litigation, Claims, and
 Assessments 337.01–14; 722.20;
 9337.01–.32
- Oil and Gas Reserve
 Information 9558.03–.05
- Qualifications of Specialists 336.05
- Related Party Transactions 9334.12–13
- Response by Principal
 Auditor 9543.11–17
- Review of Interim
 Information 722.04; 722.07;
 722.09–12; 722.15–16;
 722.18; 722.20–22; 722.38–40
- Subsequent Events 560.12; 711.10
- Supplementary
 Information 558.07; 9558.03–.05
- Unasserted Claims 337.05–.06;
 9337.06–.07

INSTITUTE—See American Institute of CPAs

INSURANCE COMPANIES

- Appropriateness of Informative
 Disclosures 9623.60–81
- Filing With Regulatory
 Agencies 544.02; 9623.40–46
- Loss Reserves 9623.40–46

INTENTIONAL MISSTATEMENT—See Fraud

INTERCOMPANY TRANSACTIONS

- Audit of Intercompany
 Balances 9334.14–15;
 9543.01–.03
- Communication Between
 Auditors 543.10; 543.17
- Related Parties 334.09–10

INTERIM FINANCIAL INFORMATION

- Accompanying Audited Financial
 Statements 722.49–50
- Accountant's Review Report 722.37–46
- Analytical Procedures 722.15–23
- Applicability 722.05–.06
- Audit Sampling 350.39
- Audit Tests Prior to Balance
 Sheet Date 313.01–10
- Best Estimate of Misstatement 722.25
- Changes in Business Activities 722.11
- Communication 722.08; 722.13;
 722.28–36
- Comparability With Year-End
 Information 313.08
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.08
- Consistency 722.17; 722.41
- Cutoffs 313.07; 313.09–10
- Definition 722.02
- Departure From GAAP 711.13; 722.21;
 722.42–43
- Design of Substantive Tests 313.08
- Entity's Business,
 Accountant's Knowledge of 722.10–14
- Establishing an Understanding With
 the Client 722.08–.09
- Estimation 313.09
- Evidential Matter 313.07
- Financial Statements—See Interim Financial
 Statements
- Income Taxes 9326.01–.05
- Inquiries of Client's
 Lawyers 722.20
- Internal Control, Accountant's
 Knowledge of 722.10–14
- Investees 722.18
- Letters for Underwriters 634.29–30;
 634.35; 634.37–38; 634.40–41;
 634.46
- Material Misstatements 313.03; 313.09;
 722.09–12; 722.16;
 722.18; 722.24–27;
 722.32; 722.34;
 722.54; 722.56
- Objective of a Review 722.07
- Other Information in
 Documents 722.18
- Presentation 722.18
- Representation Letters 333.17
- Review—See Review of Interim Financial
 Information
- SEC Filings 552.08
- Subsequent Discovery of
 Facts 722.46
- Subsequent Events 722.24; 722.37;
 722.46
- Substantive Tests 313.01–10

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

INTERIM FINANCIAL INFORMATION—continued

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| • Timing of Audit Work | 313.04–07; 313.10 |
| • Uncertainties | 722.20; 722.24;
722.56 |
| • Understanding With
Client | 722.08–09 |
| • Unusual Items | 313.07–08;
9326.01–05 |
| • Use of Accountant's Name | 504.04 |

INTERIM FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| • Audit Risk and Materiality | 312.21 |
| • Condensed Financial Statements | 552.01 |
| • Consistency With Annual
Information | 9420.11–15 |
| • Evidential Matter | 9326.01–05 |
| • Fourth Quarter Interim Data | 9504.01–07 |
| • Planning of Audit Work | 311.04; 312.21 |
| • Review—See Review of Interim Financial
Information | |
| • Subsequent Events | 560.12 |
| • Unaudited | 504.04; 9504.01–07 |
| • Use of Accountant's Name | 504.04 |

INTERNAL AUDIT—See Auditor, Internal

INTERNAL AUDITOR—See Auditor, Internal

INTERNAL CONTROL

- Accounting Control
- Auditors' Opinions 324.18
- Division of Procedures 324.10
- Accounting Estimates 342.06; 342.11
- Accounting System 319.47
- Antifraud Guidance 316.86
- Antifraud Programs 316.86
- Application of Components to a Financial Statement Audit 319.14–15
- Application to Small and Mid-sized Entities 319.56; 319.110
- Assertions 319.62–64
- Assessing Control Risk 312.30–31
- Assessing Identified Fraud Risks 316.43–45
- Assets, Safeguarding of 319.13
- Audit Objectives 325.04
- Audit Planning 325.07
- Audit Sampling 350.31–44
- Auditor's Consideration 319.01–110
- Authorization for Transactions 319.110
- Board of Directors 319.110
- Communicating Related Matters 325.07; 325.19
- Compliance Auditing of Major Programs 801.10–11
- Components 319.110
- Considerations During Audit 319.01–110; 322.13–16
- Considerations in Planning an Audit 319.25–29; 319.33–42; 319.47–49; 319.53–56; 319.58–61

INTERNAL CONTROL—continued

- Control Activities 319.07; 319.41–42;
 319.72; 319.110
- Control Environment 319.07; 319.29;
 319.34–36; 319.71;
 319.110
- Control Risk—See Control Risk
- Correction of Error—See Correction
 of Error
- Cost-Benefit Relationship 313.04–05;
 319.23
- Data Processing—See Data Processing
- Definition 319.06–07
- Design of Sample for Tests of
 Controls 350.33
- Detection Risk 312.27–28; 312.32;
 319.63; 319.81–82;
 319.105–108
- Deviations 350.31–42
- Documentation of Understanding 319.61
- Effectiveness 312.27; 312.30;
 319.24; 326.21;
 350.37
- Effectiveness of
 Design 319.75–76; 319.80;
 319.83; 319.85–86
- Effects of EDP 311.09
- Errors or Irregularities—See Fraud
- Evaluation of the Entity's
 Controls 316.42–45
- Evidential Matter 319.04; 319.28;
 319.62–64; 319.70–73;
 319.90–104; 326.11–14
- Interrelationship 319.101–104
- Source 319.94–95
- Timeliness 319.96–99
- Type 319.92–93
- Extent of Tests 350.19
- Financial Reporting Objective 319.10
- Foreign Corrupt Practices
 Act 9317.01–06; 9634.03
- Fraud—See Fraud
- Identifying Reportable
 Conditions 325.04–06
- Information and Communication 319.07;
 319.47–49; 319.110
- Information Technology 319.02;
 319.16–20
- Inherent Risk 312.27–33; 319.29;
 319.60; 319.63;
 319.81
- Interim Testing 313.02; 313.04–05;
 313.08; 313.10
- Internal Audit Function 322.07;
 322.13–16
- Internal Control and Control Risk,
 Relationship of 319.84–89
- Interrelated Components 319.07; 319.110
- Letters for Underwriters 634.36; 634.55;
 634.57
- Limitations 312.27; 319.21–24
- Management Antifraud Programs
 and Controls 316.86

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

INTERNAL CONTROL—continued

- Management Override of Controls . . . 230.12;
 316.42;
 316.57–67
- Management Responsibility . . . 110.03;
 333.06; 333.16
- Material Weakness . . . 325.15; 9325.01–.06
- Materiality . . . 312.27; 333.08
- Monitoring . . . 319.07; 319.53–.55;
 319.110
- Objectives and Components . . . 319.08–.13
- Obtaining an Understanding . . . 319.02;
 319.09; 319.13; 319.25–.61
- Operating Effectiveness . . . 319.21; 319.27;
 319.75–.76; 319.83;
 319.85–.86
- Operations and Compliance
 Objectives . . . 319.11–.12
- Organizational Structure . . . 319.29; 319.110
- Placed in Operation . . . 319.27; 319.35;
 319.58
- Planning the Audit . . . 319.25–.61;
 324.07–.10
- Control Activities . . . 319.41–.46
- Control Environment . . . 319.34–.36
- Documentation . . . 319.61
- Information and
 Communication . . . 319.47–.52
- Monitoring . . . 319.53–.55
- Procedures . . . 319.58–.60
- Risk Assessment . . . 319.37–.40
- Small and Mid-Sized Entities . . . 319.56–.57
- Policies and Procedures . . . 319.07
- Procedures to Obtain
 Understanding . . . 319.58–.60
- Public Warehouses . . . 901.01–.28
- Related Parties . . . 334.05
- Relationship Between Objectives and
 Components . . . 319.08–.15
- Reportable Conditions . . . 325.02–.03;
 325.06; 722.09; 722.33
- Reports—See Reports on Internal Control
- Responding to Assessment of
 Fraud . . . 316.46–.67
- Review of Interim
 Information . . . 722.09–.12; 722.14–.15;
 722.17; 722.19;
 722.33; 722.50
- Risk Assessment . . . 319.07; 319.37–.40;
 319.110
- Risk of Material Misstatement . . . 312.27;
 312.30–.31; 350.08;
 350.11–.14; 350.20;
 350.35–.36; 9312.01–.17
- Safeguarding of Assets . . . 319.13
- Segregation of Duties . . . 319.110
- Service Organizations—See Service
 Organizations
- Special Reports—See Reports on Internal
 Control
- Standards of Field Work . . . 150.02; 319.01;
 319.105
- Substantive Tests—See Substantive Tests

INTERNAL CONTROL—continued

- Tests of Controls—See Tests of Controls
- Tolerable Rate . . . 350.34–.35; 350.38
- Understanding . . . 316.25; 316.43–.44;
 316.86; 319.25–.29;
 319.33–.42; 319.47–.49;
 319.53–.56; 319.84–.89;
 322.04; 322.13
- Work of Other Auditors . . . 543.12
- Written Representations
 From Management . . . 722.24

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE

- Audit Manual . . . 9326.06–.23
- Form 990 (Internal Revenue) . . . 9623.47–.53

INTERNATIONAL AUDITING STANDARDS

- Compliance With U.S. and International
 Standards . . . 9508.56–.59

INTERPRETATIONS, AUDITING—See Auditing Interpretations

INTERPRETIVE PUBLICATIONS

- AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides . . . 150.05
- AICPA Auditing Statements of
 Position . . . 150.05
- AICPA Statements on Auditing
 Standards (SASs)
 • Appendixes to the SASs . . . 150.05
- Auditing Interpretations of SASs . . . 150.05

INVENTORIES

- Alternative Procedures . . . 9508.01–.06
- Change in Pricing Methods . . . 9420.16–.20
- Comparison With Records . . . 9508.03
- Completeness . . . 326.09
- Counted by Outside Firm . . . 9508.01;
 9508.05–.06
- Disclaimer of Opinion . . . 508.67
- Evidential Matter . . . 331.01–.02; 331.09–.14;
 9508.02
- First-in, First-out . . . 9420.16–.20
- Illustrative Audit Objectives . . . 326.26
- Last-in, First-out . . . 9420.16–.20
- Management Representation . . . 326.04;
 333.17
- Matters Requiring Specialists . . . 336.07
- Observation by Auditor . . . 310.04; 9350.02
- Public Warehouses . . . 331.14; 901.01–.28
- Role of Auditor . . . 110.04
- Scope Limitation . . . 310.04; 508.24;
 9508.01
- Substantive Tests . . . 326.26
- Valuation . . . 110.04; 311.06

INVESTEES

- Accounting Changes . . . 9420.52–.54
- Equity Method . . . 543.14
- Interim Financial Information . . . 722.18
- Scope Limitation . . . 508.24
- Unaudited Information . . . 508.27

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

INVESTMENTS

- Auditing Procedures
- Design Based on Risk Assessments 332.19–58
- Skills and Knowledge Required 332.02–03
- Audit Risk 332.07–18
- Auditor's Report 508.24; 543.14; 9420.52–54
- Derivative Instruments 332.02–03
- Equity Method 543.14
- Financial Statement
 - Assertions 332.21–51
 - Completeness 332.22–24
 - Existence or Occurrence 332.02–03
 - Management's Intent and Ability 332.56–57
 - Presentation and Disclosure 332.49–51
 - Rights and Obligations 332.25
 - Valuation 332.26–48
 - Hedging Activities 332.02–03
 - Additional Considerations 332.52–55
 - Management Representations 332.58
 - Materiality 332.07–18
 - Other Auditor's Report 543.01; 543.14
- Partnerships Exempt From SEC Registration Under Investment Company Act of 1940 9508.76–84
- Qualified Opinion 508.26
- Related Parties 334.01; 334.07–08
- Risk Assessment 332.08–18
 - Control 332.09–18
 - Inherent 332.08
 - Scope Limitation 508.24; 508.26
- Securities 332.04

INVESTORS

- Accounting Changes 9420.52–54
- Equity Method 543.14
- Unaudited Information 508.27

IRREGULARITIES—See Fraud

J

JUDGMENT

- Accounting Estimates 380.08
- Adverse Opinions 508.58
- Analytical Procedures 329.03; 329.05; 329.07; 329.09
- Audit Adjustments 380.09–10
- Audit Risk 312.13; 312.19; 312.24; 312.27–33; 350.08
- Auditing Procedures 110.05
- Basis for Opinion 312.13; 326.02; 326.13–14; 326.22–23
- Basis of Accounting 623.03
- Control Risk 319.104
- Entity's Accounting Principles 380.11
- Evidential Matter 319.90; 350.06
- Fair Presentation 411.03–04
- Fair Statement of Certain Other Information, Opinion on 550.07

JUDGMENT—continued

- Fraud 316.17; 316.24; 316.27; 316.32; 316.40; 316.45; 316.61; 316.68; 316.71; 316.74
- Generally Accepted Accounting Principles 311.06; 411.03–04; 9411.11–15
- Income Tax Accruals 9326.06–23
- Independence 504.08
- Internal Control 319.21; 319.23; 319.29–30; 319.60; 319.90
- Legal Isolation Criterion 9336.06; 9336.14
- Legal Matters 110.04; 337.06; 337.14; 9333.01–04
- Management 634.55
- Material Weaknesses in Internal Control 325.15
- Materiality 312.10–25; 312.33; 319.21; 319.23; 319.29–30; 319.60; 319.90; 508.36; 508.47; 623.24
- Matters Requiring Specialists 336.06–07; 9336.04; 9336.06
- Observation of Inventories 9508.06
- Other Information in Documents 550.05–07
- Planning—See Planning
- Related Party Transactions 334.11
- Reportable Conditions 325.02–05; 325.07; 325.15
- Reports on Application of Accounting Principles 625.07–09
- Review of Form 10-K 9634.07
- Sampling Risk 350.12; 350.21–23; 350.26
- Segment Information 9326.28–41
- Use of Legal Interpretations to Support That Transfer of Assets Has Met Isolation Criteria in FASB Statement No. 140 9336.01–21
- Work of Internal Auditors 322.20; 322.24
- Work of Other Auditors 543.01–02; 543.06; 543.13; 9543.18–20

K

KINSHIP—See Family Relationships

KNOWLEDGE

- Accounting Estimates 342.08–10; 9312.04–09
- Allegations of Fraud or Suspected Fraud 333.06; 333.16
- Analytical Procedures 329.02–03; 329.05–06
- Auditor, Independent 110.03–05; 326.21; 634.36; 634.42–44; 634.55; 9550.11; 9550.13
- Business of Entity 311.01; 311.06–10; 312.15; 316.19; 341.02; 341.09

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

KNOWLEDGE—continued

- Competence of Other Auditors 543.05
- Control Environment 319.35; 319.110
- Due Professional Care 230.06–07
- Entity's Business and Internal Control 722.10–14
- Evidential Matter 326.21
- Foreign Country's Accounting Principles 534.05
- Foreign Country's Auditing Standards 534.06
- Illegal Acts 9333.01–04
- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.03; 317.05–06
- Income Tax Accruals 9326.06–23
- Internal Control 319.25–29; 319.32–42; 319.47–49; 319.53–56; 319.58–61
- IT-Related Knowledge 319.32
- Legal Matters 337.06; 337.14; 9337.26
- Loss Reserve Matters 336.07
- Principal Auditor 543.02; 9543.18–20
- Reasonable Assurance 230.10–12
- Reliance on Financial Statements 561.08
- Reliance on Representations 333.03; 333.09; 333.16; 333.18
- Specialists 336.08; 9336.03–05; 9336.09–12
- Understanding EDP 311.10
- Understanding Transactions 110.03; 311.06; 334.09; 350.02; 9334.19
- Use of Work of Specialists 336.01; 336.06; 9336.03–05; 9336.09–12
- Weaknesses in Internal Control 9317.03–06
- Weaknesses in Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 9550.11; 9550.15

L

LAST-IN, FIRST-OUT

- Effect of Change in Method 9420.16–20

LAWS

- Compliance Auditing 801.01–24
- Design of Audit 801.06; 801.08
- Effects on Financial Statements 317.05–06; 317.10; 317.21
- Effects on Financial Statements of Governmental Entities 801.03–07
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act 9317.01–06
- GAAS Audit Insufficient 801.22
- Governmental Financial Assistance 801.04
- Planning of Audit Work 311.07
- Privileged Communication 337.13; 561.02; 9337.08–09
- SEC Filings 711.01–13
- Violations 333.06; 9333.01–04

LAWSUITS—See Litigation

LAWYERS

- Advice on Discovery of Facts 315.22; 561.02; 561.08; 711.12–13
- Advice on Omitted Auditing Procedures 390.03; 390.07
- Advice on Other Information 550.05–07
- Auditors' Reliance on Advice 110.04
- Code of Professional Responsibility 337.10; 337C; 9337.25
- Confidentiality of Communications 337.13; 9337.08–09
- Correspondence and Invoices 337.05
- Date of Response 9337.01–05; 9337.10–14
- Disclosure of Illegal Acts 317.22–23
- Explanatory Language About Attorney-Client Privilege 9337.28–30
- Explanatory Language Concerning Unasserted Possible Claims or Assessments in Responses to Audit Inquiry Letters 9337.31–32
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act 9317.03–06
- Illegal Act Investigation 9333.01–04
- Illegal Acts 317.03; 317.10–12
- Improper Use of Auditor's Name 504.06; 9550.15
- Income Tax Information 9326.06–23
- Internal v. Outside Lawyers 9337.24–27
- Letters of Audit Inquiry 337.08–11; 337A.01; 9337.01–32
- Limited Scope of Response 337.12–14
- Policy on Audit Inquiries 337.12; 337C; 9337.19–22; 9337.30–32
- Refusal to Furnish Information 337.13
- Related Party Transactions 334.10
- Responsibilities to Clients 337.09; 337.13; 9337.08–09; 9337.25
- Uncertainties—See Uncertainties
- Use of Legal Interpretations to Support That Transfer of Assets Has Met Isolation Criteria in FASB Statement No. 140 9336.01–21
- Use of Work by Auditors 336.02; 336.07; 9336.01–21

LEASES

- Assertions by Management 326.06

LEGAL MATTERS

- Audit Procedures 337.05–07; 9317.03–06; 9333.01–04; 9337.15–17
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.07
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act 9634.03
- Invoices From Law Firms 337.05
- Knowledge of Auditor 110.04; 337.06
- Legal Isolation Criterion 9336.06; 9336.14
- Legal v. Audit Evidence 326.02
- Letters for Underwriters 634.60

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

LEGAL MATTERS—continued

- | | |
|---|--|
| • Letters of Audit Inquiry | 337.08–.11;
337A.01;
9337.01–.32 |
| • Litigation—See Litigation | |
| • Matters Requiring Specialists | 336.02;
336.07; 9326.06–.23;
9336.01–.21 |
| • Omitted Auditing Procedures | 390.01;
390.03; 390.07 |
| • Related Parties | 334.02; 334.06;
334.08 |
| • Review of Form 10-K | 9634.03 |
| • Selected Financial Data | 552.11 |
| • Substance v. Form | 334.02 |
| • Substantive Consolidation—
Transfer of Assets | 9336.13–.14 |
| • Transfer of Assets Under U.S.
Bankruptcy Code | 9336.13 |
| • Transfer of Assets Under Receivership
Under FDIC | 9336.14 |
| • Uncertainties—See Uncertainties | |
| • Violation of Debt Covenant | 9410.17 |

LETTERS FOR UNDERWRITERS

- | | |
|---|--|
| Accountants' Limitations | 634.12; 634.37;
634.39; 634.43;
634.45; 634.47 |
| Accountants' Report | 504.19; 634.27–30;
634.59 |
| Accounting Principle Changes | 634.48 |
| Accounting Records | 634.55; 634.57;
634.59; 9634.13–29 |
| Acquisition Transactions | 634.05 |
| Additional Letters or Reports | 634.10;
634.20; 634.24 |
| Addressee | 634.03; 634.19;
634.25 |
| Agreed-Upon Procedures | 634.10; 634.35;
634.44 |
| Allocation Methods | 634.59 |
| Background Information | 634.01–21 |
| Business Combinations | 634.42 |
| Capsule Information | 634.35; 634.39–41;
634.64 |
| Change in Specified Financial Statement
Item | 634.35; 634.45–47;
634.49; 634.64 |
| Change Period | 634.45; 634.48–52 |
| Changes in Capital Structure | 634.35;
634.45; 634.49 |
| Commenting on Information Other
Than Audited Financial
Statements | 634.35–53 |
| Comparison Period | 634.51 |
| Compliance With SEC
Requirements | 634.29; 634.33–34;
634.60 |
| Concluding Paragraph | 634.61 |
| Condensed Financial
Statements | 634.12; 634.29;
634.35; 634.37–38;
634.40–41 |
| Consolidated Financial
Statements | 634.18; 634.53 |

LETTERS FOR UNDERWRITERS—continued

- Content of Typical Letter 634.64
- Cutoff Dates 634.23–24; 634.50–51
- Dating of Letter 634.19; 634.23–24
- Departure From SEC Requirements 634.64
- Departure From Standard Accountants' Report 634.27; 634.35
- Disclosure Requirements 634.33; 634.49; 634.54–62
- Draft Letter 634.16–17; 634.19; 634.35; 634.51; 634.56; 634.62
- Financial Forecasts 634.29; 634.35; 634.44; 634.64
- Forward-Looking Information 9634.13–29
- Illustrations 634.16; 634.19; 634.26; 634.31–33; 634.61; 634.64; 9634.29
- Independence of Accountants 634.18; 634.31–32
- Inquiries 634.23–24; 634.45
- Interim Financial Information 634.29–30; 634.35; 634.37–38; 634.40–41; 634.46; 634.64
- Internal Control 634.36; 634.55
- Introductory Paragraph 634.26–30
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 634.22; 634.29; 634.55; 634.57; 634.64
- Material Misstatements 634.60
- Minutes of Meetings 634.45
- More Than One Accountant 634.17–18; 634.32
- Negative Assurance 634.09; 634.12; 634.28; 634.34–35; 634.37; 634.39–42; 634.44; 634.46–47; 634.50; 634.53; 634.57; 9634.15–16
- Opinions, Accountants' 634.27–28; 634.33
- Positive Assurance 634.34; 9634.15–16
- Pro Forma Financial Information 634.29; 634.35; 634.42–43; 634.64
- Procedures 634.12; 634.15–19; 634.35–43; 634.54–60; 9634.13–29
- Qualified Opinion 634.27
- Quantitative Disclosures About Market Risk Made in Accordance With Item 305 of Regulation S-K 9634.13–29
- Sensitivity Analysis 9634.13–29
- Tabular Presentation 9634.13–29
- Value at Risk 9634.13–29
- Reasonable Investigation 634.02
- Reference to Examination of Annual MD&A and Review of Interim MD&A 634.64
- Reports, Other Accountants 634.18; 634.28; 634.53; 634.64
- Representation Letters 634.03–07

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

LETTERS FOR UNDERWRITERS—continued

- Requesting Party Other Than Named Underwriter 634.03–10; 634.64
- Scope of Audit 634.30
- Secured Debt Offering 634.09
- Securities Act of 1933 634.01–03; 634.11–12; 634.14; 634.19; 634.21; 634.33–34; 634.37; 634.44
- Securities Exchange Act of 1934 634.33–34; 634.57
- Securities Offerings 634.04; 634.12
- Segment Information 634.59
- Shelf Registration Statement 634.19
- Short Form Registration Statement 634.64
- Statistical Summaries 634.54–60; 634.64
- Subsequent Changes 634.35; 634.45–53
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 634.62
- Supplemental Financial Information 634.54–60; 634.64
- Supplementary Information 634.30
- Time Periods 634.45–47
- Unaudited Information 504.19; 634.12; 634.30; 634.35; 634.37–38; 634.40–41; 634.55
- Underwriting Agreement 634.14–17; 634.19; 634.23–24; 634.35; 634.51
- Use of Specialists 9634.28

LETTERS OF REPRESENTATION—See Representation Letters

LIABILITIES

- Assertions by Management 326.04–07
- Contingent—See Contingent Liabilities
- Estimation 342.02
- Examination at Interim Dates 313.03–07
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 337.01–14; 9337.01–32
- Loss Reserves (Insurance) 9623.42–46
- Management Plans 333.06

LICENSES

- Specialists 336.08

LIMITED REVIEW—See Review of Interim Financial Information

LINE OF CREDIT

- Management Representations 333.17

LINES OF BUSINESS—See Segment Information

LIQUIDATION

- Basis of Accounting 9508.33–37
- Financial Statements 9508.33–37
- Generally Accepted Accounting Principles 9508.34–37
- Uncertainties 9508.34

LITERATURE—See Publications

LITIGATION

- Audit Procedures 337.05–07; 9337.15–17; 9337.24–27
- Client Has Not Consulted a Lawyer 9337.15–17
- Disclosure of Illegal Acts 317.23
- Inquiries From Successor Auditor 315.05; 315.07–10; 315.12; 315.14–15; 315.20; 315.24
- Inquiries of Client's Lawyers 337.08–11; 722.20; 9337.01–32
- Internal v. Outside Lawyers 9337.24–27
- Limitations on Lawyer's Responses 337.12–14
- Loss Contingencies 9333.01–04; 9337.11; 9337.17
- Related Parties 334.06
- Stockholders v. Management 334.06
- Uncertainties—See Uncertainties

LOAN AGREEMENTS—See Borrowing Contract

LOSS CONTINGENCIES

- Definitions 337B
- Disclosure 9333.01–04; 9337.11; 9337.17
- Estimation 337.09; 337.14; 337B; 508.48–49; 9337.12; 9337.17
- Illegal Acts 333.06; 9317.06; 9333.01–04
- Management Representations 333.06; 333.16–17
- Materiality Considerations 508.47
- Standards of Financial Accounting 337.03; 337B

LOSS RESERVES (INSURANCE)

- Illustration of Auditor's Report 9623.42
- Special Reports 9623.40–46
- Specialists 9623.40
- Subsequent Events 9623.42

LOSSES

- Commitments 333.17
- Estimation of Potential Losses 337.09; 337.14; 337B; 9337.12; 9337.17
- Insurance Companies 9623.40–46

M

MANAGEMENT

- Accounting Changes 508.50–52; 508.57
- Acknowledgement of Fraud Prevention Duty 333.06; 333.16
- Adoption of Accounting Principles for New Transactions or Events 9411.11–15
- Advisory Services 9311.01–03; 9625.01–09

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

MANUALS—See Publications

MARKETABLE SECURITIES—See Investments

MATCHING PRINCIPLE

- Effects of LIFO Method 9420.19
- Regulated Companies 544.03

MATERIALITY

- Accounting Estimates 342.14;
..... 9312.04–.09
- Accounting Principles, Adoption or
Modification 420.19; 9420.69–.72
- Adequate Disclosure 431.02
- Audit Risk 9312.01–.17
- Change in Accounting Estimate 420.14
- Change in Accounting
Principle 9410.16; 9410.18
- Classification Changes 420.17
- Compliance Auditing of Major Federal
Financial Assistance Programs 801.17
- Concept 150.04; 411.04
- Consistent Standard Not Involved ... 420.19
- Definition 312.10
- Departure From GAAP 508.35–.36;
..... 722.21; 722.42–.43
- Effect on Audit 312.01–.02
- Effect on Financial Statements .. 312.01–.42
- Elements of Financial Statements ... 623.13
- Evaluation of
Illegal Acts 9333.01–.04
- Evidential Matter 312.12; 312.19–.20;
..... 326.11; 9312.01–.17;
..... 9326.01–.23
- Factor in Planning Audit. 311.03; 312.01;
..... 312.12–.25; 312.33
- Fair Presentation 312.03–.04
- Fraud 316.75
- Generally Accepted Auditing
Standards 312.01
- Illegal Acts 317.13–.15; 317.18–.19
- Inquiries of Client's
Lawyers 337.09; 337.12
- Internal Control—See Internal Control
- Investments 332.07–.18
- Judgment—See Judgment
- Limits 312.41; 333.08;
..... 333.10; 333.16;
..... 9326.06–.23
- Management
Representations 333.08; 333.16;
..... 9326.06–.23
- Matters Requiring
Specialists 336.06; 336.13
- Misstatements. 312.02–.11; 312.19–.20;
..... 312.24–.27; 312.32–.41;
..... 326.11; 350.11–.14;
..... 350.18; 350.25;
..... 350.30; 350.48;
..... 550.05–.06; 551.09;
..... 634.60; 9312.01–.17;
..... 9550.09; 9550.11;
..... 9550.13
- Misstatements, Definition 9312.01–.04

MATERIALITY—continued

- Misstatements, Qualitative
Characteristics 9312.15–.17
- Misstatements, Quantitative
Measures 9312.10–.14
- Other Auditor's Work .. 534.02; 543.05–.06;
..... 543.15; 9543.01–.03;
..... 9543.18–.20
- Other Information in
Documents 550.04–.07
- Qualified Opinion 508.20–.21
- Related Party Transactions 334.04;
..... 334.07–.08;
..... 334.11–.12; 9334.12–.13;
..... 9334.22–.23
- Relation to Risk 312.24
- Review of Form 10-K 9634.04
- Review of Interim Information 722.07;
..... 722.09; 722.12; 722.15;
..... 722.22; 722.25; 722.28;
..... 722.29; 722.32; 722.54
- Segment Information 9326.28–.41
- Special-Purpose Financial
Presentations 623.24
- Subsequent Events 508.71; 560.05;
..... 560.09; 711.11
- Supplementary Information 551.06–.09;
..... 551.16
- Tolerable Misstatement 350.18
- Weaknesses in Internal
Control 9317.03–.06
- Weaknesses in Internal Control Over
Financial Reporting ... 9550.11; 9550.15

MATHEMATICAL RELATIONSHIPS

- Correction of Error 420.16
- Reports, Other Auditors 543.07; 543.17

MEASUREMENT

- Fair Value Audit
Considerations 328.01–.51
- Fair Value—Testing Entity's
Measurements and
Disclosures 328.23–.42
- Standards for Fair
Presentation 411.02–.04
- Supplementary
Information 551.08; 558.06–.07

MEMBERSHIP

- American Institute of CPAs 543.10

MERGERS—See Business Combinations

MINUTES OF MEETINGS

- Evidential Matter 326.17
- Letters for Underwriters 634.45
- Litigation, Claims, and
Assessments 337.07
- Related Party Transactions 334.08
- Representations of
Management 333.06; 333.11;
..... 333.16
- Review of Interim Information 722.18;
..... 722.23–.24; 722.56
- Subsequent Events 560.12

MISAPPROPRIATION—See Fraud

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

MISLEADING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Changing Business Conditions 313.06
- Characteristics of Fraud 230.12
- Collusion 230.12
- Disagreement With Predecessor Auditor 315.21–22
- Federal Securities Statutes 711.02–.03; 711.07
- Interim v. Year-End Testing 313.06
- Misstatements by Management 313.06
- Rule 203, Accounting Principles 508.14–15
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 561.09
- Subsequent Events 711.10
- Substantive Tests of Interim Information 313.06

MISSTATEMENTS

- Analytical Procedures 316.28–30
- Characteristics of Fraud 230.12
- Consideration of Results of Audit 316.28–30
- Fraud Risk Factors 316.20–.27; 316.31–42; 316.51–56; 316.85
- Improper Revenue Recognition 316.41
- Inquiring About Risks of Fraud 316.20–27
- Interim Financial Information 722.09–12; 722.16; 722.18; 722.24–27; 722.32; 722.34; 722.54; 722.56
- Lack of Detection Due to Fraud 230.12
- Management Override of Controls 316.42; 316.57–67
- Material Misstatements Due to Fraud 316.34–42; 316.50
- Other Information as it Relates to Fraud 316.34
- Planning the Audit 316.28–30
- Presumption of Fraud Risk 316.41
- Responses to Risks of Misstatements 316.55–56
- Risk Factors Relating to 316.31–33; 316.35–42; 316.50; 316.85
- Subsequent Discovery 230.13

MISTAKES—See Fraud

N

NATIONAL REVIEW BOARD

- Inquiries Concerning Members 543.10

NEGATIVE ASSURANCE

- Compliance Reports 623.19–21
- Definition 634.12
- Disclaimer of Opinion 504.18
- Letters for Underwriters—See Letters for Underwriters

NEGLIGENCE

- Legal Liability 230.03
- Mitigated by Fraud 230.12–13

NET INCOME

- Effect of Change to LIFO 9420.18–19

NET REALIZABLE VALUE

- Accounts Receivable 326.07

NONAUDIT SERVICES

- Relation to Audit Planning 9311.01–.03

NONBUSINESS ORGANIZATIONS

- Departures From Established Principles 9623.47–.53
- Form 990 (Internal Revenue) 9623.47–.53
- Other Information in Documents 550.02
- Summarized Prior Period Information 508.65

NONCLIENTS

- Addressee of Report 508.09

NONCURRENT LIABILITIES

- Assertions by Management 326.08

NONMONETARY TRANSACTIONS

- Related Parties 334.03

NONPROFIT ORGANIZATIONS—See Nonbusiness Organizations

NONPUBLIC ENTERPRISES

- Accountant Not Independent 504.10
- Independence of CPAs 9504.22
- Segment Information 9508.01–.05
- Selected Financial Data 552.01–.02; 552.09–12
- Use of Accountant's Name 504.02; 552.11

NONSTATISTICAL SAMPLING

- Approach to Audit Sampling 350.03; 350.45–46
- Evidential Matter 350.03–.06; 350.45–46

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Accounting Changes 9410.17
- Basis of Presentation 504.07
- Consistency Standard 9420.69–72
- Consolidating Financial Statements 551.20
- Disclosure 420.08–.09; 431.02; 623.09–10; 9508.60–74; 9623.59; 9623.61; 9623.65–66; 9623.90–95
- Interim Financial Information 722.49–50
- Pension Plans 9420.64–65
- Qualified Opinion 508.21; 508.25; 508.38; 508.40
- Relation to Basic Financial Statements 551.02
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 561.06
- Subsequent Events 508.28; 530.04–.05; 530.08; 711.11
- Unaudited Information 504.07; 508.27–28

NOTIFICATION

- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.17

O

OBJECTIVES OF AUDIT

- Audit Sampling 350.02; 350.05; 350.16–22; 350.25

OBJECTIVES OF AUDIT—continued

- ## OBJECTIVITY

- ## OBLIGATIONS

- ## OBSOLESCENCE

- OCBOA—See Comprehensive Basis of Accounting**

**OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET
(OMB)**

- ## OIL AND GAS RESERVES

- OMB—See Office of Management and Budget (OMB)**

OMITTED AUDITING PROCEDURES

- ## OPINIONS. AUDITORS'

- ## OPINIONS, AUDITORS'—continued

- Application of Accounting Principles 625.03; 625.09
- Appointment of Auditor 310.04
- Audit Risk and Materiality 312.02; 312.26;
 9312.01–17
- Auditor-Submitted Documents 551.01–23
- Base Upon Reasonable Assurance 230.13
- Basis for Judgment 110.05; 312.13;
 326.02; 326.13–14;
 326.22–23; 411.04;
 9411.14
- Basis of Accounting Other Than GAAP 410.02; 623.02–10
- Change of Auditors 315.12–13; 315.15;
 315.18; 315.25
- Change to GAAP From Other Basis 420.12
- Characteristics of Fraud, Compromised by 230.12
- Collusion, Affect Upon 230.12
- Comparative Financial Statements 508.65–74
- Compliance Reports 623.19–21;
 9623.40–46
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.05–07
- Confidential Client Information 431.04
- Consistency—See Consistency
- Consolidating Information 551.17–20
- Departure From GAAP 504.11–13;
 508.35–60; 9508.76–84
- Disclaimer—See Disclaimer of Opinion
- Disclosure Inadequate 508.41–44
- Elements of Financial Statements 623.11–18; 9623.41–46
- Emphasis of a Matter 508.19; 9410.18
- Evidential Matter—See Evidential Matter
- Examples—See Illustrations
- Explanatory Language 9550.10
- Explanatory Paragraph 508.69
- Expression of Opinion 150.02; 312.26;
 326.01–02; 326.13–14;
 326.22–23; 504.01
- Fair Presentation 411.01–18
- Filing With Regulatory Agencies 9623.40–46
- First Year Audits 420.25
- Fraud 316.68
- Generally Accepted Auditing Standards 110.05; 508.03–05
- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.18–21; 317.23
- Included in Electronic Sites 9550.16–18
- Income Taxes 9326.06–23
- Incomplete Special-Purpose Financial Presentation 9623.82–86
- Individual Financial Statement 508.05; 508.33–34
- Internal Control—See Reports on Internal Control
- Introductory Paragraph 508.63

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

OPINIONS, AUDITORS'—continued

- Lack of Conformity With Comprehensive Basis of Accounting Other Than GAAP 326.25
- Lack of Conformity With GAAP 326.25; 504.11–13; 544.02–04
- Lack of Independence 504.09
- Legal Isolation Criterion 9336.06; 9336.14
- Letters for Underwriters—See Letters for Underwriters
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 337.13–14
- Loss Reserves (Insurance) 9623.40–46
- Material Misstatements 312.38
- Matters Requiring Specialists 336.13–16
- Negative Assurance—See Negative Assurance
- Nonprofit Organizations 9623.47–53
- Objective of Audit 110.01; 551.05; 558.04; 722.07; 722.09; 722.37–40
- Omission of Schedule of Investments 9508.76–84
- Omitted Auditing Procedures 390.04
- Opinion Paragraph 508.60
- Other Accountants—See Reports, Other Auditors'
- Other Information in Documents 550.03; 551.04
- Other Information in Electronic Sites Containing Audited Financial Statements 9550.16–18
- Piecemeal—See Piecemeal Opinions
- Principal Auditor 543.03–09; 543.11
- Prior Year's Statements 504.15–17
- Pro Forma Information 508.27
- Qualified—See Qualified Opinion
- Regulated Companies 544.02–04
- Related Parties 334.12
- Reporting When Prior-Period Audited Financial Statements Were Audited by Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations 9508.60–74
- Reports With Differing Opinions 508.67–69
- Representations From Management 333.02; 333.06; 333.13–14; 333.16; 333.18; 9508.51–52
- Reservations—See Reservations
- Responsibility, Degree Assumed 110.03; 150.02; 504.01; 504.15; 508.04–05; 508.12; 543.03–04; 543.07–09; 551.05; 9504.15–18; 9543.04–07; 9550.16–18
- Restatements 508.18
- Restricted Use 9623.85
- Review of Form 10-K 9634.01–09
- Scope—See Scope of Audit
- Selected Financial Data 552.09–11
- Service Organizations 324.10; 324.29; 324.34; 324.37; 324.36–40; 324.44; 324.49; 324.52; 324.55–56

OPINIONS, AUDITORS'—continued

- Special Reports—See Special Reports
- Special-Purpose Financial Presentations 623.22–30; 9623.82–86
- Standard of Reporting 150.02
- Standard Report 508.07–10
- Subject to—See Qualified Opinion
- Subsequent Discovery of Material Misstatement 230.13
- Supplementary Data 544.02
- Supplementary Information 551.04–20; 558.08–10
- Unqualified—See Unqualified Opinion
- Updated Auditor's Report 508.68–69

ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE

- Internal Control 319.29–33
- Control Environment 319.34; 319.110

ORGANIZATIONS, PROFESSIONAL

- Sources of Information 543.10

OTHER AUDITORS' REPORTS—See Reports, Other Auditors'

OTHER COMPREHENSIVE BASIS OF ACCOUNTING (OCBOA)—See Comprehensive Basis of Accounting

OVER-THE-COUNTER STOCKS

- Publicly Traded Companies 504.02

OWNERS—See Stockholders/Owners

OWNERS' EQUITY—See Stockholders' Equity

OWNERSHIP

- Audit Documentation 339.10–13

P

PARENT COMPANY

- Condensed Financial Information 552.05
- Management Representations 333.11

PAYABLES

- Assertions by Management 326.05
- Related Parties 333.06; 333.16

PCAOB

- Authority Designated by Council 9508.85–88

PCAOB STANDARDS

- Audit Also Conducted in Accordance With GAAS 9508.89–92

PENALTIES

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act 9317.06

PENSION PLANS

- Defined Benefit Plans—See Defined Benefit Pension Plans
- Related Parties 334.01; 334.07

PERSONNEL—See Employees

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

PIECEMEAL OPINIONS

- Prohibited 508.64
- Report on Elements of Financial Statements 551.08; 623.14
- Supplementary Information 551.06; 551.10; 551.13

PLANNING

- Analytical Procedures . . 319.62; 329.01–24
- Appointment of Independent Auditor 310.03–04
- Assertions 319.62
- Audit Program 311.05
- Audit Risk and Materiality . . 311.03; 312.01; 312.12–33; 312.39–41; 9312.01–17
- Audit Sampling . . 350.02–03; 350.15–23; 350.28; 350.31–37
- Communication Between Auditors 315.01–25; 543.10; 9334.12–15
- Compliance Auditing 801.11
- Designing Substantive Tests 319.25
- Effects of EDP on Audit 311.03; 311.09–10
- Elements of Financial Statements 623.12
- Evidential Matter 312.12; 312.19–20; 312.33; 326.09–14
- Extent of Planning 310.03; 311.03; 312.15; 312.25; 312.33; 312.39
- Fraud 311.03; 312.12–13; 312.16–18; 316.02; 316.28–30; 316.69; 316.83
- Going Concern Assumption 341.02–03; 341.08
- Interim Financial Statements—See Interim Financial Statements
- Internal Control Considerations 319.01–02; 319.04–05; 319.25–61; 325.07
- Control Activities 319.41–46
- Control Environment 319.34–36
- Control Risk 319.62–83
- Documentation 319.61
- Information and Communication 319.47–52
- Monitoring 319.53–55
- Procedures 319.58–60
- Risk Assessment 319.37–40
- Small and Mid-Sized Entities . . 319.56–57
- Judgment 311.03; 312.13–15; 312.19–20; 312.23–25; 350.18
- Lawyers' Letters 9337.01–05
- Material Misstatements 312.05; 312.16; 312.19–20; 312.23–25; 350.18
- Misstatements Considered Individually and in the Aggregate, Effect of 312.34; 312.38–39
- Misstatements, Consideration and Aggregation of 312.34
- Procedures to Obtain Understanding 319.58–60

PLANNING—continued

- Relation to Nonaudit Services . . 9311.01–03
- Relationship to Appointment of Auditor 310.01–04
- Review of Interim Information 722.11
- Scope of Audit 310.04; 311.03–10; 312.26
- Segment Information 9326.28–41
- Service Organization Processed Transactions 324.07–10
- Sources of Information 312.33
- Standard of Field Work 150.02; 311.01
- Tests of Controls 319.32; 319.85
- Timing of Audit Work . . 311.03–05; 311.12; 312.15; 312.21; 312.25; 312.33; 312.39; 313.02
- Tolerable Misstatement 350.18
- Uncertainties, Control of 312.27
- Understanding Internal Audit Function 322.04
- Use of Specialist 311.10
- Work of Internal Auditors 311.04

POLICIES, ACCOUNTING

- Communication to Audit Committee . . 380.07
- Departures From GAAP—See Departures From Established Principles
- Factor in Planning Audit 311.03
- Interim Financial Statements . . 9326.01–05
- Management Responsibility 110.03
- Relation to Basic Financial Statements 551.02

POOLING OF INTERESTS

- Consistency 420.08–09
- Restated Financial Statements . . 543.16–17

POSITIVE ASSURANCE—See Letters for Underwriters

PREDECESSOR AUDITOR

- Applicability of Section 315.01; 543.01
- Availability of Working Papers . . 315.11–13; 315.15; 315.19–20; 315.24–25
- Ceased Operations 9508.60–74
- Contingencies 315.11
- Dating of Report 508.73
- Definition 315.02
- Disagreement With Client . . 315.07; 315.09
- Other Information in Documents 550.04
- Reference to Successor 508.71
- Reissuance of Report . . 508.70–73; 530.06
- Representation Letter From Successor 508.71
- Responses to Successor Auditor . . 315.05; 315.08; 315.10; 315.24
- SEC Filings 711.11–12
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts . . 561.01–10
- Subsequent Events 508.71–73

PRESCRIBED REPORT FORMS—See Special Reports

PRICE LEVEL CHANGES

- Minimizing Impact by LIFO 9420.19

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

**PRINCIPLES, ACCOUNTING—See Generally
Accepted Accounting Principles**

PRIOR PERIOD ADJUSTMENTS

- Restatements 9410.13–18
- Subsequent Events 560.08

PRIOR PERIOD ITEMS

- Likely Misstatements 312.37
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 561.06
- Uncertainties 508.69

**PRIVILEGED COMMUNICATION—See
Confidential Client Information**

PRO FORMA FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Effects of Accounting Changes 9420.19
- Letters for Underwriters 634.35;
 634.42–.43; 634.64
- Subsequent Events 560.05; 9410.16
- Unaudited Information 508.27–28

PROBABILITY

- Contingencies 337B
- Litigation, Claims, and
 Assessments 337.04; 337.09;
 337.14; 9337.06–.07

**PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT—See
Training and Education**

PROFESSIONAL ETHICS DIVISION

- Inquiries Concerning Members 543.10

**PROFESSIONAL ORGANIZATIONS—See
Organizations, Professional**

PROFESSIONAL SKEPTICISM

- Accounting Estimates . . 342.04; 342.07–.14
- Confirmation Process 330.15; 330.27
- Definition 230.07;
 316.13
- Due Professional Care 230.07–.09
- Fraud 316.02; 316.13;
 316.16; 316.27;
 316.46
- Importance of Exercising . . . 316.02; 316.13;
 316.27

PROFICIENCY OF AUDITOR

- First General Standard 210.01–15
- Knowledge of Entity's Business 311.06
- Qualifications 110.04–.05; 336.01

**PROFIT AND LOSS STATEMENTS—See
Statements of Income**

PROGRAM, AUDIT

- Planning of Audit Work 311.01; 311.05
- Work of Other Auditors 543.12

PROPERTY

- Assertions by Management 326.07

PROSPECTIVE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Going Concern Assumption 341.09–10

PROSPECTUSES

- Consenting to Use of Audit
 Report 9711.12–.17
- Experts Section 711.08; 9711.12–15
- Responsibility of
 Accountant 711.08–.09; 9711.12–15
- Shelf Registration
 Statements 9711.01–.02;
 9711.10–.11
- Subsequent Events 711.10–.11;
 9711.01–.02;
 9711.10–.11

**PROVISIONS FOR CONTINGENCIES—See
Contingencies**

PROXY STATEMENTS

- Responsibilities of Accountant . . . 711.02–.13

**PUBLIC COMPANY ACCOUNTING
OVERSIGHT BOARD—See PCAOB**

PUBLIC UTILITIES—See Utilities, Public

PUBLIC WAREHOUSES

- Accountability, Warehouseman's 901.03;
 901.10; 901.19–.20
- Audit Procedures 901.01; 901.19–.23;
 901.28
- Confirmations 901.03; 901.19–.20;
 901.22
- Controls 901.01–.28
- Field Warehouses 901.07; 901.16–.18;
 901.21
- General Considerations 901.02
- Government Regulation 901.08;
 901.11–.12
- Insurance 901.15; 901.23;
 901.27
- Inventories 331.14; 901.01–.28
- Observation of Inventories 901.03;
 901.19; 901.21
- Operating Procedures 901.06–.12
- Recommendations 901.03–.05
- Reserve for Losses, Damage
 Claims 901.23
- Responsibility of Auditor 901.04
- Types
 - Commodity 901.07
 - Field 901.07
 - Terminal 901.07
- Warehouse Receipts
 - Accountability of
 Warehouseman 901.10; 901.19–.20
 - Confirmation 901.22
 - Description 901.08–.11
 - Field Warehousing 901.17
 - Internal Control 901.15
 - Negotiability 901.08
 - Pledged as Collateral 901.09
 - Release of Goods 901.09–.11
 - Warehouseman 901.13–.23

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

PUBLICATIONS

- Auditing
- Interpretive 150.05–.06
- Others Reviewed by AICPA 150.07–.09
- Auditor's Consideration of Management's Adoption of Accounting Principles for New Transactions or Events 9411.13
- IRS Audit Manual 9326.06–.23

PUBLICLY TRADED COMPANIES

- Condensed Financial Statements 552.01–.12
- Definition 504.02
- Disclosure of Fourth Quarter Data 9504.01–.17
- Oil and Gas Producing Companies 9558.01–.05
- Use of Accountant's Name 504.01–.19; 552.07–.08; 552.11

PURCHASES

- Assertions by Management 326.05

Q

QUALIFIED OPINION

- Accounting Estimates
 - Unreasonable . . 508.48–.49; 9312.04–.09
- Accounting Principles Inappropriate . . 508.48
- Changes, Accounting. . 508.50; 508.52–.57; 9410.15
- Condensed Financial Statements . . . 552.05
- Consistency 508.52
- Departure From GAAP 334.12; 336.14; 508.35–.57; 508.68–.69; 9336.21; 9508.76–.84; 9623.53
- Derecognition of Transferred Assets 9336.21
- Disclosure 552.05; 552.09
- Evidential Matter 326.25; 9326.06–.23
- Except for Opinions 508.21
- Explanatory Paragraph 508.21; 508.25; 508.37–.38; 508.40; 508.52
- Fraud 316.68
- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.18
- Illustrations
 - Accounting Charge 508.52
 - Departure From GAAP 508.39–.40
 - Inadequate Disclosure 508.42; 9508.76–.84
 - Management Unable to Justify Accounting Change 508.52
 - Omission of Statement of Cash Flows 508.44
 - Scope Limitation 508.26
 - Uncertainties 508.67
 - Inadequate Disclosure 431.03; 508.41–.44; 508.46; 9410.15
- Individual Financial Statement 508.05
- Letters for Underwriters 634.27
- Material Misstatements 312.38

QUALIFIED OPINION—continued

- Materiality 508.20–.21
- Matters Requiring Specialists 336.13–.14; 9336.21
- Nonprofit Organizations 9623.53
- Notes to Financial Statements 508.38; 508.40
- Omission of Statement of Cash Flows 508.44
- Opinion Paragraph 508.21; 508.25–.26; 508.37
- Regulated Companies 544.02
- Related Parties 334.12
- Report Form 508.21
- Reports With Differing Opinions 508.67–.69
- Reports, Other Auditors' 543.08; 543.11
- Scope Limitations 316.68; 333.13–.14; 336.13; 336.21; 508.20–.34; 9543.08–.10
- Scope Paragraph 508.25
- Service Organizations 324.10; 9324.13
- Subject to Opinions 508.21
- Subsequent Events 530.03–.14
- Supplementary Information 551.10; 551.14
- Titles of Financial Statements 623.07
- Unaudited Information 508.27–.28
- Uncertainties 508.38

QUALITY CONTROL

- Audit Engagement 161.01–.03
- Deficiencies in Firm's Policies 161.03
- Noncompliance With a Firm's Policies 161.03
- Omitted Auditing Procedures 390.02
- Relation to GAAS 161.01–.03
- System of Quality Control—See System of Quality Control
- Uncertainties 312.27
- Work of Other Auditors 9543.18–.20

R

RATES (INCOME TAXES)

- Interim Financial Information 9326.01–.05

REAL ESTATE

- Current-Value Financial Statements 9623.55–.59
- Related Party Transactions 334.03

REALIZABLE VALUE, NET—See Net Realizable Value

RECEIVABLES

- Collectibility 311.06; 312.36
- Confirmations 330.34–.35; 9508.01
- Net Realizable Value 326.07
- Related Parties 333.06; 333.16
- Scope Limitation 508.24; 9508.01

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

RECORDS

- Evidential Matter 326.16–20;
9326.06–23
- Income Tax Accruals 9326.06–23
- Information for Auditor's Report 431.03
- Interim Financial Information. 722.07; 722.18;
722.52; 722.56
- Letters for Underwriters. 634.55; 634.57;
634.59
- Nonsampling Risk 350.09–11
- Reliability—See Reliability
- Sampling Risk 350.12

REFUNDS—See Claims**REGISTRATION STATEMENTS**

- Condensed Financial Information 552.05
- Date of Reports 711.05–06; 9711.01–11
- Discovery of Facts 711.12–13
- Letters for Underwriters—See Letters for Underwriters
- Negative Assurance 504.19
- Responsibilities of Accountant 552.05;
711.02–13; 9711.01–11
- Shelf Registration Statements 9711.01–11
- Subsequent Events 711.10–13;
9711.01–11

REGULATED INDUSTRIES

- Basis of Accounting 544.02–04
- Departure From GAAP 544.02–04
- Disclosure of Illegal Actions 317.23
- Insurance Companies. 544.02
- Public Utilities—See Utilities, Public
- Standards of Reporting 544.02
- Supplementary Data. 544.02; 551.10

REGULATIONS

- Form 10-K (SEC) 9634.01–09
- Form 10-Q (SEC) 711.09; 722.05
- Item 305 of Regulation
S-K (SEC) 9634.13–29
- Regulation S-K (SEC) 552.09; 722.03;
722.06; 722.50;
9634.06; 9634.13–29;
9711.05–07
- Regulation S-X (SEC) 543.07; 552.08
- Rule 2-05. 543.07

REGULATORY AGENCIES

- Auditors' Reports to Outside
Parties 9623.96–98
- Basis of Accounting 9623.47–53
- Compliance Reports. 623.19–21;
9623.40–46
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.05;
552.07–08
- Disclosure of Subsequent
Discovery 561.06–08
- Illustration of Auditor's Report 623.08;
623.26; 9623.42; 9623.97
- Insurance Companies. 9623.40–46
- Interim Financial Information. 722.05;
722.18; 722.24;
722.56

REGULATORY AGENCIES—continued

- Internal Revenue Service—See Internal Revenue Service
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments. 337.07
- Nonprofit Organizations 9623.47–53
- Omitted Auditing Procedures 390.01;
390.07
- Other Information In Documents 550.03–04
- Related Parties. 334.07–10
- Reports, Other Auditors 543.10
- Representation Letters 333.06; 333.16
- Restricted-Use Reports 532.07–11;
532.15; 532.18
- Requesting Access to or Copies of Audit Documentation 9339.01–15
- SEC—See Securities and Exchange Commission
- Selected Financial Data 552.09
- Source of Established Principles. 411.08
- Special-Purpose Financial Presentations 623.22–30
- Supplementary Information. 551.06;
551.10

REISSUED REPORTS

- Auditors' Reports 504.15; 530.06–08;
532.16; 9341.01–02
- Dating of Reports 530.08; 532.16;
9341.01–02
- Distinguished From Updated 508.65
- Eliminating Going-Concern Explanatory Paragraph. 9341.01–02
- Predecessor Auditor. 508.70–73
- Third-Party Additions. 532.16

RELATED PARTIES

- Accounting Considerations 334.02–03
- Audit Procedures 150.09; 311.03;
334.04–10; 9334.16–21
- Audit Risk 9334.17–19
- Communication Between Auditors 9334.12–13
- Conditions Underlying Transactions 334.06
- Confirmations 334.08–10
- Control. 334.01; 334.04;
334.11
- Definition 334.01
- Departures From Established Principles 334.12
- Determining Existence 334.07–18;
9334.20–21
- Disclosure Requirements 334.01; 334.04;
334.11–12; 9334.22–23
- Emphasis in Auditor's Report 508.19
- Evidential Matter. 334.09–11
- Examples 334.01; 334.03
- Guarantees. 334.08; 334.10
- Identification of Transactions 334.08;
9334.14–15
- Intercompany Balances. 334.09–10;
9334.14–15

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

RELATED PARTIES—continued

- Internal Control 334.05
- Legal Matters 334.02; 334.06;
..... 334.08
- Opinions, Auditors' 334.12
- Other Auditing Guidance 150.07–.09
- Planning of Audit Work 311.03; 311.07
- Representation Letters 333.03; 333.06;
..... 333.11; 333.16;
..... 334.12
- Scope of Audit 334.05
- Sources of Information 334.07–.10;
..... 9334.20–.21
- Substance v. Form 334.02
- Substantive Tests 9334.17
- Unrecorded Transactions 334.08
- Unusual Items 334.08; 9543.04–.07

RELATIONSHIP WITH CLIENTS

- Auditor-Submitted Documents 551.04
- Client-Prepared Documents 551.04;
..... 552.01–.12
- Disagreement With Auditor 315.07;
..... 315.09; 504.13;
..... 551.09; 722.28
- Engagement Letters—See Engagement Letters
- Evidential Matter 9326.06–.23
- Other Information in Documents 551.04
- Predecessor Auditor 508.73
- Representation Letters 333.01–.18;
..... 9333.01–.04
- Review of Interim Information ... 722.08–.09
- Scope of Audit 9317.01–.02
- Specialists 336.10–.11
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 561.02
- Supplementary Information 551.04;
..... 551.09–.11
- Weaknesses in Internal Control 9317.03–.06
- Weaknesses in Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 9550.11
- Withdrawal From Engagement 504.13;
..... 711.12–.13

RELATIVES—See Family Relationships

RELEVANCE

- Evidential Matter 326.11; 326.21;
..... 330.11
- Generally Accepted Auditing Standards 150.09
- Internal Audit Function 322.06–.08
- Other Auditing Guidance 150.08;
..... 9508.56–.59

RELIABILITY

- Confirmations 330.16–.27
- Evidential Matter 326.15–.22
- Fair Statement of Certain Other Information, Opinion on 550.07
- Financial Statements 312.10
- Information 550.04–.07; 561.04–.05;
..... 561.09
- Management of Client 333.02–.04
- Relation to Risk 350.45

RELIANCE ON WORK OF OTHERS

- Income Tax Matters 9326.06–.23
- Other Auditors—See Reports, Other Auditors'
- Service Organizations—See Service Organizations
- Specialists—See Specialists

REPORTABLE CONDITIONS

- Agreed-Upon Criteria 325.07–.08
- Agreement Between Auditor and Client 325.08
- Audit Committee 325.02–.03; 325.06;
..... 325.10
- Communication 325.02–.03; 325.06;
..... 325.09–.12
- Communication When No Audit Committee Exists 9380.02–.03
- Content of Report 325.11
- Definition 325.02
- Descriptions 325.21
- Examples 325.21
- Form of Reporting 325.09
- Interim Communication 325.18
- Internal Control 325.02–.03
- Judgment 325.02–.05; 325.07;
..... 325.15
- Limited Use of Report 325.10
- Management 325.06; 325.10
- Material Weakness ... 325.15; 9325.01–.06
- Reports on Internal Control 325.09–.16
- Service Organizations 324.20

REPORTS

- Auditors—See Auditors' Reports
- Departure From Standard—See Departure From Standard Report
- Internal Control—See Reports on Internal Control
- Other Auditors'—See Reports, Other Auditors'
- Reissued—See Reissued Reports
- Review Reports—See Review Reports
- Special—See Special Reports
- Standard—See Auditors' Reports
- Stockholders—See Reports to Stockholders

REPORTS ON INTERNAL CONTROL

- Agreed-Upon Criteria 325.07–.08
- Auditor's Responsibility 9550.07–.15
- By-Product of Financial Statement Audit 532.04; 532.07–.11;
..... 532.15
- Communication .. 325.01–.21; 9325.01–.06
- Examples 325.12; 325.16;
..... 9325.04
- Form of and Level of Assurance in ... 801.16
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Restricted Use 532.04; 532.07–.11;
..... 532.15
- Service Organizations 324.02; 324.12;
..... 324.16; 324.18–.21;
..... 324.24–.56

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

REPORTS ON INTERNAL**CONTROL—continued**

- Users 9550.14–15
- Weaknesses in Internal Control Over Financial Reporting ... 9550.11; 9550.15

REPORTS, OTHER AUDITORS'

- Affiliated Companies .. 543.01–.02; 543.06; 543.10
- Audit Program 543.12
- Basis for Opinion 508.12
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.05
- Cost Method 543.14
- Decision Not to Make
Reference 508.71; 508.74; 543.04–.05; 543.12–.13; 9334.14–.15; 9543.18–.20
- Decision to Make
Reference 543.02–.03; 543.06–.09
- Departure From Standard Report ... 543.15
- Disclaimer of Opinion 543.11
- Disclosure of Reference 508.12–.13; 543.07–.09
- Equity Method 543.14
- Evidential Matter 543.14; 9543.18–.20
- Independence Requirements 543.04; 543.10
- Intercompany Account
Balances 543.10; 543.17; 9334.14–.15
- Internal Control 543.12
- Letters for Underwriters ... 634.18; 634.28
- Long-Term Investments 543.14
- Materiality 543.05–.06; 543.15; 9543.01–.03; 9543.18–.20
- Other Information in Documents 550.04
- Pooling of Interests 543.16–.17
- Predecessor—See Predecessor Auditor
- Procedures Applicable 543.10–.11; 9543.01–.03; 9543.18–.20
- Qualified Opinion 543.08; 543.11; 9543.08–.10
- Quality Control Policies 9543.18–.20
- Related Party Transactions ... 9334.14–.15
- Representation Letters 543.10
- Reputation and Standing 543.01; 543.04–.05; 543.10–.11
- Responsibility of Auditor 543.03
- Review of Interim Information 722.04; 722.12
- Scope of Audit 543.12; 9543.18–.20
- SEC Filings 543.07; 711.11
- Selected Financial Data 552.09
- Successor—See Successor Auditor
- Working Papers 543.12

REPORTS TO STOCKHOLDERS

- Interim Financial Information ... 722.47–.48
- Other Information in Documents 550.01–.07

REPRESENTATION LETTERS

- Accounting Estimates 342.09
- Assertions by Management ... 326.03–.08; 326.22

REPRESENTATION LETTERS—continued

- Audit Requirement 333.01–.18
- Change of Auditors 508.71
- Communications Regarding Alleged or Suspected Fraud 333.06; 333.13
- Compensating Balances 333.17
- Completeness of Information 333.06
- Compliance Auditing of Federal Financial Assistance Programs 801.10
- Compliance With Laws 9333.01–.04
- Consolidated Financial Statements 333.16; 333.18
- Dating of Letters 333.09
- Effective Date of Responses ... 9337.01–.05
- Evaluation by Auditor 311.06
- Evidential Matter 326.17; 9326.06–.23
- Examples of Information Included 333.06; 333.16–.18
- Fair Value Representations 328.48–.49
- Fraud 333.06; 333.13; 333.16
- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.08
- Illustration 333.16–.18; 722.56; 9337.16
- Independence of Other Auditors ... 543.10
- Interim Financial Information 722.09; 722.24; 722.34; 722.51; 722.56
- Letters for Underwriters 634.03–.07
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 9337.16
- Modifying Representations, When to 333.16
- Related Party Transactions 334.12
- Reliance on Representations 317.16; 333.02–.04; 350.25
- Scope Limitations 333.13–.14; 9326.06–.10
- Service Organizations 324.61
- Signing of Letters 333.09
- Subsequent Events 333.06; 333.09; 333.12; 333.16–.18; 560.12; 711.10–.11
- Supplementary Information 558.07
- Unasserted Claims ... 337.05; 9337.06–.07; 9337.16
- Updating 333.12; 333.18
- Violations of Laws 9333.01–.04

REPRESENTATIONAL FAITHFULNESS

- Assertions by Management 326.02; 326.13; 326.20–.21
- Related Party Disclosures ... 9334.22–.23

RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT COSTS

- Accounting Changes 9410.14; 9410.16

RESERVATIONS

- Disclaimer of Opinion 508.62
- Fair Presentation 508.59
- Titles of Financial Statements 623.07

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

RESERVES

- Income Tax Accruals 9326.06-.23
- Loss Reserves (Insurance). 9623.40-.46

RESTATEMENTS

- Change in Accounting Principle 420.14; 9410.13-18
- Correction of Error 420.12
- Prior Period Financial Statements 508.68-.69; 508.74; 9508.60-.74
- Reports Following Pooling of Interests 543.16-17
- Subsequent Years' Reports 508.19

RESTRICTIONS

- Scope of Audit—See Scope of Audit

RESTRUCTURING OF DEBT

- Management Plans Relating to Going Concern Assumption 341.07

RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

- Condensed Financial Statements 552.03-.04
- Interim v. Annual 9326.01-.05

RETAINED EARNINGS

- Change in Accounting Principle 9420.18

RETROACTIVITY

- Change in Accounting Principle 9410.13-18

REVENUE

- Assertions by Management 326.07

REVIEW OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Change From Audit Engagement 508.61
- Subsequent Period Audited 504.17

REVIEW OF INTERIM FINANCIAL

INFORMATION—Also See Interim Financial Information

- Analytical Procedures 722.54
- Client Representations. 722.47-48
- Complex or Unusual Situations 722.55
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.08; 9711.09
- Departure From GAAP 711.13
- Discovery of Facts 711.13
- Examples of Reports 552.08; 711.09
- Form of Accountant's Review Report 722.37-41
- Form 10-Q 711.09
- Fourth Quarter Interim Data 9504.01-.07
- Illustrative Management Representation Letters 722.56
- Inquiries—See Inquiries
- Letters for Underwriters—See Letters for Underwriters
- Modification of Accountant's Review Report 722.42-.45
- Objective of Review 722.07; 722.35; 722.37-40
- SEC Filings 552.08; 711.01; 711.03; 711.06; 711.09; 711.13; 9711.09

REVIEW OF INTERIM FINANCIAL INFORMATION—continued

- Shelf Registration Statements 9711.09
- Unusual or Complex Situations 722.55
- Use of Accountant's Name 504.04

REVIEW REPORTS

- Condensed Financial Statements 552.08

RIGHTS

- Assertions by Management 326.03-.06

RISK

- Accounting Estimates 342.05; 342.14; 9312.04-.09
- Analytical Procedures 316.28-.30; 329.06; 329.09-.21
- Arising From Fraudulent Financial Reporting 316.54
- Arising From Misappropriation of Assets 316.55-.56
- Assessment for Fraud 316.43-.45
- Assessment for Internal Control 319.07; 319.25-.33; 319.37-.40; 319.110; 328.09-.14
- Control Risk 319.02-.05; 319.64-.73; 319.80-.110; 332.05; 332.07-.20
- Information Technology 319.16-.20; 319.36; 319.51
- Audit 312.01-.42; 350.08-.11; 350.48; 9312.01-.17; 9334.17-19
- Changes in Assessment, Conditions Resulting in 316.68
- Consideration of Factors 316.28-.30; 316.31-.34; 316.42
- Control—See Control Risk
- Control of Risk 313.03-.07
- Definition 312.02; 312.27-.28
- Detection Risk 312.27-.28; 312.32; 312.39-.41; 319.63; 319.81-.82; 319.105-.108; 326.13-.14
- Effect on Audit 312.01-.02; 312.26; 9334.17-.19
- Effect on Financial Statements 312.01-.42
- Entity's Process for Determining Fair Value 328.09-.14
- Estimation 312.27
- Examples of Fraud Risk Factors 316.85
- Factors in Planning Audit 312.01; 312.12-.19; 312.26-.33; 312.39-.41
- Factors Relating to Misstatements Arising From Fraudulent Financial Reporting 316.85
- Factors Relating to Misstatements Arising From Misappropriation of Assets 316.85
- Fraud Factors 316.19-.34; 316.31-.42; 316.51-.56; 316.85

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

RISK—continued

- Generally Accepted Auditing Standards . . . 150.04; 312.01–.02
- Identified 316.34–.42; 316.51–.56
- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.13–.15
- Improper Revenue Recognition 316.41
- Inherent Risk 312.27–.33; 319.29; 319.60; 319.63; 319.81; 9326.24–.27
- Inquiring About Fraud 316.20–.27
- Internal Audit Considerations . . . 322.14–.17
- Investments
 - Auditing 332.05; 332.07–.20
 - Completeness Assertions . . . 332.22–.24
 - Control Risk 332.05; 332.09–.14; 332.15–.19
 - Hedged 332.50; 332.52; 332.54
 - Inherent Risk 332.05; 332.07–.08; 332.19
- Judgment—See Judgment
- Letters for Underwriters 634.12–.13
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 337.14
- Management Override of Controls 316.42; 316.57–.67
- Material Misstatements 312.02; 312.16–.17; 312.19; 312.24; 312.27–.33; 312.36–.41; 313.03; 316.42; 316.50; 319.25; 319.63; 319.71; 326.11; 350.08–.14; 350.16–.23; 350.26; 350.35–.36; 350.48; 9312.01–.17; 9326.01–.05
- Material Misstatements Due to Fraud 316.42; 316.50
- Misappropriations of Assets . . . 316.55–.56
- Nonsampling 350.09–.11
- Obtaining Information to Identify Fraud 316.19–.34
- Other Information as it Relates to Fraud 316.34
- Planning the Audit 316.28–.30
- Presumption of Fraud Risk 316.41
- Projecting Effectiveness of Controls to Future Periods 9324.38–.40
- Relation to Confirmation Procedures 330.05; 330.07–.10; 330.20–.22
- Relation to Evidential Matter 312.12; 312.19; 312.33; 313.07; 9326.24–.27
- Relation to Internal Control 312.27
- Relation to Materiality 312.24
- Relation to Reliability 350.45
- Responses to Fraud Risks 316.51–.67
- Responses to Risks of Misstatements 316.55–.56
- Risk of Fraud 316.20–.27; 316.31–.42; 316.51–.56
- Sampling 350.09–.14; 350.19–.23; 350.26; 350.33–.35; 350.41; 350.44

RISK—continued

- Substantive Tests at Interim Dates 313.03–.07
- Uncertainties, as a Result of 312.27

ROYALTIES

- Auditor's Report 551.11

RULES OF CONDUCT

- Rule 202 161.01
- Rule 203 411.05; 411.07
- Rule 301 431.04
- Rules Supporting Standards 110.10

S**SALES**

- Transfer of Assets 9336.01–.21
- Under Receivership Under FDIC 9336.01–.14
- Under U.S. Bankruptcy Code . . 9336.01–.13

SCOPE OF AUDIT

- Attorney-Client Privilege, Effect of 9337.28–.30
- Balance-Sheet-Only Audit 508.34
- Communication to Audit Commerce . . 380.02
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act 9317.01–.02
- Fraud 316.56; 316.68; 316.84
- Lawyer's Responses to Inquiries . . . 337.12–.13; 9337.28–.32
- Limitations
 - Disclaimer of Opinion 310.04; 316.68; 324.10; 508.27; 508.61–.63
 - Illustrative Auditor's Report 508.26
 - Income Taxes 9326.01–.23
 - Inventories 9508.01–.06
 - Investments 508.24; 508.26
 - Lawyer's Responses to Inquiries . . . 337.12–.13; 9337.08–.09; 9337.28–.32
 - Letters for Underwriters 634.30
 - Matters Requiring Specialists 336.13; 9336.21
 - Permission to Use Legal Opinion Not Granted 9336.21
 - Piecemeal Opinions 508.64
 - Qualified Opinions 310.04; 316.68; 324.10; 508.20–.34
 - Remedied 310.04
 - Representation Letters 333.13–.14
 - Segment Information 9326.28–.41
 - Special Reports 623.05; 623.15; 623.25; 623.29
 - Uncertainties 9337.17
 - Materiality, Effect of . . . 150.04; 312.01–.02
 - Omitted Auditing Procedures 390.04
 - Other Information in Documents 550.04
 - Piecemeal Opinions—See Piecemeal Opinions
 - Planning of Audit Work 311.03–.10

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

SCOPE OF AUDIT—continued

- Related Parties 334.05; 9543.04–17
- Reports, Other Auditors' 9543.04–17
- Restriction on Scope of Review 722.14
- Review of Interim Information 722.09;
722.14; 722.37–40
- Risk, Effect of 150.04; 312.01–02;
312.26; 350.13
- Supplementary Information 551.04–11;
551.21
- Understanding With Client 310.05–07
- Work of Other Auditor 543.12;
9543.18–20

SECURITIES—See Investments

SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

- Filings Under Federal
Securities Statutes 530.02; 711.01–13;
9711.01–17
- Letters for Underwriters—See Letters for
Underwriters
- Other Information in Documents 550.03
- Shelf Registration
Statements 9711.01–11
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 561.03

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

- Condensed Financial Information 552.05
- Condensed Financial
Statements 552.07–08
- Consenting to Use of Audit Report in
Offering Document 9711.12–17
- Disclosure of Illegal Acts 317.23
- Filings Under Securities Statutes 311.03;
530.02; 530.06;
543.07; 552.05; 552.07–09;
561.03; 711.01–13;
9634.01–09; 9711.01–17
- Form 10-K—See Form 10-K (SEC)
- Form 10-Q—See Form 10-Q (SEC)
- Independence Requirements 220.05;
543.10; 9634.09
- Interim Financial Information 508.11;
552.08; 722.03;
722.05–06; 722.36;
722.47–48
- Letters for Underwriters—See Letters for
Underwriters
- Negative Assurance 504.19
- Oil and Gas Reserves 9558.01–05
- Prospectus—See Prospectuses
- Registration Exemption Under Investment
Company Act of 1940 9508.76–84
- Reissuance of Auditor's Report 530.06
- Reissuance of Financial Statements 560.08
- Related Parties 334.07–08
- Responsibilities of
Accountant 711.02–13; 9711.01–17
- Responsibilities of Management 711.01;
711.08
- SEC Engagement 380.01
- Selected Financial Data 552.09

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE

COMMISSION—continued

- Shelf Registration
Statements 9711.01–11
- Subsequent Discovery of Facts 561.06–08
- Unaudited Financial Statements 504.14

SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act 9317.01–02
- Letters for Underwriters—See Letters for
Underwriters
- Other Information in Documents 550.02
- Review of Interim Information 722.05;
722.18; 722.32
- Shelf Registration Statements 9711.05

SEGMENT INFORMATION

- Allocation of Revenue, Expenses,
Assets Among Operating
Segments 9326.28–41
- Auditing Procedures 9326.28–41
- Auditor's Objective 9326.28–41
- Departures From Established
Principles 9326.28–41
- Disclosure 9326.28–41
- Evidential Matter 9326.28–41
- Geographic Areas 9326.28–41
- Letters for Underwriters 634.59
- Major Customers 9326.28–41
- Materiality 9326.28–41
- Misstatement or Omission 9326.28–41
- Planning Considerations 9326.28–41
- Prior Periods 9326.28–41
- Products and Services 9326.28–41
- Reportable Operating
Segments 9326.28–41
- Scope Limitation 9326.28–41
- Subsequent Changes in 9326.28–41

SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA

- Auditor's Report 552.01–02; 552.05;
552.09–12
- Consolidated Financial Statements 552.10
- Disclaimer of Opinion 552.11
- Filing With a Regulatory Agency 552.09
- Illustrations 552.10
- Letters for Underwriters 634.64
- Other Auditor's Report 552.05; 552.09

SERVICE ORGANIZATIONS

- Adverse Opinion 9324.13
- Agreed-Upon Procedures 324.19
- Alternative Methods of Presenting
Controls and Subservice
Organization Functions 9324.12–18
- Carve-Out Method 9324.12; 9324.15–16
- Change in Controls Prior to Beginning of
Field Work 324.28; 324.43
- Contingency Planning Not
Performed 9324.35–37
- Control Objectives 324.35–36;
324.50–51; 324.53
- Control Risk Assessment 324.11–16;
9324.05

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

SERVICE ORGANIZATIONS—continued

- Deficiencies in Design or Operation of Controls 324.32; 324.40; 324.47; 9324.35–37
- Definition 324.02
- Description of Relevant Controls 324.26; 324.30; 324.33; 324.42; 324.45; 9324.08–13
- Description of Risk of Projecting Effectiveness of Controls 9324.38–40
- Description of Tests of Operating Effectiveness and the Results of Such Tests 9324.01–03
- Disaster Recovery Not Adequate 9324.35–37
- Documentation 324.35; 324.41
- Effect of Subservice Organization Use on Auditor's Procedures 9324.04–07
- Effect of Subservice Organization Use on User Organization's Financial Statement Assertions 9324.05
- Effect on User Organization's Controls 324.06–10; 9324.05; 9324.07
- Elements Included in Description of Tests of Operating Effectiveness 9324.01
- Evidential Matter 324.10; 324.12; 324.16–17; 324.27
- Examples 324.03
- Explanatory Paragraph 324.39–40
- Forward-Looking Information 9324.35–40
- Fraud 324.23; 324.57
- Illustrative Reports 324.38–40; 324.54–56; 9324.16; 9324.18; 9324.38; 9324.40
- Inclusive Method 9324.12; 9324.17–18
- Internal Control Reports 324.02; 324.12; 324.16; 324.18–21; 324.24
- Management Representations 324.57
- Modification of Service Auditor's Report 324.29; 324.31; 324.46
- Notation of Exceptions in Reports on Controls Placed in Operation and Tests of Operating Effectiveness 9324.03
- Opinions, Auditors' 324.10; 324.34; 324.37; 324.39–40; 324.44; 324.49; 324.52; 324.55–56; 9324.13–18
- Planning 324.07–10; 9324.05
- Population Testing in Reports on Controls Placed in Operation and Tests of Operating Effectiveness 9324.03
- Qualified Opinion 9324.13
- Reportable Conditions 324.20
- Reports on Controls Placed in Operation 324.02; 324.12; 324.25–40

SERVICE ORGANIZATIONS—continued

- Reports on Controls Placed in Operation and Tests of Operating Effectiveness 324.02; 324.16; 324.41–56; 9324.01–03
- Responsibilities of Service Auditor 324.22–61; 9324.35–40
- Responsibility for Description of Controls 324.33; 324.48; 9324.35–40
- Scope Limitations 324.10
- Scope Paragraph 9324.16; 9324.18
- Service Auditors 324.17–62; 9324.01–04; 9324.06; 9324.09; 9324.12–18
- Service Auditor's Reports Affected by Method of Presentation 9324.14–18
- Sources of Information 324.25–26; 324.41–42
- Subsequent Events 324.57–60
- Substantive Tests 324.15; 324.17; 324.62
- Tests of Controls 324.41
- Types of Reports 324.24
- Use of Service Auditor's Report 324.18–21
- Use of Subservice Organizations 9324.04–18
- User Auditors 324.02; 324.05–21; 9324.02–05; 9324.07–09; 9324.11–12

SERVICES

- Nonaudit—See Nonaudit Services
- Service Organizations—See Service Organizations
- Subservice Organizations—See Service Organizations

SHAREHOLDERS—See Stockholders/Owners

SINGLE AUDIT ACT OF 1984

- Auditor's Responsibilities 317.24
- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.24

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

- Analytical Procedures 329.05; 329.16
- Business and Industry 311.08
- Competence of Other Auditors 543.10
- Established Accounting Principles 411.05–15
- Generally Accepted Accounting Principles 411.14–15
- Governmental Entities 411.12–15; 411.18
- Income Tax Accruals 9326.06–23
- Litigation, Claims, and Assessments 337.05; 337.08
- Nongovernmental Entities 411.10–11; 411.18
- Planning 312.33
- Professional Organizations 543.10
- Related Parties 334.07–10; 9334.20–21
- Reliability 326.21

SOURCES OF INFORMATION—continued

SPECIAL REPORTS

SPECIAL REPORTS—continued

SPECIALISTS

- ## SPE

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

SPECIALISTS—continued

- Use of Legal Interpretations to Support That Transfer of Assets Has Met Isolation Criteria in FASB Statement No. 140 9336.01–.21
- Use of Work by Auditors 336.01–.17; 9336.01–.21
- Work Experience 336.08–.09
- Work to Be Performed 336.09

STANDARD REPORTS—See Auditors' Reports

STANDARDS, FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING

- Contingencies 337.03; 337.05; 337B; 9337.07
- Knowledge of Pronouncements 311.04
- SEC Filings 711.04

STANDARDS, GENERAL—See General Standards, Audit

STANDARDS OF FIELD WORK, AUDIT

- Application of Accounting Principles 625.07
- Appointment of Independent Auditor 310.03–.04
- Audit Documentation 339.04–.09
- Audit of Financial Statements for Use Outside U.S. 534.03–.06
- Audit Risk and Materiality 312.01
- Audit Sampling 350.04; 350.19
- Date of Auditor's Report 530.01–.08
- Evidential Matter 326.01; 9326.01–.23
- Internal Control 9317.01–.02
- List of Standards 150.02
- Planning—See Planning
- Relationship Between Appointment and Planning 310.01–.04
- Supervision—See Supervision
- Timing—See Timeliness

STANDARDS OF REPORTING, AUDIT

- Audit of Financial Statements for Use Outside U.S. 534.03–.06
- Audit Risk and Materiality 312.01
- Basis of Accounting Other Than GAAP 410.02; 504.07
- Consistency 420.01–.24; 508.03; 9420.20; 9420.69–.72
- Disclosure 431.01; 9420.69–.72
- Elements of Financial Statements 623.12
- Expression of Opinion 508.04–.05; 508.65
- Generally Accepted Accounting Principles 410.01–.02; 411.02
- List of Standards 150.02
- Opinions, Auditors' 508.03–.05
- Regulated Companies 544.02
- Supplementary Information 558.01–.11
- Unaudited Financial Statements 504.05
- Use of Accountant's Name 504.01–.02

STANDARDS OF THE PUBLIC COMPANY ACCOUNTING OVERSIGHT BOARD—See PCAOB Standards

STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENTAL UNITS

- Regulatory Agencies—See Regulatory Agencies
- Sources of Established Principles 411.12–.15; 411.18
- Special Reports—See Special Reports

STATE BOARDS OF ACCOUNTANCY

- Independence of CPAs 9504.19–.22

STATE SOCIETIES, CPA

- Competence of Other Auditors 543.10
- Independence of CPAs 9504.19–.22

STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS

- Basic Financial Statements 508.06; 551.02
- Change in Presentation 420.14
- Management Representations 333.06; 333.16; 333.18
- Omission 508.43–.44

STATEMENTS OF FINANCIAL POSITION

- Auditor's Report 508.34
- Basic Financial Statements 508.06
- Condensed Financial Statements 9711.09
- Disclosure of Legal Matters 337.05; 337.09; 337.13; 9337.04–.05
- Fair Value Disclosures 9342.05–.07
- Representations of Management 326.03–.08; 333.06; 333.16–.18
- SEC Filings 9711.09
- Shelf Registration Statements 9711.09

STATEMENTS OF INCOME

- Basic Financial Statements 508.06; 551.02
- Representations of Management 326.03–.08; 333.16–.17

STATEMENTS OF POSITION (AICPA)

- Interpretive Publications, Considered as 150.05
- Nonprofit Organizations 9623.47
- Source of Established Principles 9623.47

STATEMENTS OF RETAINED EARNINGS

- Basic Financial Statements 508.06; 551.02

STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY

- Basic Financial Statement 551.02

STATISTICAL SAMPLING

- Approach to Audit Sampling 350.03; 350.45–.46
- Costs 350.45
- Evidential Matter 331.11; 350.03–.06; 350.45–.46; 9508.03
- Training and Education 350.46
- Use in Inventory Determination 331.11; 9508.03

STATISTICAL SUMMARIES

- Letters for Underwriters 634.54–.60
- Relation to Basic Financial Statements 551.03

STATUTORY REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

- STEWARDSHIP—See Accountability**

STOCK EXCHANGES

- ## STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY

- STOCKHOLDERS/OWNERS**

- SUBJECT TO OPINION—See Qualified Opinion**

SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

- ### SUBSEQUENT EVENTS—continued

- ### SUBSTANCE V. FORM

- Examples 334.02
- Generally Accepted Accounting Principles 411.06–.07; 411.09
- Generally Accepted Accounting Principles Applied to New Transactions or Events 9411.12
- Related Parties 334.02

SUBSTANTIVE TESTS

- Analytical Procedures 313.02; 313.08;
 329.04; 329.09–11;
 329.20; 329.22;
 9326.24–27
- Assessment Control Risk 319.65–66;
 319.68; 319.97;
 319.108
- Audit Assurance 313.04; 313.08

AU Topical Index

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

SUPPLEMENTARY FINANCIAL INFORMATION—continued

- Inquiries—See Inquiries
- Interim Financial Information 722.49
- Letters for Underwriters 634.30; 634.54–.60
- Limited Procedures 551.06–.11; 558.08
- Material Misstatements 551.09
- Materiality—See Materiality
- Oil and Gas Reserve Information 9558.01–.05
- Omission of Information. 551.15–.16; 558.08
- Other Information Provided by the Service Auditor 324.57–.61; 9324.35–.40
- Piecemeal Opinion. 551.06; 551.10; 551.13
- Qualified Opinion 551.10; 551.14
- Regulated Industries 544.02; 551.06; 551.10
- Relation to GAAP 544.02; 551.03; 551.07; 551.10; 551.20
- Required by GAAP 551.15–.16

SYSTEM OF QUALITY CONTROL

- Deficiencies in 161.03
- Definition 161.02
- Engagement Performed in Accordance With GAAS 161.03
- Noncompliance With 161.03

SYSTEMATIC AND RATIONAL ALLOCATION

- Cost of Property 326.07

T

TAX RATES—See Rates (Income Taxes)

TAX RETURNS

- Accountant's Responsibility 504.03

TAXES

- Advisers 9326.06–.23
- Income—See Income Taxes
- Uncertainties 337.07

TAXPAYERS

- Income Tax Accruals 9326.06–.23

TERMINOLOGY

- Accountant 532.01
- Accounting Estimates 342.01
- Accounting Principles 625.01
- Advisory Accountant 9625.01–.09
- Analytical Procedures 329.02
- Assessed Level of Control Risk 319.80
- Assessing Control Risk 319.64
- Assistants 311.02
- Audit Adjustments 380.09–.10
- Audit Committee 380.01
- Audit Documentation 339.01
- Audit Risk 312.02; 312.27–.28; 350.08–.09; 350.48

TERMINOLOGY—continued

- Audit Sampling 350.01; 9350.02
- Auditor 311.02
- Capsule Information 634.39
- Characteristics of Fraud 230.12
- Common Requirements 801.12
- Completion of Fieldwork, Date of 508.65
- Components of a Business 9334.14–.15
- Comprehensive Basis of Accounting 623.04
- Confirmations 330.04
- Conflict-of-Interests Statements 334.08
- Contingencies 337B
- Continuing Accountant 625.01
- Continuing Auditor 508.65
- Contractual Agreement 623.22; 9623.84
- Control Activities 319.07; 319.41
- Control Environment 319.07; 319.34
- Control Risk 319.63
- Derivative 332.02–.03
- Detection Risk 319.63
- Disclosure 431.02
- Due Professional Care 230.05
- Electronic Site 9550.16
- Errors 312.06
- Evidential Matter 326.15
- Federal Awards 801.04
- Financial Assistance 801.04
- Financial Statements 623.02
- Fraud 316.05–.06
- Gain Contingencies 337B
- General Requirements 801.12
- General Use 532.02
- Generally Accepted Accounting Principles 411.02
- Government Auditing Standards 801.08–.09
- Hypothetical Transaction 625.04
- Illegal Acts 317.02
- Information and Communication 319.07; 319.47–.48
- Inherent Risk 319.63
- Interim Information 722.01–.02
- Internal Control 319.06
- Interpretive Publications 150.05
- Issuers 9508.85–.88
- Known Questioned Costs 801.18
- Legal Specialist 9336.03
- Letters for Underwriters 634.12
- Likely Questioned Costs 801.18
- Loss Contingencies 337B
- Management 380.13
- Material Misstatement 319.46; 9312.01–.17
- Material Weakness 325.15
- Materiality 312.10
- Maximum Level 319.64
- Misstatement 9312.01–.04
- Misstatement, Known 312.34
- Misstatement, Likely 312.34
- Misstatement in a Financial Statement Assertion 319.63

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

TERMINOLOGY—continued

- Misstatements Arising From Fraudulent Financial Reporting 316.85
- Misstatements Arising From Misappropriation of Assets 316.85
- Monitoring 319.07; 319.54
- Nonissuers 9508.85–88
- Offering Document 9623.83
- Operating Effectiveness 319.27
- Organization-Wide Audit 801.01
- Personnel 311.02
- Placed in Operation 319.27
- Predecessor Auditor 315.02
- Professional Skepticism 230.07; 316.13
- Program-Specific Audit 801.01
- Public Business Enterprises 9326.28–41
- Public Distribution 9623.51
- Public Entity 504.02
- Public Record 623.05; 9623.51
- Quality Control, System of 161.02
- Reasonable Assurance 230.10–13
- Reaudit 315.14
- Recipient 801.04
- Regulator 9339.01
- Related Parties 334.01
- Report on Controls Placed in Operation 324.02
- Reportable Conditions 325.02
- Reporting Accountant 625.01; 9625.04
- Restricted Use 532.03
- Risk Assessment 319.07; 319.37
- Sampling Risk 350.12
- SEC Engagement 380.01
- Service Auditor 324.02
- Service Organizations 324.02
- Single Audit 801.01
- Specialists 336.01; 9326.06–23
- Specific Requirements 801.13
- Subrecipient 801.04
- Subsequent Events 560.01
- Subsequent Events for Service Organizations—Two Types Defined 324.57–59
- Successor Auditor 315.02
- Test of Controls 319.76
- Tolerable Misstatement 350.18
- Tolerable Rate 350.34
- U.S. Entity 534.01
- Uncertainties 508.29
- Underwriters 634.14
- User Auditor 324.01
- User Organizations 324.02
- Working Papers 339.01
- Written Report 625.01

TESTS OF CONTROLS

- Assessing Control Risk 319.68; 319.70
- Audit Sampling 350.08–10; 350.12–14; 350.31–43; 9350.02
- Defined 319.76
- Designing 319.25; 319.79
- Sample 350.33

TESTS OF CONTROLS—continued

- Documentation 319.83
- Dual-Purpose Samples 350.44
- Effectiveness of Design 319.75–76; 319.80; 319.83
- Evidential Matter 319.03; 319.75; 319.84–91; 319.96–100; 326.14
- Fair Value Audit Considerations 328.23–42
- Financial Statement Assertions 319.75
- Modifying 319.104
- Objective 319.84; 319.108
- Operating Effectiveness 319.75–76; 319.80; 319.83
- Performing 319.75–79
- Planning 319.65–69; 319.85
- Risk Assessment 312.31; 326.14; 350.08–14
- Service Organizations 324.41
- Use of IT Processing 319.78–79

TIME PERIODS

- Letters for Underwriters 634.45

TIMELINESS

- Audit Procedures 311.03–05; 313.04–07; 313.10
- Cause for Legal Action 337.04
- Communication Between Auditors 9334.12–13; 9543.08–17
- Communication With Audit Committee 380.04–05
- Evidential Matter 319.96–99; 326.02; 326.23
- Interim Dates 9326.01–05
- Lawyers' Responses to Inquiries 9337.01–05
- Scheduling Audit Work 310.03–04; 311.12; 9508.01–04
- Standard of Field Work 310.03; 311.03–05
- Substantive Tests 313.01–10

TRAINING AND EDUCATION

- General Standard 150.02; 210.01–05
- Income Taxes 9326.06–23
- Loss Reserve Matters 336.07
- Qualifications 110.04–05; 336.01
- Statistical Sampling 350.46

TRANSACTIONS

- Analytical Procedures 312.35; 313.02; 313.08
- Assertions by Management 326.03–08
- Audit Risk and Materiality 312.24–33; 312.39–41; 9312.01–17
- Auditor's Consideration of Management's Adoption of Accounting Principles for New Types 9411.11–15
- Estimation 312.36
- Fair Value, Subsequent Review of 328.41–42
- Intercompany—See Intercompany Transactions

AU Topical Index

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

TRANSACTIONS—continued

- Interim Testing 313.02; 313.07–.08
- Knowledge of Transactions 110.03;
 311.06–.10
- Material Misstatements 312.17–.20;
 312.35; 9312.01–.17
- Prior Periods 315.12; 315.20
- Related Parties—See Related Parties
- Sampling—See Audit Sampling
- Substance v. Form 334.02; 411.06–.07;
 411.09
- Substantive Tests 312.32; 313.02;
 313.07–.08
- Tests of Details 313.02; 313.08
- Understanding Business
 Purpose 334.09–.10
- Unrecorded 313.09; 333.06
- Unusual Items—See Unusual Items

TRIAL BOARD

- Inquiries Concerning Members 543.10

TRUSTS

- Related Parties 334.01

U

UNASSERTED CLAIMS—See Claims

UNAUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Accounting and Review Services 504.02
- Departure From GAAP 504.11–.13; 711.13
- Disclaimer of Opinion 504.05–.18
- Fourth Quarter Interim Data 9504.01–.07
- Lack of Independence 9504.19–.22
- Letters for Underwriters—See Letters for Underwriters
- Long-Term Investments 508.24; 508.26
- Negative Assurance 504.19
- Presented With Audited
 Statements 504.14–.17
- SEC Filings 504.14
- Use of Accountant's Name 504.04;
 9504.15–.18

UNAUDITED INFORMATION

- Accounting and Review Services 504.02
- Business Combinations 508.28
- Condensed Financial
 Information 9504.15–.18
- Departure From GAAP 711.13
- Fair Value Disclosures 9342.08–.09
- Interim Financial Information 504.04;
 722.37; 722.44;
 722.49–.50
- Letters for Underwriters—See Letters for Underwriters
- Subsequent Events 332.33; 508.28
- Supplementary Information 551.04;
 551.13; 558.01–.11

UNCERTAINTIES

- Accounting Changes 9410.17
- Accounting Estimates 508.48–.49
- Accounting Principles 508.48

UNCERTAINTIES—continued

- Audit Risk 312.27
- Audit Sampling 350.07–.11
- Auditor's Report 508.29–.32
- Compliance Reports 623.21
- Definition 508.29
- Estimation—See Estimation
- Explanatory Language in
 Auditor's Report 341.13
- Financial Statements 337.14
- Going Concern Assumption 341.12–.13
- Illustrations
 Auditors' Reports 341.13
- Lawyers' Response to
 Audit Inquiry 9337.20–.23
- Letter to Client's Lawyer 9337.10–.16
- Income Taxes 9326.06–.23
- Liquidation Basis of Accounting 9508.34
- Litigation, Claims, and
 Assessments 337.04; 337.14;
 9337.06–.07; 9337.17–.23
- Loss Contingencies 9333.01–.04
- Materiality Considerations 508.47
- Opinion on Illegal Acts 317.21
- Reporting 508.69
- Resolution 508.69
- Violation of Debt Covenant 9410.17

UNDERWRITERS

- Definition 634.14
- Letters—See Letters for Underwriters

UNIFORMITY

- Components of a Business 543.10

UNITED STATES

- Reports, Other Auditors 543.10

UNQUALIFIED OPINION

- Balance-Sheet-Only Audit 508.34
- Condensed Financial Statements 552.06
- Departure From GAAP 508.14–.15;
 508.68–.69
- Emphasis of a Matter 508.19; 9342.03;
 9410.18
- Explanatory Language Added 508.11–.19;
 9342.07
- Fair Presentation 411.01–.18
- Fair Value Disclosures 9342.03–.07
- Illustrations 324.46; 508.69;
 552.06
- Individual Financial Statement 508.05
- Nonprofit Organizations 9623.49
- Precluded by Lawyer's Refusal 337.13
- Reference to Specialists 336.16
- Reports With Differing
 Opinions 508.67–.69
- Reports, Other Auditors 508.12–.13
- Scope Limitation 333.13–.14;
 508.22; 508.30;
 9326.06–.23
- Uncertainties 508.30
- Updated Reports 508.68–.69

AU Topical Index

References are to AU section and paragraph numbers.

UNUSUAL ITEMS

- Analytical Procedures 329.02; 329.06;
329.23
- Illegal Acts by Clients 317.01–25;
9333.01–04
- Interim Financial Information 313.07–08;
9326.01–05
- Related Party Transactions 334.08;
9334.14–15; 9543.04–07

USEFULNESS

- **Evidential Matter** 326.21; 326.24;
 9326.01-.05

USERS

- Reports on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 9550.14–15
- Service Organizations . . 324.02; 324.05–21

UTILITIES, PUBLIC

- Departures From GAAP 544.02-.04

V

VALIDITY—See Representational Faithfulness

VALUATION—Also see Fair Value

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| • Assertions by Management | 326.03–07 |
| • Disclosure | 332.08 |
| • Evidential Matter | 332.01 |
| • Fair Value Disclosures | 328.01–51;
9342.01–10 |
| • Fair Value Measurements | 328.01–51 |
| • Fair Value Model | 328.26–39 |
| • Fair Value of Securities | 332.05; 332.17 |
| • Investments | 332.08; 332.17;
332.21; 332.26–48 |
| • Matters Requiring Specialists | 336.07 |

VIOLATIONS OF LAW—See Illegal Acts

W

WAREHOUSES—See Public Warehouses

WARRANTIES—See Guarantees and Warranties

WITHDRAWAL FROM AUDIT

ENGAGEMENT—See Audit Engagement

WORKING CAPITAL

- Lack of Sufficient Capital 334.06

WORKING PAPERS—Also see Audit

Documentation

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| • Access to Other Auditor's | 9334.14–15 |
| • Assessed Level of Control Risk. | 319.83 |
| • Documentation of Oral
Communication | 380.03; 801.23 |
| • Evidential Matter. | 326.16–20 |
| • Internal Control. | 319.61 |
| • Letters for Underwriters | 634.20 |
| • Litigation, Claims, and
Assessments. | 337.10 |
| • Nonaudit Services | 9311.01–03 |
| • Omitted Auditing Procedures | 390.02; |
| | 390.04 |
| • Planning of Audit Work | 311.04; 311.08; |
| | 9311.01–03 |
| • Related Parties. | 334.07 |
| • Review | 311.04; 311.08 |
| • Review by Predecessor
Auditor | 508.72 |
| • Review by Principal Auditor. | 543.12 |
| • Review by Successor Auditor | 315.11–13; |
| | 315.15; |
| | 315.19–20; |
| | 315.24–25 |
| • Understanding With Client. | 310.05 |

AT Section

**STATEMENTS ON STANDARDS FOR
ATTESTATION ENGAGEMENTS**

CONTENTS

	<i>Page</i>
Attestation Standards—Introduction	931
Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements	933



ATTESTATION STANDARDS

Introduction

The accompanying “attestation standards” provide guidance and establish a broad framework for a variety of attest services increasingly demanded of the accounting profession. The standards and related interpretive commentary are designed to provide professional guidelines that will enhance both consistency and quality in the performance of such services.

For years, attest services generally were limited to expressing a positive opinion on historical financial statements on the basis of an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). However, certified public accountants increasingly have been requested to provide, and have been providing, assurance on representations other than historical financial statements and in forms other than the positive opinion. In responding to these needs, certified public accountants have been able to generally apply the basic concepts underlying GAAS to these attest services. As the range of attest services has grown, however, it has become increasingly difficult to do so.

Consequently, the main objective of adopting these attestation standards and the related interpretive commentary is to provide a general framework for and set reasonable boundaries around the attest function. As such, the standards and commentary (a) provide useful and necessary guidance to certified public accountants engaged to perform new and evolving attest services and (b) guide AICPA standard-setting bodies in establishing, if deemed necessary, interpretive standards for such services.

The attestation standards are a natural extension of the ten generally accepted auditing standards. Like the auditing standards, the attestation standards deal with the need for technical competence, independence in mental attitude, due professional care, adequate planning and supervision, sufficient evidence, and appropriate reporting; however, they are much broader in scope. (The eleven attestation standards are listed below.) Such standards apply to a growing array of attest services. These services include, for example, reports on descriptions of systems of internal control; on descriptions of computer software; on compliance with statutory, regulatory, and contractual requirements; on investment performance statistics; and on information supplementary to financial statements. Thus, the standards have been developed to be responsive to a changing environment and the demands of society.

These attestation standards apply only to attest services rendered by a certified public accountant in the practice of public accounting—that is, a practitioner as defined in footnote 1 of paragraph .01.

The attestation standards do not supersede any of the existing standards in Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs), Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services (SSARs), and Statement on Standards for Accountants’ Services on Prospective Financial Information. Therefore, the practitioner who is engaged to perform an engagement subject to these existing standards should follow such standards.

Attestation Standards

General Standards

1. The engagement shall be performed by a practitioner having adequate technical training and proficiency in the attest function.
2. The engagement shall be performed by a practitioner having adequate knowledge of the subject matter.
3. The practitioner shall perform the engagement only if he or she has reason to believe that the subject matter is capable of evaluation against criteria that are suitable and available to users.
4. In all matters relating to the engagement, an independence in mental attitude shall be maintained by the practitioner.
5. Due professional care shall be exercised in the planning and performance of the engagement.

Standards of Fieldwork

1. The work shall be adequately planned and assistants, if any, shall be properly supervised.
2. Sufficient evidence shall be obtained to provide a reasonable basis for the conclusion that is expressed in the report.

Standards of Reporting

1. The report shall identify the subject matter or the assertion being reported on and state the character of the engagement.
2. The report shall state the practitioner's conclusion about the subject matter or the assertion in relation to the criteria against which the subject matter was evaluated.
3. The report shall state all of the practitioner's significant reservations about the engagement, the subject matter, and, if applicable, the assertion related thereto.
4. The report shall state that the use of the report is restricted to specified parties under the following circumstances:
 - When the criteria used to evaluate the subject matter are determined by the practitioner to be appropriate only for a limited number of parties who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria
 - When the criteria used to evaluate the subject matter are available only to specified parties
 - When reporting on subject matter and a written assertion has not been provided by the responsible party
 - When the report is on an attest engagement to apply agreed-upon procedures to the subject matter.

[As amended, effective for attest reports issued on or after June 30, 1999, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 9. As amended, effective when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 10.]

AT

STATEMENTS ON STANDARDS FOR ATTESTATION ENGAGEMENTS

Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs) are issued by senior technical bodies of the AICPA designated to issue pronouncements on attestation matters. Rule 202, Compliance With Standards, of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct requires an AICPA member who performs an attest engagement (the practitioner) to comply with such pronouncements. The practitioner should have sufficient knowledge of the SSAEs to identify those that are applicable to his or her attest engagement and should be prepared to justify departures from the SSAEs.

Attestation Interpretations are recommendations on the application of SSAEs in specific circumstances, including engagements for entities in specialized industries, issued under the authority of AICPA senior technical bodies. If the practitioner does not apply the attestation guidance included in an applicable attestation interpretation the practitioner should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the SSAE provisions addressed by such attestation guidance.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Section	Paragraph
101 Attest Engagements	.01-115
Applicability	.01-.06
Definitions and Underlying Concepts	.07-.15
Subject Matter	.07
Assertion	.08-10
Responsible Party	.11-14
Applicability to Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements	.15
The Relationship of Attestation Standards to Quality Control	
Standards	.16-18
General Standards	.19-41
Training and Proficiency	.19-20
Adequate Knowledge of Subject Matter	.21-22
Suitability and Availability of Criteria	.23-34
Suitability of Criteria	.24-32
Availability of Criteria	.33-34
Independence	.35-38
Due Professional Care	.39-41

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
101	Attest Engagements—continued	
	Standards of Fieldwork . . . . .	.42-.62
	Planning and Supervision . . . . .	.42-.50
	Obtaining Sufficient Evidence . . . . .	.51-.58
	Representation Letter . . . . .	.59-.62
	Standards of Reporting . . . . .	.63-.90
	Examination Reports . . . . .	.84-.87
	Review Reports . . . . .	.88-.90
	Other Information in a Client-Prepared Document Containing the Practitioner's Attest Report . . . . .	.91-.94
	Consideration of Subsequent Events in an Attest Engagement. . .	.95-.99
	Attest Documentation	100-[.108]
	Attest Services Related to Consulting Service Engagements. . . .	.109-.112
	Attest Services as Part of a Consulting Service Engagement . . . . .	.109-.111
	Subject Matter, Assertions, Criteria, and Evidence. . . . .	.112
	Effective Date . . . . .	.113
	Appendix A—Examination Reports . . . . .	.114
	Appendix B—Review Reports. . . . .	.115
9101	Attest Engagements: Attest Engagements Interpretations of Section 101	
	1. Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct (8/87) . . . . .	.01-.22
	2. Responding to Requests for Reports on Matters Relating to Solvency (5/88) . . . . .	.23-.33
	3. Applicability of Attestation Standards to Litigation Services (7/90) . . . . .	.34-.42
	4. Providing Access to or Copies of Attest Documentation to a Regulator (5/96) . . . . .	.43-.46
	5. Attest Engagements on Financial Information Included in XBRL Instance Documents (9/03) . . . . .	.47-.55
	6. Reporting on Attestation Engagements Performed in Accordance With <i>Government Auditing Standards</i> (12/04) . . . . .	.56-.58
201	Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements	.01-.48
	Introduction and Applicability . . . . .	.01-.02
	Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements . . . . .	.03-.04
	Standards . . . . .	.05
	Conditions for Engagement Performance . . . . .	.06-.07
	Agreement on and Sufficiency of Procedures. . . . .	.07
	Subject Matter and Related Assertions . . . . .	.08-.10
	Establishing an Understanding With the Client . . . . .	.10
	Nature, Timing, and Extent of Procedures . . . . .	.11-.23
	Responsibility of the Specified Parties . . . . .	.11
	Practitioner's Responsibility . . . . .	.12-.14
	Procedures to Be Performed . . . . .	.15-.18

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
201	Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements—continued
	Involvement of a Specialist 19-21
	Internal Auditors and Other Personnel 22-23
	Findings 24-26
	Working Papers [27-30]
	Reporting 31-36
	Required Elements 31
	Illustrative Report 32
	Explanatory Language 33
	Dating of Report 34
	Restrictions on the Performance of Procedures 35
	Adding Specified Parties (Nonparticipant Parties) 36
	Written Representations 37-39
	Knowledge of Matters Outside Agreed-Upon Procedures 40
	Change to an Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement From Another Form of Engagement 41-45
	Combined Reports Covering Both Restricted-Use and General-Use Subject Matter or Presentations 46
	Effective Date 47
	Appendix—Additional Illustrative Reports 48
301	Financial Forecasts and Projections 01-70
	Introduction 01-07
	Definitions 08
	Uses of Prospective Financial Statements 09-11
	Compilation of Prospective Financial Statements 12-28
	Working Papers [17]
	Reports on Compiled Prospective Financial Statements 18-25
	Modifications of the Standard Compilation Report 26-28
	Examination of Prospective Financial Statements 29-50
	Working Papers [32]
	Reports on Examined Prospective Financial Statements 33-37
	Modifications to the Practitioner's Opinion 38-44
	Other Modifications to the Standard Examination Report 45-50
	Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures to Prospective Financial Statements 51-56
	Reports on the Results of Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures 55-56
	Partial Presentations 57-58
	Other Information 59-66
	Effective Date 67
	Appendix A—Minimum Presentation Guidelines 68
	Appendix B—Training and Proficiency, Planning, and Procedures Applicable to Compilations 69

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
301	Financial Forecasts and Projections—continued
	Appendix C—Training and Proficiency, Planning, and Procedures Applicable to Examinations.
	.70
401	Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information .01-.22
	Introduction
	.01-.03
	Presentation of Pro Forma Financial Information
	.04-.06
	Conditions for Reporting
	.07
	Practitioner's Objective
	.08-.09
	Procedures
	.10
	Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information
	.11-.16
	Effective Date
	.17
	Appendix A—Report on Examination of Pro Forma Financial Information.
	.18
	Appendix B—Report on Review of Pro Forma Financial Information.
	.19
	Appendix C—Report on Examination of Pro Forma Financial Information at Year-End With a Review of Pro Forma Financial Information for a Subsequent Interim Date
	.20
	Appendix D—Report on Examination of Pro Forma Financial Information Giving Effect to a Business Combination to Be Accounted for as a Pooling of Interests
	.21
	Appendix E—Other Example Reports
	.22
501	Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting .01-.84
	Applicability
	.01-.12
	Conditions for Engagement Performance.
	.04-.09
	Other Attest Services.
	.10-.11
	Nonattest Services
	.12
	Components of an Entity's Internal Control.
	.13
	Limitations of an Entity's Internal Control
	.14-.15
	Examination Engagement
	.16-.34
	Planning the Engagement
	.18-.21
	General Considerations
	.18
	Multiple Locations
	.19
	Internal Audit Function.
	.20
	Documentation.
	.21
	Obtaining an Understanding of Internal Control
	.22
	Evaluating the Design Effectiveness of Controls
	.23-.26
	Testing and Evaluating the Operating Effectiveness of Controls.
	.27-.33
	Forming an Opinion
	.34
	Deficiencies in an Entity's Internal Control
	.35-.43
	Reportable Conditions.
	.36
	Material Weakness.
	.37-.40
	Communicating Reportable Conditions and Material Weaknesses
	.41-.43

Table of Contents

937

Section

Paragraph

501	Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting—continued	
	Written Representations . . . . .	.44-.45
	Reporting Standards . . . . .	.46-.76
	Restricting the Use of the Report . . . . .	.52
	Report Modifications . . . . .	.53
	Material Weaknesses . . . . .	.54-.57
	Practitioner's Report on Internal Control Identifies a Material Weakness and Is Included in the Same Document Containing the Audit Report . . . . .	.58
	Scope Limitations . . . . .	.59-.62
	Opinion Based in Part on the Report of Another Practitioner . . . . .	.63-.64
	Subsequent Events . . . . .	.65-.68
	Reporting on the Effectiveness of a Segment of the Entity's Internal Control . . . . .	.69
	Reporting on the Suitability of Design of the Entity's Internal Control . . . . .	.70-.71
	Reporting on Internal Control Based on Criteria Specified by a Regulatory Agency . . . . .	.72-.76
	Other Information in a Client-Prepared Document Containing the Practitioner's Report on the Effectiveness of the Entity's Internal Control . . . . .	.77
	Relationship of the Practitioner's Examination of an Entity's Internal Control to the Opinion Obtained in an Audit . . . . .	.78-.81
	Relationship to the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act . . . . .	.82
	Effective Date . . . . .	.83
	Appendix . . . . .	.84
9501	Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting: Attest Engagements Interpretations of Section 501	
	1. Pre-Award Surveys (2/97) . . . . .	.01-.08
601	Compliance Attestation	.01-.72
	Introduction and Applicability . . . . .	.01-.03
	Scope of Services . . . . .	.04-.08
	Conditions for Engagement Performance . . . . .	.09-.14
	Responsible Party . . . . .	.15
	Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement . . . . .	.16-.29
	Examination Engagement . . . . .	.30-.67
	Attestation Risk . . . . .	.31-.35
	Inherent Risk . . . . .	.33
	Control Risk . . . . .	.34
	Detection Risk . . . . .	.35
	Materiality . . . . .	.36-.37
	Performing an Examination Engagement . . . . .	.38-.39

Section		Paragraph
601	Compliance Attestation—continued	
	Obtaining an Understanding of the Specified Compliance Requirements . . . . .	.40
	Planning the Engagement . . . . .	.41-.44
	General Considerations . . . . .	.41
	Multiple Components . . . . .	.42
	Using the Work of a Specialist . . . . .	.43
	Internal Audit Function . . . . .	.44
	Consideration of Internal Control Over Compliance . . . . .	.45-.47
	Obtaining Sufficient Evidence . . . . .	.48-.49
	Consideration of Subsequent Events . . . . .	.50-.52
	Forming an Opinion . . . . .	.53
	Reporting . . . . .	.54-.62
	Report Modifications . . . . .	.63-.67
	Material Noncompliance . . . . .	.64-.67
	Representation Letter . . . . .	.68-.70
	Other Information in a Client-Prepared Document Containing Management’s Assertion About the Entity’s Compliance With Specified Requirements or the Effectiveness of the Internal Control Over Compliance . . . . .	.71
	Effective Date . . . . .	.72
701	Management’s Discussion and Analysis . . . . .	.01-.117
	General . . . . .	.01-.27
	Applicability . . . . .	.02-.04
	Conditions for Engagement Performance . . . . .	.05-.14
	Examination . . . . .	.05-.07
	Review . . . . .	.08-.14
	Engagement Acceptance Considerations . . . . .	.15
	Responsibilities of Management . . . . .	.16-.17
	Obtaining an Understanding of the SEC Rules and Regulations and Management’s Methodology for the Preparation of MD&A . . . . .	.18-.19
	Timing of Procedures . . . . .	.20
	Materiality . . . . .	.21-.22
	Inclusion of Pro Forma Financial Information . . . . .	.23
	Inclusion of External Information . . . . .	.24
	Inclusion of Forward-Looking Information . . . . .	.25-.26
	Inclusion of Voluntary Information . . . . .	.27
	Examination Engagement . . . . .	.28-.75
	Attestation Risk . . . . .	.29-.33
	Inherent Risk . . . . .	.31
	Control Risk . . . . .	.32
	Detection Risk . . . . .	.33

Section

Paragraph

701	Management's Discussion and Analysis—continued	
	Nature of Assertions . . . . .	.34-.39
	Performing an Examination Engagement . . . . .	.40-.41
	Planning the Engagement . . . . .	.42-.48
	General Considerations . . . . .	.42-.43
	Consideration of Audit Results . . . . .	.44-.45
	Multiple Components . . . . .	.46
	Using the Work of a Specialist . . . . .	.47
	Internal Audit Function . . . . .	.48
	Consideration of Internal Control Applicable to the Preparation of MD&A . . . . .	.49-.58
	Obtaining Sufficient Evidence . . . . .	.59-.64
	Testing Completeness . . . . .	.61
	Nonfinancial Data . . . . .	.62-.64
	Consideration of the Effect of Events Subsequent to the Balance-Sheet Date . . . . .	.65-.66
	Forming an Opinion . . . . .	.67
	Reporting . . . . .	.68-.75
	Dating . . . . .	.70
	Report Modifications . . . . .	.71-.73
	Reference to Report of Another Practitioner . . . . .	.74
	Emphasis of a Matter . . . . .	.75
	Review Engagement . . . . .	.76-.91
	Planning the Engagement . . . . .	.77
	Consideration of Internal Control Applicable to the Preparation of MD&A . . . . .	.78
	Application of Analytical Procedures and Inquiries . . . . .	.79-.81
	Reporting . . . . .	.82-.91
	Dating . . . . .	.86
	Report Modifications . . . . .	.87-.90
	Emphasis of a Matter . . . . .	.91
	Combined Examination and Review on MD&A . . . . .	.92-.93
	When Practitioner Is Engaged Subsequent to the Filing of MD&A . . . . .	.94-.98
	When a Predecessor Auditor Has Audited Prior Period Financial Statements . . . . .	.99-.104
	Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors . . . . .	.102-.104
	Another Auditor Audits a Significant Part of the Financial Statements . . . . .	.105
	Responsibility for Other Information in Documents Containing MD&A . . . . .	.106
	Communications With the Audit Committee . . . . .	.107-.109

Section		Paragraph
701	Management’s Discussion and Analysis—continued	
	Obtaining Written Representations . . . . .	.110-.112
	Effective Date . . . . .	.113
	Appendix A—Examination Reports . . . . .	.114
	Appendix B—Review Reports. . . . .	.115
	Appendix C—Combined Reports . . . . .	.116
	Appendix D—Comparison of Activities Performed Under SAS No. 8, <i>Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements</i> [AU section 550], Versus a Review or an Examination Attest Engagement . . . . .	.117

AT Section 101

Attest Engagements

Source: SSAE No. 10; SSAE No. 11; SSAE No. 12.

See section 9101 for interpretations of this section.

Effective when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001, unless otherwise indicated.

Applicability

.01 This section applies to engagements, except for those services discussed in paragraph .04, in which a certified public accountant in the practice of public accounting¹ (hereinafter referred to as a *practitioner*) is engaged to issue or does issue an examination, a review, or an agreed-upon procedures report on subject matter, or an assertion about the subject matter (hereafter referred to as *the assertion*), that is the responsibility of another party.²

.02 This section establishes a framework for attest³ engagements performed by practitioners and for the ongoing development of related standards. For certain subject matter, specific attestation standards have been developed to provide additional requirements for engagement performance and reporting.

.03 When a practitioner undertakes an attest engagement for the benefit of a government body or agency and agrees to follow specified government standards, guides, procedures, statutes, rules, and regulations, the practitioner is obliged to follow those governmental requirements as well as the applicable attestation standards.

.04 Professional services provided by practitioners that are not covered by this SSAE include the following:

- a. Services performed in accordance with Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs)
- b. Services performed in accordance with Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services (SSARSs)
- c. Services performed in accordance with the Statement on Standards for Consulting Services (SSCS), such as engagements in which the practitioner's role is solely to assist the client (for example, acting as the company accountant in preparing information other than financial statements), or engagements in which a practitioner is engaged to testify as an expert witness in accounting, auditing, taxation, or other matters, given certain stipulated facts

¹ For a definition of the term *practice of public accounting*, see *Definitions* [ET section 92.25].

² See section 301, *Financial Forecasts and Projections*, paragraph .02, for additional guidance on applicability when engaged to provide an attest service on a financial forecast or projection.

³ The term *attest* and its variants, such as *attesting* and *attestation*, are used in a number of state accountancy laws, and in regulations issued by state boards of accountancy under such laws, for different purposes and with different meanings from those intended by this section. Consequently, the definition of *attest engagements* set out in paragraph .01, and the attendant meaning of *attest* and *attestation* as used throughout the section, should not be understood as defining these terms and similar terms, as they are used in any law or regulation, nor as embodying a common understanding of the terms which may also be reflected in such laws or regulations.

- d. Engagements in which the practitioner is engaged to advocate a client's position—for example, tax matters being reviewed by the Internal Revenue Service
- e. Tax engagements in which a practitioner is engaged to prepare tax returns or provide tax advice

.05 An attest engagement may be part of a larger engagement, for example, a feasibility study or business acquisition study may also include an examination of prospective financial information. In such circumstances, these standards apply only to the attest portion of the engagement.

.06 Any professional service resulting in the expression of assurance must be performed under AICPA professional standards that provide for the expression of such assurance. Reports issued by a practitioner in connection with other professional standards should be written to be clearly distinguishable from and not to be confused with attest reports. For example, a practitioner performing an engagement which is intended solely to assist an organization in improving its controls over the privacy of client data should not issue a report as a result of that engagement expressing assurance as to the effectiveness of such controls. Additionally, a report that merely excludes the words, "... was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants ..." but is otherwise similar to an examination, a review or an agreed-upon procedures attest report may be inferred to be an attest report.

Definitions and Underlying Concepts

Subject Matter

.07 The subject matter of an attest engagement may take many forms, including the following:

- a. Historical or prospective performance or condition (for example, historical or prospective financial information, performance measurements, and backlog data)
- b. Physical characteristics (for example, narrative descriptions, square footage of facilities)
- c. Historical events (for example, the price of a market basket of goods on a certain date)
- d. Analyses (for example, break-even analyses)
- e. Systems and processes (for example, internal control)
- f. Behavior (for example, corporate governance, compliance with laws and regulations, and human resource practices)

The subject matter may be as of a point in time or for a period of time.

Assertion

.08 An assertion is any declaration or set of declarations about whether the subject matter is based on or in conformity with the criteria selected.

.09 A practitioner may report on a written assertion or may report directly on the subject matter. In either case, the practitioner should ordinarily obtain a written assertion in an examination or a review engagement. A written assertion may be presented to a practitioner in a number of ways, such as in a narrative description, within a schedule, or as part of a representation letter appropriately identifying what is being presented and the point in time or period of time covered.

.10 When a written assertion has not been obtained, a practitioner may still report on the subject matter; however, the form of the report will vary depending on the circumstances and its use should be restricted.⁴ In this section, see paragraphs .58 and .60 on gathering sufficient evidence and paragraphs .73 to .75 and .78 to .80 for reporting guidance.

Responsible Party

.11 The *responsible party* is defined as the person or persons, either as individuals or representatives of the entity, responsible for the subject matter. If the nature of the subject matter is such that no such party exists, a party who has a reasonable basis for making a written assertion about the subject matter may provide such an assertion (hereinafter referred to as the *responsible party*).

.12 The practitioner may be engaged to gather information to enable the responsible party to evaluate the subject matter in connection with providing a written assertion. Regardless of the procedures performed by the practitioner, the responsible party must accept responsibility for its assertion and the subject matter and must not base its assertion solely on the practitioner's procedures.⁵

.13 Because the practitioner's role in an attest engagement is that of an *attester*, the practitioner should not take on the role of the responsible party in an attest engagement. Therefore, the need to clearly identify a responsible party is a prerequisite for an attest engagement. A practitioner may accept an engagement to perform an examination, a review or an agreed-upon procedures engagement on subject matter or an assertion related thereto provided that one of the following conditions is met.

- a. The party wishing to engage the practitioner is responsible for the subject matter, or has a reasonable basis for providing a written assertion about the subject matter if the nature of the subject matter is such that a responsible party does not otherwise exist.
- b. The party wishing to engage the practitioner is not responsible for the subject matter but is able to provide the practitioner, or have a third party who is responsible for the subject matter provide the practitioner, with evidence of the third party's responsibility for the subject matter.

.14 The practitioner should obtain written acknowledgment or other evidence of the responsible party's responsibility for the subject matter, or the written assertion, as it relates to the objective of the engagement. The responsible party can acknowledge that responsibility in a number of ways, for example, in an engagement letter, a representation letter, or the presentation of the subject matter, including the notes thereto, or the written assertion. If the practitioner is not able to directly obtain written acknowledgment, the practitioner should obtain other evidence of the responsible party's responsibility for the subject matter (for example, by reference to legislation, a regulation, or a contract).

⁴ When the practitioner is unable to perform the inquiry and analytical or other procedures that he or she considers necessary to achieve the limited assurance contemplated by a review, or when the client is the responsible party and does not provide the practitioner with a written assertion, the review will be incomplete. A review that is incomplete is not an adequate basis for issuing a review report and, accordingly, the practitioner should withdraw from the engagement.

⁵ See paragraph .112 regarding the practitioner's assistance in developing subject matter or criteria.

Applicability to Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements

.15 An agreed-upon procedures attest engagement is one in which a practitioner is engaged to issue a report of findings based on specific procedures performed on subject matter. The general, fieldwork, and reporting standards for attest engagements set forth in this section are applicable to agreed-upon procedures engagements. Because the application of these standards to agreed-upon procedures engagements is discussed in section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*, such engagements are not discussed further in this section.

The Relationship of Attestation Standards to Quality Control Standards

.16 The practitioner is responsible for compliance with the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' (AICPA's) Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs) in an attest engagement. Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards*, of the Code of Professional Conduct [ET section 202.01], requires members to comply with such standards when conducting professional services.

.17 A firm of practitioners has a responsibility to adopt a system of quality control in the conduct of a firm's attest practice.⁶ Thus, a firm should establish quality control policies and procedures to provide it with reasonable assurance that its personnel comply with the attestation standards in its attest engagements. The nature and extent of a firm's quality control policies and procedures depend on factors such as its size, the degree of operating autonomy allowed its personnel and its practice offices, the nature of its practice, its organization, and appropriate cost-benefit considerations. [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 12.]

.18 Attestation standards relate to the conduct of individual attest engagements; quality control standards relate to the conduct of a firm's attest practice as a whole. Thus, attestation standards and quality control standards are related and the quality control policies and procedures that a firm adopts may affect both the conduct of individual attest engagements and the conduct of a firm's attest practice as a whole. However, deficiencies in or instances of noncompliance with a firm's quality control policies and procedures do not, in and of themselves, indicate that a particular engagement was not performed in accordance with attestation standards. [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 12.]

General Standards

Training and Proficiency

.19 The first general standard is—*The engagement shall be performed by a practitioner having adequate technical training and proficiency in the attest function.*

⁶ The elements of quality control are identified in Statement on Quality Control Standards (SQCS) No. 2, *System of Quality Control for a CPA Firm's Accounting and Auditing Practice* [QC section 20]. A system of quality control is broadly defined as a process to provide the firm with reasonable assurance that its personnel comply with applicable professional standards and the firm's standards of quality. [As amended, effective September 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 12.]

.20 Performing attest services is different from preparing and presenting subject matter or an assertion. The latter involves collecting, classifying, summarizing, and communicating information; this usually entails reducing a mass of detailed data to a manageable and understandable form. On the other hand, performing attest services involves gathering evidence to support the subject matter or the assertion and objectively assessing the measurements and communications of the responsible party. Thus, attest services are analytical, critical, investigative, and are concerned with the basis and support for the subject matter or the assertion.

Adequate Knowledge of Subject Matter

.21 The second general standard is—*The engagement shall be performed by a practitioner having adequate knowledge of the subject matter.*

.22 A practitioner may obtain adequate knowledge of the subject matter through formal or continuing education, including self-study, or through practical experience. However, this standard does not necessarily require a practitioner to personally acquire all of the necessary knowledge in the subject matter to be qualified to express a conclusion. This knowledge requirement may be met, in part, through the use of one or more specialists on a particular attest engagement if the practitioner has sufficient knowledge of the subject matter (a) to communicate to the specialist the objectives of the work and (b) to evaluate the specialist's work to determine if the objectives were achieved.

Suitability and Availability of Criteria

.23 The third general standard is—*The practitioner shall perform the engagement only if he or she has reason to believe that the subject matter is capable of evaluation against criteria that are suitable and available to users.*

Suitability of Criteria

.24 Criteria are the standards or benchmarks used to measure and present the subject matter and against which the practitioner evaluates the subject matter.* Suitable criteria must have each of the following attributes:

- **Objectivity**—Criteria should be free from bias.
- **Measurability**—Criteria should permit reasonably consistent measurements, qualitative or quantitative, of subject matter.
- **Completeness**—Criteria should be sufficiently complete so that those relevant factors that would alter a conclusion about subject matter are not omitted.
- **Relevance**—Criteria should be relevant to the subject matter.

.25 Criteria that are established or developed by groups composed of experts that follow due process procedures, including exposure of the proposed criteria for public comment, ordinarily should be considered suitable. Criteria promulgated by a body designated by the AICPA Governing Council under the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct are, by definition, considered to be suitable.

.26 Criteria may be established or developed by the client, the responsible party, industry associations, or other groups that do not follow due process procedures or do not as clearly represent the public interest. To determine

* An example of suitable criteria are the Trust Services criteria (includes WebTrust and SysTrust) developed by the AICPA's Assurance Services Executive Committee. These criteria may be used when the subject matter of the engagement is the security, availability, processing integrity, online privacy, or confidentiality of a system. The Trust Services criteria are presented in sections 17,100 and 17,200 of the AICPA's *Technical Practice Aids*. [Footnote added by the Assurance Services Executive Committee, January 2003.]

whether these criteria are suitable, the practitioner should evaluate them based on the attributes described in paragraph .24.

.27 Regardless of who establishes or develops the criteria, the responsible party or the client is responsible for selecting the criteria and the client is responsible for determining that such criteria are appropriate for its purposes.

.28 The use of suitable criteria does not presume that all persons or groups would be expected to select the same criteria in evaluating the same subject matter. There may be more than one set of suitable criteria for a given subject matter. For example, in an engagement to express assurance about customer satisfaction, a responsible party may select as a criterion for customer satisfaction that all customer complaints are resolved to the satisfaction of the customer. In other cases, another responsible party may select a different criterion, such as the number of repeat purchases in the three months following the initial purchase.

.29 In evaluating the measurability attribute as described in paragraph .24, the practitioner should consider whether the criteria are sufficiently precise to permit people having competence in and using the same measurement criterion to be able to ordinarily obtain materially similar measurements. Consequently, practitioners should not perform an engagement when the criteria are so subjective or vague that reasonably consistent measurements, qualitative or quantitative, of subject matter cannot ordinarily be obtained. However, practitioners will not always reach the same conclusion because such evaluations often require the exercise of considerable professional judgment.

.30 For the purpose of assessing whether the use of particular criteria can be expected to yield reasonably consistent measurement and evaluation, consideration should be given to the nature of the subject matter. For example, *soft information*, such as forecasts or projections, would be expected to have a wider range of reasonable estimates than *hard* data, such as the calculated investment performance of a defined portfolio of managed investment products.

.31 Some criteria may be appropriate for only a limited number of parties who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria. For instance, criteria set forth in a lease agreement for override payments may be appropriate only for reporting to the parties to the agreement because of the likelihood that such criteria would be misunderstood or misinterpreted by parties other than those who have specifically agreed to the criteria. Such criteria can be agreed upon directly by the parties or through a designated representative. If a practitioner determines that such criteria are appropriate only for a limited number of parties, the use of the report should be restricted to those specified parties who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria.

.32 The third general standard in paragraph .23 applies equally regardless of the level of the attest service to be provided. Consequently, it is inappropriate to perform a review engagement if the practitioner concludes that an examination cannot be performed because competent persons using the same criteria would not be able to obtain materially similar evaluations.

Availability of Criteria

.33 The criteria should be available to users in one or more of the following ways:

- a. Available publicly
- b. Available to all users through inclusion in a clear manner in the presentation of the subject matter or in the assertion

- c. Available to all users through inclusion in a clear manner in the practitioner's report
- d. Well understood by most users, although not formally available (for example, "The distance between points A and B is twenty feet;" the criterion of distance measured in feet is considered to be well understood)
- e. Available only to specified parties; for example, terms of a contract or criteria issued by an industry association that are available only to those in the industry

.34 If criteria are only available to specified parties, the practitioner's report should be restricted to those parties who have access to the criteria as described in paragraphs .78 and .80.

Independence

.35 The fourth general standard is—*In all matters relating to the engagement, an independence in mental attitude shall be maintained by the practitioner.*⁷

.36 The practitioner should maintain the intellectual honesty and impartiality necessary to reach an unbiased conclusion about the subject matter or the assertion. This is a cornerstone of the attest function.

.37 In the final analysis, independence in mental attitude means objective consideration of facts, unbiased judgments, and honest neutrality on the part of the practitioner in forming and expressing conclusions. It implies not the attitude of an advocate or an adversary but an impartiality that recognizes an obligation for fairness. Independence in mental attitude presumes an undeviating concern for an unbiased conclusion about the subject matter or an assertion no matter what the subject matter or the assertion may be.

.38 The profession has established, through the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct, precepts to guard against the *presumption* of loss of independence. Presumption is stressed because the possession of intrinsic independence is a matter of personal quality rather than of rules that formulate certain objective tests. Insofar as these precepts have been incorporated in the profession's code, they have the force of professional law for the independent practitioner.

Due Professional Care

.39 The fifth general standard is—*Due professional care shall be exercised in the planning and performance of the engagement.*

.40 Due professional care imposes a responsibility on each practitioner involved with the engagement to observe each of the attestation standards. Exercise of due professional care requires critical review at every level of supervision of the work done and the judgment exercised by those assisting in the engagement, including the preparation of the report.

⁷ The practitioner performing an attest engagement should be *independent* pursuant to Rule 101, *Independence*, of the Code of Professional Conduct [ET section 101.01]. Interpretation No. 11, "Independence and the Performance of Professional Services Under the Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements and Statement on Auditing Standards No. 75, *Engagements to Apply Agreed-Upon Procedures to Specified Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement*," [ET section 101.13], to rule 101 [ET section 101.01] provides guidance about its application to certain attest engagements.

.41 *Cooley on Torts*, a legal treatise, describes the obligation for due care as follows:

Every man who offers his services to another and is employed assumes the duty to exercise in the employment such skill as he possesses with reasonable care and diligence. In all these employments where peculiar skill is requisite, if one offers his services, he is understood as holding himself out to the public as possessing the degree of skill commonly possessed by others in the same employment, and if his pretensions are unfounded, he commits a species of fraud upon every man who employs him in reliance on his public profession. But no man, whether skilled or unskilled, undertakes that the task he assumes shall be performed successfully, and without fault or error; he undertakes for good faith and integrity, but not for infallibility, and he is liable to his employer for negligence, bad faith, or dishonesty, but not for losses consequent upon mere errors of judgment.⁸

Standards of Fieldwork

Planning and Supervision

.42 The first standard of fieldwork is—*The work shall be adequately planned and assistants, if any, shall be properly supervised.*

.43 Proper planning and supervision contribute to the effectiveness of attest procedures. Proper planning directly influences the selection of appropriate procedures and the timeliness of their application, and proper supervision helps ensure that planned procedures are appropriately applied.

.44 Planning an attest engagement involves developing an overall strategy for the expected conduct and scope of the engagement. To develop such a strategy, practitioners need to have sufficient knowledge to enable them to understand adequately the events, transactions, and practices that, in their judgment, have a significant effect on the subject matter or the assertion.

.45 Factors to be considered by the practitioner in planning an attest engagement include the following:

- a. The criteria to be used
- b. Preliminary judgments about attestation risk⁹ and materiality for attest purposes
- c. The nature of the subject matter or the items within the assertion that are likely to require revision or adjustment
- d. Conditions that may require extension or modification of attest procedures
- e. The nature of the report expected to be issued

⁸ D. Haggard, *Cooley on Torts*, 472 (4th ed., 1932).

⁹ *Attestation risk* is the risk that the practitioner may unknowingly fail to appropriately modify his or her attest report on the subject matter or an assertion that is materially misstated. It consists of (a) the risk (consisting of *inherent risk* and *control risk*) that the subject matter or assertion contains deviations or misstatements that could be material and (b) the risk that the practitioner will not detect such deviations or misstatements (*detection risk*).

.46 The practitioner should establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed for each engagement.¹⁰ Such an understanding reduces the risk that either the practitioner or the client may misinterpret the needs or expectations of the other party. For example, it reduces the risk that the client may inappropriately rely on the practitioner to protect the entity against certain risks or to perform certain functions that are the client's responsibility. The understanding should include the objectives of the engagement, management's responsibilities, the practitioner's responsibilities, and limitations of the engagement. The practitioner should document the understanding in the working papers, preferably through a written communication with the client. If the practitioner believes an understanding with the client has not been established, he or she should decline to accept or perform the engagement.

.47 The nature, extent, and timing of planning will vary with the nature and complexity of the subject matter or the assertion and the practitioner's prior experience with management. As part of the planning process, the practitioner should consider the nature, extent, and timing of the work to be performed to accomplish the objectives of the attest engagement. Nevertheless, as the attest engagement progresses, changed conditions may make it necessary to modify planned procedures.

.48 Supervision involves directing the efforts of assistants who participate in accomplishing the objectives of the attest engagement and determining whether those objectives were accomplished. Elements of supervision include instructing assistants, staying informed of significant problems encountered, reviewing the work performed, and dealing with differences of opinion among personnel. The extent of supervision appropriate in a given instance depends on many factors, including the nature and complexity of the subject matter and the qualifications of the persons performing the work.

.49 Assistants should be informed of their responsibilities, including the objectives of the procedures that they are to perform and matters that may affect the nature, extent, and timing of such procedures. The practitioner with final responsibility for the engagement should direct assistants to bring to his or her attention significant questions raised during the attest engagement so that their significance may be assessed.

.50 The work performed by each assistant should be reviewed to determine whether it was adequately performed and to evaluate whether the results are consistent with the conclusion to be presented in the practitioner's report.

Obtaining Sufficient Evidence

.51 The second standard of fieldwork is—*Sufficient evidence shall be obtained to provide a reasonable basis for the conclusion that is expressed in the report.*

.52 Selecting and applying procedures that will accumulate evidence that is sufficient in the circumstances to provide a reasonable basis for the level of assurance to be expressed in the attest report requires the careful exercise of professional judgment. A broad array of available procedures may be applied in an attest engagement. In establishing a proper combination of procedures to appropriately restrict attestation risk, the practitioner should consider the following presumptions, bearing in mind that they are not mutually exclusive and may be subject to important exceptions.

¹⁰ See SQCS No. 2, paragraph 16 [QC section 20.16].

- a. Evidence obtained from independent sources outside an entity provides greater assurance about the subject matter or the assertion than evidence secured solely from within the entity.
- b. Information obtained from the independent attester's direct personal knowledge (such as through physical examination, observation, computation, operating tests, or inspection) is more persuasive than information obtained indirectly.
- c. The more effective the controls over the subject matter, the more assurance they provide about the subject matter or the assertion.

.53 Thus, in the hierarchy of available attest procedures, those that involve search and verification (for example, inspection, confirmation, or observation), particularly when using independent sources outside the entity, are generally more effective in restricting attestation risk than those involving internal inquiries and comparisons of internal information (for example, analytical procedures and discussions with individuals responsible for the subject matter or the assertion). On the other hand, the latter are generally less costly to apply.

.54 In an attest engagement designed to provide a high level of assurance (referred to as an *examination*), the practitioner's objective is to accumulate sufficient evidence to restrict attestation risk to a level that is, in the practitioner's professional judgment, appropriately low for the high level of assurance that may be imparted by his or her report. In such an engagement, a practitioner should select from all available procedures—that is, procedures that assess inherent and control risk and restrict detection risk—any combination that can restrict attestation risk to such an appropriately low level.

.55 In an attest engagement designed to provide a moderate level of assurance (referred to as a *review*), the objective is to accumulate sufficient evidence to restrict attestation risk to a moderate level. To accomplish this, the types of procedures performed generally are limited to inquiries and analytical procedures (rather than also including search and verification procedures).

.56 Nevertheless, there will be circumstances in which inquiry and analytical procedures (a) cannot be performed, (b) are deemed less efficient than other procedures, or (c) yield evidence indicating that the subject matter or the assertion may be incomplete or inaccurate. In the first circumstance, the practitioner should perform other procedures that he or she believes can provide him or her with a level of assurance equivalent to that which inquiries and analytical procedures would have provided. In the second circumstance, the practitioner may perform other procedures that he or she believes would be more efficient to provide him or her with a level of assurance equivalent to that which inquiries and analytical procedures would provide. In the third circumstance, the practitioner should perform additional procedures.

.57 The extent to which attestation procedures will be performed should be based on the level of assurance to be provided and the practitioner's consideration of (a) the nature and materiality of the information to be tested to the subject matter or the assertion taken as a whole, (b) the likelihood of misstatements, (c) knowledge obtained during current and previous engagements, (d) the responsible party's competence in the subject matter, (e) the extent to which the information is affected by the assenter's judgment, and (f) inadequacies in the responsible party's underlying data.

.58 As part of the attestation procedures, the practitioner considers the written assertion ordinarily provided by the responsible party. If a written

assertion cannot be obtained from the responsible party, the practitioner should consider the effects on his or her ability to obtain sufficient evidence to form a conclusion about the subject matter. When the practitioner's client is the responsible party, a failure to obtain a written assertion should result in the practitioner concluding that a scope limitation exists.¹¹ When the practitioner's client is not the responsible party and a written assertion is not provided, the practitioner may be able to conclude that he or she has sufficient evidence to form a conclusion about the subject matter.

Representation Letter

.59 During an attest engagement, the responsible party makes many representations to the practitioner, both oral and written, in response to specific inquiries or through the presentation of subject matter or an assertion. Such representations from the responsible party are part of the evidential matter the practitioner obtains.

.60 Written representations from the responsible party ordinarily confirm representations explicitly or implicitly given to the practitioner, indicate and document the continuing appropriateness of such representations, and reduce the possibility of misunderstanding concerning the matters that are the subject of the representations. Accordingly, in an examination or a review engagement, a practitioner should consider obtaining a representation letter from the responsible party. Examples of matters that might appear in such a representation letter include the following:¹²

- a. A statement acknowledging responsibility for the subject matter and, when applicable, the assertion
- b. A statement acknowledging responsibility for selecting the criteria, where applicable
- c. A statement acknowledging responsibility for determining that such criteria are appropriate for its purposes, where the responsible party is the client
- d. The assertion about the subject matter based on the criteria selected
- e. A statement that all known matters contradicting the assertion and any communication from regulatory agencies affecting the subject matter or the assertion have been disclosed to the practitioner
- f. Availability of all records relevant to the subject matter
- g. A statement that any known events subsequent to the period (or point in time) of the subject matter being reported on that would have a material effect on the subject matter (or, if applicable, the assertion) have been disclosed to the practitioner
- h. Other matters as the practitioner deems appropriate

¹¹ When the client is the responsible party, it is presumed that the client will be capable of providing the practitioner with a written assertion regarding the subject matter. Failure to provide the written assertion in this circumstance is a client-imposed limitation on the practitioner's evidence-gathering efforts. In an examination, the practitioner should modify the report for the scope limitation. In a review engagement, such a scope limitation results in an incomplete review and the practitioner should withdraw from the engagement.

¹² Specific written representations will depend on the circumstances of the engagement (for example, whether the client is the responsible party) and the nature of the subject matter and the criteria. For example, when the client is not the responsible party but has selected the criteria, the practitioner might obtain the representation regarding responsibility for selection of the criteria from the client rather than the responsible party (see paragraph .61).

.61 When the client is not the responsible party, the practitioner should consider obtaining a letter of written representations from the client as part of the attest engagement. Examples of matters that might appear in such a representation letter include the following:

- a. A statement that any known events subsequent to the period (or point in time) of the subject matter being reported on that would have a material effect on the subject matter (or, if applicable, the assertion) have been disclosed to the practitioner
- b. A statement acknowledging the client's responsibility for selecting the criteria, where applicable
- c. A statement acknowledging the client's responsibility for determining that such criteria are appropriate for its purposes
- d. Other matters as the practitioner deems appropriate

.62 If the responsible party or the client refuses to furnish all written representations that the practitioner deems necessary, the practitioner should consider the effects of such a refusal on his or her ability to issue a conclusion about the subject matter. If the practitioner believes that the representation letter is necessary to obtain sufficient evidence to issue a report, the responsible party's or the client's refusal to furnish such evidence in the form of written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of an examination sufficient to preclude an unqualified opinion and is ordinarily sufficient to cause the practitioner to disclaim an opinion or withdraw from an examination engagement. However, based on the nature of the representations not obtained or the circumstances of the refusal, the practitioner may conclude, in an examination engagement, that a qualified opinion is appropriate. Further, the practitioner should consider the effects of the refusal on his or her ability to rely on other representations. When a scope limitation exists in a review engagement, the practitioner should withdraw from the engagement. (See paragraph .75.)

Standards of Reporting

.63 The first standard of reporting is—*The report shall identify the subject matter or the assertion being reported on and state the character of the engagement.*

.64 The practitioner who accepts an attest engagement should issue a report on the subject matter or the assertion or withdraw from the attest engagement. If the practitioner is reporting on the assertion, the assertion should be bound with or accompany the practitioner's report or the assertion should be clearly stated in the practitioner's report.¹³

.65 The statement of the character of an attest engagement includes the following two elements: (a) a description of the nature and scope of the work performed and (b) a reference to the professional standards governing the engagement. The terms *examination* and *review* should be used to describe engagements to provide, respectively, a high level and a moderate level of assurance. The reference to professional standards should be accomplished by referring to "attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants."

¹³ The use of a "hot link" within the practitioner's report to management's assertion, such as might be used in a WebTrustSM report, would meet this requirement.

.66 The second standard of reporting is—*The report shall state the practitioner's conclusion about the subject matter or the assertion in relation to the criteria against which the subject matter was evaluated.* However, if conditions exist that, individually or in combination, result in one or more material misstatements or deviations from the criteria, the practitioner should modify the report and, to most effectively communicate with the reader of the report, should ordinarily express his or her conclusion directly on the subject matter,¹⁴ not on the assertion.

.67 The practitioner should consider the concept of materiality in applying this standard. In expressing a conclusion, the practitioner should consider an omission or a misstatement to be material if the omission or misstatement—individually or when aggregated with others—is such that a reasonable person would be influenced by the omission or misstatement. The practitioner should consider both qualitative and quantitative aspects of omissions and misstatements.

.68 The term *general use* applies to attest reports that are not restricted to specified parties. General-use attest reports should be limited to two levels of assurance: one based on a restriction of attestation risk to an appropriately low level (an *examination*) and the other based on a restriction of attestation risk to a moderate level (a *review*). In an engagement to achieve a high level of assurance (an *examination*), the practitioner's conclusion should be expressed in the form of an opinion. When attestation risk has been restricted only to a moderate level (a *review*), the conclusion should be expressed in the form of negative assurance.

.69 A practitioner may report on subject matter or an assertion at multiple dates or covering multiple periods during which criteria have changed (for example, a report on comparative information). In those circumstances, the practitioner should determine whether the criteria are clearly stated or described for each of the dates or periods, and whether the changes have been adequately disclosed.

.70 If the criteria used for the subject matter for the current date or period differ from those criteria used for the subject matter for a preceding date or period and the subject matter for the prior date or period is not presented, the practitioner should consider whether the changes in criteria are likely to be significant to users of the report. If so, the practitioner should determine whether the criteria are clearly stated or described and the fact that the criteria have changed is disclosed. (See paragraphs .76 and .77.)

.71 The third standard of reporting is—*The report shall state all of the practitioner's significant reservations about the engagement, the subject matter, and, if applicable, the assertion related thereto.*

.72 *Reservations about the engagement* refers to any unresolved problem that the practitioner had in complying with these attestation standards, interpretive standards, or the specific procedures agreed to by the specified parties. The practitioner should not express an unqualified conclusion unless the engagement has been conducted in accordance with the attestation standards. Such standards will not have been complied with if the practitioner has been unable to apply all the procedures that he or she considers necessary in the circumstances.

.73 Restrictions on the scope of an engagement, whether imposed by the client or by such other circumstances as the timing of the work or the inability

¹⁴ Specific standards may require that the practitioner express his or her conclusion directly on the subject matter. For example, if management states in its assertion that a material weakness exists in the entity's internal control over financial reporting, the practitioner should state his or her opinion directly on the effectiveness of internal control, not on management's assertion related thereto.

to obtain sufficient evidence, may require the practitioner to qualify the assurance provided, to disclaim any assurance, or to withdraw from the engagement. For example, if the practitioner's client is the responsible party, a failure to obtain a written assertion should result in the practitioner concluding that a scope limitation exists. (See paragraph .58.)

.74 The practitioner's decision to provide a qualified opinion, to disclaim an opinion, or to withdraw because of a scope limitation in an examination engagement depends on an assessment of the effect of the omitted procedure(s) on his or her ability to express assurance. This assessment will be affected by the nature and magnitude of the potential effects of the matters in question, and by their significance to the subject matter or the assertion. If the potential effects are pervasive to the subject matter or the assertion, a disclaimer or withdrawal is more likely to be appropriate. When restrictions that significantly limit the scope of the engagement are imposed by the client or the responsible party, the practitioner generally should disclaim an opinion or withdraw from the engagement. The reasons for a qualification or disclaimer should be described in the practitioner's report.

.75 In a review engagement, when the practitioner is unable to perform the inquiry and analytical or other procedures he or she considers necessary to achieve the limited assurance contemplated by a review, or when the client is the responsible party and does not provide the practitioner with a written assertion, the review will be incomplete. A review that is incomplete is not an adequate basis for issuing a review report and, accordingly, the practitioner should withdraw from the engagement.

.76 *Reservations about the subject matter or the assertion* refers to any unresolved reservation about the assertion or about the conformity of the subject matter with the criteria, including the adequacy of the disclosure of material matters. They can result in either a qualified or an adverse opinion, depending on the materiality of the departure from the criteria against which the subject matter or the assertion was evaluated, or a modified conclusion in a review engagement.

.77 Reservations about the subject matter or the assertion may relate to the measurement, form, arrangement, content, or underlying judgments and assumptions applicable to the subject matter or the assertion and its appended notes, including, for example, the terminology used, the amount of detail given, the classification of items, and the bases of amounts set forth. The practitioner considers whether a particular reservation should affect the report given the circumstances and facts of which he or she is aware at the time.

.78 The fourth standard of reporting is—*The report shall state that the use of the report is restricted to specified parties under the following circumstances:*

- *When the criteria used to evaluate the subject matter are determined by the practitioner to be appropriate only for a limited number of parties who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria*
- *When the criteria used to evaluate the subject matter are available only to specified parties*
- *When reporting on subject matter and a written assertion has not been provided by the responsible party*
- *When the report is on an attest engagement to apply agreed-upon procedures to the subject matter*

.79 The need for restriction on the use of a report may result from a number of circumstances, including the purpose of the report, the criteria used in preparation of the subject matter, the extent to which the procedures performed are known or understood, and the potential for the report to be misunderstood when taken out of the context in which it was intended to be used. A practitioner should consider informing his or her client that restricted-use reports are not intended for distribution to nonspecified parties, regardless of whether they are included in a document containing a separate general-use report.^{15, 16} However, a practitioner is not responsible for controlling a client's distribution of restricted-use reports. Accordingly, a restricted-use report should alert readers to the restriction on the use of the report by indicating that the report is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than the specified parties.

.80 An attest report that is restricted as to use should contain a separate paragraph at the end of the report that includes the following elements:

- a. A statement indicating that the report is intended solely for the information and use of the specified parties
- b. An identification of the specified parties to whom use is restricted
- c. A statement that the report is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than the specified parties

An example of such a paragraph is the following.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of [the specified parties] and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

.81 Other attestation standards may specify situations that require restricted reports such as the following:

- a. A review report on management's discussion and analysis
- b. A report on prospective financial information when the report is intended for use by the responsible party alone, or by the responsible party and third parties with whom the responsible party is negotiating directly, as described in section 301, *Financial Forecasts and Projections*, paragraph .10.

Furthermore, nothing in this section precludes a practitioner from restricting the use of any report.

.82 If a practitioner issues a single combined report covering both (a) subject matter or presentations that require a restriction on use to specified parties and (b) subject matter or presentations that ordinarily do not require such a restriction, the use of such a single combined report should be restricted to the specified parties.

¹⁵ In some cases, restricted-use reports filed with regulatory agencies are required by law or regulation to be made available to the public as a matter of public record. Also, a regulatory agency as part of its oversight responsibility for an entity may require access to restricted-use reports in which they are not named as a specified party.

¹⁶ This section does not preclude the practitioner, in connection with establishing the terms of the engagement, from reaching an understanding with the client that the intended use of the report will be restricted, and from obtaining the client's agreement that the client and the specified parties will not distribute the report to parties other than those identified in the report.

.83 In some instances, a separate restricted-use report may be included in a document that also contains a general-use report. The inclusion of a separate restricted-use report in a document that contains a general-use report does not affect the intended use of either report. The restricted-use report remains restricted as to use, and the general-use report continues to be for general use.

Examination Reports

.84 When expressing an opinion, the practitioner should clearly state whether, in his or her opinion, (a) the subject matter is based on (or in conformity with) the criteria in all material respects or (b) the assertion is presented (or fairly stated), in all material respects, based on the criteria. Reports expressing an opinion may be qualified or modified for some aspect of the subject matter, the assertion or the engagement (see the third reporting standard). However, as stated in paragraph .66, if conditions exist that, individually or in combination, result in one or more material misstatements or deviations from the criteria, the practitioner should modify the report and, to most effectively communicate with the reader of the report, should ordinarily express his or her conclusion directly on the subject matter, not on the assertion. In addition, such reports may emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement, the subject matter, or the assertion. The form of the practitioner's report will depend on whether the practitioner opines on the subject matter or the assertion.

.85 The practitioner's examination report on subject matter should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. An identification of the subject matter and the responsible party
- c. A statement that the subject matter is the responsibility of the responsible party
- d. A statement that the practitioner's responsibility is to express an opinion on the subject matter based on his or her examination
- e. A statement that the examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, and, accordingly, included procedures that the practitioner considered necessary in the circumstances
- f. A statement that the practitioner believes the examination provides a reasonable basis for his or her opinion
- g. The practitioner's opinion on whether the subject matter is based on (or in conformity with) the criteria in all material respects
- h. A statement restricting the use of the report to specified parties under the following circumstances (see paragraphs .78 to .83):
 - (1) When the criteria used to evaluate the subject matter are determined by the practitioner to be appropriate only for a limited number of parties who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria

- (2) When the criteria used to evaluate the subject matter are available only to the specified parties
- (3) When a written assertion has not been provided by the responsible party (The practitioner should also include a statement to that effect in the introductory paragraph of the report.)
- i. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- j. The date of the examination report

Appendix A [paragraph .114], "Examination Reports," includes a standard examination report on subject matter. (See Example 1.)

.86 The practitioner's examination report on an assertion should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. An identification of the assertion and the responsible party (When the assertion does not accompany the practitioner's report, the first paragraph of the report should also contain a statement of the assertion.)
- c. A statement that the assertion is the responsibility of the responsible party
- d. A statement that the practitioner's responsibility is to express an opinion on the assertion based on his or her examination
- e. A statement that the examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, and, accordingly, included procedures that the practitioner considered necessary in the circumstances
- f. A statement that the practitioner believes the examination provides a reasonable basis for his or her opinion
- g. The practitioner's opinion on whether the assertion is presented (or fairly stated), in all material respects, based on the criteria (However, see paragraph .66.)
- h. A statement restricting the use of the report to specified parties under the following circumstances (see paragraphs .78 to .83):
 - (1) When the criteria used to evaluate the subject matter are determined by the practitioner to be appropriate only for a limited number of parties who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria
 - (2) When the criteria used to evaluate the subject matter are available only to the specified parties
- i. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- j. The date of the examination report

Appendix A [paragraph .114] includes a standard examination report on assertion. (See Example 2.)

.87 Nothing precludes the practitioner from examining an assertion but opining directly on the subject matter. (See Appendix A [paragraph .114], Example 3.)

Review Reports

.88 In a review report, the practitioner's conclusion should state whether any information came to the practitioner's attention on the basis of the work performed that indicates that (a) the subject matter is not based on (or in conformity with) the criteria or (b) the assertion is not presented (or fairly stated) in all material respects based on the criteria. (As discussed more fully in the commentary to the third reporting standard, if the subject matter or the assertion is not modified to correct for any such information that comes to the practitioner's attention, such information should be described in the practitioner's report.)

.89 The practitioner's review report on subject matter should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. An identification of the subject matter and the responsible party
- c. A statement that the subject matter is the responsibility of the responsible party
- d. A statement that the review was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants
- e. A statement that a review is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is an expression of opinion on the subject matter, and accordingly, no such opinion is expressed
- f. A statement about whether the practitioner is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the subject matter in order for it to be based on (or in conformity with), in all material respects, the criteria, other than those modifications, if any, indicated in his or her report
- g. A statement restricting the use of the report to specified parties under the following circumstances (see paragraphs .78 to .83):
 - (1) When the criteria used to evaluate the subject matter are determined by the practitioner to be appropriate only for a limited number of parties who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria
 - (2) When the criteria used to evaluate the subject matter are available only to the specified parties
 - (3) When a written assertion has not been provided by the responsible party and the responsible party is not the client (The practitioner should also include a statement to that effect in the introductory paragraph of the report.)
- h. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- i. The date of the review report

Appendix B [paragraph .115], "Review Reports," includes a standard review report on subject matter. (See Example 1.) Appendix B [paragraph .115] also includes a review report on subject matter that is the responsibility of a party other than client; the report is restricted as to use because a written assertion has not been provided by the responsible party. (See Example 2.)

.90 The practitioner's review report on an assertion should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. An identification of the assertion and the responsible party (When the assertion does not accompany the practitioner's report, the first paragraph of the report should also contain a statement of the assertion.)
- c. A statement that the assertion is the responsibility of the responsible party
- d. A statement that the review was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants
- e. A statement that a review is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is an expression of opinion on the assertion, and accordingly, no such opinion is expressed
- f. A statement about whether the practitioner is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the assertion in order for it to be presented (or fairly stated), in all material respects, based on (or in conformity with) the criteria, other than those modifications, if any, indicated in his or her report (However, see paragraph .66.)
- g. A statement restricting the use of the report to specified parties under the following circumstances (see paragraphs .78 to .83):
 - (1) When the criteria used to evaluate the subject matter are determined by the practitioner to be appropriate only for a limited number of parties who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria
 - (2) When the criteria used to evaluate the subject matter are available only to the specified parties
- h. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- i. The date of the review report

Appendix B [paragraph .115] includes a review report on an assertion that is restricted as to use because the criteria are available only to the specified parties. (See Example 3.)

Other Information in a Client-Prepared Document Containing the Practitioner's Attest Report¹⁷

.91 A client may publish various documents that contain information (hereinafter referred to as *other information*) in addition to the practitioner's attest report on subject matter (or on an assertion related thereto). Paragraphs .92 to .94 provide guidance to the practitioner when the other information is contained in (a) annual reports to holders of securities or beneficial interests,

¹⁷ Such guidance pertains only to other information in a client-prepared document. The practitioner has no responsibility to read information contained in documents of nonclients. Further, the practitioner is not required to read information contained in electronic sites, or to consider the consistency of other information in electronic sites with the original documents since electronic sites are a means of distributing information and are not "documents" as that term is used in this section. Practitioners may be asked by their clients to render attest services with respect to information in electronic sites, in which case, other attest standards may apply to those services.

annual reports of organizations for charitable or philanthropic purposes distributed to the public, and annual reports filed with regulatory authorities under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 or (b) other documents to which the practitioner, at the client's request, devotes attention. These paragraphs are not applicable when an attest report appears in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933. (See AU section 634, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties*, and AU section 711, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*.) Also, these paragraphs are not applicable to other information on which the practitioner or another practitioner is engaged to issue an opinion.

.92 The practitioner's responsibility with respect to other information in such a document does not extend beyond the information identified in his or her report, and the practitioner has no obligation to perform any procedures to corroborate any other information contained in the document. However, the practitioner should read the other information not covered by the practitioner's report or by the report of the other practitioner and consider whether it, or the manner of its presentation, is materially inconsistent with the information appearing in the practitioner's report. If the practitioner believes that the other information is inconsistent with the information appearing in the practitioner's report, he or she should consider whether the practitioner's report requires revision. If the practitioner concludes that the report does not require revision, he or she should request the client to revise the other information. If the other information is not revised to eliminate the material inconsistency, the practitioner should consider other actions, such as revising his or her report to include an explanatory paragraph describing the material inconsistency, withholding the use of his or her report in the document, or withdrawing from the engagement.

.93 If, while reading the other information for the reasons set forth in paragraph .92, the practitioner becomes aware of information that he or she believes is a material misstatement of fact that is not a material inconsistency as described in paragraph .92, he or she should discuss the matter with the client. In connection with this discussion, the practitioner should consider that he or she may not have the expertise to assess the validity of the statement, that there may be no standards by which to assess its presentation, and that there may be valid differences of judgment or opinion. If the practitioner concludes he or she has a valid basis for concern, the practitioner should propose that the client consult with some other party whose advice may be useful, such as the entity's legal counsel.

.94 If, after discussing the matter, the practitioner concludes that a material misstatement of fact remains, the action taken will depend on his or her judgment in the circumstances. The practitioner should consider steps such as notifying the client's management and audit committee in writing of his or her views concerning the information and consulting his or her legal counsel about further action appropriate in the circumstances.¹⁸

Consideration of Subsequent Events in an Attest Engagement

.95 Events or transactions sometimes occur subsequent to the point in time or period of time of the subject matter being tested but prior to the date

¹⁸ If the client does not have an audit committee, the practitioner should communicate with individuals whose authority and responsibility are equivalent to those of an audit committee, such as the board of directors, the board of trustees, an owner in a owner-managed entity, or those who engaged the practitioner.

of the practitioner's report that have a material effect on the subject matter and therefore require adjustment or disclosure in the presentation of the subject matter or assertion. These occurrences are referred to as *subsequent events*. In performing an attest engagement, a practitioner should consider information about subsequent events that comes to his or her attention. Two types of subsequent events require consideration by the practitioner.

.96 The first type consists of events that provide additional information with respect to conditions that existed at the point in time or during the period of time of the subject matter being tested. This information should be used by the practitioner in considering whether the subject matter is presented in conformity with the criteria and may affect the presentation of the subject matter, the assertion, or the practitioner's report.

.97 The second type consists of those events that provide information with respect to conditions that arose subsequent to the point in time or period of time of the subject matter being tested that are of such a nature and significance that their disclosure is necessary to keep the subject matter from being misleading. This type of information will not normally affect the practitioner's report if the information is appropriately disclosed.

.98 While the practitioner has no responsibility to detect subsequent events, the practitioner should inquire of the responsible party (and his or her client if the client is not the responsible party) as to whether they are aware of any subsequent events, through the date of the practitioner's report, that would have a material effect on the subject matter or assertion.¹⁹ If the practitioner has decided to obtain a representation letter, the letter ordinarily would include a representation concerning subsequent events. (See paragraphs .60 and .61.)

.99 The practitioner has no responsibility to keep informed of events subsequent to the date of his or her report; however, the practitioner may later become aware of conditions that existed at that date that might have affected the practitioner's report had he or she been aware of them. In such circumstances, the practitioner may wish to consider the guidance in AU section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*.

Attest Documentation²⁰

.100 The practitioner should prepare and maintain attest documentation, the form and content of which should be designed to meet the circumstances of the particular attest engagement.^[21] Attest documentation is the principal record of attest procedures applied, information obtained, and conclusions or findings reached by the practitioner in the engagement. The quantity, type, and content of attest documentation are matters of the practitioner's professional judgment. [As amended, effective for attest engagements when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

¹⁹ For certain subject matter, specific subsequent event standards have been developed to provide additional requirements for engagement performance and reporting. Additionally, a practitioner engaged to examine the design or effectiveness of internal control over items not covered by section 501, *Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*, or section 601, *Compliance Attestation*, should consider the subsequent events guidance set forth in sections 501.65–.68 and 601.50–.52.

²⁰ *Attest documentation* also may be referred to as *working papers*. [Footnote added, effective for attest engagements when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

^[21] [Footnote renumbered and deleted by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

.101 Attest documentation serves mainly to:

- a. Provide the principal support for the practitioner's report, including the representation regarding observance of the standards of field-work, which is implicit in the reference in the report to attestation standards.²²
- b. Aid the practitioner in the conduct and supervision of the attest engagement.

For examinations of prospective financial statements, attest documentation ordinarily should indicate that the process by which the entity develops its prospective financial statements was considered in determining the scope of the examination. [Paragraph added, effective for attest engagements when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

.102 Examples of attest documentation are work programs, analyses, memoranda, letters of confirmation and representation, abstracts or copies of entity documents, and schedules or commentaries prepared or obtained by the practitioner. Attest documentation may be in paper form, electronic form, or other media. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for attest engagements when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

.103 Attest documentation should be sufficient to (a) enable members of the engagement team with supervision and review responsibilities to understand the nature, timing, extent, and results of attest procedures performed, and the information obtained²³ and (b) indicate the engagement team member(s) who performed and reviewed the work. [Paragraph added, effective for attest engagements when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

.104 Attest documentation is the property of the practitioner, and some states recognize this right of ownership in their statutes. The practitioner should adopt reasonable procedures to retain attest documentation for a period of time sufficient to meet the needs of his or her practice and to satisfy any applicable legal or regulatory requirements for records retention.^{24, [25]} [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for attest engagements when the

²² However, there is no intention to imply that the practitioner would be precluded from supporting his or her report by other means in addition to attest documentation. [Footnote added, effective for attest engagements when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

²³ A firm of practitioners has a responsibility to adopt a system of quality control policies and procedures to provide the firm with reasonable assurance that its personnel comply with applicable professional standards, including attestation standards, and the firm's standards of quality in conducting individual attest engagements. Review of attest documentation and discussions with engagement team members are among the procedures a firm performs when monitoring compliance with the quality control policies and procedures that it has established. (Also, see paragraphs .17 and .18.) [Footnote added, effective for attest engagements when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

²⁴ The procedures should enable the practitioner to access electronic attest documentation throughout the retention period. [Footnote added, effective for attest engagements when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

[²⁵] [Footnote renumbered and deleted by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

.105 The practitioner has an ethical, and in some situations a legal, obligation to maintain the confidentiality of client information or information of the responsible party.²⁶ Because attest documentation often contains confidential information, the practitioner should adopt reasonable procedures to maintain the confidentiality of that information.[†] [Paragraph added, effective for attest engagements when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

.106 The practitioner also should adopt reasonable procedures to prevent unauthorized access to attest documentation. [Paragraph added, effective for attest engagements when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

.107 Certain attest documentation may sometimes serve as a useful reference source for the client, but it should not be regarded as a part of, or a substitute for, the client's records. [Paragraph renumbered and amended, effective for attest engagements when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

[.108] [Paragraph renumbered and deleted by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

Attest Services Related to Consulting Service Engagements

Attest Services as Part of a Consulting Service Engagement

.109 When a practitioner provides an attest service (as defined in this section) as part of a consulting service engagement, this SSAE applies only to the attest service. The SSCS applies to the balance of the consulting service engagement. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

.110 When the practitioner determines that an attest service is to be provided as part of a consulting service engagement, the practitioner should inform the client of the relevant differences between the two types of services and obtain concurrence that the attest service is to be performed in accordance with the appropriate professional requirements. The practitioner should take such actions because the professional requirements for an attest service differ from those for a consulting service engagement. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

²⁶ Also, see Rule 301, *Confidential Client Information*, of the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct [ET section 301.01]. [Footnote added, effective for attest engagements when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after December 15, 2002, by Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11.]

[†] **Note:** See the Attest Interpretation, "Providing Access to or Copies of Attest Documentation to a Regulator" (section 9101.43-.46).

.111 The practitioner should issue separate reports on the attest engagement and the consulting service engagement and, if presented in a common binder, the report on the attest engagement or service should be clearly identified and segregated from the report on the consulting service engagement. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

Subject Matter, Assertions, Criteria, and Evidence

.112 An attest service may involve subject matter, an assertion, criteria, or evidential matter developed during a concurrent or prior consulting service engagement. Subject matter or an assertion developed with the practitioner's advice and assistance as the result of such consulting services engagement may be the subject of an attest engagement, provided the responsible party accepts and acknowledges responsibility for the subject matter or assertion. (See paragraph .12.) Criteria developed with the practitioner's assistance may be used to evaluate subject matter in an attest engagement, provided such criteria meet the requirements of this section. Relevant information obtained in the course of a concurrent or prior consulting service engagement may be used as evidential matter in an attest engagement, provided the information satisfies the requirements of this section. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

Effective Date

.113 This section is effective when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001. Early application is permitted. [Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

Appendix A

Examination Reports

Example 1

This is a standard examination report on subject matter for general use. This report pertains to subject matter for which suitable criteria exist and are available to all users through inclusion in a clear manner in the presentation of the subject matter. (See paragraphs .78 to .83 for guidance on restricting the use of the report when criteria are available only to specified parties; see Example 4 for an illustration of such a report.) A written assertion has been obtained from the responsible party.

Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the *[identify the subject matter—for example, the accompanying schedule of investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX]*. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the schedule of investment returns. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting *[identify the subject matter—for example, XYZ Company's schedule of investment returns]* and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement or the subject matter.]

In our opinion, the schedule referred to above presents, in all material respects, *[identify the subject matter—for example, the investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX]* based on *[identify criteria—for example, the ABC criteria set forth in Note 1]*.

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 2

This report is a standard examination report on an assertion for general use. The report pertains to subject matter for which suitable criteria exist and are available to all users through inclusion in a clear manner in the presentation of the subject matter. (See paragraphs .78 to .83 for guidance on restricting the use of the report when criteria are available only to specified parties.) A written assertion has been obtained from the responsible party.

Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined management's assertion that *[identify the assertion—for example, the accompanying schedule of investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX is presented in accordance with ABC criteria set forth in Note 1]*. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the assertion based on our examination.

Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting management's assertion and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement or the assertion.]

In our opinion, management's assertion referred to above is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on *[identify established or stated criteria—for example, the ABC criteria set forth in Note 1]*.

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 3

This is an examination report for general use; the introductory paragraph states the practitioner has examined management's assertion but the practitioner opines directly on the subject matter (see paragraph .87). The report pertains to subject matter for which suitable criteria exist and are available to all users through inclusion in a clear manner in the presentation of the subject matter. (See paragraphs .78 to .83 for guidance on restricting the use of the report when criteria are available only to specified parties.) A written assertion has been obtained from the responsible party.

Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined management's assertion that *[identify the assertion—for example, the accompanying schedule of investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX is presented in accordance with the ABC criteria set forth in Note 1]*. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting *[identify the subject matter—for example, XYZ Company's schedule of investment returns]* and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement or the assertion.]

In our opinion, the schedule referred to above, presents, in all material respects, *[identify the subject matter—for example, the investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX]* based on *[identify criteria—for example, the ABC criteria set forth in Note 1]*.

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 4

This is an examination report on subject matter. Although suitable criteria exist, use of the report is restricted because the criteria are available only to specified parties. (See paragraph .34.) A written assertion has been obtained from the responsible party.

Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the accompanying schedule of investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the schedule of investment returns. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting *[identify the subject matter—for example, XYZ Company's schedule of investment returns]* and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement or the assertion.]

In our opinion, the schedule referred to above, presents, in all material respects, *[identify the subject matter—for example, the investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX]* based on the ABC criteria referred to in the investment management agreement between XYZ Company and DEF Investment Managers, Ltd., dated November 15, 20X1.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of XYZ Company and *[identify other specified parties—for example, DEF Investment Managers, Ltd.]* and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 5

This is an examination report with a qualified opinion because conditions exist that, individually or in combination, result in one or more material misstatements or deviations from the criteria; the report is for general use. The report pertains to subject matter for which suitable criteria exist and are available to all users through inclusion in a clear manner in the presentation of the subject matter. (See paragraphs .78 to .83 for guidance on restricting the use of the report when criteria are available only to specified parties.) A written assertion has been obtained from the responsible party.

Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the accompanying schedule of investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the schedule of investment returns. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting *[identify the subject matter—for example, XYZ Company's schedule of investment returns]* and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Our examination disclosed the following *[describe condition(s) that, individually or in the aggregate, resulted in a material misstatement or deviation from the criteria]*.

Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements

In our opinion, except for the material misstatement [*or deviation from the criteria*] described in the preceding paragraph, the schedule referred to above, presents, in all material respects, [*identify the subject matter—for example, the investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX*] based on [*identify criteria—for example, the ABC criteria set forth in Note 1*].

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 6

This is an examination report that contains a disclaimer of opinion because of a scope restriction. (See paragraph .74 for reporting guidance when there is a scope restriction.) The report pertains to subject matter for which suitable criteria exist and are available to all users through inclusion in a clear manner in the presentation of the subject matter.

Independent Accountant's Report

We were engaged to examine the accompanying schedule of investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the schedule of investment returns.

[Scope paragraph should be omitted.]

[Include paragraph to describe scope restrictions.]

Because of the restriction on the scope of our examination discussed in the preceding paragraph, the scope of our work was not sufficient to enable us to express, and we do not express, an opinion on whether the schedule referred to above presents, in all material respects, [*identify the subject matter—for example, the investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX*] based on [*identify criteria—for example, the ABC criteria set forth in Note 1*].

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 7

This is an examination report on subject matter that is the responsibility of a party other than the client. The report is restricted as to use since a written assertion has not been provided by the responsible party. (See paragraph .78.) The subject matter pertains to criteria that are suitable and are available to the client.

Independent Accountant's Report

To the Board of Directors

DEF Company:

We have examined the [*identify the subject matter—for example, the accompanying schedule of investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX*]. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the schedule of investment returns. XYZ management did not provide us a written assertion about their schedule of investment returns for the year ended December 31, 20XX. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting *[identify the subject matter—for example, XYZ Company's schedule of investment returns]* and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement or the subject matter.]

In our opinion, the schedule referred to above presents, in all material respects, *[identify the subject matter—for example, the investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX]* based on *[identify criteria—for example, the ABC criteria set forth in Note 1]*.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the management and board of directors of DEF Company and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

Appendix B

Review Reports

Example 1

This is a standard review report on subject matter for general use. The report pertains to subject matter for which suitable criteria exist and are available to all users through inclusion in a clear manner in the presentation of the subject matter. (See paragraphs .78 to .83 for guidance on restricting the use of the report when criteria are available only to specified parties.) A written assertion has been obtained from the responsible party.

Independent Accountant's Report

We have reviewed the *[identify the subject matter—for example, the accompanying schedule of investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX]*. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the schedule of investment returns.

Our review was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on *[identify the subject matter—for example, XYZ Company's schedule of investment returns]*. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement or the subject matter.]

Based on our review, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that the *[identify the subject matter—for example, schedule of investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX]* is not presented, in all material respects, in conformity with *[identify the criteria—for example, the ABC criteria set forth in Note 1]*.

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 2

This is a review report on subject matter that is the responsibility of a party other than the client. This review report is restricted as to use since a written assertion has not been provided by the responsible party. (See paragraph .78.) The subject matter pertains to criteria that are suitable and are available to the client.

Independent Accountant's Report

To the Board of Directors

DEF Company:

We have reviewed *[identify the subject matter—for example, the accompanying schedule of investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX]*. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the schedule of investment returns. XYZ Company's management did not provide us a written assertion about their schedule of investment returns for the year ended December 31, 20XX.

Our review was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on *[identify the subject matter—for example, XYZ Company's schedule of investment returns]*. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. *[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement or the subject matter.]*

Based on our review, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that *[identify the subject matter—for example, the schedule of investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX]* is not presented, in all material respects, in conformity with *[identify the criteria—for example, the ABC criteria set forth in Note 1]*.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the management and board of directors of DEF Company and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 3

This is a review report on an assertion. Although suitable criteria exist for the subject matter, the report is restricted as to use since the criteria are available only to specified parties; if the criteria are available as described in paragraph .33 (a) to (d), the paragraph restricting the use of the report would be omitted. A written assertion has been obtained from the responsible party.

Independent Accountant's Report

We have reviewed management's assertion that *[identify the assertion—for example, the accompanying schedule of investment returns of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX is presented in accordance with the ABC criteria referred to in Note 1]*. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the assertion.

Our review was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on management's assertion. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement or the assertion.]

Based on our review, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that management's assertion referred to above is not fairly stated, in all material respects, based on *[identify the criteria—for example, the ABC criteria referred to in the investment management agreement between XYZ Company and DEF Investment Managers, Ltd., dated November 15, 20X1]*.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of XYZ Company and *[identify other specified parties—for example, DEF Investment Managers, Ltd.]* and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

[Paragraph renumbered by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

AT Section 9101

Attest Engagements: Attest Engagements Interpretations of Section 101

1. Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct¹

.01 Question—Certain defense contractors have made a commitment to adopt and implement six principles of business ethics and conduct contained in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct (Initiatives)*. One of those principles concerns defense contractors' public accountability for their commitment to the Initiatives. That public accountability begins by the contractor completing an annual *Public Accountability Questionnaire (Questionnaire)*.

.02 Each of the participating signatory companies (signatories) completes a questionnaire concerning certain policies, procedures and programs which were to have been in place during the reporting period. The public accountability process requires signatories to perform internal audits and to provide officer certifications as to whether the responses to the *Questionnaire* are current and accurate.

.03 Alternatively, a defense contractor may request its independent public accountant (practitioner) to examine or review its responses to the *Questionnaire* for the purpose of expressing a conclusion about the appropriateness of those responses in a report. Would such an engagement be an attest engagement under section 101, *Attest Engagements*?

.04 Interpretation—Section 101 states that the attestation standards apply when a certified public accountant in the practice of public accounting is engaged to issue or does issue an examination, a review, or an agreed-upon procedures report on subject matter, or an assertion about the subject matter that is the responsibility of another party. When a practitioner is engaged by a defense contractor to provide an examination or a review report on the contractor's written responses to the questionnaire, such an engagement involves subject matter that is the responsibility of the defense contractor. Consequently, section 101 applies to such engagements.

.05 Question—Section 101.23 specifies that "the practitioner shall perform the engagement only if he or she has reason to believe that the subject matter is capable of evaluation against criteria that are suitable and available to users." What are the criteria against which such subject matter is to be evaluated and are such criteria suitable and available?

.06 Interpretation—The criteria for evaluating the defense contractor's responses are set forth primarily in the *Questionnaire* and the instructions thereto. The suitability of those criteria should be evaluated by assessing whether the criteria meet the characteristics discussed in section 101.24.

.07 The criteria set forth in the *Questionnaire* and its instructions will, when properly followed, be suitable. Although these should provide suitable

¹ Information regarding the Defense Industry Initiative on Business Ethics and Conduct (DII) is available at DII's website <http://www.dii.org>.

criteria, the *Questionnaire* and its instructions are not generally available. Therefore, the practitioner's report should normally be restricted. The availability requirement can be met if the defense contractor attaches the criteria to the presentation.

.08 Question—What is the nature of the procedures that should be applied to the *Questionnaire* responses?

.09 Interpretation—The objective of the procedures performed in either an examination or a review engagement is to obtain evidential matter that the defense contractor has designed and placed in operation policies and programs in a manner that supports the signatory's responses to each of the questions on the *Questionnaire* and that the policies and programs operated during the period covered by the *Questionnaire*. The objective does not include providing assurance about whether the defense contractor's policies and programs operated effectively to ensure compliance with the defense contractor's code of business ethics and conduct on the part of individual employees or about whether the defense contractor and its employees have complied with federal procurement laws. In an examination, the evidential matter should be sufficient to limit attestation risk to a level that is appropriately low for the high degree of assurance imparted by an examination report. In a review, this evidential matter should be sufficient to limit attestation risk to a moderate level.

.10 Examination procedures include obtaining evidential matter by reading relevant policies and programs, making inquiries of appropriate defense contractor personnel, inspecting documents and records, confirming defense contractor assertions with its employees or others, and observing activities. In an examination it will be necessary for a practitioner's procedures to go beyond simply reading relevant policies and programs and making inquiries of appropriate defense contractor personnel. Alternatively, review procedures are generally limited to reading relevant policies and procedures and making inquiries of appropriate defense contractor personnel. When applying examination or review procedures, the practitioner should assess the appropriateness (including the comprehensiveness) of the policies and programs supporting the signatory's responses to each of the questions on the *Questionnaire*.

.11 A particular defense contractor's policies and programs may vary from those of other defense contractors. As a result, evidential matter obtained from the procedures performed cannot be evaluated solely on a quantitative basis. Consequently, it is not practicable to establish only quantitative guidelines for determining the nature or extent of the evidential matter that is necessary to provide the assurance required in either an examination or a review. The qualitative aspects should also be considered.

.12 In determining the nature, timing, and extent of examination or review procedures, the practitioner should consider information obtained in the performance of other services for the defense contractor, for example, the audit of the defense contractor's financial statements. For multi-location defense contractors, whether policies and programs operated during the period should be evaluated for both the defense contractor's headquarters and for selected defense contracting locations. The practitioner may consider using the work of the defense contractor's internal auditors. The guidance in AU section 322, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, may be useful in that consideration.

.13 Examination procedures, and in some instances review procedures, may require access to information involving specific instances of actual or alleged noncompliance with laws. An inability to obtain access to such information

because of restrictions imposed by a defense contractor (for example, to protect attorney-client privilege) may constitute a scope limitation. Section 101.73 through .75 provides guidance in such situations. The practitioner should assess the effect of the inability to obtain access to such information on his or her ability to form a conclusion about whether the related policy or program operated during the period. If the defense contractor's reasons for not permitting access to the information are reasonable (for example, the information is the subject of litigation or a governmental investigation) and have been approved by an executive officer of the defense contractor, the occurrences of restricted access to information are few in number, and the practitioner has access to other information about that specific instance or about other instances that is sufficient to permit a conclusion to be formed about whether the related policy or program operated during the period, the practitioner ordinarily would conclude that it is not necessary to disclaim assurance.

.14 If the practitioner's scope of work has been restricted with respect to one or more questions, the practitioner should consider the implications of that restriction on the practitioner's ability to form a conclusion about other questions. In addition, as the nature or number of questions on which the defense contractor has imposed scope limitations increases in significance, the practitioner should consider whether to withdraw from the engagement.

.15 Question—What is the form of report that should be issued to meet the requirements of section 101?

.16 Interpretation—The standards of reporting in section 101 provide guidance about report content and wording and the circumstances that may require report modification. Appendix A and Appendix B [paragraphs .21 and .22] provide illustrative reports appropriate for various circumstances. Section 101.66 permits the practitioner to report directly on the subject matter or on management's assertion. In either case, the practitioner should ordinarily obtain a written assertion. An illustrative defense contractor assertion is also presented in Appendix A and Appendix B [paragraphs .21 and .22].

.17 The engagements addressed in this Interpretation do not include providing assurance about whether the defense contractor's policies and programs operated effectively to ensure compliance with the defense contractor's code of business ethics and conduct on the part of individual employees or about whether the defense contractor and its employees have complied with federal procurement laws. The practitioner's report should explicitly disclaim an opinion on the extent of such compliance.

.18 Because variations in individual performance and interpretation will affect the operation of the defense contractor's policies and programs during the period, adherence to all such policies and programs in every case may not be possible. In determining whether a reservation about a response in the *Questionnaire* is sufficiently significant to result in an opinion modified for an exception to that response, the practitioner should consider the nature, causes, patterns, and pervasiveness of the instances in which the policies and programs did not operate as designed and their implications for that response in the *Questionnaire*.

.19 When scope limitations have precluded the practitioner from forming an opinion on the responses to one or more questions, the practitioner's report should describe all such scope restrictions. If the defense contractor imposed such a scope limitation after the practitioner had begun performing procedures, that fact should be stated in the report.

.20 A defense contractor may request the practitioner to communicate to management, the board of directors, or one of its committees, either orally or in writing, conditions noted that do not constitute significant reservations about the answers to the *Questionnaire* but that might nevertheless be of value to management. Agreed-upon arrangements between the practitioner and the defense contractor to communicate conditions noted may include, for example, the reporting of matters of less significance than those contemplated by the criteria, the existence of conditions specified by the defense contractor, the results of further investigation of matters noted to identify underlying causes, or suggestions for improvements in various policies or programs. Under these arrangements, the practitioner may be requested to visit specific locations, assess the effectiveness of specific policies or programs, or undertake specific procedures not otherwise planned. In addition, the practitioner is not precluded from communicating matters believed to be of value, even if no specific request has been made.

Appendix A

Illustrative Defense Contractor Assertions and Examination Reports

Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct

Illustration 1: Unqualified Opinion Unrestricted With Criteria Attached to the Presentation

Defense Contractor Assertion

Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on *Business Ethics and Conduct* for the period from _____ to _____.

The affirmative responses in the accompanying *Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct with Responses by the XYZ Company for the period from _____ to _____* are based on policies and programs in operation for that period and are appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the Questionnaire.

Attachments:

Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct

Instructions and Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct with Responses by the XYZ Company for the period from _____ to _____.

Examination Report

Independent Accountant's Report

To the Board of Directors of the XYZ Company

We have examined the XYZ Company's *Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct for the period from _____ to _____*, and the Questionnaire and responses attached thereto. XYZ Company's management is responsible for its responses to the Questionnaire. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence as to whether XYZ Company had policies and programs in operation during that period that support the affirmative responses to the *Questionnaire* and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion. Our examination procedures were not designed, however, to evaluate whether the aforementioned policies and programs operated effectively to ensure compliance with the Company's *Code of Business Ethics and Conduct* on the part of individual employees or to evaluate the extent to which the Company or its employees have complied with federal procurement laws, and we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance thereon.

In our opinion, the affirmative responses in the Questionnaire accompanying the *Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct for the period from _____ to _____* referred to above are appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the Questionnaire.

Illustration 2: Unqualified Opinion; Report Modified for Negative Responses to Defense Contractor Assertion; Use of the Report is Restricted Because Criteria are Available Only to Specified Parties

Defense Contractor Assertion

Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on *Business Ethics and Conduct for the period from _____ to _____*.

The affirmative responses in the accompanying *Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct with Responses by the XYZ Company for the period from _____ to _____* are based on policies and programs in operation for that period and are appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the Questionnaire. Negative responses indicate that the Company did not have policies and programs in operation during that period with respect to those areas.

Attachments: None

(The responses could include an explanation of negative responses if the defense contractor so desired.)

Examination Report

Independent Accountant's Report

To the Board of Directors of the XYZ Company

We have examined the XYZ Company's *Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct for the period from _____ to _____*. XYZ Company's management is responsible for its responses to the Questionnaire. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

[Standard Scope Paragraph]

In our opinion, the affirmative responses in the Questionnaire referred to above are appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the Questionnaire. The negative responses to Questions _____ and _____ in the Questionnaire indicate that the Company did not have policies and programs in operation during the period with respect to those areas.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the XYZ Company and *[identify other specified parties—for example, the Defense Industry Initiative]* and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

Illustration 3: Opinion Modified for Exception on Certain Response

Defense Contractor Assertion

Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on *Business Ethics and Conduct for the period from _____ to _____*.

The affirmative responses in the accompanying *Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct with Responses by the XYZ Company for the period from _____ to _____*, are based on policies and programs in operation for that period and are appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the Questionnaire.

Attachments:

Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct

Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct with Responses by the XYZ Company for the period from _____ to _____.

Examination Report**Independent Accountant's Report**

To the Board of Directors of the XYZ Company

[Standard Introductory and Scope Paragraphs]

Management believes that an appropriate mechanism exists for informing employees of the results of any follow-up into their charges of violations of the Company's Code of Business Ethics and Conduct, and has accordingly answered Question 12 in the affirmative. That mechanism consists principally of distributing newspaper articles and press releases of violations of federal procurement laws that have been voluntarily reported to the appropriate governmental agencies. We do not believe that such a mechanism is sufficient, inasmuch as it does not provide follow-up information on violations reported by employees that are not deemed reportable to a governmental agency. Consequently, in our opinion, the affirmative response to Question 12 in the Questionnaire is not appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the Questionnaire.

In our opinion, except for the response to Question 12 as discussed in the preceding paragraph, the affirmative responses in the Questionnaire accompanying the *Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct for the period from _____ to _____* referred to above are appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the Questionnaire.

Illustration 4: Opinion Modified for Exception on a Certain Response; Report also Modified for Negative Responses

Defense Contractor Assertion

Statement of Responses to the *Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct for the period from _____ to _____*.

The affirmative responses in the accompanying *Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct with Responses by the XYZ Company for the period from _____ to _____* are based on policies and programs in operation for that period and are appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the Questionnaire. Negative responses indicate that the Company did not have policies and programs in operation during that period with respect to those areas.

Attachments:

Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct

Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct with Responses by the XYZ Company for the period from _____ to _____.

(The responses could include an explanation of negative responses if the defense contractor so desired.)

Examination Report

Independent Accountant's Report

To the Board of Directors of the XYZ Company

[Standard Introductory and Scope Paragraphs]

Management believes that an appropriate mechanism exists for letting employees know of the results of any follow-up into their charges of violations of the Company's Code of Business Ethics and Conduct, and has accordingly answered Question 12 in the affirmative. That mechanism consists principally of distributing newspaper articles and press releases of violations of federal procurement laws that have been voluntarily reported to the appropriate governmental agencies. We do not believe that such a mechanism is sufficient, inasmuch as it does not provide follow-up information on violations reported by employees that are not deemed reportable to a governmental agency. Consequently, in our opinion, the affirmative response to Question 12 in the Questionnaire is not appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the Questionnaire.

In our opinion, except for the response to Question 12 as discussed in the preceding paragraph, the affirmative responses in the Questionnaire accompanying the *Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct for the period from _____ to _____* referred to above are appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the Questionnaire. The negative responses to Questions _____ and _____ in the Questionnaire indicate that the Company did not have policies and programs in operation during the period with respect to those areas.

Illustration 5: Opinion Disclaimed on Certain Responses Because of Scope Restrictions Imposed by Client

Defense Contractor Assertion

Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on *Business Ethics and Conduct for the period from _____ to _____*.

The affirmative responses in the accompanying *Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct with Responses by the XYZ Company for the period from _____ to _____* are based on policies and programs in operation for that period and are appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the *Questionnaire*.

Attachments:

Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct

Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct with Responses by the XYZ Company for the period from _____ to _____.

Examination Report

Independent Accountant's Report

To the Board of Directors of the XYZ Company

[*Standard Introductory Paragraph*]

Except as described below, our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence as to whether XYZ Company had policies and programs in operation during that period that support the affirmative responses to the *Questionnaire*. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion. Our examination procedures were not designed, however, to evaluate whether the aforementioned policies and programs operated effectively to ensure compliance with the Company's *Code of Business Ethics and Conduct* on the part of individual employees or to evaluate the extent to which the Company or its employees have complied with federal procurement laws, and we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance thereon.

We were not permitted to read relevant documents and files or interview appropriate employees to determine that the affirmative answers to Questions 6, 7, and 8 are appropriate. The nature of those questions precluded us from satisfying ourselves as to the appropriateness of those answers by means of other examination procedures.

In our opinion, the affirmative responses to Questions 1 through 5 and 9 through 17 in the *Questionnaire* accompanying the *Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct for the period from _____ to _____* referred to above are appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the *Questionnaire*. Because of the matters discussed in the preceding paragraph, the scope of our work was not sufficient to express, and we do not express, an opinion on the appropriateness of the affirmative responses to Questions 6, 7, and 8 in the *Questionnaire*.

Appendix B

Illustrative Defense Contractor Assertion and Review Report Restricted Because Criteria Are Available Only To Specified Parties

Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct

Defense Contractor Assertion

Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on *Business Ethics and Conduct for the period from _____ to _____*.

The affirmative responses in the accompanying *Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct with Responses by the XYZ Company for the period from _____ to _____* are based on policies and programs in operation during that period and are appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the Questionnaire.

Attachments: None

Review Report

Independent Accountant's Report

To the Board of Directors of the XYZ Company

We have reviewed the XYZ Company's *Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct for the period from _____ to _____*. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the Statement of Responses to the Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics.

Our review was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on the affirmative responses in the Questionnaire. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. Additionally, our review was not designed to evaluate whether the aforementioned policies and programs operated effectively to ensure compliance with the Company's *Code of Business Ethics and Conduct* on the part of individual employees or to evaluate the extent to which the Company or its employees have complied with federal procurement laws and we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance thereon.

Based on our review, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that the affirmative responses in the Questionnaire referred to above are not appropriately presented in conformity with the criteria set forth in the *Defense Industry Initiatives on Business Ethics and Conduct*, including the Questionnaire.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the XYZ Company and [identify other specified parties—for example, the Defense Industry Initiative] and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Issue Date: August, 1987; Amended: February, 1989;
Modified: May, 1989; Revised: January, 2001.]

2. Responding to Requests for Reports on Matters Relating to Solvency

.23 Question—Lenders, as a requisite to the closing of certain secured financings in connection with leveraged buyouts (LBOs), recapitalizations and certain other financial transactions, have sometimes requested written assurance from an accountant regarding the prospective borrower's solvency and related matters.² The lender is concerned that such financings not be considered to include a fraudulent conveyance or transfer under the Federal Bankruptcy Code³ or the relevant state fraudulent conveyance or transfer statute.⁴ If the financing is subsequently determined to have included a fraudulent conveyance or transfer, repayment obligations and security interests may be set aside or subordinated to the claims of other creditors.

.24 May a practitioner provide assurance concerning "matters relating to solvency" as hereinafter defined?

.25 Interpretation—No. For reasons set forth below, a practitioner should not provide any form of assurance, through examination, review or agreed-upon procedures engagements, that an entity

- Is not insolvent at the time the debt is incurred or would not be rendered insolvent thereby.
- Does not have unreasonably small capital.
- Has the ability to pay its debts as they mature.

² While this interpretation describes requests from secured lenders and summarizes the potential effects of fraudulent conveyance or transfer laws upon such lenders, the interpretation is not limited to requests from lenders. All requests for assurance on matters relating to solvency are governed by this interpretation.

³ Section 548 of the Federal Bankruptcy Code defines fraudulent transfers and obligations as follows:

"The trustee may avoid any transfer of an interest of the debtor in property or any obligation incurred by the debtor, that was made or incurred on or within one year before the date of the filing of the petition, if the debtor voluntarily or involuntarily—

"(1) made such transfer or incurred such obligation with actual intent to hinder, delay, or defraud any entity to which the debtor was or became, on or after the date that such transfer occurred or such obligation was incurred, indebted; or

"(2)(A) received less than a reasonably equivalent value in exchange for such transfer or obligation; and

"(2)(B)(i) was insolvent on the date that such transfer was made or such obligation was incurred, or became insolvent as a result of such transfer or obligation;

"(2)(B)(ii) was engaged in business or a transaction, or was about to engage in business or a transaction, for which any property remaining with the debtor was an unreasonably small capital; or

"(2)(B)(iii) intended to incur, or believed that the debtor would incur, debts that would be beyond the debtor's ability to pay as such debts matured." (Bankruptcy Law Reporter, 3 vols. [Chicago: Commerce Clearing House, 1986], vol. 1, 1339).

⁴ State fraudulent conveyance or transfer statutes such as the Uniform Fraudulent Conveyance Act and the Uniform Fraudulent Transfer Act reflect substantially similar provisions. These state laws may be employed absent a declaration of bankruptcy or by a bankruptcy trustee under section 544(1) of the Federal Bankruptcy Code. While the statute of limitations varies from state to state, in some states financing transactions may be vulnerable to challenge for up to six years from closing.

In the context of particular transactions other terms are sometimes used or defined by the parties as equivalents of or substitutes for the terms listed above (e.g., fair salable value of assets exceeds liabilities). These terms, and those matters listed above, are hereinafter referred to as “matters relating to solvency.” The prohibition extends to providing assurance concerning all such terms.

.26 The third general attestation standard states that the practitioner shall perform the engagement only if he or she has reason to believe that the subject matter is capable of evaluation against criteria that are suitable and available to users. Suitable criteria must have each of the following attributes:

- Objectivity—Criteria should be free from bias.
- Measurability—Criteria should permit reasonably consistent measurements, qualitative or quantitative, of subject matter.
- Completeness—Criteria should be sufficiently complete so those relevant factors that would alter a conclusion about subject matter are not omitted.
- Relevance—Criteria should be relevant to the subject matter.

In addition, the second general attestation standard states that the engagement shall be performed by a practitioner or practitioners having adequate knowledge of the subject matter.

.27 The matters relating to solvency mentioned in paragraph .23 above are subject to legal interpretation under, and varying legal definition in, the Federal Bankruptcy Code and various state fraudulent conveyance and transfer statutes. Because these matters are not clearly defined in an accounting sense, and are therefore subject to varying interpretations, they do not provide the practitioner with suitable criteria required to evaluate the subject matter or an assertion under the third general attestation standard. In addition, lenders are concerned with legal issues on matters relating to solvency and the practitioner is generally unable to evaluate or provide assurance on these matters of legal interpretation. Therefore, practitioners are precluded from giving any form of assurance on matters relating to solvency or any financial presentation of matters relating to solvency.

.28 Under existing AICPA standards, the practitioner may provide a client with various professional services that may be useful to the client in connection with a financing. These services include:

- Audit of historical financial statements.
- Review of historical financial information (a review in accordance with AU section 722, *Interim Financial Information*, of interim financial information or in accordance with AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements*).
- Examination or review of pro forma financial information (section 401, *Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information*).
- Examination or compilation of prospective financial information (section 301, *Financial Forecasts and Projections*).

.29 In addition, under existing AICPA attestation standards (section 201), the practitioner can provide the client and lender with an agreed-upon procedures report. In such an engagement, a client and lender may request that specified procedures be applied to various financial presentations, such as historical financial information, pro forma financial information and prospective financial information, which can be useful to a client or lender in connection with a financing.

.30 The practitioner should be aware that certain of the services described in paragraph .28 require that the practitioner have an appropriate level of knowledge of the entity's accounting and financial reporting practices and its internal control. This has ordinarily been obtained by the practitioner auditing historical financial statements of the entity for the most recent annual period or by otherwise obtaining an equivalent knowledge base. When considering acceptance of an engagement relating to a financing, the practitioner should consider whether he or she can perform these services without an equivalent knowledge base.

.31 A report on agreed-upon procedures should not provide any assurances on matters relating to solvency or any financial presentation of matters relating to solvency (e.g., fair salable value of assets less liabilities or fair salable value of assets less liabilities, contingent liabilities and other commitments). A practitioner's report on the results of applying agreed-upon procedures should contain the report elements set forth in section 201.31 (or section 301.55 if applying agreed upon procedures to prospective financial information). The practitioner's report on the results of applying agreed-upon procedures should:

- State that the service has been requested in connection with a financing (no reference should be made to any solvency provisions in the financing agreement).
- State that no representations are provided regarding questions of legal interpretation.
- State that no assurance is provided concerning the borrower's (1) solvency, (2) adequacy of capital or (3) ability to pay its debts.
- State that the procedures should not be taken to supplant any additional inquiries and procedures that the lender should undertake in its consideration of the proposed financing.
- Where applicable, state that an audit of recent historical financial statements has previously been performed and that no audit of any historical financial statements for a subsequent period has been performed. In addition, if any services have been performed pursuant to paragraph .28, they may be referred to.

.32 The report ordinarily is dated at or shortly before the closing date. The financing agreement ordinarily specifies the date, often referred to as the cutoff date, to which the report is to relate (for example, a date three business days before the date of the report). The report should state that the inquiries and other procedures carried out in connection with the report did not cover the period from the cutoff date to the date of the report.

.33 The practitioner might consider furnishing the client with a draft of the agreed-upon procedures report. The draft report should deal with all matters expected to be covered in the terms expected to be used in the final report. The draft report should be identified as a draft in order to avoid giving the impression that the procedures described therein have been performed. This practice of furnishing a draft report at an early point permits the practitioner to make clear to the client and lender what they may expect the accountant to furnish and gives them an opportunity to change the financing agreement or the agreed-upon procedures if they so desire.

[Issue Date: May, 1988; Amended: February, 1993; Revised: January, 2001.]

3. Applicability of Attestation Standards to Litigation Services

.34 Question—Section 101, *Attest Engagements*, paragraph .04, provides an example of a litigation service provided by practitioners that would not be considered an attest engagement as defined by section 101. When does section 101 not apply to litigation service engagements?

.35 Interpretation—Section 101 does not apply to litigation services that involve pending or potential formal legal or regulatory proceedings before a “trier of fact”⁵ in connection with the resolution of a dispute between two or more parties in any of the following circumstances when the:

- a. Practitioner has not been engaged to issue and does not issue an examination, a review, or an agreed-upon procedures report on subject matter, or an assertion about the subject matter that is the responsibility of another party.
- b. Service comprises being an expert witness.
- c. Service comprises being a trier of fact or acting on behalf of one.
- d. Practitioner’s work under the rules of the proceedings is subject to detailed analysis and challenge by each party to the dispute.
- e. Practitioner is engaged by an attorney to do work that will be protected by the attorney’s work product privilege and such work is not intended to be used for other purposes.

When performing such litigation services, the practitioner should comply with Rule 201, *General Standards*, of the AICPA *Code of Professional Conduct* [ET section 201.01].

.36 Question—When does section 101 apply to litigation service engagements?

.37 Interpretation—Section 101 applies to litigation service engagements only when the practitioner is engaged to issue or does issue an examination, a review, or an agreed-upon procedures report on subject matter, or an assertion about the subject matter, that is the responsibility of another party.

.38 Question—Section 101.04c provides the following example of litigation service engagements that are not considered attest engagements:

Services performed in accordance with the Statement on Standards for Consulting Services, such as.... engagements in which a practitioner is engaged to testify as an expert witness in accounting, auditing, taxation, or other matters, given certain stipulated facts.

What does the term “stipulated facts” as used in section 101.04c mean?

.39 Interpretation—The term “stipulated facts” as used in section 101.04c means facts or assumptions that are specified by one or more parties to a dispute to serve as the basis for the development of an expert opinion. It is not used in its typical legal sense of facts agreed to by all parties involved in a dispute.

.40 Question—Does *Attest Engagements Interpretation No. 2, Responding to Requests for Reports on Matters Relating to Solvency* (paragraphs .23 through .33), prohibit a practitioner from providing expert testimony, as described in section 101.04c before a “trier of fact” on matters relating to solvency?

⁵ A “trier of fact” in this section means a court, regulatory body, or government authority; their agents; a grand jury; or an arbitrator or mediator of the dispute.

.41 Interpretation—No. Matters relating to solvency mentioned in paragraph .25 are subject to legal interpretation under, and varying legal definition in, the Federal Bankruptcy Code and various state fraudulent conveyance and transfer statutes. Because these matters are not clearly defined in an accounting sense, and therefore subject to varying interpretations, they do not provide the practitioner with the suitable criteria required to evaluate the assertion. Thus, Attest Engagements Interpretation No. 2, *Responding to Requests for Reports on Matters Relating to Solvency* (paragraphs .23 through .33), prohibits a practitioner from providing any form of assurance in reporting upon examination, review or agreed-upon procedures engagements about matters relating to solvency (as defined in paragraph .25).

.42 However, a practitioner who is involved with pending or potential formal legal or regulatory proceedings before a “trier of fact” in connection with the resolution of a dispute between two or more parties may provide an expert opinion or consulting advice about matters relating to solvency. The prohibition in paragraphs .23 through .33 does not apply in such engagements because as part of the legal or regulatory proceedings, each party to the dispute has the opportunity to analyze and challenge the legal definition and interpretation of the matters relating to solvency and the criteria the practitioner uses to evaluate matters related to solvency. Such services are not intended to be used by others who do not have the opportunity to analyze and challenge such definitions and interpretations.

[Issue Date: July, 1990; Revised: January, 2001.]

4. Providing Access to or Copies of Attest Documentation to a Regulator

.43 Question—Interpretation No. 1 to AU section 339, *Audit Documentation*, entitled “Providing Access to or Copies of Audit Documentation to a Regulator” (AU section 9339.01–.15), contains guidance relating to providing access to or copies of audit documentation to a regulator. Is this guidance applicable to an attest engagement when a regulator requests access to or copies of the attest documentation?

.44 Interpretation—Yes. The guidance in Interpretation No. 1 to AU section 339 (AU section 9339.01–.15) is applicable in these circumstances; however, the letter to a regulator should be tailored to meet the individual engagement characteristics or the purpose of the regulatory request, for example, a quality control review. Illustrative letters for an examination engagement performed in accordance with section 601, *Compliance Attestation*, and an agreed-upon procedures engagement performed in accordance with section 201, *Agreed-Up Upon Procedures Engagements*, follow.

.45 Illustrative letter for examination engagement:

Illustrative Letter to Regulator⁶

[Date]

[Name and Address of Regulatory Agency]

Your representatives have requested access to our attest documentation in connection with our engagement to examine (*identify the subject matter examined*

⁶ The practitioner should appropriately modify this letter when the engagement has been conducted in accordance with Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements and also in accordance with additional attest requirements specified by a regulatory agency (for example, the requirements specified in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States).

or restate management's assertion). It is our understanding that the purpose of your request is (*state purpose*: for example, "to facilitate your regulatory examination").⁷

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards⁸ established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, the objective of which is to form an opinion as to whether the subject matter (or management's assertion) is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on (*identify criteria*). Under these standards, we have the responsibility to plan and perform our examination to provide a reasonable basis for our opinion and to exercise due professional care in the performance of our examination. Our examination is subject to the inherent risk that material noncompliance, if it exists, would not be detected. In addition, our examination does not address the possibility that material noncompliance may occur in the future. Also, our use of professional judgment and the assessments of attestation risk and materiality for the purpose of our examination means that matters may have existed that would have been assessed differently by you. Our examination does not provide a legal determination on (*name of entity*)'s compliance with specified requirements.

The attest documentation was prepared for the purpose of providing the principal support for our opinion on (*name of entity*)'s compliance and to aid in the performance and supervision of our examination. The attest documentation is the principal record of attest procedures performed, information obtained, and conclusions reached in the examination. The procedures that we performed were limited to those we considered necessary under attestation standards⁹ established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants to provide us with reasonable basis for our opinion. Accordingly, we make no representation as to the sufficiency or appropriateness, for your purposes, of either the procedures or information in our attest documentation. In addition, any notations, comments, and individual conclusions appearing on any of the attest documentation do not stand alone and should not be read as an opinion on any part of management's assertion or the related subject matter.

Our examination was conducted for the purpose stated above and was not planned or performed in contemplation of your (*state purpose*: for example, "regulatory examination"). Therefore, items of possible interest to you may not have been specifically addressed. Accordingly, our examination, and the attest documentation prepared in connection therewith, should not supplant other inquiries and procedures that should be undertaken by the (*name of regulatory agency*) for the purpose of monitoring and regulating (*name of entity*). In addition, we have not performed any procedures since the date of our report with respect to the subject matter (*or management's assertion related thereto*), and significant events or circumstances may have occurred since that date.

The attest documentation constitutes and reflects work performed or information obtained by us in the course of our examination. The documents contain trade secrets and confidential commercial and financial information of our firm and (*name of entity*) that is privileged and confidential, and we expressly reserve all rights with respect to disclosures to third parties. Accordingly, we request confidential treatment under the Freedom of Information Act or similar laws and regulations when requests are made for the attest documentation or

⁷ If the practitioner is not required by law, regulation, or engagement contract to provide a regulator access to the attest documentation but otherwise intends to provide such access (see AU section 9339.11–.15), the letter should include a statement that: "Management of (*name of entity*) has authorized us to provide you access to our attest documentation for (*state purpose*)."

⁸ Refer to footnote 6.

⁹ Refer to footnote 6.

information contained therein or any documents created by the (*name of regulatory agency*) containing information derived there from. We further request that written notice be given to our firm before distribution of the information in the attest documentation (or copies thereof) to others, including other governmental agencies, except when such distribution is required by law or regulation.¹⁰

[If it is expected that copies will be requested, add the following:

Any copies of our attest documentation we agree to provide you will contain a legend “Confidential Treatment Requested by (*name of practitioner, address, telephone number*).”]

[Firm signature]

.46 Example letter for agreed-upon procedures engagements:

Illustrative Letter to Regulator¹¹

[Date]

[Name and Address of Regulatory Agency]

Our representatives have requested access to our attest documentation in connection with our engagement to perform agreed-upon procedures on (*identify the subject matter or management’s assertion*). It is our understanding that the purpose of your request is (*state purpose*: for example, “to facilitate your regulatory examinations”).¹²

Our agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with attestation standards¹³ established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. Under these standards, we have the responsibility to perform the agreed-upon procedures to provide a reasonable basis for the findings expressed in our report. We were not engaged to, and did not, perform an examination, the objective of which would be to form an opinion on (*identify the subject matter or management’s assertion*). Our engagement is subject to the inherent risk that material misstatement of (*identify the subject matter or management’s assertion*), if it exists, would not be detected. (*The practitioner may add the following*: “In addition, our engagement does not address the possibility that material misstatement of (*identify the subject matter or management’s assertion*) may occur in the future.”) The procedures that we performed were limited to those agreed to by the specified users, and the sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of the specified users of the report. Further, our engagement does not provide a legal determination on (*name of entity*)’s compliance with specified requirements.

The attest documentation was prepared to document agreed-upon procedures applied, information obtained, and findings reached in the engagement. Accordingly, we make no representation, for your purposes, as to the sufficiency or appropriateness of the information in our attest documentation. In addition,

¹⁰ This illustrative paragraph may not in and of itself be sufficient to gain confidential treatment under the rules and regulations of certain regulatory agencies. The practitioner should consider tailoring this paragraph to the circumstances after consulting the regulations of each applicable regulatory agency and, if necessary, consult with legal counsel regarding the specific procedures and requirements necessary to gain confidential treatment.

¹¹ The practitioner should appropriately modify this letter when the engagement has been conducted in accordance with Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements and also in accordance with additional attest requirements specified by a regulatory agency (for example, the requirements specified in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States).

¹² If the practitioner is not required by law, regulation or engagement contract to provide a regulator access to the attest documentation but otherwise intends to provide such access (see AU section 9339.11–.15) the letter should include a statement that: “Management of (*name of entity*) has authorized us to provide you access to our attest documentation for (*state purpose*).”

¹³ Refer to footnote 6.

any notations, comments, and individual findings appearing on any of the attest documentation should not be read as an opinion on management's assertion or the related subject matter, or any part thereof.

Our engagement was performed for the purpose stated above and was not performed in contemplation of your (*state purpose*: for example, "regulatory examination"). Therefore, items of possible interest to you may not have been specifically addressed. Accordingly, our engagement, and the attest documentation prepared in connection therewith, should not supplant other inquiries and procedures that should be undertaken by the (*name of regulatory agency*) for the purpose of monitoring and regulating (*name of client*). In addition, we have not performed any procedures since the date of our report with respect to the subject matter or management's assertion related thereto, and significant events or circumstances may have occurred since that date.

The attest documentation constitutes and reflects procedures performed or information obtained by us in the course of our engagement. The documents contain trade secrets and confidential commercial and financial information of our firm and (*name of client*) that is privileged and confidential, and we expressly reserve all rights with respect to disclosures to third parties. Accordingly, we request confidential treatment under the Freedom of Information Act or similar laws and regulations when requests are made for the attest documentation or information contained therein or any documents created by the (*name of regulatory agency*) containing information derived therefrom. We further request that written notice be given to our firm before distribution of the information in the attest documentation (or copies thereof) to others, including other governmental agencies, except when such distribution is required by law or regulation.¹⁴

[If it is expected that copies will be requested, add the following:]

Any copies of our attest documentation we agree to provide you will contain a legend "Confidential Treatment Requested by (*name of practitioner, address, telephone number*)."]

[Firm signature]

[Issue Date: May, 1996; Revised: January, 2001; Revised: January, 2002.]

5. Attest Engagements on Financial Information¹⁵ Included in XBRL Instance Documents

.47 Question—What are XBRL and an XBRL Instance Document?

.48 Interpretation—XBRL, the business reporting aspect of the Extensible Markup Language (XML), is a freely licensable open technology standard, which makes it possible to store and/or transfer data along with the complex hierarchies, data-processing rules, and descriptions that enable analysis and

¹⁴ This illustrative paragraph may not in and of itself be sufficient to gain confidential treatment under the rules and regulations of certain regulatory agencies. The practitioner should consider tailoring this paragraph to the circumstances after consulting the regulations of each applicable regulatory agency and, if necessary, consult with legal counsel regarding the specific procedures and requirements necessary to gain confidential treatment.

¹⁵ Financial information includes data presented in audited or reviewed financial statements or other financial information (for example, Management Discussion and Analysis).

distribution.¹⁶ An entity may make its financial information available in the form of an XBRL Instance Document (“Instance Document”). An Instance Document is essentially a machine-readable format of financial information (that is, a computer can read the data, search for information, or perform calculations). Through the XBRL tagging process, a mapping of the financial information is created that enables a user to extract specific information, facilitating analysis. For example, XBRL would enable a user to use a software tool to automatically extract certain financial line items and automatically import those amounts into a worksheet calculating financial ratios.

.49 The Instance Document consists of various data points and their corresponding XBRL tags (which describe the financial information) and may include references to other items such as a PDF (Adobe Acrobat) version of financial information. Hence, an Instance Document is a stand-alone document that may be published using a Web site, e-mail, and other electronic distribution means.

.50 Question—What are the practitioner’s considerations when the practitioner has been engaged to examine and report on whether the Instance Document accurately reflects the financial information?

.51 Interpretation—The third general attestation standard states that the practitioner shall perform the engagement only if he or she has reason to believe that the subject matter is capable of evaluation against criteria that are suitable and available to users. Two related criteria, XBRL taxonomies and XBRL International Technical Specifications, meet the available and suitable attributes under the attestation standards because a panel of experts developed the criteria and followed due process procedures that included exposure of the proposed criteria for public comment. The entity has the ability to extend the XBRL taxonomy by creating its own entity extension taxonomy. The entity may also create one or more custom entity taxonomies (for example, for a unique industry that is not yet represented by an XBRL taxonomy). Since neither the XBRL entity extension nor the custom taxonomy typically undergoes due process procedures when developed, the practitioner should evaluate whether the XBRL entity extension or custom taxonomy represents suitable and available criteria as described in paragraphs .24 through .34 of section 101.

.52 The practitioner should perform procedures he or she believes are necessary to obtain sufficient evidential matter to form an opinion. Example procedures the practitioner should consider performing include:

- Compare the rendered¹⁷ Instance Document to the financial information.
- Trace and agree the Instance Document’s tagged information to the financial information.
- Test that the financial information is appropriately tagged and included in the Instance Document.
- Test for consistency of tagging (for example, an entity may use one taxonomy tag for one year and then switch to a different tag for the same financial information the following year. In this case, the financial information for both years should use the same tag).

¹⁶ The XBRL tags, and their relationship to other XBRL tags, are represented in a taxonomy. The XBRL taxonomy is needed for a full rendering of the XBRL Instance Document.

¹⁷ A rendered Instance Document converts the machine-readable format to a human readable version through a software tool.

- Test that the entity extension or custom taxonomy meets the XBRL International Technical Specification (for example, through the use of a validation tool).

.53 When the client is the responsible party, the client will provide the practitioner with a written assertion regarding the subject matter. An example of a written assertion follows:

We assert that the accompanying XBRL Instance Document accurately reflects the data presented in the financial statements of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ended in conformity with *[identify the criteria—for example, specify XBRL taxonomy, such as “XBRL U.S. Consumer and Industrial Taxonomy,” and where applicable, the company extension taxonomy, such as “XYZ Company’s extension taxonomy” and the XBRL International Technical Specifications (specify version)]*.

.54 The practitioner should identify in his or her report whether the underlying financial information has been audited or reviewed, and should refer to the report of such audit or review.¹⁸ If the underlying information has not been audited or reviewed, the practitioner should disclaim an opinion on the underlying information. Any information in the Instance Document that is not covered by the practitioner’s report should clearly be identified as such.

.55 Report Examples

Example 1: Reporting on the Subject Matter

Independent Accountant’s Report

We have examined the accompanying XBRL Instance Document of XYZ Company, which reflects the data presented in the financial statements of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ended *[optional to include the location of the financial statements, such as “included in the Company’s Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 20XX”]*. XYZ Company’s management is responsible for the XBRL Instance Document. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

We have also audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ended, and in our report dated *[Month]* XX, 20XX, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements.^{19, 20}

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and,

¹⁸ When no audit or review report has been issued, no reference to a report is required.

¹⁹ If the financial statements have been reviewed, the sentence would read: “We have also reviewed, in accordance with *[standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants]* *[Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants]*, the financial statements of XYZ Company as of March 31, 20XX, and for the three months then ended, the objective of which was the expression of limited assurance on such financial statements, and issued our report thereon dated *[Month]* XX, 20XX, *[describe any modifications of such report]*.”

• If the financial information has not been audited or reviewed, no reference to a report is required. The sentence would read: “We were not engaged to and did not conduct an audit or review of the *[identify information]*, the objectives of which would have been the expression of an opinion or limited assurance on such *[identify information]*. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other assurance on *[it]* *[them]*.”

²⁰ If the audit opinion on the related financial statements is other than unqualified, the practitioner should disclose that fact, and any substantive reasons therefore.

accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the XBRL Instance Document and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the XBRL Instance Document of XYZ Company referred to above accurately reflects, in all material respects, the data presented in the financial statements in conformity with *[identify the criteria—for example, specific XBRL taxonomy, such as the “XBRL U.S. Consumer and Industrial Taxonomy,” and where applicable, the company extension taxonomy, such as “XYZ Company’s extension taxonomy,” and the XBRL International Technical Specifications 2.0].*

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 2: Reporting on Management’s Assertions

Independent Accountant’s Report

We have examined management’s assertion that *[identify the assertion—for example, the accompanying XBRL Instance Document accurately reflects the data presented in the financial statements of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ended in conformity with (identify the criteria—for example, specific XBRL taxonomy, such as the “XBRL U.S. Consumer and Industrial Taxonomy,” and where applicable, the company extension taxonomy, such as “XYZ Company’s extension taxonomy,” and the XBRL International Technical Specifications 2.0)].* XYZ Company’s management is responsible for the assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the assertion based on our examination.

We have also audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ended, and in our report dated *[Month]* XX, 20XX, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the XBRL Instance Document and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, management’s assertion referred to above is fairly stated, in all material respects, in conformity with *[identify the criteria—for example, specific XBRL taxonomy, such as the “XBRL U.S. Consumer and Industrial Taxonomy,” and where applicable, the company extension taxonomy, such as “XYZ Company’s extension taxonomy,” and the XBRL International Technical Specifications 2.0].*

[Signature]

[Date]

[Issue Date: September, 2003.]

6. Reporting on Attestation Engagements Performed in Accordance With Government Auditing Standards²¹

.56 Question—In June 2003, the U.S. Government Accountability Office issued its 2003 revised *Government Auditing Standards*, commonly referred to as the Yellow Book. Chapter 6 of the revised Yellow Book sets forth general, fieldwork, and reporting standards for attestation engagements performed pursuant to generally accepted government auditing standards (GAGAS). Practitioners performing attestation engagements under GAGAS are also required to follow the general standards set forth in Chapter 3 of the Yellow Book. For attestation engagements performed pursuant to GAGAS, paragraph 6.28 prescribes additional reporting standards²² that go beyond the standards of reporting set forth in section 101.63–.90. When a practitioner performs an attestation examination in accordance with GAGAS how should the report be modified?

.57 Interpretation—The practitioner should modify the scope paragraph of the attestation report to indicate that the examination or review was “conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and the standards applicable to attestation engagements contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States.”

.58 Additionally, GAGAS requires the practitioner’s attestation report to disclose any matters that are set forth in paragraph 6.28 of the revised Yellow Book. Paragraph 6.34 of the revised Yellow Book sets forth the reporting elements that the practitioner should use, to the extent possible, in reporting a finding. The following illustration is a standard examination report modified to make reference to a schedule of findings when any of the matters set forth in paragraph 6.28 have been identified. This report pertains to subject matter for which suitable criteria exist and are available to all users through inclusion in a clear manner in the presentation of the subject matter. A written assertion has been obtained from the responsible party. While the following illustrative report modifications would comply with the Yellow Book requirement, this illustration is not intended to preclude a practitioner from complying with these additional Yellow Book reporting requirements in other ways.

Independent Accountant’s Report

We have examined [*identify the subject matter—for example, the accompanying schedule of performance measures of XYZ Agency for the year ended December 31, 20XX*]. XYZ Agency’s management is responsible for the [*identify the subject matter—for example, schedule of performance measures*]. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and the

²¹ While separate interpretations for other AT sections have not been issued to deal with attestation engagements performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, a practitioner may use this guidance to help him or her appropriately modify an attest report pursuant to other AT sections.

²² Paragraph 6.28 of the Yellow Book sets forth the additional reporting requirements: (a) reporting auditors’ compliance with generally accepted government auditing standards (GAGAS), (b) reporting deficiencies in internal control, fraud, illegal acts, violations of provisions of contracts or grant agreements, and abuse, (c) reporting views of responsible officials, (d) reporting privileged and confidential information, and (e) report issuance and distribution.

standards applicable to attestation engagements contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting [identify the subject matter—for example, XYZ Agency's schedule of performance measures] and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement or the subject matter.]

In our opinion, the schedule referred to above presents, in all material respects, [identify the subject matter—for example, the performance measures of XYZ Agency for the year ended December 31, 20XX], in conformity with [identify criteria—for example, the criteria set forth in Note 1].

[When any of the matters set forth in paragraph 6.28 of the Yellow Book have been identified the following paragraph would be added.]

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we are required to report findings of deficiencies in internal control, violations of provisions of contracts or grant agreements, and abuse that are material to [identify the subject matter—for example, XYZ Agency's schedule of performance measures] and any fraud and illegal acts that are more than inconsequential that come to our attention during our examination. We are also required to obtain the views of management on those matters. We performed our examination to express an opinion on whether [identify the subject matter—for example, XYZ Agency's schedule of performance measures] is presented in accordance with the criteria described above and not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the internal control over [identify the subject matter—for example, reporting of performance measures] or on compliance and other matters; accordingly, we express no such opinions. Our examination disclosed certain findings that are required to be reported under *Government Auditing Standards* and those findings, along with the views of management, are described in the attached Schedule of Findings.

[If a management letter has been issued, the following paragraph should be included.]

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we also noted other matters which we have reported to management of XYZ Agency in a separate letter dated March 15, 20XY.²³

[Signature]

[Date]

²³ Paragraph 6.35 of the Yellow Book states, "The auditor should refer to the management letter in the report on the attestation engagement."

Illustrative Schedule of Findings

**XYZ Agency
Schedule of Findings²⁴**

Finding No. 1

Criteria

Condition

Cause

Effect

Management’s Response

Finding No. 2

Criteria

Condition

Cause

Effect

Management’s Response

[Issue Date: December, 2004.]

²⁴ Refer to paragraphs 6.33–.34 of the Yellow Book regarding the content of the schedule of findings.

AT Section 201

Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements

Source: SSAE No. 10; SSAE No. 11.

Effective when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction and Applicability

.01 This section sets forth attestation standards and provides guidance to a practitioner concerning performance and reporting in all agreed-upon procedures engagements, except as noted in paragraph .02. A practitioner also should refer to the following sections of this Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAE), which provide additional guidance for certain types of agreed-upon procedures engagements:

- a. Section 301, *Financial Forecasts and Projections*
- b. Section 601, *Compliance Attestation*

.02 This section does not apply to the following:¹

- a. Situations in which an auditor reports on specified compliance requirements based solely on an audit of financial statements, as addressed in AU section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraphs .19–.21
- b. Engagements for which the objective is to report in accordance with AU section 801, *Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance*, unless the terms of the engagement specify that the engagement be performed pursuant to SSAEs
- c. Circumstances covered by AU section 324, *Service Organizations*, paragraph .58, when the service auditor is requested to apply substantive procedures to user transactions or assets at the service organization, and he or she makes specific reference in his or her service auditor's report to having carried out designated procedures (However, this section applies when the service auditor provides a separate report on the performance of agreed-upon procedures in an attestation engagement.)
- d. Engagements covered by AU section 634, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties*
- e. Certain professional services that would not be considered as falling under this section as described in section 101, *Attest Engagements*, paragraph .04.

¹ The Attest Interpretation, "Responding to Requests for Reports on Matters Relating to Solvency" (section 9101.23–.33), prohibits the performance of any attest engagements concerning matters of solvency or insolvency.

Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements

.03 An agreed-upon procedures engagement is one in which a practitioner is engaged by a client to issue a report of findings based on specific procedures performed on subject matter. The client engages the practitioner to assist specified parties in evaluating subject matter or an assertion as a result of a need or needs of the specified parties.² Because the specified parties require that findings be independently derived, the services of a practitioner are obtained to perform procedures and report his or her findings. The specified parties and the practitioner agree upon the procedures to be performed by the practitioner that the specified parties believe are appropriate. Because the needs of the specified parties may vary widely, the nature, timing, and extent of the agreed-upon procedures may vary as well; consequently, the specified parties assume responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures since they best understand their own needs. In an engagement performed under this section, the practitioner does not perform an examination or a review, as discussed in section 101, and does not provide an opinion or negative assurance.³ (See paragraph .24.) Instead, the practitioner's report on agreed-upon procedures should be in the form of procedures and findings. (See paragraph .31.)

.04 As a consequence of the role of the specified parties in agreeing upon the procedures performed or to be performed, a practitioner's report on such engagements should clearly indicate that its use is restricted to those specified parties.⁴ Those specified parties, including the client, are hereinafter referred to as *specified parties*.

Standards

.05 The general, fieldwork, and reporting standards for attestation engagements as set forth in section 101, together with interpretive guidance regarding their application as addressed throughout this section, should be followed by the practitioner in performing and reporting on agreed-upon procedures engagements.

Conditions for Engagement Performance

.06 The practitioner may perform an agreed-upon procedures attest engagement provided that—

- a. The practitioner is independent.
- b. One of the following conditions is met.
 - (1) The party wishing to engage the practitioner is responsible for the subject matter, or has a reasonable basis for providing a written assertion about the subject matter when the nature of the subject matter is such that a responsible party does not otherwise exist.

² See paragraphs .08 and .09 for a discussion of subject matter and assertion.

³ For guidance on expressing an opinion on specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement based on an audit, see AU section 623.11–.18.

⁴ See section 101.78–.83 for additional guidance regarding restricted-use reports.

- (2) The party wishing to engage the practitioner is not responsible for the subject matter but is able to provide the practitioner, or have a third party who is responsible for the subject matter provide the practitioner with evidence of the third party's responsibility for the subject matter.
- c. The practitioner and the specified parties agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed by the practitioner.
 - d. The specified parties take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes.
 - e. The specific subject matter to which the procedures are to be applied is subject to reasonably consistent measurement.
 - f. Criteria to be used in the determination of findings are agreed upon between the practitioner and the specified parties.
 - g. The procedures to be applied to the specific subject matter are expected to result in reasonably consistent findings using the criteria.
 - h. Evidential matter related to the specific subject matter to which the procedures are applied is expected to exist to provide a reasonable basis for expressing the findings in the practitioner's report.
 - i. Where applicable, the practitioner and the specified parties agree on any materiality limits for reporting purposes. (See paragraph .25.)
 - j. Use of the report is restricted to the specified parties.
 - k. For agreed-upon procedures engagements on prospective financial information, the prospective financial statements include a summary of significant assumptions. (See section 301.52.)

Agreement on and Sufficiency of Procedures

.07 To satisfy the requirements that the practitioner and the specified parties agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed and that the specified parties take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes, ordinarily the practitioner should communicate directly with and obtain affirmative acknowledgment from each of the specified parties. For example, this may be accomplished by meeting with the specified parties or by distributing a draft of the anticipated report or a copy of an engagement letter to the specified parties and obtaining their agreement. If the practitioner is not able to communicate directly with all of the specified parties, the practitioner may satisfy these requirements by applying any one or more of the following or similar procedures.

- Compare the procedures to be applied to written requirements of the specified parties.
- Discuss the procedures to be applied with appropriate representatives of the specified parties involved.
- Review relevant contracts with or correspondence from the specified parties.

The practitioner should not report on an engagement when specified parties do not agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed and do not take responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures for their purposes. (See

paragraph .36 for guidance on satisfying these requirements when the practitioner is requested to add other parties as specified parties after the date of completion of the agreed-upon procedures.)

Subject Matter and Related Assertions

.08 The subject matter of an agreed-upon procedures engagement may take many different forms and may be at a point in time or covering a period of time. In an agreed-upon procedures engagement, it is the specific subject matter to which the agreed-upon procedures are to be applied using the criteria selected. Even though the procedures are agreed upon between the practitioner and the specified parties, the subject matter and the criteria must meet the conditions set forth in the third general standard. (See section 101.23 and .24.) The criteria against which the specific subject matter needs to be measured may be recited within the procedures enumerated or referred to in the practitioner's report.

.09 An assertion is any declaration or set of declarations about whether the subject matter is based on or in conformity with the criteria selected. A written assertion is generally not required in an agreed-upon procedures engagement unless specifically required by another attest standard (for example, see section 601.11). If, however, the practitioner requests the responsible party to provide an assertion, the assertion may be presented in a representation letter or another written communication from the responsible party, such as in a statement, narrative description, or schedule appropriately identifying what is being presented and the point in time or the period of time covered.

Establishing an Understanding With the Client

.10 The practitioner should establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed. When the practitioner documents the understanding through a written communication with the client (an *engagement letter*), such communication should be addressed to the client, and in some circumstances also to all specified parties. Matters that might be included in such an understanding include the following:

- The nature of the engagement
- Identification of the subject matter (or the assertion related thereto), the responsible party, and the criteria to be used
- Identification of specified parties (See paragraph .36.)
- Specified parties' acknowledgment of their responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures
- Responsibilities of the practitioner (See paragraphs .12 to .14 and .40.)
- Reference to attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA)
- Agreement on procedures by enumerating (or referring to) the procedures (See paragraphs .15 to .18.)
- Disclaimers expected to be included in the practitioner's report
- Use restrictions
- Assistance to be provided to the practitioner (See paragraphs .22 and .23.)

- Involvement of a specialist (See paragraphs .19 to .21.)
- Agreed-upon materiality limits (See paragraph .25.)

Nature, Timing, and Extent of Procedures

Responsibility of the Specified Parties

.11 Specified parties are responsible for the sufficiency (nature, timing, and extent) of the agreed-upon procedures because they best understand their own needs. The specified parties assume the risk that such procedures might be insufficient for their purposes. In addition, the specified parties assume the risk that they might misunderstand or otherwise inappropriately use findings properly reported by the practitioner.

Practitioner's Responsibility

.12 The responsibility of the practitioner is to carry out the procedures and report the findings in accordance with the general, fieldwork, and reporting standards as discussed and interpreted in this section. The practitioner assumes the risk that misapplication of the procedures may result in inappropriate findings being reported. Furthermore, the practitioner assumes the risk that appropriate findings may not be reported or may be reported inaccurately. The practitioner's risks can be reduced through adequate planning and supervision and due professional care in performing the procedures, determining the findings, and preparing the report.

.13 The practitioner should have adequate knowledge in the specific subject matter to which the agreed-upon procedures are to be applied. He or she may obtain such knowledge through formal or continuing education, practical experience, or consultation with others.⁵

.14 The practitioner has no responsibility to determine the differences between the agreed-upon procedures to be performed and the procedures that the practitioner would have determined to be necessary had he or she been engaged to perform another form of attest engagement. The procedures that the practitioner agrees to perform pursuant to an agreed-upon procedures engagement may be more or less extensive than the procedures that the practitioner would determine to be necessary had he or she been engaged to perform another form of engagement.

Procedures to Be Performed

.15 The procedures that the practitioner and specified parties agree upon may be as limited or as extensive as the specified parties desire. However, mere reading of an assertion or specified information about the subject matter does not constitute a procedure sufficient to permit a practitioner to report on the results of applying agreed-upon procedures. In some circumstances, the procedures agreed upon evolve or are modified over the course of the engagement. In general, there is flexibility in determining the procedures as long as the specified parties acknowledge responsibility for the sufficiency of such procedures for their purposes. Matters that should be agreed upon include the nature, timing, and extent of the procedures.

⁵ Section 601.19 and .20 provide guidance about obtaining an understanding of certain requirements in an agreed-upon procedures engagement on compliance.

.16 The practitioner should not agree to perform procedures that are overly subjective and thus possibly open to varying interpretations. Terms of uncertain meaning (such as general review, limited review, check, or test) should not be used in describing the procedures unless such terms are defined within the agreed-upon procedures. The practitioner should obtain evidential matter from applying the agreed-upon procedures to provide a reasonable basis for the finding or findings expressed in his or her report, but need not perform additional procedures outside the scope of the engagement to gather additional evidential matter.

.17 Examples of appropriate procedures include the following:

- Execution of a sampling application after agreeing on relevant parameters
- Inspection of specified documents evidencing certain types of transactions or detailed attributes thereof
- Confirmation of specific information with third parties
- Comparison of documents, schedules, or analyses with certain specified attributes
- Performance of specific procedures on work performed by others (including the work of internal auditors—see paragraphs .22 and .23)
- Performance of mathematical computations

.18 Examples of inappropriate procedures include the following:

- Mere reading of the work performed by others solely to describe their findings
- Evaluating the competency or objectivity of another party
- Obtaining an understanding about a particular subject
- Interpreting documents outside the scope of the practitioner's professional expertise

Involvement of a Specialist⁶

.19 The practitioner's education and experience enable him or her to be knowledgeable about business matters in general, but he or she is not expected to have the expertise of a person trained for or qualified to engage in the practice of another profession or occupation. In certain circumstances, it may be appropriate to involve a specialist to assist the practitioner in the performance of one or more procedures. The following are examples.

- An attorney might provide assistance concerning the interpretation of legal terminology involving laws, regulations, rules, contracts, or grants.
- A medical specialist might provide assistance in understanding the characteristics of diagnosis codes documented in patient medical records.
- An environmental engineer might provide assistance in interpreting environmental remedial action regulatory directives that may affect

⁶ A *specialist* is a person (or firm) possessing skill or knowledge in a particular field other than the attest function. As used herein, a specialist does not include a person employed by the practitioner's firm who participates in the attest engagement.

the agreed-upon procedures applied to an environmental liabilities account in a financial statement.

- A geologist might provide assistance in distinguishing between varying physical characteristics of a generic minerals group related to information to which the agreed-upon procedures are applied.

.20 The practitioner and the specified parties should explicitly agree to the involvement of the specialist in assisting a practitioner in the performance of an agreed-upon procedures engagement. This agreement may be reached when obtaining agreement on the procedures performed or to be performed and acknowledgment of responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures, as discussed in paragraph .07. The practitioner's report should describe the nature of the assistance provided by the specialist.

.21 A practitioner may agree to apply procedures to the report or work product of a specialist that does not constitute assistance by the specialist to the practitioner in an agreed-upon procedures engagement. For example, the practitioner may make reference to information contained in a report of a specialist in describing an agreed-upon procedure. However, it is inappropriate for the practitioner to agree to merely read the specialist's report solely to describe or repeat the findings, or to take responsibility for all or a portion of any procedures performed by a specialist or the specialist's work product.

Internal Auditors and Other Personnel

.22 The agreed-upon procedures to be enumerated or referred to in the practitioner's report are to be performed entirely by the practitioner except as discussed in paragraphs .19 to .21.⁷ However, internal auditors or other personnel may prepare schedules and accumulate data or provide other information for the practitioner's use in performing the agreed-upon procedures. Also, internal auditors may perform and report separately on procedures that they have carried out. Such procedures may be similar to those that a practitioner may perform under this section.

.23 A practitioner may agree to perform procedures on information documented in the working papers of internal auditors. For example, the practitioner may agree to—

- Repeat all or some of the procedures.
- Determine whether the internal auditors' working papers contain documentation of procedures performed and whether the findings documented in the working papers are presented in a report by the internal auditors.

However, it is inappropriate for the practitioner to—

- Agree to merely read the internal auditors' report solely to describe or repeat their findings.
- Take responsibility for all or a portion of any procedures performed by internal auditors by reporting those findings as the practitioner's own.
- Report in any manner that implies shared responsibility for the procedures with the internal auditors.

⁷ AU section 322, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, does not apply to agreed-upon procedures engagements.

Findings

.24 A practitioner should present the results of applying agreed-upon procedures to specific subject matter in the form of findings. The practitioner should not provide negative assurance about whether the subject matter or the assertion is fairly stated based on the criteria. For example, the practitioner should not include a statement in his or her report that “nothing came to my attention that caused me to believe that the [identify subject matter] is not presented based on [or the assertion is not fairly stated based on] [identify criteria].”

.25 The practitioner should report all findings from application of the agreed-upon procedures. The concept of materiality does not apply to findings to be reported in an agreed-upon procedures engagement unless the definition of materiality is agreed to by the specified parties. Any agreed-upon materiality limits should be described in the practitioner’s report.

.26 The practitioner should avoid vague or ambiguous language in reporting findings. Examples of appropriate and inappropriate descriptions of findings resulting from the application of certain agreed-upon procedures follow.

<i>Procedures Agreed Upon</i>	<i>Appropriate Description of Findings</i>	<i>Inappropriate Description of Findings</i>
Inspect the shipment dates for a sample (agreed-upon) of specified shipping documents, and determine whether any such dates were subsequent to December 31, 20XX.	No shipment dates shown on the sample of shipping documents were subsequent to December 31, 20XX.	Nothing came to my attention as a result of applying that procedure.
Calculate the number of blocks of streets paved during the year ended September 30, 20XX, shown on contractors’ certificates of project completion; compare the resultant number to the number in an identified chart of performance statistics.	The number of blocks of streets paved in the chart of performance statistics was Y blocks more than the number calculated from the contractors’ certificates of project completion.	The number of blocks of streets paved approximated the number of blocks included in the chart of performance statistics.
Calculate the rate of return on a specified investment (according to an agreed-upon formula) and verify that the resultant percentage agrees to the percentage in an identified schedule.	No exceptions were found as a result of applying the procedure.	The resultant percentage approximated the predetermined percentage in the identified schedule.

<i>Procedures Agreed Upon</i>	<i>Appropriate Description of Findings</i>	<i>Inappropriate Description of Findings</i>
Inspect the quality standards classification codes in identified performance test documents for products produced during a specified period; compare such codes to those shown in an identified computer printout.	All classification codes inspected in the identified documents were the same as those shown in the computer printout except for the following: [List all exceptions.]	All classification codes appeared to comply with such performance documents.
Trace all outstanding checks appearing on a bank reconciliation as of a certain date to checks cleared in the bank statement of the subsequent month.	All outstanding checks appearing on the bank reconciliation were cleared in the subsequent month's bank statement except for the following: [List all exceptions.]	Nothing came to my attention as a result of applying the procedure.
Compare the amounts of the invoices included in the "over ninety days" column shown in an identified schedule of aged accounts receivable of a specific customer as of a certain date to the amount and invoice date shown on the outstanding invoice and determine whether or not the invoice dates precede the date indicated on the schedule by more than ninety days.	All outstanding invoice amounts agreed with the amounts shown on the schedule in the "over ninety days" column, and the dates shown on such invoices preceded the date indicated on the schedule by more than ninety days.	The outstanding invoice amounts agreed within approximation of the amounts shown on the schedule in the "over ninety days" column, and nothing came to our attention that the dates shown on such invoices preceded the date indicated on the schedule by more than ninety days.

Working Papers

[.27-.30] [Paragraphs deleted by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]^[8-9]

^[8-9] [Footnote deleted by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

Reporting

Required Elements

.31 The practitioner's report on agreed-upon procedures should be in the form of procedures and findings. The practitioner's report should contain the following elements:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. Identification of the specified parties (See paragraph .36.)
- c. Identification of the subject matter¹⁰ (or the written assertion related thereto) and the character of the engagement
- d. Identification of the responsible party
- e. A statement that the subject matter is the responsibility of the responsible party
- f. A statement that the procedures performed were those agreed to by the specified parties identified in the report
- g. A statement that the agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the AICPA
- h. A statement that the sufficiency of the procedures is solely the responsibility of the specified parties and a disclaimer of responsibility for the sufficiency of those procedures
- i. A list of the procedures performed (or reference thereto) and related findings (The practitioner should not provide negative assurance—see paragraph .24.)
- j. Where applicable, a description of any agreed-upon materiality limits (See paragraph .25.)
- k. A statement that the practitioner was not engaged to and did not conduct an examination,^{11, 12} of the subject matter, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion, a disclaimer of opinion on the subject matter, and a statement that if the practitioner

¹⁰ In some agreed-upon procedures engagements, the practitioner may be asked to apply agreed-upon procedures to more than one subject matter or assertion. In these engagements, the practitioner may issue one report that refers to all subject matter covered or assertions presented. (For example, see section 601.28.)

¹¹ If the practitioner also wishes to refer to a review, alternate wording would be as follows. A statement that the practitioner was not engaged to and did not conduct an examination or a review of the subject matter, the objectives of which would be the expression of an opinion or limited assurance, a disclaimer of opinion on the subject matter, and a statement that if the practitioner had performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to his or her attention that would have been reported.

¹² If the subject matter consists of elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement, this statement may be worded as follows.

We were not engaged to and did not conduct an audit [or a review], the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion [or limited assurance] on the [identify elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement]. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion [or limited assurance].

Alternatively, the wording may be the following.

These agreed-upon procedures do not constitute an audit [or a review] of financial statements or any part thereof, the objective of which is the expression of opinion [or limited assurance] on the financial statements or a part thereof.

had performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to his or her attention that would have been reported¹³

- l. A statement of restrictions on the use of the report because it is intended to be used solely by the specified parties¹⁴
- m. Where applicable, reservations or restrictions concerning procedures or findings as discussed in paragraphs .33, .35, .39, and .40
- n. For an agreed-upon procedures engagement on prospective financial information, all items included in section 301.55
- o. Where applicable, a description of the nature of the assistance provided by a specialist as discussed in paragraphs .19 through .21
- p. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- q. The date of the report

Illustrative Report

.32 The following is an illustration of an agreed-upon procedures report.

Independent Accountant's Report on Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures

To the Audit Committees and Managements of ABC Inc. and XYZ Fund:

We have performed the procedures enumerated below, which were agreed to by the audit committees and managements of ABC Inc. and XYZ Fund, solely to assist you in evaluating the accompanying Statement of Investment Performance Statistics of XYZ Fund (prepared in accordance with the criteria specified therein) for the year ended December 31, 20X1. XYZ Fund's management is responsible for the statement of investment performance statistics. This agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of those parties specified in this report. Consequently, we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described below either for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

[Include paragraphs to enumerate procedures and findings.]

¹³ When the practitioner consents to the inclusion of his or her report on an agreed-upon procedures engagement in a document or written communication containing the entity's financial statements, he or she should refer to AU section 504, *Association With Financial Statements*, or to Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services (SSARS) No. 1, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* [AR section 100], as appropriate, for guidance on his or her responsibility pertaining to the financial statements.

The practitioner should follow (a) AU section 504.04 when the financial statements of a public or nonpublic entity are audited (or reviewed in accordance with AU section 722, *Interim Financial Information*, or (b) AU section 504.05 when the financial statements of a public entity are unaudited. The practitioner should follow SSARS No. 1, paragraph 3 [AR section 100.03] when (a) the financial statements of a nonpublic entity are reviewed or compiled or (b) the financial statements of a nonpublic entity are *not* reviewed or compiled and are not submitted by the accountant, as defined in SSARS No. 1, paragraph 1 [AR section 100.01]. (See section 101.82 and .83 for guidance when the practitioner combines or includes in a document a restricted-use report with a general-use report.) [Footnote revised, November 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services No. 9.]

¹⁴ The purpose of the restriction on the use of the practitioner's report on applying agreed-upon procedures is to restrict its use to only those parties that have agreed upon the procedures performed and taken responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures. Paragraph .36 describes the process for adding parties who were not originally contemplated in the agreed-upon procedures engagement.

We were not engaged to and did not conduct an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on the accompanying Statement of Investment Performance Statistics of XYZ Fund. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the audit committees and managements of ABC Inc. and XYZ Fund,¹⁵ and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

Explanatory Language

.33 The practitioner also may include explanatory language about matters such as the following:

- Disclosure of stipulated facts, assumptions, or interpretations (including the source thereof) used in the application of agreed-upon procedures (For example, see section 601.26.)
- Description of the condition of records, controls, or data to which the procedures were applied
- Explanation that the practitioner has no responsibility to update his or her report
- Explanation of sampling risk

Dating of Report

.34 The date of completion of the agreed-upon procedures should be used as the date of the practitioner's report.

Restrictions on the Performance of Procedures

.35 When circumstances impose restrictions on the performance of the agreed-upon procedures, the practitioner should attempt to obtain agreement from the specified parties for modification of the agreed-upon procedures. When such agreement cannot be obtained (for example, when the agreed-upon procedures are published by a regulatory agency that will not modify the procedures), the practitioner should describe any restrictions on the performance of procedures in his or her report or withdraw from the engagement.

Adding Specified Parties (Nonparticipant Parties)

.36 Subsequent to the completion of the agreed-upon procedures engagement, a practitioner may be requested to consider the addition of another party as a specified party (*a nonparticipant party*). The practitioner may agree to add a nonparticipant party as a specified party, based on consideration of such factors as the identity of the nonparticipant party and the intended use of the report.¹⁶ If the practitioner does agree to add the nonparticipant party, he or

¹⁵ The report may list the specified parties or refer the reader to the specified parties listed elsewhere in the report.

¹⁶ When considering whether to add a nonparticipant party, the guidance in AU section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraphs .06 and .07, may be helpful.

she should obtain affirmative acknowledgment, normally in writing, from the nonparticipant party agreeing to the procedures performed and of its taking responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures. If the nonparticipant party is added after the practitioner has issued his or her report, the report may be reissued or the practitioner may provide other written acknowledgment that the nonparticipant party has been added as a specified party. If the report is reissued, the report date should not be changed. If the practitioner provides written acknowledgment that the nonparticipant party has been added as a specified party, such written acknowledgment ordinarily should state that no procedures have been performed subsequent to the date of the report.

Written Representations

.37 A practitioner may find a representation letter to be a useful and practical means of obtaining representations from the responsible party. The need for such a letter may depend on the nature of the engagement and the specified parties. For example, section 601.68 requires a practitioner to obtain written representations from the responsible party in an agreed-upon procedures engagement related to compliance with specified requirements.

.38 Examples of matters that might appear in a representation letter from the responsible party include the following:

- a. A statement acknowledging responsibility for the subject matter and, when applicable, the assertion
- b. A statement acknowledging responsibility for selecting the criteria and for determining that such criteria are appropriate for their purposes
- c. The assertion about the subject matter based on the criteria selected
- d. A statement that all known matters contradicting the subject matter or the assertion and any communication from regulatory agencies affecting the subject matter or the assertion has been disclosed to the practitioner
- e. Availability of all records relevant to the subject matter and the agreed-upon procedures
- f. Other matters as the practitioner deems appropriate

.39 The responsible party's refusal to furnish written representations determined by the practitioner to be appropriate for the engagement constitutes a limitation on the performance of the engagement. In such circumstances, the practitioner should do one of the following.

- a. Disclose in his or her report the inability to obtain representations from the responsible party.
- b. Withdraw from the engagement.¹⁷
- c. Change the engagement to another form of engagement.

¹⁷ For an agreed-upon procedures engagement performed pursuant to section 601, management's refusal to furnish all required representations also constitutes a limitation on the scope of the engagement that requires the practitioner to withdraw from the engagement.

Knowledge of Matters Outside Agreed-Upon Procedures

.40 The practitioner need not perform procedures beyond the agreed-upon procedures. However, in connection with the application of agreed-upon procedures, if matters come to the practitioner's attention by other means that significantly contradict the subject matter (or written assertion related thereto) referred to in the practitioner's report, the practitioner should include this matter in his or her report.¹⁸ For example, if, during the course of applying agreed-upon procedures regarding an entity's internal control, the practitioner becomes aware of a material weakness by means other than performance of the agreed-upon procedure, the practitioner should include this matter in his or her report.

Change to an Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement From Another Form of Engagement

.41 A practitioner who has been engaged to perform another form of attest engagement or a nonattest service engagement may, before the engagement's completion, be requested to change the engagement to an agreed-upon procedures engagement under this section. A request to change the engagement may result from a change in circumstances affecting the client's requirements, a misunderstanding about the nature of the original services or the alternative services originally available, or a restriction on the performance of the original engagement, whether imposed by the client or caused by circumstances.

.42 Before a practitioner who was engaged to perform another form of engagement agrees to change the engagement to an agreed-upon procedures engagement, he or she should consider the following:

- a. The possibility that certain procedures performed as part of another type of engagement are not appropriate for inclusion in an agreed-upon procedures engagement
- b. The reason given for the request, particularly the implications of a restriction on the scope of the original engagement or the matters to be reported
- c. The additional effort required to complete the original engagement
- d. If applicable, the reasons for changing from a general-use report to a restricted-use report

.43 If the specified parties acknowledge agreement to the procedures performed or to be performed and assume responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures to be included in the agreed-upon procedures engagement, either of the following would be considered a reasonable basis for requesting a change in the engagement—

- a. A change in circumstances that requires another form of engagement
- b. A misunderstanding concerning the nature of the original engagement or the available alternatives

¹⁸ If the practitioner has performed (or has been engaged to perform) an audit of the entity's financial statements to which an element, account, or item of a financial statement relates and the auditor's report on such financial statements includes a departure from a standard report [see AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*], he or she should consider including a reference to the auditor's report and the departure from the standard report in his or her agreed-upon procedures report.

.44 In all circumstances, if the original engagement procedures are substantially complete or the effort to complete such procedures is relatively insignificant, the practitioner should consider the propriety of accepting a change in the engagement.

.45 If the practitioner concludes, based on his or her professional judgment, that there is reasonable justification to change the engagement, and provided he or she complies with the standards applicable to agreed-upon procedures engagements, the practitioner should issue an appropriate agreed-upon procedures report. The report should not include reference to either the original engagement or performance limitations that resulted in the changed engagement. (See paragraph .40.)

Combined Reports Covering Both Restricted-Use and General-Use Subject Matter or Presentations

.46 When a practitioner performs services pursuant to an engagement to apply agreed-upon procedures to specific subject matter as part of or in addition to another form of service, this section applies only to those services described herein; other Standards would apply to the other services. Other services may include an audit, review, or compilation of a financial statement, another attest service performed pursuant to the SSAEs, or a nonattest service.¹⁹ Reports on applying agreed-upon procedures to specific subject matter may be combined with reports on such other services, provided the types of services can be clearly distinguished and the applicable Standards for each service are followed. See section 101.82 and .83, regarding restricting the use of the combined report.

Effective Date

.47 This section is effective when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001. Early application is permitted.

¹⁹ See section 101.105–.107 for requirements relating to attest services provided as part of a consulting service engagement.

Appendix

Additional Illustrative Reports

The following are additional illustrations of reporting on applying agreed-upon procedures to elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement.

1. Report in Connection With a Proposed Acquisition

Independent Accountant’s Report
on Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures

To the Board of Directors and Management of X Company:

We have performed the procedures enumerated below, which were agreed to by the Board of Directors and Management of X Company, solely to assist you in connection with the proposed acquisition of Y Company as of December 31, 20XX. Y Company is responsible for its cash and accounts receivable records. This agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of the parties specified in this report. Consequently, we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described below either for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

The procedures and the associated findings are as follows:

Cash

1. We obtained confirmation of the cash on deposit from the following banks, and we agreed the confirmed balance to the amount shown on the bank reconciliations maintained by Y Company. We mathematically checked the bank reconciliations and compared the resultant cash balances per book to the respective general ledger account balances.

<i>Bank</i>	<i>General Ledger Account Balances as of December 31, 20XX</i>
ABC National Bank	\$ 5,000
DEF State Bank	3,776
XYZ Trust Company regular account	86,912
XYZ Trust Company payroll account	5,000
	<u>\$110,688</u>

We found no exceptions as a result of the procedures.

Accounts Receivable

2. We added the individual customer account balances shown in an aged trial balance of accounts receivable (identified as Exhibit A) and compared the resultant total with the balance in the general ledger account.

We found no difference.

3. We compared the individual customer account balances shown in the aged trial balance of accounts receivable (Exhibit A) as of December 31, 19XX, to the balances shown in the accounts receivable subsidiary ledger.

We found no exceptions as a result of the comparisons.

4. We traced the aging (according to invoice dates) for 50 customer account balances shown in Exhibit A to the details of outstanding invoices in the accounts receivable subsidiary ledger. The balances selected for tracing were determined by starting at the eighth item and selecting every fifteenth item thereafter.

We found no exceptions in the aging of the amounts of the 50 customer account balances selected. The sample size traced was 9.8 percent of the aggregate amount of the customer account balances.

5. We mailed confirmations directly to the customers representing the 150 largest customer account balances selected from the accounts receivable trial balance, and we received responses as indicated below. We also traced the items constituting the outstanding customer account balance to invoices and supporting shipping documents for customers from which there was no reply. As agreed, any individual differences in a customer account balance of less than \$300 were to be considered minor, and no further procedures were performed.

Of the 150 customer balances confirmed, we received responses from 140 customers; 10 customers did not reply. No exceptions were identified in 120 of the confirmations received. The differences disclosed in the remaining 20 confirmation replies were either minor in amount (as defined above) or were reconciled to the customer account balance without proposed adjustment thereto. A summary of the confirmation results according to the respective aging categories is as follows.

<i>Accounts Receivable December 31, 20XX</i>			
<i>Aging Categories</i>	<i>Customer Account Balances</i>	<i>Confirmations Requested</i>	<i>Confirmations Received</i>
Current	\$156,000	\$76,000	\$65,000
Past due:			
Less than one month	60,000	30,000	19,000
One to three months	36,000	18,000	10,000
Over three months	48,000	48,000	8,000
	<u>\$300,000</u>	<u>\$172,000</u>	<u>\$102,000</u>

We were not engaged to and did not conduct an audit, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on cash and accounts receivable. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the board of directors and management of X Company and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

2. Report in Connection With Claims of Creditors

Independent Accountant's Report on Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures

To the Trustee of XYZ Company:

We have performed the procedures described below, which were agreed to by the Trustee of XYZ Company, with respect to the claims of creditors solely to assist you in determining the validity of claims of XYZ Company as of May 31, 20XX, as set forth in the accompanying Schedule A. XYZ Company is responsible for maintaining records of claims submitted by creditors of XYZ Company. This agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of the party specified in this report. Consequently, we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described below either for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

The procedures and associated findings are as follows:

1. Compare the total of the trial balance of accounts payable at May 31, 20XX, prepared by XYZ Company, to the balance in the related general ledger account.

The total of the accounts payable trial balance agreed with the balance in the related general ledger account.

2. Compare the amounts for claims received from creditors (as shown in claim documents provided by XYZ Company) to the respective amounts shown in the trial balance of accounts payable. Using the data included in the claims documents and in XYZ Company's accounts payable detail records, reconcile any differences found to the accounts payable trial balance.

All differences noted are presented in column 3 of Schedule A. Except for those amounts shown in column 4 of Schedule A, all such differences were reconciled.

3. Obtain the documentation submitted by creditors in support of the amounts claimed and compare it to the following documentation in XYZ Company's files: invoices, receiving reports, and other evidence of receipt of goods or services.

No exceptions were found as a result of these comparisons.

We were not engaged to and did not conduct an audit, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on the claims of creditors set forth in the accompanying Schedule A. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the Trustee of XYZ Company and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than this specified party.

[Signature]

[Date]

AT Section 301

Financial Forecasts and Projections

Source: SSAE No. 10; SSAE No. 11.

Effective when the date of the practitioner's report is on or after June 1, 2001, unless otherwise indicated.

Introduction

.01 This section sets forth standards and provides guidance to practitioners who are engaged to issue or do issue examination (paragraphs .29 to .50), compilation (paragraphs .12 to .28), or agreed-upon procedures reports (paragraphs .51 to .56) on prospective financial statements.

.02 Whenever a practitioner (a) submits, to his or her client or others, prospective financial statements that he or she has assembled, or assisted in assembling, that are or reasonably might be expected to be used by another (third) party¹ or (b) reports on prospective financial statements that are, or reasonably might be expected to be used by another (third) party, the practitioner should perform one of the engagements described in the preceding paragraph. In deciding whether the prospective financial statements are or reasonably might be expected to be used by a third party, the practitioner may rely on either the written or oral representation of the responsible party, unless information comes to his or her attention that contradicts the responsible party's representation. If such third-party use of the prospective financial statements is not reasonably expected, the provisions of this section are not applicable unless the practitioner has been engaged to examine, compile, or apply agreed-upon procedures to the prospective financial statements.

.03 This section also provides standards for a practitioner who is engaged to examine, compile, or apply agreed-upon procedures to partial presentations. A partial presentation is a presentation of prospective financial information that excludes one or more of the items required for prospective financial statements as described in Appendix A [paragraph .68], "Minimum Presentation Guidelines."

.04 The practitioner who has been engaged to or does compile, examine, or apply agreed-upon procedures to a partial presentation should perform the engagement in accordance with the guidance in paragraphs .12 to .28 for compilations, .29 to .50 for examinations, and .51 to .56 for agreed-upon procedures, respectively, modified to reflect the nature of the presentation as discussed in paragraphs .03, .57, and .58.

.05 This section does not provide standards or procedures for engagements involving prospective financial statements used solely in connection with litigation support services. A practitioner may, however, look to these standards because they provide helpful guidance for many aspects of such engagements and may be referred to as useful guidance in such engagements. Litigation support services are engagements involving pending or potential formal legal proceedings before a trier of fact in connection with the resolution

¹ However, paragraph .59 permits an exception to this for certain types of budgets.

of a dispute between two or more parties, for example, when a practitioner acts as an expert witness. This exception is provided because, among other things, the practitioner's work in such proceedings is ordinarily subject to detailed analysis and challenge by each party to the dispute. This exception does not apply, however, if either of the following occur.

- a. The practitioner is specifically engaged to issue or does issue an examination, a compilation, or an agreed-upon procedures report on prospective financial statements.
- b. The prospective financial statements are for use by third parties who, under the rules of the proceedings, do not have the opportunity for analysis and challenge by each party to a dispute in a legal proceeding.

For example, creditors may not have such opportunities when prospective financial statements are submitted to them to secure their agreement to a plan of reorganization.

.06 In reporting on prospective financial statements, the practitioner may be called on to assist the responsible party in identifying assumptions, gathering information, or assembling the statements.² The responsible party is nonetheless responsible for the preparation and presentation of the prospective financial statements because the prospective financial statements are dependent on the actions, plans, and assumptions of the responsible party, and only it can take responsibility for the assumptions. Accordingly, the practitioner's engagement should not be characterized in his or her report or in the document containing his or her report as including "preparation" of the prospective financial statements. A practitioner may be engaged to prepare a financial analysis of a potential project where the engagement includes obtaining the information, making appropriate assumptions, and assembling the presentation. Such an analysis is not and should not be characterized as a forecast or projection and would not be appropriate for general use. However, if the responsible party reviewed and adopted the assumptions and presentation, or based its assumptions and presentation on the analysis, the practitioner could perform one of the engagements described in this section and issue a report appropriate for general use.

.07 The concept of materiality affects the application of this section to prospective financial statements as materiality affects the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) to historical financial statements. Materiality is a concept that is judged in light of the expected range of reasonableness of the information; therefore, users should not expect prospective information (information about events that have not yet occurred) to be as precise as historical information.

Definitions

.08 For the purposes of this section the following definitions apply.

- a. *Prospective financial statements*—Either financial forecasts or financial projections including the summaries of significant assumptions and accounting policies. Although prospective financial statements

² Some of these services may not be appropriate if the practitioner is to be named as the person reporting on an examination in a filing with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). SEC Release Nos. 33-5992 and 34-15305, "Disclosure of Projections of Future Economic Performance," state that for prospective financial statements filed with the commission, "a person should not be named as an outside reviewer if he actively assisted in the preparation of the projection."

may cover a period that has partially expired, statements for periods that have completely expired are not considered to be prospective financial statements. Pro forma financial statements and partial presentations are not considered to be prospective financial statements.³

- b. *Partial presentation*—A presentation of prospective financial information that excludes one or more of the items required for prospective financial statements as described in Appendix A [paragraph .68], “Minimum Presentation Guidelines.” Partial presentations are not ordinarily appropriate for general use; accordingly, partial presentations should be restricted for use by specified parties who will be negotiating directly with the responsible party.
- c. *Financial forecast*—Prospective financial statements that present, to the best of the responsible party’s knowledge and belief, an entity’s expected financial position, results of operations, and cash flows. A financial forecast is based on the responsible party’s assumptions reflecting the conditions it expects to exist and the course of action it expects to take. A financial forecast may be expressed in specific monetary amounts as a single point estimate of forecasted results or as a range, where the responsible party selects key assumptions to form a range within which it reasonably expects, to the best of its knowledge and belief, the item or items subject to the assumptions to actually fall. When a forecast contains a range, the range is not selected in a biased or misleading manner, for example, a range in which one end is significantly less expected than the other. Minimum presentation guidelines for prospective financial statements are set forth in Appendix A [paragraph .68].
- d. *Financial projection*—Prospective financial statements that present, to the best of the responsible party’s knowledge and belief, given one or more hypothetical assumptions, an entity’s expected financial position, results of operations, and cash flows. A financial projection is sometimes prepared to present one or more hypothetical courses of action for evaluation, as in response to a question such as, “What would happen if . . . ?” A financial projection is based on the responsible party’s assumptions reflecting conditions it expects would exist and the course of action it expects would be taken, given one or more hypothetical assumptions. A projection, like a forecast, may contain a range. Minimum presentation guidelines for prospective financial statements are set forth in Appendix A [paragraph .68].
- e. *Entity*—Any unit, existing or to be formed, for which financial statements could be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) or another comprehensive basis of accounting.⁴ For example, an entity can be an individual, partnership, corporation, trust, estate, association, or governmental unit.
- f. *Hypothetical assumption*—An assumption used in a financial projection to present a condition or course of action that is not necessarily expected to occur, but is consistent with the purpose of the projection.

³ The objective of pro forma financial information is to show what the significant effects on the historical financial information might have been had a consummated or proposed transaction (or event) occurred at an earlier date. Although the transaction in question may be prospective, this section does not apply to such presentations because they are essentially historical financial statements and do not purport to be prospective financial statements. See section 401, *Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information*.

⁴ AU section 623, *Special Reports*, discusses comprehensive bases of accounting other than GAAP.

- g. Responsible party*—The person or persons who are responsible for the assumptions underlying the prospective financial statements. The responsible party usually is management, but it can be persons outside of the entity who do not currently have the authority to direct operations (for example, a party considering acquiring the entity).
- h. Assembly*—The manual or computer processing of mathematical or other clerical functions related to the presentation of the prospective financial statements. Assembly does not refer to the mere reproduction and collation of such statements or to the responsible party's use of the practitioner's computer processing hardware or software.
- i. Key factors*—The significant matters on which an entity's future results are expected to depend. Such factors are basic to the entity's operations and thus encompass matters that affect, among other things, the entity's sales, production, service, and financing activities. Key factors serve as a foundation for prospective financial statements and are the bases for the assumptions.

Uses of Prospective Financial Statements

.09 Prospective financial statements are for either *general use* or *limited use*. *General use* of prospective financial statements refers to the use of the statements by persons with whom the responsible party is not negotiating directly, for example, in an offering statement of an entity's debt or equity interests. Because recipients of prospective financial statements distributed for general use are unable to ask the responsible party directly about the presentation, the presentation most useful to them is one that portrays, to the best of the responsible party's knowledge and belief, the expected results. Thus, only a financial forecast is appropriate for general use.

.10 *Limited use* of prospective financial statements refers to the use of prospective financial statements by the responsible party alone or by the responsible party and third parties with whom the responsible party is negotiating directly. Examples include use in negotiations for a bank loan, submission to a regulatory agency, and use solely within the entity. Third-party recipients of prospective financial statements intended for limited use can ask questions of the responsible party and negotiate terms directly with it. Any type of prospective financial statements that would be useful in the circumstances would normally be appropriate for limited use. Thus, the presentation may be a financial forecast or a financial projection.

.11 Because a financial projection is not appropriate for general use, a practitioner should not consent to the use of his or her name in conjunction with a financial projection that he or she believes will be distributed to those who will not be negotiating directly with the responsible party, for example, in an offering statement of an entity's debt or equity interests, unless the projection is used to supplement a financial forecast.

Compilation of Prospective Financial Statements

.12 A compilation of prospective financial statements is a professional service that involves the following:

- a. Assembling*, to the extent necessary, the prospective financial statements based on the responsible party's assumptions

- b. Performing the required compilation procedures,⁵ including reading the prospective financial statements with their summaries of significant assumptions and accounting policies, and considering whether they appear to be presented in conformity with AICPA presentation guidelines⁶ and not obviously inappropriate
- c. Issuing a compilation report

.13 A compilation is not intended to provide assurance on the prospective financial statements or the assumptions underlying such statements. Because of the limited nature of the practitioner's procedures, a compilation does not provide assurance that the practitioner will become aware of significant matters that might be disclosed by more extensive procedures, for example, those performed in an examination of prospective financial statements.

.14 The summary of significant assumptions is essential to the reader's understanding of prospective financial statements. Accordingly, the practitioner should not compile prospective financial statements that exclude disclosure of the summary of significant assumptions. Also, the practitioner should not compile a financial projection that excludes either (a) an identification of the hypothetical assumptions or (b) a description of the limitations on the usefulness of the presentation.

.15 The following standards apply to a compilation of prospective financial statements and to the resulting report.

- a. The compilation should be performed by a person or persons having adequate technical training and proficiency to compile prospective financial statements.
- b. Due professional care should be exercised in the performance of the compilation and the preparation of the report.
- c. The work should be adequately planned, and assistants, if any, should be properly supervised.
- d. Applicable compilation procedures should be performed as a basis for reporting on the compiled prospective financial statements. (See Appendix B [paragraph .69], "Training and Proficiency, Planning and Procedures Applicable to Compilations," for the procedures to be performed.)
- e. The report based on the practitioner's compilation of prospective financial statements should conform to the applicable guidance in paragraphs .18 through .28.

.16 The practitioner should consider, after applying the procedures specified in paragraph .69, whether representations or other information he or she has received appear to be obviously inappropriate, incomplete, or otherwise misleading, and if so, the practitioner should attempt to obtain additional or revised information. If he or she does not receive such information, the practitioner should ordinarily withdraw from the compilation engagement.⁷ (Note that the

⁵ See Appendix B [paragraph .69], subparagraph 5, for the required procedures.

⁶ AICPA presentation guidelines are detailed in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Guide for Prospective Financial Information*.

⁷ The practitioner need not withdraw from the engagement if the effect of such information on the prospective financial statement does not appear to be material.

omission of disclosures, other than those relating to significant assumptions, would not require the practitioner to withdraw. See paragraph .26.)

Working Papers

[.17] [Paragraph deleted by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

Reports on Compiled Prospective Financial Statements

.18 The practitioner's standard report on a compilation of prospective financial statements should include the following:

- a. An identification of the prospective financial statements presented by the responsible party
- b. A statement that the practitioner has compiled the prospective financial statements in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants
- c. A statement that a compilation is limited in scope and does not enable the practitioner to express an opinion or any other form of assurance on the prospective financial statements or the assumptions
- d. A caveat that the prospective results may not be achieved
- e. A statement that the practitioner assumes no responsibility to update the report for events and circumstances occurring after the date of the report
- f. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- g. The date of the compilation report

.19 The following is the form of the practitioner's standard report on the compilation of a forecast that does not contain a range.⁸

We have compiled the accompanying forecasted balance sheet, statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ending, in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.⁹

A compilation is limited to presenting in the form of a forecast information that is the representation of management¹⁰ and does not include evaluation of the support for the assumptions underlying the forecast. We have not examined the forecast and, accordingly, do not express an opinion or any other form of

⁸ The forms of reports provided in this section are appropriate whether the presentation is based on GAAP or on another comprehensive basis of accounting.

⁹ When the presentation is summarized as discussed in Appendix A [paragraph .68], this sentence might read, "We have compiled the accompanying summarized forecast of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ending in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants."

¹⁰ If the responsible party is other than management, the references to management in the standard reports provided in this section should be changed to refer to the party who assumes responsibility for the assumptions.

assurance on the accompanying statements or assumptions. Furthermore, there will usually be differences between the forecasted and actual results, because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected, and those differences may be material. We have no responsibility to update this report for events and circumstances occurring after the date of this report.

[Signature]

[Date]

.20 When the presentation is a projection, the practitioner's compilation report should include the report elements set forth in paragraph .18. Additionally, the report should include a statement describing the special purpose for which the projection was prepared as well as a separate paragraph that restricts the use of the report because it is intended to be used solely by the specified parties. The following is the form of the practitioner's standard report on a compilation of a projection that does not contain a range.

We have compiled the accompanying projected balance sheet, statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ending, in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.¹¹ The accompanying projection was prepared for *[state special purpose, for example, "the purpose of negotiating a loan to expand XYZ Company's plant"]*.

A compilation is limited to presenting in the form of a projection information that is the representation of management and does not include evaluation of the support for the assumptions underlying the projection. We have not examined the projection and, accordingly, do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on the accompanying statements or assumptions. Furthermore, even if *[describe hypothetical assumption, for example, "the loan is granted and the plant is expanded,"]* there will usually be differences between the projected and actual results, because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected, and those differences may be material. We have no responsibility to update this report for events and circumstances occurring after the date of this report.

The accompanying projection and this report are intended solely for the information and use of *[identify specified parties, for example, "XYZ Company and DEF Bank"]* and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

.21 When the prospective financial statements contain a range, the practitioner's standard report should also include a separate paragraph that states that the responsible party has elected to portray the expected results of one or more assumptions as a range. The following is an example of the separate paragraph to be added to the practitioner's report when he or she compiles prospective financial statements, in this case a forecast, that contain a range.

¹¹ When the presentation is summarized as discussed in Appendix A [paragraph .68], this sentence might read as follows.

We have compiled the accompanying summarized projection of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ending in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.

As described in the summary of significant assumptions, management of XYZ Company has elected to portray forecasted *[describe financial statement element or elements for which the expected results of one or more assumptions fall within a range, and identify the assumptions expected to fall within a range, for example, "revenue at the amounts of \$X,XXX and \$Y,YYY, which is predicated upon occupancy rates of XX percent and YY percent of available apartments,"]* rather than as a single point estimate. Accordingly, the accompanying forecast presents forecasted financial position, results of operations, and cash flows *[describe one or more assumptions expected to fall within a range, for example, "at such occupancy rates."]* However, there is no assurance that the actual results will fall within the range of *[describe one or more assumptions expected to fall within a range, for example, "occupancy rates"]* presented.

.22 The date of completion of the practitioner's compilation procedures should be used as the date of the report.

.23 A practitioner may compile prospective financial statements for an entity with respect to which he or she is not independent.¹² In such circumstances, the practitioner should specifically disclose his or her lack of independence; however, the reason for the lack of independence should not be described. When the practitioner is not independent, he or she may give the standard compilation report but should include the following sentence after the last paragraph.

We are not independent with respect to XYZ Company.

.24 Prospective financial statements may be included in a document that also contains historical financial statements and the practitioner's report thereon.¹³ In addition, the historical financial statements that appear in the document may be summarized and presented with the prospective financial statements for comparative purposes.¹⁴ An example of the reference to the practitioner's report on the historical financial statements when he or she audited, reviewed, or compiled those statements is presented below.

[Concluding sentence of last paragraph]

The historical financial statements for the year ended December 31, 20XX, *[from which the historical data are derived]* and our report thereon are set forth on pages xx-xx of this document.

.25 In some circumstances, a practitioner may wish to expand his or her report to emphasize a matter regarding the prospective financial statements. Such information may be presented in a separate paragraph of the practitioner's report. However, the practitioner should exercise care that emphasizing such a matter does not give the impression that he or she is expressing assurance or expanding the degree of responsibility he or she is taking with

¹² In making a judgment about whether he or she is independent, the practitioner should be guided by the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct. Also, see the Auditing Interpretation "Applicability of Guidance on Reporting When Not Independent," (AU section 9504.19–.22).

¹³ The practitioner's responsibility with respect to those historical financial statements upon which he or she is not engaged to perform a professional service is described in AU section 504, *Association With Financial Statements*, in the case of public entities, and Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services (SSARS) No. 1, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements*, paragraph 3 [AR section 100.03], in the case of nonpublic entities. [Footnote revised, November 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services No. 9.]

¹⁴ AU section 552, *Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data*, discusses the practitioner's report where summarized financial statements are derived from audited statements that are not included in the same document.

respect to such information.¹⁵ For example, the practitioner should not include statements in his or her compilation report about the mathematical accuracy of the statements or their conformity with presentation guidelines.

Modifications of the Standard Compilation Report

.26 An entity may request a practitioner to compile prospective financial statements that contain presentation deficiencies or omit disclosures other than those relating to significant assumptions. The practitioner may compile such prospective financial statements provided the deficiency or omission is clearly indicated in his or her report and is not, to his or her knowledge, undertaken with the intention of misleading those who might reasonably be expected to use such statements.

.27 Notwithstanding the preceding, if the compiled prospective financial statements are presented on a comprehensive basis of accounting other than GAAP and do not include disclosure of the basis of accounting used, the basis should be disclosed in the practitioner's report.

.28 The following is an example of a paragraph that should be added to a report on compiled prospective financial statements, in this case a financial forecast, in which the summary of significant accounting policies has been omitted.

Management has elected to omit the summary of significant accounting policies required by the guidelines for presentation of a forecast established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. If the omitted disclosures were included in the forecast, they might influence the user's conclusions about the Company's financial position, results of operations, and cash flows for the forecast period. Accordingly, this forecast is not designed for those who are not informed about such matters.

Examination of Prospective Financial Statements

.29 An examination of prospective financial statements is a professional service that involves—

- a. Evaluating the preparation of the prospective financial statements.
- b. Evaluating the support underlying the assumptions.
- c. Evaluating the presentation of the prospective financial statements for conformity with AICPA presentation guidelines.¹⁶
- d. Issuing an examination report.

.30 As a result of his or her examination, the practitioner has a basis for reporting on whether, in his or her opinion—

- a. The prospective financial statements are presented in conformity with AICPA guidelines.

¹⁵ However, the practitioner may provide assurance on tax matters in order to comply with the requirements of regulations governing practice before the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) contained in 31 CFR pt. 10 (Treasury Department Circular No. 230).

¹⁶ AICPA presentation guidelines are detailed in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Guide for Prospective Financial Information*.

- b. The assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the responsible party's forecast, or whether the assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the responsible party's projection given the hypothetical assumptions.

.31 The practitioner should follow the general, fieldwork, and reporting standards for attestation engagements as set forth in section 101, *Attest Engagements*, in performing an examination of prospective financial statements and reporting thereon. (See paragraph .70 for standards concerning such technical training and proficiency, planning the examination engagement, and the types of procedures a practitioner should perform to obtain sufficient evidence for his or her examination report.)

Working Papers

[.32] [Paragraph deleted by the issuance of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements No. 11, January 2002.]

Reports on Examined Prospective Financial Statements

.33 The practitioner's standard report on an examination of prospective financial statements should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. An identification of the prospective financial statements presented
- c. An identification of the responsible party and a statement that the prospective financial statements are the responsibility of the responsible party
- d. A statement that the practitioner's responsibility is to express an opinion on the prospective financial statements based on his or her examination
- e. A statement that the examination of the prospective financial statements was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included such procedures as the practitioner considered necessary in the circumstances
- f. A statement that the practitioner believes that the examination provides a reasonable basis for his or her opinion
- g. The practitioner's opinion that the prospective financial statements are presented in conformity with AICPA presentation guidelines and that the underlying assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the forecast or a reasonable basis for the projection given the hypothetical assumptions¹⁷
- h. A caveat that the prospective results may not be achieved
- i. A statement that the practitioner assumes no responsibility to update the report for events and circumstances occurring after the date of the report

¹⁷ The practitioner's report need not comment on the consistency of the application of accounting principles as long as the presentation of any change in accounting principles is in conformity with AICPA presentation guidelines as detailed in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Guide for Prospective Financial Information*.

- j. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- k. The date of the examination report

.34 The following is the form of the practitioner's standard report on an examination of a forecast that does not contain a range.

Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the accompanying forecasted balance sheet, statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ending.¹⁸ XYZ Company's management is responsible for the forecast. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the forecast based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included such procedures as we considered necessary to evaluate both the assumptions used by management and the preparation and presentation of the forecast. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the accompanying forecast is presented in conformity with guidelines for presentation of a forecast established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, and the underlying assumptions provide a reasonable basis for management's forecast. However, there will usually be differences between the forecasted and actual results, because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected, and those differences may be material. We have no responsibility to update this report for events and circumstances occurring after the date of this report.

[Signature]

[Date]

.35 When a practitioner examines a projection, his or her opinion regarding the assumptions should be conditioned on the hypothetical assumptions; that is, he or she should express an opinion on whether the assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the projection given the hypothetical assumptions. The practitioner's examination report on a projection should include the report elements set forth in paragraph .33. Additionally, the report should include a statement describing the special purpose for which the projection was prepared as well as a separate paragraph that restricts the use of the report because it is intended to be used solely by specified parties. The following is the form of the practitioner's standard report on an examination of a projection that does not contain a range.

Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the accompanying projected balance sheet, statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows of XYZ Company as of December 31,

¹⁸ When the presentation is summarized as discussed in Appendix A [paragraph .68], this sentence might read, "We have examined the accompanying summarized forecast of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ending."

20XX, and for the year then ending.¹⁹ XYZ Company's management is responsible for the projection, which was prepared for [*state special purpose, for example, "the purpose of negotiating a loan to expand XYZ Company's plant"*]. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the projection based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included such procedures as we considered necessary to evaluate both the assumptions used by management and the preparation and presentation of the projection. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the accompanying projection is presented in conformity with guidelines for presentation of a projection established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, and the underlying assumptions provide a reasonable basis for management's projection [*describe the hypothetical assumption, for example, "assuming the granting of the requested loan for the purpose of expanding XYZ Company's plant as described in the summary of significant assumptions."*] However, even if [*describe hypothetical assumption, for example, "the loan is granted and the plant is expanded,"*], there will usually be differences between the projected and actual results, because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected, and those differences may be material. We have no responsibility to update this report for events and circumstances occurring after the date of this report.

The accompanying projection and this report are intended solely for the information and use of [*identify specified parties, for example, "XYZ Company and DEF National Bank"*] and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

.36 When the prospective financial statements contain a range, the practitioner's standard report should also include a separate paragraph that states that the responsible party has elected to portray the expected results of one or more assumptions as a range. The following is an example of the separate paragraph to be added to the practitioner's report when he or she examines prospective financial statements, in this case a forecast, that contain a range.

As described in the summary of significant assumptions, management of XYZ Company has elected to portray forecasted [*describe financial statement element or elements for which the expected results of one or more assumptions fall within a range, and identify assumptions expected to fall within a range, for example, "revenue at the amounts of \$X,XXX and \$Y,YYY, which is predicated upon occupancy rates of XX percent and YY percent of available apartments,"*] rather than as a single point estimate. Accordingly, the accompanying forecast presents forecasted financial position, results of operations, and cash flows [*describe one or more assumptions expected to fall within a range, for example, "at such occupancy rates."*] However, there is no assurance that the actual results will fall within the range of [*describe one or more assumptions expected to fall within a range, for example, "occupancy rates"*] presented.

.37 The date of completion of the practitioner's examination procedures should be used as the date of the report.

¹⁹ When the presentation is summarized as discussed in Appendix A [paragraph .68], this sentence might read, "We have examined the accompanying summarized projection of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ending."

Modifications to the Practitioner's Opinion²⁰

.38 The following circumstances result in the following types of modified practitioner's report involving the practitioner's opinion.

- a. If, in the practitioner's opinion, the prospective financial statements depart from AICPA presentation guidelines, he or she should express a qualified opinion (see paragraph .39) or an adverse opinion. (See paragraph .41.)²¹ However, if the presentation departs from the presentation guidelines because it fails to disclose assumptions that appear to be significant, the practitioner should express an adverse opinion. (See paragraphs .41 and .42.)
- b. If the practitioner believes that one or more significant assumptions do not provide a reasonable basis for the forecast, or a reasonable basis for the projection given the hypothetical assumptions, he or she should express an adverse opinion. (See paragraph .41.)
- c. If the practitioner's examination is affected by conditions that preclude application of one or more procedures he or she considers necessary in the circumstances, he or she should disclaim an opinion and describe the scope limitation in his or her report. (See paragraph .43.)

.39 *Qualified Opinion.* In a qualified opinion, the practitioner should state, in a separate paragraph, all substantive reasons for modifying his or her opinion and describe the departure from AICPA presentation guidelines. His or her opinion should include the words "except" or "exception" as the qualifying language and should refer to the separate explanatory paragraph. The following is an example of an examination report on a forecast that is at variance with AICPA guidelines for presentation of a financial forecast.

Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the accompanying forecasted balance sheet, statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ending. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the forecast. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the forecast based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included such procedures as we considered necessary to evaluate both the assumptions used by management and the preparation and presentation of the forecast. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

The forecast does not disclose significant accounting policies. Disclosure of such policies is required by guidelines for presentation of a forecast established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.

²⁰ Paragraphs .38 through .44 describe circumstances in which the practitioner's standard report on prospective financial statements may require modification. The guidance for modifying the practitioner's standard report is generally applicable to partial presentations. Also, depending on the nature of the presentation, the practitioner may decide to disclose that the partial presentation is not intended to be a presentation of financial position, results of operations, or cash flows. Illustrative reports on partial presentations may be found in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Guide for Prospective Financial Information*.

²¹ However, the practitioner may issue the standard examination report on a financial forecast filed with the SEC that meets the presentation requirements of article XI of Regulation S-X.

In our opinion, except for the omission of the disclosure of the significant accounting policies as discussed in the preceding paragraph, the accompanying forecast is presented in conformity with guidelines for a presentation of a forecast established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and the underlying assumptions provide a reasonable basis for management's forecast. However, there will usually be differences between the forecasted and actual results, because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected, and those differences may be material. We have no responsibility to update this report for events and circumstances occurring after the date of this report.

[Signature]

[Date]

.40 Because of the nature, sensitivity, and interrelationship of prospective information, a reader would find a practitioner's report qualified for a measurement departure,²² the reasonableness of the underlying assumptions, or a scope limitation difficult to interpret. Accordingly, the practitioner should not express his or her opinion about these items with language such as "except for . . ." or "subject to the effects of. . ." Rather, when a measurement departure, an unreasonable assumption, or a limitation on the scope of the practitioner's examination has led him or her to conclude that he or she cannot issue an unqualified opinion, he or she should issue the appropriate type of modified opinion described in paragraphs .41 through .44.

.41 *Adverse Opinion.* In an adverse opinion the practitioner should state, in a separate paragraph, all of the substantive reasons for his or her adverse opinion. His or her opinion should state that the presentation is not in conformity with presentation guidelines and should refer to the explanatory paragraph. When applicable, his or her opinion paragraph should also state that, in the practitioner's opinion, the assumptions do not provide a reasonable basis for the prospective financial statements. An example of an adverse opinion on an examination of prospective financial statements is set forth below. In this case, a financial forecast was examined and the practitioner's opinion was that a significant assumption was unreasonable. The example should be revised as appropriate for a different type of presentation or if the adverse opinion is issued because the statements do not conform to the presentation guidelines.

Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the accompanying forecasted balance sheet, statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ending. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the forecast. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the forecast based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included such procedures as we considered necessary to evaluate both the assumptions used by management and the preparation and presentation of the forecast. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

As discussed under the caption "Sales" in the summary of significant forecast assumptions, the forecasted sales include, among other things, revenue from the Company's federal defense contracts continuing at the current level. The

²² An example of a measurement departure is the failure to capitalize a capital lease in a forecast where the historical financial statements for the prospective period are expected to be presented in conformity with GAAP.

Company's present federal defense contracts will expire in March 20XX. No new contracts have been signed and no negotiations are under way for new federal defense contracts. Furthermore, the federal government has entered into contracts with another company to supply the items being manufactured under the Company's present contracts.

In our opinion, the accompanying forecast is not presented in conformity with guidelines for presentation of a financial forecast established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants because management's assumptions, as discussed in the preceding paragraph, do not provide a reasonable basis for management's forecast. We have no responsibility to update this report for events or circumstances occurring after the date of this report.

[Signature]

[Date]

.42 If the presentation, including the summary of significant assumptions, fails to disclose assumptions that, at the time, appear to be significant, the practitioner should describe the assumptions in his or her report and express an adverse opinion. The practitioner should not examine a presentation that omits all disclosures of assumptions. Also, the practitioner should not examine a financial projection that omits (a) an identification of the hypothetical assumptions or (b) a description of the limitations on the usefulness of the presentation.

.43 *Disclaimer of Opinion.* In a disclaimer of opinion, the practitioner's report should indicate, in a separate paragraph, the respects in which the examination did not comply with standards for an examination. The practitioner should state that the scope of the examination was not sufficient to enable him or her to express an opinion with respect to the presentation or the underlying assumptions, and his or her disclaimer of opinion should include a direct reference to the explanatory paragraph. The following is an example of a report on an examination of prospective financial statements, in this case a financial forecast, for which a significant assumption could not be evaluated.

Independent Accountant's Report

We were engaged to examine the accompanying forecasted balance sheet, statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ending. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the forecast.

As discussed under the caption "Income From Investee" in the summary of significant forecast assumptions, the forecast includes income from an equity investee constituting 23 percent of forecasted net income, which is management's estimate of the Company's share of the investee's income to be accrued for 20XX. The investee has not prepared a forecast for the year ending December 31, 20XX, and we were therefore unable to obtain suitable support for this assumption.

Because, as described in the preceding paragraph, we are unable to evaluate management's assumption regarding income from an equity investee and other assumptions that depend thereon, the scope of our work was not sufficient to express, and we do not express, an opinion with respect to the presentation of or the assumptions underlying the accompanying forecast. We have no responsibility to update this report for events and circumstances occurring after the date of this report.

[Signature]

[Date]

.44 When there is a scope limitation and the practitioner also believes there are material departures from the presentation guidelines, those departures should be described in the practitioner's report.

Other Modifications to the Standard Examination Report

.45 The circumstances described below, although not necessarily resulting in modifications to the practitioner's opinion, would result in the following types of modifications to the standard examination report.

.46 *Emphasis of a Matter.* In some circumstances, the practitioner may wish to emphasize a matter regarding the prospective financial statements but nevertheless intends to express an unqualified opinion. The practitioner may present other information and comments he or she wishes to include, such as explanatory comments or other informative material, in a separate paragraph of his or her report.

.47 *Evaluation Based in Part on a Report of Another Practitioner.* When more than one practitioner is involved in the examination, the guidance provided for that situation in connection with examinations of historical financial statements is generally applicable. When the principal practitioner decides to refer to the report of another practitioner as a basis, in part, for his or her own opinion, he or she should disclose that fact in stating the scope of the examination and should refer to the report of the other practitioner in expressing his or her opinion. Such a reference indicates the division of responsibility for the performance of the examination.

.48 *Comparative Historical Financial Information.* Prospective financial statements may be included in a document that also contains historical financial statements and a practitioner's report thereon.²³ In addition, the historical financial statements that appear in the document may be summarized and presented with the prospective financial statements for comparative purposes.²⁴ An example of the reference to the practitioner's report on the historical financial statements when he or she audited, reviewed, or compiled those statements is presented in paragraph .24.

.49 *Reporting When the Examination Is Part of a Larger Engagement.* When the practitioner's examination of prospective financial statements is part of a larger engagement, for example, a financial feasibility study or business acquisition study, it is appropriate to expand the report on the examination of the prospective financial statements to describe the entire engagement.

.50 The following is a report that might be issued when a practitioner chooses to expand his or her report on a financial feasibility study.²⁵

²³ The practitioner's responsibility with respect to those historical financial statements upon which he or she is not engaged to perform a professional service is described in AU section 504, in the case of public entities, and SSARS No. 1, paragraph 3 [AR section 100.03], in the case of nonpublic entities. [Footnote revised, November 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services No. 9.]

²⁴ AU section 552 discusses the practitioner's report for summarized financial statements derived from audited financial statements that are not included in the same document.

²⁵ Although the entity referred to in the report is a hospital, the form of report is also applicable to other entities such as hotels or stadiums. Also, although the illustrated report format and language should not be departed from in any significant way, the language used should be tailored to fit the circumstances that are unique to a particular engagement (for example, the description of the proposed capital improvement program, paragraph c; the proposed financing of the program, paragraphs b and d; the specific procedures applied by the practitioner, paragraph e; and any explanatory comments included in emphasis-of-a-matter paragraphs, paragraph i, which deals with general matter; and paragraph j, which deals with specific matters).

Independent Accountant's Report

- a. The Board of Directors
Example Hospital
Example, Texas
- b. We have prepared a financial feasibility study of Example Hospital's (the Hospital's) plans to expand and renovate its facilities. The study was undertaken to evaluate the ability of the Hospital to meet its operating expenses, working capital needs, and other financial requirements, including the debt service requirements associated with the proposed \$25,000,000 [*legal title of bonds*] issue, at an assumed average annual interest rate of 10.0 percent during the five years ending December 31, 20X6.
- c. The proposed capital improvements program (the Program) consists of a new two-level addition, which is to provide fifty additional medical-surgical beds, increasing the complement to 275 beds. In addition, various administrative and support service areas in the present facilities are to be remodeled. The Hospital administration anticipates that construction is to begin June 30, 20X2, and to be completed by December 31, 20X3.
- d. The estimated total cost of the Program is approximately \$30,000,000. It is assumed that the \$25,000,000 of revenue bonds that the Example Hospital Finance Authority proposes to issue would be the primary source of funds for the Program. The responsibility for payment of debt service on the bonds is solely that of the Hospital. Other necessary funds to finance the Program are assumed to be provided from the Hospital's funds, from a local fund drive, and from interest earned on funds held by the bond trustee during the construction period.
- e. Our procedures included analysis of the following:
- Program history, objectives, timing, and financing
 - The future demand for the Hospital's services, including consideration of the following:
 - Economic and demographic characteristics of the Hospital's defined service area
 - Locations, capacities, and competitive information pertaining to other existing and planned area hospitals
 - Physician support for the Hospital and its programs
 - Historical utilization levels
 - Planning agency applications and approvals
 - Construction and equipment costs, debt service requirements, and estimated financing costs
 - Staffing patterns and other operating considerations
 - Third-party reimbursement policy and history
 - Revenue/expense/volume relationships

- f.* We also participated in gathering other information, assisted management in identifying and formulating its assumptions, and assembled the accompanying financial forecast based on those assumptions.
- g.* The accompanying financial forecast for the annual periods ending December 31, 20X2, through 20X6, is based on assumptions that were provided by or reviewed with and approved by management. The financial forecast includes the following:
- Balance sheets
 - Statements of operations
 - Statements of cash flows
 - Statements of changes in net assets
- h.* We have examined the financial forecast. Example Hospital's management is responsible for the forecast. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the forecast based on our examination. Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included such procedures as we considered necessary to evaluate both the assumptions used by management and the preparation and presentation of the forecast. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.
- i.* Legislation and regulations at all levels of government have affected and may continue to affect revenues and expenses of hospitals. The financial forecast is based on legislation and regulations currently in effect. If future legislation or regulations related to hospital operations are enacted, such legislation or regulations could have a material effect on future operations.
- j.* The interest rate, principal payments, Program costs, and other financing assumptions are described in the section entitled "Summary of Significant Forecast Assumptions and Rationale." If actual interest rates, principal payments, and funding requirements are different from those assumed, the amount of the bond issue and debt service requirements would need to be adjusted accordingly from those indicated in the forecast. If such interest rates, principal payments, and funding requirements are lower than those assumed, such adjustments would not adversely affect the forecast.
- k.* Our conclusions are presented below.
- In our opinion, the accompanying financial forecast is presented in conformity with guidelines for presentation of a financial forecast established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.
 - In our opinion, the underlying assumptions provide a reasonable basis for management's forecast. However, there will usually be differences between the forecasted and actual results, because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected, and those differences may be material.

- The accompanying financial forecast indicates that sufficient funds could be generated to meet the Hospital's operating expenses, working capital needs, and other financial requirements, including the debt service requirements associated with the proposed \$25,000,000 bond issue, during the forecast periods. However, the achievement of any financial forecast is dependent on future events, the occurrence of which cannot be assured.
- l. We have no responsibility to update this report for events and circumstances occurring after the date of this report.

[Signature]

[Date]

Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures to Prospective Financial Statements

.51 The practitioner who accepts an engagement to apply agreed-upon procedures to prospective financial statements should follow the general, fieldwork, and reporting standards for attest engagements set forth in section 101 and the guidance set forth herein and in section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*.

.52 A practitioner may perform an agreed-upon procedures attest engagement on prospective financial statements²⁶ provided the following conditions are met.

- a. The practitioner is independent.
- b. The practitioner and the specified parties agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed by the practitioner.
- c. The specified parties take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes.
- d. The prospective financial statements include a summary of significant assumptions.
- e. The prospective financial statements to which the procedures are to be applied are subject to reasonably consistent evaluation against criteria that are suitable and available to the specified parties.
- f. Criteria to be used in the determination of findings are agreed upon between the practitioner and the specified parties.²⁷
- g. The procedures to be applied to the prospective financial statements are expected to result in reasonably consistent findings using the criteria.
- h. Evidential matter related to the prospective financial statements to which the procedures are applied is expected to exist to provide a reasonable basis for expressing the findings in the practitioner's report.

²⁶ Practitioners should follow the guidance in AU section 634, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties*, when requested to perform agreed-upon procedures on a forecast and report thereon in a letter for an underwriter.

²⁷ For example, accounting principles and other presentation criteria as discussed in chapter 8, "Presentation Guidelines," of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Guide for Prospective Financial Information*.

- i. Where applicable, the practitioner and the specified users agree on any agreed-upon materiality limits for reporting purposes. (See section 201.25.)
- j. Use of the report is to be restricted to the specified parties.²⁸

.53 Generally, the practitioner's procedures may be as limited or as extensive as the specified parties desire, as long as the specified parties take responsibility for their sufficiency. However, mere reading of prospective financial statements does not constitute a procedure sufficient to permit a practitioner to report on the results of applying agreed-upon procedures to such statements. (See section 201.15.)

.54 To satisfy the requirements that the practitioner and the specified parties agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed and that the specified parties take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes, ordinarily the practitioner should communicate directly with and obtain affirmative acknowledgment from each of the specified parties. For example, this may be accomplished by meeting with the specified parties or by distributing a draft of the anticipated report or a copy of an engagement letter to the specified parties and obtaining their agreement. If the practitioner is not able to communicate directly with all of the specified parties, the practitioner may satisfy these requirements by applying any one or more of the following or similar procedures:

- Compare the procedures to be applied to written requirements of the specified parties.
- Discuss the procedures to be applied with appropriate representatives of the specified parties involved.
- Review relevant contracts with or correspondence from the specified parties.

The practitioner should not report on an engagement when specified parties do not agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed and do not take responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures for their purposes. (See section 201.36 for guidance on satisfying these requirements when the practitioner is requested to add other parties as specified parties after the date of completion of the agreed-upon procedures.)

Reports on the Results of Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures

.55 The practitioner's report on the results of applying agreed-upon procedures should be in the form of procedures and findings. The practitioner's report should contain the following elements:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. Identification of the specified parties
- c. Reference to the prospective financial statements covered by the practitioner's report and the character of the engagement
- d. A statement that the procedures performed were those agreed to by the specified parties identified in the report

²⁸ In some cases, restricted-use reports filed with regulatory agencies are required by law or regulation to be made available to the public as a matter of public record. Also, a regulatory agency as part of its oversight responsibility for an entity may require access to restricted-use reports in which they are not named as a specified party. (See section 101.79.)

- e.* Identification of the responsible party and a statement that the prospective financial statements are the responsibility of the responsible party
- f.* A statement that the agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants
- g.* A statement that the sufficiency of the procedures is solely the responsibility of the specified parties and a disclaimer of responsibility for the sufficiency of those procedures
- h.* A list of the procedures performed (or reference thereto) and related findings (The practitioner should not provide negative assurance—see section 201.24.)
- i.* Where applicable, a description of any agreed-upon materiality limits (See section 201.25.)
- j.* A Statement that the practitioner was not engaged to and did not conduct an examination of prospective financial statements; a disclaimer of opinion on whether the presentation of the prospective financial statements is in conformity with AICPA presentation guidelines and on whether the underlying assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the forecast, or a reasonable basis for the projection given the hypothetical assumptions; and a statement that if the practitioner had performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to his or her attention that would have been reported
- k.* A statement of restrictions on the use of the report because it is intended to be used solely by the specified parties
- l.* Where applicable, reservations or restrictions concerning procedures or findings as discussed in section 201.33, .35, .39, and .40
- m.* A caveat that the prospective results may not be achieved
- n.* A statement that the practitioner assumes no responsibility to update the report for events and circumstances occurring after the date of the report
- o.* Where applicable, a description of the nature of the assistance provided by a specialist as discussed in section 201.19–.21
- p.* The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- q.* The date of the report

.56 The following illustrates a report on applying agreed-upon procedures to the prospective financial statements. (See section 201.)

Independent Accountant's Report
on Applying Agreed-Up Procedures

Board of Directors—XYZ Corporation

Board of Directors—ABC Company

At your request, we have performed certain agreed-upon procedures, as enumerated below, with respect to the forecasted balance sheet and the related forecasted statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows of DEF Company, a subsidiary of ABC Company, as of December 31, 20XX, and for the year then ending. These procedures, which were agreed to by the Boards of

Directors of XYZ Corporation and ABC Company, were performed solely to assist you in evaluating the forecast in connection with the proposed sale of DEF Company to XYZ Corporation. DEF Company's management is responsible for the forecast.

This agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of the specified parties. Consequently, we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described below either for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

[Include paragraphs to enumerate procedures and findings.]

We were not engaged to and did not conduct an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on the accompanying prospective financial statements. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on whether the prospective financial statements are presented in conformity with AICPA presentation guidelines or on whether the underlying assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the presentation. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you. Furthermore, there will usually be differences between the forecasted and actual results, because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected, and those differences may be material. We have no responsibility to update this report for events and circumstances occurring after the date of this report.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the Boards of Directors of ABC Company and XYZ Corporation and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

Partial Presentations

.57 The practitioner's procedures on a partial presentation may be affected by the nature of the information presented. Many elements of prospective financial statements are interrelated. The practitioner should give appropriate consideration to whether key factors affecting elements, accounts, or items that are interrelated with those in the partial presentation he or she has been engaged to examine or compile have been considered, including key factors that may not necessarily be obvious to the partial presentation (for example, productive capacity relative to a sales forecast), and whether all significant assumptions have been disclosed. The practitioner may find it necessary for the scope of the examination or compilation of some partial presentations to be similar to that for the examination or compilation of a presentation of prospective financial statements. For example, the scope of a practitioner's procedures when he or she examines forecasted results of operations would likely be similar to that of procedures used for the examination of prospective financial statements since the practitioner would most likely need to consider the interrelationships of all accounts in the examination of results of operations.

.58 Because partial presentations are generally appropriate only for limited use, reports on partial presentations of both forecasted and projected information should include a description of any limitations on the usefulness of the presentation.

Other Information

.59 When a practitioner's compilation, review, or audit report on historical financial statements is included in a practitioner-submitted document containing prospective financial statements, the practitioner should either examine, compile, or apply agreed-upon procedures to the prospective financial statements and report accordingly, unless the following occur.

- a. The prospective financial statements are labeled as a "budget."
- b. The budget does not extend beyond the end of the current fiscal year.
- c. The budget is presented with interim historical financial statements for the current year.

In such circumstances, the practitioner need not examine, compile, or apply agreed-upon procedures to the budget; however, he or she should report on it and—

- a. Indicate that he or she did not examine or compile the budget.
- b. Disclaim an opinion or any other form of assurance on the budget.

In addition, the budgeted information may omit the summaries of significant assumptions and accounting policies required by the guidelines for presentation of prospective financial statements established by the AICPA, provided such omission is not, to the practitioner's knowledge, undertaken with the intention of misleading those who might reasonably be expected to use such budgeted information, and is disclosed in the practitioner's report. The following is the form of the standard paragraphs to be added to the practitioner's report in this circumstance when the summaries of significant assumptions and accounting policies have been omitted.

The accompanying budgeted balance sheet, statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20XX, and for the six months then ending, have not been compiled or examined by us, and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on them.

Management has elected to omit the summaries of significant assumptions and accounting policies required under established guidelines for presentation of prospective financial statements. If the omitted summaries were included in the budgeted information, they might influence the user's conclusions about the company's budgeted information. Accordingly, this budgeted information is not designed for those who are not informed about such matters.

.60 When the practitioner's compilation, review, or audit report on historical financial statements is included in a client-prepared document containing prospective financial statements, the practitioner should not consent to the use of his or her name in the document unless:

- a. He or she has examined, compiled, or applied agreed-upon procedures to the prospective financial statements and his or her report accompanies them.
- b. The prospective financial statements are accompanied by an indication by the responsible party or the practitioner that the practitioner has not performed such a service on the prospective financial statements and that the practitioner assumes no responsibility for them.
- c. Another practitioner has examined, compiled, or applied agreed-upon procedures to the prospective financial statements and his or her report is included in the document.

In addition, if the practitioner has audited the historical financial statements and they accompany prospective financial statements that he or she did not examine, compile, or apply agreed-upon procedures to in certain²⁹ client-prepared documents, he or she should refer to AU section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*.

.61 The practitioner whose report on prospective financial statements is included in a client-prepared document containing historical financial statements should not consent to the use of his or her name in the document unless:

- a. He or she has compiled, reviewed, or audited the historical financial statements and his or her report accompanies them.
- b. The historical financial statements are accompanied by an indication by the responsible party or the practitioner that the practitioner has not performed such a service on the historical financial statements and that the practitioner assumes no responsibility for them.
- c. Another practitioner has compiled, reviewed, or audited the historical financial statements and his or her report is included in the document.

.62 An entity may publish various documents that contain information other than historical financial statements in addition to the compiled or examined prospective financial statements and the practitioner's report thereon. The practitioner's responsibility with respect to information in such a document does not extend beyond the financial information identified in the report, and he or she has no obligation to perform any procedures to corroborate other information contained in the document. However, the practitioner should read the other information and consider whether such information, or the manner of its presentation, is materially inconsistent with the information, or manner of its presentation, appearing in the prospective financial statements.

.63 If the practitioner examines prospective financial statements included in a document containing inconsistent information, he or she might not be able to conclude that there is adequate support for each significant assumption. The practitioner should consider whether the prospective financial statements, his or her report, or both require revision. Depending on the conclusion he or she reaches, the practitioner should consider other actions that may be appropriate, such as issuing an adverse opinion, disclaiming an opinion because of a scope limitation, withholding the use of his or her report in the document, or withdrawing from the engagement.

.64 If the practitioner compiles the prospective financial statements included in the document containing inconsistent information, he or she should attempt to obtain additional or revised information. If he or she does not receive such information, the practitioner should withhold the use of his or her report or withdraw from the compilation engagement.

.65 If, while reading the other information appearing in the document containing the examined or compiled prospective financial statements, as described in the preceding paragraphs, the practitioner becomes aware of information that he or she believes is a material misstatement of fact that is

²⁹ AU section 550 applies only to such prospective financial statements contained in (a) annual reports to holders of securities or beneficial interests, annual reports of organizations for charitable or philanthropic purposes distributed to the public, and annual reports filed with regulatory authorities under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 or (b) other documents to which the auditor, at the client's request, devotes attention. AU section 550 does not apply when the historical financial statements and report appear in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933 [in which case, see AU section 711, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*].

not an inconsistent statement, he or she should discuss the matter with the responsible party. In connection with this discussion, the practitioner should consider that he or she may not have the expertise to assess the validity of the statement made, that there may be no standards by which to assess its presentation, and that there may be valid differences of judgment or opinion. If the practitioner concludes that he or she has a valid basis for concern, he or she should propose that the responsible party consult with some other party whose advice might be useful, such as the entity's legal counsel.

.66 If, after discussing the matter as described in paragraph .65, the practitioner concludes that a material misstatement of fact remains, the action he or she takes will depend on his or her judgment in the particular circumstances. The practitioner should consider steps such as notifying the responsible party in writing of his or her views concerning the information and consulting his or her legal counsel about further appropriate action in the circumstances.

Effective Date

.67 This section is effective when the date of the practitioner's report is on or after June 1, 2001. Early application is permitted.

Appendix A

Minimum Presentation Guidelines^{*}

1. Prospective information presented in the format of historical financial statements facilitates comparisons with financial position, results of operations, and cash flows of prior periods, as well as those actually achieved for the prospective period. Accordingly, prospective financial statements preferably should be in the format of the historical financial statements that would be issued for the period(s) covered unless there is an agreement between the responsible party and potential users specifying another format. Prospective financial statements may take the form of complete basic financial statements¹ or may be limited to the following minimum items (where such items would be presented for historical financial statements for the period).²

- a. Sales or gross revenues
- b. Gross profit or cost of sales
- c. Unusual or infrequently occurring items
- d. Provision for income taxes
- e. Discontinued operations or extraordinary items
- f. Income from continuing operations
- g. Net income
- h. Basic and diluted earnings per share
- i. Significant changes in financial position³
- j. A description of what the responsible party intends the prospective financial statements to present, a statement that the assumptions are based on the responsible party's judgment at the time the prospective information was prepared, and a caveat that the prospective results may not be achieved

^{*} **Note:** This Appendix describes the minimum items that constitute a presentation of a financial forecast or a financial projection, as specified in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Guide for Prospective Financial Information*. Complete presentation guidelines for entities that choose to issue prospective financial statements, together with illustrative presentations, are included in the Guide. The Guide also prescribes presentation guidelines for partial presentations.

¹ The details of each statement may be summarized or condensed so that only the major items in each are presented. The usual footnotes associated with historical financial statements need not be included as such. However, significant assumptions and accounting policies should be disclosed.

² Similar types of financial information should be presented for entities for which these terms do not describe operations. Further, similar items should be presented if a comprehensive basis of accounting other than GAAP is used to present the prospective financial statements. For example, if the cash basis were used, item a would be cash receipts.

³ The responsible party should disclose significant cash flows and other significant changes in balance sheet accounts during the period. However, neither a balance sheet nor a statement of cash flows, as described in FASB Statement No. 95, *Statement of Cash Flows*, is required. Furthermore, none of the specific captions or disclosures required by FASB Statement No. 95 is required. Significant changes disclosed will depend on the circumstances; however, such disclosures will often include cash flows from operations. See the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Guide for Prospective Financial Information*, Exhibits 9.07 and 9.11, for illustrations of alternate methods of presenting significant cash flows.

- k.* Summary of significant assumptions
- l.* Summary of significant accounting policies

2. A presentation that omits one or more of the applicable minimum items *a* through *i* above is a partial presentation, which would not ordinarily be appropriate for general use. If an omitted applicable minimum item is derivable from the information presented, the presentation would not be deemed to be a partial presentation. A presentation that contains the applicable minimum items *a* through *i* above, but omits items *j* through *l* above, is subject to all of the provisions of this section applicable to complete presentations.

Appendix B

Training and Proficiency, Planning, and Procedures Applicable to Compilations

Training and Proficiency

1. The practitioner should be familiar with the guidelines for the preparation and presentation of prospective financial statements. The guidelines are contained in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Guide for Prospective Financial Information*.

2. The practitioner should possess or obtain a level of knowledge of the industry and the accounting principles and practices of the industry in which the entity operates or will operate that will enable him or her to compile prospective financial statements that are in appropriate form for an entity operating in that industry.

Planning the Compilation Engagement

3. To compile the prospective financial statements of an existing entity, the practitioner should obtain a general knowledge of the nature of the entity's business transactions and the key factors upon which its future financial results appear to depend. He or she should also obtain an understanding of the accounting principles and practices of the entity to determine whether they are comparable to those used within the industry in which the entity operates.

4. To compile the prospective financial statements of a proposed entity, the practitioner should obtain knowledge of the proposed operations and the key factors upon which its future results appear to depend and that have affected the performance of entities in the same industry.

Compilation Procedures

5. In a compilation of prospective financial statements the practitioner should perform the following, where applicable.

- a. Establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed. The understanding should include the objectives of the engagement, the client's responsibilities, the practitioner's responsibilities, and limitations of the engagement. The practitioner should document the understanding in the working papers, preferably through a written communication with the client. If the practitioner believes an understanding with the client has not been established, he or she should decline to accept or perform the engagement.
- b. Inquire about the accounting principles used in the preparation of the prospective financial statements.
 - (1) For existing entities, compare the accounting principles used to those used in the preparation of previous historical financial statements and inquire whether such principles are the same as those expected to be used in the historical financial statements covering the prospective period.

- (2) For entities to be formed or entities formed that have not commenced operations, compare specialized industry accounting principles used, if any, to those typically used in the industry. Inquire whether the accounting principles used for the prospective financial statements are those that are expected to be used when or if the entity commences operations.
- c. Ask how the responsible party identifies the key factors and develops its assumptions.
- d. List, or obtain a list of the responsible party's significant assumptions providing the basis for the prospective financial statements and consider whether there are any obvious omissions in light of the key factors upon which the prospective results of the entity appear to depend.
- e. Consider whether there appear to be any obvious internal inconsistencies in the assumptions.
- f. Perform or test the mathematical accuracy of the computations that translate the assumptions into prospective financial statements.
- g. Read the prospective financial statements, including the summary of significant assumptions, and consider whether—
- (1) The statements, including the disclosures of assumptions and accounting policies, appear to be not presented in conformity with the AICPA presentation guidelines for prospective financial statements.¹
- (2) The statements, including the summary of significant assumptions, appear to be not obviously inappropriate in relation to the practitioner's knowledge of the entity and its industry and, for the following:
- (a) *Financial forecast*, the expected conditions and course of action in the prospective period
- (b) *Financial projection*, the purpose of the presentation
- h. If a significant part of the prospective period has expired, inquire about the results of operations or significant portions of the operations (such as sales volume), and significant changes in financial position, and consider their effect in relation to the prospective financial statements. If historical financial statements have been prepared for the expired portion of the period, the practitioner should read such statements and consider those results in relation to the prospective financial statements.
- i. Confirm his or her understanding of the statements (including assumptions) by obtaining written representations from the responsible party. Because the amounts reflected in the statements are not supported by historical books and records but rather by assumptions, the practitioner should obtain representations in which the responsible party indicates its responsibility for the assumptions. The representations should be signed by the responsible party at the

¹ Presentation guidelines for entities that issue prospective financial statements are set forth and illustrated in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Guide for Prospective Financial Information*.

highest level of authority who the practitioner believes is responsible for and knowledgeable, directly or through others, about matters covered by the representations.

- (1) For a *financial forecast*, the representations should include the responsible party's assertion that the financial forecast presents, to the best of its knowledge and belief, the expected financial position, results of operations, and cash flows for the forecast period and that the forecast reflects the responsible party's judgment, based on present circumstances, of the expected conditions and its expected course of action. The representations should also include a statement that the forecast is presented in conformity with guidelines for presentation of a forecast established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The representations should also include a statement that the assumptions on which the forecast is based are reasonable. If the forecast contains a range, the representation should also include a statement that, to the best of the responsible party's knowledge and belief, the item or items subject to the assumption are expected to actually fall within the range and that the range was not selected in a biased or misleading manner.
 - (2) For a *financial projection*, the representations should include the responsible party's assertion that the financial projection presents, to the best of its knowledge and belief, the expected financial position, results of operations, and cash flows for the projection period given the hypothetical assumptions, and that the projection reflects its judgment, based on present circumstances, of expected conditions and its expected course of action given the occurrence of the hypothetical events. The representations should also (i) identify the hypothetical assumptions and describe the limitations on the usefulness of the presentation, (ii) state that the assumptions are appropriate, (iii) indicate if the hypothetical assumptions are improbable, and (iv) if the projection contains a range, include a statement that, to the best of the responsible party's knowledge and belief, given the hypothetical assumptions, the item or items subject to the assumption are expected to actually fall within the range and that the range was not selected in a biased or misleading manner. The representations should also include a statement that the projection is presented in conformity with guidelines for presentation of a projection established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.
- j. Consider, after applying the above procedures, whether he or she has received representations or other information that appears to be obviously inappropriate, incomplete, or otherwise misleading and, if so, attempt to obtain additional or revised information. If he or she does not receive such information, the practitioner should ordinarily withdraw from the compilation engagement.² (Note that the omission of disclosures, other than those relating to significant assumptions, would not require the practitioner to withdraw; see paragraph .26.)

² The practitioner need not withdraw from the engagement if the effect of such information on the prospective financial statements does not appear to be material.

Appendix C

Training and Proficiency, Planning, and Procedures Applicable to Examinations

Training and Proficiency

1. The practitioner should be familiar with the guidelines for the preparation and presentation of prospective financial statements. The guidelines are contained in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Guide for Prospective Financial Information*.
2. The practitioner should possess or obtain a level of knowledge of the industry and the accounting principles and practices of the industry in which the entity operates or will operate that will enable him or her to examine prospective financial statements that are in appropriate form for an entity operating in that industry.

Planning an Examination Engagement

3. Planning the examination engagement involves developing an overall strategy for the expected scope and conduct of the engagement. To develop such a strategy, the practitioner needs to have sufficient knowledge to enable him or her to adequately understand the events, transactions, and practices that, in his or her judgment, may have a significant effect on the prospective financial statements.
4. Factors to be considered by the practitioner in planning the examination include the following:
 - a. The accounting principles to be used and the type of presentation
 - b. The anticipated level of attestation risk related to the prospective financial statements¹
 - c. Preliminary judgments about materiality levels
 - d. Items within the prospective financial statements that are likely to require revision or adjustment
 - e. Conditions that may require extension or modification of the practitioner's examination procedures
 - f. Knowledge of the entity's business and its industry
 - g. The responsible party's experience in preparing prospective financial statements
 - h. The length of the period covered by the prospective financial statements
 - i. The process by which the responsible party develops its prospective financial statements

¹ *Attestation risk* is the risk that the practitioner may unknowingly fail to appropriately modify his or her examination report on prospective financial statements that are materially misstated, that is, that are not presented in conformity with AICPA presentation guidelines or have assumptions that do not provide a reasonable basis for management's forecast, or management's projection given the hypothetical assumptions. It consists of (a) the risk (consisting of *inherent risk* and *control risk*) that the prospective financial statements contain errors that could be material and (b) the risk (*detection risk*) that the practitioner will not detect such errors.

5. The practitioner should obtain knowledge of the entity's business, accounting principles, and the key factors upon which its future financial results appear to depend. The practitioner should focus on areas such as the following:

- a. The availability and cost of resources needed to operate (Principal items usually include raw materials, labor, short-term and long-term financing, and plant and equipment.)
- b. The nature and condition of markets in which the entity sells its goods or services, including final consumer markets if the entity sells to intermediate markets
- c. Factors specific to the industry, including competitive conditions, sensitivity to economic conditions, accounting policies, specific regulatory requirements, and technology
- d. Patterns of past performance for the entity or comparable entities, including trends in revenue and costs, turnover of assets, uses and capacities of physical facilities, and management policies

Examination Procedures

6. The practitioner should establish an understanding with the responsible party regarding the services to be performed. The understanding should include the objectives of the engagement, the responsible party's responsibilities, the practitioner's responsibilities, and limitations of the engagement. The practitioner should document the understanding in the working papers, preferably through a written communication with the responsible party. If the practitioner believes an understanding with the responsible party has not been established, he or she should decline to accept or perform the engagement. If the responsible party is different than the client, the practitioner should establish the understanding with both the client and the responsible party, and the understanding also should include the client's responsibilities.

7. The practitioner's objective in an examination of prospective financial statements is to accumulate sufficient evidence to restrict attestation risk to a level that is, in his or her professional judgment, appropriate for the level of assurance that may be imparted by his or her examination report. In a report on an examination of prospective financial statements, the practitioner provides assurance only about whether the prospective financial statements are presented in conformity with AICPA presentation guidelines and whether the assumptions provide a reasonable basis for management's forecast, or a reasonable basis for management's projection given the hypothetical assumptions. He or she does not provide assurance about the achievability of the prospective results because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected and achievement of the prospective results is dependent on the actions, plans, and assumptions of the responsible party.

8. In his or her examination of prospective financial statements, the practitioner should select from all available procedures—that is, procedures that assess inherent and control risk and restrict detection risk—any combination that can restrict attestation risk to such an appropriate level. The extent to which examination procedures will be performed should be based on the practitioner's consideration of the following:

- a. The nature and materiality of the information to the prospective financial statements taken as a whole
- b. The likelihood of misstatements

- c. Knowledge obtained during current and previous engagements
 - d. The responsible party's competence with respect to prospective financial statements
 - e. The extent to which the prospective financial statements are affected by the responsible party's judgment, for example, its judgment in selecting the assumptions used to prepare the prospective financial statements
 - f. The adequacy of the responsible party's underlying data
9. The practitioner should perform those procedures he or she considers necessary in the circumstances to report on whether the assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the following.
- a. *Financial forecast.* The practitioner can form an opinion that the assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the forecast if the responsible party represents that the presentation reflects, to the best of its knowledge and belief, its estimate of expected financial position, results of operations, and cash flows for the prospective period² and the practitioner concludes, based on his or her examination, (i) that the responsible party has explicitly identified all factors expected to materially affect the operations of the entity during the prospective period and has developed appropriate assumptions with respect to such factors³ and (ii) that the assumptions are suitably supported.
 - b. *Financial projection given the hypothetical assumptions.* The practitioner can form an opinion that the assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the financial projection given the hypothetical assumptions if the responsible party represents that the presentation reflects, to the best of its knowledge and belief, expected financial position, results of operations, and cash flows for the prospective period given the hypothetical assumptions⁴ and the practitioner concludes, based on his or her examination, that:
 - (1) The responsible party has explicitly identified all factors that would materially affect the operations of the entity during the prospective period if the hypothetical assumptions were to materialize and has developed appropriate assumptions with respect to such factors and
 - (2) The other assumptions are suitably supported given the hypothetical assumptions. However, as the number and significance of the hypothetical assumptions increase, the practitioner may not be able to satisfy himself or herself about the presentation as a whole by obtaining support for the remaining assumptions.
10. The practitioner should evaluate the support for the assumptions.
- a. *Financial forecast*—The practitioner can conclude that assumptions are suitably supported if the preponderance of information supports each significant assumption.

² If the forecast contains a range, the representation should also include a statement that, to the best of the responsible party's knowledge and belief, the item or items subject to the assumption are expected to actually fall within the range and that the range was not selected in a biased or misleading manner.

³ An attempt to list all assumptions is inherently not feasible. Frequently, basic assumptions that have enormous potential impact are considered to be implicit, such as conditions of peace and absence of natural disasters.

⁴ If the projection contains a range, the representation should also include a statement that, to the best of the responsible party's knowledge and belief, given the hypothetical assumptions, the item or items subject to the assumption are expected to actually fall within the range and that the range was not selected in a biased or misleading manner.

- b. *Financial projection*—In evaluating support for assumptions other than hypothetical assumptions, the practitioner can conclude that they are suitably supported if the preponderance of information supports each significant assumption given the hypothetical assumptions. The practitioner need not obtain support for the hypothetical assumptions, although he or she should consider whether they are consistent with the purpose of the presentation.

11. In evaluating the support for assumptions, the practitioner should consider—

- a. Whether sufficient pertinent sources of information about the assumptions have been considered. Examples of external sources the practitioner might consider are government publications, industry publications, economic forecasts, existing or proposed legislation, and reports of changing technology. Examples of internal sources are budgets, labor agreements, patents, royalty agreements and records, sales backlog records, debt agreements, and actions of the board of directors involving entity plans.
- b. Whether the assumptions are consistent with the sources from which they are derived.
- c. Whether the assumptions are consistent with each other.
- d. Whether the historical financial information and other data used in developing the assumptions are sufficiently reliable for that purpose. Reliability can be assessed by inquiry and analytical or other procedures, some of which may have been completed in past audits or reviews of the historical financial statements. If historical financial statements have been prepared for an expired part of the prospective period, the practitioner should consider the historical data in relation to the prospective results for the same period, where applicable. If the prospective financial statements incorporate such historical financial results and that period is significant to the presentation, the practitioner should make a review of the historical information in conformity with the applicable standards for a review.⁵
- e. Whether the historical financial information and other data used in developing the assumptions are comparable over the periods specified or whether the effects of any lack of comparability were considered in developing the assumptions.
- f. Whether the logical arguments or theory, considered with the data supporting the assumptions, are reasonable.

12. In evaluating the preparation and presentation of the prospective financial statements, the practitioner should perform procedures that will provide reasonable assurance as to the following.

⁵ If the entity is an SEC registrant or non-SEC registrant that makes a filing with a regulatory agency in preparation for a public offering or listing, the practitioner should perform the procedures in AU section 722, *Interim Financial Information*, paragraphs .13 through .19. If the entity is nonpublic, the practitioner should perform the procedures in SSARS No. 1, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements*, as amended, paragraphs 24 through 37 [AR section 100.24–.37]. [Footnote revised, November 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 100 and Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services No. 9. Footnote revised, May 2004, to reflect the conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services No. 10.]

- a. The presentation reflects the identified assumptions.
- b. The computations made to translate the assumptions into prospective amounts are mathematically accurate.
- c. The assumptions are internally consistent.
- d. Accounting principles used in the—
 - (1) Financial forecast are consistent with the accounting principles expected to be used in the historical financial statements covering the prospective period and those used in the most recent historical financial statements, if any.
 - (2) Financial projection are consistent with the accounting principles expected to be used in the prospective period and those used in the most recent historical financial statements, if any, or that they are consistent with the purpose of the presentation.⁶
- e. The presentation of the prospective financial statements follows the AICPA guidelines applicable for such statements.⁷
- f. The assumptions have been adequately disclosed based on AICPA presentation guidelines for prospective financial statements.

13. The practitioner should consider whether the prospective financial statements, including related disclosures, should be revised because of any of the following:

- a. Mathematical errors
- b. Unreasonable or internally inconsistent assumptions
- c. Inappropriate or incomplete presentation
- d. Inadequate disclosure

14. The practitioner should obtain written representations from the responsible party acknowledging its responsibility for both the presentation and the underlying assumptions. The representations should be signed by the responsible party at the highest level of authority who the practitioner believes is responsible for and knowledgeable, directly or through others in the organization, about the matters covered by the representations. Paragraph .69, subparagraph 5i describes the specific representations to be obtained for a financial forecast and a financial projection. See paragraph .43 for guidance on the form of report to be rendered if the practitioner is not able to obtain the required representations.

⁶ The accounting principles used in a financial projection need not be those expected to be used in the historical financial statements for the prospective period if use of different principles is consistent with the purpose of the presentation.

⁷ Presentation guidelines for entities that issue prospective financial statements are set forth and illustrated in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Guide for Prospective Financial Information*.

AT Section 401

Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information

Source: SSAE No. 10.

Effective when the presentation of pro forma financial information is as of or for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001. Earlier application is permitted.

Introduction

.01 This section provides guidance to a practitioner who is engaged to issue or does issue an examination or a review report on pro forma financial information. Such an engagement should comply with the general and field-work standards set forth in section 101, *Attest Engagements*, and the specific performance and reporting standards set forth in this section.¹

.02 When pro forma financial information is presented outside the basic financial statements but within the same document, and the practitioner is not engaged to report on the pro forma financial information, the practitioner's responsibilities are described in AU section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, and AU section 711, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*.

.03 This section does not apply in those circumstances when, for purposes of a more meaningful presentation, a transaction consummated after the balance-sheet date is reflected in the historical financial statements (such as a revision of debt maturities or a revision of earnings per share calculations for a stock split).²

Presentation of Pro Forma Financial Information

.04 The objective of pro forma financial information is to show what the significant effects on historical financial information might have been had a consummated or proposed transaction (or event) occurred at an earlier date. Pro forma financial information is commonly used to show the effects of transactions such as the following:

- Business combination
- Change in capitalization

¹ AU section 634, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties*, paragraphs .03 through .05, identify certain parties who may request a letter. When one of those parties requests a letter or asks the practitioner to perform agreed-upon procedures on pro forma financial information in connection with an offering, the practitioner should follow the guidance in AU section 634.03, .10, .36, .42, and .43.

² In certain circumstances, generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) may require the presentation of pro forma financial information in the financial statements or the accompanying notes. That information includes, for example, pro forma financial information required by Accounting Principles Board (APB) Opinion No. 16, *Business Combinations* (paragraphs 61, 65, and 96 [AC section B50.120, .124, and .165]); APB Opinion 20, *Accounting Changes* (paragraph 21 [AC section A06.117]); or, in some cases, pro forma financial information relating to subsequent events; see AU section 560, *Subsequent Events*, paragraph .05. For guidance in reporting on audited financial statements that include pro forma financial information for a business combination or subsequent event, see AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph .28.

- Disposition of a significant portion of the business
- Change in the form of business organization or status as an autonomous entity
- Proposed sale of securities and the application of the proceeds

.05 This objective is achieved primarily by applying pro forma adjustments to historical financial information. Pro forma adjustments should be based on management's assumptions and give effect to all significant effects directly attributable to the transaction (or event).

.06 Pro forma financial information should be labeled as such to distinguish it from historical financial information. This presentation should describe the transaction (or event) that is reflected in the pro forma financial information, the source of the historical financial information on which it is based, the significant assumptions used in developing the pro forma adjustments, and any significant uncertainties about those assumptions. The presentation also should indicate that the pro forma financial information should be read in conjunction with related historical financial information and that the pro forma financial information is not necessarily indicative of the results (such as financial position and results of operations, as applicable) that would have been attained had the transaction (or event) actually taken place earlier.³

Conditions for Reporting

.07 The practitioner may agree to report on an examination or a review of pro forma financial information if the following conditions are met.

- a. The document that contains the pro forma financial information includes (or incorporates by reference) complete historical financial statements of the entity for the most recent year (or for the preceding year if financial statements for the most recent year are not yet available) and, if pro forma financial information is presented for an interim period, the document also includes (or incorporates by reference) historical interim financial information for that period (which may be presented in condensed form).⁴ In the case of a business combination, the document should include (or incorporate by reference) the appropriate historical financial information for the significant constituent parts of the combined entity.
- b. The historical financial statements of the entity (or, in the case of a business combination, of each significant constituent part of the combined entity) on which the pro forma financial information is based have been audited or reviewed.⁵ The practitioner's attestation

³ For further guidance on the presentation of pro forma financial information included in filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), see Article 11 of Regulation S-X.

⁴ For pro forma financial information included in an SEC Form 8-K, historical financial information previously included in an SEC filing would meet this requirement. Interim historical financial information may be presented as a column in the pro forma financial information.

⁵ The practitioner's audit or review report should be included (or incorporated by reference) in the document containing the pro forma financial information. The review may be that as defined in AU section 722, *Interim Financial Information*, for SEC registrants or non-SEC registrants that make a filing with a regulatory agency in preparation for a public offering or listing, or as defined in Statement on Standards for Accounting and Review Services (SSARS) No. 1, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* [AR section 100], for nonpublic companies. [Footnote revised, November 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 100.]

risk relating to the pro forma financial information is affected by the scope of the engagement providing the practitioner with assurance about the underlying historical financial information to which the pro forma adjustments are applied. Therefore, the level of assurance given by the practitioner on the pro forma financial information, as of a particular date or for a particular period, should be limited to the level of assurance provided on the historical financial statements (or, in the case of a business combination, the lowest level of assurance provided on the underlying historical financial statements of any significant constituent part of the combined entity). For example, if the underlying historical financial statements of each constituent part of the combined entity have been audited at year-end and reviewed at an interim date, the practitioner may perform an examination or a review of the pro forma financial information at year-end but is limited to performing a review of the pro forma financial information at the interim date.

- c. The practitioner who is reporting on the pro forma financial information should have an appropriate level of knowledge of the accounting and financial reporting practices of each significant constituent part of the combined entity. This would ordinarily have been obtained by the practitioner auditing or reviewing historical financial statements of each entity for the most recent annual or interim period for which the pro forma financial information is presented. If another practitioner has performed such an audit or a review, the need, by a practitioner reporting on the pro forma financial information, for an understanding of the entity's accounting and financial reporting practices is not diminished, and that practitioner should consider whether, under the particular circumstances, he or she can acquire sufficient knowledge of these matters to perform the procedures necessary to report on the pro forma financial information.

Practitioner's Objective

.08 The objective of the practitioner's examination procedures applied to pro forma financial information is to provide reasonable assurance as to whether—

- Management's assumptions provide a reasonable basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the underlying transaction (or event).
- The related pro forma adjustments give appropriate effect to those assumptions.
- The pro forma column reflects the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statements.

.09 The objective of the practitioner's review procedures applied to pro forma financial information is to provide negative assurance as to whether any information came to the practitioner's attention to cause him or her to believe that—

- Management's assumptions do not provide a reasonable basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the underlying transaction (or event).

- The related pro forma adjustments do not give appropriate effect to those assumptions.
- The pro forma column does not reflect the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statements.

Procedures

.10 Other than the procedures applied to the historical financial statements,⁶ the procedures the practitioner should apply to the assumptions and pro forma adjustments for either an examination or a review engagement are as follows.

- a. Obtain an understanding of the underlying transaction (or event), for example, by reading relevant contracts and minutes of meetings of the board of directors and by making inquiries of appropriate officials of the entity, and, in cases, of the entity acquired or to be acquired.
- b. Obtain a level of knowledge of each constituent part of the combined entity in a business combination that will enable the practitioner to perform the required procedures. Procedures to obtain this knowledge may include communicating with other practitioners who have audited or reviewed the historical financial information on which the pro forma financial information is based. Matters that may be considered include accounting principles and financial reporting practices followed, transactions between the entities, and material contingencies.
- c. Discuss with management their assumptions regarding the effects of the transaction (or event).
- d. Evaluate whether pro forma adjustments are included for all significant effects directly attributable to the transaction (or event).
- e. Obtain sufficient evidence in support of such adjustments. The evidence required to support the level of assurance given is a matter of professional judgment. The practitioner typically would obtain more evidence in an examination engagement than in a review engagement. Examples of evidence that the practitioner might consider obtaining are purchase, merger or exchange agreements, appraisal reports, debt agreements, employment agreements, actions of the board of directors, and existing or proposed legislation or regulatory actions.
- f. Evaluate whether management's assumptions that underlie the pro forma adjustments are presented in a sufficiently clear and comprehensive manner. Also, evaluate whether the pro forma adjustments are consistent with each other and with the data used to develop them.
- g. Determine that computations of pro forma adjustments are mathematically correct and that the pro forma column reflects the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statements.

⁶ See paragraph .07b.

- h. Obtain written representations from management concerning their—
- Responsibility for the assumptions used in determining the pro forma adjustments
 - Assertion that the assumptions provide a reasonable basis for presenting all of the significant effects directly attributable to the transaction (or event), that the related pro forma adjustments give appropriate effect to those assumptions, and that the pro forma column reflects the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statements
 - Assertion that the significant effects directly attributable to the transaction (or event) are appropriately disclosed in the pro forma financial information
- i. Read the pro forma financial information and evaluate whether—
- The underlying transaction (or event), the pro forma adjustments, the significant assumptions and the significant uncertainties, if any, about those assumptions have been appropriately described.
 - The source of the historical financial information on which the pro forma financial information is based has been appropriately identified.

Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information

.11 The practitioner's report on pro forma financial information should be dated as of the completion of the appropriate procedures. The practitioner's report on pro forma financial information may be added to the practitioner's report on historical financial information, or it may appear separately. If the reports are combined and the date of completion of the procedures for the examination or review of the pro forma financial information is after the date of completion of the fieldwork for the audit or review of the historical financial information, the combined report should be dual-dated. (For example, "February 15, 20X2, except for the paragraphs regarding pro forma financial information as to which the date is March 20, 20X2.")

.12 A practitioner's examination report on pro forma financial information should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. An identification of the pro forma financial information
- c. A reference to the financial statements from which the historical financial information is derived and a statement that such financial statements were audited (The report on pro forma financial information should refer to any modification in the practitioner's report on the historical financial information.)
- d. An identification of the responsible party and a statement that the responsible party is responsible for the pro forma financial information

- e. A statement that the practitioner's responsibility is to express an opinion on the pro forma financial information based on his or her examination
- f. A statement that the examination of the pro forma financial information was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included such procedures as the practitioner considered necessary in the circumstances
- g. A statement that the practitioner believes that the examination provides a reasonable basis for his or her opinion
- h. A separate paragraph explaining the objective of pro forma financial information and its limitations
- i. The practitioner's opinion as to whether management's assumptions provide a reasonable basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the transaction (or event), whether the related pro forma adjustments give appropriate effect to those assumptions, and whether the pro forma column reflects the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statements (see paragraphs .18 and .20)
- j. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- k. The date of the examination report

.13 A practitioner's review report on pro forma financial information should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. An identification of the pro forma financial information
- c. A reference to the financial statements from which the historical financial information is derived and a statement as to whether such financial statements were audited or reviewed (The report on pro forma financial information should refer to any modification in the practitioner's report on the historical financial information.)
- d. An identification of the responsible party and a statement that the responsible party is responsible for the pro forma financial information
- e. A statement that the review of the pro forma financial information was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants
- f. A statement that a review is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on the pro forma financial information and, accordingly, the practitioner does not express such an opinion
- g. A separate paragraph explaining the objective of pro forma financial information and its limitations
- h. The practitioner's conclusion as to whether any information came to the practitioner's attention to cause him or her to believe that management's assumptions do not provide a reasonable basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the transaction (or event), or that the related pro forma adjustments do not

give appropriate effect to those assumptions, or that the pro forma column does not reflect the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statements (See paragraphs .19 and .20.)

- i. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- j. The date of the review report

.14 Nothing precludes the practitioner from restricting the use of the report (see section 101.78–.83).

.15 Because a pooling-of-interests business combination is accounted for by combining historical amounts retroactively, pro forma adjustments for a proposed transaction generally affect only the equity section of the pro forma condensed balance sheet. Further, because of the requirements of the Accounting Principles Board Opinion (APB) No. 16, *Business Combinations* [AC Section B50], a business combination effected as a pooling of interests would not ordinarily involve a choice of assumptions by management. Accordingly, a report on a proposed pooling transaction need not address management's assumptions unless the pro forma financial information includes adjustments to conform the accounting principles of the combining entities. (See paragraph .21.)

.16 Restrictions on the scope of the engagement (see section 101.73–.75), reservations about the propriety of the assumptions and the conformity of the presentation with those assumptions (including adequate disclosure of significant matters), or other reservations may require the practitioner to qualify the opinion, disclaim an opinion, or withdraw from the engagement.⁷ The practitioner should disclose all substantive reasons for any report modifications. Uncertainty as to whether the transaction (or event) will be consummated would not ordinarily require a report modification. (See paragraph .22.)

Effective Date

.17 This section is effective when the presentation of pro forma financial information is as of or for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001. Early application is permitted.

⁷ See section 101.76 and .77.

Appendix A

Report on Examination of Pro Forma Financial Information

Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the pro forma adjustments reflecting the transaction *[or event]* described in Note 1 and the application of those adjustments to the historical amounts in *[the assembly of]*⁸ the accompanying pro forma financial condensed balance sheet of X Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the year then ended. The historical condensed financial statements are derived from the historical financial statements of X Company, which were audited by us, and of Y Company, which were audited by other accountants,⁹ appearing elsewhere herein *[or incorporated by reference]*.¹⁰ Such pro forma adjustments are based upon management's assumptions described in Note 2. X Company's management is responsible for the pro forma financial information. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the pro forma financial information based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included such procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

The objective of this pro forma financial information is to show what the significant effects on the historical financial information might have been had the transaction *[or event]* occurred at an earlier date. However, the pro forma condensed financial statements are not necessarily indicative of the results of operations or related effects on financial position that would have been attained had the above-mentioned transaction *[or event]* actually occurred earlier.

[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement or the subject matter.]

In our opinion, management's assumptions provide a reasonable basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the above-mentioned transaction *[or event]* described in Note 1, the related pro forma adjustments give appropriate effect to those assumptions, and the pro forma column reflects the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statement amounts in the pro forma condensed balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the year then ended.

[Signature]

[Date]

⁸ This wording is appropriate when one column of pro forma financial information is presented without separate columns of historical financial information and pro forma adjustments.

⁹ If either accountant's report includes an explanatory paragraph or is other than unqualified, that fact should be referred to within this report.

¹⁰ If the option in footnote 4 to paragraph .07a is followed, the report should be appropriately modified.

Appendix B

Report on Review of Pro Forma Financial Information

Independent Accountant's Report

We have reviewed the pro forma adjustments reflecting the transaction [*or event*] described in Note 1 and the application of those adjustments to the historical amounts in [*the assembly of*]¹¹ the accompanying pro forma condensed balance sheet of X Company as of March 31, 20X2, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the three months then ended. These historical condensed financial statements are derived from the historical unaudited financial statements of X Company, which were reviewed by us, and of Y Company, which were reviewed by other accountants,^{12, 13} appearing elsewhere herein [*or incorporated by reference*].¹⁴ Such pro forma adjustments are based on management's assumptions as described in Note 2. X Company's management is responsible for the pro forma financial information.

Our review was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on management's assumptions, the pro forma adjustments and the application of those adjustments to historical financial information. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

The objective of this pro forma financial information is to show what the significant effects on the historical financial information might have been had the transaction [*or event*] occurred at an earlier date. However, the pro forma condensed financial statements are not necessarily indicative of the results of operations or related effects on financial position that would have been attained had the above-mentioned transaction [*or event*] actually occurred earlier.

[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement or the subject matter.]

Based on our review, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that management's assumptions do not provide a reasonable basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the above-mentioned transaction [*or event*] described in Note 1, that the related pro forma adjustments do

¹¹ This wording is appropriate when one column of pro forma financial information is presented without separate columns of historical financial information and pro forma adjustments.

¹² If either accountant's report includes an explanatory paragraph or is modified, that fact should be referred to within this report.

¹³ Where one set of historical financial statements is audited and the other set is reviewed, wording similar to the following would be appropriate:

The historical condensed financial statements are derived from the historical financial statements of X Company, which were audited by us, and of Y Company, which were reviewed by other accountants, appearing elsewhere herein [*or incorporated by reference*].

¹⁴ If the option in footnote 4 to paragraph .07a is followed, the report should be appropriately modified.

not give appropriate effect to those assumptions, or that the pro forma column does not reflect the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statement amounts in the pro forma condensed balance sheet as of March 31, 20X2, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the three months then ended.

[*Signature*]

[*Date*]

Appendix C

Report on Examination of Pro Forma Financial Information at Year-End With a Review of Pro Forma Financial Information for a Subsequent Interim Date

Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the pro forma adjustments reflecting the transaction [*or event*] described in Note 1 and the application of those adjustments to the historical amounts in [*the assembly of*]¹⁵ the accompanying pro forma financial condensed balance sheet of X Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the year then ended. The historical condensed financial statements are derived from the historical financial statements of X Company, which were audited by us, and of Y Company, which were audited by other accountants,¹⁶ appearing elsewhere herein [*or incorporated by reference*].¹⁷ Such pro forma adjustments are based upon management's assumptions described in Note 2. X Company's management is responsible for the pro forma financial information. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the pro forma financial information based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included such procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In addition, we have reviewed the pro forma adjustments and the application of those adjustments to the historical amounts in [*the assembly of*]¹⁵ the accompanying pro forma condensed balance sheet of X Company as of March 31, 20X2, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the three months then ended. The historical condensed financial statements are derived from the historical financial statements of X Company, which were reviewed by us, and of Y Company, which were reviewed by other accountants,¹⁸ appearing elsewhere herein [*or incorporated by reference*].¹⁹ Such pro forma adjustments are based upon management's assumptions as described in Note 2. Our review

¹⁵ This wording is appropriate when one column of pro forma financial information is presented without separate columns of historical financial information and pro forma adjustments.

¹⁶ If either accountant's report includes an explanatory paragraph or is other than unqualified, that fact should be referred to within this report.

¹⁷ If the option in footnote 4 to paragraph .07a is followed, the report should be appropriately modified.

¹⁸ Where one set of historical financial statements is audited and the other set is reviewed, wording similar to the following would be appropriate:

The historical condensed financial statements are derived from the historical financial statements of X Company, which were audited by us, and of Y Company, which were reviewed by other accountants, appearing elsewhere herein [*or incorporated by reference*].

¹⁹ If the option in footnote 4 to paragraph .07a is followed, the report should be appropriately modified.

was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on management's assumptions, the pro forma adjustments, and the application of those adjustments to historical financial information. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion on the pro forma adjustments or the application of such adjustments to the pro forma condensed balance sheet as of March 31, 20X2, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the three months then ended.

The objective of this pro forma financial information is to show what the significant effects on the historical financial information might have been had the transactions [*or event*] occurred at an earlier date. However, the pro forma condensed financial statements are not necessarily indicative of the results of operations or related effects on financial position that would have been attained had the above-mentioned transaction [*or event*] actually occurred earlier.

[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagements or the subject matter.]

In our opinion, management's assumptions provide a reasonable basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the above-mentioned transaction [*or event*] described in Note 1, the related pro forma adjustments give appropriate effect to those assumptions, and the pro forma column reflects the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statement amounts in the pro forma condensed balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the year then ended.

Based on our review, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that management's assumptions do not provide a reasonable basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the above-mentioned transaction [*or event*] described in Note 1, that the related pro forma adjustments do not give appropriate effect to those assumptions, or that the pro forma column does not reflect the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statement amounts in the pro forma condensed balance sheet as of March 31, 20X2, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the three months then ended.

[Signature]

[Date]

Appendix D

Report on Examination of Pro Forma Financial Information Giving Effect to a Business Combination to Be Accounted for as a Pooling of Interests²⁰

Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the pro forma adjustments reflecting the proposed business combination to be accounted for as a pooling of interests described in Note 1 and the application of those adjustments to the historical amounts in the accompanying pro forma condensed balance sheet of X Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the pro forma condensed statements of income for each of three years in the period then ended. These historical condensed financial statements are derived from the historical financial statements of X Company, which were audited by us,²¹ and of Y Company, which were audited by other accountants, appearing elsewhere herein [*or incorporated by reference*].²² Such pro forma adjustments are based upon management's assumptions described in Note 2. X Company's management is responsible for the pro forma financial information. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the pro forma financial information based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included such procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

The objective of this pro forma financial information is to show what the significant effects on the historical financial information might have been had the transactions [*or event*] occurred at an earlier date.

[Additional paragraph(s) may be added to emphasize certain matters relating to the attest engagement or the subject matter.]

In our opinion, the accompanying condensed pro forma financial statements of X Company as of December 31, 20X1, and for each of the three years in the period then ended give appropriate effect to the pro forma adjustments necessary to reflect the proposed business combination on a pooling of interests basis as described in Note 1 and the pro forma column reflects the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statements.

[Signature]

[Date]

²⁰ See paragraph .15 for a discussion of the form of the opinion on pro forma financial information in a pooling of interests business combination.

²¹ If either accountant's report includes an explanatory paragraph or is other than unqualified, that fact should be referred to within this report.

²² If the option in footnote 4 to paragraph .07a is followed, the report should be appropriately modified.

Appendix E

Other Example Reports

An example of a report qualified because of a scope limitation follows.

Independent Accountant’s Report

We have examined the pro forma adjustments reflecting the transaction [*or event*] described in Note 1 and the application of those adjustments to the historical amounts in [*the assembly of*]²³ the accompanying pro forma condensed balance sheet of X Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the year then ended. The historical condensed financial statements are derived from the historical financial statements of X Company, which were audited by us, and of Y Company, which were audited by other accountants,²⁴ appearing elsewhere herein [*or incorporated by reference*].²⁵ Such pro forma adjustments are based upon management’s assumptions described in Note 2. X Company’s management is responsible for the pro forma financial information. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the pro forma financial information based on our examination.

Except as described below, our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included such procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

We are unable to perform the examination procedures we considered necessary with respect to assumptions relating to the proposed loan described in Adjustment E in Note 2.

[*Same paragraph as third paragraph in examination report in paragraph .18*]

In our opinion, except for the effects of such changes, if any, as might have been determined to be necessary had we been able to satisfy ourselves as to the assumptions relating to the proposed loan, management’s assumptions provide a reasonable basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the above-mentioned transaction [*or event*] described in Note 1, the related pro forma adjustments give appropriate effect to those assumptions, and the pro forma column reflects the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statement amounts in the pro forma condensed balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the year then ended.

[*Signature*]

[*Date*]

²³ This wording is appropriate when one column of pro forma financial information is presented without separate columns of historical financial information and pro forma adjustments.

²⁴ If either accountant’s report includes an explanatory paragraph or is other than unqualified, that fact should be referred to within this report.

²⁵ If the option in footnote 4 to paragraph .07a is followed, the report should be appropriately modified.

An example of a report qualified for reservations about the propriety of assumptions on an acquisition transaction follows:

[Same first three paragraphs as examination report in paragraph .18]

As discussed in Note 2 to the pro forma financial statements, the pro forma adjustments reflect management's assumption that X Division of the acquired company will be sold. The net assets of this division are reflected at their historical carrying amount; generally accepted accounting principles require these net assets to be recorded at estimated net realizable value.

In our opinion, except for inappropriate valuation of the net assets of X Division, management's assumptions described in Note 2 provide a reasonable basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the above-mentioned transaction *[or event]* described in Note 1, the related pro forma adjustments give appropriate effect to those assumptions, and the pro forma column reflects the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statement amounts in the pro forma condensed balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the year then ended.

[Signature]

[Date]

An example of a disclaimer of opinion because of a scope limitation follows:

Independent Accountant's Report

We were engaged to examine the pro forma adjustments reflecting the transaction *[or event]* described in Note 1 and the application of those adjustments to the historical amounts in *[the assembly of]*²⁶ the accompanying pro forma financial condensed balance sheet of X Company as of December 31, 20X1, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the year then ended. The historical condensed financial statements are derived from the historical financial statements of X Company, which were audited by us, and of Y Company, which were audited by other accountants,²⁷ appearing elsewhere herein *[or incorporated by reference]*.²⁸ Such pro forma adjustments are based upon management's assumptions described in Note 2. X Company's management is responsible for the pro forma financial information.

As discussed in Note 2 to the pro forma financial statements, the pro forma adjustments reflect management's assumptions that the elimination of duplicate facilities would have resulted in a 30 percent reduction in operating costs. Management could not supply us with sufficient evidence to support this assertion.

[Same paragraph as third paragraph in examination report in paragraph .18]

Since we were unable to evaluate management's assumptions regarding the reduction in operating costs and other assumptions related thereto, the scope of our work was not sufficient to express and, therefore, we do not express an

²⁶ This wording is appropriate when one column of pro forma financial information is presented without separate columns of historical financial information and pro forma adjustments.

²⁷ If either accountant's report includes an explanatory paragraph or is other than unqualified, that fact should be referred to within this report.

²⁸ If the option in footnote 4 to paragraph .07a is followed, the report should be appropriately modified.

opinion on the pro forma adjustments, management’s underlying assumptions regarding those adjustments and the application of those adjustments to the historical financial statement amounts in the pro forma condensed financial statement amounts in the pro forma condensed balance sheet as of December 31, 20X1, and the pro forma condensed statement of income for the year then ended.

[Signature]

[Date]

AT Section 501

Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

Source: SSAE No. 10.

See section 9501 for interpretations of this section.

Effective when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001. Earlier application is permitted.

Applicability

.01 This section provides guidance to the practitioner who is engaged to issue or does issue an examination report on the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over financial reporting¹ as of a point in time (or on an assertion thereon).² Specifically, guidance is provided regarding the following:

- a. Conditions that must be met for a practitioner to accept an engagement to examine the effectiveness of an entity's internal control (See paragraphs .04 and .05.); the prohibition of acceptance of an engagement to review such subject matter (See paragraph .10.)
- b. Engagements to examine the design and operating effectiveness of an entity's internal control (See paragraphs .16–.68.)
- c. Engagements to examine the design and operating effectiveness of a segment of an entity's internal control (See paragraph .69.)
- d. Engagements to examine only the suitability of design of an entity's internal control (no assertion is made about the operating effectiveness of the internal control) (See paragraphs .70 and .71.)
- e. Engagements to examine the design and operating effectiveness of an entity's internal control based on criteria established by a regulatory agency (See paragraphs .72–.76.)

.02 This section does not provide guidance for the following:

- a. Engagements to examine controls over operations or compliance with laws and regulations³

¹ This section does not change the auditor's responsibility for considering the entity's internal control in an audit of the financial statements. See paragraphs .78–.81.

² Ordinarily, the practitioner will be engaged to examine the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over financial reporting as of the end of the entity's fiscal year; however, the client may select a different date. A practitioner may also be engaged to examine the effectiveness of an entity's internal control during a period of time. In that case, the guidance in this section should be modified accordingly.

³ A practitioner engaged to examine the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over operations or compliance with laws and regulations should refer to the guidance in section 101, *Attest Engagements*. The guidance in section 601, *Compliance Attestation*, may be helpful when performing an engagement relating to internal control over compliance with laws and regulations. A practitioner engaged to perform agreed-upon procedures on an entity's internal control over operations or compliance with laws and regulations should refer to the guidance in section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*, and section 601. Further, the guidance in this section may be helpful in attest engagements to report on internal control over operations or compliance with laws and regulations.

- b. Agreed-upon procedures engagements (See section 201, *Agreed-Up Upon Procedures Engagements*.)
- c. Certain other services in connection with an entity's internal control covered by other authoritative guidance (See paragraph .11 and the Appendix [paragraph .84].)
- d. Consulting engagements (See paragraph .12.)
- e. Engagements to gather data for management (See paragraphs .09 and .21.)

.03 An entity's internal control over financial reporting⁴ includes those policies and procedures that pertain to an entity's ability to initiate, record, process, and report financial data consistent with the assertions embodied in either annual financial statements or interim financial statements, or both. A practitioner engaged to examine the effectiveness of an entity's internal control should comply with the general, fieldwork, and reporting standards in section 101, *Attest Engagements*, and the specific performance and reporting standards set forth in this section.⁵ [Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

Conditions for Engagement Performance

.04 A practitioner may examine the effectiveness of an entity's internal control if the following conditions are met.

- a. Management of the entity accepts responsibility for the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. (The term *responsible party* is used in this section to refer to the management personnel who accept responsibility for the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.)
- b. The responsible party evaluates the effectiveness of the entity's internal control using suitable criteria. Such criteria are referred to as *control criteria* throughout this section.⁶
- c. Sufficient evidential matter exists or could be developed to support the responsible party's evaluation.

.05 As part of engagement performance, the practitioner should obtain from the responsible party a written assertion about the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. The responsible party may present its written assertion in either of the following:

⁴ Throughout this section, an entity's internal control over financial reporting is referred to as its *internal control*.

⁵ A practitioner engaged to issue a report on the processing of transactions by a service organization for use by other auditors should refer to AU section 324, *Service Organizations*.

⁶ Criteria issued by the AICPA, regulatory agencies, and other groups composed of experts that follow due-process procedures, including exposure of the proposed criteria for public comment, usually should be considered suitable criteria for this purpose. For example, the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations (COSO) of the Treadway Commission's report, *Internal Control—Integrated Framework*, provides suitable criteria against which management may evaluate and report on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.

Criteria established by management, industry associations, or other groups that do not follow such due process procedures also may be considered suitable criteria. The practitioner should determine whether such criteria are suitable for general use reporting by evaluating them against the attributes in section 101.24. If the practitioner determines that such criteria are suitable for general use reporting, those criteria should also be available to users as discussed in section 101.33.

If the practitioner concludes that the criteria are appropriate only for a limited number of parties or are available only to specified parties, the practitioner's report shall state that the use of the report is restricted to those parties specified in the report. (See section 101.30, .34, and .78–.83.)

- a. A separate report that will accompany the practitioner's report
- b. A representation letter to the practitioner

.06 The responsible party's written assertion about the effectiveness of an entity's internal control may take many forms. Throughout this section, for example, the phrase, "management's assertion that W Company maintained effective internal control over financial reporting as of [date]," illustrates such an assertion. Other phrases, such as "management's assertion that W Company's internal control over financial reporting as of [date] is sufficient to meet the stated objectives," may also be used. However, a practitioner should not accept an assertion that is so subjective (for example, "very effective" internal control) that people having competence in and using the same or similar criteria would not ordinarily be able to arrive at similar conclusions.

.07 Regardless of whether the practitioner's client is the responsible party, the responsible party's refusal to furnish a written assertion as part of an examination engagement should cause the practitioner to withdraw from the engagement. However, an exception is provided if an examination of internal control is required by law or regulation. In that circumstance, the practitioner should disclaim an opinion on internal control unless he or she obtains evidential matter that warrants expressing an adverse opinion. If the practitioner expresses an adverse opinion and the responsible party does not provide an assertion, the practitioner's report should be restricted as to use (see section 101.78–.81).

.08 Additionally, at the beginning of the engagement, the practitioner may want to consider discussing with the client and the responsible party the need for the responsible party to provide the practitioner with a written representation letter prior to the conclusion of the engagement. In that letter, the responsible party will be asked to provide, among other possible items, a written acknowledgment of their responsibility for establishing and maintaining internal control and their assertion stating their evaluation of the effectiveness of the entity's internal control and specifying the control criteria used. The responsible party's refusal to furnish these representations (see paragraphs .44 and .45) constitutes a limitation on the scope of the engagement.

.09 The responsible party is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control. In some cases, the responsible party may evaluate and report on the effectiveness of internal control without the practitioner's assistance. However, the responsible party may engage the practitioner to gather information to enable the responsible party to evaluate the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.

Other Attest Services

.10 A practitioner may *examine* or *perform agreed-upon procedures* relating to the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. However, he or she should not accept an engagement to review such subject matter or a written assertion about such subject matter. A practitioner asked to perform agreed-upon procedures relating to an entity's internal control should refer to the guidance in section 201.

.11 The Appendix [paragraph .84] presents a listing of authoritative guidance for a practitioner engaged to provide other services in connection with an entity's internal control. Under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, certain

reports on the entity's internal control are required. Rule 17a-5 requires such a report for a broker or dealer in securities. The American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) Audit and Accounting Guide *Brokers and Dealers in Securities* contains a sample report that a practitioner might use in such circumstances. In addition, Form N-SAR requires a report on the internal control of an investment company. A sample report that a practitioner might use in such situations is included in the Audit and Accounting Guide *Audits of Investment Companies*, published by the AICPA. Such information, included in the Appendix [paragraph .84], in Rule 17a-5, and in Form N-SAR, is not covered by this section.

Nonattest Services

.12 The responsible party may engage the practitioner to provide certain nonattest services in connection with the entity's internal control. For example, the responsible party may engage the practitioner to provide recommendations on improvements to the entity's internal control. A practitioner engaged to provide such nonattest services should refer to the guidance in CS section 100, *Consulting Services: Definitions and Standards*.

Components of an Entity's Internal Control

.13 The components that constitute an entity's internal control are a function of the definition and description of internal control used by the responsible party for the purpose of assessing its effectiveness. For example, the responsible party may select the definition and description of internal control based on the internal control framework set forth in *Internal Control—Integrated Framework*,⁷ published by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations (COSO) of the Treadway Commission.⁸ *Internal Control—Integrated Framework* describes an entity's internal control as consisting of five components: control environment, risk assessment, control activities, information and communication, and monitoring. If the responsible party selects another definition and description of internal control, these components may not be relevant.

Limitations of an Entity's Internal Control

.14 Internal control, no matter how well designed and operated, can provide only reasonable assurance to the responsible party and the board of directors regarding achievement of an entity's control objectives. The likelihood of achievement is affected by limitations inherent to internal control. These include the realities that human judgment in decision-making can be faulty, and that breakdowns in internal control can occur because of human failures such as simple error or mistake. Additionally, controls can be circumvented by the collusion of two or more people or management override of internal control.

.15 Custom, culture, and the corporate governance system may inhibit fraud by management, but they are not absolute deterrents. An effective control environment, too, may help mitigate the probability of such fraud. For

⁷ As noted in footnote 6, this report also contains control criteria.

⁸ This definition and description is consistent with the definition contained in AU section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*. However, AU section 319 is not intended to provide criteria for evaluating internal control effectiveness.

example, an effective board of directors, audit committee, and an internal audit function may constrain improper conduct by management. Alternatively, an ineffective control environment may negate the effectiveness of the other components. For example, when the presence of management incentives creates an environment that could result in material misstatement of financial statements, the effectiveness of control activities may be reduced. The effectiveness of an entity's internal control might also be adversely affected by factors such as a change in ownership or control, changes in management or other personnel, or developments in the entity's market or industry.

Examination Engagement

.16 The practitioner's objective in an engagement to examine the effectiveness of the entity's internal control is to express an opinion on (a) the effectiveness of the entity's internal control, in all material respects, based on the control criteria or (b) whether the responsible party's written assertion about the effectiveness of internal control is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the control criteria. The practitioner's opinion relates to the effectiveness of the entity's internal control taken as a whole, and not to the effectiveness of each individual component (control environment, risk assessment, control activities, information and communication, and monitoring) of the entity's internal control.⁹ Therefore, the practitioner considers the interrelationship of the components of an entity's internal control in achieving the objectives of the control criteria. To express an opinion, the practitioner accumulates sufficient evidence about the design effectiveness and operating effectiveness of the entity's internal control, thereby restricting attestation risk to an appropriately low level. When evaluating the design effectiveness of specific controls, the practitioner considers whether the control is suitably designed to prevent or detect material misstatements on a timely basis. When evaluating operating effectiveness, the practitioner considers how the control was applied, the consistency with which it was applied, and by whom it was applied.

.17 Performing an examination of the effectiveness of an entity's internal control involves the following:

- a. Planning the engagement
- b. Obtaining an understanding of internal control
- c. Evaluating the design effectiveness of the controls
- d. Testing and evaluating the operating effectiveness of the controls
- e. Forming an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control, or the responsible party's assertion thereon, based on the control criteria

Planning the Engagement

General Considerations

.18 Planning an engagement to examine the effectiveness of the entity's internal control involves developing an overall strategy for the scope and performance of the engagement. When developing an overall strategy for the engagement, the practitioner should consider factors such as the following:

⁹ However, as discussed in paragraph .69, the practitioner may be engaged to examine the effectiveness of only a segment of an entity's internal control.

- Matters affecting the industry in which the entity operates, such as financial reporting practices, economic conditions, laws and regulations, and technological changes
- Knowledge of the entity's internal control obtained during other professional engagements
- Matters relating to the entity's business, including its organization, operating characteristics, capital structure, and distribution methods
- The extent of recent changes, if any, in the entity, its operations, or its internal control
- The responsible party's method of evaluating the effectiveness of the entity's internal control based upon control criteria
- Preliminary judgments about materiality, inherent risk, and other factors relating to the determination of material weaknesses
- The type and extent of evidential matter pertaining to the effectiveness of the entity's internal control
- The nature of specific controls designed to achieve the objectives of the control criteria, and their significance to internal control taken as a whole
- Preliminary judgments about the effectiveness of internal control

Multiple Locations

.19 A practitioner planning an engagement to examine the effectiveness of the internal control of an entity with operations in several locations should consider factors similar to those he or she would consider in performing an audit of the financial statements of an entity with multiple locations. It may not be necessary to understand and test controls at each location. In addition to the factors listed in paragraph .18, the selection of locations should be based on factors such as the following:

- a. The similarity of business operations and internal control at the various locations
- b. The degree of centralization of records
- c. The effectiveness of the control environment, particularly management's direct control over the exercise of authority delegated to others and its ability to effectively supervise activities at the various locations
- d. The nature and amount of transactions executed and related assets at the various locations

Internal Audit Function

.20 Another factor the practitioner should consider when planning the engagement is whether the entity has an internal audit function. An important responsibility of the internal audit function is to monitor the performance of an entity's controls. One way internal auditors monitor such performance is by performing tests that provide evidence about the effectiveness of the design and operation of specific controls. A practitioner should consider the guidance in AU section 322, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, when assessing the competence and objectivity of internal auditors, the extent of work to be performed, and other matters.

Documentation

.21 Controls and the control objectives that they were designed to achieve should be appropriately documented to serve as a basis for the responsible party's assertion and the practitioner's report. Such documentation is generally prepared by the responsible party. However, at the responsible party's request, the practitioner may assist in preparing or gathering such documentation. This documentation may take various forms: entity policy manuals, accounting manuals, narrative memoranda, flowcharts, decision tables, procedural write-ups, or completed questionnaires. No one particular form of documentation is necessary, and the extent of documentation may vary depending upon the size and complexity of the entity.

Obtaining an Understanding of Internal Control

.22 A practitioner generally obtains an understanding of the design of specific controls by making inquiries of appropriate management, supervisory, and staff personnel; by inspecting entity documents; and by observing entity activities and operations. The nature and extent of the procedures a practitioner performs vary from entity to entity and are influenced by factors such as those discussed in paragraph .18.

Evaluating the Design Effectiveness of Controls

.23 To evaluate the design effectiveness of an entity's internal control, the practitioner should obtain an understanding of the controls within each component of internal control.¹⁰

.24 Any of the components of internal control may include controls designed to achieve the objectives of the control criteria. Some controls may have a pervasive effect on achieving many overall objectives of these criteria. For example, computer general controls over program development, program changes, computer operations, and access to programs and data help assure that specific controls over the processing of transactions are operating effectively. In contrast, other controls are designed to achieve specific objectives of the control criteria. For example, management generally establishes specific controls, such as accounting for all shipping documents, to ensure that all valid sales are recorded.

.25 The practitioner should focus on the significance of controls in achieving the objectives of the control criteria rather than on specific controls in isolation. The absence or inadequacy of a specific control designed to achieve the objectives of a specific criterion may not be a deficiency if other controls specifically address the same criterion. Further, when one or more control achieves the objectives of a specific criterion, the practitioner may not need to consider other controls designed to achieve those same objectives.

.26 Procedures to evaluate the effectiveness of the design of a specific control are concerned with whether that control is suitably designed to prevent

¹⁰ As discussed in paragraph .13, the components that constitute an entity's internal control are a function of the definition and description of internal control selected by the responsible party. Paragraph .13 lists the components the practitioner should understand if the responsible party decides to evaluate the entity's internal control based on the definition of internal control in *Internal Control—Integrated Framework*. If the responsible party selects another definition, these components may not be relevant.

or detect material misstatements in specific financial statement assertions. Such procedures will vary depending upon the nature of the specific control, the nature of the entity's documentation of the specific control, and the complexity and sophistication of the entity's operations and systems.

Testing and Evaluating the Operating Effectiveness of Controls

.27 To evaluate the operating effectiveness of an entity's internal control, the practitioner performs tests of relevant controls to obtain sufficient evidence to support the opinion in the report. Tests of the operating effectiveness of a control are concerned with how the control was applied, the consistency with which it was applied, and by whom it was applied. The tests ordinarily include procedures such as inquiries of appropriate personnel, inspection of relevant documentation, observation of the entity's operations, and reapplication or reperformance of the control.

.28 The evidential matter that is sufficient to support a practitioner's opinion is a matter of professional judgment. However, the practitioner should consider matters such as the following:

- The nature of the control
- The significance of the control in achieving the objectives of the control criteria
- The nature and extent of tests of the operating effectiveness of the controls performed by the entity, if any
- The risk of noncompliance with the control, which might be assessed by considering the following:
 - Whether there have been changes in the volume or nature of transactions that might adversely affect control design or operating effectiveness
 - Whether there have been changes in controls
 - The degree to which the control relies on the effectiveness of other controls (for example, the control environment or computer general controls)
 - Whether there have been changes in key personnel who perform the control or monitor its performance
 - Whether the control relies on performance by an individual or by electronic equipment
 - The complexity of the control
 - Whether more than one control achieves a specific objective

.29 The responsible party may provide the practitioner with the results of its tests of the operating effectiveness of certain controls. Although the practitioner should consider the results of such tests when evaluating the operating effectiveness of controls, it is the practitioner's responsibility to obtain sufficient evidence to support his or her opinion and, if applicable, corroborate the results of such tests. When evaluating whether sufficient evidence has been obtained, the practitioner should consider that evidence obtained through his or her direct personal knowledge, observation, reperformance, and inspection is more persuasive than information obtained indirectly, such as from management or other personnel. Further, judgments about the sufficiency of evidence obtained and other factors affecting the practitioner's opinion, such as the materiality of identified control deficiencies, should be those of the practitioner.

.30 The nature of the controls influences the nature of the tests of controls the practitioner can perform. For example, the practitioner may examine documents regarding controls for which documentary evidence exists. However, documentary evidence regarding the control environment (such as management's philosophy and operating style) often does not exist. In these circumstances, the practitioner's tests of controls would consist of inquiries of appropriate personnel and observation of entity activities. The practitioner's preliminary judgments about the effectiveness of the control environment often influence the nature, timing, and extent of the tests of controls to be performed to obtain evidence about the operating effectiveness of controls in the accounting system and other controls.

.31 The period of time over which the practitioner should perform tests of controls is a matter of judgment; however, it varies with the nature of the controls being tested and with the frequency with which specific controls operate and specific policies are applied. Some controls operate continuously (for example, controls over sales) while others operate only at certain times (for example, controls over the preparation of interim financial statements and controls over physical inventory counts). The practitioner should perform tests of controls over a period of time that is adequate to determine whether, as of the date specified in the assertion, the controls necessary for achieving the objectives of the control criteria are operating effectively.

.32 The client may request the practitioner to examine the effectiveness of controls related to the preparation of interim financial information. Depending on the period(s) specified in the assertion, the practitioner should perform tests of controls in effect during one or more interim periods to form an opinion about the effectiveness of such controls in achieving the related interim reporting objectives.

.33 Prior to the date specified in the assertion, the responsible party may change the entity's controls to make them more effective or efficient, or to address control deficiencies. In these circumstances, the practitioner may not need to consider controls that have been superseded. For example, if the practitioner determines that the new controls achieve the related objectives of the control criteria and have been in effect for a sufficient period to permit the practitioner to assess their design and operating effectiveness by performing tests of controls, the practitioner will not need to consider the design and operating effectiveness of the superseded controls.

Forming an Opinion

.34 When forming an opinion on the effectiveness of an entity's internal control or a written assertion thereon, the practitioner should consider all evidence obtained, including the results of the tests of controls and any identified control deficiencies, to evaluate the design and operating effectiveness of the controls based on the control criteria.

Deficiencies in an Entity's Internal Control

.35 During the course of the engagement, the practitioner may become aware of significant deficiencies in the entity's internal control. The practitioner's responsibility to communicate such deficiencies is described in paragraphs .41–.43.

Reportable Conditions

.36 AU section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*, defines reportable conditions as matters coming to an auditor's attention that represent significant deficiencies in the design or operation of internal control that could adversely affect the entity's ability to initiate, record, process, and report financial data consistent with the assertions of management in the financial statements. [Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

Material Weaknesses

.37 A reportable condition may be of such magnitude as to be considered a material weakness. AU section 325 defines a *material weakness* as a condition in which the design or operation of one or more of the internal control components does not reduce to a relatively low level the risk that misstatements caused by error or fraud in amounts that would be material in relation to the financial statements may occur and not be detected within a timely period by employees in the normal course of performing their assigned functions. Therefore, the presence of a material weakness will preclude the practitioner from concluding that the entity has effective internal control. However, depending on the significance of the material weakness and its effect on the achievement of the objectives of the control criteria, the practitioner may qualify his or her opinion (that is, express an opinion that internal control is effective "except for" the material weakness noted) or may express an adverse opinion.¹¹

.38 When evaluating whether a reportable condition is also a material weakness, the practitioner should recognize that—

- a. The amounts of misstatements caused by error or fraud that might occur and remain undetected range from zero to more than the gross financial statement amounts or transactions that are exposed to the reportable condition.
- b. The risk of misstatement due to error or fraud is likely to be different for the different possible amounts within that range. For example, the risk of misstatement due to error or fraud in amounts equal to the gross exposure might be very low, but the risk of smaller amounts might be progressively greater.

.39 In evaluating whether the combined effect of individual reportable conditions results in a material weakness, the practitioner should consider the following:

- a. The range or distribution of the amounts of misstatement caused by error or fraud that may result during the same accounting period from two or more individual reportable conditions
- b. The joint risk or probability that such a combination of misstatements would be material

.40 Evaluating whether a reportable condition is also a material weakness is a subjective process that depends on factors such as the nature of the accounting system and of any financial statement amounts or transactions exposed to the reportable condition, the overall control environment, other controls, and the judgment of those making the evaluation.

¹¹ Paragraphs .54–.58 contain guidance the practitioner should consider when a material weakness exists.

Communicating Reportable Conditions and Material Weaknesses

.41 A practitioner engaged to examine the effectiveness of the entity's internal control should communicate reportable conditions to the client's audit committee¹² and identify the reportable conditions that are also considered to be material weaknesses. Such a communication should preferably be made in writing. Because of the potential for misinterpretation of the limited degree of assurance associated with the practitioner issuing a written report representing that no reportable conditions were noted during the examination, the practitioner should not issue such representations.

.42 Because timely communication may be important, the practitioner may choose to communicate to his or her client significant matters during the course of the examination rather than after the examination is concluded. The decision about whether an interim communication should be issued would be influenced by the relative significance of the matters noted and the urgency of corrective follow-up action.

.43 If, in a multiple-party arrangement, the practitioner's client is not the responsible party, the practitioner has no responsibility to communicate reportable conditions to the responsible party. For example, if the practitioner is engaged by his or her client to examine the effectiveness of internal control of an entity targeted for acquisition, the practitioner has no obligation to communicate any reportable conditions to the targeted entity. However, the practitioner is not precluded from making such a communication.

Written Representations

.44 The practitioner should obtain written representations from the responsible party¹³—

- a. Acknowledging the responsible party's responsibility for establishing and maintaining effective internal control.
- b. Stating that the responsible party has performed an evaluation of the effectiveness of the entity's internal control and specifying the control criteria.
- c. Stating the responsible party's assertion about the effectiveness of the entity's internal control based on the control criteria as of a specified date.
- d. Stating that the responsible party has disclosed to the practitioner all significant deficiencies in the design or operation of internal control which could adversely affect the entity's ability to initiate, record, process, and report financial data consistent with the assertions of management in the financial statements and has identified those that it believes to be material weaknesses in internal control.

¹² If the client does not have an audit committee, the practitioner should communicate with individuals whose authority and responsibility are equivalent to those of an audit committee, such as the board of directors, the board of trustees, an owner in an owner-managed entity, or those who engaged the practitioner.

¹³ AU section 333, *Management Representations*, paragraph .09, provides guidance on the date as of which the representation letter should be signed and who should sign it. [Footnote revised, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

- e. Describing any material fraud and any other fraud that, although not material, involve management or other employees who have a significant role in the entity's internal control.
- f. Stating whether there were, subsequent to the date being reported on, any changes in internal control or other factors that might significantly affect internal control, including any corrective actions taken by the responsible party with regard to significant deficiencies and material weaknesses.

[Revised, April 2002, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 94.]

.45 The responsible party's refusal to furnish all appropriate written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of the examination sufficient to preclude an unqualified opinion and is ordinarily sufficient to cause the practitioner to disclaim an opinion or withdraw from an examination engagement. However, based on the nature of the representations not obtained or the circumstances of the refusal, the practitioner may conclude, in an examination engagement, that a qualified opinion is appropriate. Further, the practitioner should consider the effects of the responsible party's refusal on his or her ability to rely on other representations.

Reporting Standards

.46 The practitioner may examine and report directly on an entity's effectiveness of internal control (see paragraphs .47 and .48) or he or she may examine and report on the responsible party's written assertion (see paragraphs .49–.51), except as described in paragraph .54.

.47 The practitioner's examination report on the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over financial reporting should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. An identification of the subject matter (internal control over financial reporting) and the responsible party
- c. A statement that the responsible party is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting
- d. A statement that the practitioner's responsibility is to express an opinion on the effectiveness of an entity's internal control based on his or her examination
- e. A statement that the examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control, and performing such other procedures as the practitioner considered necessary in the circumstances
- f. A statement that the practitioner believes the examination provides a reasonable basis for his or her opinion
- g. A paragraph stating that, because of inherent limitations of any internal control, misstatements due to errors or fraud may occur and not be detected. (In addition, the paragraph should state that projections of any evaluation of internal control over financial reporting to future periods are subject to the risk that internal control may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.)

- h. The practitioner's opinion on whether the entity has maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of the specified date based on the control criteria¹⁴
- i. A statement restricting the use of the report to the specified parties (see the fourth reporting standard) under the following circumstances (see also paragraph .07):
 - When the criteria used to evaluate internal control over financial reporting are determined by the practitioner to be appropriate only for a limited number of parties who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria
 - When the criteria used to evaluate internal control over financial reporting are available only to specified parties
- j. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- k. The date of the examination report

.48 The following is the form of report a practitioner should use when he or she expresses an opinion directly on the effectiveness of an entity's internal control as of a specified date.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined the effectiveness of W Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria]*. W Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control based on our examination.

[Scope paragraph]

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of the internal control over financial reporting, testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of the internal control, and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Inherent limitations paragraph]

Because of inherent limitations in any internal control, misstatements due to error or fraud may occur and not be detected. Also, projections of any evaluation of the internal control over financial reporting to future periods are subject to the risk that the internal control may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

[Opinion paragraph]

¹⁴ See paragraphs .54–.58 for reporting when the examination discloses conditions that, individually or in combination, result in one or more material weaknesses.

In our opinion, W Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX, based on [identify criteria]¹⁵

[Signature]

[Date]

.49 The practitioner's examination report on a written assertion about the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over financial reporting should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. An identification of the written assertion about the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over financial reporting as of a specified date and the responsible party (When the written assertion does not accompany the practitioner's report, the first paragraph of the report should also contain a statement of the assertion.)
- c. A statement that the assertion is the responsibility of the responsible party
- d. A statement that the practitioner's responsibility is to express an opinion on the written assertion based on his or her examination
- e. A statement that the examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control, and performing such other procedures as the practitioner considered necessary in the circumstances
- f. A statement that the practitioner believes the examination provides a reasonable basis for his or her opinion
- g. A paragraph stating that, because of inherent limitations of any internal control, misstatements due to errors or fraud may occur and not be detected (In addition, the paragraph should state that projections of any evaluation of internal control over financial reporting to future periods are subject to the risk that internal control may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.)
- h. The practitioner's opinion on whether the assertion about the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over financial reporting as of the specified date is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the control criteria¹⁶
- i. A statement restricting the use of the report to specified parties (see the fourth reporting standard) under the following circumstances:
 - When the criteria used to evaluate the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting are determined by the practitioner to be appropriate only for a limited number of parties who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria

¹⁵ For example, "criteria established in *Internal Control—Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO)."

¹⁶ See paragraphs .54–.58 for reporting when the examination discloses conditions that, individually or in combination, result in one or more material weaknesses.

- When the criteria used to evaluate the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting are available only to specified parties
 - j. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
 - k. The date of the examination report
- .50 The following is the form of report a practitioner should use when he or she expresses an opinion on a written assertion about the effectiveness of an entity's internal control as of a specified date.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined management's assertion, included in the accompanying *[title of management report]*, that W Company maintained effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX based on *[identify criteria]*.¹⁷ W Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on management's assertion based on our examination.

[Standard scope and inherent limitations paragraphs]

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, management's assertion that W Company maintained effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on *[identify criteria]*.¹⁸

[Signature]

[Date]

.51 Nothing precludes the practitioner from examining an assertion but opining directly on the effectiveness of internal control.

Restricting the Use of the Report

.52 Section 101.78–.83 provide guidance on restricting the use of an attest report. Nothing in this section precludes the practitioner from restricting the use of the report. If the practitioner is requested by one party to examine the effectiveness of another entity's internal control, he or she may want to restrict the report to the party making the request.

Report Modifications

.53 The practitioner should modify the standard reports if any of the following conditions exist.

- a. There is a material weakness in the entity's internal control. (See paragraphs .54–.58.)

¹⁷ The practitioner should identify the responsible party's report examined by referring to the title used by the responsible party in its report. Further, he or she should use the same description of the entity's internal control as the responsible party uses in its report, including the kinds of controls (that is, control over the preparation of annual financial statements, interim financial statements, or both) on which the responsible party is reporting. If the presentation of the assertion does not accompany the practitioner's report, the phrase "included in the accompanying *[title of responsible party's report]*" would be omitted.

¹⁸ For example, "criteria established in *Internal Control—Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO)."

- b. There is a restriction on the scope of the engagement. (See paragraphs .59–.62.)
- c. The practitioner decides to refer to the report of another practitioner as the basis, in part, for the practitioner's own report. (See paragraphs .63 and .64.)
- d. A significant subsequent event has occurred since the date being reported on. (See paragraphs .65–.68.)
- e. The engagement relates to examining and reporting on the effectiveness of only a segment of the entity's internal control. (See paragraph .69.)
- f. The engagement only relates to examining and reporting on the suitability of design of the entity's internal control. (See paragraphs .70 and .71.)
- g. The criteria are not suitable for general use (See paragraphs .72–.76.)

Material Weaknesses

.54 If the examination discloses conditions that, individually or in combination, result in one or more material weaknesses (paragraphs .37–.40), the practitioner should modify the report and, to most effectively communicate with the reader of the report, should express his or her opinion directly on the effectiveness of internal control, not on the assertion. The nature of the modification depends on the weakness and its effect on the achievement of the objectives of the control criteria.

.55 The following is the form of the report, modified with explanatory language, that a practitioner should use when there is a material weakness in an entity's internal control and, based on its significance and its effect on the achievement of the objectives of the control criteria, the practitioner concludes that a qualified opinion is appropriate.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined the effectiveness of W Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria]*. W Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control based on our examination.

[Standard scope and inherent limitations paragraphs]

[Explanatory paragraph]

[Include sentence(s) describing the material weakness and its effect on the achievement of the objectives of the control criteria.] We believe such condition represents a material weakness. A material weakness is a condition that precludes the entity's internal control from providing reasonable assurance that material misstatements in the financial statements will be prevented or detected on a timely basis.¹⁹

[Opinion paragraph]

¹⁹ This description of a material weakness differs from the definition of a material weakness discussed in paragraph .37. Although a practitioner should consider the definition contained in paragraph .37 when determining whether a material weakness exists, the description above should be used to describe a material weakness in the practitioner's report.

In our opinion, except for the effect of the material weakness described in the preceding paragraph on the achievement of the objectives of the control criteria, W Company has maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria]*.

[Signature]

[Date]

.56 The following is the form of report, expressing an adverse opinion, that a practitioner should use when a material weakness in internal control exists and, in the practitioner's judgment, the material weakness(es) is (are) so pervasive that the entity's internal control over financial reporting does not achieve the control objectives.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined the effectiveness of W Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria]* W Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control based on our examination.

[Standard scope and inherent limitations paragraphs]

[Explanatory paragraph]

[Include sentence(s) describing the material weakness and its effect on the achievement of the objectives of the control criteria] We believe such condition represents a material weakness. A material weakness is a condition that precludes the entity's internal control from providing reasonable assurance that material misstatements in the financial statements will be prevented or detected on a timely basis.²⁰

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, because of the effect of the material weakness described above on the achievement of the objectives of the control criteria, W Company has not maintained effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria]*.

[Signature]

[Date]

.57 If a written assertion accompanying the practitioner's report contains a statement that the responsible party believes the cost of correcting the weakness would exceed the benefits to be derived from implementing new controls, the practitioner should disclaim an opinion on the responsible party's cost-benefit statement. The practitioner may use the following sample language as the last paragraph of the report to disclaim an opinion on the responsible party's cost-benefit statement:

We do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on management's cost-benefit statement.

²⁰ This description of a material weakness differs from the definition of a material weakness discussed in paragraph .37. Although a practitioner should consider the definition contained in paragraph .37 when determining whether a material weakness exists, the description above should be used to describe a material weakness in the practitioner's report.

However, if the practitioner believes that the responsible party's cost-benefit statement is a material misstatement of fact, he or she should consider the guidance in section 101.92–.94, and take appropriate action.

Practitioner's Report on Internal Control Identifies a Material Weakness and Is Included in the Same Document Containing the Audit Report

.58 If the practitioner's report on his or her examination of the effectiveness of the entity's internal control is included within the same document that includes his or her audit report on the entity's financial statements, the following sentence should be included in the paragraph of the examination report that describes the material weakness:

These conditions were considered in determining the nature, timing, and extent of audit tests applied in our audit of the 20XX financial statements, and this report does not affect our report dated [date of report] on these financial statements.

The practitioner may also include the preceding sentence in situations where the two reports are not included within the same document.

Scope Limitations

.59 An unqualified opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control or the written assertion thereon can be expressed only if the practitioner has been able to apply all the procedures he or she considers necessary in the circumstances. Restrictions on the scope of the engagement, whether imposed by the client, the responsible party, or by the circumstances, may require the practitioner to withdraw from the engagement, disclaim an opinion, or express a qualified opinion. The practitioner's decision depends on his or her assessment of the importance of the omitted procedure(s) to his or her ability to form an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control.

.60 For example, the responsible party may have implemented controls to correct a material weakness identified prior to the date specified by the client. However, unless the practitioner has been able to obtain evidence that the new controls were appropriately designed and have been operating effectively for a sufficient period of time,²¹ he or she should refer to the material weakness and qualify his or her opinion on the basis of a scope limitation. The following is the form of the report a practitioner should use when restrictions on the scope of the examination cause the practitioner to issue a qualified opinion.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Standard introductory paragraph]

[Scope paragraph]

Except as described below, our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of the internal control over financial reporting, testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of the internal control, and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Explanatory paragraph]

²¹ See guidance in paragraph .31.

Prior to December 20, 20XX, W Company had an inadequate system for recording cash receipts, which could have prevented the Company from recording cash receipts on accounts receivable completely and properly. Therefore, cash received could have been diverted for unauthorized use, lost, or otherwise not properly recorded to accounts receivable. We believe this condition was a material weakness in the design or operation of the internal control of W Company in effect at [date]. A material weakness is a condition that precludes the entity's internal control from providing reasonable assurance that material misstatements in the financial statements will be prevented or detected on a timely basis. Although the Company implemented a new cash receipts system on December 20, 20XX, the system has not been in operation for a sufficient period of time to enable us to obtain sufficient evidence about its operating effectiveness.

[Standard inherent limitations paragraph]

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, except for the effect of matters we may have discovered had we been able to examine evidence about the effectiveness of the new cash receipts system, W Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX based on *[identify criteria]*.

[Signature]

[Date]

.61 When restrictions that significantly limit the scope of the examination are imposed by the client or the responsible party, the practitioner generally should disclaim an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control or the written assertion thereon.

.62 The following is the form of report that a practitioner should use when restrictions that significantly limit the scope of the examination are imposed by the client or the responsible party and cause the practitioner to issue a disclaimer of opinion.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We were engaged to examine the effectiveness of W Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria]*. W Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting.

[Scope paragraph should be omitted]

[Explanatory paragraph]

[Include paragraph to describe scope restrictions]

[Opinion paragraph]

Since management *[describe scope restrictions]* and we were unable to apply other procedures to satisfy ourselves as to the entity's internal control over financial reporting, the scope of our work was not sufficient to enable us to express, and we do not express, an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over financial reporting.

[Signature]

[Date]

Opinion Based in Part on the Report of Another Practitioner

.63 When another practitioner has examined the effectiveness of internal control of one or more subsidiaries, divisions, branches, or components of the entity, the practitioner should consider whether he or she may serve as the principal practitioner and use the work and reports of the other practitioner as a basis, in part, for his or her opinion. If the practitioner decides it is appropriate for him or her to serve as the principal practitioner, he or she should then decide whether to make reference in the report to the examination performed by the other practitioner. In these circumstances, the practitioner's considerations are similar to those of the independent auditor who uses the work and reports of other independent auditors when reporting on an entity's financial statements. AU section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*, provides guidance on the auditor's considerations when deciding whether he or she may serve as the principal auditor and, if so, whether to make reference to the examination performed by the other practitioner.

.64 When the practitioner decides to make reference to the report of the other practitioner as a basis, in part, for the practitioner's opinion, the practitioner should disclose this fact when describing the scope of the examination and should refer to the report of the other practitioner when expressing the opinion.²² The following form of the report is appropriate in these circumstances.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined the effectiveness of W Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria]*. W Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control based on our examination. We did not examine the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting of B Company, a wholly owned subsidiary, whose financial statements reflect total assets and revenues constituting 20 and 30 percent, respectively, of the related consolidated financial statement amounts as of and for the year ended December 31, 20XX. The effectiveness of B Company's internal control over financial reporting was examined by other accountants whose report has been furnished to us, and our opinion, insofar as it relates to the effectiveness of B Company's internal control over financial reporting, is based solely on the report of the other accountants.

[Scope paragraph]

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control, and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination and the report of the other accountants provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Standard inherent limitations paragraph]

[Opinion paragraph]

²² Whether the other practitioner's opinion is expressed on the responsible party's assertion or on the effectiveness of internal control does not affect the determination of whether the principal practitioner's opinion is expressed on the assertion or on the subject matter itself.

In our opinion, based on our examination and the report of the other accountants, W Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria]*.

[Signature]

[Date]

Subsequent Events

.65 Changes in internal control or other factors that might significantly affect internal control may occur subsequent to the date as of which the internal control over financial reporting is being examined but before the date of the practitioner's report. As described in paragraph .44, the practitioner should obtain written representations from the responsible party relating to such matters. Additionally, to obtain information about whether changes have occurred that might affect the effectiveness of the entity's internal control and, therefore, the practitioner's report, he or she should inquire about and examine, for this subsequent period, the following:

- a. Relevant internal auditor reports issued during the subsequent period
- b. Independent auditor reports (if other than the practitioner's) of reportable conditions or material weaknesses
- c. Regulatory agency reports on the entity's internal control
- d. Information about the effectiveness of the entity's internal control obtained through other professional engagements

.66 If the practitioner obtains knowledge about subsequent events that he or she believes significantly affect the effectiveness of the entity's internal control as of the date specified in the assertion, the practitioner should report directly on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control, and issue a qualified or an adverse opinion. If the practitioner is unable to determine the effect of the subsequent event on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control, the practitioner should disclaim an opinion.

.67 The practitioner may obtain knowledge about subsequent events with respect to conditions that did not exist at the date specified in the assertion but arose subsequent to that date. Occasionally, a subsequent event of this type has such a material impact on the entity that the practitioner may wish to include in his or her report an explanatory paragraph describing the event and its effects or directing the reader's attention to the event and its effects.

.68 The practitioner has no responsibility to keep informed of events subsequent to the date of his or her report; however, the practitioner may later become aware of conditions that existed at that date that might have affected the practitioner's opinion had he or she been aware of them. The practitioner's consideration of such subsequent information is similar to an auditor's consideration of information discovered subsequent to the date of the report on an audit of financial statements described in AU section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*. The guidance in that AU section requires the auditor to determine whether the information is reliable and whether the facts existed at the date of his or her report. If so, the auditor considers (a) whether the facts would have changed the report if he or

she had been aware of them and (b) whether there are persons currently relying on or likely to rely on the practitioner's report on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Based on these considerations, detailed guidance is provided for the auditor in AU section 561.06.

Reporting on the Effectiveness of a Segment of the Entity's Internal Control

.69 When engaged to examine the effectiveness of only a segment of an entity's internal control (for example, internal control over financial reporting of an entity's operating division or its accounts receivable), a practitioner should follow the guidance in this section and issue a report using the guidance in paragraphs .46–.62, modified to refer to the segment of the entity's internal control examined. In this situation, the practitioner may use a report such as the following.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined the effectiveness of W Company's internal control over financial reporting for its retail division as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identity criteria]*. W Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control based on our examination.

[Standard scope and inherent limitations paragraphs]

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, W Company's retail division maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identity criteria]*.

[Signature]

[Date]

Reporting on the Suitability of Design of the Entity's Internal Control

.70 The client may request the practitioner to examine the suitability of the design of the entity's internal control for preventing or detecting material misstatements on a timely basis. For example, prior to granting a new casino a license to operate, a regulatory agency may request a report on whether the internal control that the responsible party plans to implement will provide reasonable assurance that the control objectives specified in the regulatory agency's regulations will be achieved. When evaluating the suitability of design of the entity's internal control for the regulatory agency's purpose, the practitioner should obtain an understanding of the components of internal control²³ that the responsible party should implement to meet the control objectives of the regulatory agency and identify the controls that are relevant to those control objectives.

²³ See paragraph .23.

.71 The following is a suggested form of report a practitioner may issue. The actual form of the report should be modified, as appropriate, to fit the particular circumstances.²⁴

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined the suitability of W Company's design of internal control over financial reporting to prevent or detect material misstatements in the financial statements on a timely basis as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria]*. W Company's management is responsible for the suitable design of internal control over financial reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the design of internal control based on our examination.

[Scope paragraph]

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, evaluating the design of internal control, and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Standard inherent limitations paragraph]

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, W Company's internal control over financial reporting is suitably designed, in all material respects, to prevent or detect material misstatements in the financial statements on a timely basis as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria]*.

[Signature]

[Date]

When reporting on the suitability of design of the entity's internal control that has already been placed in operation, the practitioner should modify his or her report by adding the following to the scope paragraph of the report:

We were not engaged to examine and report on the operating effectiveness of W Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX, and, accordingly, we express no opinion on operating effectiveness.

Reporting on Internal Control Based on Criteria Specified by a Regulatory Agency

.72 A governmental or other agency that exercises regulatory, supervisory, or other public administrative functions may establish its own criteria and require reports on the internal control of entities subject to its jurisdiction. Criteria established by a regulatory agency may be set forth in audit guides, questionnaires, or other publications. The criteria may encompass specified aspects of an entity's internal control and specified aspects of administrative control or compliance with grants, regulations, or statutes. If such criteria have

²⁴ This report assumes that the control criteria of the regulatory agency are both suitable and available to users as discussed in section 101.23–.33. Therefore, there is no restriction on the use of this report.

been subjected to due process procedures, including the distribution of proposed criteria for public comment, and the criteria are available to users (see section 101.23–.33), a practitioner should use the form of report illustrated in paragraph .48. If, however, the criteria are not available to users as described in section 101.33, or such criteria have not been subjected to due process procedures and the practitioner determines that such criteria are appropriate only for a limited number of users who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria, the practitioner should modify the report by adding a separate paragraph that restricts the use of the report to the regulatory agency and to those within the entity.

.73 For purposes of these reports, a material weakness is—

- a. A condition in which the design or operation of one or more of the specific internal control components does not reduce to a relatively low level the risk that misstatements due to error or fraud in amounts that would be material in relation to the applicable grant or program might occur and not be detected on a timely basis by employees in the normal course of performing their assigned functions.
- b. A condition in which the lack of conformity with the regulatory agency's criteria is material in accordance with any guidelines for determining materiality that are included in such criteria.

.74 The following report illustrates one that a practitioner might use when he or she has been engaged to examine the adequacy of an entity's internal control over financial reporting based on criteria established by a regulatory agency that are not suitable for general use.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined the adequacy of W Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria, for example, the criteria established by _____ agency, as set forth in its audit guide dated _____]*. W Company's management is responsible for maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on whether internal control is adequate to meet such criteria based on our examination.

[Standard scope and inherent limitations paragraphs]

[Opinion paragraph]

We understand that the agency considers the controls over financial reporting that meet the criteria referred to in the first paragraph of this report adequate for its purpose. In our opinion, based on this understanding and on our examination, W Company's internal control over financial reporting is adequate, in all material respects, based on the criteria established by *[_____ agency]*.

[Restricted use paragraph]

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the board of directors and management of W Company and *[agency]* and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

.75 When the practitioner issues this form of report, he or she does not assume any responsibility for the comprehensiveness of the criteria established by the regulatory agency. However, the practitioner should report any condition that comes to his or her attention during the course of the examination that he or she believes is a material weakness, even though it may not be covered by the criteria.

.76 If a regulatory agency requires the reporting of all conditions (whether material or not) that are not in conformity with the agency's criteria, the practitioner should describe all conditions of which he or she is aware in the report.

Other Information in a Client-Prepared Document Containing the Practitioner's Report on the Effectiveness of the Entity's Internal Control

.77 A client may publish various documents that contain information in addition to the practitioner's attest report on internal control (or an assertion related thereto). Section 101.91–.94 provide guidance to the practitioner when the other information is contained in (a) annual reports to holders of securities or beneficial interest, annual organizations for charitable and philanthropic purposes distributed to the public, and annual reports filed with regulatory authorities under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or (b) other documents to which the practitioner, at the client's request devotes attention.

Relationship of the Practitioner's Examination of an Entity's Internal Control to the Opinion Obtained in an Audit

.78 The purpose of a practitioner's examination of the effectiveness of an entity's internal control is to express an opinion about whether the entity maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control as of a point in time based on the control criteria. In contrast, the purpose of an auditor's consideration of internal control in an audit of financial statements conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards is to enable the auditor to plan the audit and determine the nature, timing, and extent of tests to be performed. Ultimately, the results of the auditor's tests will form the basis for the auditor's opinion on the fairness of the entity's financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. The auditor's responsibility in considering the entity's internal control is discussed in AU section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*.

.79 In a financial statement audit, the auditor obtains an understanding of internal control by performing procedures such as inquiries, observations, and inspection of documents. After he or she has obtained this understanding, the auditor assesses the control risk for assertions related to significant account balances and transaction classes. The auditor assesses control risk for an assertion at maximum if he or she believes that controls are unlikely to pertain to the assertion, that controls are unlikely to be effective, or that an evaluation of their effectiveness would be inefficient. When the auditor assesses control risk for an assertion at below maximum, he or she identifies the controls that are likely to prevent or detect material misstatements in that assertion and performs tests of controls to evaluate the effectiveness of such controls.

.80 An auditor's consideration of internal control in a financial statement audit is more limited than that of a practitioner engaged to examine the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. However, knowledge the practitioner obtains about the entity's internal control as part of the examination of the effectiveness of internal control may serve as the basis for his or her understanding of internal control in an audit of the entity's financial statements. Similarly, the practitioner may consider the results of tests of controls performed in connection with an examination of the entity's internal control, as well as any material weaknesses identified, when assessing control risk in the audit of the entity's financial statements.

.81 While an examination of the effectiveness of the entity's internal control and an audit of the entity's financial statements may be performed by the same practitioner, each can be performed by a different practitioner. If the audit of the entity's financial statements is performed by another practitioner, the practitioner may wish to consider any material weaknesses and reportable conditions identified by the auditor and any disagreements between the responsible party and the auditor concerning such matters.

Relationship to the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act

.82 The Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977 (FCPA) includes provisions regarding internal accounting control for entities subject to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Whether an entity is in compliance with those provisions of the FCPA is a legal determination. A practitioner's examination report issued under this section does not indicate whether an entity is in compliance with those provisions.

Effective Date

.83 This section is effective when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001. Early application is permitted.

Appendix

The following documents contain guidance for practitioners engaged to provide other services in connection with an entity's internal control.

- AU section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*, provides guidance on identifying and communicating reportable conditions that come to the auditor's attention during an audit of financial statements.
 - AU section 324, *Service Organizations*, provides guidance to auditors of a service organization on issuing a report on certain aspects of the service organization's internal control that can be used by other auditors, as well as guidance on how other auditors should use such reports.
 - The AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Audits of State and Local Governmental Units* provides auditors of state and local governmental entities with a basic understanding of the work they should do and the reports they should issue for audits under Government Auditing Standards (1994 Revision), as amended, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States and for audits under the Single Audit Act requirements and A-133 (June 1997).
 - SOP 98-3, *Audits of States, Local Governments, and Not-for-Profit Organizations Receiving Federal Awards*, provides auditors with a basic understanding of the work they should do and the reports they should issue for audits under Government Auditing Standards (1994 Revision), as amended, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States and for audits under the Single Audit Act requirements and A-133 (June 1997).
-

AT Section 9501***Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control
Over Financial Reporting: Attest
Engagements Interpretations of Section 501*****1. Pre-Award Surveys**

.01 Question—As part of the process of applying for a government grant or contract, an entity may be required to submit a written pre-award survey by management about the effectiveness (suitability) of the design of an entity's internal control or a portion thereof for the government's purposes, together with a practitioner's report thereon. May a practitioner issue such a report based on the consideration of internal control in an audit of the entity's financial statements?

.02 Interpretation—No. The purpose of the consideration of an entity's internal control in a financial statement audit is to obtain an understanding sufficient to plan the audit and to determine the nature, timing and extent of audit tests to be performed and not to provide assurance on internal control. The consideration made in a financial statement audit does not provide the practitioner with a sufficient basis to issue a report expressing any assurance about the effectiveness of the design of internal control or any portion thereof.

.03 Question—How may a practitioner report on the design effectiveness of an entity's internal control or a portion thereof?

.04 Interpretation—In order to issue such a report, the practitioner should perform an examination of or apply agreed-upon procedures to management's written assertion about the effectiveness (suitability) of the design of an entity's internal control as described in section 501, *Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*, paragraphs .23 through .26 and .70 through .76. When the engagement involves the application of agreed-upon procedures to a written assertion about the design effectiveness of the entity's internal control over compliance with specified requirements, the practitioner should also follow the provisions of section 601, *Compliance Attestation*, paragraphs .09 and .11 through .29, and section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*.

.05 Question—What are a practitioner's responsibilities when requested to sign a form prescribed by a government agency in connection with a pre-award survey?

.06 Interpretation—The practitioner should refuse to sign such a prescribed form unless he or she has performed an attest engagement, as discussed in paragraph .04. If the practitioner has conducted such an attest engagement, he or she should consider whether the wording of the prescribed form conforms to the requirements of professional standards. For example, the prescribed form may contain a description of the practitioner's responsibilities or the practitioner's conclusions that is not in conformity with those standards. Some prescribed forms can be made acceptable by inserting additional or deleting existing wording; others can be made acceptable only by complete revision.

When a prescribed form contains a statement or wording not in conformity with professional standards, the practitioner should either reword the form to conform to those standards or attach a separate report conforming with such standards in place of the prescribed form.

.07 Question—An entity may also be required to submit a written pre-award survey about its *ability* to establish suitably designed internal control, together with a practitioner's report thereon. May a practitioner issue such a report based on the consideration of existing internal control in an audit of an entity's financial statements or the performance of an attest engagement?

.08 Interpretation—No. Neither the consideration of internal control in an audit of an entity's financial statements nor the performance of an attest engagement provides the practitioner with a basis for issuing a report on the ability of an entity to establish suitably designed internal control. There are no suitable criteria for evaluating the entity's ability to establish suitably designed internal control. The requesting agency may be willing to accept a report of the practitioner on a consulting service. The practitioner should consider including in the consulting service report—

- a. A statement that the practitioner is unable to perform an attest engagement on the entity's ability to establish suitably designed internal control because there are no suitable criteria for evaluating the entity's ability to do so;
- b. A description of the nature and scope of the practitioner's services; and
- c. The practitioner's findings.

The practitioner may refer to the guidance in CS section 100, *Consulting Services: Definitions and Standards*.

[Issue Date: February 1997; Revised: January 2001.]

AT Section 601

Compliance Attestation

Source: SSAE No. 10.

Effective when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001. Earlier application is permitted.

Introduction and Applicability

.01 This section provides guidance for engagements related to either (a) an entity's compliance with requirements of specified laws, regulations, rules, contracts, or grants or (b) the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over compliance with specified requirements.¹ Compliance requirements may be either financial or nonfinancial in nature. An attest engagement conducted in accordance with this section should comply with the general, fieldwork, and reporting standards in section 101, *Attest Engagements*, and the specific standards set forth in this section.

.02 This section does not—

- a. Affect the auditor's responsibility in an audit of financial statements performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).
- b. Apply to situations in which an auditor reports on specified compliance requirements based solely on an audit of financial statements, as addressed in AU section 623, *Special Reports*, paragraphs .19 through .21.
- c. Apply to engagements for which the objective is to report in accordance with AU section 801, *Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance*, unless the terms of the engagement specify an attest report under this section.
- d. Apply to engagements covered by AU section 634, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties*.
- e. Apply to the report that encompasses internal control over compliance for a broker or dealer in securities as required by rule 17a-5 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the 1934 Act).²

¹ Throughout this section—

- a. An entity's compliance with requirements of specified laws, regulations, rules, contracts, or grants is referred to as *compliance with specified requirements*.
- b. An entity's internal control over compliance with specified requirements is referred to as its *internal control over compliance*. The internal control addressed in this section may include parts of but is not the same as internal control over financial reporting.

² An example of this report is contained in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Brokers and Dealers in Securities*.

.03 A report issued in accordance with the provisions of this section does not provide a legal determination of an entity's compliance with specified requirements. However, such a report may be useful to legal counsel or others in making such determinations.

Scope of Services

.04 The practitioner may be engaged to perform agreed-upon procedures to assist users in evaluating the following subject matter (or assertions related thereto)—

- a. The entity's compliance with specified requirements
- b. The effectiveness of the entity's internal control over compliance³
- c. Both the entity's compliance with specified requirements and the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over compliance

The practitioner also may be engaged to examine the entity's compliance with specified requirements or a written assertion thereon.

.05 An important consideration in determining the type of engagement to be performed is expectations by users of the practitioner's report. Since the users decide the procedures to be performed in an agreed-upon procedures engagement, it often will be in the best interests of the practitioner and users (including the client) to have an agreed-upon procedures engagement rather than an examination engagement. When deciding whether to accept an examination engagement, the practitioner should consider the risks discussed in paragraphs .31 through .35.

.06 A practitioner may be engaged to examine the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over compliance or an assertion thereon. However, in accordance with section 101, the practitioner cannot accept an engagement unless he or she has reason to believe that the subject matter is capable of reasonably consistent evaluation against criteria that are suitable and available to users.⁴ If a practitioner determines that such criteria do exist for

³ An entity's internal control over compliance is the process by which management obtains reasonable assurance of compliance with specified requirements. Although the comprehensive internal control may include a wide variety of objectives and related policies and procedures, only some of these may be relevant to an entity's compliance with specified requirements. (See footnote 1b.) The components of internal control over compliance vary based on the nature of the compliance requirements. For example, internal control over compliance with a capital requirement would generally include accounting procedures, whereas internal control over compliance with a requirement to practice nondiscriminatory hiring may not include accounting procedures.

⁴ Criteria issued by regulatory agencies and other groups composed of experts that follow due-process procedures, including exposure of the proposed criteria for public comment, ordinarily should be considered suitable criteria for this purpose. For example, the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations (COSO) of the Treadway Commission's Report, *Internal Control—Integrated Framework*, provides suitable criteria against which management may evaluate and report on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. However, more detailed criteria relative to specific compliance requirements may have to be developed and an appropriate threshold for measuring the severity of control deficiencies needs to be developed in order to apply the concepts of the COSO report to internal control over compliance.

Criteria established by a regulatory agency that does not follow such due-process procedures also may be considered suitable criteria for use by the regulatory agency. The practitioner should determine whether such criteria are suitable for general use reporting by evaluating them against the attributes in section 101.24. If the practitioner determines that such criteria are suitable for general use reporting, those criteria should also be available to users as discussed in section 101.33.

If the practitioner concludes that the criteria are appropriate only for a limited number of parties or are available only to specified parties, the practitioner's report shall state that the use of the report is restricted to those parties specified in the report. (See section 101.30, .34, and .78–.83.)

internal control over compliance, he or she should perform the engagement in accordance with section 101. Additionally, section 501, *Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*, may be helpful to a practitioner in such an engagement.

.07 A practitioner should not accept an engagement to perform a review, as defined in section 101.55, of an entity's compliance with specified requirements or about the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over compliance or an assertion thereon.

.08 The practitioner may be engaged to provide other types of services in connection with the entity's compliance with specified requirements or the entity's internal control over compliance. For example, management may engage the practitioner to provide recommendations on how to improve the entity's compliance or related internal control. A practitioner engaged to provide such nonattest services should refer to the guidance in CS section 100, *Consulting Services: Definitions and Standards*.

Conditions for Engagement Performance

.09 A practitioner may perform an agreed-upon procedures engagement related to an entity's compliance with specified requirements or the effectiveness of internal control over compliance if the following conditions are met.

- a. The responsible party accepts responsibility for the entity's compliance with specified requirements and the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over compliance.
- b. The responsible party evaluates the entity's compliance with specified requirements or the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over compliance.

See also section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*.

.10 A practitioner may perform an examination engagement related to an entity's compliance with specified requirements if the following conditions are met.

- a. The responsible party accepts responsibility for the entity's compliance with specified requirements and the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over compliance.
- b. The responsible party evaluates the entity's compliance with specified requirements.
- c. Sufficient evidential matter exists or could be developed to support management's evaluation.

.11 As part of engagement performance, the practitioner should obtain from the responsible party a written assertion about compliance with specified requirements or internal control over compliance. The responsible party may present its written assertion in either of the following:

- a. A separate report that will accompany the practitioner's report
- b. A representation letter to the practitioner

.12 The responsible party's written assertion about compliance with specified requirements or internal control over compliance may take many forms. Throughout this section, for example, the phrase "responsible party's assertion that W Company complied with [*specify compliance requirement*] as of [*date*]," illustrates such an assertion. Other phrases may also be used. However, a practitioner should not accept an assertion that is so subjective (for example, "very effective" internal control over compliance) that people having competence in and using the same or similar criteria would not ordinarily be able to arrive at similar conclusions.

.13 Regardless of whether the practitioner's client is the responsible party, the responsible party's refusal to furnish a written assertion as part of an examination engagement should cause the practitioner to withdraw from the engagement. However, an exception is provided if an examination of an entity's compliance with specified requirements is required by law or regulation. In that instance, the practitioner should disclaim an opinion on compliance unless he or she obtains evidential matter that warrants expressing an adverse opinion. If the practitioner expresses an adverse opinion and the responsible party does not provide an assertion, the practitioner's report should be restricted as to use. (See section 101.78–.81.) If, as part of an agreed-upon procedures engagement, the practitioner's client is the responsible party, a refusal by that party to provide an assertion requires the practitioner to withdraw from the engagement. However, withdrawal is not required if the engagement is required by law or regulation. If, in an agreed-upon procedures engagement, the practitioner's client is not the responsible party, the practitioner is not required to withdraw but should consider the effects of the responsible party's refusal on the engagement and his or her report.

.14 Additionally, at the beginning of the engagement, the practitioner may want to consider discussing with the client and the responsible party the need for the responsible party to provide the practitioner with a written representation letter at the conclusion of the examination engagement or an agreed-upon procedures engagement in which the client is the responsible party. In that letter, the responsible party will be asked to provide, among other possible items, an acknowledgment of their responsibility for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over compliance and their assertion stating their evaluation of the entity's compliance with specified requirements. The responsible party's refusal to furnish these representations (see paragraphs .68 through .70) will constitute a limitation on the scope of the engagement.

Responsible Party

.15 The responsible party is responsible for ensuring that the entity complies with the requirements applicable to its activities. That responsibility encompasses the following.

- a. Identify applicable compliance requirements.
- b. Establish and maintain internal control to provide reasonable assurance that the entity complies with those requirements.
- c. Evaluate and monitor the entity's compliance.
- d. Specify reports that satisfy legal, regulatory, or contractual requirements.

The responsible party's evaluation may include documentation such as accounting or statistical data, entity policy manuals, accounting manuals, narrative memoranda, procedural write-ups, flowcharts, completed questionnaires, or internal auditors' reports. The form and extent of documentation will vary depending on the nature of the compliance requirements and the size and complexity of the entity. The responsible party may engage the practitioner to gather information to assist it in evaluating the entity's compliance. Regardless of the procedures performed by the practitioner, the responsible party must accept responsibility for its assertion and must not base such assertion solely on the practitioner's procedures.

Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement

.16 The objective of the practitioner's agreed-upon procedures is to present specific findings to assist users in evaluating an entity's compliance with specified requirements or the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over compliance based on procedures agreed upon by the users of the report. A practitioner engaged to perform agreed-upon procedures on an entity's compliance with specified requirements or about the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over compliance should follow the guidance set forth herein and in section 201.

.17 The practitioner's procedures generally may be as limited or as extensive as the specified users desire, as long as the specified users (a) agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed and (b) take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes. (See section 201.15.)

.18 To satisfy the requirements that the practitioner and the specified users agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed and that the specified users take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes, ordinarily the practitioner should communicate directly with and obtain affirmative acknowledgment from each of the specified users. For example, this may be accomplished by meeting with the specified users or by distributing a draft of the anticipated report or a copy of an engagement letter to the specified users and obtaining their agreement. If the practitioner is not able to communicate directly with all of the specified users, the practitioner may satisfy these requirements by applying any one or more of the following or similar procedures.

- Compare the procedures to be applied to written requirements of the specified users.
- Discuss the procedures to be applied with appropriate representatives of the specified users involved.
- Review relevant contracts with or correspondence from the specified users.

The practitioner should not report on an engagement when specified users do not agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed and do not take responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures for their purposes. See section 201.36 for guidance on satisfying these requirements when the practitioner is requested to add other parties as specified parties after the date of completion of the agreed-upon procedures.

.19 In an engagement to perform agreed-upon procedures on an entity's compliance with specified requirements or about the effectiveness of an entity's

internal control over compliance, the practitioner is required to perform only the procedures that have been agreed to by users.⁵ However, prior to performing such procedures, the practitioner should obtain an understanding of the specified compliance requirements, as discussed in paragraph .20. (See section 201.)

.20 To obtain an understanding of the specified compliance requirements, a practitioner should consider the following:

- a. Laws, regulations, rules, contracts, and grants that pertain to the specified compliance requirements, including published requirements
- b. Knowledge about the specified compliance requirements obtained through prior engagements and regulatory reports
- c. Knowledge about the specified compliance requirements obtained through discussions with appropriate individuals within the entity (for example, the chief financial officer, internal auditors, legal counsel, compliance officer, or grant or contract administrators)
- d. Knowledge about the specified compliance requirements obtained through discussions with appropriate individuals outside the entity (for example, a regulator or a third-party specialist)

.21 When circumstances impose restrictions on the scope of an agreed-upon procedures engagement, the practitioner should attempt to obtain agreement from the users for modification of the agreed-upon procedures. When such agreement cannot be obtained (for example, when the agreed-upon procedures are published by a regulatory agency that will not modify the procedures), the practitioner should describe such restrictions in his or her report or withdraw from the engagement.

.22 The practitioner has no obligation to perform procedures beyond the agreed-upon procedures. However, if noncompliance comes to the practitioner's attention by other means, such information ordinarily should be included in his or her report.

.23 The practitioner may become aware of noncompliance that occurs subsequent to the period addressed by the practitioner's report but before the date of the practitioner's report. The practitioner should consider including information regarding such noncompliance in his or her report. However, the practitioner has no responsibility to perform procedures to detect such noncompliance other than obtaining the responsible party's representation about noncompliance in the subsequent period, as described in paragraph .68.

.24 The practitioner's report on agreed-upon procedures on an entity's compliance with specified requirements (or the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over compliance) should be in the form of procedures and findings. The practitioner's report should contain the following elements:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. Identification of the specified parties
- c. Identification of the subject matter of the engagement (or management's assertion thereon), including the period or point in time addressed and a reference to the character of the engagement⁶

⁵ AU section 322, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, does not apply to agreed-upon procedures engagements.

⁶ Generally, management's assertion about compliance with specified requirements will address a *period* of time, whereas an assertion about internal control over compliance will address a *point* in time.

- d. An identification of the responsible party
- e. A statement that the subject matter is the responsibility of the responsible party
- f. A statement that the procedures, which were agreed to by the specified parties identified in the report, were performed to assist the specified parties in evaluating the entity's compliance with specified requirements or the effectiveness of its internal control over compliance
- g. A statement that the agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants
- h. A statement that the sufficiency of the procedures is solely the responsibility of the specified parties and a disclaimer of responsibility for the sufficiency of those procedures
- i. A list of the procedures performed (or reference thereto) and related findings (The practitioner should not provide negative assurance. See section 201.24.)
- j. Where applicable, a description of any agreed-upon materiality limits (See section 201.25.)
- k. A statement that the practitioner was not engaged to and did not conduct an examination of the entity's compliance with specified requirements (or the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over compliance), a disclaimer of opinion thereon, and a statement that if the practitioner had performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to his or her attention that would have been reported
- l. A statement restricting the use of the report to the specified parties
- m. Where applicable, reservations or restrictions concerning procedures or findings as discussed in section 201.33, .35, .39, and .40
- n. Where applicable, a description of the nature of the assistance provided by the specialist as discussed in section 201.19–.21
- o. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- p. The date of the report

.25 The following is an illustration of an agreed-upon procedures report on an entity's compliance with specified requirements in which the procedures and findings are enumerated rather than referenced.

Independent Accountant's Report on Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures

We have performed the procedures enumerated below, which were agreed to by [*list specified parties*], solely to assist the specified parties in evaluating [*name of entity*]'s compliance with [*list specified requirements*] during the [*period*] ended [*date*].⁷ Management is responsible for [*name of entity*]'s compliance with those requirements. This agreed-upon procedures engagement

⁷ If the agreed-upon procedures have been published by a third-party user (for example, a regulator in regulatory policies or a lender in a debt agreement), this sentence might begin, "We have performed the procedures included in [*title of publication or other document*] and enumerated below, which were agreed to by [*list specified parties*], solely to assist the specified parties in evaluating...."

was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of those parties specified in this report. Consequently, we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described below either for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

[Include paragraphs to enumerate procedures and findings.]

We were not engaged to and did not conduct an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on compliance. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of *[list or refer to specified parties]* and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

.26 Evaluating compliance with certain requirements may require interpretation of the laws, regulations, rules, contracts, or grants that establish those requirements. In such situations, the practitioner should consider whether he or she is provided with the suitable criteria required to evaluate an assertion under the third general attestation standard. If these interpretations are significant, the practitioner may include a paragraph stating the description and the source of interpretations made by the entity's management. An example of such a paragraph, which should precede the procedures and findings paragraph(s), follows.

We have been informed that, under *[name of entity]*'s interpretation of *[identify the compliance requirement]*, *[explain the nature and source of the relevant interpretation]*.

.27 The following is an illustration of an agreed-upon procedures report on the effectiveness of an entity's internal control over compliance in which the procedures and findings are enumerated rather than referenced.

Independent Accountant's Report on Applying Agreed-Up Procedures

We have performed the procedures enumerated below, which were agreed to by *[list specified parties]*, solely to assist the specified parties in evaluating the effectiveness of *[name of entity]*'s internal control over compliance with *[list specified requirements]* as of *[date]*.⁸ Management is responsible for *[name of entity]*'s internal control over compliance with those requirements. This agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of those parties specified in this report. Consequently, we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described below either for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

⁸ If the agreed-upon procedures have been published by a third-party user (for example, a regulator in regulatory policies or a lender in a debt agreement), this sentence might begin, "We have performed the procedures included in *[title of publication or other document]* and enumerated below, which were agreed to by *[list specified parties]*, solely to assist the specified parties in evaluating the effectiveness of *[name of entity]*'s internal control over compliance...."

[Include paragraphs to enumerate procedures and findings.]

We were not engaged to and did not conduct an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control over compliance. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of *[list or refer to specified parties]* and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

.28 In some agreed-upon procedures engagements, procedures may relate to both compliance with specified requirements and the effectiveness of internal control over compliance. In these engagements, the practitioner may issue one report that addresses both. For example, the first sentence of the introductory paragraph would state the following.

We have performed the procedures enumerated below, which were agreed to by *[list users of report]*, solely to assist the users in evaluating *[name of entity]*'s compliance with *[list specified requirements]* during the *[period]* ended *[date]* and the effectiveness of *[name of entity]*'s internal control over compliance with the aforementioned compliance requirements as of *[date]*.

.29 The date of completion of the agreed-upon procedures should be used as the date of the practitioner's report.

Examination Engagement

.30 The objective of the practitioner's examination procedures applied to an entity's compliance with specified requirements is to express an opinion on an entity's compliance (or assertion related thereto), based on the specified criteria. To express such an opinion, the practitioner accumulates sufficient evidence about the entity's compliance with specified requirements, thereby restricting attestation risk to an appropriately low level.

Attestation Risk

.31 In an engagement to examine compliance with specified requirements, the practitioner seeks to obtain reasonable assurance that the entity complied, in all material respects, based on the specified criteria. This includes designing the examination to detect both intentional and unintentional material noncompliance. Absolute assurance is not attainable because of factors such as the need for judgment, the use of sampling, and the inherent limitations of internal control over compliance and because much of the evidence available to the practitioner is persuasive rather than conclusive in nature. Also, procedures that are effective for detecting noncompliance that is unintentional may be ineffective for detecting noncompliance that is intentional and concealed through collusion between personnel of the entity and a third party or among management or employees of the entity. Therefore, the subsequent discovery that material noncompliance exists does not, in and of itself, evidence inadequate planning, performance, or judgment on the part of the practitioner.

.32 Attestation risk is the risk that the practitioner may unknowingly fail to modify appropriately his or her opinion. It is composed of inherent risk,

control risk, and detection risk. For purposes of a compliance examination, these components are defined as follows:

- a. *Inherent risk*—The risk that material noncompliance with specified requirements could occur, assuming there are no related controls
- b. *Control risk*—The risk that material noncompliance that could occur will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis by the entity's controls
- c. *Detection risk*—The risk that the practitioner's procedures will lead him or her to conclude that material noncompliance does not exist when, in fact, such noncompliance does exist

Inherent Risk

.33 In assessing inherent risk, the practitioner should consider factors affecting risk similar to those an auditor would consider when planning an audit of financial statements. Such factors are discussed in AU section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, paragraph .85 (Appendix). In addition, the practitioner should consider factors relevant to compliance engagements, such as the following:

- The complexity of the specified compliance requirements
- The length of time the entity has been subject to the specified compliance requirements
- Prior experience with the entity's compliance
- The potential impact of noncompliance

[Revised, January 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99.]

Control Risk

.34 The practitioner should assess control risk as discussed in paragraphs .45 and .46. Assessing control risk contributes to the practitioner's evaluation of the risk that material noncompliance exists. The process of assessing control risk (together with assessing inherent risk) provides evidential matter about the risk that such noncompliance may exist. The practitioner uses this evidential matter as part of the reasonable basis for his or her opinion.

Detection Risk

.35 In determining an acceptable level of detection risk, the practitioner assesses inherent risk and control risk and considers the extent to which he or she seeks to restrict attestation risk. As assessed inherent risk or control risk decreases, the acceptable level of detection risk increases. Accordingly, the practitioner may alter the nature, timing, and extent of compliance tests performed based on the assessments of inherent risk and control risk.

Materiality

.36 In an examination of an entity's compliance with specified requirements, the practitioner's consideration of materiality differs from that of an audit of financial statements in accordance with GAAS. In an examination of an entity's compliance with specified requirements, the practitioner's consideration of materiality is affected by (a) the nature of the compliance requirements, which may or may not be quantifiable in monetary terms, (b) the nature

and frequency of noncompliance identified with appropriate consideration of sampling risk, and (c) qualitative considerations, including the needs and expectations of the report's users.

.37 In a number of situations, the terms of the engagement may provide for a supplemental report of all or certain noncompliance discovered. Such terms should not change the practitioner's judgments about materiality in planning and performing the engagement or in forming an opinion on an entity's compliance with specified requirements or on the responsible party's assertion about such compliance.

Performing an Examination Engagement

.38 The practitioner should exercise (a) due care in planning, performing, and evaluating the results of his or her examination procedures and (b) the proper degree of professional skepticism to achieve reasonable assurance that material noncompliance will be detected.

.39 In an examination of the entity's compliance with specified requirements, the practitioner should—

- a. Obtain an understanding of the specified compliance requirements. (See paragraph .40.)
- b. Plan the engagement. (See paragraphs .41 through .44.)
- c. Consider relevant portions of the entity's internal control over compliance. (See paragraphs .45 through .47.)
- d. Obtain sufficient evidence including testing compliance with specified requirements. (See paragraphs .48 and .49.)
- e. Consider subsequent events. (See paragraphs .50 through .52.)
- f. Form an opinion about whether the entity complied, in all material respects, with specified requirements (or whether the responsible party's assertion about such compliance is fairly stated in all material respects), based on the specified criteria. (See paragraph .53.)

Obtaining an Understanding of the Specified Compliance Requirements

.40 A practitioner should obtain an understanding of the specified compliance requirements. To obtain such an understanding, a practitioner should consider the following:

- a. Laws, regulations, rules, contracts, and grants that pertain to the specified compliance requirements, including published requirements
- b. Knowledge about the specified compliance requirements obtained through prior engagements and regulatory reports
- c. Knowledge about the specified compliance requirements obtained through discussions with appropriate individuals within the entity (for example, the chief financial officer, internal auditors, legal counsel, compliance officer, or grant or contract administrators)
- d. Knowledge about the specified compliance requirements obtained through discussions with appropriate individuals outside the entity (for example, a regulator or third-party specialist)

Planning the Engagement

General Considerations

.41 Planning an engagement to examine an entity's compliance with specified requirements involves developing an overall strategy for the expected conduct and scope of the engagement. The practitioner should consider the planning matters discussed in section 101.42–.47.

Multiple Components

.42 In an engagement to examine an entity's compliance with specified requirements when the entity has operations in several components (for example, locations, branches, subsidiaries, or programs), the practitioner may determine that it is not necessary to test compliance with requirements at every component. In making such a determination and in selecting the components to be tested, the practitioner should consider factors such as the following:

- a. The degree to which the specified compliance requirements apply at the component level
- b. Judgments about materiality
- c. The degree of centralization of records
- d. The effectiveness of the control environment, particularly management's direct control over the exercise of authority delegated to others and its ability to supervise activities at various locations effectively
- e. The nature and extent of operations conducted at the various components
- f. The similarity of operations over compliance for different components

Using the Work of a Specialist

.43 In some compliance engagements, the nature of the specified compliance requirements may require specialized skill or knowledge in a particular field other than accounting or auditing. In such cases, the practitioner may use the work of a specialist and should follow the relevant performance and reporting guidance in AU section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*.

Internal Audit Function

.44 Another factor the practitioner should consider when planning the engagement is whether the entity has an internal audit function and the extent to which internal auditors are involved in monitoring compliance with the specified requirements. A practitioner should consider the guidance in AU section 322, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, when addressing the competence and objectivity of internal auditors, the nature, timing, and extent of work to be performed, and other related matters.

Consideration of Internal Control Over Compliance

.45 The practitioner should obtain an understanding of relevant portions of internal control over compliance sufficient to plan the engagement and to assess control risk for compliance with specified requirements. In planning the

examination, such knowledge should be used to identify types of potential noncompliance, to consider factors that affect the risk of material noncompliance, and to design appropriate tests of compliance.

.46 A practitioner generally obtains an understanding of the design of specific controls by performing the following:

- a. Inquiries of appropriate management, supervisory, and staff personnel
- b. Inspection of the entity's documents
- c. Observation of the entity's activities and operations

The nature and extent of procedures a practitioner performs vary from entity to entity and are influenced by factors such as the following:

- The newness and complexity of the specified requirements
- The practitioner's knowledge of internal control over compliance obtained in previous professional engagements
- The nature of the specified compliance requirements
- An understanding of the industry in which the entity operates
- Judgments about materiality

When seeking to assess control risk below the maximum, the practitioner should perform tests of controls to obtain evidence to support the assessed level of control risk.

.47 During the course of an examination engagement, the practitioner may become aware of significant deficiencies in the design or operation of internal control over compliance that could adversely affect the entity's ability to comply with specified requirements. A practitioner's responsibility to communicate these deficiencies in an examination of an entity's compliance with specified requirements is similar to the auditor's responsibility described in AU section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*. If, in a multiple-party arrangement, the practitioner's client is not the responsible party, the practitioner has no responsibility to communicate reportable conditions to the responsible party. For example, if the practitioner is engaged by his or her client to examine the compliance of another entity, the practitioner has no obligation to communicate any reportable conditions that he or she becomes aware of to the other entity. However, the practitioner is not precluded from making such a communication.

Obtaining Sufficient Evidence

.48 The practitioner should apply procedures to provide reasonable assurance of detecting material noncompliance. Determining these procedures and evaluating the sufficiency of the evidence obtained are matters of professional judgment. When exercising such judgment, practitioners should consider the guidance contained in section 101.51–54 and AU section 350, *Audit Sampling*.

.49 For engagements involving compliance with regulatory requirements, the practitioner's procedures should include reviewing reports of significant examinations and related communications between regulatory agencies and the entity and, when appropriate, making inquiries of the regulatory agencies, including inquiries about examinations in progress.

Consideration of Subsequent Events

.50 The practitioner's consideration of subsequent events in an examination of an entity's compliance with specified requirements is similar to the auditor's consideration of subsequent events in a financial statement audit, as outlined in AU section 560, *Subsequent Events*. The practitioner should consider information about such events that comes to his or her attention after the end of the period addressed by the practitioner's report and prior to the issuance of his or her report.

.51 Two types of subsequent events require consideration by the responsible party and evaluation by the practitioner. The first consists of events that provide additional information about the entity's compliance during the period addressed by the practitioner's report and may affect the practitioner's report. For the period from the end of the reporting period (or point in time) to the date of the practitioner's report, the practitioner should perform procedures to identify such events that provide additional information about compliance during the reporting period. Such procedures should include but may not be limited to inquiring about and considering the following information:

- Relevant internal auditors' reports issued during the subsequent period
- Other practitioners' reports identifying noncompliance, issued during the subsequent period
- Regulatory agencies' reports on the entity's noncompliance, issued during the subsequent period
- Information about the entity's noncompliance, obtained through other professional engagements for that entity

.52 The second type consists of noncompliance that occurs subsequent to the period being reported on but before the date of the practitioner's report. The practitioner has no responsibility to detect such noncompliance. However, should the practitioner become aware of such noncompliance, it may be of such a nature and significance that disclosure of it is required to keep users from being misled. In such cases, the practitioner should include in his or her report an explanatory paragraph describing the nature of the noncompliance.

Forming an Opinion

.53 In evaluating whether the entity has complied in all material respects (or whether the responsible party's assertion about such compliance is stated fairly in all material respects), the practitioner should consider (a) the nature and frequency of the noncompliance identified and (b) whether such noncompliance is material relative to the nature of the compliance requirements, as discussed in paragraph .36.

Reporting

.54 The practitioner may examine and report directly on an entity's compliance (see paragraphs .55 and .56) or he or she may examine and report on the responsible party's written assertion (see paragraphs .57, .58, and .61), except as described in paragraph .64.

.55 The practitioner's examination report on compliance, which is ordinarily addressed to the entity, should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. Identification of the specified compliance requirements, including the period covered, and of the responsible party⁹
- c. A statement that compliance with the specified requirements is the responsibility of the entity's management
- d. A statement that the practitioner's responsibility is to express an opinion on the entity's compliance with those requirements based on his or her examination
- e. A statement that the examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence about the entity's compliance with those requirements and performing such other procedures as the practitioner considered necessary in the circumstances
- f. A statement that the practitioner believes the examination provides a reasonable basis for his or her opinion
- g. A statement that the examination does not provide a legal determination on the entity's compliance
- h. The practitioner's opinion on whether the entity complied, in all material respects, with specified requirements based on the specified criteria¹⁰ (See paragraph .64 for reporting on material noncompliance.)
- i. A statement restricting the use of the report to the specified parties (see the fourth reporting standard)¹¹ under the following circumstances (See also paragraph .13.):
 - When the criteria used to evaluate compliance are determined by the practitioner to be appropriate only for a limited number of parties who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria.
 - When the criteria used to evaluate compliance are available only to the specified parties
- j. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- k. The date of the examination report

.56 The following is the form of report a practitioner should use when he or she is expressing an opinion on an entity's compliance with specified requirements during a period of time.

⁹ A practitioner also may be engaged to report on an entity's compliance with specified requirements as of point in time. In this case, the illustrative reports in this section should be adapted as appropriate.

¹⁰ Frequently, criteria will be contained in the compliance requirements, in which case it is not necessary to repeat the criteria in the practitioner's report; however, if the criteria are not included in the compliance requirement, the practitioner's report should identify the criteria. For example, if a compliance requirement is to "maintain \$25,000 in capital," it would not be necessary to identify the \$25,000 in the report; however, if the requirement is to "maintain adequate capital," the practitioner should identify the criteria used to define *adequate*.

¹¹ In certain situations, however, criteria that have been specified by management and other report users may be suitable for general use.

Independent Accountant's Report*[Introductory paragraph]*

We have examined [*name of entity*]'s compliance with [*list specified compliance requirements*] during the [*period*] ended [*date*]. Management is responsible for [*name of entity*]'s compliance with those requirements. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on [*name of entity*]'s compliance based on our examination.

[Scope paragraph]

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence about [*name of entity*]'s compliance with those requirements and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion. Our examination does not provide a legal determination on [*name of entity*]'s compliance with specified requirements.

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, [*name of entity*] complied, in all material respects, with the aforementioned requirements for the year ended December 31, 20XX.¹²

[Signature]

[Date]

.57 The practitioner's examination report on an entity's assertion about compliance with specified requirements, which is ordinarily addressed to the entity, should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. Identification of the responsible party's assertion about the entity's compliance with specified requirements, including the period covered by the responsible party's assertion, and of the responsible party (When the responsible party's assertion does not accompany the practitioner's report, the first paragraph of the report should also contain a statement of the responsible party's assertion.)¹³
- c. A statement that compliance with the requirements is the responsibility of the entity's management
- d. A statement that the practitioner's responsibility is to express an opinion on the responsible party's assertion on the entity's compliance with those requirements based on his or her examination
- e. A statement that the examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence about the entity's compliance with those requirements and performing such other procedures as the practitioner considered necessary in the circumstances

¹² If it is necessary to identify criteria (see footnote 10), the criteria should be identified in the opinion paragraph (for example, "...in all material respects, based on the criteria set forth in Attachment 1").

¹³ A practitioner also may be engaged to report on the responsible party's assertion about an entity's compliance with specified requirements as of a point in time. In this case, the illustrative reports in this section should be adapted as appropriate.

- f. A statement that the practitioner believes the examination provides a reasonable basis for his or her opinion
- g. A statement that the examination does not provide a legal determination on the entity's compliance
- h. The practitioner's opinion on whether the responsible party's assertion about compliance with specified requirements is fairly stated in all material respects based on the specified criteria¹⁴ (See paragraph .64 for reporting on material noncompliance.)
- i. A statement restricting the use of the report to the specified parties (see the fourth reporting standard)^{15, 16} under the following circumstances:
 - When the criteria used to evaluate compliance are determined by the practitioner to be appropriate only for a limited number of parties who either participated in their establishment or can be presumed to have an adequate understanding of the criteria
 - When the criteria used to evaluate compliance are available only to the specified parties
- j. The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- k. The date of the examination report

.58 The following is the form of report that a practitioner should use when expressing an opinion on management's assertion about compliance with specified requirements.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined management's assertion, included in the accompanying *[title of management report]*, that *[name of entity]* complied with *[list specified compliance requirements]* during the *[period]* ended *[date]*.^{17, 18} Management is responsible for *[name of entity]*'s compliance with those requirements. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on management's assertion about *[name of entity]*'s compliance based on our examination.

[Standard scope paragraph]

[Opinion paragraph]

¹⁴ Frequently, criteria will be contained in the compliance requirements, in which case it is not necessary to repeat the criteria in the practitioner's report; however, if the criteria are not included in the compliance requirement, the practitioner's report should identify the criteria. For example, if a compliance requirement is to "maintain \$25,000 in capital," it would not be necessary to identify the \$25,000 in the report; however, if the requirement is to "maintain adequate capital," the practitioner should identify the criteria used to define *adequate*.

¹⁵ Although a practitioner's report may be appropriate for general use, the practitioner is not precluded from restricting the use of the report.

¹⁶ In certain situations, however, criteria that have been specified by management and other report users may be suitable for general use.

¹⁷ The practitioner should identify the management report examined by reference to the report title used by management in its report. Further, he or she should use the same description of compliance requirements as management uses in its report.

¹⁸ If management's assertion is stated in the practitioner's report and does not accompany the practitioner's report, the phrase "included in the accompanying *[title of management report]*" would be omitted.

In our opinion, management's assertion that *[name of entity]* complied with the aforementioned requirements during the *[period]* ended *[date]* is fairly stated, in all material respects.¹⁹

[Signature]

[Date]

.59 Evaluating compliance with certain requirements may require interpretation of the laws, regulations, rules, contracts, or grants that establish those requirements. In such situations, the practitioner should consider whether he or she is provided with the suitable criteria required to evaluate compliance under the third general attestation standard. If these interpretations are significant, the practitioner may include a paragraph stating the description and the source of interpretations made by the entity's management. The following is an example of such a paragraph, which should directly follow the scope paragraph:

We have been informed that, under *[name of entity]*'s interpretation of *[identify the compliance requirement]*, *[explain the source and nature of the relevant interpretation]*.

.60 The date of completion of the examination procedures should be used as the date of the practitioner's report.

.61 Nothing precludes the practitioner from examining an assertion but opining directly on compliance.

.62 Section 101.78–.83 provide guidance on restricting the use of an attest report. Nothing in this section precludes the practitioner from restricting the use of the report. For example, if the practitioner is asked by a client to examine another entity's compliance with certain regulations, he or she may want to restrict the use of the report to the client since the practitioner has no control over how the report may be used by the other entity.

Report Modifications

.63 The practitioner should modify the standard report described in paragraphs .55 and .57, if any of the following conditions exist.

- There is material noncompliance with specified requirements (paragraphs .64 through .67).
- There is a restriction on the scope of the engagement.²⁰
- The practitioner decides to refer to the report of another practitioner as the basis, in part, for the practitioner's report.²¹

Material Noncompliance

.64 When an examination of an entity's compliance with specified requirements discloses noncompliance with the applicable requirements that the practitioner believes have a material effect on the entity's compliance, the practitioner should modify the report and, to most effectively communicate with the reader of the report, should state his or her opinion on the entity's specified compliance requirements, not on the responsible party's assertion.

¹⁹ If it is necessary to identify criteria (see footnote 10), the criteria should be identified in the opinion paragraph (for example, "...in all material respects, based on the criteria set forth in Attachment 1").

²⁰ The practitioner should refer to section 101.73 and .74 for guidance on scope restrictions.

²¹ The practitioner should refer to section 501.63 and .64 for guidance on an opinion based in part on the report of another practitioner and adapt such guidance to the standard reports in this section.

.65 The following is the form of report, modified with explanatory language, that a practitioner should use when he or she has concluded that a qualified opinion is appropriate under the circumstances. It has been assumed that the practitioner has determined that the specified compliance requirements are both suitable for general use and available to users as discussed in section 101.23–.33, and, therefore, that a restricted use paragraph is not required.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined [name of entity]'s compliance with [list specified compliance requirements] for the [period] ended [date]. Management is responsible for compliance with those requirements. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on [name of entity]'s compliance based on our examination.

[Standard scope paragraph]

[Explanatory paragraph]

Our examination disclosed the following material noncompliance with [type of compliance requirement] applicable to [name of entity] during the [period] ended [date]. [Describe noncompliance.]

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, except for the material noncompliance described in the third paragraph, [name of entity] complied, in all material respects, with the aforementioned requirements for the [period] ended [date].

[Signature]

[Date]

.66 The following is the form of report, modified with explanatory language, that a practitioner should use when he or she concludes that an adverse opinion is appropriate in the circumstances. The practitioner has determined that the specified compliance requirements are both suitable for general use and available to users as discussed in section 101.23–.33.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined [name of entity]'s compliance with [list specified compliance requirements] for the [period] ended [date]. Management is responsible for compliance with those requirements. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on [name of entity]'s compliance based on our examination.

[Standard scope paragraph]

[Explanatory paragraph]

Our examination disclosed the following material noncompliance with [type of compliance requirement] applicable to [name of entity] during the [period] ended [date]. [Describe noncompliance.]

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, because of the effect of the noncompliance described in the third paragraph, [name of entity] has not complied with the aforementioned requirements for the [period] ended [date].

[Signature]

[Date]

.67 If the practitioner's report on his or her examination of the entity's compliance with specified requirements is included in a document that also includes his or her audit report on the entity's financial statements, the following sentence should be included in the paragraph of an examination report that describes material noncompliance.

These conditions were considered in determining the nature, timing, and extent of audit tests applied in our audit of the 20XX financial statements, and this report does not affect our report dated [date of report] on those financial statements.

The practitioner also may include the preceding sentence when the two reports are not included within the same document.

Representation Letter

.68 In an examination engagement or an agreed-upon procedures engagement, the practitioner should obtain written representations from the responsible party—²²

- a. Acknowledging the responsible party's responsibility for complying with the specified requirements.
- b. Acknowledging the responsible party's responsibility for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over compliance.
- c. Stating that the responsible party has performed an evaluation of (1) the entity's compliance with specified requirements or (2) the entity's controls for ensuring compliance and detecting noncompliance with requirements, as applicable.
- d. Stating the responsible party's assertion about the entity's compliance with the specified requirements or about the effectiveness of internal control over compliance, as applicable, based on the stated or established criteria.
- e. Stating that the responsible party has disclosed to the practitioner all known noncompliance.
- f. State that the responsible party has made available all documentation related to compliance with the specified requirements.
- g. Stating the responsible party's interpretation of any compliance requirements that have varying interpretations.
- h. State that the responsible party has disclosed any communications from regulatory agencies, internal auditors, and other practitioners concerning possible noncompliance with the specified requirements, including communications received between the end of the period addressed in the written assertion and the date of the practitioner's report.
- i. Stating that the responsible party has disclosed any known noncompliance occurring subsequent to the period for which, or date as of which, the responsible party selects to make its assertion.

²² AU section 333, *Management Representations*, paragraph .09, provides guidance on the date as of which the representation letter should be signed and who should sign it.

.69 The responsible party's refusal to furnish all appropriate written representations in an examination engagement constitutes a limitation on the scope of the engagement sufficient to preclude an unqualified opinion and is ordinarily sufficient to cause the practitioner to disclaim an opinion or withdraw from the engagement. However, based on the nature of the representations not obtained or the circumstances of the refusal, the practitioner may conclude in an examination engagement that a qualified opinion is appropriate. When the practitioner is performing agreed-upon procedures and the practitioner's client is the responsible party, the responsible party's refusal to furnish all appropriate written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of the engagement sufficient to cause the practitioner to withdraw. When the practitioner's client is not the responsible party, the practitioner is not required to withdraw but should consider the effects of the responsible party's refusal on his or her report. Further, the practitioner should consider the effects of the responsible party's refusal on his or her ability to rely on other representations of the responsible party.

.70 When the practitioner's client is not the responsible party, the practitioner may also want to obtain written representations from the client. For example, when a practitioner's client has entered into a contract with a third party (responsible party) and the practitioner is engaged to examine the responsible party's compliance with that contract, the practitioner may want to obtain written representations from his or her client as to their knowledge of any noncompliance.

Other Information in a Client-Prepared Document Containing Management's Assertion About the Entity's Compliance With Specified Requirements or the Effectiveness of the Internal Control Over Compliance

.71 An entity may publish various documents that contain information (referred to as *other information*) in addition to the practitioner's attest report on either (a) the entity's compliance with specified requirements or (b) the effectiveness of the entity's internal control over compliance or written assertion thereon. Section 101.91–.94 provide guidance to the practitioner if the other information is contained in either of the following:

- a. Annual reports to holders of securities or beneficial interests, annual reports of organizations for charitable or philanthropic purposes distributed to the public, and annual reports filed with regulatory authorities under the 1934 Act
- b. Other documents to which the practitioner, at the client's request, devotes attention

Effective Date

.72 This section is effective when the subject matter or assertion is as of or for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001. Early application is permitted.

AT Section 701

Management's Discussion and Analysis

Source: SSAE No. 10.

Effective when management's discussion and analysis is for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001. Earlier application is permitted.

General

.01 This section sets forth attestation standards and provides guidance to a practitioner concerning the performance of an attest engagement¹ with respect to management's discussion and analysis (MD&A) prepared pursuant to the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), which are presented in annual reports to shareholders and in other documents.²

Applicability

.02 This section is applicable to the following levels of service when a practitioner is engaged by (a) a public³ entity that prepares MD&A in accordance with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC (see paragraph .04) or (b) a nonpublic entity that prepares an MD&A presentation and whose management provides a written assertion that the presentation has been prepared using the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC:⁴

- An examination of an MD&A presentation
- A review of an MD&A presentation for an annual period, an interim period, or a combined annual and interim period⁵

¹ Section 101, *Attest Engagements*, paragraph .01, defines an attest engagement as one in which a practitioner "is engaged to issue or does issue an examination, a review, or an agreed-upon procedures report on subject matter, or an assertion about the subject matter (hereafter referred to as the *assertion*), that is the responsibility of another party."

² Because this section provides guidance specific to attest engagements concerning MD&A presentations, a practitioner should not perform a compliance attestation engagement under section 601, *Compliance Attestation*, with respect to an MD&A presentation.

³ For purposes of this section, a public entity is any entity (a) whose securities trade in a public market either on a stock exchange (domestic or foreign) or in the over-the-counter (OTC) market, including securities quoted only locally or regionally, (b) that makes a filing with a regulatory agency in preparation for the sale of any class of its securities in a public market, or (c) a subsidiary, corporate joint venture, or other entity controlled by an entity covered by (a) or (b).

⁴ Such assertion may be made by any of the following:

- (a) Including a statement in the body of the MD&A presentation that it has been prepared using the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- (b) Providing a separate written assertion to accompany the MD&A presentation.
- (c) Providing a written assertion in a representation letter to the practitioner.

⁵ As discussed in paragraph .85*k*, a review report is not intended to be filed with the SEC as a report under the Securities Act of 1933 (the 1933 Act) or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the 1934 Act) and, accordingly, the review report should contain a statement of restrictions on the use of the report to specified parties if the entity is (a) a public entity or (b) a nonpublic entity that is making or has made an offering of securities and it appears that the securities may subsequently be registered or subject to a filing with the SEC or other regulatory agency.

A practitioner⁶ engaged to examine or review MD&A and report thereon should comply with the general, fieldwork, and reporting standards in section 101, *Attest Engagements*, and the specific standards set forth in this section. A practitioner engaged to perform agreed-upon procedures on MD&A should follow the guidance set forth in section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*.⁷

.03 This section does not—

- a. Change the auditor's responsibility in an audit of financial statements performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS).
- b. Apply to situations in which the practitioner is requested to provide management with recommendations to improve the MD&A rather than to provide assurance. A practitioner engaged to provide such nonattest services should refer to CS section 100, *Consulting Services: Definitions and Standards*.
- c. Apply to situations in which the practitioner is engaged to provide attest services with respect to an MD&A presentation that is prepared based on criteria other than the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. A practitioner engaged to perform an examination or a review based upon such criteria should refer to the guidance in section 101, or to section 201 if engaged to perform an agreed-upon procedures engagement.⁸

.04 The requirements for MD&A have changed periodically since the first requirement was adopted by the SEC in 1974. As of the date of issuance of this SSAE, the rules and regulations for MD&A adopted by the SEC are found in Item 303 of Regulation S-K, as interpreted by Financial Reporting Release (FRR) No. 36, *Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations; Certain Investment Company Disclosures* (Chapter 5 of the "Codification of Financial Reporting Policies"); Item 303 of Regulation S-B for small business issuers; and Item 9 of Form 20-F for Foreign Private Issuers.⁹ Item 303 of Regulation S-K, as interpreted by FRR No. 36, Item 303 of Regulation S-B for small business issuers, and Item 9 of Form 20-F for Foreign Private Issuers, provide the relevant rules and regulations adopted by

⁶ In this section, the terms *practitioner* or *accountant* generally refer to a person engaged to perform an attest service on MD&A. The term *accountant* may also refer to a person engaged to review financial statements. The term *auditor* refers to a person engaged to audit financial statements. As this section includes certain requirements for the practitioner to have audited or performed a Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 71 review of financial statements (AU section 722, *Interim Financial Information*), the terms *auditor*, *practitioner*, or *accountant* may refer, in this section, to the same person.

⁷ Practitioners should follow guidance in AU section 634, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties*, when requested to perform agreed-upon procedures on MD&A and report thereon in a letter for an underwriter.

⁸ The guidance in this section may be helpful when performing an engagement to provide attest services with respect to an MD&A presentation that is based on criteria other than the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. Such other criteria would have to be suitable and available as discussed in section 101.23–33.

⁹ The SEC staff from time to time issues guidance related to the SEC's adopted requirements; for example, Staff Accounting Bulletins (SABs), Staff Legal Bulletins, and speeches. Although such guidance may provide additional information with respect to the adopted requirements for MD&A, the practitioner should not be expected to attest to assertions on compliance with such guidance. The practitioner may find it helpful to also familiarize himself or herself with material contained on the SEC's Web site <http://www.sec.gov/> that provides further information with respect to the SEC's views concerning MD&A disclosures.

the SEC that meet the definition of suitable criteria in section 101.23–.32. The practitioner should consider whether the SEC has adopted additional rules and regulations with respect to MD&A subsequent to the issuance of this section.

Conditions for Engagement Performance

Examination

.05 The practitioner's objective in an engagement to examine MD&A is to express an opinion on the MD&A presentation taken as a whole by reporting whether—

- a. The presentation includes, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.¹⁰
- b. The historical financial amounts have been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements.¹¹
- c. The underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.¹²

.06 A practitioner may accept an engagement to examine MD&A of a public or nonpublic entity, provided the practitioner audits, in accordance with GAAS,¹³ the financial statements for at least the latest period to which the MD&A presentation relates and the financial statements for the other periods covered by the MD&A presentation have been audited by the practitioner or a predecessor auditor. A base knowledge of the entity and its operations gained through an audit of the historical financial statements and knowledge about the industry and the environment is necessary to provide the practitioner with sufficient knowledge to properly evaluate the results of the procedures performed in connection with the examination.

.07 If a predecessor auditor has audited the financial statements for a prior period covered by the MD&A presentation, the practitioner (the successor auditor) should also consider whether, under the particular circumstances, he or she can acquire sufficient knowledge of the business and of the entity's accounting and financial reporting practices for such period so that he or she would be able to—

- a. Identify types of potential material misstatements in MD&A and consider the likelihood of their occurrence.

¹⁰ The required elements as of the date of issuance of this SSAE include a discussion of the entity's financial condition, changes in financial condition, and results of operations, including a discussion of liquidity and capital resources.

¹¹ Whether historical financial amounts are accurately derived from the financial statements includes both amounts that are derived from the face of the financial statements (which includes the notes to the financial statements) and financial statement schedules and those that are derived from underlying records supporting elements, accounts, or items included in the financial statements.

¹² Whether the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein requires consideration of management's interpretation of the disclosure criteria for MD&A, management's determinations as to the relevancy of information to be included, and estimates and assumptions made by management that affect reported information.

¹³ Restrictions on the scope of the audit of the financial statements will not necessarily preclude the practitioner from accepting an engagement to examine MD&A. Note that the SEC will generally not accept an auditor's report that is modified for a scope limitation. The practitioner should consider the nature and magnitude of the scope limitation and the form of the auditor's report in assessing whether an examination of MD&A could be performed.

- b. Perform the procedures that will provide the practitioner with a basis for expressing an opinion as to whether the MD&A presentation includes, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- c. Perform the procedures that will provide the practitioner with a basis for expressing an opinion on the MD&A presentation with respect to whether the historical financial amounts have been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements for such period.
- d. Perform the procedures that will provide the practitioner with a basis for expressing an opinion as to whether the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

Refer to paragraphs .99 through .101 for guidance regarding the review of the predecessor auditor's working papers.

Review

.08 The objective of a review of MD&A is to report whether any information came to the practitioner's attention to cause him or her to believe that—

- a. The MD&A presentation does not include, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. The historical financial amounts included therein have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements.
- c. The underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

A review consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial, accounting, and operational matters. A review ordinarily does not contemplate (a) tests of accounting records through inspection, observation, or confirmation, (b) obtaining corroborating evidential matter in response to inquiries, or (c) the application of certain other procedures ordinarily performed during an examination of MD&A. A review may bring to the practitioner's attention significant matters affecting the MD&A, but it does not provide assurance that the practitioner will become aware of all significant matters that would be disclosed in an examination.

.09 A practitioner may accept an engagement to review the MD&A presentation of a public entity for an annual period provided the practitioner has audited, in accordance with GAAS, the financial statements for at least the latest annual period to which the MD&A presentation relates and the financial statements for the other periods covered by the MD&A presentation have been audited by the practitioner or a predecessor auditor.¹⁴ A base knowledge of the entity and its operations gained through an audit of the historical financial

¹⁴ As discussed in paragraph .85k, a review report is not intended to be filed with the SEC as a report under the 1933 Act or the 1934 Act and, accordingly, the review report should contain a statement of restrictions on the use of the report to specified parties if the entity is (a) a public entity or (b) a nonpublic entity that is making or has made an offering of securities and it appears that the securities may subsequently be registered or subject to a filing with the SEC or other regulatory agency.

statements and knowledge about the industry and the environment is necessary to provide the practitioner with sufficient knowledge to properly evaluate the results of the procedures performed in connection with the review.

.10 If a predecessor auditor has audited the financial statements for a prior period covered by the MD&A presentation, the practitioner should also consider whether, under the particular circumstances, he or she can acquire sufficient knowledge of the business and of the entity's accounting and financial reporting practices for such period so he or she would be able to—

- a. Identify types of potential material misstatements in the MD&A and consider the likelihood of their occurrence.
- b. Perform the procedures that will provide the practitioner with a basis for reporting whether any information has come to the practitioner's attention to cause him or her to believe any of the following.
 - (1) The MD&A presentation does not include, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
 - (2) The historical financial amounts included therein have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements for such period.
 - (3) The underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

.11 A practitioner may accept an engagement to review the MD&A presentation of a public entity for an interim period provided that both of the following conditions are met.

- a. The practitioner performs either (1) a review of the historical financial statements for the related comparative interim periods and issues a review report thereon in accordance with AU section 722, *Interim Financial Information*, or (2) an audit of the interim financial statements.
- b. The MD&A presentation for the most recent fiscal year has been or will be examined or reviewed by either the practitioner or a predecessor auditor.

.12 If a predecessor auditor examined or reviewed the MD&A presentation of a public entity for the most recent fiscal year, the practitioner should not accept an engagement to review the MD&A presentation for an interim period unless he or she can acquire sufficient knowledge of the business and of the entity's accounting and financial reporting practices for the interim period to perform the procedures described in paragraph .10.

.13 If a nonpublic entity chooses to prepare MD&A, the practitioner should not accept an engagement to perform a review of such MD&A for an annual period under this section unless both of the following conditions are met.

- a. The annual financial statements for the periods covered by the MD&A presentation have been or will be audited and the practitioner has audited or will audit the most recent year (refer to paragraph .07 if the financial statements for prior years were audited by a predecessor auditor).

- .14** A practitioner may accept an engagement to review the MD&A presentation of a nonpublic entity for an interim period provided that all of the following conditions are met.

- a. The practitioner performs one of the following:
 - (1) A review of the historical financial statements for the related interim periods under the Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services (SSARs) and issues a review report thereon
 - (2) A review of the condensed interim financial information for the related interim periods under AU section 722 and issues a review report thereon, and such interim financial information is accompanied by complete annual financial statements for the most recent fiscal year that have been audited
 - (3) An audit of the interim financial statements
- b. The MD&A presentation for the most recent fiscal year has been or will be examined or reviewed.
- c. Management will provide a written assertion stating that the presentation has been prepared using the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC as the criteria. (See paragraph .02.)

.15 In determining whether to accept an engagement, the practitioner should consider whether management (and others engaged by management to assist them, such as legal counsel) has the appropriate knowledge of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC to prepare MD&A.

.16 Management is responsible for the preparation of the entity's MD&A pursuant to the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. The preparation of MD&A in conformity with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC requires management to interpret the criteria, accurately derive the historical amounts from the entity's books and records, make determinations as to the relevancy of information to be included, and make estimates and assumptions that affect reported information.

AT \$701.14

comply, the practitioner should advise the client that he or she does not consent to either the use of his or her name or the reference to the practitioner, and he or she should consider what other actions might be appropriate.¹⁵

Obtaining an Understanding of the SEC Rules and Regulations and Management's Methodology for the Preparation of MD&A

.18 The practitioner should obtain an understanding of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC for MD&A. (Refer to paragraph .04.)

.19 The practitioner should inquire of management regarding the method of preparing MD&A, including matters such as the sources of the information, how the information is gathered, how management evaluates the types of factors having a material effect on financial condition (including liquidity and capital resources), results of operations, and cash flows, and whether there have been any changes in the procedures from the prior year.

Timing of Procedures

.20 Proper planning by the practitioner contributes to the effectiveness of the attest procedures in an examination or a review of MD&A. Performing some of the work in conjunction with the audit of the historical financial statements or the review of interim financial statements may permit the work to be carried out in a more efficient manner and to be completed at an earlier date. When performing an examination or a review of MD&A, the practitioner may consider the results of tests of controls, analytical procedures,¹⁶ and substantive tests performed in a financial statement audit or analytical procedures and inquiries made in a review of financial statements or interim financial information.

Materiality

.21 The practitioner should consider the concept of materiality in planning and performing the engagement. The objective of an examination or a review is to report on the MD&A presentation taken as a whole and not on the individual amounts and disclosures contained therein. In the context of an MD&A presentation, the concept of materiality encompasses both material omissions (for example, the omission of trends, events, and uncertainties that are currently known to management that are reasonably likely to have material effects on the entity's financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, or capital resources) and material misstatements in MD&A, both of which are referred to herein as a misstatement. Assessing the significance of a misstatement of some items in MD&A may be more dependent upon qualitative than

¹⁵ In considering what other actions, if any, may be appropriate in these circumstances, the practitioner may wish to consult his or her legal counsel.

¹⁶ AU section 329, *Analytical Procedures*, defines analytical procedures as "evaluations of financial information made by a study of plausible relationships among both financial and nonfinancial data. Analytical procedures range from simple comparisons to the use of complex models involving many relationships and elements of data." In applying analytical procedures to MD&A, the practitioner develops expectations of matters that would be discussed in MD&A by identifying and using plausible relationships that are reasonably expected to exist based on the practitioner's understanding of the client and of the industry in which the client operates, and the knowledge of relationships among the various financial elements gained through the audit of financial statements or review of interim financial information. Refer to AU section 329 for further discussion of analytical procedures.

quantitative considerations. Qualitative aspects of materiality relate to the relevance and reliability of the information presented (for example, qualitative aspects of materiality are considered in assessing whether the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures in the MD&A). Furthermore, quantitative information is often more meaningful when accompanied by qualitative disclosures. For example, quantitative information about market risk-sensitive instruments is more meaningful when accompanied by qualitative information about an entity's market risk exposures and how those exposures are managed. Materiality is also a concept that is judged in light of the expected range of reasonableness of the information; therefore, users should not expect prospective information (information about events that have not yet occurred) to be as precise as historical information.

.22 In expressing an opinion, or providing the limited assurance of a review engagement, on the presentation, the practitioner should consider the omission or misstatement of an individual assertion (see paragraph .34) to be material if the magnitude of the omission or misstatement—individually or when aggregated with other omissions or misstatements—is such that a reasonable person using the MD&A presentation would be influenced by the inclusion or correction of the individual assertion. The relative rather than absolute size of an omission or misstatement may determine whether it is material in a given situation.

Inclusion of Pro Forma Financial Information

.23 Management may include pro forma financial information with respect to a business combination or other transactions in MD&A. The practitioner should consider the guidance in section 401, *Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information*, paragraph .10, when performing procedures with respect to such information, even if management indicates in MD&A that certain information has been derived from unaudited financial statements. For example, in an examination of MD&A, the practitioner's procedures would ordinarily include obtaining an understanding of the underlying transaction or event, discussing with management their assumptions, obtaining sufficient evidence in support of the adjustments, and other procedures for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the MD&A presentation taken as a whole and not for expressing an opinion on (or providing the limited assurance of a review of) the pro forma financial information included therein under section 401.

Inclusion of External Information

.24 An entity may also include in its MD&A information external to the entity, such as the rating of its debt by certain rating agencies or comparisons with statistics from a trade association. Such external information should also be subjected to the practitioner's examination or review procedures. For example, in an examination, the practitioner might compare information concerning the statistics of a trade organization to a published source; however, the practitioner would not be expected to test the underlying support for the trade association's calculation of such statistics.

Inclusion of Forward-Looking Information

.25 An entity may include certain forward-looking disclosures in the MD&A presentation, including cautionary language concerning the achievability of the matters disclosed. Although any forward-looking disclosures that are

included in the MD&A presentation should be subjected to the practitioner's examination or review, such information is subjected to testing only for the purpose of expressing an opinion that the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein or providing the limited assurance of a review on the MD&A presentation taken as a whole. The practitioner may consider the guidance in section 301, *Financial Forecasts and Projections*, when performing procedures with respect to forward-looking information. The practitioner may also consider whether meaningful cautionary language has been included with the forward-looking information.

.26 Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933 (the 1933 Act) and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the 1934 Act) provide a safe harbor from liability in private litigation with respect to forward-looking statements that include or make reference to meaningful cautionary language. However, such sections also include exclusions from safe harbor protection in certain situations. Whether an entity's forward-looking statements and the practitioner's report thereon qualify for safe harbor protection is a legal matter.

Inclusion of Voluntary Information

.27 An entity may voluntarily include other information in the MD&A presentation that is not required by the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC for MD&A. When the entity includes in MD&A additional information required by other rules and regulations of the SEC (for example, Item 305 of Regulation S-K, *Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk*), the practitioner should also consider such other rules and regulations in subjecting such information to his or her examination or review procedures.¹⁷

Examination Engagement

.28 To express an opinion about whether (a) the presentation includes, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC, (b) the historical financial amounts have been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements, and (c) the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein, the practitioner seeks to obtain reasonable assurance by accumulating sufficient evidence in support of the disclosures and assumptions, thereby restricting attestation risk to an appropriately low level.

Attestation Risk

.29 In an engagement to examine MD&A, the practitioner plans and performs the examination to obtain reasonable assurance of detecting both intentional and unintentional misstatements that are material to the MD&A presentation taken as a whole. Absolute assurance is not attainable because of factors such as the need for judgment regarding the areas to be tested and the nature, timing, and extent of tests to be performed; the concept of selective testing of the data; and the inherent limitations of the controls applicable to the preparation of MD&A. The practitioner exercises professional judgment in

¹⁷ To the extent that the voluntary information includes forward-looking information, refer to paragraphs .25 and .26.

assessing the significant determinations made by management as to the relevancy of information to be included, and the estimates and assumptions that affect reported information. As a result of these factors, in the great majority of cases, the practitioner has to rely on evidence that is persuasive rather than convincing. Also, procedures may be ineffective for detecting an intentional misstatement that is concealed through collusion among client personnel and third parties or among management or employees of the client. Therefore, the subsequent discovery that a material misstatement exists in the MD&A does not, in and of itself, evidence (a) failure to obtain reasonable assurance; (b) inadequate planning, performance, or judgment on the part of the practitioner; (c) the absence of due professional care; or (d) a failure to comply with this section.

.30 Factors to be considered by the practitioner in planning an examination of MD&A include (a) the anticipated level of attestation risk related to assertions embodied in the MD&A presentation, (b) preliminary judgments about materiality for attest purposes, (c) the items within the MD&A presentation that are likely to require revision or adjustment, and (d) conditions that may require extension or modification of attest procedures. For purposes of an engagement to examine MD&A, the components of attestation risk are defined as follows.

- a. *Inherent risk* is the susceptibility of an assertion within MD&A to a material misstatement, assuming that there are no related controls. (See paragraphs .34 through .38.)
- b. *Control risk* is the risk that a material misstatement that could occur in an assertion within MD&A will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis by the entity's controls; some control risk will always exist because of the inherent limitations of any internal control.
- c. *Detection risk* is the risk that the practitioner will not detect a material misstatement that exists in an assertion within MD&A.

Inherent Risk

.31 The level of inherent risk varies with the nature of the assertion. For example, the inherent risk concerning financial information included in the MD&A presentation may be low, whereas the inherent risk concerning the completeness of the disclosure of the entity's risks or liquidity may be high.

Control Risk

.32 The practitioner should assess control risk as discussed in paragraphs .53 through .57. Assessing control risk contributes to the practitioner's evaluation of the risk that material misstatement in the MD&A exists. In the process of assessing control risk (together with assessing inherent risk), the practitioner may obtain evidential matter about the risk that such misstatement may exist. The practitioner uses this evidential matter as part of the reasonable basis for his or her opinion on the MD&A presentation taken as a whole.

Detection Risk

.33 In determining an acceptable level of detection risk, the practitioner assesses inherent risk and control risk, and considers the extent to which he or she seeks to restrict attestation risk. As assessed inherent risk or control risk decreases, the acceptable level of detection risk increases. Accordingly, the practitioner may alter the nature, timing, and extent of tests performed based on the assessments of inherent risk and control risk.

Nature of Assertions

.34 Assertions are representations by management that are embodied in the MD&A presentation. They can be either explicit or implicit and can be classified according to the following broad categories:

- a. Occurrence
- b. Consistency with the financial statements
- c. Completeness
- d. Presentation and disclosure

.35 Assertions about occurrence address whether reported transactions or events have occurred during a given period. Assertions about consistency with the financial statements address whether—

- a. Reported transactions, events, and explanations are consistent with the financial statements.
- b. Historical financial amounts have been accurately derived from the financial statements and related records.
- c. Nonfinancial data have been accurately derived from related records.

.36 Assertions about completeness address whether descriptions of transactions and events necessary to obtain an understanding of the entity's financial condition (including liquidity and capital resources), changes in financial condition, results of operations, and material commitments for capital resources are included in MD&A; and whether known events, transactions, conditions, trends, demands, commitments, or uncertainties that will result in or are reasonably likely to result in material changes to these items are appropriately described in the MD&A presentation.

.37 For example, if management asserts that the reason for an increase in revenues is a price increase in the current year, they are explicitly asserting that both an increase in revenues and a price increase have occurred in the current year, and implicitly asserting that any historical financial amounts included are consistent with the financial statements for such period. They are also implicitly asserting that the explanation for the increase in revenues is complete; that there are no other significant reasons for the increase in revenues.

.38 Assertions about presentation and disclosure address whether information included in the MD&A presentation is properly classified, described, and disclosed. For example, management asserts that any forward-looking information included in MD&A is properly classified as being based on management's present assessment and includes an appropriate description of the expected results. To further disclose the nature of such information, management may also include a statement that actual results in the future may differ materially from management's present assessment. (See paragraphs .25 and .26.)

.39 The auditor of the underlying financial statements is responsible for obtaining and evaluating evidential matter concerning the assertions embodied in the account balance or transaction class of the financial statements as discussed in AU section 326, *Evidential Matter*. Although procedures designed to achieve the practitioner's objective of forming an opinion on the MD&A presentation taken as a whole may test certain assertions embodied in the underlying financial statements, the practitioner is not expected to test the underlying financial statement assertions in an examination of MD&A. For

example, the practitioner is not expected to test the completeness of revenues or the existence of inventory when testing the assertions in MD&A concerning an increase in revenues or an increase in inventory levels; assurance related to completeness of revenues or for existence of inventory would be obtained as part of the audit. The practitioner is, however, responsible for testing the completeness of the explanation for the increase in revenues or the increase in inventory levels.

Performing an Examination Engagement

.40 The practitioner should exercise (a) due professional care in planning, performing, and evaluating the results of his or her examination procedures and (b) the proper degree of professional skepticism to obtain reasonable assurance that material misstatements will be detected.

.41 In an examination of MD&A, the practitioner should perform the following.

- a. Obtain an understanding of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC for MD&A and management's method of preparing MD&A. (See paragraphs .18 and .19.)
- b. Plan the engagement. (See paragraphs .42 through .48.)
- c. Consider relevant portions of the entity's internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A. (See paragraphs .49 through .58.)
- d. Obtain sufficient evidence, including testing completeness. (See paragraphs .59 through .64.)
- e. Consider the effect of events subsequent to the balance-sheet date. (See paragraphs .65 and .66.)
- f. Obtain written representations from management concerning its responsibility for MD&A, completeness of minutes, events subsequent to the balance-sheet date, and other matters about which the practitioner believes written representations are appropriate. (See paragraphs .110 through .112.)
- g. Form an opinion about whether the MD&A presentation includes, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC, whether the historical financial amounts included therein have been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements, and whether the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained in the MD&A. (See paragraph .67.)

Planning the Engagement

General Considerations

.42 Planning an engagement to examine MD&A involves developing an overall strategy for the expected scope and performance of the engagement. When developing an overall strategy for the engagement, the practitioner should consider factors such as the following:

- Matters affecting the industry in which the entity operates, such as financial reporting practices, economic conditions, laws and regulations, and technological changes
- Knowledge of the entity's internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A obtained during the audit of the financial statements and the extent of recent changes, if any
- Matters relating to the entity's business, including its organization, operating characteristics, capital structure, and distribution methods
- The types of relevant information that management reports to external analysts (for example, press releases and presentations to lenders and rating agencies, if any, concerning past and future performance)
- How the entity analyzes actual performance compared to budgets and the types of information provided in documents submitted to the board of directors for purposes of the entity's day-to-day operations and long-range planning
- The extent of management's knowledge of and experience with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC for MD&A
- If the entity is a nonpublic entity, the intended use of the MD&A presentation
- Preliminary judgments about (a) materiality, (b) inherent risk at the individual assertion level, and (c) factors (for example, matters identified during the audit or review of the historical financial statements) relating to significant deficiencies in internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A (See paragraph .58.)
- The fraud risk factors or other conditions identified during the audit of the most recent annual financial statements and the practitioner's response to such risk factors
- The type and extent of evidential matter supporting management's assertions and disclosures in the MD&A presentation
- The nature of complex or subjective matters potentially material to the MD&A presentation that may require special skill or knowledge and whether such matters may require using the work of a specialist to obtain sufficient evidential matter (See paragraph .47.)
- The presence of an internal audit function (See paragraph .48.)

.43 In planning an engagement when MD&A has not previously been examined, the practitioner should consider the degree to which the entity has information available for such prior periods and the continuity of the entity's personnel and their ability to respond to inquiries with respect to such periods. In addition, the practitioner should obtain an understanding of the entity's internal control in prior years applicable to the preparation of MD&A.

Consideration of Audit Results

.44 The practitioner should also consider the results of the audits of the financial statements for the periods covered by the MD&A presentation on the examination engagement, such as matters relating to the following:

- The availability and condition of the entity's records
- The nature and magnitude of audit adjustments

- Likely misstatements¹⁸ that were not corrected in the financial statements that may affect MD&A disclosures (for example, misclassifications between financial statement line items)

.45 The practitioner should also consider the possible impact on the scope of the examination engagement of any modification or contemplated modification of the auditor's report, including matters addressed in explanatory language. For example, if the auditor has modified the auditor's report to include a going-concern uncertainty explanatory paragraph, the practitioner would consider such a matter in assessing attestation risk.

Multiple Components

.46 In an engagement to examine MD&A, if the entity has operations in several components (for example, locations, branches, subsidiaries, or programs), the practitioner should determine the components to which procedures should be applied. In making such a determination and in selecting the components to be tested, the practitioner should consider factors such as the following:

- The relative importance of each component to the applicable MD&A disclosure
- The degree of centralization of records
- The effectiveness of controls, particularly those that affect management's direct control over the exercise of authority delegated to others and its ability to supervise activities at various locations effectively
- The nature and extent of operations conducted at the various components
- The similarity of operations and internal control for different components

The practitioner should consider whether the audit base of the components is consistent with the components that are disclosed in MD&A. Accordingly, it may be desirable for the practitioner to coordinate the audit work with the components that will be disclosed.

Using the Work of a Specialist

.47 In some engagements to examine MD&A, the nature of complex or subjective matters potentially material to the MD&A presentation may require specialized skill or knowledge in a particular field other than accounting or auditing. For example, the entity may include information concerning plant production capacity, which would ordinarily be determined by an engineer. In such cases, the practitioner may use the work of a specialist and should consider the relevant guidance in AU section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*. AU section 311, *Planning and Supervision*, provides relevant guidance for situations in which a specialist employed by the practitioner's firm participates in the examination.

Internal Audit Function

.48 Another factor the practitioner should consider when planning the engagement is whether the entity has an internal audit function and the extent

¹⁸ Refer to AU section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, paragraphs .34 through .40.

to which internal auditors are involved in directly testing the MD&A presentation, in monitoring the entity's internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A, or in testing the underlying records supporting disclosures in the MD&A. A practitioner should consider the guidance in AU section 322, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*, when addressing the competence and objectivity of internal auditors; the nature, timing, and extent of work to be performed; and other related matters.

Consideration of Internal Control Applicable to the Preparation of MD&A

.49 The practitioner should obtain an understanding of the entity's internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A sufficient to plan the engagement and to assess control risk. Generally, controls that are relevant to an examination pertain to the entity's objective of preparing MD&A in conformity with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC, and may include controls within the control environment, risk assessment, control activities, information and communication, and monitoring components.

.50 The controls relating to operations and compliance objectives may be relevant to an examination if they pertain to data the practitioner evaluates or uses in applying examination procedures. For example, controls over the gathering of information, which are different from financial statement controls, and controls relating to nonfinancial data that are included in the MD&A presentation, may be relevant to an examination engagement.

.51 In planning the examination, knowledge of such controls should be used to identify types of potential misstatement (including types of potential material omissions), to consider factors that affect the risk of material misstatement and to design appropriate tests.

.52 A practitioner generally obtains an understanding of the design of the entity's internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A by making inquiries of appropriate management, supervisory, and staff personnel; by inspection of the entity's documents; and by observation of the entity's relevant activities, including controls over matters discussed, nonfinancial data included, and management evaluation of the reasonableness of information included. The nature and extent of procedures a practitioner performs vary from entity to entity and are influenced by factors such as the entity's complexity, the length of time that the entity has prepared MD&A pursuant to the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC, the practitioner's knowledge of the entity's controls obtained in audits and previous professional engagements, and judgments about materiality.

.53 After obtaining an understanding of the entity's internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A, the practitioner assesses control risk for the assertions embodied in the MD&A presentation. (Refer to paragraphs .34 through .39.) The practitioner may assess control risk at the maximum level (the greatest probability that a material misstatement that could occur in an assertion will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis by an entity's controls) because the practitioner believes controls are unlikely to pertain to an assertion, are unlikely to be effective, or because evaluating their effectiveness would be inefficient. Alternatively, the practitioner may obtain evidential matter about the effectiveness of both the design and operation of a control that supports a lower assessed level of control risk. Such evidential matter may be

obtained from tests of controls planned and performed concurrently with obtaining the understanding of the internal control or from procedures performed to obtain the understanding that were not specifically planned as tests of controls.

.54 After obtaining the understanding and assessing control risk, the practitioner may desire to seek a further reduction in the assessed level of control risk for certain assertions. In such cases, the practitioner considers whether evidential matter sufficient to support a further reduction is likely to be available and whether performing additional tests of controls to obtain such evidential matter would be efficient.

.55 When seeking to assess control risk below the maximum for controls over financial and nonfinancial data, the practitioner should perform tests of controls to obtain evidence to support the assessed level of control risk. For example, the practitioner may perform tests of controls directed toward the effectiveness of the design or operation of internal control over the accumulation of the number of units sold for a manufacturing company, average interest rates earned and paid for a financial institution, or average net sales per square foot for a retail entity.

.56 The practitioner uses the knowledge provided by the understanding of internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A and the assessed level of control risk in determining the nature, timing, and extent of substantive tests for the MD&A assertions.

.57 The practitioner should document the understanding of the internal control components obtained to plan the examination and the assessment of control risk. The form and extent of this documentation is influenced by the size and complexity of the entity, as well as the nature of the entity's controls applicable to the preparation of MD&A.

.58 During the course of an engagement to examine MD&A, the practitioner may become aware of significant deficiencies in the design or operation of internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A that could adversely affect the entity's ability to prepare MD&A in accordance with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. The practitioner should consider the implications of such control deficiencies on his or her ability to rely on management's explanations and on comparisons to summary accounting records. A practitioner's responsibility to communicate these control deficiencies in an examination of MD&A is similar to the auditor's responsibility described in AU section 325, *Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit*, and AU section 380, *Communication With Audit Committees*.

Obtaining Sufficient Evidence

.59 The practitioner should apply procedures to obtain reasonable assurance of detecting material misstatements. In an audit of historical financial statements, the practitioner will have applied audit procedures to some of the information included in the MD&A. However, because the objective of those audit procedures is to have a reasonable basis for expressing an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole rather than on the MD&A, certain additional examination procedures should be performed as discussed in paragraphs .60 through .64. Determining these procedures and evaluating the sufficiency of the evidence obtained are matters of professional judgment.

.60 The practitioner ordinarily should apply the following procedures.

- a. Read the MD&A and compare the content for consistency with the audited financial statements; compare financial amounts to the audited financial statements or related accounting records and analyses; recompute the increases, decreases, and percentages disclosed.
- b. Compare nonfinancial amounts to the audited financial statements, if applicable, or to other records. (Refer to paragraphs .62 through .64.)
- c. Consider whether the explanations in MD&A are consistent with the information obtained during the audit; investigate further those explanations that cannot be substantiated by information in the audit working papers through inquiry (including inquiry of officers and other executives having responsibility for operational areas) and inspection of client records.
- d. Examine internally generated documents (for example, variance analyses, sales analyses, wage cost analyses, sales or service pricing sheets, and business plans or programs) and externally generated documents (for example, correspondence, contracts, or loan agreements) in support of the existence, occurrence, or expected occurrence of events, transactions, conditions, trends, demands, commitments, and uncertainties disclosed in the MD&A.
- e. Obtain available prospective financial information (for example, budgets; sales forecasts; forecasts of labor, overhead, and materials costs; capital expenditure requests; and financial forecasts and projections) and compare such information to forward-looking MD&A disclosures. Inquire of management as to the procedures used to prepare the prospective financial information. Evaluate whether the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity provide a reasonable basis for the MD&A disclosures of events, transactions, conditions, trends, demands, commitments, or uncertainties.¹⁹
- f. Consider obtaining available prospective financial information relating to prior periods and comparing actual results with forecasted and projected amounts.
- g. Make inquiries of officers and other executives having responsibility for operational areas (such as sales, marketing, and production) and financial and accounting matters, as to their plans and expectations for the future that could affect the entity's liquidity and capital resources.
- h. Consider obtaining external information concerning industry trends, inflation, and changing prices and comparing the related MD&A disclosures to such information.
- i. Compare the information in MD&A with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC and consider whether the presentation includes the required elements of such rules and regulations.

¹⁹ Refer to paragraph .26 for a discussion concerning the safe harbor rules for forward-looking statements.

- j. Read the minutes of meetings to date of the board of directors and other significant committees to identify matters that may affect MD&A; consider whether such matters are appropriately addressed in MD&A.
- k. Inquire of officers as to the entity's prior experience with the SEC and the extent of comments received upon review of documents by the SEC; read correspondence between the entity and the SEC with respect to such review, if any.
- l. Obtain public communications (for example, press releases and quarterly reports) and the related supporting documentation dealing with historical and future results; consider whether MD&A is consistent with such communications.
- m. Consider obtaining other types of publicly available information (for example, analyst reports and news articles); compare the MD&A presentation with such information.

Testing Completeness

.61 The practitioner should design procedures to test the presentation for completeness, including tests of the completeness of explanations that relate to historical disclosures as discussed in paragraphs .36 and .37. The practitioner should also consider whether the MD&A discloses matters that could significantly impact future financial condition and results of operations of the entity by considering information that he or she obtained through the following:

- a. Audit of the financial statements
- b. Inquiries of the entity's officers and other executives directed to current events, conditions, economic changes, commitments and uncertainties, within both the entity and its industry
- c. Other information obtained through procedures such as those listed in paragraphs .60, .65, and .66

As discussed in paragraph .31, the inherent risk concerning the completeness of disclosures may be high; if it is, the practitioner may extend the procedures (for example, by making additional inquiries of management or by examining additional internally generated documents).

Nonfinancial Data

.62 Management may include nonfinancial data (such as units produced; the number of units sold, locations, or customers; plant utilization; or square footage) in the MD&A. The practitioner should consider whether the definitions used by management for such nonfinancial data are reasonable for the particular disclosure in the MD&A and whether there are suitable criteria (for example, industry standards with respect to square footage for retail operations), as discussed in section 101.23–.32.

.63 In some situations, the nonfinancial data or the controls over the nonfinancial data may have been tested by the practitioner in conjunction with the financial statement audit; however, the practitioner's consideration of the nature of the procedures to apply to nonfinancial data in an examination of MD&A is based on the concept of materiality with respect to the MD&A presentation. The practitioner should consider whether industry standards

exist for the nonfinancial data or whether there are different methods of measurement that may be used, and, if such methods could result in significantly different results, whether the method of measurement selected by management is reasonable and consistent between periods covered by the MD&A presentation. For example, the number of customers reported by management could vary depending on whether management defines a customer as a subsidiary or "ship to" location of a company rather than the company itself.

.64 In testing nonfinancial data included in the MD&A, the practitioner may seek to assess control risk below the maximum for controls over such nonfinancial data, as discussed in paragraph .55. The practitioner weighs the increase in effort of the examination associated with the additional tests of controls that is necessary to obtain evidential matter against the resulting decrease in examination effort associated with the reduced substantive tests. For those nonfinancial assertions for which the practitioner performs additional tests of controls, the practitioner determines the assessed level of control risk that the results of those tests will support. This assessed level of control risk is used in determining the appropriate detection risk to accept for those nonfinancial assertions and, accordingly, in determining the nature, timing, and extent of substantive tests for such assertions.

Consideration of the Effect of Events Subsequent to the Balance-Sheet Date

.65 As there is an expectation by the SEC that MD&A considers events through a date at or near the filing date,²⁰ the practitioner should consider information about events²¹ that comes to his or her attention after the end of the period addressed by MD&A and prior to the issuance of his or her report that may have a material effect on the entity's financial condition (including liquidity and capital resources), changes in financial condition, results of operations, and material commitments for capital resources. Events or matters that should be disclosed in MD&A include those that—²²

- Are reasonably expected to have a material favorable or unfavorable impact on net sales or revenues or income from continuing operations.
- Are reasonably likely to result in the entity's liquidity increasing or decreasing in any material way.
- Will have a material effect on the entity's capital resources.
- Would cause reported financial information not to be necessarily indicative of future operating results or of future financial condition.

The practitioner should consider whether events identified during the examination of the MD&A presentation or the audit of the related financial statements require adjustment to or disclosure in the MD&A presentation. When MD&A will be included or incorporated by reference in a 1933 Act document that is filed with the SEC, the practitioner's procedures should extend up to the

²⁰ A registration statement under the 1933 Act speaks as of its effective date.

²¹ Such events are only referred to as *subsequent events* in relation to an MD&A presentation if they occur after the MD&A presentation has been issued. The annual MD&A presentation ordinarily would not be updated for subsequent events if an MD&A presentation for a subsequent interim period has been issued or the event has been reported through a filing on Form 8-K.

²² The practitioner should refer to the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC for other examples of events that should be disclosed.

filing date or as close to it as is reasonable and practicable in the circumstances.²³ If a public entity's MD&A presentation is to be included only in a filing under the 1934 Act (for example, Forms 10-K or 10-KSB), the practitioner's responsibility to consider subsequent events does not extend beyond the date of the report on MD&A. Paragraphs .94 through .98 provide guidance when the practitioner is engaged subsequent to the filing of the MD&A presentation.

.66 In an examination of MD&A, the practitioner's fieldwork ordinarily extends beyond the date of the auditor's report on the related financial statements.²⁴ Accordingly, the practitioner generally should—

- a. Read available minutes of meetings of stockholders, the board of directors, and other appropriate committees; as to meetings for which minutes are not available, inquire about matters dealt with at such meetings.
- b. Read the latest available interim financial statements for periods subsequent to the date of the auditor's report, compare them with the financial statements for the periods covered by the MD&A, and inquire of and discuss with officers and other executives having responsibility for operational, financial, and accounting matters (limited where appropriate to major locations) matters such as the following:
 - Whether interim financial statements have been prepared on the same basis as the audited financial statements
 - Whether there were any significant changes in the entity's operations, liquidity, or capital resources in the subsequent period
 - The current status of items in the financial statements for which the MD&A has been prepared that were accounted for on the basis of tentative, preliminary, or inconclusive data
 - Whether any unusual adjustments were made during the period from the balance-sheet date to the date of inquiry
- c. Make inquiries of members of senior management as to the current status of matters concerning litigation, claims, and assessments identified during the audit of the financial statements and of any new matters or unfavorable developments. Consider obtaining updated legal letters from legal counsel.²⁵
- d. Consider whether there have been any changes in economic conditions or in the industry that could have a significant effect on the entity.

²³ Additionally, if the practitioner's report on MD&A is included or incorporated by reference in a 1933 Act document, the practitioner should extend his or her procedures with respect to subsequent events from the date of his or her report on MD&A up to the effective date or as close thereto as is reasonable and practicable in the circumstances.

²⁴ Undertaking an engagement to examine MD&A does not extend the auditor's responsibility to update the subsequent events review procedures for the financial statements beyond the date of the auditor's report. However, see AU section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*. Also, see AU section 711, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*, as to an auditor's responsibility when his or her report is included in a registration statement filed under the 1933 Act.

²⁵ See AU section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments*, for guidance concerning obtaining legal letters.

- e. Obtain written representations from appropriate officials as to whether any events occurred subsequent to the latest balance-sheet date that would require disclosure in the MD&A. (See paragraphs .110 through .112.)
- f. Make such additional inquiries or perform such other procedures as considered necessary and appropriate to address questions that arise in carrying out the foregoing procedures, inquiries, and discussions.

Forming an Opinion

.67 The practitioner should consider the concept of materiality discussed in paragraphs .21 and .22, and the impact of any modification of the auditor's report on the historical financial statements in forming an opinion on the examination of MD&A, including the practitioner's ability to evaluate the results of inquiries and other procedures.

Reporting

.68 In order for the practitioner to issue a report on an examination of MD&A, the financial statements for the periods covered by the MD&A presentation and the related auditor's report(s) should accompany the MD&A presentation (or, with respect to a public entity, be incorporated in the document containing the MD&A by reference to information filed with a regulatory agency). In addition, if the entity is a nonpublic entity, one of the following conditions should be met.

- a. A statement should be included in the body of the MD&A presentation that it has been prepared using the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- b. A separate written assertion should accompany the MD&A presentation or such assertion should be included in a representation letter obtained from the entity.

.69 The practitioner's report on an examination of MD&A should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. An identification of the MD&A presentation, including the period covered
- c. A statement that management is responsible for the preparation of the MD&A pursuant to the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC, and a statement that the practitioner's responsibility is to express an opinion on the presentation based on his or her examination
- d. A reference to the auditor's report on the related financial statements, and if the report was other than a standard report, the substantive reasons therefor
- e. A statement that the examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the AICPA and a description of the scope of an examination of MD&A
- f. A statement that the practitioner believes the examination provides a reasonable basis for his or her opinion

- g.* A paragraph stating that—
- (1) The preparation of MD&A requires management to interpret the criteria, make determinations as to the relevancy of information to be included, and make estimates and assumptions that affect reported information
 - (2) Actual results in the future may differ materially from management's present assessment of information regarding the estimated future impact of transactions and events that have occurred or are expected to occur, expected sources of liquidity and capital resources, operating trends, commitments, and uncertainties
- h.* If the entity is a nonpublic entity, a statement that, although the entity is not subject to the rules and regulations of the SEC, the MD&A presentation is intended to be a presentation in accordance with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC
- i.* The practitioner's opinion on whether—
- (1) The presentation includes, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC
 - (2) The historical financial amounts have been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements
 - (3) The underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein
- j.* The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- k.* The date of the examination report

Appendix A [paragraph .114], "Examination Reports," includes a standard examination report. (See Example 1.)

Dating

.70 The practitioner's report on the examination of MD&A should be dated as of the completion of the practitioner's examination procedures. That date should not precede the date of the auditor's report on the latest historical financial statements covered by the MD&A.

Report Modifications

.71 The practitioner should modify the standard report described in paragraph .69, if any of the following conditions exist.

- The presentation excludes a material required element under the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. (See paragraph .72.)
- The historical financial amounts have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements. (See paragraph .72.)
- The underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions used by management do not provide the entity with a reasonable basis for the disclosure in the MD&A. (See paragraph .72.)
- There is a restriction on the scope of the engagement. (See paragraph .73.)

- The practitioner decides to refer to the report of another practitioner as the basis in part for his or her report. (See paragraph .74.)
- The practitioner is engaged to examine the MD&A presentation after it has been filed with the SEC or other regulatory agency. (See paragraphs .94 through .98.)

.72 The practitioner should express a qualified or an adverse opinion if (a) the MD&A presentation excludes a material required element, (b) historical financial amounts have not been accurately derived in all material respects, or (c) the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures; for example, if there is a lack of consistency between management's method of measuring nonfinancial data between periods covered by the MD&A presentation. The basis for such opinion should be stated in the practitioner's report. Appendix A [paragraph .114] includes several examples of such modifications. (See Example 2.) Also refer to paragraph .107 for required communications with the audit committee.

.73 If the practitioner is unable to perform the procedures he or she considers necessary in the circumstances, the practitioner should modify the report or withdraw from the engagement. If the practitioner modifies the report, he or she should describe the limitation on the scope of the examination in an explanatory paragraph and qualify his or her opinion, or disclaim an opinion. However, limitations on the ability of the practitioner to perform necessary procedures could also arise because of the lack of adequate support for a significant representation in the MD&A. That circumstance may result in a conclusion that the unsupported representation constitutes a material misstatement of fact and, accordingly, the practitioner may qualify his or her opinion or express an adverse opinion, as described in paragraph .72.

Reference to Report of Another Practitioner

.74 If another practitioner examined the MD&A presentation of a component (refer to paragraph .46), the practitioner may decide to make reference to such report of the other practitioner as a basis for his or her opinion on the consolidated MD&A presentation. The practitioner should disclose this fact in the introductory paragraph of the report and should refer to the report of the other practitioner in expressing an opinion on the consolidated MD&A presentation. These references indicate a division of responsibility for performance of the examination. Appendix A [paragraph .114] provides an example of a report for such a situation. (See Example 3.) Refer to paragraph .105 for guidance when the other practitioner does not issue a report.

Emphasis of a Matter

.75 In a number of circumstances, the practitioner may wish to emphasize a matter regarding the MD&A presentation. For example, he or she may wish to emphasize that the entity has included information beyond the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. Such explanatory comments should be presented in a separate paragraph of the practitioner's report.

Review Engagement

.76 The objective of a review engagement, including a review of MD&A for an interim period, is to accumulate sufficient evidence to provide the practitioner with a basis for reporting whether any information came to the

practitioner's attention to cause him or her to believe that (a) the MD&A presentation does not include, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC, (b) the historical financial amounts included therein have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements, or (c) the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein. MD&A for an interim period may be a freestanding presentation or it may be combined with the MD&A presentation for the most recent fiscal year. Procedures for conducting a review of MD&A generally are limited to inquiries and analytical procedures, rather than also including search and verification procedures, concerning factors that have a material effect on financial condition, including liquidity and capital resources, results of operations, and cash flows. In a review engagement, the practitioner should—

- a. Obtain an understanding of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC for MD&A and management's method of preparing MD&A. (See paragraphs .18 and .19.)
- b. Plan the engagement. (See paragraph .77.)
- c. Consider relevant portions of the entity's internal control applicable to the preparation of the MD&A. (See paragraph .78.)
- d. Apply analytical procedures and make inquiries of management and others. (See paragraphs .79 and .80.)
- e. Consider the effect of events subsequent to the balance-sheet date. The practitioner's consideration of such events in a review of MD&A is similar to the practitioner's consideration in an examination. (See paragraphs .65 and .66.)
- f. Obtain written representations from management concerning its responsibility for MD&A, completeness of minutes, events subsequent to the balance-sheet date, and other matters about which the practitioner believes written representations are appropriate. (See paragraph .110.)
- g. Form a conclusion as to whether any information came to the practitioner's attention that causes him or her to believe any of the following.
 - (1) The MD&A presentation does not include, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
 - (2) The historical financial amounts included therein have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements.
 - (3) The underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

Planning the Engagement

.77 Planning an engagement to review MD&A involves developing an overall strategy for the analytical procedures and inquiries to be performed. When developing an overall strategy for the review engagement, the practitioner should consider factors such as the following:

- Matters affecting the industry in which the entity operates, such as financial reporting practices, economic conditions, laws and regulations, and technological changes
- Matters relating to the entity's business, including its organization, operating characteristics, capital structure, and distribution methods
- The types of relevant information that management reports to external analysts (for example, press releases or presentations to lenders and rating agencies concerning past and future performance)
- The extent of management's knowledge of and experience with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC for MD&A
- If the entity is a nonpublic entity, the intended use of the MD&A presentation
- Matters identified during the audit or review of the historical financial statements relating to MD&A reporting, including knowledge of the entity's internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A and the extent of recent changes, if any
- Matters identified during prior engagements to examine or review MD&A
- Preliminary judgments about materiality
- The nature of complex or subjective matters potentially material to the MD&A that may require special skill or knowledge
- The presence of an internal audit function and the extent to which internal auditors are involved in directly testing the MD&A presentation or underlying records

Consideration of Internal Control Applicable to the Preparation of MD&A

.78 To perform a review of MD&A, the practitioner needs to have sufficient knowledge of the entity's internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A to—

- Identify types of potential misstatements in MD&A, including types of material omissions, and consider the likelihood of their occurrence.
- Select the inquiries and analytical procedures that will provide a basis for reporting whether any information causes the practitioner to believe the following.
 - The MD&A presentation does not include, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC, or the historical financial amounts included therein have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements.
 - The underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

Application of Analytical Procedures and Inquiries

.79 The practitioner ordinarily would not obtain corroborating evidential matter of management's responses to the practitioner's inquiries in performing

a review of MD&A. The practitioner should, however, consider the consistency of management's responses in light of the results of other inquiries and the application of analytical procedures. The practitioner ordinarily should apply the following analytical procedures and inquiries.

- a. Read the MD&A presentation and compare the content for consistency with the audited financial statements (or reviewed interim financial information if MD&A includes interim information); compare financial amounts to the audited or reviewed financial statements or related accounting records and analyses; recompute the increases, decreases, and percentages disclosed.
- b. Compare nonfinancial amounts to the audited (or reviewed) financial statements, if applicable, or to other records. (Refer to paragraph .80.)
- c. Consider whether the explanations in MD&A are consistent with the information obtained during the audit or the review of interim financial information; make further inquiries of officers and other executives having responsibility for operational areas as necessary.
- d. Obtain available prospective financial information (for example, budgets; sales forecasts; forecasts of labor, overhead, and materials costs; capital expenditure requests; and financial forecasts and projections) and compare such information to forward-looking MD&A disclosures. Inquire of management as to the procedures used to prepare the prospective financial information. Consider whether information came to the practitioner's attention that causes him or her to believe that the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures of trends, demands, commitments, events, or uncertainties.²⁶
- e. Make inquiries of officers and other executives having responsibility for operational areas (such as sales, marketing, and production) and financial and accounting matters, as to any plans and expectations for the future that could affect the entity's liquidity and capital resources.
- f. Compare the information in MD&A with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC and consider whether the presentation includes the required elements of such rules and regulations.
- g. Read the minutes of meetings to date of the board of directors and other significant committees to identify actions that may affect MD&A; consider whether such matters are appropriately addressed in the MD&A presentation.
- h. Inquire of officers as to the entity's prior experience with the SEC and the extent of comments received upon review of documents by the SEC; read correspondence between the entity and the SEC with respect to such review, if any.
- i. Inquire of management regarding the nature of public communications (for example, press releases and quarterly reports) dealing with historical and future results and consider whether the MD&A presentation is consistent with such communications.

²⁶ Refer to paragraph .26 for a discussion concerning the safe harbor rules for forward-looking statements.

.80 If nonfinancial data are included in the MD&A presentation, the practitioner should inquire as to the nature of the records from which such information was derived and observe the existence of such records, but need not perform other tests of such records beyond analytical procedures and inquiries of individuals responsible for maintaining them. The practitioner should consider whether such nonfinancial data are relevant to users of the MD&A presentation and whether such data are clearly defined in the MD&A presentation. The practitioner should make inquiries regarding whether the definition of the nonfinancial data was consistently applied during the periods reported.

.81 However, if the practitioner becomes aware that the presentation may be incomplete or contain inaccuracies, or is otherwise unsatisfactory, the practitioner should perform the additional procedures he or she deems necessary to achieve the limited assurance contemplated by a review engagement.

Reporting

.82 In order for the practitioner to issue a report on a review of MD&A for an annual period, the financial statements for the periods covered by the MD&A presentation and the related auditor's report(s) should accompany the MD&A presentation (or with respect to a public entity be incorporated in the document containing the MD&A by reference to information filed with a regulatory agency).

.83 If the MD&A presentation relates to an interim period and the entity is a public entity, the financial statements for the interim periods covered by the MD&A presentation and the related accountant's review report(s) should accompany the MD&A presentation, or be incorporated in the document containing the MD&A by reference to information filed with a regulatory agency. The comparative financial statements for the most recent annual period and the related MD&A should accompany the MD&A presentation for the interim period, or be incorporated by reference to information filed with a regulatory agency. Generally, the requirement for inclusion of the annual financial statements and related MD&A is satisfied by a public entity that has met its reporting responsibility for filing its annual financial statements and MD&A in its annual report on Form 10-K.

.84 If the MD&A presentation relates to an interim period and the entity is a nonpublic entity, the following documents should accompany the interim MD&A presentation in order for the practitioner to issue a review report:

- a. The MD&A presentation for the most recent fiscal year and related accountant's examination or review report(s)
- b. The financial statements for the periods covered by the respective MD&A presentations (most recent fiscal year and interim periods and the related auditor's report(s) and accountant's review report(s))

In addition, one of the following conditions should be met.

- A statement should be included in the body of the MD&A presentation that it has been prepared using the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC.
- A separate written assertion should accompany the MD&A presentation or such assertion should be included in a representation letter obtained from the entity.

.85 The practitioner's report on a review of MD&A should include the following:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. An identification of the MD&A presentation, including the period covered
- c. A statement that management is responsible for the preparation of the MD&A pursuant to the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC
- d. A reference to the auditor's report on the related financial statements, and, if the report was other than a standard report, the substantive reasons therefor
- e. A statement that the review was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the AICPA
- f. A description of the procedures for a review of MD&A
- g. A statement that a review of MD&A is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is an expression of opinion regarding the MD&A presentation, and accordingly, no such opinion is expressed
- h. A paragraph stating that—
 - (1) The preparation of MD&A requires management to interpret the criteria, make determinations as to the relevancy of information to be included, and make estimates and assumptions that affect reported information
 - (2) Actual results in the future may differ materially from management's present assessment of information regarding the estimated future impact of transactions and events that have occurred or are expected to occur, expected sources of liquidity and capital resources, operating trends, commitments, and uncertainties
- i. If the entity is a nonpublic entity, a statement that although the entity is not subject to the rules and regulations of the SEC, the MD&A presentation is intended to be a presentation in accordance with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC
- j. A statement about whether any information came to the practitioner's attention that caused him or her to believe that—
 - (1) The MD&A presentation does not include, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC
 - (2) The historical financial amounts included therein have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements
 - (3) The underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein
- k. If the entity is a public entity as defined in paragraph .02, or a nonpublic entity that is making or has made an offering of securities and it appears that the securities may subsequently be registered or

subject to a filing with the SEC or other regulatory agency (for example, certain offerings of securities under Rule 144A of the 1933 Act that purport to conform to Regulation S-K), a statement of restrictions on the use of the report to specified parties, because it is not intended to be filed with the SEC as a report under the 1933 Act or the 1934 Act.

- l.* The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- m.* The date of the review report

Appendix B [paragraph .115], "Review Reports," provides examples of a standard review report for an annual and interim period.

Dating

.86 The practitioner's report on the review of MD&A should be dated as of the completion of the practitioner's review procedures. That date should not precede the date of the accountant's report on the latest historical financial statements covered by the MD&A.

Report Modifications

.87 The practitioner should modify the standard review report described in paragraph .86 if any of the following conditions exist.

- The presentation excludes a material required element of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. (See paragraph .89.)
- The historical financial amounts have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the entity's financial statements. (See paragraph .89.)
- The underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions used by management do not provide the entity with a reasonable basis for the disclosures in the MD&A. (See paragraph .89.)
- The practitioner decides to refer to the report of another practitioner as the basis, in part, for his or her report. (See paragraph .90.)
- The practitioner is engaged to review the MD&A presentation after it has been filed with the SEC or other regulatory agency. (See paragraphs .94 through .98.)

.88 When the practitioner is unable to perform the inquiry and analytical procedures he or she considers necessary to achieve the limited assurance provided by a review, or the client does not provide the practitioner with a representation letter, the review will be incomplete. A review that is incomplete is not an adequate basis for issuing a review report. If the practitioner is unable to complete a review because of a scope limitation, the practitioner should consider the implications of that limitation with respect to possible misstatements of the MD&A presentation. In those circumstances, the practitioner should also refer to paragraphs .107 through .109 for guidance concerning communications with the audit committee.

.89 If the practitioner becomes aware that the MD&A is materially misstated, the practitioner should modify the review report to describe the nature of the misstatement. Appendix B [paragraph .115] contains an example of such a modification of the accountant's report. (See Example 3.)

.90 If another practitioner reviewed or examined the MD&A for a material component, the practitioner may decide to make reference to such report of the other practitioner in reporting on the consolidated MD&A presentation. Such reference indicates a division of responsibility for performance of the review.

Emphasis of a Matter

.91 In some circumstances, the practitioner may wish to emphasize a matter regarding the MD&A presentation. For example, he or she may wish to emphasize that the entity has included information beyond the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. Such explanatory comments should be presented in a separate paragraph of the practitioner's report.

Combined Examination and Review Report on MD&A

.92 A practitioner may be engaged both to examine an MD&A presentation as of the most recent fiscal year-end and to review a separate MD&A presentation for a subsequent interim period. If the examination and review are completed at the same time, a combined report may be issued. Appendix C [paragraph .116], "Combined Reports," contains an example of a combined report on an examination of an annual MD&A presentation and the review of a separate MD&A presentation for an interim period. (See Example 1.)

.93 If an entity prepares a combined MD&A presentation for annual and interim periods in which there is a discussion of liquidity and capital resources only as of the most recent interim period but not as of the most recent annual period, the practitioner is limited to performing the highest level of service that is provided with respect to the historical financial statements for any of the periods covered by the MD&A presentation. For example, if the annual financial statements have been audited and the interim financial statements have been reviewed, the practitioner may be engaged to perform a review of the combined MD&A presentation. Appendix C [paragraph .116] contains an example of a review report on a combined MD&A presentation for annual and interim periods. (See Example 2.)

When Practitioner Is Engaged Subsequent to the Filing of MD&A

.94 Management's responsibility for updating an MD&A presentation for events occurring subsequent to the issuance of MD&A depends on whether the entity is a public or nonpublic entity. A public entity is required to report significant subsequent events in a Form 8-K or Form 10-Q, or in a registration statement; therefore, a public company would ordinarily not modify its MD&A presentation once it is filed with the SEC (or other regulatory agency).

.95 Therefore, if the practitioner is engaged to examine (or review) an MD&A presentation of a public entity that has already been filed with the SEC (or other regulatory agency), the practitioner should consider whether material subsequent events are appropriately disclosed in a Form 8-K or 10-Q, or a registration statement that includes or incorporates by reference such MD&A presentation. Refer to paragraphs .65 and .66 for guidance concerning consideration of events up to the filing date when the practitioner's report on MD&A will be included (or incorporated by reference) in a 1933 Act document filed with the SEC that will require a consent.

.96 If subsequent events of a public entity are appropriately disclosed in a Form 8-K or 10-Q, or in a registration statement, or if there have been no material subsequent events, the practitioner should add the following paragraph to his or her examination or review report following the opinion or concluding paragraph, respectively.

The accompanying Management's Discussion and Analysis does not consider events that have occurred subsequent to Month XX, 20X6, the date as of which it was filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

.97 If there has been a material subsequent event that has not been disclosed in a manner described in paragraph .95 and if the practitioner determines that it is appropriate to issue a report even though the MD&A presentation has not been updated for such material subsequent event (for example, because the filing of the Form 10-Q that will disclose such events has not yet occurred), the practitioner should express a qualified or an adverse opinion (or appropriately modify the review report) on the MD&A presentation. As discussed in paragraph .107, if such material subsequent event is not appropriately disclosed, the practitioner should evaluate (a) whether to resign from the engagement related to the MD&A presentation and (b) whether to remain as the entity's auditor or stand for re-election to audit the entity's financial statements.

.98 Because a nonpublic entity is not subject to the filing requirements of the SEC, an MD&A presentation of a nonpublic entity should be updated for material subsequent events through the date of the practitioner's report.

When a Predecessor Auditor Has Audited Prior Period Financial Statements

.99 If a predecessor auditor has audited the financial statements for a prior period covered by the MD&A, the need by the practitioner reporting on the MD&A for an understanding of the business and the entity's accounting and financial reporting practices for such prior period, as discussed in paragraph .07, is not diminished and the practitioner should apply the appropriate procedures. In applying the appropriate procedures, the practitioner may consider reviewing the predecessor auditor's working papers with respect to audits of financial statements and examinations or reviews of MD&A presentations for such prior periods.

.100 Information that may be obtained from the audit or attest working papers of the predecessor auditor will not provide a sufficient basis in itself for the practitioner to express an opinion with respect to the MD&A disclosures for such prior periods. If the practitioner has audited the current year, the results of such audit may be considered in planning and performing the examination of MD&A and may provide evidential matter that is useful in performing the examination, including with respect to matters disclosed for prior periods. For example, an increase in salaries expense may be the result of an acquisition in the last half of the prior year. Auditing procedures applied to payroll expense in the current year that validate the increase as a result of the acquisition may provide evidential matter with respect to the increase in salaries expense in the prior year attributed to the acquisition.

.101 In addition to the procedures described in paragraphs .49 through .66, the practitioner will need to make inquiries of the predecessor auditor and management as to audit adjustments proposed by the predecessor auditor that were not recorded in the financial statements.

Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors

.102 If the practitioner is appointed as the successor auditor, he or she follows the guidance AU section 315, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*, in considering whether or not to accept the engagement. If, at the time of the appointment as auditor, the practitioner is also being engaged to examine or review MD&A, the practitioner should also make specific inquiries of the predecessor auditor regarding MD&A.

.103 The practitioner's examination may be facilitated by (a) making specific inquiries of the predecessor regarding matters that the successor believes may affect the conduct of the examination (or review), such as areas that required an inordinate amount of time or problems that arose from the condition of the records, and (b) if the predecessor previously examined or reviewed MD&A, reviewing the predecessor's working papers for the predecessor's examination or review engagement.

.104 If, subsequent to his or her engagement to audit the financial statements, the practitioner is requested to examine MD&A, the practitioner should request the client to authorize the predecessor auditor to allow a review of the predecessor's audit working papers related to the financial statement periods included in the MD&A presentation. Although the practitioner may previously have had access to the predecessor auditor's working papers in connection with the successor's audit of the financial statements, ordinarily the predecessor auditor should permit the practitioner to review those audit working papers relating to matters that are disclosed or that would likely be disclosed in MD&A.

Another Auditor Audits a Significant Part of the Financial Statements

.105 When another auditor or auditors audit a significant part of the financial statements, the practitioner²⁷ may request that such other auditor or auditors perform procedures with respect to the MD&A or the practitioner may perform the procedures directly with respect to such component(s).²⁸ Unless the other auditor issues an examination or review report on a separate MD&A presentation of such component(s) (see paragraph .74), the principal practitioner should not make reference to the work of the other practitioner on MD&A in his or her report on MD&A.²⁹ Accordingly, if the practitioner has requested such other auditor to perform procedures, the principal practitioner should perform those procedures that he or she considers necessary to take responsibility for the work of the other auditor. Such procedures may include one or more of the following:

- a. Visiting the other auditor and discussing the procedures followed and the results thereof.
- b. Reviewing the working papers of the other auditor with respect to the component.

²⁷ The practitioner serving as principal auditor is presumed to have an audit base for purposes of examining or reviewing the consolidated MD&A presentation.

²⁸ The practitioner should consider whether he or she has sufficient industry expertise with respect to a subsidiary audited by another auditor to take sole responsibility for the consolidated MD&A presentation.

²⁹ This does not preclude the practitioner from referring to the other auditor's report on the financial statements in his or her report on MD&A.

- c. Participating in discussions with the component's management regarding matters that may affect the preparation of MD&A.
- d. Making supplemental tests with respect to such component.

The determination of the extent of the procedures to be applied by the principal practitioner rests with the principal practitioner alone in the exercise of his or her professional judgment and in no way constitutes a reflection on the adequacy of the other auditor's work. Because the principal practitioner in this case assumes responsibility for his or her opinion on the MD&A presentation without making reference to the procedures performed by the other auditor, the practitioner's judgment should govern as to the extent of procedures to be undertaken.

Responsibility for Other Information in Documents Containing MD&A

.106 A client may publish annual reports containing MD&A and other documents to which the practitioner, at the client's request, devotes attention. See section 101.91–.94 for pertinent guidance in these circumstances. See Appendix D [paragraph .117], “Comparison of Activities Performed Under SAS No. 8, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, Versus a Review or an Examination Attest Engagement.” The guidance in AU section 711, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*, is pertinent when the practitioner's report on MD&A is included in a registration statement, proxy statement, or periodic report filed under the federal securities statutes.

Communications With the Audit Committee

.107 If the practitioner concludes that the MD&A presentation contains material inconsistencies with other information included in the document containing the MD&A presentation or with the historical financial statements,³⁰ material omissions, or material misstatements of fact, and management refuses to take corrective action, the practitioner should inform the audit committee or others with equivalent authority and responsibility. If the MD&A is not revised, the practitioner should evaluate (a) whether to resign from the engagement related to the MD&A, and (b) whether to remain as the entity's auditor or stand for re-election to audit the entity's financial statements. The practitioner may wish to consult with his or her attorney when making these evaluations.

.108 If the practitioner is engaged after the MD&A presentation has been filed with the SEC (or other regulatory agency), and becomes aware that such MD&A presentation on file with the SEC (or other regulatory agency) has not been revised for a matter for which the practitioner has or would qualify his or her opinion, the practitioner should discuss such matter with the audit committee and request that the MD&A presentation be revised. If the audit committee fails to take appropriate action, the practitioner should consider whether to resign as the independent auditor of the company. The practitioner may consider the guidance concerning communication with the audit committee and other considerations in AU section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*, paragraphs .17, .22, and .23).

³⁰ See AU section 550, *Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, for guidance on the impact of material inconsistencies or material misstatements of fact on the auditor's report on the related historical financial statements.

.109 If, as a result of performing an examination or a review of MD&A, the practitioner has determined that there is evidence that fraud may exist, that matter should be brought to the attention of an appropriate level of management. This is generally appropriate even if the matter might be considered clearly inconsequential. If the matter relates to the audited financial statements, the practitioner should consider the guidance in AU section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, concerning communication responsibilities, and the effect on the auditor's report on the financial statements.

Obtaining Written Representations

.110 In an examination or a review engagement, the practitioner should obtain written representations from management.³¹ The specific written representations obtained by the practitioner will depend on the circumstances of the engagement and the nature of the MD&A presentation. Specific representations should relate to the following matters:

- a. Management's acknowledgment of its responsibility for the preparation of MD&A and management's assertion that the MD&A presentation has been prepared in accordance with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC for MD&A³²
- b. A statement that the historical financial amounts included in MD&A have been accurately derived from the entity's financial statements
- c. Management's belief that the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the entity provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained in the MD&A
- d. A statement that management has made available all significant documentation related to compliance with SEC rules and regulations for MD&A
- e. Completeness and availability of all minutes of meetings of stockholders, directors, and committees of directors
- f. For a public entity, whether any communications from the SEC were received concerning noncompliance with or deficiencies in MD&A reporting practices
- g. Whether any events occurred subsequent to the latest balance-sheet date that would require disclosure in the MD&A
- h. If forward-looking information is included, a statement that—
 - The forward-looking information is based on management's best estimate of expected events and operations, and is consistent with budgets, forecasts, or operating plans prepared for such periods

³¹ AU section 333, *Management Representations*, paragraph .09, provides guidance on the date as of which management should sign such a representation letter and on which member(s) of management should sign it. AU section 711.10 provides guidance concerning obtaining updated representations from management in connection with accountant's reports included or incorporated by reference in filings under the 1933 Act. (See paragraph .65.)

³² Management should specify the SEC rules (for example, Item 303 of Regulation S-K, Item 303 of Regulation S-B, or Item 9 of Form 20-F). For nonpublic entities, the practitioner also obtains a written assertion that the presentation has been prepared using the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. (See paragraph .02.)

- The accounting principles expected to be used for the forward-looking information are consistent with the principles used in preparing the historical financial statements
 - Management has provided the latest version of such budgets, forecasts, or operating plans, and has informed the practitioner of any anticipated changes or modifications to such information that could affect the disclosures contained in the MD&A presentation
- i. If voluntary information is included that is subject to the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC (for example, information required by Item 305, *Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk*), a statement that such voluntary information has been prepared in accordance with the related rules and regulations adopted by the SEC for such information
- j. If pro forma information is included, a statement that—
- Management is responsible for the assumptions used in determining the pro forma adjustments
 - Management believes that the assumptions provide a reasonable basis for presenting all the significant effects directly attributable to the transaction or event, that the related pro forma adjustments give appropriate effect to those assumptions, and that the pro forma column reflects the proper application of those adjustments to the historical financial statements
 - Management believes that the significant effects directly attributable to the transaction or event are appropriately disclosed in the pro forma financial information

.111 In an examination, management's refusal to furnish written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of the engagement sufficient to preclude an unqualified opinion and is ordinarily sufficient to cause a practitioner to disclaim an opinion or withdraw from the examination engagement. However, based on the nature of the representations not obtained or the circumstances of the refusal, the practitioner may conclude that a qualified opinion is appropriate in an examination engagement. In a review engagement, management's refusal to furnish written representations constitutes a limitation of the scope of the engagement sufficient to require withdrawal from the review engagement. Further, the practitioner should consider the effects of the refusal on his or her ability to rely on other management representations.

.112 If the practitioner is precluded from performing procedures he or she considers necessary in the circumstances with respect to a matter that is material to the MD&A presentation, even though management has given representations concerning the matter, there is a limitation on the scope of the engagement, and the practitioner should qualify his or her opinion or disclaim an opinion in an examination engagement, or withdraw from a review engagement.

Effective Date

.113 This section is effective when management's discussion and analysis is for a period ending on or after June 1, 2001. Early application is permitted.

Appendix A

Examination Reports

Example 1: Standard Examination Report

1. The following is an illustration of a standard examination report:

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined XYZ Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis taken as a whole, included [*incorporated by reference*] in the Company's [*insert description of registration statement or document*]. Management is responsible for the preparation of the Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis pursuant to the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the presentation based on our examination. We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5, and in our report dated [Month] XX, 20X6, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements.³³

[Scope paragraph]

Our examination of Management's Discussion and Analysis was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the historical amounts and disclosures in the presentation. An examination also includes assessing the significant determinations made by management as to the relevancy of information to be included and the estimates and assumptions that affect reported information. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

*[Explanatory paragraph]*³⁴

³³ If prior financial statements were audited by other auditors, this sentence would be replaced by the following:

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company as of and for the year ended December 31, 20X5, and in our report dated [Month] XX, 20X6, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements. The financial statements of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X4, and for each of the years in the two-year period then ended were audited by other auditors, whose report dated [Month] XX, 20X5, expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements.

If the practitioner's opinion on the financial statements is based on the report of other auditors, this sentence would be replaced by the following:

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5, and in our report dated [Month] XX, 20X6, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements based on our audits and the report of other auditors.

Refer to Example 3 if the practitioner's opinion on MD&A is based on the report of another practitioner on a component of the entity.

³⁴ The following sentence should be added to the beginning of the explanatory paragraph if the entity is a nonpublic entity, as discussed in paragraph .69h:

Although XYZ Company is not subject to the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission, the accompanying Management's Discussion and Analysis is intended to be a presentation in accordance with the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission.

The preparation of Management's Discussion and Analysis requires management to interpret the criteria, make determinations as to the relevancy of information to be included, and make estimates and assumptions that affect reported information. Management's Discussion and Analysis includes information regarding the estimated future impact of transactions and events that have occurred or are expected to occur, expected sources of liquidity and capital resources, operating trends, commitments, and uncertainties. Actual results in the future may differ materially from management's present assessment of this information because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected.

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, the Company's presentation of Management's Discussion and Analysis includes, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission; the historical financial amounts included therein have been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the Company's financial statements; and the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the Company provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 2: Modifications to Examination Report for a Qualified Opinion

2. An example of a modification of an examination report for a qualified opinion due to a material omission described in paragraph .72 follows.

[Additional explanatory paragraph preceding the opinion paragraph]

Based on information furnished to us by management, we believe that the Company has excluded a discussion of the significant capital outlay required for its plans to expand into the telecommunications industry and the possible effects on the Company's financial condition, liquidity, and capital resources.

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, except for the omission of the matter described in the preceding paragraph, the Company's presentation of Management's Discussion and Analysis includes, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission; the historical financial amounts included therein have been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the Company's financial statements; and the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the Company provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

3. An example of a modification of an examination report for a qualified opinion when overly subjective assertions are included in MD&A follows.

[Additional explanatory paragraph preceding the opinion paragraph]

Based on information furnished to us by management, we believe that the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions used by management do not provide the Company with a reasonable basis for the disclosure concerning *[describe]* in the Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis.

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, except for the disclosure regarding *[describe]* discussed in the preceding paragraph, the Company's presentation of Management's Discussion and Analysis includes, in all material respects, the required elements of the

rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission; the historical financial amounts included therein have been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the Company's financial statements; and the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the Company provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

Example 3: Examination Report With Reference to the Report of Another Practitioner

4. The following is an illustration of an examination report indicating a division of responsibility with another practitioner, who has examined a separate MD&A presentation of a wholly-owned subsidiary, when the practitioner reporting is serving as the principal auditor of the related consolidated financial statements.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraphs]

We have examined XYZ Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis taken as a whole, included [*incorporated by reference*] in the Company's [*insert description of registration statement or document*]. Management is responsible for the preparation of the Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis pursuant to the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the presentation based on our examination. We did not examine Management's Discussion and Analysis of ABC Corporation, a wholly-owned subsidiary, included in ABC Corporation's [*insert description of registration statement or document*]. Such Management's Discussion and Analysis was examined by other accountants, whose report has been furnished to us, and our opinion, insofar as it relates to information included for ABC Corporation, is based solely on the report of the other accountants.

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the consolidated financial statements of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5, and in our report dated [*Month*] XX, 20X6, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements based on our audits and the report of other auditors.

[Scope paragraph]

Our examination of Management's Discussion and Analysis was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the historical amounts and disclosures in the presentation. An examination also includes assessing the significant determinations made by management as to the relevancy of information to be included and the estimates and assumptions that affect reported information. We believe that our examination and the report of other accountants provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Explanatory paragraph]³⁵

³⁵ The following sentence should be added to the beginning of the explanatory paragraph if the entity is a nonpublic entity, as discussed in paragraph .69h.

Although XYZ Company is not subject to the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission, the accompanying Management's Discussion and Analysis is intended to be a presentation in accordance with the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission.

The preparation of Management's Discussion and Analysis requires management to interpret the criteria, make determinations as to the relevancy of information to be included, and make estimates and assumptions that affect reported information. Management's Discussion and Analysis includes information regarding the estimated future impact of transactions and events that have occurred or are expected to occur, expected sources of liquidity and capital resources, operating trends, commitments, and uncertainties. Actual results in the future may differ materially from management's present assessment of this information because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected.

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, based on our examination and the report of other accountants, the Company's presentation of Management's Discussion and Analysis included *[incorporated by reference]* in the Company's *[insert description of registration statement or document]* includes, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission; the historical financial amounts included therein have been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the Company's financial statements; and the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the Company provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

[Signature]

[Date]

Appendix B

Review Reports

Example 1: Standard Review Report on an Annual MD&A Presentation

1. The following is an illustration of a standard review report on an annual MD&A presentation.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have reviewed XYZ Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis taken as a whole, included *[incorporated by reference]* in the Company's *[insert description of registration statement or document]*. Management is responsible for the preparation of the Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis pursuant to the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission. We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5, and in our report dated *[Month]* XX, 20X6, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements.

[Scope paragraph]

We conducted our review of Management's Discussion and Analysis in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review of Management's Discussion and Analysis consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial, accounting, and operational matters. It is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on the presentation. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

[Explanatory paragraph]³⁶

The preparation of Management's Discussion and Analysis requires management to interpret the criteria, make determinations as to the relevancy of information to be included, and make estimates and assumptions that affect reported information. Management's Discussion and Analysis includes information regarding the estimated future impact of transactions and events that have occurred or are expected to occur, expected sources of liquidity and capital resources, operating trends, commitments, and uncertainties. Actual results in the future may differ materially from management's present assessment of this information because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected.

[Concluding paragraph]

³⁶ The following sentence should be added to the beginning of the explanatory paragraph if the entity is a nonpublic entity, as discussed in paragraph .85*i*.
Although XYZ Company is not subject to the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission, the accompanying Management's Discussion and Analysis is intended to be a presentation in accordance with the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission.

Based on our review, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that the Company's presentation of Management's Discussion and Analysis does not include, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission, that the historical financial amounts included therein have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the Company's financial statements, or that the underlying information, determinations, estimates and assumptions of the Company do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

*[Restricted use paragraph]*³⁷

This report is intended solely for the information and use of *[list or refer to specified parties]* and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than the specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 2: Standard Review Report on an Interim MD&A Presentation

2. The following is an illustration of a standard review report on an MD&A presentation for an interim period.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have reviewed XYZ Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis taken as a whole included in the Company's *[insert description of registration statement or document]*. Management is responsible for the preparation of the Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis pursuant to the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission. We have reviewed, in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, the interim financial information of XYZ Company as of June 30, 20X6 and 20X5, and for the three-month and six-month periods then ended, and have issued our report thereon dated July XX, 20X6.

[Scope paragraph]

We conducted our review of Management's Discussion and Analysis in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review of Management's Discussion and Analysis consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial, accounting, and operational matters. It is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on the presentation. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

*[Explanatory paragraph]*³⁸

³⁷ This paragraph may be omitted for certain nonpublic entities. (Refer to paragraph .85k.)

³⁸ The following sentence should be added to the beginning of the explanatory paragraph if the entity is a nonpublic entity, as discussed in paragraph .85i.

Although XYZ Company is not subject to the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission, the accompanying Management's Discussion and Analysis is intended to be a presentation in accordance with the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission.

The preparation of Management's Discussion and Analysis requires management to interpret the criteria, make determinations as to the relevancy of information to be included, and make estimates and assumptions that affect reported information. Management's Discussion and Analysis includes information regarding the estimated future impact of transactions and events that have occurred or are expected to occur, expected sources of liquidity and capital resources, operating trends, commitments, and uncertainties. Actual results in the future may differ materially from management's present assessment of this information because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected.

[Concluding paragraph]

Based on our review, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that the Company's presentation of Management's Discussion and Analysis does not include, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission, that the historical financial amounts included therein have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the Company's financial statements, or that the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the Company do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

*[Restricted use paragraph]*³⁹

This report is intended solely for the information and use of *[list or refer to specified parties]* and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than the specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 3: Modification to Review Report for a Material Misstatement

3. An example of a modification of the accountant's report when MD&A is materially misstated, as discussed in paragraph .89, follows.

[Additional explanatory paragraph preceding the concluding paragraph]

Based on information furnished to us by management, we believe that the Company has excluded a discussion of the significant capital outlay required for its plans to expand into the telecommunications industry and the possible effects on the Company's financial condition, liquidity, and capital resources.

[Concluding paragraph]

Based on our review, with the exception of the matter described in the preceding paragraph, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that the Company's presentation of Management's Discussion and Analysis does not include, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission, that the historical financial amounts included therein have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the Company's financial statements, or that the underlying information, determinations, estimates and assumptions of the Company do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

³⁹ This paragraph may be omitted for certain nonpublic entities. (Refer to paragraph .85k.)

Appendix C

Combined Reports

Example 1: Combined Examination and Review Report on MD&A

1. An example of a combined report on an examination of an annual MD&A presentation and the review of MD&A for an interim period discussed in paragraph .92 follows.

Independent Accountant's Report

[Introductory paragraph]

We have examined XYZ Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis taken as a whole for the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5, included *[incorporated by reference]* in the Company's *[insert description of registration statement or document]*. Management is responsible for the preparation of the Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis pursuant to the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the annual presentation based on our examination. We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 19X5, and in our report dated *[Month]* XX, 20X6, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements.

[Scope paragraph]

Our examination of Management's Discussion and Analysis was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the historical amounts and disclosures in the presentation. An examination also includes assessing the significant determinations made by management as to the relevancy of information to be included and the estimates and assumptions that affect reported information. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

[Explanatory paragraph]⁴⁰

The preparation of Management's Discussion and Analysis requires management to interpret the criteria, make determinations as to the relevancy of information to be included, and make estimates and assumptions that affect reported information. Management's Discussion and Analysis includes information regarding the estimated future impact of transactions and events that have occurred or are expected to occur, expected sources of liquidity and capital resources, operating trends, commitments, and uncertainties. Actual results in

⁴⁰ The following sentence should be added to the beginning of the explanatory paragraph if the entity is a nonpublic entity, as discussed in paragraph .69h.

Although XYZ Company is not subject to the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission, the accompanying Management's Discussion and Analysis is intended to be a presentation in accordance with the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission.

the future may differ materially from management's present assessment of this information because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected.

[Opinion paragraph]

In our opinion, the Company's presentation of Management's Discussion and Analysis for the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5, includes, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission; the historical financial amounts included therein have been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the Company's financial statements; and the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the Company provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

[Paragraphs on interims]

We have also reviewed XYZ Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis taken as a whole for the six-month period ended June 30, 20X6 included *[incorporated by reference]* in the Company's *[insert description of registration statement or document]*. We have reviewed, in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, the interim financial information of XYZ Company as of June 30, 20X6 and 20X5, and for the six-month periods then ended, and have issued our report thereon dated July XX, 20X6.

We conducted our review of Management's Discussion and Analysis in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review of Management's Discussion and Analysis consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial, accounting, and operational matters. It is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on the presentation. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

Based on our review, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that the Company's presentation of Management's Discussion and Analysis for the six-month period ended June 30, 20X6, does not include, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission, that the historical financial amounts included therein have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the Company's unaudited interim financial statements, or that the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the Company do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

*[Restricted use paragraph]*⁴¹

This report is intended solely for the information and use of *[list or refer to specified parties]* and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than the specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

Example 2: Review Report on a Combined Annual and Interim MD&A Presentation

2. An example of a review report on a combined MD&A presentation for annual and interim periods follows.

⁴¹ This paragraph may be omitted for certain nonpublic entities. (Refer to paragraph .85k.)

Independent Accountant's Report*[Introductory paragraph]*

We have reviewed XYZ Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis taken as a whole included *[incorporated by reference]* in the Company's *[insert description of registration statement or document]*. Management is responsible for the preparation of the Company's Management's Discussion and Analysis pursuant to the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission. We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the financial statements of XYZ Company as of December 31, 20X5 and 20X4, and for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 20X5, and in our report dated *[Month]* XX, 20X6, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements. We have reviewed, in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, the interim financial information of XYZ Company as of June 30, 20X6 and 20X5, and for the six-month periods then ended, and have issued our report thereon dated July XX, 20X6.

[Scope paragraph]

We conducted our review of Management's Discussion and Analysis in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. A review of Management's Discussion and Analysis consists principally of applying analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial, accounting, and operational matters. It is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on the presentation. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

[Explanatory paragraph]⁴²

The preparation of Management's Discussion and Analysis requires management to interpret the criteria, make determinations as to the relevancy of information to be included, and make estimates and assumptions that affect reported information. Management's Discussion and Analysis includes information regarding the estimated future impact of transactions and events that have occurred or are expected to occur, expected sources of liquidity and capital resources, operating trends, commitments, and uncertainties. Actual results in the future may differ materially from management's present assessment of this information because events and circumstances frequently do not occur as expected.

[Concluding paragraph]

Based on our review, nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that the Company's presentation of Management's Discussion and Analysis does not include, in all material respects, the required elements of the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission, that the historical financial amounts included therein have not been accurately derived, in all material respects, from the Company's financial statements, or that the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions of the Company do not provide a reasonable basis for the disclosures contained therein.

[Restricted use paragraph]⁴³

⁴² The following sentence should be added to the beginning of the explanatory paragraph if the entity is a nonpublic entity, as discussed in paragraph .69*h*.

Although XYZ Company is not subject to the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission, the accompanying Management's Discussion and Analysis is intended to be a presentation in accordance with the rules and regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission.

⁴³ This paragraph may be omitted for certain nonpublic entities. (Refer to paragraph .85*k*.)

This report is intended solely for the information and use of [*list or refer to specified parties*] and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than the specified parties.

[*Signature*]

[*Date*]

Appendix D

Comparison of Activities Performed Under SAS No. 8, Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements [AU section 550], Versus a Review or an Examination Attest Engagement

<i>Activities</i>	<i>SAS No. 8</i>	<i>Review</i>	<i>Examination</i>
Obtain an understanding of SEC rules and regulations and management's methodology for the preparation of Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A).	Not applicable (N/A)—Auditor is only required to read the information in the MD&A and consider whether such information, or the manner of its presentation, is materially inconsistent with information, or the manner of its presentation, appearing in the financial statements.	Obtain an understanding of the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC for MD&A. Inquire of management regarding the method of preparing MD&A.	Same as for a review.
Plan the engagement.	N/A	Develop an overall strategy for the analytical procedures and inquiries to be performed to provide negative assurance.	Develop an overall strategy for the expected scope and performance of the engagement to obtain reasonable assurance to express an opinion.
Consider internal control.	N/A	Consider relevant portions of the entity's internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A to identify the types of potential misstatements and to select the inquiries and analytical procedures; no testing of controls would be performed.	Obtain an understanding of internal control applicable to the preparation of MD&A sufficient to plan the engagement and to assess control risk; controls may be tested by performing inquiries of client personnel, inspection of documents, and observation of relevant activities.

(continued)

* Refer to AU section 550, Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements.

Activities	SAS No. 8	Review	Examination
Test assertions.	N/A	<p>Apply the following analytical procedures and make inquiries of management and others; no corroborating evidential matter is obtained:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Read the MD&A and compare the content for consistency with the financial statements; compare financial amounts to the financial statements or related accounting records and analyses; recompute increases, decreases and percentages disclosed.• Compare nonfinancial amounts to the financial statements or other records.• Consider whether MD&A explanations are consistent with information obtained during the audit or review of financial statements; make further inquiries, as necessary. (Note: Such additional inquiries may result in a decision to perform other procedures or detail tests.)	<p>Apply the following analytical and corroborative procedures to obtain reasonable assurance of detecting material misstatements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Read the MD&A and compare the content for consistency with the financial statements; compare financial amounts to the financial statements or related accounting records and analyses; recompute increases, decreases and percentages disclosed.• Compare nonfinancial amounts to the financial statements or other records; perform tests on other records based on the concept of materiality.• Consider whether explanations are consistent with the information obtained during the audit of financial statements; investigate further explanations that cannot be substantiated by information in the audit working papers through inquiry and inspection of client records.• Examine internally and externally generated documents in support of the existence, occurrence, or expected occurrence of events, transactions, conditions, trends, demands, commitments, and uncertainties disclosed in MD&A.

<p>Test assertions. (continued)</p>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Compare information in MD&A with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. • Obtain and read available prospective financial information; inquire of management as to the procedures used to prepare such information; consider whether information came to the practitioner's attention that causes him or her to believe that the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions do not provide a reasonable basis for the MD&A disclosures. • Obtain public communications and minutes of meetings for comparison with disclosures in MD&A. • Make inquiries of the officers or executives with responsibility for operational areas and financial and accounting matters as to their plans and expectations for the future. • Inquire as to prior experience with the SEC and the extent of comments received; read correspondence. • Consider whether there are any additional matters that should be disclosed in the MD&A based on the results of the preceding procedures and knowledge obtained during the audit or review of the financial statements. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Compare information in MD&A with the rules and regulations adopted by the SEC. • Obtain and read available prospective financial information; inquire of management as to the procedures used to prepare such information; evaluate whether the underlying information, determinations, estimates, and assumptions provide a reasonable basis for the MD&A disclosures. • Obtain public communications and minutes of meetings; consider obtaining other types of publicly available information for comparison with disclosures in MD&A. • Make inquiries of the officers or executives with responsibility for operational areas and financial and accounting matters as to their plans and expectations for the future. • Inquire as to prior experience with the SEC and the extent of comments received; read correspondence. • Test completeness by considering the results of the preceding procedures and knowledge obtained during the audit of the financial statements, and whether such matters are appropriately disclosed in the MD&A; extend procedures if the inherent risk relating to completeness of disclosures is high.
---	--	---	---

(continued)

Activities	SAS No. 8	Review	Examination
Consider the effect of events subsequent to the balance-sheet date.	N/A	Yes	Yes
Obtain written representations from management.	N/A	Yes	Yes
Form a conclusion and report.	<p>The auditor has no reporting responsibility with respect to MD&A unless the auditor concludes that there is a material inconsistency in the MD&A that has not been eliminated. In such a situation, the auditor may add an explanatory paragraph concerning the inconsistency to the auditor's report on the financial statements or withhold the use of the report in the document.</p> <p>If, while reading the MD&A, the auditor becomes aware of information that is believed to be a material misstatement of fact, the auditor should discuss such matter with the client.</p>	<p>Form a conclusion based on the results of the preceding procedures and report in the form of negative assurance.</p>	<p>Form an opinion based on the results of the preceding procedures and report conclusion by expressing an opinion.</p>

AT TOPICAL INDEX

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers.

A

ACCOUNTANT

- Definition 701.02

ADVERSE OPINIONS

- Compliance Attestation 601.66
- Financial Forecasts and Projections 301.38; 301.41–42
- Prospective Financial Statements 301.38; 301.41–42
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.56

AGREED-UPON PROCEDURES

- Agreement on and Sufficiency of Procedures 201.07
- Applicability of Attest Engagements to 101.15
- Change From Another Form of Engagement 201.41–45
- Combined Reports Covering Restricted-Use and General-Use Subject Matter or Presentations 201.46
- Compliance Attestation 601.16–29
- Conditions for Engagement Performance 201.06–07
- Dating of Report 201.34
- Definitions 201.03–04; 201.10; 201.19; 201.36
- Description 201.01–02
- Elements of Report 201.31
- Explanatory Language—See Explanatory Language
- Findings 201.24–26
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Internal Auditors and Other Personnel 201.22–23
- Involvement of a Specialist 201.19–21
- Knowledge of Matters Outside 201.40
- Nature, Timing, and Extent 201.11–23
- Practitioner Responsibilities 201.12–14
- Procedures Performed 201.15–18
- Prospective Financial Statements 301.51–56
- Reporting 201.31–36
- Reports on Attest Engagements—See Reports on Attest Engagements
- Reports on Prospective Financial Statements—See Reports on Prospective Financial Statements
- Representations 201.37–39
- Restricted Use 201.46
- Restrictions on Performance of Procedures 201.35

AGREED-UPON PROCEDURES—continued

- Specified and Nonparticipant Parties 201.11; 201.36
- Standards of Reporting 101.63–90
- Subject Matter and Related Assertions 201.08–10
- Understanding With Client 201.10
- Withdrawal From Engagement 201.35; 201.39

ANALYTICAL PROCEDURES

- Definition 701.20
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.79–81

APPLICABILITY

- Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements 201.01–02
- Attest Engagements 101.01–06
- Compliance Attestation 601.01–03
- Financial Forecasts and Projections 301.01–07
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.02–04
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control 501.01–12
- Reporting on Pro Forma Financial Information 401.01–03

ASSEMBLY

- Definition 301.08

ASSERTIONS

- Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements 201.08–10
- Attest Engagements 101.08–10; 101.112
- Attest Services Related to Consulting Service Engagements 101.112
- Definition 101.01
- Establishing an Understanding With the Client 201.10
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.34–39
- Nature 701.34–39
- XBRL Instance Documents 9101.47–55

ATTEST

- Definition 101.01
- Other Services 501.10–11

ATTEST DOCUMENTATION

- Attest Engagements 101.100–107; 9101.43–46
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Providing Access to, or Copies of, to a Regulator 9101.43–46
- XBRL Instance Documents 9101.47–55

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers

ATTEST ENGAGEMENTS

- Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements, Applicability to 101.15
- Assertion 101.08–10; 101.112
- Concepts 101.07–15
- Criteria, Availability 101.33–34; 101.112
- Criteria, Suitability 101.24–32; 101.112
- Defense Industry Questionnaire on Business Ethics and Conduct 9101.01–22
- Definitions 101.01; 101.11; 101.13; 101.19; 101.21; 101.23–24; 101.30; 101.35; 101.39; 101.42; 101.45; 101.51; 101.54–55; 101.63; 101.65–66; 101.68; 101.71–72; 101.76; 101.78; 101.91; 101.95; 701.01
- Description 101.01–06
- Due Professional Care 101.39–41
- Evidence, Obtaining Sufficient 101.51–58; 101.112
- Explanatory Language—See Explanatory Language
- Financial Information Included in XBRL Instance Documents 9101.47–55
- General Standards 101.19–41
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Independence 101.35–38
- Interpretations 9101.01–55
- Other Information in a Client-Prepared Document 101.91–94
- Planning and Supervision 101.42–50
- Reports—See Reports on Attest Engagements
- Representation Letter 101.59–62
- Responsible Party 101.11–14
- Services as Part of a Consulting Services Engagement 101.109–111
- Services Related to Consulting Services Engagements 101.109–112
- Solvency 9101.23–33
- Standards—See Attestation Standards
- Subject Matter 101.07; 101.21–22; 101.112
- Subsequent Events 101.95–99
- Training and Proficiency 101.19–20
- Withdrawal From 101.10; 101.58; 101.62; 101.64; 101.73–75; 9101.14
- XBRL Instance Documents 9101.47–55

ATTESTATION

- Definition 101.01

ATTESTATION RISK

- Compliance Attestation 601.31–35
- Control Risk 601.34; 701.32
- Definition 101.45; 601.32
- Detection Risk 601.35; 701.33
- Examination Engagement 601.31–35; 701.29–33
- Inherent Risk 601.33; 701.31
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.29–33

ATTESTATION STANDARDS

- Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements 201.05
- Applicability to Legal Matters 9101.34–42
- Definitions 101.01; 101.11; 101.13; 101.19; 101.21; 101.23–24; 101.30; 101.35; 101.39; 101.42; 101.45; 101.51; 101.54–55; 101.63; 101.65–66; 101.68; 101.71–72; 101.76; 101.78; 101.91; 101.95
- Effective Date 101.113; 201.47; 301.67; 401.17; 501.83; 601.72; 701.113
- General Standards 101.19–41
- Relationship of Attestation Standards to Quality Control Standards 101.16–18
- Standards of Field Work 101.42–62
- Standards of Reporting 101.63–90
- System of Quality Control—See System of Quality Control
- XBRL Instance Documents 9101.47–55

ATTESTER

- Definition 101.13

ATTESTING

- Definition 101.01

AUDITOR, INDEPENDENT

- Attest Engagements—See Practitioner
- Communications Between Predecessor and Successor 701.102–104
- Definition 701.02
- Predecessor Auditor Has Audited Prior Period Financial Statements 701.99–104
- Significant Part of Financial Statements Audited by Another 701.105

AUDITOR, INTERNAL

- Agreed-Upon Procedures 201.22–23
- Another Audits Significant Part of Financial Statements 701.105
- Compliance Attestation 601.44
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.48
- Planning the Examination Engagement 501.20; 601.44
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.20

B**BUSINESS COMBINATIONS**

- Pro Forma Financial Information 401.15

C**CASH—See Solvency****CLIENTS**

- Prepared Document 301.60–61; 501.77; 601.71
- Prospective Financial Statements 301.60–61; 301.60–61
- Understanding With Practitioner 201.10

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers

COMBINED REPORTS

- Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements 201.46
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.92–93; 701.116
- Restricted-Use and General-Use Subject Matter or Presentations ... 201.46

COMMUNICATION

- Deficiencies in an Entity's Internal Control 501.41–43
- Predecessor and Successor Auditors 701.102–104
- Reportable Conditions and Material Weaknesses 501.41–43

COMPARATIVE HISTORICAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION

- Financial Forecasts and Projections 301.48
- Modification to Standard Examination Report 301.48
- Prospective Financial Statements 301.48

COMPILATION OF PROSPECTIVE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Description 301.12–16
- Financial Forecasts and Projections 301.12–28
- Reports—See Reports on Prospective Financial Statements
- Training and Proficiency, Planning, and Procedures Applicable to Compilations 301.69

COMPLETENESS

- Definition 101.24
- Tests of, Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.61

COMPLIANCE ATTESTATION

- Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement 601.16–29
- Attestation Risk 601.31–35
- Conditions for Engagement Performance 601.09–14
- Consideration of Internal Control Over Compliance 601.45–47
- Control Risk 601.34
- Definitions 601.32
- Description 601.01–03
- Detection Risk 601.35
- Evidential Matter 601.48–49
- Examination Engagement 601.30–67
- Explanatory Language—See Explanatory Language
- Forming an Opinion 601.53
- General Considerations 601.41
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Inherent Risk 601.33
- Internal Audit Function 601.44

COMPLIANCE ATTESTATION—continued

- Material Noncompliance 601.64–67
- Materiality 601.36–37
- Multiple Components 601.42
- Other Information in a Client-Prepared Document 601.71
- Planning 601.41–44
- Report Modifications 601.63–67
- Reporting 601.54–62
- Representation Letter 601.68–70
- Responsible Party 601.15
- Scope of Services 601.04–08
- Subsequent Events 601.50–52
- Understanding Specified Requirements 601.40
- Using the Work of a Specialist 601.43
- Withdrawal From Engagement 601.13; 601.21; 601.69

COMPONENTS

- Internal Control of an Entity 501.13

CONSULTING SERVICES

- Attest Services Related to ... 101.109–112

CONTROL RISK

- Attestation Risk 601.31–35; 701.29–33
- Compliance Attestation 601.34
- Definition 101.45; 701.30
- Examination Engagement 601.34; 701.32
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.32

CRITERIA

- Attest Engagements, Availability of 101.33–34; 101.112
- Attest Engagements, Suitability of 101.24–32; 101.112
- Attest Services Related to Consulting Service Engagements 101.112
- General Standards 101.23–34

D**DATE OF REPORT**

- Agreed-Upon Procedures 201.34
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.70; 701.86
- Pro Forma Financial Information 401.11

DEFENSE INDUSTRY QUESTIONNAIRE

- Attest Engagement Interpretation 9101.01–22
- Illustrations—See Illustrations

DEFICIENCIES

- Communication of 501.41–43
- Internal Control of an Entity ... 501.35–43
- Material Weaknesses 501.37–40
- Reportable Conditions 501.36

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers

DEFINITIONS—See Terminology**DESIGN EFFECTIVENESS EVALUATION**

- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.23–26

DESIGN SUITABILITY

- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.70–71

DETECTION RISK

- Attestation Risk 601.31–35; 701.29–33
- Compliance Attestation 601.35
- Definition 101.45; 701.30
- Examination Engagement 601.35; 701.33
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.33

DISCLAIMER OF OPINION

- Attest Engagements 101.114; 9101.21
- Financial Forecasts and Projections 301.38; 301.43–44
- Pro Forma Financial Information 401.22
- Prospective Financial Statements 301.38; 301.41–42
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.57; 501.62

DOCUMENTATION

- Planning the Examination Engagement 501.21

DUE PROFESSIONAL CARE

- Attest Engagements 101.39–41
- General Standards 101.39–41

E**ELEMENTS**

- Agreed-Upon Procedures Report 201.31

EMPHASIS OF A MATTER

- Financial Forecasts and Projections 301.46
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.75; 701.91
- Modification to Standard Examination Report 301.46
- Prospective Financial Statements 301.46

ENGAGEMENT

- Agreed-Upon Procedures—See Agreed-Upon Procedures
- Attestation—See Attest Engagements
- Management's Discussion and Analysis—See Management's Discussion and Analysis
- Pro Forma Financial Information—See Pro Forma Financial Information
- Prospective Financial Statements—See Prospective Financial Statements

ENGAGEMENT LETTERS

- Definition 201.10

ENGAGEMENT PERFORMANCE

- Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements 201.06–07
- Agreement on and Sufficiency of Procedures 201.07
- Compliance Attestation 601.09–14
- Conditions for 201.06–07; 501.04–09; 701.05–14
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.40–41
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.04–09

ENTITY

- Definition 301.08

ENTITY, ACCOUNTING

- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting—See Internal Control

EVALUATION BASED IN PART ON REPORT OF OTHER PRACTITIONER

- Financial Forecasts and Projections 301.47
- Modification to Standard Examination Report 301.47
- Prospective Financial Statements 301.47

EVIDENTIAL MATTER

- Attest Engagements 101.51–58; 101.112
- Attest Services Related to Consulting Service Engagements 101.112
- Compliance Attestation 601.48–49
- Field Work Standards 101.51–58
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.59–64
- Nonfinancial Data 701.62–64
- Testing Completeness 701.61

EXAMINATION

- Attestation Risk 601.31–35; 701.29–33
- Audit Results 701.44–45
- Compliance Attestation 601.30–67
- Control Risk 601.34; 701.32
- Dating of Report 701.70
- Definition 101.54; 101.65; 101.68
- Design Effectiveness Evaluation 501.23–26
- Detection Risk 601.35; 701.33
- Documentation 501.21
- Emphasis of a Matter 701.75
- Evidential Matter 601.48–49; 701.59–64
- Forming an Opinion 501.34; 601.53; 701.67
- General Considerations 501.18; 601.41; 701.42–43
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Inherent Risk 601.33; 701.31
- Internal Audit Function 501.20; 601.44; 701.48
- Internal Control 501.22; 601.45–47; 701.49–58
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.28–75; 701.114

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers

EXAMINATION—continued

- Material Noncompliance 601.64–67
- Materiality 601.36–37
- Multiple Components 601.42; 701.46
- Multiple Locations 501.19
- Nature of Assertions 701.34–39
- Nonfinancial Data 701.62–64
- Performing 701.40–41
- Planning 501.18–21; 601.41–44;
701.40–41
- Reference to Report of Another
Practitioner 701.74
- Relationship to the Opinion Obtained
in an Audit 501.78–81
- Report Modifications 601.63–67;
701.71–73
- Reporting, Compliance
Attestation 601.54–62
- Reporting, Management's Discussion and
Analysis 701.68–75
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control
Over Financial Reporting 501.16–34;
501.78–81
- Subsequent Events 601.48–49;
701.65–66
- Testing and Evaluating the Operating
Effectiveness of Controls 501.27–33
- Testing Completeness 701.61
- Understanding Specified Compliance
Requirements 601.40
- Using the Work of a
Specialist 601.43; 701.47

EXAMINATION OF PROSPECTIVE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Description 301.29–31
- Financial Forecasts and
Projections 301.29–50
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Part of Larger Engagement 301.49–50
- Reports—See Reports on Prospective
Financial Statements
- Training and Proficiency, Planning,
and Procedures Applicable to
Examinations 301.70

**EXAMINATION REPORTS—See Reports on
Attest Engagements****EXAMPLES—See Illustrations****EXPLANATORY LANGUAGE**

- Agreed-Upon Procedures Report 201.33
- Attest Engagements 101.92
- Compliance Attestation 601.52;
601.65–66
- Financial Forecasts and
Projections 301.39; 301.41;
301.43; 301.46; 301.50
- Management's Discussion and
Analysis 701.45; 701.73;
701.75; 701.91;
701.114–117
- Pro Forma Financial
Information 401.18–22
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over
Financial Reporting 501.55–56;
501.60; 501.62; 501.67

EXTERNAL INFORMATION

- Management's Discussion and
Analysis 701.24

F**FIELD WORK—See Standards of Field
Work, Attest****FINANCIAL FORECASTS AND PROJECTIONS**

- Client-Prepared Document 301.60–61
- Compilation of Prospective Financial
Statements—See Compilation of
Prospective Financial Statements
- Definitions 301.08–10
- Description 301.01–07
- Examination of Prospective Financial
Statements—See Examination of
Prospective Financial Statements
- Explanatory Language—See Explanatory
Language
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Inconsistent Information 301.62–64
- Material Misstatements 301.65–66
- Minimum Presentation Guidelines 301.68
- Other Information 301.59–66
- Partial Presentations 301.57–58
- Practitioner-Submitted
Document 301.59
- Prospective Financial Statements—See
Prospective Financial Statements
- Reports—See Reports on Prospective
Financial Statements
- Training and Proficiency, Planning,
and Procedures Applicable to
Compilations 301.69
- Training and Proficiency, Planning,
and Procedures Applicable to
Examinations 301.70
- Withdrawal From Engagement 301.16;
301.64; 301.69

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Predecessor Auditor Has Audited Prior
Period 701.99–104
- Pro Forma—See Pro Forma Financial
Information
- Prospective Financial Statements—See
Prospective Financial Statements
- Significant Part Audited by Another
Auditor 701.105
- XBRL Instance Documents 9101.47–55

FINDINGS

- Agreed-Upon Procedures 201.24–26
- Government Auditing
Standards 9101.56–58

FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES ACT OF 1977

- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over
Financial Reporting 501.82

FORWARD-LOOKING INFORMATION

- Management's Discussion and
Analysis 701.25–26

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers

G**GENERAL STANDARDS, ATTEST**

- Attest Engagements 101.19–41
- Criteria, Availability 101.33–34
- Criteria, Suitability 101.24–32
- Due Professional Care 101.39–41
- Fifth Standard 101.39
- First Standard 101.19
- Fourth Standard 101.35
- Independence 101.35–38
- Second Standard 101.21
- Subject Matter 101.21–22
- Third Standard 101.23
- Training and Proficiency 101.19–20

GENERAL USE

- Attest Engagements 101.114–115
- Compliance Attestation 601.65–66
- Definition 101.68; 301.09

GOVERNMENT AUDITING STANDARDS

- Reporting on Attestation Engagements Performed in Accordance With 9101.56–58

H**HARD DATA**

- Definition 101.30

HYPOTHETICAL ASSUMPTION

- Definition 301.08

I**ILLUSTRATIONS**

- Adverse Opinion 301.41; 501.56; 601.66
- Agreed-Upon Procedures .. 9101.46; 201.32; 201.48; 301.56; 601.25
- Another Practitioner 701.114
- Combined Reports, Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.116
- Compiled Prospective Financial Statements 301.19–21; 301.23–24; 301.28
- Compliance Attestation 601.25–28; 601.56; 601.58–59; 601.65–67
- Defense Industry Questionnaire 9101.21–22
- Disclaimer of Opinion ... 101.114; 9101.21; 301.43; 401.22; 501.57; 501.62
- Effectiveness of a Segment of Internal Control 501.69
- Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement 201.48
- Examination Reports, Attest Engagement 101.114; 9101.21; 9101.45
- Examination Reports, Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.114; 701.116
- Examination Reports, Pro Forma Financial Information 401.18; 401.20–21

ILLUSTRATIONS—continued

- Examination Reports, Prospective Financial Statements 301.34–36; 301.39; 301.41; 301.43; 301.50
- Examination Reports, Schedule of Findings 9101.56–58
- Explanatory Language ... 301.39; 301.41; 301.43; 301.50; 501.55–56; 501.60; 501.62; 501.65–66; 701.114–116
- Financial Forecasts and Projections ... 301.19–20; 301.23–24; 301.28; 301.34–36; 301.39; 301.41; 301.43; 301.50; 301.56; 301.59
- Interim Period, Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.115–116
- Internal Control Effectiveness 501.48; 501.50; 601.27–28
- Material Misstatement 701.115
- Material Noncompliance 601.67
- Material Weakness 501.55–58
- Other Practitioner 501.64
- Practitioner-Submitted Document Containing Prospective Financial Statements 301.59
- Qualified Opinion 101.114; 9101.21; 301.39; 401.22; 501.55; 501.60; 601.65; 701.114
- Regulatory Agency Criteria 501.74
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.48; 501.50; 501.55–58; 501.60; 501.62; 501.64; 501.69; 501.71; 501.74
- Restricted Use 101.80; 101.114–115; 9101.21–22; 701.115–116
- Review Reports, Attest Engagement 101.115; 9101.22
- Review Reports, Management's Discussion and Analysis ... 701.115–116
- Review Reports, Pro Forma Financial Information 401.19–20
- Scope Limitations 101.114; 9101.21; 401.22; 501.60; 501.62
- Specified Requirements ... 601.25; 601.28; 601.56; 601.58; 601.65–67
- Suitability of Design of Entity's Internal Control 501.71
- Unqualified Opinions 101.114–115; 9101.21–22; 201.32; 201.48; 301.19–20; 301.34–35; 301.56; 401.18–21; 501.48; 501.50; 501.64; 501.69; 501.71; 501.74; 701.114–116
- XBRL Instance Documents 9101.53; 9101.55

INCONSISTENT INFORMATION

- Financial Forecasts and Projections 301.62–64
- Prospective Financial Statements 301.62–64

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers

INDEPENDENCE

- Attest Engagements 101.35–38
- General Standards 101.35–38

INHERENT RISK

- Attestation Risk 601.31–35;
701.29–33
- Compliance Attestation 601.33
- Definition 101.45; 701.30
- Examination Engagement 601.33;
701.31
- Management's Discussion and
Analysis 701.31

INQUIRIES

- Management's Discussion and
Analysis 701.79–81

INTERIM FINANCIAL INFORMATION

- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Reporting on Pro Forma Financial
Information 401.01–22

INTERIM FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Management's Discussion and
Analysis 701.01–117

INTERNAL AUDIT—See Auditor, Internal**INTERNAL AUDITOR**—See Auditor, Internal**INTERNAL CONTROL**

- Communicating Reportable Conditions and
Material Weaknesses 501.41–43
- Compliance Attestation—See Compliance
Attestation
- Components 501.13
- Conditions for Engagement
Performance 501.04–09
- Consideration of Internal Control Over
Compliance 601.45–47
- Deficiencies 501.35–43
- Definitions 501.03–04; 501.37
- Description 501.01–12
- Design Effectiveness
Evaluation 501.23–26
- Documentation 501.21
- Examination 501.16–34
- Explanatory Language—See Explanatory
Language
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act 501.82
- Forming an Opinion 501.34
- General Considerations 501.18
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Internal Audit Function 501.20
- Limitations 501.14–15
- Management's Discussion and
Analysis 701.49–58; 701.78
- Material Weaknesses 501.37–43;
501.54–58
- Multiple Locations 501.19
- Nonattest Services 501.12
- Obtaining an Understanding 501.22
- Opinion Based in Part on the Report of
Another Practitioner 501.63–64

INTERNAL CONTROL—continued

- Other Attest Services 501.10–11;
501.84
- Other Information in a Client-Prepared
Document 501.77
- Planning 501.18–21
- Pre-Award Surveys 9501.01–08
- Relationship of the Practitioner's
Examination to the Opinion Obtained
in an Audit 501.78–81
- Report Modifications 501.53
- Reportable Conditions 501.36
- Reporting Based on Criteria Specified by a
Regulatory Agency 501.72–76
- Reporting on the Effectiveness of a Segment
of the Entity's Internal Control 501.69
- Reporting on the Suitability of Design of the
Entity's Internal Control 501.70–71
- Reporting Standards 501.46–76
- Restricted Use 501.52
- Scope Limitations 501.59–62
- Subsequent Events 501.65–68
- Testing and Evaluating Operating
Effectiveness 501.27–33
- Withdrawal From Engagement 501.07;
501.45; 501.59
- Written Representations 501.44–45

K**KEY FACTORS**

- Definition 301.08

KNOWLEDGE

- Attest Engagements 101.21–22
- General Standards 101.21–22
- Matters Outside Agreed-Upon
Procedures 201.40

L**LAWS**—See Compliance Attestation**LEGAL MATTERS**

- Applicability of Attestation
Standards 9101.34–42
- Attest Engagement
Interpretation 9101.34–42

LIMITATIONS

- Internal Control of an Entity 501.14–15
- Scope—See Scope of Engagement

LIMITED USE

- Definition 301.08

M**MANAGEMENT**

- Discussion and Analysis—See Management's
Discussion and Analysis
- Preparation Methodology 701.18–19
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over
Financial Reporting—See Internal Control
- Responsibilities 701.16–17

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

- Analytical Procedures and Inquiries 701.79–81
- Another Auditor Audits Significant Part of Financial Statements..... 701.105
- Attestation Risk 701.29–33
- Combined Reports 701.92–93; 701.116
- Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors 701.102–104
- Communications With Audit Committee 701.107–109
- Comparison of Activities Performed Under SAS No. 8 Versus a Review or an Examination Attest Engagement..... 701.117
- Conditions for Engagement Performance, Examination 701.05–07
- Conditions for Engagement Performance, Review 701.08–14
- Consideration of Audit Results 701.44–45
- Control Risk 701.32
- Dating of Report 701.70; 701.86
- Definitions 701.01–02; 701.20; 701.30
- Description 701.02–04
- Detection Risk 701.33
- Emphasis of a Matter. 701.75; 701.91
- Engagement Acceptance Considerations 701.15
- Evidential Matter 701.59–64
- Examination Engagement. 701.28–75; 701.114
- Explanatory Language—See Explanatory Language
- External Information, Inclusion of 701.24
- Forming an Opinion 701.67
- Forward-Looking Information, Inclusion of..... 701.25–26
- General Considerations 701.01–27; 701.42–43
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Inherent Risk 701.31
- Internal Audit Function 701.48
- Internal Control Considerations 701.49–58; 701.78
- Management Responsibilities . . . 701.16–17
- Management's Preparation Methodology..... 701.18–19
- Materiality 701.21–22
- Multiple Components 701.46
- Nature of Assertions 701.34–39
- Nonfinancial Data..... 701.62–64
- Performing an Examination Engagement..... 701.40–41
- Planning the Engagement. 701.42–48; 701.77

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS—continued

- Practitioner Engaged Subsequent to Filing 701.94–98
- Predecessor Auditor Has Audited Prior Period Financial Statements 701.99–104
- Pro Forma Financial Information, Inclusion of 701.23
- Reference to Report of Another Practitioner 701.74
- Report Modifications..... 701.71–73; 701.87–90
- Reporting 701.68–75; 701.82–91
- Responsibility for Other Information in Documents Containing..... 701.106
- Review Engagement 701.76–91; 701.115
- Scope Limitation 701.06; 701.45; 701.71; 701.73; 701.88; 701.111–112
- SEC Requirements 701.18–19
- Subsequent Events..... 701.65–66
- Tests of Completeness..... 701.61
- Timing of Procedures 701.20
- Using the Work of a Specialist 701.47
- Voluntary Information, Inclusion of . . . 701.27
- Withdrawal From Engagement. 701.73; 701.111–112
- Written Representations 701.110–112

MATERIAL WEAKNESSES—See Reportable Conditions**MATERIALITY**

- Compliance Attestation..... 601.36–37
- Management's Discussion and Analysis..... 701.21–22

MD&A—See Management's Discussion and Analysis**MEASURABILITY**

- Definition 101.24

MISSTATEMENTS

- Financial Forecasts and Projections 301.65–66
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Prospective Financial Statements 301.65–66

MULTIPLE COMPONENTS

- Compliance Attestation..... 601.42
- Management's Discussion and Analysis..... 701.46
- Planning the Examination Engagement 601.42

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers

MULTIPLE LOCATIONS

- Planning the Examination Engagement 501.19
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.19

N**NATURE, TIMING, AND EXTENT**

- Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements 201.11–23
- Internal Auditors and Other Personnel 201.22–23
- Practitioner's Responsibility 201.12–14
- Procedures to Be Performed 201.15–18
- Specialist Involvement 201.19–21
- Specified Parties' Responsibility 201.11

NONATTEST SERVICES

- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.12

NONCOMPLIANCE

- Compliance Attestation 601.64–67
- Illustrations—See Illustrations

NONFINANCIAL DATA

- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.62–64

NONPARTICIPANT PARTIES

- Agreed-Upon Procedures 201.36
- Definition 201.36

O**OBJECTIVITY**

- Definition 101.24

OPINIONS, AUDITORS'

- Adverse—See Adverse Opinions
- Disclaimer—See Disclaimer of Opinion
- Examples—See Illustrations
- Qualified—See Qualified Opinion
- Unqualified—See Unqualified Opinion

OTHER INFORMATION

- Attest Engagements 101.91–94
- Client-Prepared Documents 101.91–94; 501.77; 601.71
- Comparison of Activities Performed Under SAS No. 8 Versus a Review or an Examination Attest Engagement 701.117
- Definition 101.91
- Documents Containing Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.106

P**PARTIAL PRESENTATION**

- Definition 301.03; 301.08
- Financial Forecasts and Projections 301.57–58

PLANNING AND SUPERVISION

- Attest Engagements 101.42–50
- Audit Results 701.44–45
- Compliance Attestation 601.41–44

PLANNING AND SUPERVISION—continued

- Documentation 501.21
- Examination Engagement 501.18–21
- Field Work Standards 101.42–50
- General Considerations 501.18; 601.41; 701.42–43
- Internal Audit Function 501.20; 601.44; 701.48
- Multiple Components 601.42; 701.46
- Multiple Locations 501.19
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.18–21
- Using the Work of a Specialist 601.43; 701.47

PRACTICE OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTING

- Definition 101.01

PRACTITIONER

- Definition 101.01; 701.02
- Engaged Subsequent to Filing of Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.94–98
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Objective of Examination Procedures Applied to Pro Forma Financial Information 401.08
- Objective of Review Procedures Applied to Pro Forma Financial Information 401.09
- Opinion Based in Part on Report of Another Practitioner 501.63–64
- Prospective Financial Statements 301.59
- Reference to Report of Another Practitioner 701.74
- Relationship of an Examination to the Opinion Obtained in an Audit 501.78–81
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting—See Internal Control
- Responsibilities and Functions 201.12–14
- Significant Part of Financial Statements Audited by Another 701.105
- Submitted Documents 301.59

PRE-AWARD SURVEYS

- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 9501.01–08

PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

- Financial Forecasts and Projections 301.68
- Pro Forma Financial Information 401.04–06

PRO FORMA FINANCIAL INFORMATION

- Conditions for Reporting 401.07
- Description 401.01–03
- Explanatory Language—See Explanatory Language
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.23
- Practitioner's Objective 401.08–09
- Presentation 401.04–06
- Procedures 401.10
- Reports—See Reports on Pro Forma Financial Information
- Withdrawal From Engagement 401.16

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers

PROSPECTIVE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures to 301.51–.56
- Client-Prepared Document 301.60–.61
- Compilation—See Compilation of Prospective Financial Statements
- Definition 301.08
- Examination—See Examination of Prospective Financial Statements
- Explanatory Language—See Explanatory Language
- Financial Forecasts and Projections—See Financial Forecasts and Projections
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Inconsistent Information 301.62–.64
- Material Misstatements 301.65–.66
- Practitioner-Submitted Document 301.59
- Reports on the Results of Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures 301.55–.56
- Uses 301.09–.11

PUBLIC ENTITY

- Definition 701.02

Q

QUALIFIED OPINION

- Attest Engagements 101.114; 9101.21
- Compliance Attestation 601.65
- Financial Forecasts and Projections 301.38–.40
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.114
- Pro Forma Financial Information 401.22
- Prospective Financial Statements 301.38–.40
- Reporting on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.55; 501.60

QUALITY CONTROL

- Relationship of Attestation Standards to Quality Control Standards 101.16–.18
- System of Quality Control—See System of Quality Control

R

REGULATIONS—See Compliance Attestation

REGULATORY AGENCIES

- Compliance Attestation—See Compliance Attestation
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Reporting on Internal Control Based on Specified Criteria 501.72–.76

RELEVANCE

- Definition 101.24

REPORTABLE CONDITIONS

- Communication 501.41–.43
- Deficiencies in an Entity's Internal Control 501.35–.43
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.54–.57

REPORTS

- Agreed-Upon Procedures—See Agreed-Upon Procedures
- Attest Engagement—See Reports on Attest Engagements
- Compliance Attestation—See Compliance Attestation
- Internal Control—See Internal Control
- Management's Discussion and Analysis—See Management's Discussion and Analysis
- Pro Forma Financial Information—See Reports on Pro Forma Financial Information
- Prospective Financial Statements—See Reports on Prospective Financial Statements

REPORTS ON AGREED-UPON PROCEDURES—See Agreed-Upon Procedures

REPORTS ON ATTEST ENGAGEMENTS

- Dating—See Date of Report
- Defense Contractor Assertions 9101.21–.22
- Examination Reports 101.84–.87; 101.114; 9101.21
- Explanatory Language—See Explanatory Language
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Internal Control—See Internal Control
- Performed in Accordance With *Government Auditing Standards* 9101.56–.58
- Pro Forma Financial Information—See Reports on Pro Forma Financial Information
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting—See Internal Control
- Restricted Use 101.78–.83
- Review Reports 101.88–.90; 101.115; 9101.22
- Scope Limitations 101.73–.75
- Solvency Matters 9101.23–.33
- XBRL Instance Documents 9101.47–.55

REPORTS ON COMPLIANCE ATTESTATION—See Compliance Attestation

REPORTS ON INTERNAL CONTROL—See Internal Control

REPORTS ON MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS—See Management's Discussion and Analysis

REPORTS ON PRO FORMA FINANCIAL INFORMATION

- Conditions for Reporting 401.07
- Dating 401.11
- Description 401.01–.03; 401.11–.16
- Disclaimer—See Disclaimer of Opinion
- Elements 401.12–.13
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Pooling of Interests Business Combination 401.15; 401.21
- Practitioner's Objective 401.08–.09
- Presentation 401.04–.06
- Procedures 401.10
- Qualified Opinion—See Qualified Opinion
- Restricted Use 401.14
- Scope Limitations 401.16; 401.22

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers

REPORTS ON PROSPECTIVE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Adverse Opinion—See Adverse Opinions
- Agreed-Upon Procedures 301.55–.56
- Comparative Historical Financial Information 301.48
- Compiled 301.18–.25
- Disclaimer—See Disclaimer of Opinion
- Emphasis of a Matter 301.46
- Evaluation Based in Part on Report of Another Practitioner 301.47
- Examined 301.33–.37
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Modifications 301.26–.28; 301.38–.50
- Qualified Opinion—See Qualified Opinion
- Reporting When Examination Is Part of Larger Engagement 301.49–.50

REPORTS, OTHER AUDITORS'

- Financial Forecasts and Projections . . 301.47
- Prospective Financial Statements . . . 301.47
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.63–.64

REPRESENTATION LETTERS

- Agreed-Upon Procedures 201.37–.39
- Attest Engagements 101.59–.62
- Compliance Attestation 601.68–.70
- Field Work Standards 101.59–.62
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.110–.112
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.44–.45

RESERVATIONS ABOUT ENGAGEMENT

- Definition 101.72

RESERVATIONS ABOUT SUBJECT MATTER OR ASSERTION

- Definition 101.76

RESPONSIBLE PARTY

- Attest Engagements 101.11–.14
- Compliance Attestation 601.15
- Definition 101.11; 301.08

RESTRICTIONS

- Agreed-Upon Procedures Report 201.35
- Attest Engagement 101.78–.83; 101.114–.115; 9101.21–.22
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Pro Forma Financial Information 401.14
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.52

REVIEW

- Analytical Procedures and Inquiries 701.79–.81
- Dating of Report 701.86
- Definition 101.55; 101.65; 101.68
- Emphasis of a Matter 701.91
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Internal Control Considerations 701.78
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.76–.91; 701.115
- Planning 701.77
- Report Modifications 701.87–.90
- Reporting 701.82–.91

REVIEW REPORTS—See Reports on Attest Engagements

S

SCHEDULE OF FINDINGS

- Government Auditing Standards 9101.56–.58
- Illustrations—See Illustrations

SCOPE OF ENGAGEMENT

- Attest Engagement 101.73–.75
- Compliance Attestation 601.04–.08
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.06; 701.45; 701.71; 701.73; 701.88; 701.111–.112
- Pro Forma Financial Information 401.16; 401.22
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.59–.62

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.18–.19

SEGMENT

- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Reporting on the Effectiveness of a Segment of an Entity's Internal Control 501.69

SOFT INFORMATION

- Definition 101.30

SOLVENCY

- Responding to Requests for Reports on Matters Relating to 9101.23–.33

SPECIALISTS

- Agreed-Upon Procedures 201.22–.23
- Compliance Attestation 601.43
- Definition 201.19
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.47
- Planning the Examination Engagement 601.43

SPECIFIED PARTIES

- Agreed-Upon Procedures 201.11; 201.36
- Definition 201.04

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers

STANDARDS, ATTESTATION—See Attestation Standards

STANDARDS OF FIELD WORK, ATTEST

- Attest Engagements 101.42–62
- Evidence 101.51–58
- First Standard 101.42
- Planning and Supervision 101.42–50
- Representation Letter 101.59–62
- Second Standard 101.51

STANDARDS OF REPORTING, ATTEST

- Attest Engagements 101.63–90
- Examination Reports 101.84–87
- First Standard 101.63
- Fourth Standard 101.78
- Review Reports 101.88–90
- Second Standard 101.66
- Third Standard 101.71

SUBJECT MATTER

- Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements 201.08–10
- Attest Engagements 101.07; 101.21–22; 101.112
- Attest Services Related to Consulting Service Engagements 101.112
- Establishing an Understanding With the Client 201.10
- General Standards 101.21–22

SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

- Attest Engagements 101.95–99
- Compliance Attestation 601.50–52
- Definition 101.95
- Management's Discussion and Analysis 701.65–66
- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over Financial Reporting 501.65–68

SYSTEM OF QUALITY CONTROL

- Deficiencies in 101.18
- Definition 101.17
- Engagement Performed in Accordance With Attestation Standards 101.18
- Noncompliance With 101.18

T

TERMINOLOGY

- Accountant 701.02
- Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement 201.03–04
- Analytical Procedures 701.20
- Assembly 301.08
- Assertion 101.01
- Attest 101.01
- Attest Documentation 101.100
- Attest Engagement 101.01; 701.01
- Attestation 101.01
- Attestation Risk 101.45; 301.70; 601.32

TERMINOLOGY—continued

- Attester 101.13
- Attesting 101.01
- Auditor 701.02
- Completeness 101.24
- Control Criteria 501.04
- Control Risk 101.45; 601.32; 701.30
- Detection Risk 101.45; 601.32; 701.30
- Engagement Letter 201.10
- Entity 301.08
- Examination 101.54; 101.65; 101.68
- Field Work Standard, First 101.42
- Field Work Standard, Second 101.51
- Financial Forecast 301.08
- Financial Projection 301.08
- General Standard, Fifth 101.39
- General Standard, First 101.19
- General Standard, Fourth 101.35
- General Standard, Second 101.21
- General Standard, Third 101.23
- General Use 101.68; 301.09
- Hard Data 101.30
- Hypothetical Assumption 301.08
- Inherent Risk 101.45; 601.32; 701.30
- Internal Control 501.03
- Key Factors 301.08
- Limited Use 301.10
- Material Weakness 501.37
- Measurability 101.24
- Nonparticipant Party 201.36
- Objectivity 101.24
- Other Information 101.91
- Partial Presentation 301.03; 301.08
- Practice of Public Accounting 101.01
- Practitioner 101.01; 701.02
- Prospective Financial Statements 301.08
- Public Entity 701.02
- Quality Control, System of 101.17
- Relevance 101.24
- Reporting Standard, First 101.63
- Reporting Standard, Fourth 101.78
- Reporting Standard, Second 101.66
- Reporting Standard, Third 101.71
- Reservations About the Engagement 101.72
- Reservations About the Subject Matter or the Assertion 101.76
- Responsible Party 101.11; 301.08; 501.04

References are to AT section and paragraph numbers

TERMINOLOGY—continued

- Review 101.55; 101.65; 101.68
- Soft Information 101.30
- Specified Parties 201.04
- Subsequent Events 101.95
- XBRL 9101.48
- XBRL Instance Documents 9101.48–49

TRAINING AND PROFICIENCY

- Attest Engagements 101.19–20
- General Standards 101.19–20

U**UNQUALIFIED OPINION**

- Agreed-Upon Procedures... 201.32; 201.48
- Attest Engagements 101.114–115;
..... 9101.21–22
- Financial Forecasts and
Projections 301.19–20;
..... 301.34–35; 301.56
- Management's Discussion and
Analysis 701.114–116

UNQUALIFIED OPINION—continued

- Reporting on an Entity's Internal Control Over
Financial Reporting 501.48; 501.50;
..... 501.64; 501.69;
..... 501.71; 501.74
- Reporting on Pro Forma Financial
Information 401.18–21

USES

- Prospective Financial
Statements 301.09–11

V**VOLUNTARY INFORMATION**

- Management's Discussion and
Analysis 701.27

X**XBRL INSTANCE DOCUMENTS**

- Attest Engagements on Financial Information
Included in 9101.47–55
- Definition 9101.48–49
- Report Examples 9101.55

AICPA RESOURCE: Accounting & Auditing Literature

The AICPA has created a unique online research tool by combining the power and speed of the Web with comprehensive accounting and auditing standards. *AICPA RESOURCE* includes:

- AICPA Professional Standards
- AICPA Technical Practice Aids
- AICPA's Accounting Trends & Techniques
- AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides
- AICPA Audit Risk Alerts
- FASB Original Pronouncements
- FASB Current Text
- EITF Abstracts
- FASB Implementation Guides
- FASB's Comprehensive Topical Index

Search for pertinent information by keyword and get the results ranked by relevancy. Print out important *AICPA RESOURCE* segments and integrate the literature into your engagements and financial statements. Available from anywhere you have Internet access, this comprehensive reference library is packed with the A&A guidance you need—and use—the most. *AICPA RESOURCE* is kept up-to-date with the latest standards and conforming changes.

AICPA+FASB reference libraries, one-year individual online subscription

No. ORF-XX

AICPA Member \$890.00

Nonmember \$1,112.50

AICPA reference library, one-year individual online subscription

No. ORS-XX

AICPA Member \$395.00

Nonmember \$493.75

Buy what you use and save.

With over 50 critical accounting and auditing online subscriptions, you can handpick the AICPA reference materials that best suit your needs. And to help you save, we've bundled several of our most popular titles together at a discount for individual and firm subscriptions. Many of these special offers include the entire FASB Library. The best part? Titles start as low as \$25 a year.

**For more information or to order, log onto
www.cpa2biz.com/AICPAresource, or call 888-777-7077.**

Outstanding Statements on Auditing Standards

SAS No.	Title	AU Section
1	Codification of Auditing Standards and Procedures.....	See Part III of Cross-References to SASs section
8	Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements	550
12	Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments	337; 337A; 337B; 337C; 560
22	Planning and Supervision	311
25	The Relationship of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards to Quality Control Standards.....	161
26	Association With Financial Statements	504
29	Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents	530; 551
31	Evidential Matter	326
32	Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements	431
37	Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes.....	711
39	Audit Sampling	350
42	Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data.....	552
43	Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards	150; 331; 350; 420; 901
45	Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—1983.....	310; 313; 334; 350
46	Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Date.....	390
47	Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit	311; 312
48	The Effects of Computer Processing on the Audit of Financial Statements	311; 326
50	Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles	625
51	Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries	534
52	Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—1987.....	551; 558
54	Illegal Acts by Clients.....	317
55	Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit.....	319
56	Analytical Procedures	329
57	Auditing Accounting Estimates	342
58	Reports on Audited Financial Statements.....	508
59	The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern.....	341
60	Communication of Internal Control Related Matters Noted in an Audit.....	325
61	Communication With Audit Committees.....	380
62	Special Reports	410; 544; 623
64	Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—1990.....	341; 508; 543
65	The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements.....	322
67	The Confirmation Process.....	330; 331
69	The Meaning of <i>Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</i>	411
70	Service Organizations	324
72	Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties.....	504; 634
73	Using the Work of a Specialist	336
74	Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance.....	801
76	Amendments to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 72, <i>Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties</i>	634

(continued on inside back cover)

Table of Contents

How to Use This Volume

**Applicability of AICPA Professional Standards
and PCAOB Standards**

Cross-References to SASs

AU § 100 Statements on Auditing Standards—Introduction

AU § 200 The General Standards

AU § 300 The Standards of Field Work

**AU § 400 The First, Second, and Third Standards
of Reporting**

AU § 500 The Fourth Standard of Reporting

AU § 600 Other Types of Reports

AU § 700 Special Topics

AU § 800 Compliance Auditing

**AU § 900 Special Reports of the Committee
on Auditing Procedure**

AU Appendixes

AU Topical Index

AT Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements

AT Topical Index